NOTE

This Microfiche meets the quality requirements of the American National Standard for Microfiche of Documents (ANSI PH5.9-1975). However, because of imperfections in the document from which it was made, it contains images that are illegible or difficult to read. The source document for this microfiche is the best copy that could be obtained prior to filming.

CIS

Congressional Information Service
Washington, D.C.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR AND RELATED AGENCIES APPROPRIATIONS FOR 1991

HEARINGS

BEFORE A

SUBCOMMITTEE OF THE

COMMITTEE ON APPROPRIATIONS

HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

ONE HUNDRED FIRST CONGRESS

SECOND SESSION

SUBCOMMITTEE ON THE DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR AND RELATED AGENCIES

SIDNEY R. YATES, Illinois, *Chairman*

JOHN P. MURTHA, Pennsylvania	RALPH REGULA, Ohio
NORMAN D. DICKS, Washington	JOSEPH M. McDADE, Pennsylvania
LES AuCOIN, Oregon	BILL LOWERY, California
TOM BEVILL, Alabama	
CHESTER G. ATKINS, Massachusetts	

D. NEAL SIGMON, KATHLEEN R JOHNSON, ROBERT S. KRIPOWICZ, and LORETTA BEAUMONT, *Staff Assistants*

PART 4

Justification of the Budget Estimates

	Page
Indian Health	1
Indian Education	225
Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation Commission	269
Institute of American Indian and Alaska Native Culture and Arts Development	294
Smithsonian Institution	309
National Gallery of Art	625
Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars	745
National Endowment for the Arts	771
National Endowment for the Humanities	915
Institute of Museum Services	1017
Commission of Fine Arts	1037
Advisory Council on Historic Preservation	1055
National Capital Planning Commission	1101
Franklin Delano Roosevelt Memorial Commission	1129
Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation	1133
Holocaust Memorial Council	1153
National Indian Gaming Commission	1177
America the Beautiful	1193

Printed for the use of the Committee on Appropriations

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE

26-716 WASHINGTON : 1990

H181-16

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, Congressional Sales Office
U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402

26-716 O—90——1

COMMITTEE ON APPROPRIATIONS

JAMIE L. WHITTEN, Mississippi, *Chairman*

WILLIAM H. NATCHER, Kentucky
NEAL SMITH, Iowa
SIDNEY R. YATES, Illinois
DAVID R. OBEY, Wisconsin
EDWARD R. ROYBAL, California
LOUIS STOKES, Ohio
TOM BEVILL, Alabama
BILL ALEXANDER, Arkansas
JOHN P. MURTHA, Pennsylvania
BOB TRAXLER, Michigan
JOSEPH D. EARLY, Massachusetts
CHARLES WILSON, Texas
LINDY (MRS. HALE) BOGGS, Louisiana
NORMAN D. DICKS, Washington
MATTHEW F. McHUGH, New York
WILLIAM LEHMAN, Florida
MARTIN OLAV SABO, Minnesota
JULIAN C. DIXON, California
VIC FAZIO, California
W. G. (BILL) HEFNER, North Carolina
LES AuCOIN, Oregon
DANIEL K. AKAKA, Hawaii
WES WATKINS, Oklahoma
WILLIAM H. GRAY III, Pennsylvania
BERNARD J. DWYER, New Jersey
STENY H. HOYER, Maryland
BOB CARR, Michigan
ROBERT J. MRAZEK, New York
RICHARD J. DURBIN, Illinois
RONALD D. COLEMAN, Texas
ALAN B. MOLLOHAN, West Virginia
LINDSAY THOMAS, Georgia
CHESTER G. ATKINS, Massachusetts
JIM CHAPMAN, Texas

SILVIO O. CONTE, Massachusetts
JOSEPH M. McDADE, Pennsylvania
JOHN T. MYERS, Indiana
CLARENCE E. MILLER, Ohio
LAWRENCE COUGHLIN, Pennsylvania
C. W. BILL YOUNG, Florida
RALPH REGULA, Ohio
VIRGINIA SMITH, Nebraska
CARL D. PURSELL, Michigan
MICKEY EDWARDS, Oklahoma
BOB LIVINGSTON, Louisiana
BILL GREEN, New York
JERRY LEWIS, California
JOHN EDWARD PORTER, Illinois
HAROLD ROGERS, Kentucky
JOE SKEEN, New Mexico
FRANK R. WOLF, Virginia
BILL LOWERY, California
VIN WEBER, Minnesota
TOM DeLAY, Texas
JIM KOLBE, Arizona
DEAN A. GALLO, New Jersey

FREDERICK G. MOHRMAN, *Clerk and Staff Director*

FISCAL YEAR 1991

Volume XI

Justification of Appropriation Estimates for Committee on Appropriations

Indian Health
SERVICE

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

Justification for Appropriation, Fiscal Year 1991

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Fiscal Year 1991 — Page No.

Appropriation Language and Explanation of Language Changes......... IHS - 1

Amounts Available for Obligation.................................... IHS - 15

Summary of Changes.. IHS - 16

Obligations by Activity... IHS - 18

Budget Authority by Object.. IHS - 19

FTEs by Activity.. IHS - 20

Budget Authority by Activity.. IHS - 21

Appropriation History... IHS - 22

Average Grade and Salary.. IHS - 27

Tribal and Federal Health Programs (by activity).................... IHS - 28

Significant Items and Requested Reports in FY 1990 House Appropriation Committee Report.................................. IHS - 35

Significant Items and Requested Reports in FY 1990 Senate Appropriation Committee Report.................................. IHS - 39

Significant Items and Requested Reports in FY 1990 Conference Appropriation Committee Report.................................. IHS - 48

Justification:

1. Narrative

A. Executive Summary.. IHS - 53

Federal Indian Health Administration.......................... IHS - 59

Tribal Health Administration.................................. IHS - 65

B. Highlight Statement.. IHS - 69

Page No.

C. Activities:

1) Clinical Services:

a) Federal and Tribal Health Delivery.................... IHS - 77

b) Contract Care.................................... IHS - 141

2) Preventive Health.................................. IHS - 145

3) Urban Health...................................... IHS - 167

4) Indian Health Manpower............................. IHS - 169

5) Tribal Management.................................. IHS - 173

6) Direct Operations.................................. IHS - 175

2. Exhibits

A. New Positions Requested............................ IHS - 181

B. Detail of Permanent Positions...................... IHS - 183

C. Advisory and Assistance Services................... IHS - 185

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

Federal Funds

General and special funds:

[INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES]

[For expenses necessary to carry out the Act of August 5, 1954 (68 Stat. 674), the Indian Self-Determination Act, the Indian Health Care Improvement Act, and titles III and XXV and sections 208 and 338G of the Public Health Service Act with respect to the Indian Health Service, including hire of passenger motor vehicles and aircraft; purchase of reprints; purchase and erection of portable buildings; payments for telephone service in private residences in the field, when authorized under regulations approved by the Secretary; $1,185,910,000, including $16,000,000 for conversion of tribal contracts and agreements to a calendar year basis as authorized by section 204(d)(1) of Public Law 100-472 (100 Stat. 2291), together with payments received during the fiscal year pursuant to 42 U.S.C. 300cc-2 for services furnished by the Indian Health Service: *Provided*, That notwithstanding any other law or regulation, funds transferred from the Department of Housing and Urban Development to the Indian Health Service shall be administered under Public Law 86-121 (the Indian Sanitation Facilities Act): *Provided further*, That funds made available to tribes and tribal organizations through grants and contracts authorized by the Indian Self-Determination and

Education Assistance Act of 1975 (88 Stat. 2203; 25 U.S.C. 450), shall remain available until expended: *Provided further*, That $17,000,000 shall remain available until expended, for the Indian Catastrophic Health Emergency Fund and contract medical care: *Provided further*, That of the funds provided, $3,000,000 shall be used to carry out a loan repayment program under which Federal, State, and commercial-type educational loans for physicians and other health professionals will be repaid at a rate not to exceed $25,000 per year of obligated service in return for full-time clinical service: *Provided further*, That funds provided in this Act may be used for one-year contracts and grants which are to be performed in two fiscal years, so long as the total obligation is recorded in the year for which the funds are appropriated: *Provided further*, That the amounts collected by the Secretary of Health and Human Services under the authority of title IV of the Indian Health Care Improvement Act shall be available for two fiscal years after the fiscal year in which they were collected, for the purpose of achieving compliance with the applicable conditions and requirements of titles XVIII and XIX of the Social Security Act (exclusive of planning, design, construction of new facilities, or major renovation of existing Indian Health Service facilities): *Provided further*, That of the funds provided, $2,500,000 shall remain available until expended, for the Indian Self-Determination Fund, which shall be available for the transitional costs of initial or expanded tribal contracts, grants or cooperative agreements with the Indian Health Service under the provisions of the Indian Self-Determination Act: *Provided further*, That funding contained herein, and in any earlier appropriations Acts for scholarship programs under section 103 of the Indian Health Care Improvement Act and section 338G of the Public Health Service Act with respect to the Indian Health Service shall remain available for expenditure until September 30, 1991: *Provided further*, That amounts received by tribes and tribal organizations under title IV of the Indian Health Care Improvement Act and Public Law 100-713 shall be reported and accounted for and available to the receiving tribes and tribal organizations until expended.] 1/

Explanation of Language Changes

1/ The FY 1990 appropriation language is deleted to reflect the proposal for dual appropriation languages in FY 1991 for Federal and Tribal Administrations.

TRIBAL HEALTH ADMINISTRATION

For expenses of tribes and tribal organizations necessary to carry out the Act of August 5, 1954 (68 Stat. 674), the Indian Self-Determination Act, the Indian Health Care Improvement Act, and titles III and XXVI 1/ and section 208 of the Public Health Service Act with respect to Indian health services, including the full funding of the indirect and contract support costs of tribal contracts, 2/ and for provision of domestic and community sanitation facilities for Indians; 3/ $404,287,000, together with payments received pursuant to 42 U.S.C. 300cc-2 for services furnished, to remain available until expended: Provided, That notwithstanding any other law or regulation, funds transferred from the Department of Housing and Urban Development to this appropriation shall be administered under Public Law 86-121 (the Indian Sanitation Facilities Act): Provided further, That funds made available to tribes and tribal organizations by this Act pursuant to the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act of 1975 (88 Stat. 2203; 25 U.S.C. 450), shall remain available until expended: Provided further, That of the funds provided, up to $3,000,000 may be used for loan repayments under which educational loans for physicians and other health professionals may be repaid at a rate not to exceed $25,000 per year of obligated service in return for full-time clinical service: Provided further, That funds may be transferred from and to the "Tribal Health Administration," and "Federal Indian Health Administration," appropriations for the purposes of the receiving *appropriation:* 4/ *Provided further, That amounts received by tribes and tribal organizations under Title IV of the Indian Health Care Improvement Act and P.L. 100-713 shall be reported and accounted for and available to the receiving tribes and tribal organizations until expended. (Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.)*

[To fight the war on drugs, $7,250,000, for the Indian Health Service to increase after care services and provide for family outpatient care, expand community education and training efforts with a focus on prevention and training of program staff, expand alcoholism and drug abuse prevention efforts for adolescents through urban Indian health programs, and provide contract health services for substance abuse treatment and rehabilitation of Indian youth and their families.] *(Department of Transportation and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.)* 5/

Explanation of Language Changes

1/ Technical Change. Title XXV of the Public Health Service Act has been renumbered as Title XXVI of the PHS Act by Section 2620 of Public Law 100-690, Amendments to the Omnibus Drug Bill, Anti-Drug Abuse Act of 1986.

2/ This provision clarifies that the full funding of the indirect and contract support costs of tribal contracts are included in the appropriation as authorized by Section 106(a)(2) of the Self-Determination Amendments of 1988.

3/ Provides domestic and community sanitation facilities for Indians, to be administered under Public Law 96-121, the Indian Sanitation Facilities Act.

4/ This provision allows the transfer of funds between the "Tribal Health Administration" and "Federal Indian Health Administration" appropriations to fulfill unanticipated self-determination requirements. The IHS will notify Congress thirty (30) days in advance prior to any funds being transferred between said appropriations.

5/ This provision not required in FY 1991.

FEDERAL INDIAN HEALTH ADMINISTRATION

For expenses necessary to carry out the Act of August 5, 1954 (68 Stat. 674), the Indian Self-Determination Act, the Indian Health Care Improvement Act, and titles III and XXVI 1/ and section 208 and 338I 2/ of the Public Health Service Act with respect to Indian health services, including the full funding of the indirect and contract support costs of tribal contracts, 3/ hire of passenger motor vehicles and aircraft; purchase of reprints; purchase and erection of portable buildings; payments for telephone service in private residences in the field, when authorized under regulations approved by the Secretary of Health and Human Services; preparations of plans, specifications and drawings, purchases of trailers; and for provision of domestic and community sanitation facilities for Indians; 4/ $874,637,000, of which $17,000,000 shall remain available until expended for the Indian Catastrophic Health Emergency Fund and contract medical care; together with payments received pursuant to 42 U.S.C. 300cc-2 for services furnished, to remain available until expended: Provided, That notwithstanding any other law or regulation, funds transferred from the Department of Housing and Urban Development to this account shall be administered under Public Law 86-121 (the Indian Sanitation Facilities Act); Provided further, That funds provided in this Act may be used for one-year contracts and grants which are to be performed in two fiscal years, so long as the total obligation is recorded in the year for which the funds are appropriated: Provided further, That amounts received by Indian Health service units under Title IV of the

Indian Health Care Improvement Act and P.L. 100-713 shall remain available until expended: 5/ Provided further, That funding contained in this and prior appropriations Acts for scholarship programs under sections 103 and 104 of the Indian Health Care Improvement Act and section 338I 2/ of the Public Health Service with respect to the Indian Health Service shall remain available until September 30, 1992.

Explanation of Language Changes

1/ Technical Change. Title XXV of the Public Health Service (PHS) Act has been renumbered as Title XXVI of the PHS Act by Section 2620 of Public Law (P.L.) 100-690, Amendments to the Omnibus Drug Bill, Anti-Drug Abuse Act of 1986.

2/ Technical Change. Section 338I of the PHS Act has been repealed by Section 104b of P.L. 100-713, the Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988.

3/ This provision clarifies that the full funding of the indirect and contract support costs of tribal contracts are included in the appropriation as authorized by Section 106(a)(2) of the Self-Determination Amendments of 1988.

4/ Provides domestic and community sanitation facilities for Indians, to be administered under Public Law 96-121, the Indian Sanitation Facilities Act.

5/ This provision provides that funds received by the IHS service units under Title IV of the Indian Health Care Improvment Act and P.L. 100-713 shall be available until expended.

ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS, [INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE] *TRIBAL HEALTH ADMINISTRATION AND FEDERAL INDIAN HEALTH ADMINISTRATION*

Appropriations in this Act to [the Indian Health Service] *"Tribal Health Administration" and "Federal Indian Health Administration"* 1/ *shall be* available for salaries and expenses[,]: *Provided, That funds for the Federal Indian Health Administration* 2/ shall be available for services as authorized by 5 U.S.C. 3109 but at rates not to exceed the per diem equivalent to the rate for GS-18, and for uniforms or allowances therefor as authorized by law (5 U.S.C. 5901-5902), and for expenses of attendance at meetings which are concerned with the functions or activities for which the appropriation is made or which will contribute to improved conduct, supervision, or management of those functions or activities[: *Provided*, That none of the funds appropriated under this Act to the Indian Health Service] *but no funds* 3/ shall be available for the initial lease of permanent structures without advance provision therefor in appropriations Acts: *Provided further*, That non-Indian patients may be extended health care at all tribally administered or Indian Health Service facilities, if such care can be extended without impairing the ability of the facility to fulfill its responsibility to provide health care to Indians served by such facilities and subject to such reasonable charges as the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall prescribe, the proceeds of which, together with funds recovered under the Federal Medical Care Recovery Act (42 U.S.C. 2651-53), shall be deposited in the fund established by sections 401 and 402 of the Indian Health Care Improvement Act or

in the case of tribally administered facilities, shall be retained by the tribal organization without fiscal year limitation: *Provided further*, That funds appropriated to [the Indian Health Service] *"Tribal Health Administration" and "Federal Indian Health Administration"* 1/ in this Act, except those used for administrative and program direction purposes, shall not be subject to limitations directed at curtailing travel and transportation: *Provided further*, That with the exception of [Indian Health Service] *Federal Indian Health Administration* 2/ units which currently have a billing policy, the [Indian Health Service] *Federal Indian Health Administration* 2/ shall not initiate any further action to bill Indians in order to collect from third-party payers nor to charge those Indians who may have the economic means to pay unless and until such time as Congress has agreed upon a specific policy to do so and has directed the [Indian Health Service] *Federal Indian Health Administration* 2/ to implement such a policy[: *Provided further*, That personnel ceilings may not be imposed on the Indian Health Service nor may any action be taken to reduce the full-time equivalent level of the Indian Health Service by the elimination of temporary employees by reduction in force, hiring freeze or any other means without the review and approval of the Committees on Appropriations: *Provided further*, That none of the funds made available to the Indian Health Service in this Act shall be used to implement the final rule published in the Federal Register on September 16, 1987, by the Department of Health and Human Services, relating to eligibility for the health care services of

the Indian Health Service until the Indian Health Service has submitted a budget request reflecting the increased costs associated with the proposed final rule, and such request has been included in an appropriations Act and enacted into law]. 4/ (*Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.*)

Explanation of Language Changes

1/ This provision identifies the two new services appropriations proposed in FY 1991.

2/ This provision specifically addresses the newly established Federal Indian Health Administration.

3/ This provision specifies no funds shall be available for the initial lease of permanent structures without advance provision therefor in appropriations Acts.

4/ These provisions not required in FY 1991.

Indian Health Service

Amounts Available for Obligation

	1989 Appropriation Adjusted	1990 Appropriation	1991 Estimate
Appropriation (Services)..........	$1,020,106,000	$1,193,160,000 1/	$1,278,924,000
Reappropriation....................	219,000 2/	—	—
Sequester Order P.L. 101-239......	—	-14,823,000	—
Permanent Authority: (Operations and Maintenance of Quarters 75X5071)..........	—	3,000,000 3/	3,000,000 3/
Subtotal, Adjusted Budget Authority	1,020,325,000	1,181,337,000	1,281,924,000
Receipts and Reimbursements from:			
"Federal Funds"..................	8,789,000	5,100,000	5,100,000
"Trust Funds"....................	35,118,000	38,000,000	40,000,000
"Non-Federal Sources"............	42,263,000	52,000,000	86,000,000
Subtotal......................	86,170,000 3/4/	95,100,000 4/6/	131,100,000 4/6/
Recovery of Prior Year Obligations	1,311,000	—	—
Unoblig. Balance Start of Year....	20,011,000	15,998,000	+1,461,000
Unoblig. Balance End of Year......	-15,998,000	-1,461,000	-1,461,000
Unoblig. Balance Lapsing..........	-1,514,000	—	—
Total Amount Available for Obligation..................	$1,110,305,000 5/	$1,290,974,000	$1,413,024,000

1/ Include $7,250,000 for expenses necessary to carry out sections 2212, 2213, 2215, and 2217 of Public Law 100-690, Amendment to Indian Alcohol and Substance Abuse Prevention Treatment Act of 1986.

2/ Funds restored from prior year for the Indian Health Manpower activity to continue the availability of funds that would have otherwise expired.

3/ In 1985, a new account (75X5071) was established for collection of personnel quarters reimbursements ($3,859,639 was collected in 1989). It is estimated that $3 million will be collected into this account in FY 1990 and FY 1991. The Operations and Maintenance of Quarters account is shown on this schedule as permanent authority for FY 1990 and FY 1991.

4/ Included in totals are reimbursements collected for medical care received by non-beneficiaries at Indian health facilities, intra-agency agreements among the National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Diabetes, and Digestive and Kidney Disease (NIDDK), and a number of smaller agreements with other agencies.

5/ Includes $622,985 collected through the consolidated working fund, DHHS research grants.

6/ Does not include reimbursements listed as permanent authority for operation and maintenance of quarters of $3 million in FY 1990 and 1991.

Indian Health Service

Summary of Changes

Appropriation:	FTEs	
1990 Budget Authority	12,279	$1,162,337,000 1/2/
1991 Estimate, Budget Authority	12,444	1,278,924,000 1/
Net change	+165	+$116,587,000

Funded From Direct Appropriation:	FY 1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise	—	N/A	--	+$12,195,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise	—	N/A	—	+4,113,000
3. Within Grade Promotions	—	N/A	—	+5,720,000
4. FY 1991 Employer Contribs. to Federal Employees' Retirement System	—	$15,773,000	—	+786,000
5. One Extra Paid Day	—	290,379,000	—	+1,113,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transp. of Things	—	28,508,000	—	+941,000
7. Increased Cost of Patient Travel	—	9,567,000	—	+316,000
8. Increased Cost of Rents, Commun. & Utilities	—	22,398,000	—	+738,000
9. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants	—	648,460,000	—	+35,797,000
10. Increased Cost of Other Contractual Services	—	31,287,000	—	+1,033,000
11. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment	—	16,298,000	—	+607,000
12. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies	—	78,464,000	—	+3,938,000
13. Increased Cost of Printing	—	1,466,000	—	+49,000
14. Increased Cost of Lands and Structures	—	122,000	—	+4,000
15. Increased Cost of Providing Manpower Scholarships	—	9,540,000	—	+299,000
16. Increased Payments to PHS Service & Supply Fund	—	18,485,000	—	+991,000
17. Increased Payments to Working Capital Fund	—	2,799,000	—	+313,000
18. Information Resources Management Systems	—	N/A	+37	+1,650,000

	FY 1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in: continued				
19. Annualization of Staffing/ Operating Costs (Replacement Facilities):				
Toppenish, WA(Health Center)..	9	$373,000	+42	+$1,751,000
Wolf Point, MT(Health Center).	19	666,000	+4	+218,000
Total Built-in Increases......	—	—	+83	+$72,572,000
Increases:				
Program:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 pay raise......................	—	N/A	—	+$12,345,000
2. Staffing/Operating Cost of Replacement Facilities:				
Fort Hall, ID Health Center....	—	N/A	+33	+1,350,000
Kyle, SD Health Center.........	31	1,174,000	+9	+405,000
Total Staffing..............	—	N/A	+42	+$1,755,000
3. Human Immunodeficiency Virus.....	—	N/A 3/	—	+1,013,000
4. Tribal Contract Support..........	—	N/A	—	+22,600,000
5. Information Resource Management Systems..........................	—	N/A	—	+5,815,000
6. Automation User Support..........	—	N/A	—	339,000
7. Manpower Increase................	—	9,839,000	—	+2,761,000
8. Tribal Management Increase.......	—	2,562,000	—	+1,485,000
9. Direct Operations (QMI)..........	669	44,484,000	+40	+2,000,000
Total Program Increases.........	—	—	+82	+$50,113,000
Decreases:				
Program:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise.........................	—	N/A	—	-$6,098,000
Total Net Change (Budget Authority)......................	—	—	+165	+$116,587,000

1/ Excludes $3,000,000 for operations and maintenance of quarters (75X5071).

2/ For the purpose of comparing FY 1990 and 1991 budget authority, the FY 1990 appropriation does not include $16,000,000 for the non-recurring costs of tribal contract conversion.

3/ Report language accompanying FY 1990 Labor, Health and Human Services, and Education, and related agencies appropriations indicated that up to $992,000 of PHS/HIV funds could be made available to IHS.

Indian Health Service
Obligations by Activity

	1990 Appropriation		1991 Estimate	
Clinical Services:	FTEs*	Amount	FTEs*	Amount
IH & Tribal Health Delivery Systems......	10,785	$901,138,000 1/	10,900	$995,101,000 2/
(Budget Authority)....	—	(793,425,000)	--	(864,086,000)
Contract Care...........	16	238,035,000 4/	16	250,794,000
(Budget Authority)......	—	(237,647,000)	—	(250,794,000)
TOTAL.................	10,801	1,139,173,000	10,916	1,245,895,000
(Budget Authority)....	—	(1,031,072,000)	--	(1,114,880,000)
Preventive Health.........	809	77,715,000 3/	819	83,333,000 3/
(Budget Authority)........	—	(77,630,000)	—	(83,248,000)
Urban Health Projects.....	—	13,049,000	—	14,129,000
(Budget Authority)........	—	(13,049,000)	--	(14,129,000)
Indian Health Manpower....	—	9,748,000 5/	—	12,600,000
(Budget Authority)........	—	(9,540,000)	—	(12,600,000)
Tribal Management.........		2,562,000	—	4,131,000
(Budget Authority)........	—	(2,562,000)	—	(4,131,000)
Direct Operations.........	669	44,484,000	709	49,936,000
(Budget Authority)........	—	(44,484,000)	—	(49,936,000)
Total Obligations.....	—	1,286,731,000	—	1,410,024,000
(Budget Authority)........	12,279	(1,178,337,000)	12,444	(1,278,924,000)
Permanent Authority: Operation and Maintenance of Quarters (Reimburs)...	--	4,243,000	—	3,000,000
(Budget Authority)........	—	(3,000,000)	—	(3,000,000)
Total Obligations.........	—	$1,290,974.000	--	$1,413,024,000
(Budget Authority)........	12,279	($1,181,337,000)	12,444	($1,281,924,000)

*Excludes 60 FTEs funded from regular reimbursements (intra-agency) agreements in 1990 and 1991.

1/ Includes Medicare/Medicaid reimbursements of $80,000,000; intra-agency agreements of $7,015,000; unobligated balance start-of-year (1990) for Medicare/Medicaid of $12,698,000 and $8,000,000 proposed collections of reimbursements from private insurers. Excludes $3,000,000 reimbursements listed below as permanent authority for operation and maintenance of quarters.

2/ Includes Medicare/Medicaid reimbursement of $84,000,000 and intra-agency agreement of $7,015,000 and $40,000,000 proposed collections of reimbursements from private insurers.

3/ Includes $85,000 in reimbursements from inter-agency agreements.

4/ Includes $388,000 unobligated balance start of year (1990) for Indian Catastrophic Emergency Fund (75X0390).

5/ Includes $208,000 unobligated balance start of year (1990) for Manpower Scholarships.

Indian Health Service

Budget Authority by Object

	1989 Actual Obligations	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Personnel Compensation:			
Full-Time Permanent............	$263,739,000	$285,713,000	$312,716,000
Other than Full-Time Permanent.	16,793,000	16,793,000	17,508,000
Other Personnel Compensation...	20,720,000	20,720,000	21,561,000
Total Personnel Compensation.	301,252,000	323,226,000	351,785,000
Personnel Benefits...............	81,739,000	88,425,000	95,954,000
Travel and Transportation of Persons......................	28,289,000	29,995,000	31,587,000
Transportation of Things..........	10,355,000	10,861,000	11,233,000
Rents, Communications and Utilities:			
Rental Payments to GSA.........	4,788,000	6,116,000	6,116,000
Communications, Utilities, and Miscellaneous Charges....	25,215,000	26,941,000	27,878,000
Printing and Reproduction........	1,017,000	1,006,000	1,059,000
Other Services....................	463,337,000	563,670,000	609,135,000
Supplies and Materials...........	69,580,000	82,537,000	87,116,000
Equipment........................	11,496,000	16,249,000	22,720,000
Land and Structures..............	191,000	183,000	187,000
Grants, Subsidies and Contributions..........................	22,940,000	29,128,000	34,154,000
Insurance Claims and Indemnities.	60,000	---	---
Total Budget Authority.........	$1,020,259,000 1/ 2/	$1,178,337,000 2/ 3/ 4/	$1,278,924,000 2/ 3/

1/ Represents actual FY 1989 obligations excluding $3,905,122 for operation and maintenance of quarters.

2/ Excludes reimbursement obligations in FY 1989 of $86,140,786 (actual); FY 1990 estimate of $107,798,000; and FY 1991 estimate of $131,100,000.

3/ Excludes $3,000,000 for operation and maintenance of quarters shown in the FY 1991 President's Budget as permanent authority becoming available during FY 1990 and 1991 without new action by Congress.

4/ Excludes $1,839,000 in unobligated balances carried into FY 1990.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

FTEs by Activity

Activity	FY 1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Clinical Services:		
IH and Tribal Health Delivery..........	10,785	10,900
Contract Care..........................	16	16
Total..................................	10,801	10,916
Preventive Health......................	809	819
Direct Operations......................	669	709
Total..................................	12,279	12,444

Indian Health Service

Budget Authority by Activity

(dollars in thousands)

	1989 Appropriation Adjusted	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request
Hospital & Health Clinic Program	$578,939 4/	$694,173 1/	$757,988 1/
Maintenance and Repair	11,756	12,025	12,420
Dental Services	31,485	32,939	36,000
Mental Health	13,091	21,244	22,798
Alcoholism	30,684 4/	33,044	34,880
Contract Care	217,454 2/	237,647 3/	250,794 3/
Total Clinical Services	$883,409	$1,031,072	$1,114,880
Sanitation	$24,654	$25,571	$27,576
Public Health Nursing	14,467	15,025	16,462
Health Education	4,551 4/	4,822	5,196
Community Health Representatives	29,061 4/	31,085	32,826
Hepatitis B and Haemophilus Influenzae Immunization Program (Alaska)	417	1,127	1,188
Total Preventive Health	$73,150	$77,630	$83,248
Urban Health Projects	$9,962	$13,049	$14,129
Indian Health Manpower	7,896	9,540	12,600
Tribal Management	3,218	2,562	4,131
Direct Operations	42,471	44,484	49,936
Subtotal, Appropriation	$1,020,106	$1,178,337	$1,278,924
Reappropriation	219	—	—
Permanent Authority: Operation and Maintenance of Quarters	—	3,000	3,000
Adjusted Appropriation	$1,020,325	$1,181,337	$1,281,924

1/ Includes $2,500,000 to remain available until expended for the Indian Self-Determination Fund.

2/ Includes $10,000,000 for the Indian Catastrophic Health Emergency Fund and $5,000,000 of Contract Medical Care Funds to remain available until expended.

3/ Includes $12,000,000 for the Indian Catastrophic Health Emergency Fund and $5,000,000 of Contract Medical Care to remain available until expended.

4/ Adjusted to include funds reprogrammed to the Contract Health Services activity.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES
APPROPRIATION HISTORY

	Budget Estimate to Congress	House Allowance	Senate Allowance	Appropriation
1981	$591,319,000	$593,619,000	$592,332,000	$594,119,000
Supplemental	—	—	—	120,000
Pay Costs	12,556,000	—	—	12,556,000
Rescission	—	—	—	-86,000
1982	626,819,000	629,484,000	606,905,000	599,645,000
Pay Costs	—	—	—	18,160,000
1983	613,280,000	645,305,000	623,724,000	645,583,000
Supplemental	—	—	—	19,359,000
Pay Costs	14,274,000	—	—	14,274,000
1984	652,506,000	801,798,000	734,651,000	770,408,000
Pay Costs	—	—	—	1,500,000
Pay Costs (by transfer)	—	—	—	6,904,000
1985	741,950,000	817,992,000	796,243,000	793,728,000
Pay Costs	—	—	—	7,000,000
Rescission	—	—	—	-161,000
1986	764,133,000	836,483,000	802,684,000	818,194,000
Sequester	—	—	—	-10,715,000
Supplemental	—	—	—	13,500,000
1987	719,928,000	836,336,000	833,106,000	841,809,000
Pay Costs	11,686,000	—	—	11,686,000
Supplemental	—	—	—	16,200,000
1988	794,385,000	943,388,000	947,235,000	943,297,000
1989	984,322,000	1,016,667,000	1,014,536,000	1,020,106,000
1990	1,083,339,000 1/	1,189,330,000	1,160,093,000	1,193,160,000 2/
Sequester	—	—	—	-14,823,000
1991	1,278,924,000 3/			

1/ Includes request for Federal Indian Health Administration of $817,314,000 and $266,085,000 for Tribal Health Administration.

2/ Includes funding of $7,250,000 for Sections 2212, 2213, 2215 (Public Law 100-690).

3/ Includes request for Federal Indian Health Administration of $874,637,000 and $404,287,000 for Tribal Health Administration.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES
ALLOCATIONS AS OF SEPTEMBER 30, 1989
FY 1989

ACTIVITY/SUB-ACTIVITY	ABERDEEN	ALASKA	ALBUQUERQUE	ALBUQ-WEST	BEMIDJI	BILLINGS	CALIFORNIA	NASHVILLE
CLINICAL SERVICES:								
HOSPITALS & CLINICS	$46,783,670	$102,120,190	$35,977,170	$3,937,040	$25,228,970	$27,555,970	$28,878,870	$22,865,170
DENTAL	2,986,700	3,812,600	2,832,000	216,000	1,145,500	2,209,700	379,000	797,000
MENTAL HEALTH	1,616,400	1,286,400	1,154,400	463,700	485,000	1,170,600	280,400	406,900
ALCOHOLISM	3,241,200	2,104,000	2,547,800	0	2,232,900	2,270,200	3,368,300	1,579,200
MAINTENANCE & REPAIR	1,165,000	3,195,000	857,000	0	218,500	648,000	0	293,500
REIMBURSEMENTS	90,600	1,384,100	174,500	20,250	19,400	79,600	11,500	56,440
TOTAL HEALTH DELIVERY	$55,883,570	$113,902,290	$43,542,870	$4,636,990	$29,330,270	$33,934,070	$32,918,070	$25,998,210
CONTRACT CARE	25,018,000	24,179,700	13,003,600	0	12,113,000	21,665,900	2,204,200	9,410,400
TOTAL CLINICAL SERVICES	$80,901,570	$138,081,990	$56,546,470	$4,636,990	$41,443,270	$55,599,970	$35,122,270	$35,408,610
PREVENTIVE HEALTH:								
SANITATION	$2,097,500	$4,543,400	$1,568,700	$163,000	$1,648,500	$1,286,500	$1,158,300	$718,700
PUBLIC HEALTH NURSING	1,844,000	411,300	1,411,100	12,000	465,800	1,027,100	146,500	297,900
HEALTH EDUCATION	470,000	503,800	538,400	0	174,200	413,200	89,300	101,100
COMMUNITY HEALTH REPS	3,600,600	2,093,400	1,789,700	0	2,020,600	2,304,900	1,075,900	1,527,700
IMMUNIZATION	0	417,000	0	0	0	0	0	0
TOTAL PREVENTIVE HEALTH	$8,012,100	$7,968,900	$5,307,900	$175,000	$4,309,100	$5,031,700	$2,470,000	$2,645,400
URBAN PROJECTS	464,300	0	358,300	0	1,718,400	626,400	2,517,900	305,700
INDIAN HLTH MANPOWER	272,000	154,000	63,000	5,000	23,000	80,000	0	37,000
TRIBAL MANAGEMENT	0	0	0	0	103,300	149,700	0	4,900
DIRECT OPERATIONS	2,047,500	2,660,700	1,024,500	2,359,100	984,400	1,478,000	952,700	1,283,000
TOTAL ALLOWANCES ISSUED	$91,697,470	$148,865,590	$63,300,170	$7,176,090	$48,581,470	$62,965,770	$41,062,870	$39,684,610

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES
ALLOCATIONS AS OF SEPTEMBER 30, 1989
FY 1989

ACTIVITY/SUB-ACTIVITY	NAVAJO	OKLAHOMA	PHOENIX	PORTLAND	TUCSON	HDQTRS 1/	ALLOCATION	APPROPRIATION
CLINICAL SERVICES:								
HOSPITALS & CLINICS	$82,752,370	$68,868,570	$66,525,870	$21,523,570	$10,790,270	$32,531,300	$576,439,000	$576,439,000
DENTAL	5,711,300	5,771,000	3,170,000	1,989,000	430,000	35,200	31,485,000	31,485,000
MENTAL HEALTH	1,848,100	1,424,600	1,486,600	1,175,300	273,700	18,900	13,091,000	13,091,000
ALCOHOLISM	2,636,800	2,637,500	2,456,300	5,023,800	545,200	48,800	30,684,000	30,684,000
MAINTENANCE & REPAIR	1,896,600	1,546,100	1,413,000	261,900	256,000	5,400	11,756,000	11,756,000
REIMBURSEMENTS	685,900	222,290	2,641,450	312,090	194,400	668,500	6,561,020	6,561,020
TOTAL HEALTH DELIVERY	$95,531,070	$80,470,060	$77,693,220	$30,285,660	$12,489,570	$33,400,100	$670,016,020	$670,016,020
CONTRACT CARE	23,664,200	22,365,500	18,163,000	22,966,200	5,491,300	2,209,000	202,454,000	202,454,000
TOTAL CLINICAL SERVICES	$119,195,270	$102,835,560	$95,856,220	$53,251,860	$17,980,870	$35,609,100	$872,470,020	$872,470,020
PREVENTIVE HEALTH:								
SANITATION	$4,047,200	$2,669,000	$2,634,400	$1,400,700	$548,200	$169,900	$24,654,000	$24,654,000
PUBLIC HEALTH NURSING	3,412,700	1,806,500	2,361,300	817,200	349,300	104,300	14,467,000	14,467,000
HEALTH EDUCATION	686,400	482,800	729,300	357,900	0	4,600	4,551,000	4,551,000
COMMUNITY HEALTH REPS	3,450,400	4,412,700	3,154,100	2,312,400	1,250,000	68,600	29,061,000	29,061,000
IMMUNIZATION	0	0	0	0	0	0	417,000	417,000
TOTAL PREVENTIVE HEALTH	$11,596,700	$9,371,000	$8,879,100	$4,888,200	$2,147,500	$347,400	$73,150,000	$73,150,000
URBAN PROJECTS	0	824,500	660,700	1,930,800	205,000	350,000	9,962,000	9,962,000
INDIAN HLTH MANPOWER	80,000	108,000	98,000	29,000	24,000	6,923,000	7,896,000	7,896,000
TRIBAL MANAGEMENT	0	292,400	179,600	128,000	275,000	2,085,100	3,218,000	3,218,000
DIRECT OPERATIONS	2,226,400	2,170,400	2,018,400	1,678,500	1,013,800	20,573,600	42,471,000	42,471,000
TOTAL ALLOWANCES ISSUED	$133,098,370	$115,601,860	$107,692,020	$61,906,360	$21,646,170	$65,888,200	$1,009,167,020	$1,009,167,020

1/ Includes $3,545,000 in Hospitals & Clinics for Regional Offices (OES)

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES
ALLOCATIONS AS OF JANUARY 04, 1990
FY 1990

ACTIVITY/SUB-ACTIVITY	ABERDEEN	ALASKA	ALBUQUERQUE	ALBUQ-WEST	BEMIDJI	BILLINGS	CALIFORNIA	NASHVILLE
CLINICAL SERVICES:								
HOSPITALS & CLINICS	$47,167,900	$102,135,400	$33,737,700	$4,273,100	$23,904,500	$25,804,100	$27,837,300	$22,347,800
DENTAL	3,163,900	3,374,300	2,591,200	0	988,500	2,009,600	369,300	693,200
MENTAL HEALTH	3,329,900	1,043,000	1,066,200	503,900	448,000	1,163,000	247,000	377,600
ALCOHOLISM	3,147,400	2,471,500	2,316,800	0	2,141,000	2,148,000	3,272,000	1,505,100
MAINTENANCE & REPAIR	304,000	836,300	643,400	0	178,900	382,100	0	79,800
REIMBURSEMENTS	0	270,000	0	0	0	10,000	0	0
TOTAL HEALTH DELIVERY	$57,113,100	$110,130,500	$40,355,300	$4,777,000	$27,660,900	$31,516,800	$31,725,600	$25,003,500
CONTRACT CARE	23,886,200	23,137,800	12,217,800	0	11,047,000	21,038,600	1,627,800	9,090,300
TOTAL CLINICAL SERVICES	$80,999,300	$133,268,300	$52,573,100	$4,777,000	$38,707,900	$52,555,400	$33,353,400	$34,093,800
PREVENTIVE HEALTH:								
SANITATION	$1,817,000	$3,714,000	$1,459,900	$0	$1,507,300	$1,199,200	$1,042,800	$663,600
PUBLIC HEALTH NURSING	1,849,300	368,600	1,222,900	0	406,500	1,075,700	144,700	99,800
HEALTH EDUCATION	451,000	486,700	463,000	0	100,000	433,700	83,000	1,606,300
COMMUNITY HEALTH REPS	3,562,100	1,910,400	1,745,100	0	2,002,900	2,259,400	940,900	0
IMMUNIZATION	0	1,112,900	0	0	0	0	0	
TOTAL PREVENTIVE HEALTH	$7,679,400	$7,592,600	$4,890,900	$0	$4,016,700	$4,968,000	$2,211,400	$2,663,900
URBAN PROJECTS	116,100	0	89,600	0	429,600	156,600	629,500	76,400
INDIAN HLTH MANPOWER	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
TRIBAL MANAGEMENT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
DIRECT OPERATIONS	1,947,700	2,584,600	995,200	2,230,400	1,030,500	1,603,800	940,800	1,247,200
TOTAL ALLOWANCES ISSUED	$90,742,500	$143,445,500	$58,548,800	$7,007,400	$44,184,700	$59,283,800	$37,135,100	$38,081,300

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES
ALLOCATIONS AS OF JANUARY 04, 1990
FY 1990

ACTIVITY/SUB-ACTIVITY	NAVAJO	OKLAHOMA	PHOENIX	PORTLAND	TUCSON	HDQTRS 1/	ALLOCATION	APPROPRIATION
CLINICAL SERVICES:								
HOSPITALS & CLINICS	$75,340,500	$65,858,200	$60,617,500	$20,711,500	$9,611,700	$26,981,800	$546,329,000	$691,704,000
DENTAL	5,238,700	5,213,000	2,771,000	1,690,600	399,900	0	28,503,200	32,939,000
MENTAL HEALTH	1,755,500	1,359,300	1,476,300	1,162,600	254,200	0	14,186,500	21,244,000
ALCOHOLISM	2,550,200	2,545,000	2,372,200	4,474,600	499,900	0	29,443,700	33,044,000
MAINTENANCE & REPAIR	1,385,300	1,004,500	1,047,000	212,800	59,600	0	6,133,700	12,025,000
REIMBURSEMENTS	0	0	70,000	0	0	0	350,000	47,100,000
TOTAL HEALTH DELIVERY	$86,270,200	$75,980,000	$68,354,000	$28,252,100	$10,825,300	$26,981,800	$624,946,100	$838,056,000
CONTRACT CARE	21,337,300	20,693,000	16,638,100	22,576,300	5,129,500	0	188,419,700	220,860,000
TOTAL CLINICAL SERVICES	$107,607,500	$96,673,000	$84,992,100	$50,828,400	$15,954,800	$26,981,800	$813,365,800	$1,058,916,000
PREVENTIVE HEALTH:								
SANITATION	$3,792,000	$2,583,300	$2,370,000	$1,289,300	$450,300	$0	$21,888,700	$25,571,000
PUBLIC HEALTH NURSING	3,339,600	1,718,300	2,191,400	804,900	320,200	0	13,736,300	15,025,000
HEALTH EDUCATION	677,300	418,900	668,100	326,200	0	0	4,207,700	4,822,000
COMMUNITY HEALTH REPS	3,382,700	4,371,900	3,111,300	2,503,800	1,128,000	0	28,524,800	31,085,000
IMMUNIZATION	0	0	0	0	0	0	1,112,900	1,127,000
TOTAL PREVENTIVE HEALTH	$11,191,600	$9,092,400	$8,340,800	$4,924,200	$1,898,500	$0	$69,470,400	$77,630,000
URBAN PROJECTS	0	206,100	165,200	482,800	51,300	0	2,403,200	13,049,000
INDIAN HLTH MANPOWER	0	0	0	0	0	8,364,700	8,364,700	9,540,000
TRIBAL MANAGEMENT	0	0	0	0	0	2,562,000	2,562,000	2,562,000
DIRECT OPERATIONS	2,188,700	2,395,500	2,091,000	1,750,100	996,200	19,973,100	41,974,800	44,484,000
TOTAL ALLOWANCES ISSUED	$120,987,800	$108,367,000	$95,589,100	$57,985,500	$18,900,800	$57,881,600	$938,140,900	$1,206,181,000

1/ Includes $3,492,800 in Hospitals & Clinics for Regional Offices (OES)

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

APPROPRIATION TITLE: Indian Health Service

Personnel Summary

	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate	Increase or Decrease
Total number of permanent positions.....	12,409 1/	12,489 1/	+80
Full-time equivalent of other positions.	1,530	1,530	---
Total compensable work-years............	12,339 2/	12,504 2/	+165
Average GS grade........................	7.69	7.70	0.01
Average GS salary.......................	$27,045	$27,330	+$285
Average salary of ungraded positions....	$25,203	$25,448	+$245

1/ Includes 54 positions for reimbursement agreements with other agencies.
2/ Includes 60 FTEs for reimbursement agreements with other agencies.

FY 1989 Crosswalk
Budget Authority
($000)

Old Sub-Sub Activity	Federal Indian Health Administration								Tribal Health Administration								
	Federal Hospitals & Clinics	Urban Health	Preventive Health	Indian Health Manpower	Federal Admini-stration	Human Immuno-deficiency Virus	Personnel Quarters Maintenance	Total Federal Health Admini-stration	Tribal Hospitals & Clinics	Urban Health	Tribal Preventive Health	Management Training	Tribal Indirect Costs	Tribal Contract Support	Personnel Quarters Maintenance	Total Tribal Health Admini-stration	FY 1989 Total Request
Hospitals & Clinics	418,417	0	0	0	0	500	0	418,917	121,360	0	0	0	38,662	0	0	160,022	578,939
Dental Health	26,706	0	0	0	0	0	0	26,706	4,711	0	0	0	68	0	0	4,779	31,485
Mental Health	9,884	0	0	0	0	0	0	9,884	3,131	0	0	0	76	0	0	3,207	13,091
Alcoholism	4,468	0	0	0	0	0	0	4,468	22,520	0	0	0	3,696	0	0	26,216	30,684
Maintenance & Repair	10,175	0	0	0	0	0	0	10,175	1,554	0	0	0	27	0	0	1,581	11,756
Contract Care	170,688	0	0	0	0	0	0	170,688	45,817	0	0	0	949	0	0	46,766	217,454
Total Clinical Services	640,338	0	0	0	0	500	0	640,838	199,093	0	0	0	43,478	0	0	242,571	883,409
Sanitation	0	0	22,886	0	0	0	0	22,886	0	0	1,751	0	17	0	0	1,768	24,654
Public Health Nursing	0	0	11,713	0	0	0	0	11,713	0	0	2,665	0	89	0	0	2,754	14,467
Health Education	0	0	2,542	0	0	0	0	2,542	0	0	1,965	0	44	0	0	2,009	4,551
Community Health Representatives	0	0	911	0	0	0	0	911	0	0	26,047	0	2,103	0	0	28,150	29,061
Immunization	0	0	417	0	0	0	0	417	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	417
Total Preventive Health	0	0	38,469	0	0	0	0	38,469	0	0	32,428	0	2,253	0	0	34,681	73,150
Urban Health Projects	0	1,637	0	0	0	300	0	1,937	0	6,746	0	0	1,279	0	0	8,025	9,962
Indian Health Manpower	0	0	0	7,896	0	0	0	7,896	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	7,896
Tribal Management	0	0	0	0	803	0	0	803	0	0	0	2,406	9	0	0	2,415	3,218
Direct Operations	0	0	0	0	42,471	0	0	42,471	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	42,471
Total	640,338	1,637	38,469	7,896	43,274	800	0	732,414	199,093	6,746	32,428	2,406	47,019	0	0	287,692	1,020,106
Operation & Maintenance of Quarters	0	0	0	0	0	0	2,988	2,988	0	0	0	0	0	0	12	12	3,000 1/
Total Direct Program	640,338	1,637	38,469	7,896	43,274	800	2,988	735,402	199,093	6,746	32,428	2,406	47,019	0	12	287,704	1,023,106

1/ Represents estimated collections of IHS quarters rental reimbursements during FY 1989.

FY 1990 Crosswalk
Budget Authority
($000)

Federal Indian Health Administration | Tribal Health Administration

Old Sub-Sub Activity	Federal Hospitals & Clinics	Urban Health	Preventive Health	Indian Health Manpower	Federal Admini-stration	Human Immuno-deficiency Virus	Personnel Quarters Maintenance	Total Federal Health Admini-stration	Tribal Hospitals & Clinics	Urban Health	Tribal Preventive Health	Management Training	Tribal Indirect Costs	Tribal Contract Support	Personnel Quarters Maintenance	Total Tribal Health Admini-stration	FY 1990 Total Request
Hospitals & Clinics	470,386	0	0	0	0	0	0	470,386	160,637	0	0	0	63,150	0	0	223,787	694,173 1/
Dental Health	28,325	0	0	0	0	0	0	28,325	4,544	0	0	0	70	0	0	4,614	32,939
Mental Health	16,367	0	0	0	0	0	0	16,367	4,799	0	0	0	78	0	0	4,877	21,244
Alcoholism	3,981	0	0	0	0	0	0	3,981	26,005	0	0	0	3,858	0	0	29,863	33,844
Maintenance & Repair	11,242	0	0	0	0	0	0	11,242	756	0	0	0	27	0	0	783	12,025
Contract Care	186,038	0	0	0	0	0	0	186,038	49,819	0	0	0	990	0	0	50,809	236,847
Total Clinical Services	716,339	0	0	0	0	0	0	716,339	246,560	0	0	0	68,173	0	0	314,733	1,031,072
Sanitation	0	0	23,865	0	0	0	0	23,865	0	0	1,689	0	17	0	0	1,706	25,571
Public Health Nursing	0	0	12,122	0	0	0	0	12,122	0	0	2,812	0	91	0	0	2,903	15,025
Health Education	0	0	2,701	0	0	0	0	2,701	0	0	2,077	0	44	0	0	2,121	4,822
Community Health Representatives	0	0	597	0	0	0	0	597	0	0	28,291	0	2,197	0	0	30,488	31,085
Immunization	0	0	1,127	0	0	0	0	1,127	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1,127
Total Preventive Health	0	0	40,412	0	0	0	0	40,412	0	0	34,869	0	2,349	0	0	37,218	77,630
Urban Health Projects	0	359	0	0	0	0	0	359	0	11,361	0	0	1,329	0	0	12,690	13,049
Indian Health Manpower	0	0	0	9,540	0	0	0	9,540	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	9,540
Tribal Management	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2,553	9	0	0	2,562	2,562
Direct Operations	0	0	0	0	44,484	0	0	44,484	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	44,484
Total	716,339	359	40,412	9,540	44,484	0	0	811,134	246,560	11,361	34,869	2,553	71,860	0	0	367,203	1,178,337 2/
Operation & Maintenance of Quarters	0	0	0	0	0	0	2,988	2,988	0	0	0	0	0	0	12	12	3,000 3/
Total Direct Program	716,339	359	40,412	9,540	44,484	0	2,988	814,122	246,560	11,361	34,869	2,553	71,860	0	12	367,215	1,181,337

1/ Includes funding of $7,250,000 for Sections 2212, 2213, 2215, (Public Law 100-690).
2/ Includes Sequestered amount of $16,823,000.
3/ Represents estimated collections of IHS quarters rental reimbursements during FY 1990.

FY 1991 Crosswalk
Budget Authority
($000)

Old Sub-Sub Activity	Federal Indian Health Administration: Federal Hospitals & Clinics	Urban Health	Preventive Health	Indian Health Manpower	Federal Admini-stration	Human Immuno-deficiency Virus	Personnel Quarters Maintenance	Total Federal Health Admini-stration	Tribal Health Administration: Tribal Hospitals & Clinics	Urban Health	Tribal Preventive Health	Management Training	Tribal Indirect Costs	Tribal Contract Support	Personnel Quarters Maintenance	Total Tribal Health Admini-stration	FY 1991 Total Request
Hospitals & Clinics	508,433	0	0	0	0	663	0	509,096	157,106	0	0	0	69,186	22,600	0	248,892	757,988
Dental Health	31,017	0	0	0	0	0	0	31,017	4,909	0	0	0	74	0	0	4,983	36,000
Mental Health	17,583	0	0	0	0	0	0	17,583	5,133	0	0	0	82	0	0	5,215	22,798
Alcoholism	3,270	0	0	0	0	0	0	3,270	27,536	0	0	0	4,074	0	0	31,610	34,880
Maintenance & Repair	11,581	0	0	0	0	0	0	11,581	811	0	0	0	28	0	0	839	12,420
Contract Care	195,097	0	0	0	0	0	0	195,097	54,652	0	0	0	1,045	0	0	55,697	250,794
Total Clinical Services	766,981	0	0	0	0	663	0	767,644	250,147	0	0	0	74,489	22,600	0	347,236	1,114,880
Sanitation	0	0	25,715	0	0	0	0	25,715	0	0	1,843	0	18	0	0	1,861	27,576
Public Health Nursing	0	0	13,283	0	0	0	0	13,283	0	0	3,083	0	96	0	0	3,179	16,462
Health Education	0	0	2,943	0	0	0	0	2,943	0	0	2,207	0	46	0	0	2,253	5,196
Community Health Representatives	0	0	599	0	0	0	0	599	0	0	29,907	0	2,320	0	0	32,227	32,826
Immunization	0	0	1,188	0	0	0	0	1,188	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1,188
Total Preventive Health	0	0	43,728	0	0	0	0	43,728	0	0	37,040	0	2,480	0	0	39,520	83,248
Urban Health Projects	0	379	0	0	0	350	0	729	0	11,997	0	0	1,403	0	0	13,400	14,129
Indian Health Manpower	0	0	0	12,600	0	0	0	12,600	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	12,600
Tribal Management	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	4,122	9	0	0	4,131	4,131
Direct Operations	0	0	0	0	49,936	0	0	49,936	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	49,936
Total	766,981	379	43,728	12,600	49,936	1,013	0	874,637	250,147	11,997	37,040	4,122	78,381	22,600	0	404,287	1,278,924
Operation & Maintenance of Quarters	0	0	0	0	0	0	2,988	2,988	0	0	0	0	0	0	12	12	3,000 1/
Total Direct Program	766,981	379	43,728	12,600	49,936	1,013	2,988	877,625	250,147	11,997	37,040	4,122	78,381	22,600	12	404,299	1,281,924

1/ Represents estimated collections of IHS quarters rental reimbursements during FY 1991.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE
(Dollars in Thousands)

Activity	1989 Appropriation Adjusted	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request
CLINICAL SERVICES:			
Hospital and Health Clinics:			
Direct.............................	$418,917 1/	$470,386	$509,096 2/
Tribal.............................	160,022	223,787	248,892
Total Hospital & Health Clinics..	578,939	694,173	757,988
Dental Health:			
Direct.............................	26,706	28,325	31,017
Tribal.............................	4,779	4,614	4,983
Total Dental Health..............	31,485	32,939	36,000
Mental Health:			
Direct.............................	9,884	16,367	17,583
Tribal.............................	3,207	4,877	5,215
Total Mental Health..............	13,091	21,244	22,798
Alcoholism:			
Direct.............................	4,468	3,181	3,270
Tribal.............................	26,216	29,863	31,610
Total Alcoholism.................	30,684	33,044	34,880
Maintenance and Repair:			
Direct.............................	10,175	11,242	11,581
Tribal.............................	1,581	783	839
Total Maintenance and Repair.....	11,756	12,025	12,420
Contract Health Services:			
Direct.............................	170,688	186,838	195,097
Tribal.............................	46,766	50,809	55,697
Total Contract Health Services...	217,454	237,647	250,794
TOTAL CLINICAL SERVICES:			
Direct.............................	640,838	716,339	767,644
Tribal.............................	242,571	314,733	347,236
Total Clinical Services..........	883,409	1,031,072	1,114,880
PREVENTIVE HEALTH:			
Sanitation:			
Direct.............................	22,886	23,865	25,715
Tribal.............................	1,768	1,706	1,861
Total Sanitation.................	24,654	25,571	27,576
Public Health Nursing:			
Direct.............................	11,713	12,122	13,283
Tribal.............................	2,754	2,903	3,179
Total Public Health Nursing......	14,467	15,025	16,462

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE
(Dollars in Thousands)

Activity	1989 Appropriation Adjusted	1990 Appropriation Adjusted	1991 Request
Health Education:			
Direct	$2,542	$2,701	$2,943
Tribal	2,009	2,121	2,253
Total Health Education	4,551	4,822	5,196
Community Health Representatives:			
Direct	911	597	599
Tribal	28,150	30,488	32,227
Total Comm. Hlth. Representatives	29,061	31,085	32,826
Alaska Immunization/Haemophilus Influenzae:			
Direct	417	1,127	1,188
Tribal	0	0	0
Total AK Immun/Haemophilus Influenzae	417	1,127	1,188
TOTAL PREVENTIVE HEALTH:			
Direct	38,469	40,412	43,728
Tribal	34,681	37,218	39,520
Total Preventive Health	73,150	77,630	83,248
URBAN HEALTH:			
Direct	1,937 1/	359	729 2/
Tribal	8,025	12,690	13,400
Total Urban Health	9,962	13,049	14,129
INDIAN HEALTH MANPOWER:			
Direct	8,115	9,540	12,600
Tribal	0	0	0
Total Indian Health Manpower	8,115 3/	9,540	12,600
TRIBAL MANAGEMENT:			
Direct	803	0	0
Tribal	2,415	2,562	4,131
Total Tribal Management	3,218	2,562	4,131
DIRECT OPERATIONS:			
Direct	42,471	44,484	49,936
Tribal	0	0	0
Total Direct Operations	42,471	44,484	49,936
TOTAL DIRECT and TRIBAL:			
Direct	732,633	811,134	874,637
Tribal	287,692	367,203	404,287
Total Indian Health Service	1,020,325	1,178,337	1,278,924
GRAND TOTAL INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE	$1,020,325 4/	$1,178,337 4/	$1,278,924 4/

1/ Includes $500,000 in Hospitals and Health Clinics activity and $300,000 in Urban Health Projects for Human Immunodeficiency Virus.

2/ Includes $663,000 in Hospital and Health Clinics activity and $350,000 in Urban Health Projects for Human Immunodeficiency Virus.

3/ Include reappropriation $219,000 restored from prior year funds to continue the availability of funds that would have otherwise expired.

4/ Excludes $3,000,000 for Operation and Maintenance of Quarters.

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in House Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-120

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

AIDS

The Committee notes that a total of $992,000 has been budgeted for AIDS programs in the Indian Health Service in Fiscal Year 1990, under another appropriation. The Committee expects all of these funds will be transferred to IHS, with at least $350,000 going to the urban programs.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-48.

Hoopa Tribe in California

The Committee urges IHS to work with the Hoopa tribe in California, if a proposal is submitted by the tribe, and to provide research and evaluation funds if justified, to assist in developing a plan for a community health care facility.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-48.

Lac Courte Oreilles Tribe in Wisconsin

The Committee understands that the Lac Courte Oreilles tribe in Wisconsin is funded below both the average level for the Bemidji area and for IHS nationwide, and expects IHS will address this matter to the extent possible within available funding.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS appropriation for FY 1990 included $10 million for the Indian Health Care Improvement Fund (IHCIF). The Lac Courte Oreilles Tribe will participate in the IHCIF which will be distributed to the Areas and Service Units based on the modified Resource Allocation Methodology and the Health Services Priority System which will give priority to those locations with the greatest level of resource deficiency.

Sage Memorial Hospital and Mid-Dakota Hospital in South Dakota

The Committee expects the IHS to work with Sage Memorial Hospital in Arizona and the Mid-Dakota Hospital in South Dakota to provide for ongoing contract care services in their areas.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on pages IHS-48 through IHS-49.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in House Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-120

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

Siletz Clinic

An increase of $470,000 is provided to equip and staff the new Siletz clinic.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-49.

Staffing of New Facilities and Newly Recognized Tribes

Included is $1,748,000 for staffing for new facilities at Sacaton, AZ, Fort Thompson, SD, Wolf Point, MT, and Toppenish, WA, and $600,000 for funding for two newly-recognized tribes.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on pages IHS-42 through IHS-43.

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Inland Tribal Consortium (ITC) Youth Alcohol and Substance Abuse Treatment Facility

The Committee urges IHS to move expeditiously to complete planning and design of the Inland Tribal Consortium's youth alcohol and substance abuse treatment facility. The IHS should use available funds for this purpose, as well as to acquire a site, and should inform the Committee of the amount required for construction and whether additional funds will be needed for this purpose, as soon as possible. If the design is completed and funds are available, construction activities may begin during fiscal year 1990.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-43.

Non-Federal Funding for Construction of a Clinic on the Warm Springs Reservation

The Confederated Tribes of the Warm Springs Reservation are reviewing the possibility of securing non-Federal funds for the construction of a clinic on the reservation. The Committee requests IHS to work with the tribes to study this proposal, and report back to the Committee by March 1, 1990 on the feasibility and estimated costs of such an approach.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-44.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in
House Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-120

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Office of Construction Management (OCM) and IHS working together to Address the Provision of Alcohol Detoxification services in the Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) Detention Facilities

The Committee understands that the Office of Construction Management in the Department of the Interior has had discussions with the Indian Health Service, regarding the need to work together to address the provision of alcohol detoxification services in BIA detention facilities. The Committee expects IHS to cooperate to the fullest extent possible with OCM and BIA in planning for and implementing such programs in the future.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-50.

Sanitation Facilities

Within the funds provided, the Committee intends $1,644,000 to be provided to complete the Seneca, NY water project, and $1,471,000 for Tohono O'Odham. The Committee is also aware of many other urgent needs for assistance with water and sewer problems, and expects the IHS to work with the Quileute, Zuni, Oglala Sioux and Passamaquoddy Tribes to begin at least to address their needs in fiscal year 1990.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on pages IHS-51 through IHS-52.

Site Acquisition

Bill language has been included to clarify that IHS is authorized to use construction funds for site acquisition in connection with approved construction projects. However, the Committee intends that the reprogramming guidelines apply in all such cases, and that any proposals to use construction funds for site acquisition, when such use has not specifically been approved in bill or report language in advance, be submitted to the Appropriations Committees for advance approval.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on pages IHS-45 through IHS-46.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in
House Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-120

OTHER

Eligibility Regulations

Bill language has been included under Administrative provisions which will prohibit the expenditure of funds to implement the proposed IHS eligibility regulations until a budget request accurately reflecting the changes in costs likely to occur as a result of the regulations has been submitted to the Congress, and enacted into law. A report submitted by the Department on the estimated impact of the new regulations estimated that implementation would increase contract care costs by $26,000,000, while the small reduction in direct care workload is not expected to have any budgetary impact on the direct program.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-46.

Separate Appropriation Accounts

The Committee has not agreed to proposed bill language which would have provided two separate accounts, one for tribal health administration and one for Federal health administration. The Committee believes this would create a cumbersome funding mechanism which is not necessary in order to support and encourage more tribal contracting of IHS programs, as the Committee always has. The Committee continues to believe that the best way to encourage more tribal contracting is to provide adequate funding, including funds for contract indirect costs, and has therefore provided increased funds aimed at accomplishing this purpose.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-47.

Tribal Contract Conversion

The Committee recommends an increase of $23,000,000, along with bill language, to carry out the requirements of section 204(d)(1) of Public Law 100-472, the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act Amendments of 1988. This section requires the Secretary, no later than 1990, to begin using the calendar year as the basis for tribal contracts and agreements, unless the Secretary and tribe agree on a different period. This is the amount of budget authority which IHS estimates will be needed to accomplish this requirement in fiscal year 1990. No outlays are associated with the conversion.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-52.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

AIDS

The administration's request for AIDS programs is consolidated under the Public Health Service, and includes $992,000 to be transferred to the Indian Health Service. The Committee expects that all of these funds will be transferred to IHS, with no earmark for urban programs. The Committee urges IHS to pay particular attention to education and prevention efforts, and to distribute funding in accord with a plan that emphasizes these objectives. PHS and IHS should consult with tribes regarding these efforts, and to the maximum extent feasible, should tap the community based resources of the tribes.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-48.

Alcoholism and Mental Health Programs Merger

Within the funding provided for direct operations, the Committee directs that $250,000 be made available to fund a feasibility study of a possible merger of the Alcoholism and Mental Health Programs. The study should address the costs of such merger, as well as potential savings from combining the two programs. Such a study should incorporate consultation with tribes, Alaska Native villages and urban Indian communities. The authorizing and Appropriations Committees should be consulted on the study findings before IHS makes any changes to the existing program structure. Items to be examined in the study should include an examination of the common standards of practice used within the two programs; confidentiality issues; comparability in data collection; and differences in salary classifications which might be affected by such a merger. This report should be completed and submitted to the Committees no later than April 1, 1990.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The Indian Health Service will initiate a study to determine the feasibility of merging the Alcoholism, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Programs. A task force, referred to as the Oversight Committee with membership from IHS, Tribes, Alaska Native Villages and urban communities has been established to coordinate the study. At a meeting on October 11-12, 1989, the Committee reviewed the functions of the Alcoholism/Substance Abuse and the Mental Health Program and developed a list of options and issues relevant to possibly merging the two programs. Assisted by an outside consultant, these options and issues were put into a Request for Contract on November 10, 1989. It is anticipated that a contract will be awarded by the end of January 1990 and that the study will be completed by the end of March 1990.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in
Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

Contract Care Costs for Medically Needy and Medically Indigent

The Committee is aware of increased contract care costs occurring in Arizona as a result of the ninth circuit court decision with respect to payment of last resort for the medically needy and medically indigent. In this instance, the provision of services for off-reservation* Indians is being made by the Indian Health Service while the case is appealed. It is the Committee's intent that within the total funds provided, the Indian Health Service provide sufficient funds to the Phoenix, Navajo, and Tucson areas to address these increased costs, which are estimated at approximately $5,000,000. *(Language in the Conference Report changes the word off-reservation to read on-reservation.)

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS will allocate up to $5 million dollars this fiscal year to the Phoenix, Navajo and Tucson Areas to address the Contract Health Care cost of the Medically Needy and Medically Indigent.

Contract Care Quarterly Report to Congress

In light of the contract care shortfalls experienced during fiscal year 1989, IHS should submit a quarterly report on the status of contract health care services which details the level of catastrophic care deficits, weekly spending rates, projected shortfalls, timeliness for anticipated denials of contract health care services if a shortfall is imminent, and proposed alternative corrective measures to address the situation. This report should be submitted within 6 weeks after the end of each quarter.

Action Taken or to be Taken

A draft report has been completed for the first quarter of FY 1990, and is being finalized by the IHS. As requested by the Appropriation Committee, the IHS will submit the quarterly report within 6 weeks after the end of the quarter.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

Health Care Services

The Committee remains concerned about the provision of basic health care services for Indians. Backlogs in a number of IHS program areas have resulted in attention to only the most critical of health emergencies.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The Indian Health Service (IHS) continues to provide access to basic primary care services for prevention and acute and chronic health care needs. This strategy has had positive effects upon the health status of American Indians and Alaska Natives. The IHS continues to allocate resources based upon the population, workload, and health status of various locations. Unfortunately, at a time when the service needs of American Indians and Alaska Natives, are less than fully funded, many other entities (States, etc.) have reduced program support for services not only to American Indians and Alaska Natives, but also to their general service populations.

Care which cannot be provided in IHS facilities is provided by the IHS Contract Health Services (CHS) program. In order to maintain CHS expenditures within available funds IHS has established as a reasonable and rational approach, medical priorities that limit use of these funds to the highest categories of need. For the most part this means that funds are preserved for those patients meeting the following priorities:

> Emergent/Acutely Urgent care such that the condition presents: (1) an immediate threat to life, limb or the senses; (2) a sufficiently unstable (immediate) potential course; (3) uncertain but grave (immediate) probabilities; or (4) clear deterioration of patient's immediate condition, such that the reasonable, average physician would not delay (immediate) intervention.
>
> In addition, there may be situations in which the condition may not be immediately life threatening but, in the judgment of the physician, treatment should be provided as soon as possible to prevent further deterioration of the patient's health. Specialty diagnostics and consultations in order to provide direct care are included within this definition.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

Mid Year Review and Operating Plan for fiscal year 1990

IHS should report to the committees, by May 1, 1990, regarding the outcome of its mid year review of the operating plan for fiscal year 1990. This report should also include a program by program explanation of the distribution of the impact of absorbing all pay increases. This distribution should explain the dollars absorbed within each budget line item, as well as an explanatory statement as to the programmatic impact, such as staffing reductions, of absorbing these costs.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The management of IHS programs is carried out through a decentralized system and consists of headquarters and Area Offices. These Area Offices are strategically located throughout Indian country. The Area Offices are required to develop financial operating plans based on their annual allocations outlining the management actions to be taken along with their impact. The IHS will utilize these plans to prepare the report, including the impact of absorbing the FY 1990 pay increase.

The plan calls for review of accounting reports compared to operating plans based upon actual obligations through March 31, 1990 and results will not be known until approximately April 15, 1990. The IHS estimates that the report will be completed by May 1, 1990.

Sage Memorial Hospital in Arizona and Mid-Dakota Hospital in South Dakota Contract Care Services

The Committee expects that within the total amount recommended, IHS will continue to work with the Sage Memorial Hospital in Arizona and the Mid-Dakota Hospital in South Dakota to provide and fund fully the costs necessary to maintain ongoing contract care services provided during fiscal year 1989.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on pages IHS-48 through IHS-49.

Staffing of New Facilities

The Committee concurs in the House increase of $1,748,000 for staffing of new facilities at Sacaton (Hu Hu Kam Hospital), AZ; Ft. Thompson, SD; Wolf Point, MT; and Toppenish, WA. The Committee fully expects the administration to include full year annualization of these staffing and operating costs in the fiscal year 1991 budget request.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The FY 1991 request includes funds for the full year annualization costs for the Wolf Point, MT health center and the Toppenish, WA health center.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

Newly Recognized Tribes

The Committee has also included $600,000 for newly recognized tribes, who will be receiving IHS services in fiscal year 1990. In the future, IHS should include funding and data on the program requirements of newly recognized tribes, rather than taking the funding from existing programs. Failure to do so only exacerbates further the health service backlog.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The Bureau of Indian Affairs is responsible for notifying the IHS and other Federal agencies when a tribe receives Federal recognition. The IHS tracks legislation introduced on behalf of tribes seeking recognition or restoration. The IHS is not aware of any tribes scheduled to be newly recognized or restored for FY 1991. However, should there be any, the IHS will develop the funding requirements for such tribes and include in subsequent budget requests.

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Inland Tribal Consortium's (ITC) Youth Alcohol and Substance Abuse Treatment Facility

IHS is encouraged to move expeditiously to complete the planning and design of the Inland Tribal Consortium's youth alcohol and substance abuse treatment facility. Funds have previously been made available for this purpose, and IHS should report to the Committee if additional funds will be required.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS will move as expeditiously as possible to complete planning and design of the ITC Youth Primary Residential Treatment (YPRT) facility. Available funds will be used to plan and design the YPRT facility as well as acquire a site for the facility. The Committee will be informed of the amount required to construct the YPRT and if additional funding will be needed. If design is completed and funds are available, construction activities may begin during FY 1990. A draft Program Justification Document (PJD) and Program of Requirements (POR) are currently being developed by the IHS Portland Area Office and are expected to be submitted for IHS Headquarters review by mid-February. A cost estimate for facility construction will be prepared by the Office of Engineering Services, Seattle, and submitted with the POR. Construction of the facility is planned for the Spokane area and the Portland Area Office is soliciting concurrence with this location from all affected tribes before proceeding with the land acquisition process. The extent of additional funding required to complete the project cannot be reliably determined until the PJD and POR have been finalized and a specific site has been selected.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Lease-Purchase Option

The Committee is also aware that some facilities projects may be considered that involve a lease-purchase option. The Committee directs the Indian Health Service to keep the Appropriations Committees informed of these options, and to present the options in a manner that allows for a cost comparison of lease-purchase versus direct Federal funding.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS has solicited proposals to do a feasibility study to provide cost information and analysis about alternative methods to fund the construction of the Alaska Native Medical Center. The alternative acquisition methods for procuring the facility are: direct Federal construction; lease-purchase; lease-purchase with alternative financing; and build-to-buy. The study was awarded November 1989 and the report will be completed in early 1990.

Non-Federal Funding for Construction of a Clinic on the Warm Springs Reservation and any other Similar Proposals Pending Before the Agency

The Committee is aware of proposal by various tribes, including the Confederated Tribes of the Warm Springs Reservation, regarding the possibility of securing non-Federal funds for construction of clinic facilities. The Committee is encouraged by tribal efforts to secure non-Federal funding, and directs IHS to work with tribes who have forwarded such proposals. In addition to reporting about the Warm Springs proposal, IHS should also address other similar proposals pending before the agency, and identify potential costs to the Federal Government. In preparing its report, IHS should also examine alternative options for evaluating such proposals, including whether they should be evaluated against the priority list for fully funded Federal projects when a Federal matching contribution is necessary for construction.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS supports the Warm Springs Tribes in their efforts to improve health care and is working with them in conducting a feasibility study. The proposal appears to be advantageous to the Government and deserves special consideration for the development of this type project, i.e., new, tribally-built health facilities.

The IHS awarded a P.L. 93-638 contract on December 12, 1989 to the Warm Springs Tribes for consultant services to evaluate the Warm Springs proposal and other similar proposals and assist in preparing the required reports to the Congress. The required procedures for developing and awarding this type contract are very time consuming, and it was not until November 12, 1989 that IHS Headquarters sent approval to the Portland Area to enter into the P.L. 93-638 contract with the Warm Springs Tribes. The contractor is currently working on completing the final draft reports and the IHS expects to receive the reports by mid-February.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Office of Construction Management (OCM) and IHS working together to Address the Provision of Alcohol Detoxification services in the Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) Detention Facilities

The Committee also intends that the Indian Health Service work with the Bureau of Indian Affairs and the Office of Construction Management in the Department of the Interior with respect to the inclusion of alcohol detoxification facilities within new planned detention facilities. The two bureaus should prepare a joint report, to be submitted by March 1, 1990, regarding efforts undertaken to meet this requirement. The bureaus should address such issues as staffing responsibility, costs, and design requirements.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-50.

Sanitation Facilities

Within the total provided, the Committee directs $1,644,000 for water supply at the Cattaraugus Reservation of the Seneca Nation; $980,000 for the water supply system of the Quileute Tribe of Washington, and $1,250,000 for the city of Kotzebue, AK, to repair its water and sewer system. A matching amount of $1,250,000 must be provided from non-Federal sources. Also included is $450,000 for the Zuni Pueblo to elevate three pumping stations and study needed improvements to the water system. In addition, the Indian Health Service should work with the Pleasant Point Passamoquoddy of Maine to address sanitation needs on the reservation.

The Committee concurs in the recent request to reprogram funds to address emergency sanitation facilities projects on the Cheyenne River Indian Reservation, SD; Mountain Village, AK; Paiute Indian Community, OR; and Tohono O'Odham Reservation, AZ.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on pages IHS-51 through IHS-52.

Site Acquisition

Bill language is included to clarify that IHS may use construction funds for site acquisition in connection with approved construction projects. The Committee intends, however, that unless prior Committee actions have indicated approval of site acquisition for a project, IHS should submit the project for consideration under the Committee's reprogramming guidelines.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS supports the Bill Language which clarifies that IHS has authority to purchase land for health facilities and quarters with design and/or construction funds following prior appraisal of the Appropriations Committees.

OTHER

Accurate and Timely Reporting of Information Related to the IHS Budget

The Committee also wishes to reiterate its concerns to the Indian Health Service regarding the provision of accurate and timely reporting of information related to the Indian Health Service budget. This includes provision of reliable estimates and explanations of program shortfalls, unanticipated needs, and other emergencies. The Committee continues to be frustrated by the difficulties faced by IHS in submitting requested information in a timely manner. During consideration of the fiscal year 1989 appropriation for IHS, several reports were requested by the Committee. Most of these were not submitted until well past the specified due date. The Committee did not receive the report on the Alaska Community Health Aide Program which was due on February 1, 1989, until July 7, 1989.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS is evaluating different options for improving our operational activities associated with this problem. We will continue to seek ways to improve in this functional area with the existing resources.

Eligibility Regulations

With respect to the proposed eligibility regulations, the Committee concurs in the House language to extend deferral of implementation until a budget is submitted and enacted which reflects the increased costs associated with the regulations.

Action Taken or to be Taken

Congress has required that, during the moratorium, the IHS do two studies on the impact the new regulations will have on local areas. The first of these estimates the cost impact the regulation will have based on estimated changes in eligible population. This report was completed and submitted to the Congress on May 10, 1989. The second study is being prepared and will be submitted when completed.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Senate Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-85

OTHER

Separate Appropriation Accounts

The Committee remains unpersuaded that separate appropriation accounts will foster more tribal contracting, and concurs with the House that sufficient funds to enable tribes to manage their health programs will do more to fulfill the objectives of self-determination.

Action Taken or to be Taken

Separate appropriation of funds sends a strong signal of support for self-determination activities. It is of benefit for potential and existing self-determination contractors to see that funds are specifically allocated for the programs they manage.

Separate requests for tribal health programs provide additional assurance to tribes and tribal organizations that resources necessary for full support of P.L. 93-638 health services delivery are available. The IHS believes that uncertainty over P.L. 93-638 contract funding levels discourages tribes and tribal organizations from even considering exercise of their rights under P.L. 93-638 to assume responsibility for health service programs.

Tribal Contract Conversion

The Committee has not included funds, as proposed by the House, to convert tribal contracts to a calendar year basis beginning January 1, 1990. The Committee is concerned about the actions necessary to achieve conversion and whether conversion funds will be needed annually due to newly executed contracts. The IHS should report to the committees, by March 1, 1990, with BIA, regarding the logistical and accounting needs for such a conversion. This report should address the option, and costs, of converting the entire Bureau budget to a calendar year basis.

Action Taken or to be Taken

See response on page IHS-52.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Conference Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-264

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

AIDS

The managers understand that the Public Health Service budget includes $992,000 for AIDS programs in IHS, and that these funds will be transferred to IHS for its use. Of this amount, at least $350,000 should be provided to the urban health programs. The AIDS funds should be distributed based on a plan emphasizing education and prevention, and after tribal consultation.

Action Taken or to be Taken

All IHS areas have developed an AIDS Education and Prevention plan. When available, funds will be distributed in accordance with these plans. Funds will also be provided to the urban program as directed.

Hoopa Tribe in California

The IHS is urged to work with the Hoopa Tribe in California to assist in developing a plan for a community health facility, and to report back to the Committees on the feasibility and costs of such a proposal by March 1, 1990.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS will work directly with the Hoopa Tribe in developing specifications for a methodology and approach to study the feasibility and will provide technical assistance and evaluability assessment support as funds are available.

Sage Memorial Hospital in Arizona and Mid-Dakota Hospital in South Dakota Contract Care Services

The managers expect IHS to continue to work with Sage Memorial Hospital in AZ and Mid-Dakota Hospital in SD to provide for ongoing contract care services in these areas.

Action Taken or to be Taken

Sage Memorial Hospital:

Contract Health Service (CHS) policies of the IHS require contract hospital providers to be reimbursed at rates not to exceed those rates allowable under the Medicare payment methodologies. The IHS published its payment policy in the June 30, 1986, Federal Register Notice, which reads as follows "...The IHS will contract only with those hospitals...which agree to accept, as payment in full, reimbursement at rates no higher than the prevailing Medicare allowable rates (including deductibles and co-payments)."

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Conference Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-264

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

The IHS granted Sage Memorial a one year waiver from the payment policy. As result, the current contract reflects a fee schedule that allows Sage Memorial to be reimbursed at full billed charges. The current fixed-rate, fee for service, billed charges contract has been extended until January 1, 1990. This extension will allow additional time for Sage Memorial to provide information so that IHS can evaluate the propriety of continuing to waive its payment policy for Sage Memorial. The Indian Health Service has informed the administrator of Sage Memorial that the justification must contain specific information.

The IHS will work constructively with Sage Memorial to develop a contract that not only meets the intent of the payment policy, but also meets the needs of the Navajo Area and Sage Memorial.

Mid-Dakota Hospital:

The IHS will continue the ongoing contract care services with the Mid-Dakota Hospital, Chamberlain, South Dakota. Currently, the Mid-Dakota Hospital contract has been changed from a fixed rate to a Medicare cost reimbursement contract, reflecting the IHS payment policy. The contract is intended to obtain medical services at a reasonable price, expand the access of care to other private hospital providers for IHS beneficiaries, and allow negotiation for similar contracts with other providers. The two tribes in this area, Crow Creek Sioux and Lower Brule, have concurred with this arrangement.

Siletz Clinic

The $470,000 provided for staffing and equipment for the Siletz clinic is to be used for a demonstration project, regarding how the funding needs of tribes which provide facilities outside of the IHS priority funding process can be met.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The $470,000 provided in the FY 1990 appropriation for the Siletz Clinic was allocated as follows:

— 6 positions and basic utilities	$227,000
— clinic equipment	243,000
Total FY 1990	$470,000

The Siletz Clinic is being constructed by the Siletz Tribe utilizing HUD and other sources of funding. This clinic will provide ambulatory health services to Indians and to non-Indian residents on a fee-for-service basis.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Conference Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-264

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Belcourt ND Personnel Quarters Project

With regard to the Belcourt, ND personnel quarters project, IHS should inform the Committees as soon as information is available as to the number of housing units that will be required at this location.

Action Taken or to be Taken

After carefully evaluating the most recent local housing data and the projected staffing needs, the Indian Health Service (IHS) has determined that this location may not require any additional housing units at this time.

Updated local housing surveys conducted by the IHS/Office of Engineering Services and the Inspector General identified recurring bases of housing for sale and rent in the smaller communities that surround Belcourt. These were not included in the draft Program Justification Document. In addition, the Turtle Mountain Agency, Bureau of Indian Affairs, at Belcourt has been experiencing an increasing number of vacancies and has agreed to rent quarters to IHS employees at the hospital.

Office of Construction Management (OCM) and IHS working together to Address the Provision of Alcohol Detoxification services in the Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) Detention Facilities

The managers request a joint report from IHS and the Bureau of Indian Affairs on the possibility of including detoxification facilities in BIA detention facilities, to be submitted to the Committees by March 1, 1990.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The Committee directs the IHS to work together with the OCM and BIA to address the provision of alcohol detoxification services in BIA detention facilities. The Committee also directs the IHS to cooperate to the fullest extent possible with OCM and BIA in planning for and implementing such programs in the future. The Director, IHS, and the Assistant Secretary, BIA, have agreed to cooperative working relationships and staff have been assigned to develop implementation steps.

The IHS has prepared a draft report (which is in the clearance process) that proposes a developmental process to meet the objective. The IHS anticipates that BIA will complete preparation of the final report by February 1, 1990. Upon completion, the BIA will submit the report to IHS.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Conference Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-264

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Sallisaw, OK Replacement Health Center

The managers have included $3,759,000 for the Sallisaw, OK replacement health center. If additional funds are needed for this project when the IHS is ready to award a contract, the managers agree that IHS may reprogram additional funds to this project, to provide up to a total of $4,165,000, from available unobligated construction funds. IHS should inform the Committees promptly of any shortfall in funds for the project, and the source of funds to be reprogrammed.

Action Taken or to be Taken

All documents necessary to effect acquisition of a site on which to construct the Sallisaw facility have been prepared, and the IHS has formally requested the Office of the General Counsel to seek a preliminary title opinion from the Department of Justice for the acquisition. Also, the Office of Engineering Services, Dallas, is ready to begin negotiating a P.L. 93-638 contract with the Cherokee Nation of Oklahoma for facility design services; however, the contract cannot be awarded until site acquisition has been finalized. Sufficient funding is available for land purchase and design services, but the project has not progressed to the point that it is possible to accurately determine the extent of additional funding, if any, that will be required to construct the facility.

Sanitation Facilities

Within the total of $31,000,000 provided for sanitation facilities, the following amounts are earmarked: $1,644,000 for the Seneca, NY water project; $1,471,000 for Tohono O'odham (which does not include funds for cash reserves for the tribal utility organization); $980,000 for the Quileute Tribe, WA; $450,000 for the Zuni Pueblo, NM; and $1,250,000 for the city of Kotzebue, AK, with an equal matching amount to be provided from non-Federal sources. The IHS should also work with the Oglala Sioux and Pleasant Point Passamaquoddy Tribes to begin to address their needs in fiscal year 1990.

The managers agree that funds in the amount of $2,750,000 reprogrammed from the Navajo "New Lands" project in fiscal year 1989 do not need to be restored to that project until such funds are ready to be used. The IHS should inform the Committees when the funds will be needed.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The monies earmarked for sanitation have been distributed to the respective IHS Area Offices. The IHS staff are currently working with the respective Tribes to develop project documents.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

Significant Items/Requested Reports in Conference Appropriation Committee Report No. 101-264

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

The current projection, for the $2,750,000 of funds reprogrammed from the Navajo "New Lands", is that the funds will be required in FY 1991. The "New Lands" housing development progress will be monitored closely and additional information will be provided to the Committees as directed.

OTHER

Liability Coverage to Tribal Contractors

With regard to the liability insurance issue, as a temporary measure, the managers have included language in Title III of the Act extending coverage under the Federal Tort Claims Act to Tribal Contractors of both the Bureau and the Indian Health Service. In the interim, the managers expect the Bureau to work with the Indian Health Service and the Double Eagle, Inc. risk management group to address the cost implications of various options for extending liability coverage to tribal contractors. The managers expect these groups to work together, and to provide a joint report to the Committee identifying the costs and benefits of various liability coverage alternatives.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS is currently working with the BIA to plan for a study identifying the costs and benefits of the various liability coverage alternatives.

Tribal Contract Conversion

Restores language and changes the sum proposed by the House for the conversion of tribal contracts and agreements to a calendar year basis. The funding proposed by the managers is $16,000,000 in budget authority only instead of $23,000,000 as proposed by the House and no funding as proposed by the Senate.

The managers request that IHS submit a report on the logistical and accounting needs for tribal contract conversion to the Committees, prior to using any of these funds for such conversions. The report should address the option and costs of converting all IHS contracts to a calendar year basis.

Action Taken or to be Taken

The IHS is currently developing a policy and a set of procedures that will enable Tribal contractors at their option to convert to a calendar year basis for funding. Once completed, the IHS will meet with BIA officials to discuss and complete the report. The IHS estimates that the report will be completed by March 31, 1990.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The President's budget request for fiscal year (FY) 1991 continues the Federal Government's commitment of providing comprehensive health care preventive, curative, rehabilitative and environmental—for more than one million American Indians and Alaska Natives. The Indian Health Service (IHS), an agency of the U.S. Public Health Service, carries out this commitment.

The existence of Federal Indian health services is the result of the fundamental relationship between Indian tribes and the U.S. Government as set forth in the 1830s by the U.S. Supreme Court under Chief Justice John Marshall. This relationship has been defined over time by numerous treaties, statutes, constitutional provisions, and international law and theory. Principal among these is the Snyder Act (25 U.S.C.), of 1921, which remains the basic authority for most of the Indian health services provided by the Federal Government to American Indians and Alaska Natives.

In 1955, Federal responsibility for the health program as authorized under the Snyder Act was transferred (Public Law (P.L.) 83-568 of 1954) from the Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior, to the U.S. Public Health Service. Over the next 25 years, the Federal Indian health service program was expanded and refined to more fully meet the health needs of the Indian people served. During this period, many important pieces of legislation were enacted. Public Law 85-151 authorized the construction of health care facilities, and P.L. 86-121 authorized the construction of water and sanitation facilities. The Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act of 1975 authorized the BIA and IHS to turn over responsibilities for Indian programs to the tribes. The Indian Health Care Improvement Act of 1976 authorized the IHS, among other things, to develop Indian health manpower, collect Medicaid and Medicare reimbursements, and address the health needs of Indian people living in urban communities.

In 1988, the Congress passed, and the President approved, the Indian Self-Determination Act Amendments (P.L. 100-472) and the Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988 (P.L. 100-713). The Self-Determination Act places greater responsibility on tribal contractors with lessened intervention and/or involvement from the Federal Government. These Acts further expand and define the IHS program and the Indian tribes-Federal Government relationship.

The goal of the IHS program is to raise the health status of American Indians and Alaska Natives to the highest possible level. In carrying out this goal, the program has three main objectives: 1) deliver the highest quality health services possible; 2) assist tribes and Native corporations to develop their capacity to manage health programs; and 3) serve as an advocate for the American Indians and Alaska Natives in health related matters.

The Federal-Indian relationship is a special facet of the IHS program. The Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act of 1975, P.L. 93-638, (amended by P.L. 100-472 in 1988), formalized this relationship to transfer authorities, functions, and/or responsibilities of the IHS program to tribes or tribal organizations. Any such transfers are at the sole determination of the tribes with the IHS maintaining an advisory and consultative role.

The IHS program consists of two major systems: 1) a Federal health care delivery system, administered by Federal personnel, and 2) a tribal health care delivery system, administered by tribes and tribal organizations. The President's budget request for FY 1991 reflects these two major systems, referred to as Federal Indian Health Administration, which supports the IHS direct health care delivery system, and Tribal Health Administration, which supports the tribal health delivery system. The request for budget authority for the IHS account is $1,278,924,000, a net increase of $100,587,000 over the FY 1990 revised appropriation of $1,178,337,000. Additionally, $134,100,000 will be available to the IHS through collected reimbursements for a total program level of $1,413,024,000.

The President's FY 1991 budget request for the IHS supports the IHS mission and continues the commitment to providing comprehensive health care services for American Indians and Alaska Natives and support for current and future tribal contractors. The FY 1991 budget request for the Indian Health Service includes $874,637,000 for the Federal Indian Health Administration, an increase of 7.8 percent over the FY 1990 enacted level, and includes $404,287,000 for the Tribal Health Administration, an increase of approximately 10 percent from the FY 1990 enacted level. Augmenting general budget fund authority, the Federal Indian Health Administration is projected to collect $127,588,000 in reimbursements in FY 1991 for a total program level of $1,002,225,000 and the Tribal Health Administration is projected to receive $6,512,000 in reimbursements for a total program level of $410,799,000.

The separate requests for Tribal and Federal Indian Health Administration are intended to promote Tribal Health Administration and reflect continued support for locating program administration at the local level. A separate request for Tribal Health Administration will highlight the importance of tribes and tribal organizations in providing health care services as well as the potential for expansion in tribal administration. The separate Tribal Health Administration request will do much to assist in reaching our FY 1988 goal of entrusting 75 percent of Indian Health Hospitals and Clinics to Tribal Health Administration.

Several potential barriers to tribal health administration inhibit expansion of P.L. 93-638 contracting. First, uncertainty over total P.L. 93-638 contract funding levels discourages tribes and tribal organizations from even considering exercise of their rights under P.L. 93-638 to assume responsibility for health service programs. The President's FY 1991 budget proposes separate requests for tribal health programs provides additional assurance to tribes and tribal organizations that resources necessary for full support of P.L. 93-638 health services delivery are available.

Second, the perception that contract indirect costs are underfunded also discourages tribes and tribal organizations from assuming responsibility for health services delivery. The President's FY 1991 Budget proposes to address this barrier through full funding of the estimated $78 million in FY 1991 tribal contract indirect costs, as well as full funding of the estimated $23 million in contract support costs.

A third barrier to health program administration, both tribal and federal, is the lack of sufficient numbers of Native American health professionals and health program administrators, as well as the general shortage of health professionals on the reservation. The President's FY 1991 Budget proposes to correct this situation through expansion of the Indian Health Manpower program to it full statutory authorization of $12.6 million, which will fund an additional 177 health profession scholarships.

The President's FY 1991 Budget also proposes to address this barrier through increased technical and management training support for existing and potential P.L. 93-638 contractors. The President's FY 1991 Budget requests $4.1 million for Tribal Health Administration management training, a 60 percent increase over the FY 1990 level of $2.5 million. Investing in human capital may produce multiplier effects in future years as tribes and tribal organization develop expertise in various aspects of health program administration and health services delivery, and use this pool of knowledge and talent as a center-of-excellence for assisting other tribes with health program administration as well as apply it to other endeavors.

Removing the potential barriers to tribal health administration will provide greater choice for tribes and tribal organization in determining whether to assume responsibility for health services themselves or to continue to receive direct Federal health care services, and more fully meet the intent of P.L. 93-638.

In FY 1989, the Indian Health Service acted to insure greater accountability and efficiency in the Agency's management systems. This broad based management improvement is referred to as the IHS Quality Management Initiative (QMI). The QMI was launched as a result of increasing demands following elevation of IHS to agency level and to specific concerns raised by HHS, Congress, and other external authorities. This plan stresses performance, accountability, and integrity and will continue into Fiscal Years 1990, 1991 and beyond.

How well IHS meets its goal to provide the best and most complete health care services that our budget will allow is influenced either directly or indirectly by every single activity performed within the agency and within the organizations with whom IHS contracts for services. The QMI focuses on strengthening IHS administration and management by making immediate corrections where necessary, encouraging innovation in management systems and instilling in all IHS employees a commitment to professionalism, accountability, and continuous improvement.

In addition to promoting the values of professionalism, performance, and integrity throughout the entire agency, the QMI effort has identified critical deficiencies. The FY 1991 budget request includes $2 million and 40 FTEs to increase staffing for critical deficiencies in administrative functions and responsibilities related to the QMI effort. The additional staff includes budget and accounting analysts, accountants, procurement analysts, grants management specialists, program analysts, management analysts, etc. The additional staff will focus on essential administrative support responsibilities such as adequate internal control measures, increased review and anlysis of financial and procurement documents, and the overall efficient management of IHS resources and programs. The budget request also includes an additional $339,000 to support the automation of Headquarters East and approximately $7.5 million and 37 FTEs for field office computer equipment and systems support staff.

As budgets become tighter, more must be done, and it must be done better. The QMI will develop and install necessary management capacity required to better service the health care needs of Indian people and to assist tribes in exercising their right of self-determination.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

TRIBAL HEALTH ADMINISTRATION
(budget authority in thousands)

Program by Activities	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Estimate
Direct Program:			
Tribal Hospitals & Clinics........	$199,093	$246,560	$250,147
Urban Health......................	6,746	11,361	11,997
Tribal Preventive Health..........	32,428	34,869	37,040
Management Training...............	2,406	2,553	4,122
Tribal Indirect Costs.............	47,019	71,860	78,381
Tribal Contract Support...........	0	0	22,600
Personnel Quarters Maintenance....	12	12	12
Total Tribal Health Administration	$287,704	$367,215	$404,299

FEDERAL INDIAN HEALTH ADMINISTRATION
(budget authority in thousands)

Program by Activities	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Estimate
Direct Program:			
Hospitals and Clinics.............	$640,338	$716,339	$766,981
Urban Health......................	1,637	359	379
Preventive Health.................	38,469	40,412	43,728
Indian Health Manpower............	8,115	9,540	12,600
Federal Administration............	43,274	44,484	49,936
Human Immunodeficiency Virus......	800	0	1,013
Personnel Quarters Maintenance....	2,988	2,988	2,988
Total Federal Health Administration................	$735,621	$814,122	$877,625
Total Indian Health Service.......	$1,023,325	$1,181,337	$1,281,924

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE
(dollars in thousands)

Program by Activities	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Estimate
Direct Program:			
Tribal Health Administration......	$287,704	$367,215	$404,299
Federal Indian Health Administration..................	735,621	814,122	877,625
Total..........................	$1,023,325	$1,181,337	$1,281,924

FEDERAL INDIAN HEALTH ADMINISTRATION

	(dollars in thousands)			
	1989	1990	1991	Change
Budget Authority 1/	$735,621	$814,122	$877,625	+$63,503
Reimbursements (Collections)	80,543	88,800	124,600	+ 35,800
Total Available for Obligation.	$816,164	$902,922	$1,002,225	+$99,303
FTEs	12,112	12,339	12,504	+165

1/ Includes $2,988,000 reimbursement listed as permanent authority for operation and maintenance of Quarters in FY 1989, FY 1990 and FY 1991.

Overview

Federal Indian Health Administration represents two of three major parts of the IHS program. Part one is the planning, management and evaluation of the overall authorized program. Part two is the direct operation of health care facilities and programs by Federal personnel. The third major part is that which is managed and operated by tribal governments and organizations. The size of the parts is, in general, determined by American Indian tribes and Alaska Native corporations in accordance with the Indian Self-Determination Act.

The IHS program consists of a Headquarters organization and 12 Area Offices. The Headquarters Office, led by the Director, IHS, is responsible for establishing national policies governing program management, organizational strategy, planning and evaluation. The Director is supported by offices of administration and management; environmental health and engineering; health programs; health program research and development; information resources management; planning, evaluation and legislation; and tribal activities. The Area Offices are management subdivisions responsible for directing and supporting the health facilities and programs carried out through service units in 11 geographic regions.

The IHS direct health care program is carried out through 75 service units, 43 hospitals, 66 health centers, 5 school health centers and 267 smaller health stations and satellite clinics. In addition, approximately 2,000 purchases are made annually to support the direct care program and meet priority health care needs, where and when direct care services are not available. The range of services provided under the Federal Indian Health Administration include emergency/medical, curative, rehabilitative, and preventive. A priority of the federally administered program is preventing disease through promoting healthy behaviors.

Clinical Services

The budget request includes $766,981,000 which supports the direct operation of IHS staffed hospitals, health centers, school health centers, health stations and satellite clinics. Inpatient services range from non-specialty inpatient care to a wide range of speciality care. Outpatient care includes primary medical, preventive and rehabilitative health services.

Included in this activity are special programs in dental health, mental health and alcoholism. A request of $31 million for the dental health program will maintain services to Indian patients. A request of $17.6 million for the mental health program will continue community oriented clinical services for reservation populations. A request of $3.3 million for the alcohol and substance abuse program will fund American Indian and Alaska Native alcoholism and substance abuse programs which provide a wide variety of treatment and preventive services to rural and urban communities. Included in the request is $33 million to provide for the continued implementation of the special alcohol and substance abuse programs directed towards adolescent Indians which were authorized under P.L. 99-570 in 1986. Under this authorization four residential treatment centers have been developed. These include facilities in the Albuquerque, Nashville, Navajo, and Oklahoma City Areas. Two facilities are operational in the Alaska Area for which renovation is anticipated. Three other IHS Areas (Aberdeen, Phoenix, and Portland) are in varying stages of implementation and are planned to be operational in FY 1991 or FY 1992.

As of November 1989, there were 156 cases of AIDS in American Indians and Alaska Natives compared to 115,158 for the general population (CDC HIV/AIDS Surveillance, November 1989). The Indian Health Surveillance Program has an unduplicated count of 107 HIV positive individuals that may require treatment in FY 1991. The Indian Health Service has requested $1,013,000 for the FY 1991 AIDS Program. This represents a $21,000 increase over the expected FY 1990 budget of $992,000. The IHS plans to spend the funds on epidemiologic studies and surveillance ($95,000), individual and community prevention activities ($650,000), patient care services including ambulatory drug therapy ($268,000). The 34 IHS urban Indian programs will be allocated $350,000 of the $1,013,000 for prevention activities.

In FY 1991, the IHS will continue its current AIDS prevention and education activities; determine seroprevalence through means of a blinded study; ascertain basic data about knowledge, attitude, and behavior and will assist in funding the early treatment of HIV infected persons.

Background Information:

- In the American Indian and Alaska Native population, the Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome (AIDS) is seen primarily in urban areas but is gradually entering the rural and reservation areas.

- In FY 1988 the IHS placed special emphasis on the development of a national AIDS prevention program. The AIDS coordination function was assigned to the Clinical Support Center in Phoenix, and the interagency AIDS liaison function was assigned to the Headquarters Special Initiatives Branch. The IHS sought assistance for its AIDS program from private and government agencies in order to provide a more comprehensive program.

- For FY 1989, $800,000 was appropriated for the IHS AIDS Program and was used in the following activities: reimbursement of IHS treatment facilities for AIDS drug costs; epidemiology and surveillance; community, tribal government, and school age health education; high risk patient counseling; and health care worker education.
  - $300,000 was specially allocated to IHS Urban Indian Programs for AIDS prevention education;
  - $258,000 was used for reservation-based prevention programs; and
  - $242,000 was expended for AIDS drugs and AIDS treatment.
- The IHS, in cooperation with American Indian and Alaska Native AIDS organizations, CDC, and various states has developed 14 Native American AIDS videos, 20 culturally specific pamphlets, and over 30 posters dealing with HIV.
- Knowledge, Attitude and Behavior (KAB) surveys have been conducted to determine the level of AIDS awareness in the community. Over twenty (20) surveys have been completed. Periodic surveys can be utilized to evaluate the effectiveness of the community prevention education program.

IHS AIDS FUNDING

1989 Interior Appropriation	$800,000
1990	— 1/
1991 Interior Bill request	$1,013,000

1/ Report language accompanying FY 1990 Labor, Health and Human Services, and Education, and related agencies appropriations indicated that up to $992,000 of PHS/HIV funds could be made available to IHS.

Included in this activity is $195.1 million for the purchase of medical care and services from non-Indian Health Service providers. The contract care program supplements other health care resources available to Indian people and is used primarily for urgent and emergent health care priorities with various geographic modifications depending on local needs.

Preventive Health

The budget request of $43,728,000 funds sanitation, public health nursing, health education, community health representative and immunization programs. These programs are carried out in 75 service units managed directly by the IHS. The budget request includes $25.7 million for Federal sanitation programs including environmental health activities in infection control, safety, and occupational health for the protection of patients, staff and visitors of health care facilities. Emphasis is on assisting health care facilities in achieving and maintaining Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO) accreditation and/or other national certifications, e.g. Health Care Financing Administration.

The budget request provides $13.3 million for community-based public health nursing activities with the primary focus on health promotion and disease prevention.

Health education program activities which include school health education services, community health education services, patient education services, staff health education support services and tribal programs development are funded at $2.9 million.

Urban Health

The budget request includes $729,000 for the partial funding of 34 urban Indian health organizations located in various cities throughout the United States. These programs engage in a variety of activities, ranging from the provision of outreach and referral services to the delivery of comprehensive ambulatory health care. Services are provided to Indian people relocated predominantly from reservations.

The Urban Indian Health Programs (UIHP) will receive $350,000 from the IHS AIDS budget. The funds will be used for AIDS prevention programs at the 34 contracted urban Indian health care clinics. The UIHP clinics received $300,000 from the IHS budget in FY 1989 and expect to receive $350,000 in FY 1990.

Indian Health Manpower

The budget request includes $12,600,000 the maximum authorized in Title I of P.L. 94-437, Indian Health Care Improvement Act (amended by P.L. 100-713 in 1988), for training Indian people as health professionals and in correcting IHS manpower shortages. The program also serves as a catalyst for the development of the Indian community as a whole and contributes to the goals of the IHS in raising the health status of Indian people. The budget request will support the continuation of those students funded in fiscal year 1990, continue the special nursing initiative authorized in section 112 of the Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988, and fund 177 new scholarships. The new awards will focus on primary health manpower shortage areas of nursing and medicine.

Direct Operations

The budget request includes $49,936,000 for the overall administration and management of the IHS program. Since 1983, the IHS health services budget has grown by approximately 30 percent, while the administrative budget has grown by 2.6 percent. The growth in program size and complexity has placed an increased burden on the administrative control and protection of resources. The management of the IHS program consists of both Headquarters and the eleven Area Office operations. The IHS has placed top priority on the improvement of overall management by implementing a Plan for Quality Management at all levels of the IHS.

The Headquarters Office is responsible for overall leadership and direction of the IHS. In order to remain responsive to a widely dispersed program, the IHS is completing a study undertaken in FY 1989, which will analyze the possibility of relocating parts or all Headquarters closer to program delivery points. This study was requested by the congress before any relocation decisions were implemented. The study report is expected to be completed and submitted during the first part of FY 1990. The study was conducted by a combination of PHS and IHS staff. Of critical importance is the analysis of those functions necessary to support the Director, IHS, in his role as chief administrator of the Indian Health Service and principal advisor to DHHS officials on the status of Indian health program efforts and activities; and those necessary to direct and oversee field operations.

Human resource development, particularly in automation training, continues to be a high priority that will enable the IHS to achieve increased management effectiveness and efficiencies in its operations.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE
(dollars in thousands)

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate	
	FTEs	AMOUNT	FTEs	AMOUNT	FTEs	AMOUNT
Federal Indian Health Administration:						
Hospitals and Health Clinics......	9,641	$418,917 1/	9,796	$470,386	9,890	$509,096 2/
Dental Services..................	676	26,706	672	28,325	687	31,017
Mental Health.....................	199	9,884	313	16,367	319	17,583
Alchoholism.......................	4	4,468	4	3,181	4	3,270
Maintenance and Repair............	0	10,175	0	11,242	0	11,581
Contract Health Care..............	16	170,688	16	186,838	16	195,097
Subtotal, Clinical Services.....	10,536	$640,838	10,801	$716,339	10,916	$767,644
Sanitation........................	472	22,886	464	23,865	465	25,715
Public Health Nursing.............	296	11,713	293	12,122	300	13,283
Health Education..................	52	2,542	52	2,701	54	2,943
Community Health Representatives..	0	911	0	597	0	599
AK Hepatitis/Immunization.........	0	417	0	1,127	0	1,188
Subtotal, Preventive Health.....	820	$38,469	809	$40,412	819	$43,728
Urban Health......................	0	1,937 1/	0	359	0	729 2/
Indian Health Manpower............	0	8,115	0	9,540	0	12,600
Tribal Management.................	15	803	0	0	0	0
Direct Operations.................	681	42,471	669	44.484	709	49,936
Personnel Quarters Maintenance....	0	2,988	0	2,988	0	2,988
Total Federal Indian Health Administration...............	12,052	$735,621	12,279	$814,122	12,444	$877,625

1/ Includes $500,000 in H&C and $300,000 in Urban for Human Immunodeficiency Virus.
2/ Includes $663,000 in H&C and $350,000 in Urban for Human Immunodeficiency Virus.

TRIBAL HEALTH ADMINISTRATION

	(dollars in thousands)			
	1989	1990	1991	Change
Budget Authority 1/..............	$287,704	$367,215	$404,299	+$37,084
Reimbursements (Collections).....	5,627	6,300	6,500	+ 200
Total Available for Obligation.	$293,331	$373,515	$410,799	+$37,284
FTEs.........................	---	---	---	---

1/ Includes $12,000 reimbursement listed and permanent authority for operation and maintenance of Quarters in FY 1989, FY 1990 an FY 1991.

Overview

The participation of tribes in the management of health services delivered for their benefit was reinforced by the Transfer Act (P.L. 83-568) which provides that a hospital or health facility that has been constructed or maintained for a specific tribe of Indians or groups of tribes cannot be transferred to a non-Indian entity or organization without the tribe(s) consent.

During the late 1960s and early 1970s, American Indians and Alaska Native organizations began to contract with the IHS for health care programs. These early programs were principally for outreach and referral. Tribes hired outreach workers who served as translaters and assisted in gaining access to various health care programs. As needs were determined, the tribes expanded into more comprehensive public health, environmental health, and ambulatory programs.

With the enactment of P.L. 93-638, Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act of 1975, the tribes assumed control of more of the IHS program. Most program assumption has been in ambulatory and community health areas. The rate of tribal contracting has increased gradually, due in part to the level of administrative capability. As the concept of self-determination implies, the level and rate of participation of tribes or tribal organizations in self-determination activities is dependent upon and determined by the individual tribes themselves.

Several potential barriers to tribal health administration inhibit expansion of P.L. 93-638 contracting. First, uncertainty over total P.L. 93-638 contract funding levels discourages tribes and tribal organizations from even considering exercise of their rights under P.L. 93-638 to assume responsibility for health service programs. The President's FY 1991 Budget proposes separate requests for tribal health programs which provides additional assurance to tribes and tribal organizations that resources necessary for full support of P.L. 93-638 health services delivery are available.

Second, the perception that contract indirect costs are underfunded also discourages tribes and tribal organizations from assuming responsibility for health services delivery. The President's FY 1991 Budget proposes to address this barrier through full funding of the estimated $78 million in FY 1991 tribal contract indirect costs, as well as full funding of the estimated $23 million in contract support costs.

A third barrier to health program administration, both tribal and federal, is the lack of sufficient numbers of Native American health professionals and health program administrators, as well as the general shortage of health professionals on the reservation. The President's FY 1991 Budget proposes to correct this situation through expansion of the Indian Health Manpower program to its full statutory authorization of $12.6 million, which will fund an additional 177 health profession scholarships.

The President's FY 1991 Budget also proposes to address this barrier through increased technical and management training support for existing and potential P.L. 93-638 contractors. The President's FY 1991 Budget requests $4.1 million for Tribal Health Administration management training, a 60 percent increase over the FY 1990 level of $2.5 million. Investing in human capital may produce multiplier effects in future years as tribes and tribal organization develop expertise in various aspects of health program administration and health services delivery, and use this pool of knowledge and talent as a center-of-excellence for assisting other tribes with health program administration as well as apply it to other endeavors.

Removing the potential barriers to tribal health administration will provide greater choice for tribes and tribal organization in determining whether to assume responsibility for health services themselves or to continue to receive direct Federal health care services, and more fully meet the intent of P.L. 93-638.

Clinical Services

The Tribal Health Administration budget request includes $250,147,000 to support the tribal operation of 7 hospitals, 73 health centers, 2 school health centers and approximately 250 smaller health stations and satellite clinics. Through self-determination contracts, the tribal health programs continue the comprehensive preventive and curative service delivery systems initiated by the IHS. Included in this activity are special programs in dental health, mental health, alcoholism and substance abuse, and contract health care.

The budget request also includes $74,489,000 for tribal indirect costs. The IHS is presently determining the current indirect cost needs of tribal contractors as a result of P.L. 100-472, the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act Amendments of 1988, signed by the President on October 5, 1988. Based on current estimate, the request fully funds indirect costs.

Preventive Health

The FY 1991 preventive health request of $37,040,000 includes funding for sanitation, public health nursing, health education, community health representative and Alaska Hepatitis B and Haemophilus Influenzae Immunization Programs. These programs are carried out in 52 service units operated by tribes and tribal organizations. The request also includes indirect costs of $2,480,000.

Urban Health

The FY 1991 budget request includes $11,997,000 for the partial funding of 34 urban Indian health organizations located in various cities throughout the United States. These programs engage in a variety of activities, ranging from the provision of outreach and referral services to the delivery of comprehensive ambulatory health care. Services are provided to Indian people relocated predominantly from Indian reservations. The budget request also includes tribal indirect costs of $1,403,000.

Management Training

The FY 1991 budget request includes $4,122,000 to continue the development of capabilities of newly federally-recognized tribes; increase support for tribes to develop or strengthen their management systems as a preparatory approach to entering into a P.L. 93-638 contract; and increase awareness on the part of IHS of tribes that have improved their management capability and therefore are able to exercise their own management capability under P.L. 93-638 to manage their health care system. The budget request will fund approximately 140 grants in FY 1991.

Tribal Contract Support

The IHS estimates that the tribal requests for contract support costs, as authorized by the P.L. 93-638 amendments will approximate an additional $22.6 million in FY 1991. The IHS is continuing to collect data from tribal contractors to determine the most accurate amount that is needed for contract support costs. The IHS has determined that the tribal contractors have been experiencing shortfalls in areas previously unfunded or underfunded, such as general insurance, facilities maintenance, etc.

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE
(dollars in thousands)

	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Estimate
Tribal Health Administration:			
Hospitals and Health Clinics......	$121,360	$160,637	$157,106
Dental Services....................	4,711	4,544	4,909
Mental Health......................	3,131	4,799	5,133
Alchoholism........................	22,520	26,005	27,536
Maintenance and Repair............	1,554	756	811
Contract Health Care..............	45,817	49,819	54,652
Subtotal, Clinical Services.....	$199,093	$246,560	$250,147
Sanitation.........................	1,751	1,689	1,843
Public Health Nursing.............	2,665	2,812	3,083
Health Education..................	1,965	2,077	2,207
Community Health Representatives..	26,047	28,291	29,907
AK Hepatitis/Immunization.........	0	0	0
Subtotal, Preventive Health.....	$32,428	$34,869	$37,040
Urban Health.......................	6,746	11,361	11,997
Management Training...............	2,406	2,553	4,122
Tribal Indirect Costs.............	47,019	71,860	78,381
Tribal Contract Support...........	0	0	22,600
Personnel Quarters Maintenance....	12	12	12
Total Tribal Health Program...	$287,704	$367,215	$404,299

HIGHLIGHT STATEMENT

The Indian Health Service (IHS), an agency of the U.S. Public Health Service (PHS), carries out the Federal responsibility of assuring comprehensive preventive, curative, rehabilitative and environmental health services, for more than one million American Indians and Alaska Natives. This responsibility is based upon laws which the Congress has passed pursuant to its authority to regulate commerce with the Indian Nations as specified in the Constitution and in other pertinent authorities.

The goal of the IHS program is to raise the health status of American Indians and Alaska Natives to the highest possible level. To achieve this goal, the IHS has three main objectives: 1) deliver the highest quality health services possible; 2) assist Tribes and Native Corporations to develop their capacity to manage their own health programs; and 3) serve as an advocate for American Indians and Alaska Natives in health related matters.

The IHS health services are delivered by a complex combination of Federally staffed and managed (Federal Administration) health care facilities and programs, contracts with private health care providers, and contracts and grants with Tribal organizations and Alaska Native corporations to staff and manage health care facilities and programs for their respective populations (Tribal Administration).

The Federal Administration program includes 75 service units (administrative subdivision of an IHS Area), 43 hospitals, 66 health centers, five school health centers and approximately 100 smaller health stations and satellite clinics. The Tribal Administration program includes 52 service units, seven hospitals, 73 health centers, two school health centers and approximately 250 smaller health stations and satellite clinics. Priority medical care services not readily available from either federal or Tribal direct care programs are purchased from over 2,000 private providers. In addition, various health care and referral services are provided to Indian people in urban settings through 34 urban health programs, and special alcoholism and substance abuse services are provided through programs operated by Indian organizations.

The President's Fiscal Year (FY) 1991 appropriation request for the IHS account is $1,278,924,000 a net increase of $100,587,000 over the FY 1990 adjusted appropriation of $1,178,337,000. In addition to general budget authority the IHS will collect approximately $84 million in Medicare and Medicaid reimbursements. This represents a $4 million increase over FY 1990 estimated collections of $80 million. These reimbursements will continue to be used for correcting deficiencies cited by the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations, the Health Care Financing Administration, and for maintaining accreditation and certification of IHS facilities.

The IHS continues to be in the forefront of innovative developments regarding the prevention of illness, especially involving alcohol and substance abuse. Reduction of modern causes of disease and disability require a different set of precepts and disciplines than in the past when it was so beneficial to sanitize water supplies or provide for immunizations. Techniques now required to prevent life-style associated pathology require educating health care providers to the new discipline of health promotion/disease prevention; changing the life-styles of the health care providers themselves to be leaders in self-health promotion; and efforts to secure the involvement of the respective communities in the development and "ownership" of their own health promotion activities. The latter in turn requires changing the life-styles of the tribal leaders themselves.

As a result of the pioneering efforts by the IHS there is a growing momentum in various Indian communities directed at wellness. For example, at least two tribes, the Akhioka Village in Alaska and the Cheyenne River Sioux tribe in South Dakota, have now declared that they intend to be free of the adverse consequences of alcoholism by the year 2000.

The IHS emphasizes the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act, Public Law 93-638 as amended by Public Law 100-472, by actively assisting tribes and tribal organizations to assume the operation and management of hospital and health clinics activities which serve them. The IHS will continue active collaboration with tribal governments to plan, develop, and implement additional Self-Determination health care delivery systems, improve existing systems, and increase tribal awareness and understanding of the self-determination process. The FY 1991 Request includes funding to self-determination activities.

The complexities in the scope, array and delivery of services by the IHS require constant review and oversight by IHS of the management and control of appropriated resources. Adequate internal controls for the protection of resources from fraud, waste and abuse are critically important to the overall effectiveness of the organization. Adequate controls will require additional resources and the IHS will continue to evaluate the extent of resources required while continuing to seek more efficient ways to maximize the resources available.

Quality management is emphasized at all levels of the IHS. Focused, action-oriented reviews of selected administrative systems are conducted by the IHS and for the long term a management culture is developing that is devoted to finding better ways to deliver more - and higher quality - health care services to American Indians and Alaska Natives with the resources available. The FY 1991 Request includes funds to further the efforts of the IHS quality management program.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

The health of Indian people, as reflected in mortality rates and longevity, continues to improve. More services are available to Indian people than ever before. The IHS is committed to supporting and promoting activities that maintain a sound program of providing comprehensive care while at the same time strengthening efforts to promote wellness by health promoting behaviors and reductions of risk factors.

The dramatic rates in infant and maternal mortality continue. The infant mortality for the American Indian and Alaska Native population living in reservation states fell from 62.7 per 1,000 live births in 1955 to 9.7 in 1985, a decrease of 85 percent. The maternal rate for American Indians and Alaska Natives dropped from 82.6 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births in 1957-1959 to 8.2 in 1984-1986, a decrease of 90 percent. This rate is only slightly higher than the U.S. All Races rate of 7.8 for 1985.

The IHS continues its focus on quality assurance of health care delivery systems. The IHS now employs more physicians to provide care than at any time in the past. The level of competence of physicians continues to improve. Over 70 percent of all physicians are now licensed; over 95 percent are board certified or specially trained in a medical specialty.

Hospitals and Clinics

The IHS has attained an unprecedented Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO) accreditation for 41 of its 43 hospitals and all 7 tribally operated hospitals. This is far above the national average for comparable facilities. All IHS hospitals are certified by the Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA) as Medicare providers.

The IHS continues to provide an increasing number of services to an increasing number of Indians. The IHS outpatient visits have increased from 0.5 million in FY 1955 to 4.9 million in FY 1988 including contracted services and tribal clinics (comparable data for the U.S. population does not exist). In the past 8 years alone, an average of one million annual visits have been added. The IHS hospital admissions have increased from 50,000 in FY 1955 to 104,000 in FY 1988, an increase of 108 percent; nearly twice the increase experienced by other U.S. short-stay community hospitals.

Alcoholism and Substance Abuse

Since 1978, the death rates associated with alcohol among American Indians and Alaska Natives has declined by 52 percent, a rate of decline twice that of the U.S. population.

In 1989, more than 250 individual Tribal Action Plans addressing alcoholism and substance abuse have been developed and implemented and 88 percent of Federally-recognized tribes passed resolutions authorizing formulation of Tribal Coordinating Committees to address alcoholism and drug abuse problems in their communities.

Four of the 11 Regional Treatment Centers (RTC) designed for adolescents as authorized in P.L. 99-570 are renovated and operational. To date four have utilized construction funds authorized by Section 4227 of P.L. 99-570. They are located in the Acoma-Canoncito-Laguna Service Unit of the IHS Albuquerque Area, Cherokee, North Carolina of the IHS Nashville Area, Shiprock, New Mexico of the IHS Navajo Area, Tahlequah, Oklahoma of the IHS Oklahoma City Area. Two facilities located at Fairbanks and Sitka, Alaska, of the IHS Alaska Area are operational but not renovated. Approximately 125 young persons are now receiving a high level of care in facilities designed specifically for the needs of their communities. Other IHS Areas were provided funds for the purchase of inpatient chemical dependency treatment for Indian youth pending completion of their plans for RTCs. In FY 1990, facility renovation is expected to commence on treatment centers in the IHS Aberdeen and Phoenix Areas. Occupancy of a leased facility is also expected in the IHS Portland Area.

The special chemical dependency treatment project for adult Navajos living in Gallup, New Mexico, will continue. During the period of March 1988 to November 1989, 223 clients received residental treatment at an average of 28 days. A follow-up questionnaire to 160 clients after 30 days yielded a response of 70; of which 13 had a relapse, but 57 indicated continued sobriety and better health. An evaluation of the project is expected to be reported to the Congress in FY 1990.

Over 33,000 community members, alcoholism program workers, health educators, social workers, BIA/tribal educators and law enforcement officers were trained through community education and training programs established in every IHS Service Unit.

Dental Health

In FY 1988, 32 percent of the eligible population received dental examinations (direct and contract). Approximately the same percentage is projected for FY 1990 and FY 1991. In FY 1988, approximately 0.47 teeth were extracted per person examined. In FY 1990 and subsequent years, the extraction rates are expected to decline gradually as a result of water fluoridation and sealant programs.

Fluoridation is the cornerstone of the IHS' efforts to reduce the level of tooth decay among the Indian population. In FY 1988, 53 percent of all water systems were fluoridating at adequate levels compared to 45 percent in FY 1987. In FY 1988, the percent of active (those reporting at least once annually) flouridation systems delivering at least minimally acceptable levels of flouride was 80 percent compared to 64 percent in FY 1984. Continued emphasis on implementation of the IHS water fluoridation policy is expected to result in improved access to this important preventive measure.

In response to increasing public and professional concerns, the IHS Dental program continues to implement a comprehensive infection control policy in all clinics. Like other dental care providers, the IHS is experiencing a significant increase in costs of supplies related to infection control, such as gloves and masks. The costs of these supplies have increased over four fold since 1985.

Special projects have been implemented to address the prevention of baby bottle tooth decay and to assess its impact on the permanent dentition. A collaborative project with the Administration for Children, Youth and Families (ACYF), an agency in the Family Support Administration, is underway at multiple sites in the IHS which is designed to decrease the prevalence of this condition by 50 percent.

Mental Health

In FY 1988, the IHS Mental Health Program provided 174,000 client contacts and 26,000 days of inpatient care. A draft national mental health plan has been prepared which describes the current status of the Mental Health Program for American Indians and Alaska Natives and makes recommendations for improvement. A special initiatives team has been established to provide community consultation and analyses to address violent behaviors including suicide, homicide, child abuse, child sexual abuse, elderly abuse, and spouse/partner abuse. The team responded to over 150 requests from all IHS areas in FY 1988. The special team developed suicide prevention policies, a suicide register format, program planning to address domestic violence, child abuse and neglect team development, policy development for family violence for the IHS, and assistance with community mobilization programs to address these critical and pressing problems.

Contract Care

Approximately 1,500 contracts are maintained annually with regularly used health care providers. Care provided under these contracts includes inpatient and outpatient hospital care, physician services, patient and escort travel, dental care, and support services such as medical consultation, laboratory services and radiology services. The quality of contract health care is being reviewed and evaluated through quality assurance projects in seven IHS areas.

Contract Health Service operations at the 12 IHS Area Offices are being automated. The IHS payment policy published in the Federal Register continues to be implemented. A majority of the hospital and medical care contracts currently utilize this policy.

In FY 1989, the IHS expanded the services of the Fiscal Intermediary (FI): (1) to process and make payments on dental claims for seven of the twelve IHS areas; (2) to review claims for appropriateness of services, abuse, fraud and waste; and (3) to prepare a "Standard Set of Reports" for IHS management. The reports contain cost and utilization information, including analyses of utilization, billed charges and IHS payments.

An evaluation of the FI was conducted in FY 1989. According to available data, the IHS has over the last three fiscal years increased its "purchasing power" substantially. This increase is a result of the IHS entering into a Diagnosis-Related Group (DRG) or other reduced payment type of contract with providers. The FI provides a screening and control function for the IHS payment policy. In FY 1989 provider contractors billed the IHS $41,738,500 and the IHS paid $33,920,500 according to its payment policy, thereby saving $7,818,000. These management efficiencies have resulted in additional care for Indian people.

The operation of the Catastrophic Health Emergency Fund (CHEF) resulted in the obligation of $12,065,300 with over 700 qualifying cases. There remain approximately 300 open case files from FY 1989 CHEF cases and nearly 100 cases were unable to be funded. Funds recovered under the Federal Medical Care Recovery Act (FMCRA), amounting to $753,972, were utilized in FY 1989 by CHEF.

Self-Determination

The IHS and Tribal governments continue consultation and participation as a national process. The fifth annual national Tribal-IHS workshop held in Denver was attended by approximately 350 participants, of which 75 percent were tribal representatives. The workshop theme "Consultation in Process - A Positive Approach" reflected the workshop goal of ensuring continued tribal involvement in operations and policy issues having an impact on the provision of health services to Indian people.

The IHS has presented AIDS prevention education programs in all Indian communities and has met with all Health Boards and many tribal leaders to discuss this epidemic. The AIDS program is integrated within the preventive and clinical sections of the IHS health care program.

A major activity in FY 1989 was the development of regulations for the implementation of the Indian Self-Determination Act Amendments of 1988 (P.L. 100-472). The IHS involved the Bureau of Indian Affairs and about 500 Federally recognized tribes throughout the nation in the regulation development process. Numerous preparatory working sessions and two major regulation writing workshops, attended by 260-310 tribal, IHS, BIA and other officials, resulted in the line-by-line analysis of a 150-page working document. Reports on the development process were regularly mailed to nearly 1,000 IHS and tribal officials.

In FY 1989, the IHS developed and implemented the Tribal Management Program for American Indians and Alaska Natives. Fifty-one grants were awarded to tribes or tribal organizations. Fifty-three percent of the tribal management projects were to determine the feasibility of contracting IHS health care programs or to develop plans for the actual contracting of an IHS health care program at a future date. The remaining 47 percent were training and staff development designed to enhance the management capabilities of tribal staff.

EMPHASIS OBJECTIVES

In addition to the key program accomplishments described above, which will be continued in FY 1991, some additional objectives that will be emphasized in FY 1990 and FY 1991 will be:

- Implementation of a comprehensive plan for quality management at all levels of the IHS. Principal elements include internal control reviews and corrective action measures in focused administrative and program areas.
- Formulation of comprehensive planning strategies that support the long term goals of IHS and enhance present and future outcomes in management quality, organizational structure, health status, and Indian self-determination.
- In collaboration with tribes and tribal organizations, the IHS will continue to apply effective quality assurance measures and will systematically monitor and coordinate quality assurance activities.

- Improvement of the information systems policy, manpower, and equipment infrastructure at all levels of the IHS.
- Increase IHS recruitment/retention efforts by further development of loan repayment and special pay programs; and, emphasis of retention through local efforts of recognition of deserving employees; involvement of professional staff in planning and policy development; attention to security in the workplace and the neighborhood.
- Indian Self-Determination and participation with tribes for health promotion and improved health program operations throughout the IHS will be advanced.
- Emphasis will be placed on a comprehensive effort to improve the planning, design, and quality of Indian health care facilities, biomedical equipment, and institutional environment.
- Clinical programs will continue to receive major attention with specific emphasis on the gap between patient needs and demends at IHS hospitals and the resources available to meet these needs; and attention will focus on programs in maternal and child health, health promotion and disease prevention, mental health, and alcoholism and substance abuse.

The FY 1991 budget request of $1,278,924,000 in new budget authority, including approximately $404,287,000 for tribal operations, assures delivery of high quality health care to American Indians and Alaska Natives. The IHS will emphasize management improvements to strengthen the administration of IHS programs in the most cost effective manner. In FY 1991, the IHS will continue to allocate its resources among Areas based on documented health deficiencies, while inviting full participation of tribes in planning, managing, staffing and evaluating IHS programs.

The IHS will continue to direct its resources at areas of greatest health concern for the Indian population such as the three leading killers of Indians: heart disease, injuries, and cancer; the causes of increased years of premature life lost; mortality of infants and children; and certain important conditions such as diabetes, mental health, and alcohol and substance abuse.

1. Clinical Services

(a) Federal and Tribal Health Delivery

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct								
Approp.	9,491	$665,955,000	9,756	$793,425,000	9,871	$864,086,000	+115	+$70,661,000
Reimb...	1,029	84,813,628	1,029	98,015,000	1,029	134,015,000	--	+36,000,000
Total	10,520	$750,768,628	10,785	$891,440,000	10,900	$998,101,000	+115	+$106,661,000

Funded From Direct Appropriation:	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-In:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise..................................	—	N/A	—	+$10,347,000
2. Annualization of 1990 Pay Raise.....................	--	N/A	--	+3,525,000
3. Within Grade Promotions............................	—	N/A	--	+4,802,000
4. FY 1991 Federal Employees' Retirement System........	--	$14,557,000	--	+712,000
5. One Extra Paid Day..................................	—	247,428,000	--	+951,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transportation of Things	--	20,758,000	--	+685,000
7. Increased Cost of Patient Travel.....................	--	2,268,000	--	+75,000
8. Increased Cost of Rents, Communications, and Utilities..	—	21,300,000	--	+705,000
9. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants..............................	—	362,622,000	--	+19,790,000
10. Increased Cost of Other Contractual Services	--	10,033,000	--	+332,000
11. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment........	—	12,632,000	—	+484,000
12. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies.........	--	70,713,000	--	+3,531,000
13. Increased Cost of Printing...........................	—	1,189,000	--	+40,000
14. Increased Cost for Land and Structures...............	--	122,000	--	+4,000
15. Increased Payment to PHS Service and Supply Fund.....	—	18,485,000	—	+991,000
16. Increased Payment to Working Capital Fund............	--	2,799,000	--	+313,000
17. Information Resource Management Systems..............	—	N/A	+37	+1,650,000
18. Annualization of Staffing and Operating Costs of New Facilities:				
Toppenish, WA Health Center.........................	8	313,000	+37	+1,540,000
Wolf Point, MT Health Center........................	15	537,000	+4	+174,000
Total, Built-in Increases......................	--	---	+78	+$50,651,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Decreases:				
Built-In:				
Non-Recurring Costs for Tribal Contract Conversion..........................	--	N/A	--	-$16,000,000
Program Increases:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 Pay Raise.............	--	N/A	--	+$10,573,000
2. Staffing/Operating Costs of Replacement Facilities:				
Ft. Hall, ID Health Center (12 months).........	--	N/A	+32	+1,306,000
Kyle, SD Health Center (12 months).............	31	1,174,000	+5	+226,000
Total, Staffing/Operating..................	--		+37	+1,532,000
3. Human Immunodeficiency Virus......................	--	N/A	--	+663,000
4. Tribal Contract Support...........................	--	N/A	--	+22,600,000
5. Information Resource Management System...........	--	N/A	--	+5,815,000
Total, Program Increases..................	--	N/A	+37	+$41,183,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise...............	--	N/A	--	-$5,173,000
Net Change (Budget Authority)..............	--	N/A	+115	+$70,661,00
Funded from Reimbursements:				
Increase Collection of Medicare and Medicaid Reimbursements..	--	80,000,000	--	+$4,000,000
Proposed Collection of Reimbursements from Private Insurers...	--	8,000,000	--	+32,000,000
Net Change (Reimbursements)................	--	N/A	--	+$36,000,000
Total Net Change (Reimbursements).......	--	N/A	+115	+$106,661,000

Hospital and Health Clinic Program

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct Approp.	8,612	$578,939,000	8,767	$694,173,000	8,861	$757,988,000	+94	+$63,815,000
Reimb...	1,029	80,953,989	1,029	95,015,000	1,029	131,015,000	--	+36,000,000
Total	9,641	$659,892,989	9,796	$789,188,000	9,890	$889,003,000	+94	+$99,815,000

Funded From Direct Appropriation:	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise	--	N/A	--	+$9,405,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise	--	N/A	--	+3,244,000
3. Within Grade Promotions	--	N/A	--	+4,275,000
4. FY 1991 Employer Contributions to Federal Employees' Retirement System	--	$13,716,000	--	+665,000
5. One Extra Paid Day	--	225,606,000	--	+867,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transportation of Things	--	18,208,000	--	+601,000
7. Increased Cost of Patient Travel	--	2,268,000	--	+75,000
8. Increased Cost of Rents, Communications, and Utilities	--	21,254,000	--	+703,000
9. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants	--	279,689,000	--	+16,827,000
10. Increased Cost of Other Contractual Services	--	987,000	--	+33,000
11. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment	--	11,688,000	--	+439,000
12. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies	--	65,170,000	--	+3,297,000
13. Increased Cost of Printing	--	894,000	--	+30,000
14. Increased Payments to PHS Service and Supply Fund	--	18,485,000	--	+991,000
15. Increased Payments to Working Capital Fund	--	2,799,000	--	+313,000
16. Information Resource Management Systems	--	N/A	+37	+1,650,000
17. Annualization of Staffing and Operating Costs of New Facilities:				
Toppenish, WA Health Center	5	183,000	+24	+964,000
Wolf Point, MT Health Center	14	501,000	+4	+162,000
Total, Built-in Increases	--	---	+65	+$44,541,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Decreases:				
Built-in:				
Non-Recurring Costs for Tribal Contract Conversion	—	N/A	--	-$16,000,000
Program Increases:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 Pay Raise	—	N/A	--	+$9,732,000
2. Staffing/Operating costs of Replacement Facilities:				
Fort Hall, ID Health Center (12 months)	—	N/A	+26	+1,044,000
Kyle, SD Health Center (12 months)	24	$884,000	+3	+122,000
3. Human Immunodeficiency Virus	—	N/A	--	+663,000
4. Tribal Contract Support	—	N/A	—	+22,600,000
5. Information Resource Management Systems	—	N/A	—	+5,815,000
Total, Program Increases	—		+29	+$39,976,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise	—	N/A	--	-$4,702,000
Net Change (Budget Authority)	—	N/A	+94	+$63,815,000
Funded from Reimbursement:				
Increase Collection of Medicare and Medicaid Reimbursements	—	$80,000,000	--	+$4,000,000
Proposed Collection of Reimbursements from Private Insurers	—	8,000,000	—	+32,000,000
Net Change (Reimbursements)	—	—	--	+$36,000,000
Total Net Change (Reimbursements)	—	—	+94	+$99,815,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATIONS

Federal Programs

The hospital and health clinics budget activity, a major component of the IHS and tribal health delivery system, is the primary source of funds for the delivery of clinical health care to the Indian people. In achieving the goal of raising the health status of Indian people to the highest level possible, the IHS places greatest emphasis upon the provision of comprehensive, preventive, and curative services and upon community aspects of ill-health. Within this general concept of community oriented primary care, emphasis is placed upon maintaining basic inpatient and ambulatory patient care services to Indian people living on or near traditional Indian lands.

The hospital and health clinics activity includes inpatient care, ambulatory patient care, emergency medical services, laboratory and other support services, and special initiatives such as the model diabetes program. Included in this activity are programs operated and managed by both the IHS and the tribes. The IHS directly operates 43 hospitals, 66 health centers, 5 school health centers, and approximately 100 smaller health stations and satellite clinics. The IHS continues to emphasize the implementation of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act, Public Law 93-638, by assisting tribes and tribal organizations in the assumption of the operation and management of hospital and health clinics activities.

The provision and maintenance of high quality clinical health care continues to be a high priority of the hospital and health clinics activity. The standards set by the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO) and the Medicare standards established by the Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA) are utilized as one measure of the quality of clinical health care provided through the IHS and tribally operated health facilities.

Inpatient services range from nonspecialty inpatient care in the smaller hospitals, to a full range of services including specialty care in the larger hospitals and medical centers. The leading causes of hospitalization are: complications of pregnancy, childbirth, and puerperium; injuries and poisonings; digestive system diseases; and respiratory system diseases.

The outpatient care program includes primary medical care, preventive, and rehabilitative health services. Patients requiring more definitive or extensive care are referred to IHS or contract hospitals.
Post-hospitalization or follow-up care is provided through the outpatient care program and the CHR program.

Much of the preventive health program is carried out by the outpatient care program, including: Prenatal care, maternal and child health services, well-child clinics, family planning, care of high risk mothers and infants, school health, and the immunization program. In FY 1989, the immunization level was 87 percent for the target population. The outpatient care program also includes the prevention and control of communicable disease (including tuberculosis, venereal diseases, and trachoma) and early detection and treatment of chronic conditions such as diabetes, arthritis, otitis media, orthopedic conditions and heart diseases, as well as preventive mental health and alcohol and substance abuse programs.

In addition to the patient care services provided through the IHS and tribally operated health facilities, the IHS purchases medical care services from non-IHS providers. These contract health services, considered to be an integral part of the comprehensive primary care system, are used to supplement and complement other available health care resources. The contract health care system includes specialty care which is not available in IHS facilities or primary and secondary care in those locations where the IHS does not have a facility. The IHS has approximately 871 contracts with private providers (primarily for the delivery of specialty care such as obstetric, surgery, radiology, pathology, and laboratory services).

An integral part of the hospitals and clinics program is continuing education which allows health professionals to upgrade their skills or develop new skills, thereby improving their quality of care. This activity is essential to good medical care and is a very important component of IHS physician recruitment efforts.

Tribal Health Programs

The tribes, through contracts with the IHS, operate 7 hospitals, 73 health centers, 2 school health centers and approximately 250 smaller health stations and satellite clinics.

The Tribal health programs continue the comprehensive preventive and curative service delivery systems initiated by the IHS. The emphasis in tribally operated programs is on maintaining basic inpatient and ambulatory patient care services in all of the facilities. These activities also include special initiatives such as the model diabetes program and model alcohol and drug prevention programs in the spirit of self-determination and with the involvements of the tribes in their own programs.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

Tribal Contractor Indirect and Contract Support Funds

The FY 1991 budget request for the Indian Health Service (IHS) contains an estimate of the need for Tribal Contract Support Costs. The FY 1991 request for contract support costs reflects the need as intended by P.L. 93-638.

The IHS has continued to gather data from tribal contractors and the best information available at this time indicates that the tribal contract support requirement for FY 1991 is $100,981,000. This amount provides an increase of $22,600,000 for unfunded contract support costs, $2,500,000 to continue the support of those contract support costs incurred by tribal contractors funded by the Indian Self-Determination Fund in FY 1991, and $4,021,000 for inflation.

	FY 1989	FY 1990	FY 1991
Contract Support Cost.........	---	---	$22,600,000
Indirect Cost.................	47,019,000	71,860,000	78,381,000

Alcoholism and Substance Abuse Services

Since 1978, the alcoholism age adjusted death rate among American Indians/Alaska Natives (AI/AN) has declined by approximately 52 percent. This improvement can be attributed to several factors:

- the continued training of Indian Health Service (IHS) and Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) staff, community members, and IHS Primary Care Providers;
- the increased number of alcoholism and substance abuse programs from 36 to over 309; and, most importantly AI/AN communities are taking responsibility for their own wellness;
- a continued emphasis on the concepts of wellness, health promotion/disease prevention.

Revision of the Chemical Dependency Management Information System will be completed in Fiscal Year (FY) 1990. Implementation of the system on a service-wide basis will begin in FY 1990 to better manage all inpatient, outpatient, education and prevention activities.

Anti-Drug Abuse Activities (Public Law 99-570 and Public Law 100-690)

Four Youth Regional Treatment Centers (RTCs) authorized by Public Law (P.L.) 99-570 are renovated and operational as of November 1989. These include Albuquerque, Oklahoma City, Nashville, and Navajo Areas. Two facilities located in Fairbanks and Sitka of the Alaska Area are operational but not renovated. Three other IHS Areas (Phoenix, Aberdeen, and Portland) are renovating facilities and are expected to be operational in FY 1991 or 1992. The remaining Areas are providing inpatient chemical dependency treatment through contracts pending completion of their plans for RTCs. Plans are currently being developed for each Area to assure access to inpatient treatment by youth. Resources from the existing IHS alcoholism program (P.L. 94-437) augment the adolescent alcoholism and substance abuse program by providing for a broader range of comprehensive services.

Expanded community education and training activities will continue to be provided for Indian leaders, community members, BIA and IHS staff. More than 1,000 health care providers have been targeted to receive training in alcohol and other drug abuse prevention and treatment this year.

Alcohol continues to be the drug of choice in Indian Country. However, alcohol and poly-drug use, specifically cannabis, cocaine, and opiates, are increasing among AI/AN adults and adolescents. With the passage of P.L. 99-570 and P.L. 100-690, increased chemical dependency treatment, education, and prevention activities are provided to meet this need.

In FY 1990, adult and youth community rehabilitation, aftercare, and follow-up services will continue to be developed and will enhance the basic alcoholism and substance abuse program.

The IHS will continue to work with the AI/AN communities to integrate the treatment and prevention of alcoholism and substance abuse into the health delivery system.

ANTI-DRUG ABUSE ACTIVITIES

INDIAN ALCOHOL AND SUBSTANCE ABUSE PREVENTION AND TREATMENT ACT OF 1986, P.L. 99-570

Amount of Funds for P.L. 99-570	FY 1987 Appropriation	FY 1988 Appropriation	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate
Sec. 4227 Regional Treatment Centers/Youth	$3,000,000	$5,000,000	$7,500,000	$10,517,000	$11,066,000
Construction and Renovation	5,500,000	---	---	---	---
Staffing	---	---	---	---	---
Sec. 4228 Education Training - Community	3,500,000	1,500,000	1,500,000	1,481,000	1,564,000
Training - IHS/BIA	---	---	---	---	---
Community Rehabilitation/ Aftercare	9,000,000	9,000,000	9,000,000	8,887,000	9,385,000
Sec. 4229 Navajo Rehabilitation Program	200,000	200,000	200,000	198,000	209,000
Health Promotion/Disease Prevention	500,000	500,000	500,000	494,000	522,000
P.L. 99-570 SUB-TOTAL.	$ 21,700,000	$16,200,000	$18,700,000	$21,577,000	$22,746,000

AMENDMENTS TO INDIAN ALCOHOL AND SUBSTANCE ABUSE PREVENTION AND TREATMENT ACT OF 1986, P.L. 100-690

Amount of Funds for P.L. 100-690	FY 1987 Appropriation	FY 1988 Appropriation	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate
Sec. 2212 Increase Aftercare Service	---	---	---	$1,250,000 1/	$1,312,000 1/
Sec. 2212 Construction and Renovation	---	---	---	1,500,000	---
Sec. 2213 Expand Community Education	---	---	---	700,000	739,000
Sec. 2215 Expand Urban Programs	---	---	---	2,768,000	2,923,000
Sec. 2217 Provide Contract Health Services	---	---	---	5,000,000	5,280,000
P.L. 100-690 SUB-TOTAL. . . .	---	---	---	$11,218,000	$10,254,000
GRAND TOTAL P.L. 99-570 and P.L. 100-690	$21,700,000	$16,200,000	$18,700,000	$32,795,000	$33,000,000

1/ Includes Funding for 3 FTEs.

Model Diabetes Services

In FY 1989, the IHS continued to expand diabetes activities. Three new "programs of excellence" were established, one each in Alaska, Tucson, and Northern Minnesota. Care of the lower extremity and gestational diabetes received special focus through training, surveillance, development of educational materials for patients, and funding of 17 initiatives to improve footcare in individual service units. Diabetes coordinators have assessed care in 10 areas to identify discrete objectives for improving care. Educational materials were circulated to providers and patients through a newly established clearinghouse. An orientation manual for new physicians was developed and implemented. The epidemiologist continued analysis and surveillance of data in chronic diseases. The number of mothers identified as having diabetes prior to delivery increased from 1.1 percent in 1981 (169 of 15,360 deliveries) to 4.1 percent in 1988 (675 of 16,478 deliveries). There is also a significant increase in chronic and end-stage renal disease associated with diabetes. In 1978, 35 AI/AN individuals were reported with end-stage renal disease requiring dialysis. In 1987, the figure rose to 1,150 individuals. The AI/AN people have an incidence of end-stage renal disease three times greater than the white U.S. population. American Indian/Alaska Native people with diabetes have an incidence of end-stage renal disease 9.3 times greater than the U.S. population. Because of this shift two experienced IHS physicians have been trained in nephrology to provide program direction in this disease area.

The following tables (developed through the Diabetes Control Network) illustrate the incidence, prevalence, and costs by Area of ESRD and Dialysis.

TABLE 1

Dialysis in American Indians
All IHS Areas
FY 1989
Prevalence Data

Area	Total No.	% with Diabetes	Prevalence Rate
Aberdeen	111	79%	1,349
Alaska	12	58%	144
Albuquerque	110	64%	1,188
Bemidji	45	73%	827
California	71	65%	1,369
Nashville	35	91%	914
Navajo	208	51%	1,116
Oklahoma	170	65%	793
Phoenix	230	91%	2,414
Portland	54	52%	501
Tucson	38	97%	1,876
All Areas	1,084	72%	1,071

IHS - 86

Incidence Data

Area	Total No.	% with Diabetes	Incidence 1/ Rate	Risk 2/ Ratio
Aberdeen	27	93%	1,349	2.9
Alaska	3	67%	144	0.3
Albuquerque	28	64%	1,188	4.2
Bemidji	19	79%	827	1.8
California	18	67%	1,369	3.4
Nashville	6	83%	914	1.9
Navajo	52	65%	1,116	2.4
Oklahoma	43	65%	793	1.8
Phoenix	58	66%	2,414	5.3
Portland	14	50%	501	1.1
Tucson	5	80%	1,876	4.3
All Areas	273	69%	1,071	2.3

1/ Rate per million population
2/ Compared to white rate of 115

Dialysis in American Indians
FY 1989
IHS Costs Associated with Dialysis by Area

Area	Direct & CHS	Transportation	Total
Aberdeen	$ 55,875	$ 80,062	$ 135,937
Alaska	—	—	—
Albuquerque	230,567	75,000	305,567
Bemidji	34,551	51,254	85,805
California	142,896	76,908	219,804
Nashville	Not available	5,000	5,000
Navajo	319,307	75,000	394,307
Oklahoma	4,632	5,000	9,632
Phoenix	1,172,699	75,000	1,247,699
Portland	36,030	50,000	86,030
Tucson	142,300	115,660	257,960
All Areas	2,138,857	608,884	2,747,741

Dialysis Units on Indian Reservations
FY 1989

Area	Service Units with Dialysis Units
Aberdeen	Cheyenne River Ft. Berthold (under development) Pine Ridge Rosebud Standing Rock (under development) Turtle Mountain (planned)
Alaska	Anchorage
Albuquerque	ACL Zuni
Bemidji	Red Lake Cass Lake
Billings	Ft. peck Northern Cheyenne
California	None
Nashville	Choctaw
Navajo	Tuba City Chinle
Oklahoma	None
Phoenix	Salt River Parker Peach Springs
Portland	None
Tucson	Sells

Injury Prevention Activities

Injuries, primarily Motor Vehicle Crashes (MVC), are the second leading cause of death and disability among American Indians, with current age adjusted rates over twice the national average. Efforts begun in the mid-1970s have resulted in substantial improvement: age adjusted injury death rates have fallen from 144/100,000 in 1975 to 83/100,000 in 1986, with the rate decreasing from three times to about two times the national average.

These results have been achieved through a number of specific IHS initiatives including development of an Emergency Medical Services (EMS) system, Injury Control initiatives, IHS Alcoholism programs, and tribal and community educational efforts.

Intensive efforts have been made to train Emergency Medical Technicians (EMTs) to national certification levels, as well as intensive training efforts for those physicians and nurses staffing the many remote IHS emergency rooms. Through 1987 over 700 IHS physicians have attended the American College of Surgeons Advanced Trauma Life Support Seminars (ATLS).

Future efforts will continue to maintain a high quality EMS response program, with increasing efforts of Injury Prevention to identify and correct the cause of injuries, including efforts to reduce alcohol-related MVC's.

Hospital/Health Center Accreditation

Currently, 48 of the 50 hospitals operated by the IHS and the tribes are accredited by the JCAHO, an increase of 74 percent during the past decade. In addition, 44 IHS health centers are accredited by the JCAHO. All of the IHS hospitals are certified by the HCFA as Medicare providers and all free standing health centers are certified for participation in the Medicaid program.

Resource Requirements

The IHS Resource Requirement Methodology (RRM) and allocation process integrates health status indicators along with population and workload statistics. This adds a vitally important epidemiologic element for the distribution of our fiscal and professional resources. This combination of health status indicators, added to the more standard population and workload statistics, is particularly well-suited to the unique health needs of our service population and to the goal of IHS to provide comprehensive community oriented primary care with emphasis on Health Promotion/Disease Prevention. The dramatic accomplishments of the IHS have resulted from a broader community approach employing Public Health Nurses (PHNs), alcoholism workers, mental health workers, sanitarians, etc. which more appropriately address the higher unemployment, lower socioeconomic status, and the complications of poor nutrition, sanitation, and housing found in many American Indian communities.

Emergency Medical Services

The prehospital segment of the Emergency Medical Services (EMS) program is managed primarily through contractual arrangements with tribal groups managing about 75 EMS programs, including approximately 500 Native American Emergency Medical Technicians (EMT's) manning over 100 ambulances. These prehospital services includes: first responder support, ambulance costs, EMT salaries and benefits, equipment, training, and communication costs. Other emergency services provided by nontribal activities include primarily emergency air transportation services and some private sector provided ambulance services where these are available to tribal communities.

Infant Mortality

The IHS budget does not include a budget line item for infant mortality. The reduction of infant mortality is an objective whose activities are integrated into the overall comprehensive health care program of the IHS.

However, based on FY 1988 service data, the estimated FY 1991 expenditure from the IHS Hospitals and Clinics budget category for the reduction of infant mortality will be $189,978,144. In addition the Urban Health Activity provides an estimated $1,680,000 for the reduction of infant mortality.

The overall American Indian and Alaska Native (AI/AN) infant mortality for 1986 (1985, 1986 and 1987 average) by IHS Area was 11.2 deaths per 1,000 live births. When the AI infant deaths in IHS Areas of California, Oklahoma City and Portland, areas where Indian infant deaths are known to be underreported, are excluded, the AI/AN infant mortality rate for 1986 was 13.1. Beginning in 1989, the National Center for Health Statistics will tabulate AI/AN infant births by the race of the mother. This will partially correct for underreported deaths and will result in a numerically higher AI/AN infant mortality rate. The greatest AI/AN infant mortality is experienced postneonatally (28 days to 11 months). Fifty-four percent of infant deaths are postneonatal, 1.5 times U.S. All Races. Forty-six percent of infant deaths are neonatal, 0.6 times U.S. All Races. The leading causes of AI/AN infant mortality are: Sudden Infant Death Syndrome, congenital anomalies, and conditions related to prematurity.

These infant mortality rates represent a significant decline from those rates that prevailed at the inception of the IHS when infant mortality exceeded 50 deaths per 1,000 live births in many IHS Areas. The 1986 rates represents a reduction of almost 50 percent from the IHS average of 22 deaths per 1,000 live births in 1976.

Programs that brought about these gratifying improvements will be continued with increased emphasis and include the following actions: strong coordination of interagency and tribal resources to build improved community Maternal and Child Health (MCH) programs, especially those addressing prenatal care and FAS; strengthen quality assurance and surveillance in order to identify areas of weakness and high risk population subsets; assess the outreach (public health nursing and community health representative) needs.

FY 1988 Data

	Number of Visits
Outpatient Department Visits	
Prenatal Care	
IHS Direct	173,337
Contract	5,415
Tribal Direct	26,059
Contract	1,601
Pregnancy Related	
IHS Direct	67,147
Contract	3,704
Tribal Direct	6,830
Contract	499
Under 1 year of age	
IHS Direct	330,000
Contract	13,300
Tribal Direct	56,000
Contract	1,500
Discharges	
Deliveries	
IHS Direct	13,596
Contract	2,612
Tribal Direct	1,028
Contract	293
Pregnancy Related	
IHS Direct	5,533
Contract	681
Tribal Direct	230
Contract	44
Under 1 year of age	
IHS Direct	6,650
Contract	1,041
Tribal Direct	146
Contract	24
Newborns	
IHS Direct	13,229
Contract	1,614
Tribal Contract	362
Contract	72

Fetal Alcohol Syndrome (FAS)

The 1991 budget includes $1,132,000 for prevention of FAS: $100,000 to the University of Washington for research in FAS among American Indians and Alaska Natives; $255,000 distributed to IHS Areas for FAS prevention program activities; $527,000 for a special prenatal treatment program for Alaska Native women who abuse alcohol and are pregnant; $250,000 for a FAS training team located in the IHS Headquarters-West to provide training in FAS for IHS professionals and Indian communities.

The incidence rate of FAS among American Indians and Alaska Natives (AI/AN) appears to be high when compared with the national incidence, generally thought to be around two (2) per 1,000 live births. Documentable AI/AN rates are based on data from population subsets and cannot be generalized. Listed here are some documented rates (cases per 1,000 live births) of FAS among some IHS service area groups.

Group	Rate*
Southwest Plains Indian Groups (1983)	9.2 to 10.3 (a)
Navajo Indians (1983)	1.5
CPHA Hospitals** (1981 to 1986)	2.9 (b)
Alaska Area (1981 to 1988)	5.1 to 2.7 (c)
Billings Area (1980 to 1986)	15.6 to 2.7 (c)

---

* Cases per 1,000 live births

** Commission on Professional and Hospital Activities data reported by Centers for Disease Control (MMWR, Vol. 37,SS3)

(a) range of incidence rates of various small Indian groups

(b) average rate for 6 years (1981 to 1986)

(c) reduction of reported cases over time as reported by IHS Area professionals (the lower rates may reflect under reporting)

National attention to FAS in Indian communities was recently prompted by an NBC network news series on the alcohol problems on the Pine Ridge Reservation; and The Broken Cord, a widely acclaimed book written by Michael Dorris about his adopted Indian child with FAS.

Congenital anomalies are responsible for approximately 25 percent of AI/AN neonatal deaths. Fetal Alcohol Syndrome is likely the single most important cause of totally preventable congenital disorders. The risk factors leading to FAS are usually complex, and intervention requires multidisciplinary, interagency and community cooperation. Communities that begin to see the tragedy of FAS soon realize that FAS prevention is directly related to general community based alcohol control efforts.

The IHS believes that the problem of FAS needs to be addressed through the following program elements: community education and involvement; health professional training; identification of intensive outreach services for high risk mothers; and surveillance and tracking of victims of FAS.

Health Promotion and Disease Prevention

In addition to the activities funded under Preventive Health (Sanitation, CHR, etc.) the Indian Health Service (IHS) funds a number of Health Promotion/Disease Prevention (HP/DP) activities under the hospitals and health clinics activity. This includes such activities as nutrition programs, prenatal education, some immunization activity, and a wide variety of clinical preventive services including blood pressure screening, screening of infants for anemia, etc. The majority of these services are provided as part of the routine operations of the hospitals and clinics by staff of the facilities including nurses, pharmacists, nutritionists, physicians and others.

The IHS continues to be in the forefront of innovative developments regarding the prevention of illness, especially involving alcohol and substance abuse. Reduction of modern causes of disease and disability require a different set of precepts and disciplines than in the past when it was so beneficial to sanitize water supplies or provide for immunizations. Techniques now required to prevent life-style associated pathology require educating health care providers to the new discipline of health promotion/disease prevention; changing the life-styles of the health care providers themselves to be leaders in self-health promotion; and efforts to secure the involvement of the respective communities in the development and "ownership" of their own health promotion activities. The latter in turn requires changing the life-styles of the tribal leaders themselves.

However, as a result of the pioneering efforts by the IHS there is a growing momentum in various Indian communities directed at wellness. For example, at least two tribes have now declared that they intend to be free of the adverse consequences of alcoholism by the year 2000.

Exciting new developments are emerging including community-based wellness centers, school and community-based adolescent clinics with a prevention emphasis, and community-based health screening activities. The IHS is actively evaluating the effects of these activities and numerous publications documenting the results are now or soon will be in print. In one case, published data suggests that use of the community wellness center and its programs reduces dependency upon medication and that the center users utilize medical services at a lower level than those individuals who don't participate in wellness center activities.

Continued evaluation of the appropriateness and effectiveness of such services will continue in FY 1991. The goal of IHS is to assure that local capacity to develop and utilize the most effective public health techniques is nurtured and expanded. In FY 1991, the IHS will utilize the $3 million appropriated by Congress in FY 1990 to support demonstration projects in HP/DP, adolescent or teen prevention clinics, cancer surveillance and prevention, and injury prevention programs.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

The Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriation Bill, 1990, House Report, Senate Report, and Conference Report requested that additional information be included in the FY 1991 Justification of Appropriation Estimates. The additional information follows.

Newly Recognized Tribes

The IHS has been in contact with the Bureau of Indian Affairs to establish a working relationship to engage in regular communications about such matters as the status of potential newly recognized and restored tribes. The IHS also tracks legislation introduced on behalf of tribes seeking recognition or restoration. The IHS is not aware of any tribes scheduled to receive federal recognition in FY 1991. However, should there be any, the IHS will develop the funding requirements for such tribes and include in subsequent budget requests.

Distribution of Hospital and Health Clinics Funding

The FY 1990 Conference Report requested the following information:

"The IHS should include in the fiscal year 1990 and future year budget justifications a table and accompanying narrative displaying the distribution of funding within the hospitals and clinic programs."

FY 1990 Explanation of Initial Reserves
($000)

Change of Station	$6,481
Special Physician Pay	12,570
Evaluation and Research	2,500
Training	6,375
Recruitment	2,994
Resource Patient Management System	2,500
Emergencies and Equipment	7,235
Total	$40,655

Types of Expenses
Hospitals and Clinics
(Dollars in Millions)

	FY 1989 Actual Obligations	FY 1990 Projected Obligations	FY 1991 Projected Obligations
Personnel Services 1/	$283.6	$308.3	$330.5
Contracts and Grants 2/	184.3	258.7	286.7
Supplies and Equipment 3/	63.6	74.7	85.7
Rent, Communications, and Utilities 4/	28.6	31.8	33.3
Travel and Transportation 5/	17.9	19.9	21.1
All Other 6/	.8	.8	.7
	$578.8	$694.2	$758.0

This table displays the various expense categories that are supported by the Hospitals and Clinics sub-sub-activity.

1/ Includes personnel salaries and benefits.

2/ Includes contractual arrangements both tribal and nontribal for such needs as consultative services from medical specialties, maintenance of equipment, laboratory services laundry and towel service, medical services, etc.

3/ Includes such costs as medical and other supplies, medical equipment, automatic data processing equipment, etc.

4/ Includes costs of rents, leases, communications, and utilities associated with the operation of the hospitals, clinics, and related activities.

5/ Includes such costs as patient and escort travel, change of station associated with physicians and other health professionals, shipping costs of equipment and supplies, etc.

6/ Includes cost of printing and other miscellaneous goods or services.

Types of Programs
(Dollars in Millions)

Actual Hospitals and Health Clinics	Projected FY 1989	Projected FY 1990	FY 1991
Program Support	$58.5	$59.7	$60.9
Substance Abuse	6.6	7.0	7.4
Emergency Medical Services	4.9	5.2	5.5
Model Diabetes Services	3.0	3.2	3.4
Continuing Medical Education	1.5	1.6	1.7
Research and Evaluation	1.6	2.5	2.6
Laundry, Linen and Housekeeping	12.5	13.2	13.9
Facilities and Grounds Maintenance	27.0	28.6	30.2
Recruitment and Retention	4.2	4.3	4.6
Dietary and Nutrition	12.3	13.0	13.7
Medical Supplies	44.8	49.5	55.4
Resources Patient Management System (RPMS)	2.5	3.9	11.4
General Clinical Care:			
Obstetric	15.0	15.9	16.8
Surgical	12.5	13.2	13.9
Optometric	4.3	4.5	4.8
Laboratory and X-ray	26.5	28.0	29.6
Pharmacy	20.2	21.4	22.6
Social Services	3.8	4.0	4.2
General Medical	76.4	94.6	104.6
Quality Assurance	1.1	1.2	1.3
Therapeutic Services	2.3	2.4	2.5
Medical Records	8.6	9.1	9.6
Biomedical Engineering	2.5	2.6	2.7
Special Care Units (ICU,CCU,...)	5.1	5.4	5.7
Tribal Contracts	160.0	223.8	248.9
Other	61.1	76.4	80.1
Total	$578.8	$694.2	$758.0

Wolf Point, MT and Toppenish, WA Annualization of Staffing and Operating Costs

The FY 1990 appropriation provided full year funding for the Sacaton, AZ, and Ft. Thompson health facilities and partial funding for staffing and operating costs of the Wolf Point, MT Health Center and Toppenish, WA Health Center scheduled to open during FY 1990. The Senate Report 101-85 included the Committee's expectation that the Administration include full year annualization of the staffing and operating costs for these facilities in the Fiscal Year 1991 budget request.

The FY 1991 budget request includes resources for the full annualization of the staffing and operating costs for those facilities requiring additional funds.

	Wolf Point, MT Health Center		Toppenish, WA Health Center	
	Amount	FTEs	Amount	FTEs
Hospitals and Clinics	$162,000	4	$964,000	24
Dental Program	—	—	421,000	10
Mental Health	12,000	—	155,000	3
Sanitation	12,000	—	42,000	1
Public Health Nursing	21,000	—	131,000	3
Health Education	11,000	—	38,000	1
Total	$218,000	4	$1,751,000	42

These facilities will be staffed at approximately 85 percent of the identified staffing requirements in FY 1991.

Equipment

The FY 1990 Senate Report included a directive that future budget justifications should include: (1) a summary of the intended equipment purchases for the fiscal year by Area/category; (2) a summary by Area/category of equipment priority needs, which distinguishes new and replacement equipment; and (3) the management agreements with other Federal agencies for the procurement of excess or surplus property or equipment, including an estimate of the anticipated equipment to be acquired through that avenue.

The information is included on the following pages.

EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR FY 1990
ADDITIONAL

TABLE 1

AREAS	MEDICAL 1/	SCIENTIFIC 2/	TECHNICAL 3/	DENTAL 4/	TOTAL
ABERDEEN	$513,000	$34,000	$70,000	$20,000	$637,000
ALASKA	546,000	53,000	10,000	47,000	656,000
ALBUQUERQUE	338,000	101,000	—	74,000	513,000
BEMIDJI	61,000	—	—	2,000	63,000
BILLINGS	435,000	90,000	36,000	99,000	660,000
CALIFORNIA	—	1,000	—	—	1,000
NASHVILLE	305,000	86,000	—	44,000	435,000
NAVAJO	970,000	129,000	38,000	—	1,137,000
OKLAHOMA	510,000	403,000	—	191,000	1,104,000
PHOENIX	549,000	49,000	—	11,000	609,000
PORTLAND	343,000	138,000	26,000	97,000	604,000
TUCSON	77,000	30,000	—	15,000	122,000
HQ WEST	2,000	23,000	—	—	25,000
TOTAL	$4,649,000	$1,137,000	$180,000	$600,000	$6,566,000

1/ Medical Equipment includes medical and surgical instruments, anesthesia, blood transfusion, and oxygen apparatus, x-ray equipment and film and viewing devices, hospital furniture, ophthalmologist equipment, iron lung, psychotherapy equipment, etc.

2/ Scientific Equipment includes chemical analysis instruments, lab equipment, time measuring devices, hazard detecting equipment, mercury vapors measurement equipment, drafting and surveying equipment, liquid gas measurements, pressure measuring equipment, scales, balances, etc.

3/ Technical Equipment includes hospital and surgical clothing, medical sets and kits, ophthalmologist lens, recording devices, etc.

4/ Dental Equipment includes dental instruments, dental lab equipment, operating chair, dental metal, orthodontic instruments and supplies, dental and lab furniture, teeth replacement equipment, molds, etc.

EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR FY 1990

TABLE 2

Table 2 outlines by priority the intended equipment purchases. 1/

AREAS	PRIORITY 1	PRIORITY 2	PRIORITY 3	TOTAL
ABERDEEN	$633,000	$2,000	$2,000	$637,000
ALASKA	655,000	1,000	—	656,000
ALBUQUERQUE	504,000	—	9,000	513,000
BEMIDJI	63,000	—	—	63,000
BILLINGS	652,000	8,000	—	660,000
CALIFORNIA	1,000	—	—	1,000
NASHVILLE	426,000	—	9,000	435,000
NAVAJO	1,114,000	—	23,000	1,137,000
OKLAHOMA	1,053,000	10,000	41,000	1,104,000
PHOENIX	597,000	1,000	11,000	609,000
PORTLAND	568,000	—	36,000	604,000
TUCSON	109,000	—	13,000	122,000
HQ EAST	—	—	—	—
HQ WEST	13,000	1,000	11,000	25.000
TOTAL	$6,388,000	$23,000	$155,000	$6,566,000

1/ Priority 1 includes all capitalized equipment, Priority 2 include all non-capitalized equipment, and Priority 3 includes emergency equipment (life threatening or urgent).

EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR FY 1990
ADDITIONAL
PRIORITY 1

TABLE 3

Tables 3-5 outlines by category and priority the proposed equipment needs for Fiscal Year 1990.

AREAS	MEDICAL 1/	SCIENTIFIC 2/	TECHNICAL 3/	DENTAL 4/	TOTAL
ABERDEEN	$513,000	$30,000	$70,000	$20,000	$633,000
ALASKA	546,000	52,000	10,000	47,000	655,000
ALBUQUERQUE	338,000	92,000	—	74,000	504,000
BEMIDJI	61,000	—	—	2,000	63,000
BILLINGS	435,000	82,000	36,000	99,000	652,000
CALIFORNIA	—	1,000	—	—	1,000
NASHVILLE	305,000	77,000	—	44,000	426,000
NAVAJO	970,000	106,000	38,000	—	1,114,000
OKLAHOMA	510,000	352,000	—	191,000	1,053,000
PHOENIX	549,000	37,000	—	11,000	597,000
PORTLAND	343,000	102,000	26,000	97,000	568,000
TUCSON	77,000	17,000	—	15,000	109,000
HQ EAST	—	—	—	—	—
HQ WEST	2,000	11,000	—	—	13,000
TOTAL	$4,649,000	$959,000	$180,000	$600,000	$6,388,000

1/ See Table 1 for examples.

IHS - 100

EQUIPMENT PURCHASES FOR FY 1990
ADDITIONAL
PRIORITY 2

TABLE 4

AREAS	MEDICAL	SCIENTIFIC 1/	TECHNICAL	DENTAL	TOTAL
ABERDEEN	—	$2,000	—	—	$2,000
ALASKA	—	1,000	—	—	1,000
ALBUQUERQUE	—	—	—	—	—
BEMIDJI	—	—	—	—	—
BILLINGS	—	8,000	—	—	8,000
CALIFORNIA	—	—	—	—	—
NASHVILLE	—	—	—	—	—
NAVAJO	—	—	—	—	—
OKLAHOMA	—	10,000	—	—	10,000
PHOENIX	—	1,000	—	—	1,000
PORTLAND	—	—	—	—	—
TUCSON	—	—	—	—	—
HQ EAST	—	—	—	—	—
HQ WEST	—	1,000	—	—	1,000
TOTAL	—	$23,000	—	—	$23,000

1/ See Table 1 for examples.

EQUIPMENT PURCHASES FOR FY 1990
ADDITIONAL
PRIORITY 3

TABLE 5

AREAS	MEDICAL	SCIENTIFIC 1/	TECHNICAL	DENTAL	TOTAL
ABERDEEN	—	$2,000	—	—	$2,000
ALASKA	—	—	—	—	—
ALBUQUERQUE	—	9,000	—	—	9,000
BEMIDJI	—	—	—	—	—
BILLINGS	—	—	—	—	—
CALIFORNIA	—	—	—	—	—
NASHVILLE	—	9,000	—	—	9,000
NAVAJO	—	23,000	—	—	23,000
OKLAHOMA	—	41,000	—	—	41,000
PHOENIX	—	11,000	—	—	11,000
PORTLAND	—	36,000	—	—	36,000
TUCSON	—	13,000	—	—	13,000
HQ EAST	—	—	—	—	—
HQ WEST	—	11,000	—	—	11,000
TOTAL	—	$155,000	—	—	$155,000

1/ See Table 1 for examples.

IHS - 102

EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENT FOR FY 1990
REPLACEMENT

TABLE 6

Table 6 outlines replacement equipment by Area and by category for Fiscal Year 1990. The useful life of equipment ranges from 5-15 years. Replacement requirements are based on the factors of life expectancy, obsolescence, reasons of health, safety or protection, normal wear and tear, destruction, pilferage and any other factors which result in the need to replace existing supplies and equipment. The source for this information is contained in the Consolidated Memorandum of Receipt (CMR).

AREAS	MEDICAL 1/	SCIENTIFIC 2/	TECHNICAL 3/	DENTAL 4/	TOTAL
ABERDEEN	$1,149,000	$358,000	$8,000	—	$1,515,000
ALASKA	29,000	2,000	—	$1,000	32,000
ALBUQUERQUE	1,899,000	472,000	95,000	274,000	2,740,000
BEMIDJI	441,000	15,000	1,000	40,000	497,000
BILLINGS	423,000	118,000	12,000	50,000	603,000
CALIFORNIA	1,000	—	—	—	1,000
NASHVILLE	71,000	38,000	—	1,000	110,000
NAVAJO	1,466,000	639,000	11,000	64,000	2,180,000
OKLAHOMA	2,069,000	1,078,000	159,000	584,000	3,890,000
PHOENIX	406,000	142,000	6,000	125,000	679,000
PORTLAND	96,000	65,000	—	52,000	213,000
TUCSON	41,000	51,000	10,000	14,000	116,000
HQ WEST	1,000	11,000	—	—	12,000
TOTAL	$8,092,000	$2,989,000	$302,000	$1,205,000	$12,588,000

1/ See Table 1 for examples.

EXCESS EQUIPMENT PURCHASES

AREAS		ACQUIRED FOR FY 1989	PROJECTION FOR FY 1990
ABERDEEN			
	Medical, Dental and X-Ray Equip.	$38,000	$37,000
	Instrument and Laboratory Equip.	9,000	—
	Furniture	24,000	19,000
	Office Machine	23,000	19,000
	Subtotal	$94,000	$75,000
ALASKA			
	Vehicles, Trailers, and Cycles	$4,070,000	$4,700,000
	Communication Equipment	678,000	350,000
	Medical, Dental and X-Ray Equip.	1,357,000	1,050,000
	Furniture	—	700,000
	Household and Commercial Furnish.	679,000	700,000
	Subtotal	$6,784,000	$7,500,000
ALBUQUERQUE			
	Furniture	$2,000	$1,000
	Household and Commercial Furnish.	1,000	1,000
	Subtotal	$3,000	$2,000
BEMIDJI			
	Medical, Dental and X-Ray Equip.	—	$1,000
	Furniture	—	4,000
	Subtotal	—	$5,000
BILLINGS			
	Vehicles, Trailers and Cycles	$98,000	—
	Medical, Dental and X-Ray Equip.	83,000	$68,000
	Furniture	11,000	13,000
	Office Machine	7,000	9,000
	Subtotal	$199,000	$90,000

EXCESS EQUIPMENT PURCHASES

AREAS		ACQUIRED FOR FY 1989	PROJECTION FOR FY 1990
CALIFORNIA			
	Medical, Dental and X-Ray Equip.	$81,000	$10,000
	Furniture	9,000	10,000
	Subtotal	$90,000	$20,000
NASHVILLE			
	Furniture	—	$500
	Office Machine	—	500
	Subtotal	—	$1,000
NAVAJO	Medical, Dental and X-Ray Equip.	$11,000	—
	Office Machine	26,000	—
	Household and Commercial Furnish.	—	$15,000
	Subtotal	$37,000	$15,000
PHOENIX	Vehicles, Trailers and Cycles	$8,000	—
	Medical, Dental and X-Ray Equip.	17,000	$15,000
	Furniture	16,000	—
	Subtotal	$41,000	$15,000
PORTLAND	Furniture	$4,000	$2,000
	Subtotal	$4,000	$2,000
TUCSON	Medical, Dental and X-Ray Equip.	—	$5,000
	Furniture	$3,000	12,000
	Household and Commercial Furnish.	—	33,000
	Subtotal	$3,000	$50,000

EXCESS EQUIPMENT PURCHASES

AREAS	ACQUIRED FOR FY 1989	PROJECTION FOR FY 1990
HEADQUARTERS EAST		
Furniture	$10,000	$15,000
Subtotal	$10,000	$15,000
HEADQUARTERS WEST		
Materials Handling Equipment	—	$5,000
Refrigeration/Air Conditioning Eq	—	5,000
Automatic Data Processing Equip.	—	5,000
Furniture	—	5,000
Office Machine	—	5,000
Subtotal	—	$25,000
Total	$7,265,000	$7,815,000

IHS - 106

Management Agreements With Other Federal Agencies

The procurement of excess property or equipment is in conjunction with the General Services Administration. Department of Defense installations are considered another source for the acquisition of excess property and equipment. The value of equipment acquired from excess in 1989 was $7,265,000. The anticipated equipment to be acquired from excess in 1990 is approximately $7,815,000. The IHS does not have agreements with any other Federal Agencies for the acquisition of excess property or equipment.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Increase +$44,541,000 +37 Positions/+65 FTEs

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $44,541,000 to fund the increase cost of providing health services to IHS beneficiaries and other built-in cost increases associated with on-going operations. Included in this increase is $9,405,000 for the FY 1991 pay raise; $3,244,000 for the annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $4,275,000 to fund within grade promotions in accordance with Section 5335 of Title 5, U.S.C.; $665,000 for the Employer contributions to the Federal Employees' Retirement System; $867,000 for one extra paid day; $601,000 for increased cost of program travel and transportation of things; $75,000 for increased cost of patient travel; $703,000 for increased cost of rents, communications, and utilities; $16,827,000 for the increased cost of providing health care through the contracts or grants mechanisms; $33,000 for increased cost of other providing contractual services; $439,000 for increased cost of purchasing medical and other equipment; $3,297,000 to fund the increased cost of purchasing medical and other supplies; $30,000 for increased cost of printing; $991,000 for increased payments to PHS service and supply fund; $313,000 for increased payments to the working capital fund; $1,650,000 (37 positions/37 FTEs) for continuing support of the Information Resource Management Systems; and $1,126,000 and 28 FTEs for the annualization of staffing costs for the newly constructed Toppenish, WA ($964,000/24 FTEs) and Wolf Point, MT ($162,000/4 FTEs) health centers.

Program Increase +$39,976,000 and +30 Positions/+29 FTEs

Program Restoration +$9,732,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

Staffing/Operating Costs of New/Replacement Facilities +$1,166,000 (30 positions/29 FTEs)

This increase will provide funding for the staffing and operating costs for the Fort Hall, ID and Kyle, SD replacement health centers. The Fort Hall center is scheduled to open in October 1990 and the Kyle center opened in July 1989. These facilities will be staffed at approximately 84 percent of the identified staffing requirements. The IHS methodology for staffing of facilities indicates that this level of funding would permit reasonable staffing of these health centers. Adequate resources and staffing of newly constructed health facilities contributes to the recruitment and retention of medical doctors and also promotes self-determination activities.

Human Immunodeficiency Virus +$663,000

The AIDS Program is an integral part of the IHS health care delivery system and is consuming an increasing amount of the IHS program resources. In FY 1990, the IHS AIDS funding was removed from the IHS budget and incorporated in the combined PHS AIDS budget. The addition of the IHS $663,000 request for the AIDS program, in the FY 1991 budget will allow the IHS to maintain its current AIDS prevention and education activities as well as assist in funding the early treatment of HIV infected individuals.

Tribal Contract Support Costs +$22,600,000

The IHS estimates that the tribal requests for contract support costs, as authorized by the P.L. 93-638 amendments will approximate an additional $22.6 million in FY 1991. The IHS is continuing to collect data from tribal contractors to determine the most accurate amount that is needed for contract support costs. The IHS has determined that the tribal contractors have been experiencing shortfalls in areas previously unfunded or underfunded, such as general insurance, facilities maintenance, etc.

In conclusion, IHS believes that its $22.6 million request for contract support costs is necessary to fully implement P.L. 100-472. To the extent that future information indicates that the increase of $22.6 million is not needed to fully fund tribal contract support costs, IHS would recommend that any remaining balances be re-directed to other high priority needs.

Information Resource Management Systems +$5,815,000

The request of $5,815,000 for Resource and Patient Management System (RPMS) computer systems will fund a mix of hardware resource requirements to implement the various levels of RPMS from the facility level to management information requirements of Headquarters. To facilitate this implementation, this request provides for capital items such as minicomputer disk storage upgrade and mainframe central processing unit upgrade to meet a range of requirements on a recurring basis.

The FY 1991 funding request is to upgrade/replace hardware to provide increased capacity at larger hospitals, upgrade/replace existing older RPMS systems, and upgrade the data center to a current level of technology.

Presently the twenty largest hospitals are experiencing disk storage capacity problems and are unable to install the full range of available patient management modules, i.e. pharmacy, patient care component, admission/discharge/transfer, laboratory, etc. Fifty-eight mid-level hospitals and clinics and the twelve area offices are also in a similar position of requiring additional computing capacity and storage. The data center continues to experience gross inefficiencies due to decades-old tape storage technology. The current experience of capacity problems in these large facilities will halt further implementation of RPMS modules which have proven their utilization in patient management.

The IHS information systems implementation is at a critical point. Additional capital investment resources for automation will provide the needed thrust to continue development and implementation and preserve the investment in automated patient care management. A delay at this time will result in additional cost in the future and loss of investment in current technology.

This request will provide for continued implementation of patient management related software and enhance the quality of care through enabling retrieval of patient related data for users who require patient information, either individually or in the aggregate, on systems which require upgraded central processing units and disk technology for historical data storage and retrieval.

The request of $5,815,000 for Computer Systems will fund the following initiatives:

1. $3,510,000 to fund phase I of a three year plan to procure a total of 34 computer systems. This increase will allow the IHS to procure 9 computer systems required for the RPMS to run at the largest hospitals, Area Offices, and RPMS support systems (Division of Resource and Patient Management Systems/Division of Data Processing Services Center). These systems will provide for additional computing capacity, historical data storage, and software programs to enhance patient care and resource allocation.

2. $1,237,500 to fund Phase I of a two year plan to upgrade/replace existing RPMS systems to support additional RPMS software modules, computing capacity, and data storage. These upgrades will provide for increased capacity at the mid-level workload facilities and provide redundant systems for data security. Replacement of older Plessey systems running RPMS applications is included and provide similar benefits.

3. $1,067,500 to fund Phase I of a three year plan to upgrade the data processing services center at Albuquerque to a current level of technology through improving the computing and data storage capacity which will enhance user output/requirements. The upgrade will provide for a upgraded central processing unit and for data to be stored on disk systems eliminating older, slower tape technology now used for data storage.

Program Decrease -$4,702,000

The FY 1991 request includes a program decrease of $4,702,000 to reflect absorption of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise. This decrease will be absorbed in the activities that will permit the IHS to provide approximately the same level of direct medical care services as provided in FY 1990.

IHS - 110

The following table provides additional supporting information regarding the clinical services programs.

Impact Data

The workloads for the IHS operated hospitals and clinics are reflected in the following table:

Workload	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate 1/	FY 1991 Estimate 1/
Average Daily Patient Census (excluding newborns)	873	850	815
Hospital Admissions (excluding newborns)	71,243	70,000	68,000
Average Length of Stay (days)	4.5	4.4	4.4
Births	13,148	13,200	13,300
Outpatient Visits (all clinics)	3,614,390	3,700,000	3,800,000

1/ These estimated data indicate a decline in inpatient services (with the exception of perinatal services) and an increase in outpatient services. The implication is that with an expected increase in the IHS facility user population, more resources will be required to effectively address their outpatient demands. While the inpatient census is projected to decline, the absolute resource requirement is expected to stay level or increase in order to maintain basic inpatient service capability either directly or through purchase from non-federal sources. Workload data for inpatient and outpatient services rendered through purchase from non-federal services are not included in the data shown above. These estimates are based on 7 years of actual IHS workload data (1983-1989) through the use of a least-squares linear regression methodology. These estimates are based on historical IHS hospital and clinic usage trends - not funding levels.

Dental Services

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct Approp..	676	$31,485,000	672	$32,939,000	687	$36,000,000	+15	+$3,061,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise....................................	—	N/A	—	+$603,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise...............	—	N/A	—	+206,000
3. Within Grade Promotions..............................	—	N/A	—	+442,000
4. FY 1991 Employer Contributions to Federal Employees' Retirement System..................	—	$348,000	—	+21,000
5. One Extra Paid Day....................................	—	14,037,000	—	+54,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transportation of Things..	—	1,075,000	—	+35,000
7. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants................................	—	10,498,000	—	+587,000
8. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment....	—	701,000	—	+38,000
9. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies.....	—	2,512,000	—	+133,000
10. Increased Cost of Printing.........................	—	66,000	—	+2,000
11. Annualization of Staffing and Operating Costs of New Facility: Toppenish, WA Health Center....................	2	83,000	+10	+421,000
Total, Built-in Increases....................	—	N/A	+10	+$2,542,000
Program Increases:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 Pay Raise..............	—	N/A	—	+$610,000
2. Staffing/Operating Costs of Replacement Facilities: Port Hall, ID Health Center (12 months)........	—	N/A	+5	+210,000
Total, Program Increases....................	—	N/A	+5	+$820,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise...............	—	N/A	—	-$301,000
Net Change....................................	—	N/A	+15	+$3,061,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

Federal Programs

The major goal of the IHS Dental Program is to raise the level of oral health among American Indians and Alaska Natives to the highest possible level. Oral diseases constitute a major public health problem among American Indians. Because the most common oral diseases, dental caries (tooth decay) and periodontal (gum) disease, seldom result in death or severe physical disability, the importance of controlling these health problems is often overshadowed by other priorities. However, the cost of treating these diseases and the social disability resulting from poor oral health should not be ignored, because these health problems are largely preventable.

The prevalence of dental caries and periodontal disease is higher among American Indians than among the U.S. population principally because they have inadequate access to fluoridation and other preventive services and basic dental care.

Data from the IHS 1983-84 Oral Health Survey and IHS Dental Data Reporting System have been used to assess oral health status and allow the identification of areas with need for special initiatives or additional resources. The data indicates:

- Only 20 percent of Indian children ages 5 to 17 are free from tooth decay versus 37 percent nationally.
- Dental decay experience in permanent teeth of 5-17 year olds is 2 times the national average.
- Only 53 percent of decayed permanent teeth are filled versus 79 percent nationally.
- 50 percent of Indian preschool children have baby bottle tooth decay.
- 70 percent of Indian children require restorations versus 25 percent nationally.
- Access to dental care (32 percent utilization) is lower than the national average (57 percent).
- Less than 30 percent of the Indian population has access to fluoridated drinking water, versus about 55 percent of the U.S. population.

The IHS believes that a continuing emphasis on community health promotion/disease prevention is essential to long-term improvement in the oral health of American Indians and Alaska Natives. Clinical treatment emphasizes those services which prevent or control disease and thereby preserve the dentition. The dental and environmental health programs have continued to emphasize water fluoridation as the most effective means of preventing tooth decay. Steady progress has been made over the past six years with over 70 percent of systems with fluoridation equipment providing optimally fluoridated water. Other preventive efforts such as fluoride mouth rinsing and placement of tooth sealants are now widely accepted and utilized. Plans are being developed to assess the affect of these interventions in 1991.

Tribal Health Programs

Tribal programs continue to exert a growing influence in the management of oral health programs. The number of tribally managed programs continues to grow steadily. Staff employed by or providing care in tribal programs now comprise almost 30 percent of the total dental clinical staff.

The IHS Dental Program has encouraged the growth of tribal management in an organized, rational, health oriented manner in which tribal programs are able to assess their oral health needs and measure activities to meet these needs. To enhance this process, tribal programs were well represented in the IHS 1983-84 Oral Health Survey which measured the oral health status of Indian patients. Tribal program utilization of the IHS Dental Data Reporting System has also been improving.

The IHS Dental Program attempts to facilitate consistent operation of tribal programs and the quality of care provided by defining standard expectations of dental programs whether operated by IHS or under tribal contracts. The IHS has offered training and technical assistance to assist tribal programs in meeting goals established by these scopes.

Tribal programs also participate in the IHS Dental Quality Assurance Program in which clinical care, program management and community activities are appraised. When deficiencies are found, tribal employees are encouraged to participate in IHS continuing education courses or to pursue local training to improve their programs.

The IHS continues to work with tribes and tribal organizations to encourage maximum participation in the planning and operation of health care services and will continue to actively support self-determination for tribal organizations. Participation of tribes or tribal organizations in self-determination activities is dependent upon, and determined by, the initiative of individual tribes.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

The Dental Program has increased its efforts to extend primary preventive services to both users and nonusers of clinical dental services. The following initiatives undertaken or continued in FY 1990 reflect our ongoing commitment to efficient resource use to improve oral health through health promotion and disease prevention.

In FY 89 the IHS Dental Program conducted an in-depth program review in the Albuquerque Area. Program reviews for the Billings and Portland Areas had to be postponed due to staff turnover in the Headquarters dental program. Both direct and indirect measures of evaluation of the structure, process and outcome of clinical, community, and prevention programs, are now being used in all service unit reviews.

In response to increasing public and professional concerns, the IHS Dental Program continues to implement a comprehensive infection control policy in all clinics. Like other dental care providers, the IHS is experiencing a significant increase in costs of supplies related to infection control, such as gloves and masks. The costs of these supplies have increased over four fold since 1985.

During 1989 the dental program completed the final draft for the facilities planning manual, Vol. I., as well as draft revision of environmental health and the safety standards and the dental quality assurance document.

The IHS screened 225 applicants for potential service with the IHS Dental program. Performance reviews were conducted on all IHS dentists and career counseling was provided to 150 dentists. Twenty-three recruiting visits were conducted in 1989 to dental schools. The IHS still experiences difficulty filling vacancies and recruiting qualified dentists to the program. However, the extension of the IHS loan repayment program to dentists in FY 89 has had a significant, beneficial effect in retaining dental officers who would have otherwise left due to outstanding debt. These officers have agreed to serve in many of our traditionally hard-to-fill assignments, thereby strengthening our service delivery capacity.

Dental disease prevention coordinators have greatly aided IHS' ability to maintain a continuing focus on oral disease prevention activities. This is an example of the type of expertise which cannot be supported full-time at the service unit level but can be provided efficiently at the area office level to develop, implement and monitor local and area-wide initiatives which are essential to improving community oral health.

Fluoridation is the cornerstone of IHS' efforts to reduce the level of tooth decay among the Indian population. Fiscal year 1989 data indicate that the trend toward better reporting and compliance is continuing.

Dental sealant utilization continued to increase in FY 1989 and appears to be contributing to a decline in the need to provide fillings to children and adolescents. This may allow the program to treat a greater proportion of the large backlog of restorative needs of adults.

A number of research activities were conducted in conjunction with other Federal agencies:

Under a longstanding interagency agreement with the Administration for Children, Youth and Families (ACYF), the Dental Program continues to provide training and technical assistance to Head Start programs serving Indian children. With ACYF support, particular attention is being given to community efforts to prevent baby bottle tooth decay. In 1989 an interagency agreement continues between IHS and the National Institute of Dental Research (NIDR) to train an IHS dentist in oral medicine. This will build upon the research strength of NIDR and IHS's ability to apply this knowledge to the clinical setting.

Through cooperation with the Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA), fluoride mouth rinsing programs were continued in BIA schools during FY 1989.

In collaboration with the World Health Organization (WHO) and the National Center for Health Services Research, the IHS is participating in the Second International Collaborative Study of Oral Health. Examination sites include the Navajo, Pine Ridge and Rosebud reservations. It is anticipated that participation will greatly enhance our understanding of the socio-behavioral determinants of, and obstacles to, oral health among Native Americans. Data collection will be completed in 1990.

In conjunction with the Centers for Disease Control (CDC), a task force was established to make recommendations for developing appropriate public health strategies to address periodontal disease. Recommendations of the task force were presented in 1989 with evaluation of recommendations planned for 1990 and 1991.

RATIONALE FOR THE BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Net Change +$2,241,00/+10 FTEs

Built-In Increase +$2,542,000 +10 Positions/+10 FTEs Program Decrease -$301,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $2,542,000 to fund built-in cost increases. Included in this increase is $603,000 for the FY 1991 pay raise; $206,000 for the annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $442,000 to fund within grade promotions in accordance with Section 5335 of Title 5, U.S.C.; $21,000 for the Employer contributions to the Federal Employees' Retirement System; $54,000 for one extra paid day; $35,000 for increased cost of travel and transportation of things; $587,000 for the increased cost of providing health care through the contracts or grants mechanisms which support the provision of dental care by tribal organizations; $38,000 for increased cost of purchasing equipment used in the provision of dental services; $133,000 to fund the increased cost of purchasing medical and other supplies; $2,000 for increased cost of printing; $421,000 and 10 FTEs for the annualization of staffing costs for the newly constructed Toppenish, WA health center; and a program decrease of -$301,000 to reflect absorption of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise.

Program Increase +$820,000 +5 Positions/+5 FTEs

Program Restoration +$610,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

Staffing/Operating Costs of Replacement Facility +$210,000 (5 positions/5 FTEs)

This increase will provide funding for the staffing and operating costs for the Fort Hall, ID replacement health center scheduled to open in FY 1991. The facility is planned to be in operation on a full year basis and will be staffed at 82 percent of the identified staffing requirements. The IHS methodology for staffing of facilities indicates that this level of funding would permit reasonable staffing of this health center. Adequate resources and staffing of newly constructed health facilities contributes to the recruitment and retention of medical doctors and also promotes self-determination activities.

Impact Data

	1989 Actual*	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Persons Treated			
Total Number Treated.............	319,194	319,512	325,864
Treated Directly...............	293,219	293,256	298,874
By IHS Staff....................	212,789	212,816	216,893
By Tribal Staff................	80,430	80,440	81,981
Treated by Contract............	25,975	26,256	26,990
By IHS Contract................	21,722	21,957	22,571
By Tribal Contract.............	4,253	4,299	4,419
Services Provided			
Total Services Provided..........	2,157,883	2,159,890	2,202,709
Total Direct Services..........	1,995,709	1,995,962	2,034,198
By IHS Staff....................	1,466,758	1,466,944	1,495,046
By Tribal Staff................	528,951	529,018	539,152
Total Contract Services........	162,174	163,928	168,511
By IHS Contract................	132,918	134,356	138,112
By Tribal Contract..............	29,256	29,572	30,399

* Source of data is IHS Dental Data Reporting System and does not include Urban Indian Health. Some tribal programs, especially in Alaska have chosen to maintain their own data systems. This may result in future adjustments to tribal workload data.

Mental Health

	FY 1989 Appropriation FTEs	FY 1989 Appropriation BA	FY 1990 Appropriation FTEs	FY 1990 Appropriation BA	FY 1991 Estimate FTEs	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease FTEs	Increase or Decrease BA
Direct Approp..	199	$13,091,000	313	$21,244,000	319	$22,798,000	+6	+$1,554,000

	1990 Base FTEs	1990 Base BA	Change from Base FTEs	Change from Base BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise	--	N/A	--	+$332,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise	--	N/A	--	+73,000
3. Within Grade Promotions	--	N/A	--	+85,000
4. FY 1991 Employer Contributions to Federal Employees' Retirement System	--	$476,000	--	+24,000
5. One Extra Paid Day	--	7,785,000	--	+30,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transport of Things.	--	949,000	--	+32,000
7. Increased Cost of Rents, Commu., Utilities	--	46,000	--	+2,000
8. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants	--	40,468,000	--	+586,000
9. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment	--	78,000	--	+3,000
10. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies	--	121,000	--	+5,000
11. Annualization of Staffing and Operating Costs of New Facilities:				
Toppenish, WA Health Center	1	47,000	+3	+155,000
Wolf Point, MT Health Center	1	36,000	--	+12,000
Total, Built-in Increases		N/A	+3	+$1,339,000
Program Increase:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 pay raise	--	N/A	--	+$225,000
2. Staffing/Operating Costs of Replacement Facilities:				
Fort Hall, ID Health Center (12 months)	--	N/A	+1	+52,000
Kyle, SD Health Center (12 months)	--	N/A	+2	+104,000
Total, Program Increases	--	--	+3	+$381,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise	--	--	--	-$166,000
Net Change	--	--	+6	+$1,554,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATIONS

The IHS mental health program is a community oriented clinical service responding primarily to reservation populations with the following major objectives:

1) To provide the highest number of client contacts possible and quality care within the available resource. This includes access to the greatest possible extent to a full range of mental health services. However, the draft National Native American Mental Health Plan estimates that the FY 1989 level of staffing is less than half of the numbers needed to provide minimally adequate mental health services.

2) To assist Tribes and Native Corporations to develop, staff, and manage their own mental health program efforts to the extent decided upon by the respective tribes. This includes working with Indian communities to design, implement, and evaluate mental health programming efforts.

3) To work with other IHS and tribal clinical services to assure that both the health and mental health needs of the patients are addressed in an integrated fashion.

4) To provide consultation, training, and technical assistance in response to area and local requests.

5) To develop and implement standards for quality care, and plans to increase third party reimbursements, P.L. 93-638 program contracting, training, research, and continuing education for staff.

5) To encourage respect for, and sensitivity to, the cultural belief systems and traditional practices as they relate to the mental health of individuals, families, and communities, and to help sensitize persons who work with Indian people to the importance and impact that these unique cultural systems have on life style and behavior.

Funds from the hospital and health clinics budget activity are also used to address mental health problems. It is estimated that mental health problems are associated with more than one-third of the demands made on health facilities for services.

Tribal Health Programs

Twenty percent (20%) of mental health appropriations was spent by tribally contracted programs.

The IHS continues to work with tribes and tribal organizations to encourage maximum participation in the planning and operation of health care services and will continue to actively support self-determination for tribal organizations. Participation of tribes or tribal organizations in self-determination activities is dependent on and determined by the initiative of individual tribes.

The IHS will also continue to provide tribal officials technical assistance in carrying out the administrative management responsibilities required for the tribal operation of these Federally supported programs.

Federal Programs

Eighty percent of mental health appropriations were distributed to improve direct services. The IHS mental health program offers a wide variety of services at its many locations. This includes adult, child, and family services; inpatient, outpatient and community-based services; and linkages with other federal and state agencies. At some health care centers mental health services are available only on an emergency basis from contract health care providers.

The FY 1990 appropriation increases will staff a full time provider at each health care center. The primary focus of staff activity will be to address the mental health needs of children and dysfunctional families.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

The significant reduction over the past few years in the morbidity and mortality rates for many of the physical health problems affecting Indian populations has not been paralleled in the mental health area. On the contrary, many believe that mental health problems in American Indians and Alaska Natives have become more serious and more numerous in recent years. The rates of suicide, family violence, and child abuse and neglect are very high in many Native American communities. Problems of alcohol misuse, depression and anxiety frequently underlie and complicate physical disorders, including traumatic incidents, and require considerable attention from all care-givers.

The mental health program was able to maintain nearly the same level of outpatient care during FY 1989 as provided in FY 1988. While comparative figures for inpatient care are not yet available for FY 1989, it is expected that the combined direct and contract inpatient care demand will remain approximately constant when compared to previous years.

Progress has been made in improving the quality of mental health care provided by the IHS in the past year. Mental Health program and quality assurance initiatives in the past year have included: 1) reviews of six Area Mental Health programs; 2) provision of technical assistance and consultation to Tribes and IHS field staff on children's mental health program development, suicide and violence prevention, and mental health and social service data collection and analysis; 3) completion of the draft National Native American Mental Health Plan; and 4) implementation of a national conference on Indian mental health.

The mental health service budget was increased from $13.091 million in FY 1989 to $21.244 million in FY 1990. Of the $21.244 million, $18.111 million is available for allocation to the field for existing and new mental health services to Native American people. Other distributions from the FY 1990 budget are pay act costs ($.225 million), sequestration reduction ($.269 million), reserves ($.710 million), new facilities ($.129 million), and pay to North/South Dakota for involuntary commitment care costs ($1.800 million), totaling $3.133 million.

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Net Change +$1,173,000/+3 FTEs

Built-In Increase +$1,339,000 +3 FTEs/Program Decrease -$166,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $1,339,000 to fund built-in cost increases. Included in this increase is $332,000 for the FY 1991 pay raise; $73,000 for the annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $85,000 to fund within grade promotions in accordance with Section 5335 of Title 5, U.S.C.; $24,000 for the employer contributions to the Federal Employees' Retirement System; $30,000 for one extra paid day; $32,000 for the increased cost of travel and transportation of things; $2,000 for the increased cost of rents, communications, and utilities; $586,000 to fund the increased cost of providing health care through the contracts or grants mechanism which includes increased costs for vendor personnel which supports the contracts and grants to provide the interagency agreement among IHS, the BIA, and tribal outpatient mental health programs; $3,000 for increased cost of purchasing medical and other equipment; $5,000 for increased cost of purchasing supplies and materials used in the provision of mental health services; $167,000 and 3 FTEs for the annualization costs of the Toppenish, WA Health Center ($155,000/3 FTEs) and Wolf Point, MT Health Center ($12,000) and a program decrease of -$166,000 to reflect absorption of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise.

Program Increase +$381,000 +3 Positions/+3 FTEs

Program Restoration +$225,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

Staffing/Operating Costs of Replacement Facilities +$156,000 (3 positions/3 FTEs)

This increase will provide funding for the staffing and operating costs for the Fort Hall, ID ($52,000 1 position/1 FTE) and Kyle, SD ($104,000 2 positions/2 FTEs) replacement health centers. The Fort Hall Center is scheduled to open in October 1990 and the Kyle Center opened in July 1989. These facilities are planned to be in operation on a full year basis and will be staffed at approximately 84 percent of the identified staffing requirements. The IHS methodology for staffing of facilities indicates that this level of funding would permit reasonable staffing of these health center. Adequate resources and staffing of newly constructed health facilities contributes to the recruitment and retention of medical doctors and also promotes self-determination activities.

Impact Data

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Client Contacts.................	171,000	181,000	217,000

Alcoholism

	FY 1989 Appropriation		1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct Appropriation.	4	$30,684,000	4	$33,044,000	4	$34,880,000	—	+$1,836,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise	—	N/A	—	+$7,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise	—	N/A	—	+2,000
3. FY 1991 Employer Contributions to Federal Employees' Retirement System	—	$17,000	—	+2,000
4. Increased Cost of Travel and Transport of Things.		453,000		+15,000
5. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants	—	31,967,000	—	+1,790,000
6. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment	—	70,000	—	+2,000
7. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies	—	241,000	—	+8,000
8. Increased Cost of Printing	—	229,000	—	+8,000
Total, Built-in Increases	—	—	—	+1,834,000
Program Increase:				
Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 pay raise	—	N/A	—	+$6,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise	—	N/A	—	-$4,000
Net Change	—	—	—	+$1,836,000

IHS - 122

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATIONS

Alcoholism and alcohol abuse continue to be leading causes of health problems among Native Americans. It is widely held that 95 percent of American Indians and Alaska Natives are affected either directly or indirectly by a family member's abuse of alcohol. This belief is supported by data obtained from the National Center for Health Statistics, which shows that four of the top ten causes of death among Indian people may be directly related to alcohol abuse. Information from the National Clearinghouse for Drug and Alcohol Information, suggests that American Indians have the highest reported frequency of problems associated with drinking when considered with other special groups. In addition to social devastation, alcoholism causes or contributes to an array of physical disabilities.

Presently, the IHS funds more than 309 American Indian/Alaska Native alcoholism/substance abuse programs that provide a multitude of treatment and prevention services to rural and urban communities. It is estimated that 95 percent of the 1,400 service staff are tribal staff. Public Law 99-570 (Anti-Drug Abuse Act) allowed for the expansion of the present program which was primarily adult focused, and authorized the development of treatment programs and services for Indian youth and community education and training specific to substance abuse for Indian leaders, community members and IHS staff. Resources from the existing IHS alcoholism program (Public Law 94-437) are supplementing the adolescent alcoholism and substance abuse program which provides for a broader range of comprehensive services.

Federal Programs

The Alcoholism/Substance Abuse Program has been contracted and operated by the tribes for the past 10 years since the passage of the Indian Health Care Improvement Act (P.L. 94-437). The IHS role has been, and will continue to be, monitoring and oversight of management and quality assurance within the program. With the passage of the Omnibus Drug Act (P.L. 99-570), the IHS has also assumed operation of two Regional Treatment Centers in the Albuquerque and Nashville Areas. The remainder are (P.L. 93-638) contract programs in the Alaska, Oklahoma City, and Navajo Areas. Staff have also collaborated closely with the Alcohol, Drug Abuse and Mental Health Administration to identify gaps in service delivery and data and to make improvements in these areas.

Tribal Programs

Tribal activities in Alcoholism and Substance Abuse include: school-based prevention, community-based prevention, and outpatient and inpatient treatment. In the treatment components, intervention at the earliest time possible is strongly advocated to prevent further medical problems. While not all of the programs have an identifiable prevention component, all programs are providing some prevention services to family members of persons in treatment. Rarely are program staff identified as prevention workers only, so one finds counselors and administrators involved in the various prevention services in a community.

The IHS continues to work with tribes and tribal organizations to encourage maximum participation in the planning and operation of health care services relating to alcoholism/substance abuse and will continue to actively support self-determination for tribal organizations. Participation of tribes or tribal organizations in self-determination activities is dependent upon and determined by the initiative of individual tribes. The IHS will continue to provide tribal officials technical assistance in carrying out the administrative management responsibilities required for the tribal operation of these Federally supported programs such as in quality assurance and data development.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

The accomplishments of the Alcoholism and Substance Abuse Program are many; however, the most outstanding change has been a decline in the death rate due to alcohol. Since 1978, the death rates due to alcohol among American Indians and Alaska Natives has declined by 42 percent. The rate of this decline is twice that of the U.S. population.

Accomplishments during FY 1989 may be summarized as follows:

Over 250 individual Tribal Action Plans addressing alcoholism and substance abuse were developed and implementation started.

Eighty-eight percent of Federally-recognized tribes passed resolutions authorizing formulation of Tribal Coordinating Committees to address alcoholism and drug abuse problems in their communities.

Four of the 11 Regional Treatment Centers designed for adolescents as authorized in P.L. 99-570 are renovated and operational as of November 1989. They are located in the Acoma-Canoncito-Laguna Service Unit of the IHS Albuquerque Area, Cherokee, North Carolina of the IHS Nashville Area, Shiprock, New Mexico of the IHS Navajo Area, Tahlequah, Oklahoma of the IHS Oklahoma City Area. Two facilities located in Fairbanks and Sitka, Alaska, of the IHS Alaska Area are operational but not renovated. Other IHS Areas were provided funds for the purchase of inpatient chemical dependency treatment for Indian youth pending completion of their plans for RTCs. They include the Bemidji, California and Billings Areas. In FY 1990 facility renovation is expected to commence on treatment centers in the IHS Aberdeen and Pheonix Areas. Occupancy of a leased facility is also expected in the IHS Portland Area in FY 1990.

The special chemical dependency treatment project for adult Navajos living in Gallup, New Mexico, will continue. An evaluation of the project is expected to be reported to Congress in FY 1990.

Community rehabilitation and aftercare services have been initiated in all IHS Service Units, with tribes contracting to provide the services in many locations.

Regional Intervention Teams have been established in 12 IHS Areas to provide technical assistance to Indian communities specific to treatment and aftercare services for Indian adolescents and families.

Over 33,000 community members, alcoholism program workers, health educators, social workers, BIA/tribal educators and law enforcement officers were trained through community education and training programs established in every IHS Service Unit.

The Primary Care Provider training for physicians, physician assistants, nurses, etc. initiated in FY 1986, continued and individuals from other health specialization areas including social workers, psychologists and program administrators, also received training. The IHS Primary Care Provider module has been completed and will be implemented with assistance from Hazelden and Project CORK. Project CORK is a specialized alcohol and substance abuse training program sponsored by Dartmouth Medical School. Two training sessions have been held specifically for physicians and nurses since completion of the materials. Additional training is planned.

Project CORK

The CORK in Project cork is the reverse spelling of the founder of the KROC Foundation. This foundation provides annual funds to run the Project CORK Institutes at Dartmouth Medical School, Hanover, New Hampshire. The Institute plays a significant role in medical education though the development of special education materials and series such as the Medical Aspects of Alcoholism. Project CORK has assisted in the development of the Primary Care Providers training materials.

Fetal Alcohol Syndrome

The Indian Health Service focus on Fetal Alcohol Syndrome (FAS) includes a special emphasis on research, prevention and intervention program activities in FY 1989. The following activities are included in the program:

a) convene a panel of experts on FAS to develop strategies;
b) review current FAS research and prevention activities within IHS;
c) establish a more focused long-term direction to maximize the effectiveness and efficiency of FAS activities;
d) provide funds to Areas to track affected infants to ensure timely medical, social and psychological intervention services;
e) publication of an FAS Manual for use in IHS Service Units.

Community education and training efforts have been instituted in all IHS Service Units and most have been contracted by respective tribes and individuals.

An HHS Secretarial Initiative resulted in major Inter-departmental Memoranda of Agreement constituting a major program effort focusing on alcoholism and drug abuse among American Indians/Alaska Natives. Renewal of this Agreement has been planned.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Net Change +$1,830,000

Built-In Increase +$1,834,000/Program Decrease -$4,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $1,834,000 for built-in cost increases. Included in this increase is $7,000 for the FY 1991 pay raise; $2,000 for annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $2,000 for the employer contributions to the Federal Employees' Retirement System; $15,000 for increased cost of travel and transportation of things; $1,790,000 necessary to meet the increased cost of providing health care through the contracts or grants mechanisms; $2,000 for the increased cost of purchasing medical and other equipment; $8,000 for the increased cost of purchasing medical and other supplies; $8,000 for the increased cost of printing; and a program decrease of -$4,000 to reflect absorption of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise.

Program Increase +$6,000

Program Restoration +$6,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

Impact Data

Services Provided	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Outpatient Visits	372,400	372,400	373,400
Inpatient Days	213,000	213,658	213,632

Maintenance and Repair

	FY 1989 Appropriation BA	FY 1990 Appropriation BA	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease BA
Direct				
Appropriation....	$11,756,000	$12,025,000	$12,420,000	+$395,000
Reimbursements....	3,859,639	3,000,000 1/	3,000,000	---
Total	$15,615,639	$15,025,000	$15,420,000	+$395,000

Funded From Direct Appropriation:

	1990 Base	Change from Base
Increases:		
Built-In:		
1. Increased Cost of Travel and Transp of Things.	$73,000	+$2,000
2. Increased Cost of Other Contractual Services..	9,046,000	+299,000
3. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment.	95,000	+2,000
4. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies..	2,669,000	+88,000
5. Increased Cost of Lands and Structures.......	122,000	+4,000
Total, Built-in Increases..................	---	+$395,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

One element vital to ensuring a continued IHS capability for adequate patient care is the provision of a well maintained physical plant within which the task of health care delivery can be carried-out safely, efficiently, and economically. The IHS Facilities Management Program is responsible for providing adequate maintenance operations and timely, economical repairs for IHS facilities. The main tool used for organizing and planning the work of facilities maintenance and repair is the IHS Facilities Management Annual Work Plan. The Work Plan is used to establish annual objectives and determine the most prudent application of available maintenance and repair resources.

The Facilities Management Program conducts regular surveys of facilities to identify deficiencies. These surveys are discussed further under STATUS OF FACILITIES. Program reviews are conducted annually at selected locations to promote program consistency and effectiveness, and ensure proper monitoring of maintenance expenditures.

1/Excludes Operation and Maintenance of Quarters reimbursements unobligated balance at the end of FY 1989 of $1,243,155.

Federally Owned Facilities

The IHS owns and maintains 43 hospitals, 66 health centers, 5 school health centers, nearly 300 smaller health stations and satellite clinics, over 2,000 units of staff quarters, numerous warehouses, boiler plants, maintenance shops, Government automotive garages, emergency power plants and other buildings. These structures contain more than 7.6 million gross square feet of floor space. The IHS also controls and maintains over 121,281 square feet of leased facilities and a total of 1,826.7 acres of institutional and trust land.

Tribally Owned or Leased Facilities

In addition to IHS owned facilities, the IHS also supports tribally owned or tribally leased facilities generating primary care provider visits under P.L. 93-638 contracts.

The IHS is reviewing the eligible tribally owned or leased facilities so that the distribution method utilized will assure that they are receiving funding for maintenance and repair on the same basis as federal facilities, as required by the amendments to P.L. 94-437.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS:

In FY 1989, obligations for the IHS Facilities Maintenance and Repair Program were $11.756 million. Approximately 40 percent of this amount was applied toward daily operations and maintenance at the Service Unit level (i.e., service contracts, in-house repairs, bench stock, etc). The remaining amount was used for other repairs, replacement of equipment, and projects to correct structural, mechanical, and other similar deficiencies, and code violations. Obligations for FY 1989 were used for the following purposes:

I. Daily Operations and Maintenance: Preventive maintenance at all IHS facilities and hundreds of units of real property equipment, maintenance supplies, bench stock, temporary labor, biomedical equipment, management improvement, etc.

II. In-House Repairs: Minor and miscellaneous repairs of facilities and equipment by station laborers, i.e., broken windows, doors, floors, ceilings, roofs, etc.

III. Service Contracts: Contracted preventive maintenance of building equipment, i.e., boilers, refrigeration units, heating/ventilating/air-conditioning system, elevators, etc.

IV. Facilities Deficiencies: Projects to reduce the Backlog of Essential Maintenance and Repair (BEMAR) deficiencies and correct deficiencies relating to Fire, Life and Safety Codes, handicapped access, energy conservation, and environmental quality.

STATUS OF FACILITIES

The IHS evaluates the physical condition of all IHS-owned facilities and grounds each year through Annual General Surveys. These are conducted by facility staff and Area Office engineers. In addition, comprehensive "Deep Look" surveys are conducted every five years. The in-depth "Deep Look" inspections are performed by a team of engineers including representatives from the PHS Office of Engineering Services, IHS Area Facilities Engineers, and occasionally contract architectural/engineering firms.

These surveys, together with routine observations by facility personnel, identify required tasks which are added to the database of identified deficiencies. The listing of deficiencies is dynamic, with newly identified tasks being added on a regular basis, and items removed as work is completed. Because of funding cycles and planning requirements, a reasonable "chronic" backlog is on the order of $20 million. The current identified backlog stands at well over $100 million.

The IHS is implementing a changeover in their Facilities Engineering Deficiencies System (FEDS) database from a central mainframe to Area Office based personal computers. This will give program managers at the Area level direct access to facilities condition information to utilize for work scheduling and other management functions. Because this changeover is still in process, a current comprehensive total is not available. The figures below represent the last mainframe totals.

Summary of each category of facility deficiencies:

BEMAR by Category as of 09/30/88

Structural	$33,141,676
Mechanical	19,391,608
Electrical	8,074,665
Utility	1,131,748
Grounds	18,332,184
Quarters	13,683,733
Real Property Install Equipment (RPIE)	417,920
	$94,173,534

Alterations by Category as of 09/30/88

Patient Care	$12,749,732
Fire and Life Safety	7,295,603
Safety	2,076,081
Environmental Quality	2,433,525
Handicap Barrier Free	3,618,013
Energy Management	6,611,883
	$34,784,837

Approximately $7.5 million will be used from the regular annual maintenance and repair allocation for FY 1991 to reduce identified deficiencies.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Funded from Direct Appropriation

Built-in Increase +$395,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $395,000 to address the increased cost of providing maintenance and repairs to IHS/tribal facilities.

The IHS will provide maintenance and repair support to tribally owned and leased clinics contracted under the Indian Self-Determination Act (P.L. 93-638) on the same basis as federal facilities, as required under the amendments to P.L. 94-437. This level of support for tribal facilities will reduce the level of support for federally owned facilities. Prior to FY 1990, all maintenance and repair support for tribal facilities was included directly in the program contracts.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Funded from Reimbursements - Operation and Maintenance of Quarters +$3,000,000

In FY 1991, the IHS anticipates collecting $3 million from quarters rental units. These funds will be used for the operation, management, and general maintenance of quarters, including temporary maintenance personnel, security guards, repairs to housing units and associated grounds, and purchase of materials, supplies, and household equipment; e.g., sheetrock, paint, roof shingles, refrigerators, ranges, washers and dryers.

Medicare/Medicaid Collections

	FY 1989 Actual BA	FY 1990 Estimate BA	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease BA
Collection of Reimbursements				
Medicaid	($39,742,250)	($42,000,000) 1/	($44,000,000) 1/	($2,000,000)
Medicare	($35,118,245)	(38,000,000) 1/	(40,000,000) 1/	(2,000,000)
Total	($74,860,495)	($80,000,000)	($84,000,000)	($4,000,000)

1/ Represents estimated collections.

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

Title IV of P.L. 94-437, Access to Health Services, Indian Health Care Improvement Act, states that IHS shall be eligible to receive payments for services rendered to eligible Indians who are entitled to care under Title 18 and Title 19 (Medicare and Medicaid). The Act further specifies that the funds shall be used "exclusively for the purpose of making any improvements in the facilities or such service which may be necessary to achieve compliance with the applicable conditions and requirements of the Act." During FY 1991, it is estimated that up to $84.0 million may be used from Medicare/Medicaid collections for correcting Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations/Health Care Financing Administration (JCAHO/HCFA) survey deficiencies.

All IHS hospitals are surveyed by the appropriate agency (JCAHO or Medicare), and the results of these surveys are used to formulate a plan of correction of any deficiencies. This plan addresses each deficiency in terms of personnel services costs, equipment needs, or maintenance and repair project needs to correct the cited deficiencies. In addition, the facilities are reviewed for compliance with any new standards which may occur and any additional or new needs are incorporated into the annual plan.

Surveys conducted by the JCAHO have shown that all facilities have deficiencies. Correction of these deficiencies is mandatory if the facilities are to attain and maintain accreditation and/or Medicare certification status. The Medicare and Medicaid funds have been used mainly for facility maintenance, repair, and personnel.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

The attainment of JCAHO standards is one of the best measures to assure that the quality of the health care delivered to the Indian people is equal to that required for Medicare/Medicaid patients. The great advances made by IHS over the past 10 years as a direct result of the use of Medicare and Medicaid collections is evidence that the quality of the health care is at least equal to that required by Medicare. For example, the number of IHS hospitals that are accredited by the JCAHO has risen from 27 in 1977 to 41 in 1989 and all are certified as medicare providers. In addition 57 of the 65 IHS free standing health centers have been accredited.

HISTORY OF COLLECTIONS BY AREA - DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS

AREA	FY 1988 MEDICARE	FY 1988 MEDICAID	FY 1988 TOTAL
ABERDEEN	$3,046	$5,418	$8,464
ALBUQUERQUE	2,310	2,080	4,390
ALASKA	4,779	5,327	10,106
BEMIDJI	502	707	1,209
BILLINGS	990	1,627	2,617
NAVAJO	8,615	7,574	16,189
OKLAHOMA	7,251	2,765	10,016
PHOENIX	3,715	3,552	7,267
PORTLAND	—	3,064	3,064
TUCSON	382	1,127	1,509
NASHVILLE	870	410	1,280
TOTAL	$32,466	$33,660	$66,126 1/

AREA	FY 1989 MEDICARE	FY 1989 MEDICAID	FY 1989 TOTAL
ABERDEEN	$3,334	$6,541	$9,875
ALBUQUERQUE	2,576	3,131	4,707
ALASKA	4,220	6,780	11,000
BEMIDJI	823	798	1,621
BILLINGS	1,446	1,274	2,720
NAVAJO	10,707	8,536	19,243
OKLAHOMA	7,094	3,606	10,700
PHOENIX	3,615	4,344	7,959
PORTLAND	—	3,548	3,548
TUCSON	429	1,484	1,913
NASHVILLE	875	695	1,570
TOTAL	$35,118	$39,742	$74,860 1/

1/ All figures rounded (columns do not add).

During FY 1989 equipment purchased included such items as emergency room stretchers, crash carts, doppler ultrasound stethoscopes, wheelchairs, a refrigerator, a centifruge, and a blood drawing chair. Maintenance and repair projects included installation of monitors at emergency entrances, installation of security grills, remodeling of medical staff conference rooms, upgrading walls and floors to required fire ratings, installation of ramps for the handicapped and a liquid oxygen system. Also included were architectural engineering services for renovation of ambulatory care space, and the renovation of several clinics.

Consistent with the origin of collection and the facility plans of correction, each IHS area will target its funds to facilities most in need. All of the above corrections have improved the ability of the IHS to raise the status of health of American Indians to the highest possible level.

FY 1991 Budget Proposal

In FY 1991, the IHS plans to continue to identify those eligible for Medicare and Medicaid and bill, collect, and distribute reimbursements from third-party payors, including payment under the Federal Medical Care Recovery Act and other subrogations. The use of these reimbursements will be in accordance with the submitted and approved JCAHO/HCFA survey plans of correction.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

In FY 1991, the IHS plans to spend $59 million on personnel services, $16 million on equipment and supplies and $9 million on maintenance and repair-type projects. The IHS also plans to complete its automation of the billing process and intensify efforts to bill, collect and distribute Medicare/Medicaid reimbursements, including payments under the Federal Medical Care Recovery Act and other subrogations, in accordance with submitted and approved JCAHO/HCFA survey plans of correction.

Private Third Party Collections

	FY 1989 Actual BA	FY 1990 Estimate BA	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease BA
Collection of Reimbursements Private Insurers..	---	($8,000,000)	($40,000,000)	(+$32,000,000)

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

The Indian Health Service (IHS) has been given authority under the Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988 (P.L. 100-713), to bill and collect from private insurers for services that are provided to eligible Indian patients treated in IHS facilities. This new authority was implemented during the last half of FY 1989. The IHS developed a billing module based on reasonable charges for services that are provided and established billing procedures based on the general fee-for-service type concept rather than relying on an all inclusive rate (such as Medicare prospective payment DRGs). Implementation of this system has been accomplished in many locations using existing automation and in those locations without automation the system has been implemented using manual methods. It is proposed to utilize some of these collections to fund the system requirements to implement the new billing process.

In FY 1991, the IHS proposes to use the funds collected from private insurers to augment those services that provide health services to Indians as Section 207 of P. L. 100-713 dictates. These health services would include enhancing the capability of facilities to provide health services to its patients, for example, if a facility needed to provide certain specialty services to enhance its normal service, the funds would be used to either contract or hire the specialist to provide the services. Other uses would be in the areas of specialty equipment, for example, procurement of an ultrasound device would be an item that could be procured to increase the services to Indian patients.

In FY 1990, the IHS proposes to use the funds collected from private insurers to fund the following:

Computer Resources $3,500,000

The IHS is requesting $3,500,000 to support the system requirements to implement the billing process. This initiative consists of: 1) Upgrading/replacement of computing and storage capacities of the twenty (20) mini-computer systems at major hospitals and clinics ($1,000,000); 2) Upgrading seven (7) Area Office Wang VS computer systems to support electronic data management requirements ($1,000,000); and 3) the acquisition of personal computers to support billing system management through office automation at 200 facilities. ($1,500,000).

Billing Clerks $2,000,000

During FY 1990, approximately $2.0 million will be used to provide staffing support at each of the facilities in IHS that are submitting claims for payment for services provided to eligible beneficiaries under the authority of

P.L. 100-713. Funds will be provided to the facilities for the purpose of providing support for the proper completion and submission of claims. This support can be additional staffing or contracting for the provision of the service from either claims processors or other groups that can provide the claims processing services. Services consist of primarily encoding data that will be used by automated billing systems that will generate claims.

Medical Equipment $2,500,000

Delivery of quality patient care is highly dependent upon the availability of lab, x-ray and biomedical equipment which is both functional and safe. The Indian Health Service (IHS) currently maintains a $100 plus million dollar medical equipment inventory for the delivery of patient care. The life expectancy of this equipment is approximately 5-10 years depending on the intensity of use, maintenance and technical advances. The IHS must therefore replace approximately 5-10 percent of its equipment annually.

Medical equipment is expensive. Identifying funding for new and replacement equipment is difficult without detracting from our clinical program.

Decisions on equipment purchases are made by local managers based primarily on the availability of year-end funds. There are no funds specifically identified for medical equipment purchases. This "year-end" funding process frequently results in a lack of necessary services, both diagnostic and therapeutic.

A $2.5 million is therefore requested for FY 1990 to replace aging, outdated equipment and to provide current necessary technology in order to provide safe health care, maintain accepted standards, and retain trained staff for our facilities.

In FY 1991, the IHS proposes to use the funds collected from private insurers to fund the following:

Computer Resources $3,000,000

The IHS is requesting $3,000,000 to continue implementation of the billing system requirements initiated in FY 1990. This initiative required additional ADP computing resources to implement the private insurers billing and collection system at the major IHS hospitals and clinics, Area Offices, and at the facility level. The FY 1991 initiative is to continue to meet computer systems hardware enhancements (computing & storage capacity) required to support the implementation of the billing and collection system interfacing with RPMS integrated software. The FY 1991 request for computer resources will continue the enhancement of hardware systems which support local facility based computer requirements and expand to management information requirements. This request consists of: 1) Upgrade/replace mini-computer systems (20) $1,000,000; 2) procure large systems (3) $1,000,000; 3) Upgrade mainframe $1,000,000.

Loan Repayment $4,000,000

The IHS currently has 155 physician vacancies and has projected an additional vacancy need of 210 physicians for the summer 1990. Similarly, the nurse vacancy rate is approximately 15%. The Loan Repayment Program (LRP) is essential to the IHS recruitment efforts to fill the number of physician and nursing vacancies. Since its beginning in 1988, the IHS has recruited 91 physicians and 98 nurses with the incentive of the LRP.

The $4.0 million will be allocated as follows:

	Number which could be funded	Average Debt Load FY 1989
o $2.5 to $3.0 million will be allocated to physician recruitment	62-74	$40,451
o $1.0 to $1.5 million will be allocated for nurses (including nurse practitioners)	65-98	$15,362

Equipment $12,000,000

Delivery of quality patient care is highly dependent upon the availability of lab, x-ray and biomedical equipment which is both functional and safe. The Indian Health Service (IHS) currently maintains a $100 plus million dollar medical equipment inventory for the delivery of patient care. The life expectancy of this equipment is approximately 5-10 years depending on the intensity of use, maintenance and technical advances. The IHS must therefore replace approximately 5-10 percent of its equipment annually.

Medical equipment is expensive. Identifying funding for new and replacement equipment is difficult without detracting from our clinical program.

Decisions on equipment purchases are made by local managers based primarily on the availability of year-end funds. There are no funds specifically identified for medical equipment purchases. This "year-end" funding process frequently results in a lack of necessary services, both diagnostic and therapeutic.

The $12 million is therefore requested for FY 1991 to replace aging, outdated equipment and to provide current necessary technology in order to provide safe health care, maintain accepted standards, and retain trained staff for our facilities.

Quality Assurance (QA) Activities $3,000,000

1. Risk Management $350,000

   In order for hospital and clinic managers to successfully reduce patient and legal risk at Indian Health Service (IHS) and tribal facilities, provider training seminars in risk management are needed. This will result in safer patient care and less litigation.

2. JCAHO Accreditation $325,000

   Joint Commission accreditation is an essential element in assuring that high quality health care is being provided in IHS and tribal ambulatory care facilities. This will provide for cost of accreditation surveys by the Joint Commission. Paying the survey fee will facilitate obtaining accreditation.

3. QA Training $400,000

   Area or inter-Area training for the staff at IHS and tribal hospitals and clinics will enable them to better prepare for Joint Commission accreditation and will alert facility staff to the new standards which have recently been developed. The funds allocated would pay for the cost of the seminars as well as transportation and per diem of IHS/tribal staff attending the seminars.

4. Professional Specialty Program Reviews $125,000

   Various medical specialty groups will provide program reviews in such areas as pediatrics, OB-GYN, Anesthesia, Family Practice, Emergency Care, etc. to evaluate clinical programs.

5. QA Reviews of Health Care Programs $1,000,000

   Expert consultants will provide QA reviews of various health care programs such as alcohol, mental health, emergency medical services, community health representatives, urban, nursing and pharmacy. These reviews will be used to develop and/or strengthen program standards.

6. QA Activities at Service Units $800,000

   Increasing time and effort is being demanded at the facility level to comply with certification standards. Programs will be developed to coordinate the activities and documents.

Maternal and Child Health $1,000,000

The IHS has a commendable record for maintaining high immunization levels (85 to 90 percent) among American Indian children. This success is greatly enhanced through collaborative efforts with State health departments. With rising vaccine costs, addition of measles vaccine booster doses, and addition of new vaccines (Haemophilus influenzae [Hib]) the States are relying more on the IHS in seeking financial support for this immunization programs for American Indian children.

* Recommendations from the CDC and the American Academy of Pediatrics to give booster measles immunization. Vaccine cost	$350,000
* Effective vaccines against Hib disease are licensed and recommended for all children, especially high risk groups. Vaccine cost	$250,000

Child abuse and neglect and child sexual abuse are important health problems among American Indians and Alaska Natives. The complexity of these problems is accentuated in remote and sparsely populated communities and especially in Indian communities with professional resources. Community awareness, leadership training and professional education are important steps needed to appropriately provide child protection services and to prevent child abuse.

* Intensive training in child abuse for two professional per Area	$ 25,000
* Workshops in every service unit conducted by the trained Area professionals	$ 25,000
* Three regional community leadership training conferences	$100,000
* Expansion of the Special Initiatives Team to provide consultation and technical assistance for communities and child and family workers	$100,000

The IHS is committed to providing the highest quality of health care possible. Many IHS health professionals provide maternal and child health care services in remote and small health facilities. They must be trained to recognize, manage and stabilize complicated conditions until the patient is transferred to an appropriate facility. Therefore, continuing medical education and quality assurance are critically important supporting activities.

* An additional Maternal and Child Health course similar to the yearly Postgraduate course provided through contract by American College of Obstetrics	$100,000
* Area quality assurance reviews	$50,000
	$1,000,000

Health Promotion/Disease Prevention $3,500,000

Public Law 100-713, Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988, Section 714 requires that the Indian Health Service (IHS) implement a plan in January 1990 to reduce the rates of Indian Infant and Maternal Mortality and the incidence rate of Fetal Alcohol Syndrome (FAS) to levels equal to or lower than national rates by 1994. The IHS infrastructure, professional expertise and program standards are in place to meet this statutory challenge. Certain resource deficiencies, that are persistent barriers to full program development and action, must be overcome before these health status improvements can occur.

* Improve Area coordination of existing interagency and community resources through Tribal contracts for FAS coordination services.	$1,200,000
* Improve Service Unit coordination of interagency and community resources though Tribal Contracts for Service Unit MCH Coordinators in 20 of the Service Unit at highest infant mortality risk.	$1,000,000

* FAS training for IHS and Tribal professionals and Indian communities through contract with an appropriate educational organization or university	$300,000
* Infant Mortality Death Scene evaluations in three Areas experiencing the highest rates of SIDS through Tribal contracts for evaluation.	$300,000
* Training of CHRs in MCH Outreach skills with special emphasis in prevention of FAS and complications of pregnancy.	$700,000
TOTAL	$3,500,000

Emergency Medical Service $1,500,000

The $1.5 million will allow the purchase of needed ambulances, either additional or replacement; purchase of needed ambulance and emergency room equipment; and the training of Emergency Medical Teams (EMT's), including the basic training of new EMT's as well as advanced training in specific fields (defibrillation, IV's etc.).

Billing Clerks $4,000,000

During FY 1991, $4 million, $2 million more than in FY 1990, will be used to provide staffing support at each of the facilities in IHS that are submitting claims for payment for services provided to eligible beneficiaries under the authority of P.L. 100-713. This will complete the support that was begun during FY 1990. Funds will be provided to facilities for the purpose of providing support for the proper completion and submission of claims. This support can be in the form of additional staffing or contracting for the service from either claims processors or other groups that can provide the claims processing services. Services consist of primarily encoding data that will be used by automated billing systems that will generate claims.

Nursing Initiative $2,000,000

The nurse shortage throughout the United States has affected the IHS in many of the same ways that it has affected the private sector. Because of the increased difficulty in recruiting and retaining qualified nursing staff, it is necessary to enhance present proven methods of staff recruitment, retention and development and to develop new techniques. To do this, the $2 million collected from private insurers will be used as follows:

* Establish a second nurse intern program for new graduates. The program will provide the content which will enable new nurses to have an adequate transition and orientation to the working environment.

- Enhance the recruitment and retention effort in the Area Offices and Service Units.
- Increase the funds available for continuing education for nurses.
- Expand the Junior and Senior COSTEP programs.
- Continue and expand the existing Career Ladder and Development Workshop Programs, including Ambulatory Care and Chronic Disease Workshops, Obstetrical, Critical Care, Operating Room, and Nurse Management Training.

Drugs and Medical Supplies $4,000,000

Overall requirements and the cost for drugs and medical supplies to support hospitals and clinics continue to increase annually. However, funding for drugs and medical supplies have remained constant. This has led to the depletion of drugs and medical supply inventories and a decrease in the number of months supply available to hospitals and clinics. These funds will be utilized to restore depleted inventories, and meet the increased cost factors and overall demand for drugs and medical supplies.

Oversight evaluation $2,000,000

Funds will be utilized in evaluation oversight for program outcome measurement through a series of assessment, evaluation, and analysis projects with emphasis in quality assurance; program application oversight; policy development; assessment of the suitability of equipment and technology; and, other discipline specific outcome measurements in preventive and curative programs such as alcoholism, health promotion/disease prevention, mental health, etc.

1. Clinical Services

(b) Contract Care

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct Approp.	16	$217,454,000	16	$237,647,000	16	$250,794,000	--	+$13,147,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise	—	N/A	—	+$17,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise	--	N/A	--	+5,000
3. Within Grade Promotions	—	N/A	—	+6,000
4. One Extra Paid Day	--	$390,000	--	+1,000
5. Increased Cost of Patient Travel	—	7,299,000	—	+241,000
6. Increased Cost of Rents, Commun. and Utilities	—	100,000	--	+3,000
7. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants	—	223,416,000	—	+12,513,000
8. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies	—	6,266,000	--	+352,000
Total, Built-in Increases	—	—	--	+$13,138,000
Program Increase:				
Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 pay raise	--	N/A	--	+$18,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise	—	N/A	—	-$9,000
Net Change	--	—	--	+$13,147,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

Federal Programs

The purchase of medical care and services from non-Indian Health Service providers (predominately the private sector) is an essential component of the Indian Health Service (IHS). These Contract Health Services (CHS) supplement other health care resources available to eligible Indian people. There are approximately 871 IHS payment contracts under the IHS payment policy. All contracts are negotiated under guidelines of this policy. In addition, on a routine basis IHS purchases services, such as emergency care, from providers not under contract.

The CHS program purchases: hospital care including physician and ancillary services; ambulatory activities including outpatient physician care, laboratory, dental, radiology, and pharmacy services; ambulance and limited patient/escort travel services; and other costs to support the IHS-direct delivery of care, such as medical referrals, diagnostic services, and special consultants that enhance the level of care for patients in existing IHS hospitals.

The need continues for the IHS to closely monitor medical priorities related to program operations as it seeks to provide health care to meet its goal of raising the health status of Indian people to the highest level possible. This need becomes acute in the management of CHS within the available resources. The IHS funds are used primarily for urgent and emergent care priorities with various geographic modifications depending on local needs. Guidelines have been established outlining specific responsibilities for the administration of CHS, including medical priorities for use of the funds, authorization processes, fund control procedures, and specific criteria identifying Indian persons eligible for CHS. Under these guidelines, CHS funds are not to be expended for services that are available and accessible at an IHS facility, or from alternate resources such as Medicare/Medicaid, state and local programs, and private insurance. The guidelines further provide that nonemergency services are not to be authorized for payment for patients considered to have access to IHS direct services. Patients residing within 90 minutes traveling time to an IHS facility capable of providing the required services are considered to have reasonable access to direct services.

The Catastrophic Health Emergency Fund (CHEF) is administered within the overall CHS operation and requires different operating guidelines. This Fund provides a significant and complementary resource to CHS that protects limited local operating budgets from overwhelming expenditures for certain high cost cases and has permitted the purchase of an increased amount of care.

Tribal Health Programs

Tribal health delivery programs, contracted from IHS under P.L. 93-638, also purchase medical care and services using CHS resources. Tribal contractors provide services under the same CHS regulations as IHS management.

The IHS continually works with tribes and tribal organizations to encourage maximum participation in the planning and operation of health care services, and will continue to actively support self-determination for tribal organizations. However, it must be recognized that the participation of tribes or tribal organizations in self-determination activities is dependent and determined by the initiative of individual tribes. The IHS will continue to provide technical assistance to tribal officials in carrying out the administrative management responsibilities required for the tribal operation of these Federally supported programs.

The Fiscal Year (FY) 1990 budget for Contract Health Services (CHS) is $237,647,000 and the FY 1991 request includes $250,794,000. This represents an increase of $23.1 million over FY 1989 in FY 1990 and an increase of $13.1 million over FY 1990 in FY 1991. The increase in FY 1990 will cover inflation costs, $2 million for the Catastrophic Health Emergency Fund (CHEF), and $12 million to reduce the CHS shortfall; in FY 1991, approximately a 5.6 percent increase, or $13.1 million will be used to offset the rising cost of providing contract health services to IHS beneficiaries.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

In Fiscal Year 1989 the IHS expanded the services of the Fiscal Intermediary (FI): (1) to process and make payments on dental claims for seven of the twelve IHS areas; (2) to review claims for appropriateness of services (mis-utilization or overutilization), abuse, fraud and waste; and (3) to prepare a "Standard Set of Reports" (information from claims) for IHS management. The Standard Set Reports are distributed two times a year to the managers of the Service Units, Area Offices, and Headquarters Offices. The reports contain cost and utilization information, including average billed charges per inpatient day, average billed charges per admission or encounter, average length of stay, number of inpatient days, total billed charges, total IHS payment and the number of admissions or encounters.

According to available data the IHS has, over the last three fiscal years, increased its "purchasing power" by approximately 20.1 million. This increase is a result of the IHS entering into a DRG or other reduced payment type of contract with providers. An illustration of this payment methodology is that a provider may bill the IHS $5,162 under their normal "fee for service" for an inpatient stay but the DRG rate for this stay is $2,242. The new payment policy thus results in a savings of $2,920.

The table below indicates on a fiscal year basis the amount the IHS has saved as a result of provider contracts. The first column, "Provider Billed," lists the amount the provider billed the IHS. The second column, "IHS Paid," indicates the amount that was actually paid for the service.

Fiscal Year	Provider Billed	IHS Paid	Savings
1987	$ 19,469,600	$15,845,300	$ 3,624,300
1988	43,376,200	34,647,200	8,729,000
1989	41,738,500	33,920,500	7,818,000
TOTALS	$104,584,300	$84,413,000	$20,171,300

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Net Change +$13,129,000

Built-In Increase +$13,138,000/Program Decrease -$9,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $13,138,000 for built-in cost increases. Included in this increase is $17,000 for the FY 1991 pay raise; $5,000 for annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $6,000 for within grade promotions; $1,000 for one extra paid day; $241,000 for increased cost of patient travel; $3,000 for increased cost of rents, communications, and utilities; $12,513,000 necessary to meet the increased cost of providing health care through the contracts or grants mechanisms; $352,000 for the increased cost of purchasing medical and other supplies; and a program decrease of -$9,000 to reflect absorption of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise.

Program Increase +$18,000

Program Restoration +$18,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

2. Preventive Health

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct Appropriation.	820	$73,150,000	809	$77,630,000	819	$83,248,000	+10	+$5,618,000
Reimbursement..	--	---	--	85,000	--	85,000	--	---
Total	820	$73,150,000	809	$77,715,000	819	$83,333,000	+10	+$5,618,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Funded From				
Direct Appropriation				
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise	--	N/A	--	+$823,000
2. Annualization of 1990 Pay Raise..................	--	N/A	--	+274,000
3. Within Grade Promotions.........................	--	N/A	--	+564,000
4. FY 1991 Employer Contribitions to Federal Employees' Retirement System....................	--	$672,000	--	+37,000
5. One Extra Paid Day..............................	--	19,475,000	--	+73,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transport of Things.	--	3,954,000	--	+130,000
7. Increased Cost of Rental, Communications, and Utilities....................................	--	156,000	--	+3,000
8. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants............................	--	49,373,000	--	+2,764,000
9. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment....	--	549,000	--	+20,000
10. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies.....	--	901,000	--	+36,000
11. Increased Cost of Printing......................	--	42,000	--	+1,000
12. Annualization Costs of New Facilities:				
Toppenish, WA Health Center.....................	1	60,000	+5	+211,000
Wolf Point, MT Health Center....................	4	129,000	--	+44,000
Total, Built-in Increases..................	--	---	+5	+$4,980,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Program Increases:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 pay raise..........	--	N/A	--	+$827,000
2. Staffing/Operating of Replacement Facilities:				
Fort Hall, ID Health Center (12 months).........	--	N/A	+1	+$44,000
Kyle, SD Health Center (12 months)..............	--	N/A	+4	+179,000
Total, Program Increase.....................	--	N/A	+5	+$1,050,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise...............	--	N/A	--	-$412,000
Net Change................................	--	---	+10	+$5,618,000

Sanitation

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct Appropriation.	472	$24,654,000	464	$25,571,000	465	$27,576,000	+1	+$2,005,000
Reimbursement..	—	—	—	24,000	—	24,000	—	—
Total	472	$24,654,000	464	$25,595,000	465	$27,600,000	+1	+$2,005,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise..................................	—	N/A	--	+$476,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise...............	—	N/A	--	+161,000
3. Within Grade Promotions...........................	—	N/A	--	+380,000
4. FY 1991 Employer Contributions to Federal Employees' Retirement System....................	—	$179,000	--	+12,000
5. One Extra Paid Day.................................	—	8,711,000	--	+32,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transportation of Things..	—	2,809,000	--	+93,000
7. Increased Cost of Rents, Communications, and Utilities..	—	156,000	--	+3,000
8. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants..............................	—	9,303,000	--	+521,000
9. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment....	—	370,000	--	+14,000
10. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies.....	—	379,000	--	+13,000
11. Increased Cost of Printing.......................	—	42,000	--	+1,000
12. Annualization Costs of New Facilities:				
Toppenish, WA Health Center......................	—	8,000	+1	+42,000
Wolf Point, MT Health Center.....................	1	35,000	--	+12,000
Total, Built-in Increases..................	—	—	+1	+$1,760,000
Program Increase:				
Restoration or resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 Pay Raise..............	—	N/A	--	+$483,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise...............	—	N/A	--	-$238,000
Net Change..................................	—	—	+1	+$2,005,000

IHS - 148

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

Most American Indians and Alaska Natives (AI/AN) live in an environment typified by severe climatic conditions, rough, often treacherous geography, extreme isolation, infestations of disease carrying insects and rodents, inadequate housing, unsanitary methods of sewage and garbage disposal, and unsafe water supplies. This harsh environment, coupled with decades of economic deprivation and compounded by the lack of basic environmental essentials for many homes (such as running water and toilet facilities within the home), has contributed significantly to the exceptionally high incidence of disease, injury and early death among the Indian and Alaska Native people. For example, while there are more than 1,300 deaths annually from injury, there are also over 10,000 hospitalizations and more than one-third million outpatient visits attributed to injuries. During Calendar Years (CY) 1984-1986, over 4,000 American Indians under the age of 65 died from injuries. This corresponds to approximately 90,000 years of productive life lost, exceeding that for the following causes of death: cancer, heart disease, and alcoholism. Motor vehicle crashes and pedestrian injuries were the greatest single cause of nonintentional injury deaths during 1984-1986 and involved approximately 1,500 individuals. The overall age-adjusted IHS death rate from motor vehicle accidents (47.7) was 2.5 times the U.S. age-adjusted rate of 19.4 per 100,000 in 1986. No other single cause even approaches motor vehicle injuries as a cause of death among AI/ANs except in the Alaska Area, where drowning deaths occur almost as frequently as motor vehicle-related deaths. The IHS has recognized the drain on its limited health care dollars resulting from stabilizing, transporting, treating, and rehabilitating injury victims for many years and in 1981 the Injury Prevention Program was initiated.

The development of solutions to these varied environmental concerns requires the knowledge and expertise of a variety of professional and technical environmental health personnel and allied health specialists. The Federal sanitation staff includes engineers, sanitarians, environmental health technicians, engineering aides, injury prevention specialists, institutional environmental control officers, etc., of whom approximately 4[illegible] percent are of Indian descent.

Institutional environmental health activities including infection control, safety, and occupational health provide protection of patients, staff and visitors at health care facilities and to students and clients of other institutions. Emphasis on assisting health care facilities in achieving and maintaining JCAHO accreditation and/or other national certifications is integral to this segment of the environmental health program.

Concurrent with the provision of technical and consultative environmental health services as set forth above, personnel also provide technical services necessary to construct critically needed sanitation facilities for AI/AN homes and communities. Once a sanitation facility is built, the Indian families and/or community for which it was constructed assume the responsibility for operation and maintenance including the payment of all operation and maintenance costs. Therefore, a primary responsibility of the IHS sanitation staff is the provision of technical assistance and guidance to Indian families and communities in the operation and maintenance of essential water supply and sewage disposal facilities. Where appropriate, IHS helps the tribes and communities create operation and maintenance organizations and establish user fees so that operation and maintenance expenses will be borne by the users of the systems.

The availability of technical assistance from IHS has contributed significantly to the ability of small communities and rural families to keep their facilities in working condition. Sustained operation and maintenance of these facilities by the tribes and communities is necessary to protect the enormous preventive health investment that has been made on behalf of the AI/ANs by the Federal Government.

Tribal Health Program

The IHS also trains tribal employees to provide environmental health services through a contractual arrangement wherever a tribe desires, provided that fund availability and other considerations make such an arrangement practicable. During FY 1989, 42 contracts were awarded to Indian consortiums, tribes and native groups to perform one or more types of environmental health services on their reservations or in their communities. As a result of the training provided by IHS staff, tribal environmental health personnel are better prepared to provide a higher level of services to the Indian people and to support the provision of direct patient care services. For example, tribes have chosen to contract for the provision of the full range of services typically provided by the IHS direct delivery program while others have decided to implement only the injury control component. During FY 1989, the tribal environmental health programs provided over 12,000 environmental health services.

The tribes have long been an integral part of the sanitation facilities program as exemplified by their administration of over $30 million in FY 1989 for the provision of sanitation facilities to Indian homes and communities. The Navajo tribal enterprise, the Navajo Engineering Construction Authority (NECA), typifies this participation by its construction of virtually all sanitation facilities on the Navajo Reservation. The NECA employs approximately 350 Indians from the reservation.

The IHS continues to work with tribes and tribal organizations to encourage maximum participation in the planning and operation of health care services and will continue to actively support self-determination for tribal organizations. However, it must be recognized that the participation of tribes or tribal organizations in self-determination activities is dependent on and determined by the initiative of individual tribes. The IHS will continue to provide technical assistance to tribal officials in carrying out the administrative management responsibilities required for the tribal operation of these Federally supported programs.

SERVICES PROVIDED

The following tables represent the major components of the environmental health program necessary to support the upgrading and maintenance of an acceptable level of health for Indian people. The services and activities are primarily categorized by headings contained in Chapter 11, Environmental Health, of the IHS Manual, with some sub-categories which address specific identifiable activities within that area of concern. The first footnote lists training activities conducted by IHS staff or by tribally employed personnel working under the technical direction of IHS environmental health professionals, which complement the other activities of the Division.

A. The services identified below include samples, surveys, investigations, technical assistance, construction services, monitoring and surveillance activities, as well as planning and evaluation efforts.

	Services FY 1989
Air Pollution	746
Emergency Operations	564
Epidemiology	4,647
Food Protection	5,192
Hazardous Materials	856
Home and Community Health	1,046
Injury Prevention	29,278
Institutional Environmental Health	7,904
Occupational Health	6,981
Operation and Maintenance	1,388
Radiation	2,748
Recreation Sanitation	461
Safety	5,702
Sanitation and Safety at Celebrations	3,022
Training Sessions	2,934 1/
Vector Control; i.e., Rabies Clinics - Plague	7,569
Waste Disposal	11,848
Water Supply; i.e., Fluoridation	24,445
Total	117,331

1/ Training activities for individuals and groups.

	Sessions	Persons Attending
Food Service Personnel	757	15,002
Water and Sewer System Operators	585	3,664
Homeowners	35	254
Injury Prevention Program	672	16,964
Vector Control, including Rabies & Plague	149	3,380
Institutional	512	7,026
Other Environmental Health Factors	224	2,591
Total	2,934	48,881

B. During FY 1989, the environmental health staff performed activities necessary to provide sanitation facilities to Indian families under the authorities of P.L. 86-121 (Indian Sanitation Facilities Act) with appropriated and contributed funds on over 1,200 projects in the following stages:

	Number of Projects
Funded....................	341
Under Construction........	469
Transferred to Tribes.....	143
Final Report..............	261
Total...............	1,214

The Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988 required that IHS prepare an annual report to Congress which identifies the inventory of sanitation facility deficiencies. The estimated cost to raise the deficiencies to level zero, as shown in the 1989 Report to Congress, was $675 million. The Amendments also required the IHS to develop a 10-year plan to address these deficiencies. The 1990 assessment is currently in progress.

The FY 1989 initiated projects will provide sanitation facilities to approximately 3,274 Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) sponsored Indian housing units, 742 Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) sponsored units, 4,934 units constructed by tribes and other entities, and 500 existing homes.

Currently a Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) among the BIA, IHS, Environmental Protection Agency, and HUD has been drafted which describes the roles and mutual interests of each agency regarding environmental issues on Indian lands. The purpose of the MOU is to increase interagency coordination. The MOU has undergone a formal review by the participating agencies and a final document is expected during FY 1990.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

The environmental health services provided by the IHS and tribal contractors contributed to the following accomplishments:

1. The age-adjusted accident death rate for AI/AN continues its downward trend, from 184 deaths per 100,000 in 1955 to 83.2 per 100,000 in 1986.

2. As a result of the research efforts in the radon program conducted by IHS and tribal programs, mitigation projects have been accomplished involving several Indian homes. Preliminary results show that radon concentrations have been reduced from as much as 20 times the Environmental Protection Agency threshold level to below the threshold level.

3. The gastrointestinal disease death rate for AI/AN has steadily declined in concert with the provision of sanitation facilities. This rate was 430 percent that for all U.S. races in 1959 and is now slightly lower than that for all U.S. races. In addition, life expectancy has increased significantly in large part because of the decrease in infant mortality rate, at least partially as a result of improved environmental conditions. The infant mortality rate has steadily decreased. In 1955 the comparative rate was 238 percent of that for all U.S. races, with the present rate down to 93 percent of that for all U.S. races.

4. The fluoridation program shows an increase in the number of active community systems during the past year from 711 to 724.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Net Change +$1,522,000/+1 FTE

Built-In Increase +$1,760,000 +1 FTE/Program Decrease -$238,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $1,760,000 to fund built-in cost increases. Included in this increase is $476,000 for the FY 1991 pay raise; $161,000 for the annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $380,000 to fund within grade promotions in accordance with Section 5335 of Title 5, U.S.C.; $12,000 for the employer contributions to the Federal Employees' Retirement System; $32,000 for one extra paid day; $93,000 for the increased cost of travel and transportation of things; $3,000 for increased cost of rents, communications, and utilities; $521,000 to fund the increased cost of providing health care through the contracts or grants mechanism; $14,000 for increased cost of purchasing medical and other equipment; $13,000 for increased cost of purchasing supplies and materials used in the provision of environmental health services; $1,000 for increased cost of printing; $54,000 and 1 FTE for the annualization costs of the Toppenish, WA Health Center ($42,000/1 FTE) and Wolf Point, MT Health Center ($12,000); and a program decrease of -$238,000 to reflect absorption of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise.

Program Increase +$483,000

Program Restoration +$483,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

Impact Data

Workload Projections

The FY 1991 request will provide approximately the same number of environmental services as provided in FY 1990.

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Environmental Health Services	117,300	117,300	117,300

Public Health Nursing

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct Appropriation.	296	$14,467,000	293	$15,025,000	300	$16,462,000	+7	+$1,437,000
Reimbursement..	—	---	—	48,000	—	48,000	—	---
Total	296	$14,467,000	293	$15,073,000	300	$16,510,000	+7	+$1,437,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise	—	N/A	--	+$296,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise	—	N/A	--	+97,000
3. Within Grade Promotions	—	N/A	--	+162,000
4. FY 1990 Employer Contributions to Federal Employees' Retirement System	—	$348,000	--	+19,000
5. One Extra Paid Day	--	8,477,000	--	+32,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transport of Things...	—	850,000	—	+28,000
7. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants	--	5,710,000	—	+320,000
9. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment	--	98,000	--	+4,000
10. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies	—	124,000	—	+5,000
11. Annualization Cost of New Facilities:				
Toppenish, WA Health Center	1	44,000	+3	+131,000
Wolf Point, MT Health Center	2	63,000	—	+21,000
Total, Built-in Increases	—	---	+3	+1,115,000
Program Increases:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 Pay Raise	--	N/A	--	+$293,000
2. Staffing/Operating Costs of New/Replacement Facilities:				
Fort Hall, ID Health Center (12 months)	--	N/A	+1	+44,000
Kyle, SD Health Center (12 months)	—	N/A	+3	+133,000
Total, Program Increases	--	---	+4	+$470,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise	—	N/A	—	-$148,000
Net Change	--	---	+7	+$1,437,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATIONS

Public Health Nursing (PHN) promotes and preserves the health of the population. Activities include: (a) identifying health needs of the individual, the family, and the community; (b) assessing health status and health services of the population; (c) implementing health planning based on individual and/or family care plans and community profile; (d) providing primary health care; and (e) evaluating the impact of health activities to the individual, family, and the community.

Public Health Nursing is directed to individuals, families, and tribal groups and relates to the health of the total community. The PHN in an advocacy role is one of the dominant constituents of the Indian community. It is this advocacy and interrelationship with the community which makes the IHS/PHN program so unique as a health model. The program is community-based with the primary focus on health promotion and disease prevention. It also includes therapeutic services, counseling, education, coordination, and advocacy activities.

Tribal Health Programs

Thirty-seven percent of PHN programs are operated by tribes. There are a total of 509 PHN positions which include professional, nonprofessional and support staff. From this total, 155 or approximately 35 percent are tribal employees. The trend is towards increasing tribal contracting for the PHN programs.

The IHS continues to work with tribes and tribal organizations to encourage maximum participation in the planning and operation of health care services and will continue to actively support self-determination for tribal organizations. However, it must be recognized that the participation of tribes or tribal organizations in self-determination activities is dependent and determined by the initiative of individual tribes.

The IHS will continue to provide tribal officials technical assistance in carrying out the administrative management responsibilities required for the tribal operation of these Federally supported programs.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

Accomplishments include:

1. Collaboration with other IHS staff and American Indians and Alaska Natives to plan for coordinated and expanded services during 1990.

2. Prevention of complications of pregnancy and improvements of the general health status of expectant mothers and their infants through family planning education and early care of pregnant women.

3. Further reduction of infant morbidity and mortality through early visits to newborns, and by giving highest priority care to high risk infants.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Net Change +$967,000/+3 FTEs

Built-In Increase +$1,115,000 +3 FTEs/Program Decrease -$148,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $1,115,000 to fund built-in cost increases. Included in this increase is $296,000 for the FY 1991 pay raise; $97,000 for the annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $162,000 to fund within grade promotions in accordance with Section 5335 of Title 5, U.S.C.; $19,000 for the employer contributions to the Federal Employees' Retirement System; $32,000 for one extra paid day; $28,000 for the increased cost of travel and transportation of things; $320,000 to fund the increased cost of providing health care through the contracts or grants mechanism; $4,000 for increased cost of purchasing medical and other equipment; $5,000 for increased cost of purchasing supplies and materials; $152,000 and 3 FTEs for the annualization costs of the Toppenish, WA Health Center ($131,000/3 FTEs) and Wolf Point, MT Health Center ($21,000); and a program decrease of -$148,000 to reflect absorption of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise.

Program Increase +$470,000 +4 Positions/+4 FTEs

Program Restoration +$293,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

Staffing/Operating Costs of New/Replacement Facilities +$177,000 (+4 positions/+4 FTEs)

This increase will provide funding for the staffing and operating costs for the Fort Hall, ID ($44,000 1 position/1 FTE) and Kyle, SD ($133,000, 3 positions/3 FTEs) replacement health centers. The Fort Hall center is scheduled to open in October 1990, and the Kyle center opened in July 1989. These facilities are planned to be in operation on a full year basis and will be staffed at approximately 80 percent of the identified staffing requirements. The IHS methodology for staffing of facilities indicates that this level of funding would permit reasonable staffing of these health centers. Adequate resources and staffing of newly constructed health facilities contributes to the recruitment and retention of medical doctors and also promotes self-determination activities.

Impact Data

Workload Projections	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Public Health Nursing Services	745,000	763,500	782,969
Number of Families Served	49,600	50,900	52,198

The projected workload for FY 1991 includes an estimated 234,891 services to 15,661 families to be provided by tribal groups.

Health Education

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase or Decrease	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Direct								
Appropriation..	52	$4,551,000	52	$4,822,000	54	$5,196,000	+2	+$374,000
Reimbursements..	--	---	--	13,000	--	13,000	--	---
Total	52	$4,551,000	52	$4,835,000	54	$5,209,000	+2	+$374,000

	1990 Base		Change from Base	
	FTEs	BA	FTEs	BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise................................	--	N/A	--	+$51,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise...............	--	N/A	--	+16,000
3. Within Grade Promotions..........................	--	N/A	--	+22,000
4. FY 1990 Employer Contributions to Federal Employees' Retirement System..................	--	$145,000	--	+6,000
5. One Extra Paid Day..............................	--	2,287,000	--	+9,000
6. Increased Cost of Travel and Transport of Things.	--	299,000	--	+9,000
7. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants.............................	--	2,426,000	--	+135,000
8. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Equipment....	--	81,000	--	+2,000
9. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies.....	--	146,000	--	+4,000
10. Annualization Cost of New Facilities:				
Toppenish, WA Health Center.....................	--	8,000	+1	+38,000
Wolf Point, MT Health Center....................	1	31,000	--	+11,000
Total, Built-in Increases....................	--	---	+1	$303,000
Program Increases:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 Pay Raise..........	--	N/A	--	+$51,000
2. Staffing/Operating Costs of Replacement Facilitity: Kyle, SD Health Center (12 months)..............	--	N/A	+1	+46,000
Total, Program Increases.....................	--	---	+1	+$97,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise...............	--	N/A	--	-$26,000
Net Change..................................	--	---	+2	+$374,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

The goal for the Health Education program is to assist the Indian people in adopting health-promoting lifestyles; wisely select and use health care resources, products and services; and influence policy and planning on health care issues and larger environmental matters that affect health.

The ultimate objective of health education is to utilize its educational and behavior changing skills for making better choices and assuring increased responsibility for taking action to bring about the best possible health status. The traditional Health Education program components within the IHS include school health education services, community health education services, patient education services, staff health education support services and tribal program development.

Tribal Health Programs

Funded in FY 1989 through P.L. 93-638 were 30 tribal contracts totaling $2,008,104, which enabled tribes to provide health education services. The percentage of tribally operated programs has been increasing steadily, and additional contracts in FY 1989 will increase tribal operation to over $2 million.

Most tribal activities are targeted toward specific lifestyle behaviors and environmental conditions that are harmful to health; e.g., smoking, alcohol and drug use, diet, sedentary patterns in activities of daily living, hypertension, work place hazards, etc. In addition to the above activities, special emphasis is given to priority health needs as determined by the tribe.

The IHS continues to work with tribes and tribal organizations to encourage maximum participation in the planning and operation of health care services and will continue to actively support self-determination for tribal organizations. However, it must be recognized that the participation of tribes or tribal organizations in self-determination activities is dependent and determined by the initiative of individual tribes. The IHS will continue to provide tribal officials technical assistance in carrying out the administrative management responsibilities required for the tribal operation of these Federally supported programs.

Federal Programs

The IHS will maintain management and oversight function but will continue its commitment to expanded tribal operation of the program.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

All of the Health Education Branch Chiefs participated in implementing the Memorandum of Agreement between the IHS/BIA to train teachers and BIA school administration in AIDS prevention and curriculum development to prevent the spread of AIDS among Indian children and young adults. In addition to this, most Branch Chiefs assisted the Area AIDS Coordinators in their AIDS program efforts.

The goal to continue to train health educators in the area of quality assurance is being continued with scheduled workshops during the fiscal year.

Other Health Promotion/Disease Prevention (HP/DP) activities included the involvement of health education programs in diabetes education; employee fitness and wellness programs; substance abuse prevention programming; AIDS counselors certification training; networking/linkages initiated between IHS Health Education, the Centers for Disease Control, Health Education and Health Promotion Division, the Association for State and Territorial Directors for Health Education Branch, the Office of Health Promotion and Disease Prevention, Washington, D.C.; and other resources which directly impact on the work accomplished by IHS/tribal health educators.

Plan for FY 1991

Increased emphasis on reporting with use of Health Education Resource Management System (HERMS) computerized program to set levels of workload and projections to develop a more insightful IHS chart series packet for health education.

Continue to emphasize HP/DP programming and special initiative projects in the areas of priority as specified by IHS administrative objectives and 1990 objectives for HP/DP and tribal priorities.

Encourage health education program involvement in Year 2000 process for HP/DP.

Continue efforts to fill position vacancies of Area Health Education Branch Chiefs at Oklahoma and Billings, and continue efforts to fill an Assistant or Deputy Health Educator position at Headquarters.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Net Change +$277,000/+1 FTE

Built-In Increase +$303,000 +1 FTE/Program Decrease -$26,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $303,000 to fund built-in cost increases. Included in this increase is $51,000 for the FY 1991 pay raise; $16,000 for the annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $22,000 to fund within grade promotions in accordance with Section 5335 of Title 5, U.S.C.; $6,000 for the employer contributions to the Federal Employees' Retirement System; $9,000 for one extra paid day; $9,000 for the increased cost of travel and transportation of things; $135,000 to fund the increased cost of providing health education services through the contracts or grants mechanism; $2,000 for increased cost of purchasing medical and other equipment; $4,000 for increased cost of purchasing supplies and materials; and $49,000 and 1 FTE for the annualization costs of the Toppenish, WA Health Center ($38,000/1 FTE) and Wolf Point, MT Health Center ($11,000); and a program decrease of -$26,000 to reflect absorption of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise.

Program Increase +$97,000 +1 Position/+1 FTE

Program Restoration +$51,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

Staffing/Operating Costs of New/Replacement Facilities +$46,000 (1 position/1 FTE)

This increase will provide funding for the staffing and operating costs for the Kyle, SD replacement health center opened in July 1989. The IHS methodology for staffing of facilities indicates that this level of funding would permit reasonable staffing of this health center. Adequate resources and staffing of newly constructed health facilities contributes to the recruitment and retention of medical doctors and also promotes self-determination activities.

Impact Data

Workload Projections	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Health Education Services	332,000	311,250	318,000
IHS	252,000	235,885	241,000
Tribal	80,000	75,365	77,000

Community Health Representatives (CHR)

	FY 1989 Appropriation BA	FY 1990 Appropriation BA	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease BA
Direct Appropriation.....	$29,061,000	$31,085,000	$32,826,000	+$1,741,000

	1990 Base BA	Change from Base BA
Increase:		
Built-in:		
Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants.....................	$31,085,000	+$1,741,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

The CHR program was implemented in order to improve the health of Indian people by providing services necessary to the delivery of a total health care program. This program provides for follow-up and continued contact with the health care delivery system at the community level by well trained indigenous tribal members.

The goal of the program is to improve health care through the provision of community-based, community-oriented services, including traditional native concepts, utilizing well-trained, medically guided, paraprofessional health care workers.

Examples of services provided by the CHRs include: case finding and early detection; emergency medical care and first responders to trauma and life threatening situations; home visits and patient monitoring, translation and interpretation; health education to promote good health practices and prevent disease. Seventy-seven percent of the CHRs patient/client contacts are made in the community and home. They provide services in high risk health areas: e.g., diabetes, cancer, hypertension, AIDS, substance abuse, communicable disease, maternal and child health, gerontological health, mental health, etc.

The CHR program is now entering its 22nd year of service. Services are provided primarily through P.L. 93-638 contractual agreements with IHS. There are 250 grants/contracts which serve nearly 275 tribes. Close to 3.5 million services will be provided by 1,411 CHRs in FY 1991.

Accomplishments

Fiscal Year 1991 workload statistics are projected to be near the same level as Fiscal Year 1987. Health information, preventive health, and technical assistance directed at accidents and health hazards have reduced risk and hospitalization. In many communities CHRs have implemented successful weight reduction/fitness programs and most recently have been involved with HIV/AIDS education and home health care for AIDS patients.

A major accomplishment of the CHR program was to increase the interface between patients and physicians. For example, utilization of health care facilities increased tremendously after initiation of this program. Many examples of discovery of disease and proper referral to physicians have been reported including life saving referrals. Physicians have come to rely on the assistance and follow-up provided by CHRs as a necessary aspect of continued care.

The CHR program is an essential part of the central core around which the IHS-tribal/community health program is based; and is a true manifestation of a government-to-government partnership which empowers Indian self-determination.

Rationale for Budget Request

Built-In Increase +$1,741,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $1,741,000 to fund the inflationary costs associated with providing CHR services.

Impact Data

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Contacts (Individual and groups of individuals).....	3,470,364	3,482,000	3,482,000

Note: Utilization of the Community Health Representatives Information System (CHRIS II) received approval from OMB on March 20, 1989, and was reinitiated on a randomly selected sampling basis, during the week of July 10-16, 1989. Sampling has continued since that time for one week each month. Current data is not available at this time, therefore, data from FY 1987 is used for the projections. An evaluation of CHRIS II is currently taking place. Further reviews will be conducted and decisions to continue CHRIS II will be based on these studies. The CHRIS II meets the legislative mandate of section 107 of the Indian Health Care Improvement Act Amendments of 1988 (P.L. 100-713) which states that the Secretary, through the Indian Health Service shall:

> "(4) develops and maintain a system that provides close supervision of CHRs"; and, "(5) develop a system under which the work of CHRs is reviewed and evaluated."

Hepatitis B and Haemophilus Influenzae Immunization Programs (Alaska)

	FY 1989 Appropriation BA	FY 1990 Appropriation BA	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease BA
Direct Appropriation.	$417,000	$1,127,000	$1,188,000	+$61,000

	1990 Base	Change from Base
Increase:		
Built-in:		
1. Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contract and Grants..................	$849,000	+$47,000
2. Increased Cost of Medical and Other Supplies.	252,000	14,000
Total, Built-in Increases and Net Change		+$61,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

The Hepatitis B and Haemophilus Influenzae Immunization Programs objective is to deliver comprehensive hepatitis B control services to Alaska Natives. By Fiscal Year (FY) 1988, the majority of Alaska Natives, if not previously infected, were immunized against hepatitis B. The focus of the ongoing program is as follows: 1) vaccination of all newborns, new employees of the Indian Health Service (IHS), and new native health care providers; 2) continuance of the long-term immunogenicity and efficacy study begun in 1981 to determine when booster vaccine doses need to be administered; 3) a study of the effectiveness of administering only 1/2 doses of the vaccine in infants because of the potential for large cost savings if 1/2 dose is as effective as full doses; 4) a study of infants of mothers with chronic hepatitis B infection to evaluate if they need to receive a booster vaccine sooner than infants of uninfected mothers; and 5) surveillance of the approximately 1,700 chronic carriers of hepatitis B with alpha fetoprotein testing. Newborns, because of an immature immune system, are at high risk of becoming chronic carriers if they are infected with hepatitis B virus. Chronic carriers are 230 times more likely to develop primary liver cancer than the normal population. Semiannual blood tests (alpha fetoprotein) are done on all chronic carriers to detect this primary liver cancer at an early, potentially curable stage.

The incidence rate of invasive Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) infections, especially meningitis, among Alaskan Native infants is 6 to 10 times the rates generally seen. Currently there is no effective active vaccine for infants under one year of age. Bacterial Polysaccaride Immune Globulin (BPIG) is an effective passive vaccine but is costly and must be given in a series of 4 doses during the first year of life. The BPIG Prevention Project is designed to prevent Hib disease in a particularly high risk group of infants who live in the Yukon-Kuskokwim Delta Region.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

The Hepatitis B and Haemophilus Influenzae Immunization Programs began in 1982 and involved the IHS, the State of Alaska, and the Centers for Disease Control. The Program's initial goals were first to identify those persons most at risk for hepatitis B infection and second to begin control of the further spread of the hepatitis B virus in the population. The Hepatitis B and Haemophilus Influenzae Immunization Programs has reached all of the high risk villages in Alaska and has the potential for eradicating this disease in Alaska Native villages. In FY 1989 approximately 4,000 persons were immunized, and 1,500 chronic carriers were surveyed for occult primary liver cancer. The approach used in this activity is unique in the world, and communicable disease experts internationally are monitoring its performance. Some early results of the program, published in 1987, show that the annual incidence of acute symptomatic hepatitis B virus infection has decreased dramatically and that the one-year case fatality rate for primary liver cancer has decreased from 100 percent to 50 percent.

To date, December 1989, more than 450 infants have been vaccinated with BPIG. Every infant is offered the vaccine by 2 months of age. Based on information from earlier BPIG efficacy studies, it is expected that this project will prevent at least five episodes of Hib meningitis as well as other forms of invasive Hib disease.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

The FY 1991 request of $1,188,000 will provide for the ongoing surveillance phase of the program, provide for the immunization of all newborns and new health care employees, the continuation of the three studies noted above, as well as the continuation of the surveillance of persons chronically infected with the hepatitis B virus (chronic carriers). It will also provide for the protection of infants against the acute and chronic consequences of invasive Hib disease, especially of meningitis. Included in the $1,188,000 is $14,000 for the increased cost of purchasing medical and other supplies and $47,000 for the increased cost of health care provided under contracts and grants.

Impact Data

Services Provided	1989 Actual	1990 Estimated	1991 Estimated
Number of Patients Immunized:			
Hepatitis B	4,000*	6,500	7,500
Haemophilus influenzae	---	550	550
Hepatitis Chronic Carriers Surveyed	1,500	1,500	1,500
Evaluate Need for Hepatitis B Booster Doses:			
Infants	---	---	500
Children/Adults	---	---	1,500

*1,500 with left-over vaccine

PREVENTION
FY 1989 Appropriation

	Indian Health Operated	Tribal Operated	Total
1. Sanitation			
a. Services provided	105,300	12,000	117,300
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$23,067	$1,587	$24,654
2. Public Health Nursing			
a. Number of families served	39,700	9,900	49,600
b. Services provided	596,000	149,000	745,000
3. Health Education			
a. Services provided	252,000	80,000	332,000
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$2,542	$2,009	$4,551
4. Community Health Representative Program			
a. Number supported (CHRs)	—	1,411	1,411
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$911	$28,150	$29,061
5. Hepatitis and Haemophilus influenzae Immunizations Programs (AK)			
a. Number of Patients Immunized Hepatitis B	4,000	—	4,000
b. No. Chronic carriers surveyed	1,500	—	1,500
c. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$417	—	$417

PREVENTION
FY 1990 Appropriation

	Indian Health Operated	Tribal Operated	Total
1. Sanitation			
a. Services provided	104,800	12,500	117,300
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$23,921	$1,650	$25,571
2. Public Health Nursing			
a. Number of families served	35,630	15,270	50,900
b. Services provided	534,450	229,050	763,500
3. Health Education			
a. Services provided	235,885	75,365	311,250
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$2,814	$2,008	$4,822
4. Community Health Representative Program			
a. Number supported (CHRs)	—	1,411	1,411
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$597	$30,488	$31,085
5. Hepatitis B and Haemophilus Influenzae Immunization Programs (AK)			
a. Number of Patients Immunized			
Hepatitis B	6,500	—	6,500
Haemophilus Influenzae	550	—	550
b. No. chronic carriers surveyed	1,500	—	1,500
c. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$1,127	—	$1,127

PREVENTION
FY 1991 Estimate

	Indian Health Operated	Tribal Operated	Total
1. Sanitation			
a. Services provided	104,300	13,000	117,300
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$25,856	$1,720	$27,576
2. Public Health Nursing			
a. Number of families served	36,537	15,661	52,198
b. Services provided	548,078	234,891	782,969
3. Health Education			
a. Services provided	241,000	77,000	318,000
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$2,943	$2,253	$5,196
4. Community Health Representative Program			
a. Number supported (CHRs)	---	1,411	1,411
b. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$599	$32,227	$32,826
5. Hepatitis B and Haemophilus influenzae Immunization Programs (AK)			
a. Number of Patients Immunized			
Hepatitis B	7,500	---	7,500
Haemophilus influenzae	550	---	550
b. No. chronic carriers surveyed	1,500	---	1,500
c. Evaluate need for Hepatitis Booster Doses:			
Infants	---	---	500
Children/Adults	---	---	1,500
d. Cost (dollars in thousands)	$1,188	---	$1,188

3. Urban Health

	FY 1989 Appropriation BA	FY 1990 Appropriation BA	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease BA
Direct Appropriation...	$9,962,000	$13,049,000	$14,129,000	+$1,080,000

	1990 Base BA	Change from Base BA
Increase:		
Built-in:		
Increased Cost of Health Care Provided under Contracts or Grants..........................	$13,049,000	+$730,000
Program Increase		
Human Immunodeficiency Virus..................	$350,000 1/	+350,000
Net Change..................................		+$1,080,000

1/ Report language accompanying FY 1990 Labor, Health and Human Services, and Education, and related agencies appropriations indicated that up to $350,000 of PHS/HIV funds could be made available to IHS.

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

In FY 1989 all programs were reviewed to assure compliance with the needs assessment requirement of P.L. 100-713; new standards for program operation and new regulations under P.L. 100-713 were developed; linkages with the Federally funded community health centers were strengthened; and reports detailing potential sites for new urban Indian programs, barriers to mainstream health care experienced by urban Indians, identification of urban Indian health programs seeking JCAHO accreditation, and national aggregate uniform statistical and epidemiological data analyses were issued.

The IHS partially funds 34 urban Indian health organizations operating 41 sites located in various cities throughout the United States to provide available, accountable, acceptable, accessible and culturally sensitive health services to the medically-indigent underserved urban Indian population.

The 34 programs are engaged in a variety of activities, ranging from the provision of outreach and referral services to the delivery of comprehensive ambulatory health care. Health care and services currently being provided include medical, dental, community services, and a variety of other health related activities such as family planning, mental health, nutrition and health education, social services, alcohol and drug abuse prevention, education, and treatment, home health care, and AIDS education and prevention services.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

In FY 1989, a total of approximately 428,194 services were provided including:

Medical	152,736
Dental	70,497
Community Services	120,450

Over $9.7 million was generated from other non-IHS sources by the 34 programs. Experience has shown that the IHS funding support enhances the ability of the programs to generate other sources of funding.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Increase +$730,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $730,000 to fund the inflationary cost increases associated with providing urban health services and will permit the Urban Health Program to provide approximately the same level of services as provided in FY 1990. The P.L. 100-713, Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988, Title V, authorizes the IHS to "make health services more accessible to urban Indians and "where necessary provide, or enter into contracts for the provision of, health care services for Urban Indians." The IHS Urban Indian Program will use the additional funding to provide funds for health care needs assessments in urban Indian communities requesting IHS urban health care services.

Program Increase of $350,000

Human Immunodeficiency Virus +$350,000

The Urban AIDS program funding is an important part of the IHS Urban Indian Health care program since many Indians and Alaska Natives who are HIV infected were exposed to the disease in the urban environment. In FY 1990 the IHS AIDS funding was removed from the IHS budget and incorporated in the combined PHS AIDS budget. The addition of the IHS $350,000 request for the AIDS program in the FY 1991 budget will allow the IHS to maintain its current urban AIDS prevention and education activities.

Program Output Data:

Services Provided:	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate
Medical................	152,736	163,000	163,000
Dental..................	70,497	75,000	75,000
Outreach/Community.....	120,450	129,000	129,000
Other 1/...............	84,511	90,000	90,000
Total..............	428,194	457,000	457,000

1/ Includes services such as family planning, mental health, social services, health and nutrition education, home health care, drug abuse, etc.

4. Indian Health Manpower

	FY 1989 Appropriation BA	FY 1990 Appropriation BA	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease BA
Direct Appropriation....	$8,115,000 1/	$9,540,000	$12,600,000	+$3,060,000

	1990 Base BA	Change from Base BA
Increase:		
Built-in:		
Increased Cost of Providing Manpower Scholarships..............................	$9,540,000	+$299,000
Program Increase:		
Additional Scholarships (177)................	N/A	+2,761,000
Net Change................................		+$3,060,000

1/ Includes $219,000 in prior year funds for the Indian Health Manpower activity and continues the availability of funds that would have otherwise expired.

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

The IHS is experiencing shortages of critical health manpower required to effectively provide health services. Title I of P.L. 94-437, Indian Health Manpower, authorizes resources for training Indian people as health professionals and assists the IHS in coping with its manpower shortage. The training of Indian people in the health professions serves as a catalyst to the development of Indian communities as a whole, with the resultant increase in the general health status of Indian people.

In order to accomplish the IHS goal of reducing critical health manpower shortages, the IHS is authorized to conduct three interrelated scholarship programs to train the health professionals necessary to staff IHS health programs and other health programs serving Indian people.

The Indian Health Manpower sections under Title I have provisions for scholarships, identification and recruitment of scholarship recipients, experiential summer employment, and continuing education.

Health Professions Recruitment Program for Indians - Section 102

This provides grants for recruiting Indians into health professions.

University of North Dakota - Indian Into Medicine (INMED)
University of California, Master of Public Health (MPH)
University of Oklahoma (MPH)
University of Hawaii (MPH)
Yakima Community College (Nursing)

During FY 1989, these programs provided career information and counselling to more than 3,000 Indian students. These programs also provided scholarship and career information to more than 80 percent of their new applicants for other programs in public health. Students recruited by the grantees are Indians interested in returning to Indian communities.

Health Professions Preparatory Scholarship Program for Indians - Section 103

The Preparatory Program provides funding to American Indian and Alaska Native students who need additional training or specific academic courses in order to qualify for health professions schools. It also provides funding for students who are in health professions schools and need compensatory education (e.g., must repeat a course or take a course outside of the required curriculum).

Pregraduate Education Program - Section 103

This program provides scholarship support to American Indian and Alaska Native students enrolled in preosteopathy, predentistry, preveterinary medicine, preoptometry or prepodiatry curriculum.

Health Professions Scholarship Program - Section 104

This program provides scholarship support which includes tuition, fees, books, a stipend and other necessary financial aid to qualified individuals in health professions institutions. Upon graduation, they will provide their professional services to Indian people in the IHS, tribal health programs funded under P.L. 93-638, in an urban Indian health program funded under Title V of P.L. 94-437, or in a private practice situation in a health manpower shortage area, serving a substantial number of Indians.

Nursing - Section 112

The FY 1990 appropriation included $741,000 to initiate the special nursing program authorized in section 112 of the Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988 (Public Law 100-713). Initially, these funds will be used to provide grants that will identify and recruit students into nurse mid-wifery programs, BSN/MSN programs, and tribal community college nursing programs.

Continuing Education - Section 106

Allowances are also provided for continuing education for health professionals employed in the IHS. Continuing education opportunities are vital to attracting and retaining top quality health professionals, and also frequently needed to maintain current licenses.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

In FY 1989, there were five grants made to universities to support three Master of Public Health (MPH) Programs, one pilot nursing recruitment program, and the other to support the Indians into Medicine Program (INMED) at the University of North Dakota. These grantees provided assistance with the recruitment of American Indian and Alaska Native students into the health professions and the IHS scholarship program.

There were 46 students funded under the authority of the Health Professions Preparatory Scholarship Program for Indians.

There were 58 students funded under the authority of Health Profession Pregraduate Program. In FY 1989, the funding was limited to students enrolled in premedicine or predentistry curriculums.

There were 316 students funded under the authority of the Health Professions Scholarship Program.

During FY 1989, a total of 85 students graduated; of these, 56 students are working for the IHS. The remaining students are continuing in postgraduate programs or are working in other Indian Health programs.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Increase +$299,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $299,000 to fund the inflationary cost increases associated with providing manpower scholarships.

Program Increase +$2,761,000

The FY 1991 request of $12,600,000, the maximum authorized under P.L. 94-437, as amended, includes a program increase of $2,761,000 which will support approximately 20 new Preparatory Program scholarships (Section 103) and 157 Health Professions scholarships (Section 104). The awards will focus on primary health manpower shortage areas of nursing and medicine.

TITLE I
ACCOMPLISHMENTS AND OBJECTIVES
(Dollars in thousands)

Section	FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate	
Health Professions Recruitment Program (Section 101 of P.L. 100-713)	$640	5 Projects	$660	5 Projects
INMED Program	($384)		($396)	
MPH Projects	($256)		($264)	
Nursing Program (Section 112 of P.L. 100-713)	$741	3 Projects	$764	3 Projects
Health Professions Preparatory Program (Section 102 of P.L. 100-713)	$2,160	143 Scholarships	$2,542	163 Scholarships
Health Professions Scholarship Program (Section 104 of P.L. 100-713)	$4,883	323 Scholarships	$7,485	480 Scholarships
Extern Program (Section 103 of P.L. 100-713)	$1,116	254 Externs	$1,149	254 Externs
TOTAL	$9,540		$12,600	

5. Tribal Management

	FY 1989 Appropriation BA	FY 1990 Appropriation BA	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease BA
Direct Appropriation.	$3,218,000	$2,562,000	$4,131,000	+$1,569,000

	1990 Base BA	Change from Base BA
Increases:		
Built-in:		
Increased Cost of Contractual Services.......	$2,562,000	+$84,000
Program Increase:		
Tribal Management Increase...................	2,562,000	+1,485,000
Net Change................................	---	+$1,569,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

The Tribal Management Program assists tribes in the operation and management of their own health programs. This approach began in earnest with the passage of P.L. 93-638, the Indian Self-Determination Act, which provides the IHS the authority to contract with tribes for the operation of any and all IHS operated health care programs.

These funds support costs for studies on the feasibility of contracting under P.L. 93-638, planning, the development of tribal health management structures, training and staff development, and evaluation studies designed to improve the capacity of a tribal organization to enter into a P.L. 93-638 contract. In FY 1988, the IHS implemented the Tribal Management Program for American Indians and Alaska Natives. This grant program, which awards tribal management funds to tribes and tribal organizations on a competitive basis, ensures that only the most meritorious tribal management projects are funded. In FY 1989, fifty-one (51) grants were awarded to tribes or tribal organizations. Fifty-three percent (53%) of the Tribal Management projects were to determine the feasibility of contracting IHS health care programs at a future date. The remaining forty-seven percent were for training and staff development designed to enhance the management capabilities of tribal staff.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

The Tribal Management Program activity has resulted in: 1) the development of the management capabilities of newly Federally-recognized tribes, 2) increased support for tribes to develop or strengthen their management systems as a preparatory approach to enter into a P.L. 93-638 contract, 3) increased awareness on the part of IHS of tribes that have improved their management capability and are likely to exercise their management capability option under P.L. 93-638 to manage their community health care system.

The tribal management program is closely allied with the self-determination program supported by the hospital and health clinics activity to maximize tribal takeover of IHS health programs.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-in Increase +$84,000

This increase will fund the inflationary cost increases associated with providing grants to tribes or tribal organizations.

Program Increase +$1,485,000

The FY 1991 request of $4,131,000 includes an increase of $1,485,000 to provide additional grants to tribes and tribal organizations requesting support for activities such as health department development, evaluations, etc., and permit the IHS to provide the varying types of management skills needed by tribes and tribal organizations. This increase will fund approximately 29 additional projects in FY 1991. This is consistent with the goal of the IHS' ten year plan to entrust 75 percent of the IHS hospitals and clinics with Indian tribal organizations. This request of $1,485,000 will allow the IHS to: (1) expand the Tribal Management Grant Program Awards. These grants will help support tribes in improving their management capacity and community organization skills to stimulate self-determination contracting and Health Promotion and Disease Prevention Programs. (2) Provide funding source for tribes to purchase technical assistance as authorized by P.L. 100-472, the Indian Health Self-Determination and Education Act Amendments of 1988. The technical assistance will allow tribes to increase their program planning and evaluation activities. (3) Fund demonstration projects for tribal management of health care services as authorized by P.L. 100-713, the Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988.

Program Output

The FY 1991 request of $4,131,000 will provide an additional 29 tribal management awards over the FY 1990 estimate of 55 awards.

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate
Tribal Management Awards	51	55	84

6. Direct Operations

	FY 1989 Appropriation FTEs	FY 1989 Appropriation BA	FY 1990 Appropriation FTEs	FY 1990 Appropriation BA	FY 1991 Estimate FTEs	FY 1991 Estimate BA	Increase or Decrease FTEs	Increase or Decrease BA
Direct Appropriation..........	681	$42,471,000	669	$44,484,000	709	$49,936,000	+40	+$5,452,000

	1990 Base FTEs	1990 Base BA	Change from Base FTEs	Change from Base BA
Increases:				
Built-in:				
1. FY 1991 Pay Raise..	—	N/A	--	+$1,008,000
2. Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise....................	—	N/A	--	+309,000
3. Within Grade Promotions....................................	—	N/A	--	+348,000
4. FY 1991 Employer Contributions to Federal Employees' Retirement System...	—	$544,000	—	+37,000
5. One Extra Paid Day..	—	23,086,000	--	+88,000
6 Increased Cost of Travel and Transportation of Things..	—	3,792,000	--	+126,000
7. Increased Cost of Rents, Communications, and Utilities.	—	842,000	--	+27,000
6. Increased Cost of Contractual Services.................	—	18,692,000	—	+617,000
7. Increased Cost of Equipment................................	—	3,117,000	--	+103,000
8. Increased Cost of Supplies.....................................	—	584,000	--	+19,000
9. Increased Cost of Printing.....................................	—	235,000	--	+8,000
Total, Built-in Increases..	—	—	--	+$2,690,000
Program Increases:				
1. Restoration of resources in FY 1991 as a result of absorption of the FY 1990 Pay Raise....................	—	N/A	--	+$927,000
2. Automation User Support....................................	—	N/A	--	+339,000
3. Quality Management Initiative..............................	—	N/A	+40	+2,000,000
Total, Program Increases..	—	—	+40	+$3,266,000
Program Decrease:				
Absorb 50 percent of FY 1991 Pay Raise....................	—	N/A	--	-$504,000
Net Change..	--	—	+40	+$5,452,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

A critical element in the delivery of health care to the American Indians and Alaska Natives is the management of the IHS program. The complexity and dispersion of the IHS program requires a decentralized management system which ensures that decisions are made at the organizational level closest to the sources of information and expertise and create flexibility which permits timely and appropriate responses to unique situations. Management has become even more critical in the face of increased emphasis on resource management and accountability.

The management of the IHS program consists of both Headquarters and Area Office operations. The role of IHS Headquarters is two-fold: First, to carry out the authorities, functions and responsibilities of a Federal agency; and, secondly, to direct, monitor, coordinate and evaluate management activities carried out by the eleven (11) area offices. The Director and attendant staff coordinate the IHS activities and resources with those of other Federal and local programs.

Area Offices are responsible for carrying out a dual function: First, to participate in and establish goals and objectives, applying IHS policies, and determining priorities within the framework of IHS policy in support of the IHS mission. As such, Area Offices coordinate their respective activities and resources internally and externally with those of other governmental and nongovernmental programs to promote optimum utilization of all available health resources.

Secondly, Area Offices ensure the delivery of quality health care through their respective service units, and participate in the development and demonstration of alternative means and techniques of health services management and delivery to provide Indian tribes and other Indian community groups with optimal ways of participating in Indian health programs. As an integral part of this dual function, the Area Offices are principally responsible for assuring the development of individual and tribal capabilities to participate in the operation of IHS commensurate with the means and modalities which Indian tribal groups deem appropriate to their needs and circumstances.

A critical management function of Area Offices is the direction, coordination and support provided to their respective service units. Administrative management support functions include acquisition; financial, personnel, materiel, and facilities management. Program management support includes professional leadership in medicine, dentistry, nursing, pharmacy, laboratory, radiology, maternal and child health, etc.

Service units carry out the vital IHS mission and responsibility of the delivery of health services at the local level. The service unit delivery system includes a combination of direct care provided by health care professional staff and contract referrals to private vendors of health care services. The size and scope of the service unit programs vary according to the size and health needs of the respective service populations.

Since 1983, the IHS health services budget has grown by approximately 30 percent, while the administrative budget has grown by 2.6 percent. The growth in program size and complexity has placed an increased burden on the administrative infrastructure to carry out the control and protection of resources. Internal control measures require adequate staffing and the current staffing in many instances are borderline which can lead to increased risk and vulnerability in adequate resource management controls.

In Fiscal Year 1989, the IHS planned, and in FY 1990 implemented a major plan for quality management, designed to increase the quantity and improve the quality of its health care services by strengthening management and accountability at every level in the Agency. This objective will continue in FY 1991 and beyond. Central to this plan is a focused evaluation and improvement of the administrative and management systems critical to supporting the continued success of the health care delivery program. This plan is timely as the IHS embarks on yet another set of requirements brought about by the passage of Public Law (P.L.) 100-472, Indian Self-Determination Amendments of 1988 and P.L. 100-713, Indian Health Care Amendments of 1988.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

During FY 1989, the IHS completed its first full fiscal year as the newest agency of the Public Health Service.

During FY 1989, the management of the IHS came under intense scrutiny by both internal and external entities. A plan for quality management was formulated to exert strong leadership, make immediate corrections and build a permanent infrastructure and management culture to:

- o Continuously improve the processes IHS uses to manage the delivery of health care by vigorously seeking out dysfunction and making corrections.
- o Gain the commitment and involvement of all IHS employees to improve the agency's performance by stressing the benefits of accountability.

This plan for quality management was developed in FY 1989, implemented in FY 1990 and will continue in FY 1991. The first priority is the full implementation of the Federal Managers Fiscal Integrity Act, including internal control reviews in both administrative and program areas. Priority projects are underway in managing contract health services, restructuring materiel support systems, managing third party resources, developing human resources, responding to external authorities, and general management effectiveness through principal chains of command. This plan will serve as a vehicle for change and as such, all identified systems problems will be staffed, analyzed and corrected through the quality management plan strategies.

The training of IHS professional and support staff in the use of automation equipment continues to be a priority that will enable the IHS to achieve increased productivity and efficiencies in its operations. Moreover, automation will serve to standardize administrative and management activities at all levels, thereby increasing the effectiveness and timeliness of management information.

The study of the possible relocation of IHS Headquarters was undertaken in FY 1989, with the report expected to be completed and submitted during the first part of FY 1990. The study was conducted by a combination of Public Health Service and IHS staff. Of critical importance is the analysis of those functions necessary for the Director's role as chief administrator of the Indian Health Service and principal advisor to Department of Health and Human Services officials on the status of Indian health program efforts and activities; and those functions required to direct, coordinate, and assist field activities.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

Built-In Increase +$2,690,000

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $2,690,000 to fund built-in cost increases. Included in this increase is $1,008,000 to fund the FY 1991 pay raise; $309,000 for the annualization of the FY 1990 pay raise; $348,000 to fund within grade promotions in accordance with section 5335 of Title 5, U.S.C.; $37,000 for the employer contributions to the Federal Employees' Retirement System; $88,000 for one extra paid day; $126,000 for increased costs of travel and transportation of things; $27,000 for increased cost of rents, communications, and utilities; $617,000 to fund the increased cost of contractual services; $103,000 for increased cost of purchasing equipment; $19,000 for increased cost of purchasing supplies; and $8,000 for increased cost of purchasing printing services.

Program Increase +$3,266,000 +40 FTEs

Program Restoration +$927,000

This increase restores in FY 1991 the resources absorbed in FY 1990 to fund pay raise costs.

Quality Management Initiative +$2,000,000 +40 FTEs

The FY 1991 request includes an increase of $2,000,000 and 40 FTEs. The need for the staffing increase in Direct Operations is critical to the IHS meeting its administration and program management responsibilities. Since 1983, the IHS health services budget has grown by approximately 30 percent, while the administrative budget has grown by 2.6 percent. Recent accounts in the media and Congressional hearings point to the manifestations of inadequate staffing of administrative functions and responsibilities. For example, financial and procurement documents are not receiving adequate review because of the high workload associated with the growth of the health services program. Internal control measures require adequate staffing and the current staffing in many instances are borderline which can lead to increased risk and vulnerability on adequate resource management controls.

In addition, on January 4, 1988 the Indian Health Service became an Agency within the PHS. While the elevation has had a positive effect on the ability of the IHS to carry out its mission and goals, experience has demonstrated that IHS has critical needs for staff in administration and management to direct and account for resources.

The increase of $2 million would be directed to staffing critical functions and enhance the IHS's ability to provide overall leadership and direction and provide more efficient and effective administration of its programs.

Automation User Support +$339,000

The FY 1991, request includes an additional $339,000 to support the continuing automation of Headquarters East in the following contracted services areas:

1. Contract Programming - Provide for specialized programming services such as developing programs for management information, interfaces with other systems (i.e., Health Resources and Services Administration accounting system), and programming associated with database conversions and management.

2. Training - Provide training for the Headquarters and Area level staff in the use of management information software application modules and packages being developed through the IHS software applications development efforts. This training effort will result in personnel who are trained end-users in the specialized use of these software applications resulting in a consistent and timely utilization of management information software applications.

The IHS FY 1990 request of $1,000,000 allowed the IHS to initiate the improvement and expansion of the Information Resources Management (RPMS) automation program into Headquarters East. This has resulted in increased requests for timely and quality management information, reporting, and response to inquiries drawing in IHS facility generated data through software application programs such as the Patient Care Component (PCC). This request for management information support services will allow the IHS to respond to this request in a timely and orderly fashion through contracted services.

Program Decrease -$504,000

The FY 1991 request includes a program decrease of -$504,000 to reflect absorption of of 50 percent of the proposed FY 1991 pay raise. The IHS will maintain approximately the same level of program direction and administrative support for the delivery of patient care services as provided in FY 1990.

Direct Operations
(Dollars in thousands)

	FY 1990	FY 1991	Change
1. Headquarters Management Activities:			
FTEs....................................	299	339	+40
Cost: Personnel Services & Benefits..	$15,404	$18,200	+$2,796
Other...........................	5,906	7,039	+1,133
Total Cost...........................	$21,310	$25,239	+$3,929
2. Area Offices:			
FTEs....................................	370	370	—
Cost: Personnel Services & Benefits..	$18,682	$19,429	+$747
Other...........................	4,492	5,268	+776
Total Cost...........................	$23,174	$24,697	+$1,523
3. Total:			
FTEs....................................	669	709	+40
Cost: Personnel Services & Benefits..	$34,086	$37,629	+$3,543
Other...........................	10,398	12,307	+1,909
Total Cost...........................	$44,484	$49,936	+$5,452

Exhibit A

INDIAN HEALTH SERVICES

New Positions Requested

	1991		
	Grade	Number	Annual Salary
Hospitals & Health Clinics			
Computer Systems Analyst	GS-13	1	$42,601
Computer Specialist	GS-13	2	85,202
Computer Systems Analyst	GS-12	8	286,600
Computer Specialist	GS-12	2	71,650
Computer Systems Analyst	GS-11	18	538,038
Computer Programmer/Analyst	GS-11	2	59,782
Family Nurse Practitioner	GS-11	1	29,891
Quality Assurance Specialist	GS-11	1	29,891
Medical Technologist	GS-11	1	29,891
Data Processing/MIS Site Manager	GS-11	1	29,891
Social Worker	GS-11	1	29,891
Public Health Nutritionist	GS-11	1	29,891
CHS Program Administrator	GS-11	1	29,891
Computer Systems Analyst	GS-9	2	49,410
Registered Nurse	GS-9	3	74,115
Accredited Records Technician	GS-9	1	24,705
Mental Health Counselor	GS-9	1	24,705
Social Worker Associate	GS-9	1	24,705
Computer Systems Analyst	GS-7	2	40,390
Clerk-Typist	GS-6	1	18,174
Supply Technician	GS-5	1	16,305
Medical Secretary	GS-5	1	16,305
Optometry Technician/Receptionist	GS-4	1	14,573
Health Records Clerk	GS-4	2	29,146
Data Processing Input Clerk	GS-4	1	14,573
Clerk-Typist	GS-4	1	14,573
CHS Clerk	GS-4	1	14,573
Receptionist	GS-3	1	12,982
Optometrist	CC-04	1	31,306
Pharmacy Officer	CC-03	2	58,162
Maintenance Worker	WG-7	1	22,053
Motor Vehicle Operator	WG-4	1	19,762
Janitor	WG-3	1	32,900
Janitor	WG-1	1	22,400
General Maintenance Worker	WG-1	1	22,400
		68	$1,891,327

Exhibit A

Dental Services			
Dental Officer	CC-05	1	35,240
Dental Hygienist	GS-7	1	20,195
Dental Assistant	GS-5	1	16,305
Dental Assistant	GS-4	2	29,146
		5	$100,886
Mental Health			
Psychiatric Social Worker	GS-12	1	35,825
Mental Health Technician	GS-7	1	20,195
		2	$56,020
Public Health Nursing			
Community Health Nurse	GS-12	1	35,825
Public Health Nurse	GS-11	1	29,891
Community Health Nurse	GS-11	2	59,782
		4	$125,498
Health Education			
Public Health Educator	GS-11	1	$29,891
Grand Total		80	$2,203,622 a/

a/ Base pay

Exhibit B

DETAIL OF PERMANENT POSITIONS

Indian Health Service

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
ES-04	2	2	2
ES-03	2	2	2
ES-02	2	2	2
ES-01	4	4	4
Subtotal	10	10	10
GS/GM-15	111	111	111
GS/GM-14	263	293	293
GS/GM-13	326	341	344
GS-12	512	557	569
GS-11	951	1,043	1,074
GS-10	178	184	184
GS-9	1,474	1,493	1,501
GS-8	81	81	81
GS-7	617	627	631
GS-6	572	589	590
GS-5	1,409	1,435	1,438
GS-4	1,166	1,194	1,202
GS-3	551	557	558
GS-2	73	73	73
GS-1	4	4	4
Subtotal	8,288	8,582	8,653
Grades established by Act of July 1, 1944 (U.S.C. 207):			
Assistant Surgeon General CO-08	1	2	2
Assistant Surgeon General CO-07	6	6	6
Director Grade CO-06	282	282	282
Senior Grade CO-05	513	518	519
Full Grade CO-04	713	715	716
Senior Assistant Grade CO-03	563	566	568
Assistant Grade CO-02	221	222	222
Junior Grade CO-01	30	30	30
Subtotal	2,330	2,341	2,345
Grades established by the Foreign Service Act of 1946 (U.S.C. 801-1158):			
Ungraded	1,467	1,476	1,481
Total, Permanent Positions	12,095	12,409	12,489
Unfilled Positions, End of Year	0	0	0
Total Permanent Employment, End of Year	12,095	12,409	12,489

Exhibit B

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Total General Schedule Series: (GS-1 - GS-15)			
Number..................................	8,288	8,582	8,653
Total Salary............................	$221,055,794	$232,100,756	$236,488,523
Average Salary........................	$26,672	$27,045	$27,330
Average Grade.........................	7.62	7.69	7.70
Total Ungraded Positions at Hourly Rates:			
Number..................................	1,467	1,476	1,481
Total Salary............................	$36,899,454	$37,199,393	$37,688,209
Average Salary........................	$25,153	$25,203	$25,448
Total Commissioned Officer Series:			
Number..................................	2,330	2,341	2,345
Total Salary............................	$79,693,895	$82,108,169	$84,168,005
Average Salary........................	$34,203	$35,074	$35,893
Total ES Series: (ES-01 - ES-04)			
Number..................................	10	10	10
Total Salary............................	$724,100	$724,100	$724,100
Average Salary........................	$72,410	$72,410	$72,410

IHS- 185
Exhibit C

ADVISORY AND ASSISTANCE SERVICES

PUBLIC HEALTH SERVICE
INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

(In Thousands of Dollars)

Account Title and Symbol		1989	1990	1991
Salaries and Expenses: No. 75-0390-01-551				
I. Contractual Services				
Individual Experts & Consultants	B.A.	613	369	380
	Obligations	613	369	380
	Outlays	552	332	342
Studies, Analyses & Evaluations	B.A.	570	290	299
	Obligations	570	290	299
	Outlays	513	261	269
Management & Professional Support Services	B.A.	566	500	515
	Obligations	566	500	515
	Outlays	509	450	464
Engineering & Technical Serivces	B.A.	0	0	0
	Obligations	0	0	0
	Outlays	0	0	0
Subtotal	B.A.	1,749	1,159	1,194
	Obligations	1,749	1,159	1,194
	Outlays	1,574	1,043	1,074
II Personnel Appointments	B.A.	0	0	0
	Obligations	0	0	0
	Outlays	0	0	0
III Advisory Committees	B.A.	0	0	0
	Obligations	0	0	0
	Outlays	0	0	0
TOTAL	B.A.	1,749	1,159	1,194
	Obligations	1,749	1,159	1,194
	Outlays	1,574	1,043	1,074

IHS - 186

Exhibit C

ADVISORY AND ASSISTANCE SERVICES

PUBLIC HEALTH SERVICE
INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE

IHS has undertaken a major management improvement that will influence every level of this wide-spread, diverse organization. This requires very skilled management planning and development in key areas such as financial management, health financing administration, procurement, and organization design and development.

IHS lacks the numbers of staff and the expertise to devote the kinds of resources that are needed for the successful accomplishment of these organizational goals.

The initiative includes the preparation of the strategic plans for this development of research and problem analysis for the work groups charged with making real changes in the management culture of the agency, and assessment of perceived progress by DHHS, OIG, and OMB.

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
INDIAN HEALTH SERVICE
INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

Justification for Appropriation, Fiscal Year 1991

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Fiscal Year 1991	Page No.
Appropriation language and explanation of language changes.........	IHF - 1
Amounts available for obligation..................................	IHF - 3
Summary of changes..	IHF - 4
Obligations by activity...	IHF - 5
Obligations by object...	IHF - 6
Appropriation history...	IHF - 7
Personnel summary...	IHF - 8
Unobligated balance by activity and total available for FY 1990....	IHF - 9
Tribal and federal health facilities (by activity and project).....	IHF - 10
Justification:	
1. Narrative	
A. Executive summary..	IHF - 11
B. Highlight statement..	IHF - 12
C. Activities:	
Hospitals:	
a) New and replacement....................................	IHF - 17
b) Repair and improvement.................................	IHF - 21
D. Summary of projects FY 1989 - FY 1990......................	IHF - 23
E. Status of current projects.................................	IHF - 27

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

For construction, major repair, improvement, and equipment of health and related auxiliary facilities, including quarters for personnel; preparation of plans, specifications, and drawings; acquisition of sites, purchase and erection of portable buildings, and purchases of trailers; and for provision of domestic and community sanitation facilities for Indians, as authorized by section 7 of the Act of August 5, 1954 (42 U.S.C. 2004a), the Indian Self-Determination Act and the Indian Health Care Improvement Act, [$70,996,000] $13,156,000, to remain available until expended, *and of which $3,000,000 shall be for tribal construction and $10,156,000 for Federal construction activities;* 1/ *Provided,* That notwithstanding any other provision of law, funds appropriated for the planning, design, construction or renovation of health facilities for the benefit of an Indian tribe or tribes may be used to purchase land for sites to construct, improve, or enlarge health or related facilities. (*Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.*)

[To fight the war on drugs, $1,500,000, to remain available until expended, to allow the Indian Health Service to complete the construction or renovation of facilities to provide detoxification and rehabilitation services in youth regional treatment centers.] (*Department of Transportation and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.*) 2/

Indian Health Facilities

Explanation of Language Changes

1/ This provision includes funds for tribal and Federal construction activities.

2/ This provision is not required in FY 1991.

Indian Health Service
Indian Health Facilities

Amounts Available for Obligation

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Appropriation................	$61,668,000	$71,633,000	$13,156,000
Unobligated balance, start of year...............	64,934,368	53,057,873	---
Recoveries of prior years obligations...........	70,941	---	---
Subtotal, adjusted unobligated balance, start of year......	65,005,309	53,057,873	---
Unobligated balance, end of year.................	- 53,057,873	---	---
Total obligations...........	$73,615,436	$124,690,873	$13,156,000

Indian Health Service
Indian Health Facilities

Summary of Changes

1990 Appropriation	$72,496,000
1990 Reduction pursuant to P.L. 101-239	-863,000
Total budget authority	$71,633,000
Unobligated balance from fiscal year 1989	53,057,873
Total available for obligation	$124,690,873
(Obligations)	($124,690,873)
1991 Request	13,156,000
(Obligations)	(13,156,000)
Net change, budget authority	-$58,477,000
(Obligations)	(-$111,534,873)

Indian Health Service
Indian Health Facilities

Obligations by Activity

	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Hospitals: New and Replacement..............	$30,898,119	$3,156,000
(Budget Authority).........................	(3,359,000)	(3,156,000)
Hospitals: Repair and Improvement...........	16,909,195	10,000,000
(Budget Authority).........................	(9,880,000)	(10,000,000)
Outpatient Care Facilities..................	29,975,894	—
(Budget Authority).........................	(15,949,000)	(—)
Sanitation Facilities.......................	31,017,860	—
(Budget Authority).........................	(30,627,000)	(—)
(Number of FTEs)...........................	(247)	(247)
Personnel Quarters..........................	16,589,805	—
(Budget Authority).........................	(12,518,000)	(—)
Unobligated Balance Offset..................	-700,000	—
(Budget Authority).........................	(-700,000)	(—)
Total Obligations..........................	$124,690,873	$13,156,000
(Total Budget Authority)...................	($71,633,000)	($13,156,000)

Indian Health Service
Indian Health Facilities

Obligations by Object

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Personnel compensation:			
Positions other than permanent..	$3,978,637	$5,240,000	$ ---
Other personnel compensation....	331,746	660,000	---
Total personnel compensation....	4,310,383	5,900,000	---
Personnel benefits................	430,670	710,000	---
Travel and transportation of persons........................	362,049	700,000	---
Transportation of things..........	865,681	700,000	---
Rent, communications, and utilities:			
Communication, utilities, and miscellaneous charges.........	361,037	230,000	---
Printing and reproduction.........	17,566	20,000	---
Other services....................	14,988,645	6,675,000	3,000,000
Supplies and materials............	4,316,025	2,696,000	---
Equipment.........................	1,353,333	5,373,562	---
Lands and structures..............	46,610,047	101,686,311	10,156,000
Total obligations...............	$73,615,436	$124,690,873	$13,156,000
(Total budget authority)........	($61,668,000)	($71,633,000)	($13,156,000)

Indian Health Facilities

Appropriation History Table

	Budget Estimate to Congress	House Allowance	Senate Allowance	Appropriation
1982	$7,128,000 1/	$46,739,000	$46,617,000	$47,152,000 2/
Supplemental	—	—	—	11,200,000
1983	—	37,235,000	30,750,000	73,700,000 3/
1984	(200,000) 4/	69,015,000	31,389,000	53,595,000
1985	—	93,252,000	43,535,000	61,634,000 5/
1986	(2,450,000)	61,483,000	39,476,000	46,665,000 6/
Sequester	—	—	—	-467,000
1987	(2,450,000)	54,921,000	60,920,000	65,555,000
Supplemental	—	—	—	5,500,000
Rescission	-30,761,000	—	—	—
Proposed Transfer to Services Approp. for pay raise	-9,352,000	—	—	—
1988	(2,450,000) 4/	67,592,000	57,511,000	62,511,000
1989	(2,450,000) 4/	64,050,000	50,185,000	61,668,000
1990	(10,000,000) 7/	75,420,000	65,535,000	72,496,000 8/
Sequester				-863,000
1991	13,156,000			

1/ January Budget of $116,907,000 amended by -$108,807,000 as contained in H. Doc. 97-29, and -$972,000 as contained in H. Doc. 97-94.

2/ Includes -$1,965,000 as included in Sec. 112 of P.L. 97-100.

3/ Includes $39,000,000 as contained in P.L. 98-8.

4/ Proposal for Indian Health Facilities to be transferred to Indian Health Service (IHS) Appropriation.

5/ Includes -$1,258,000 as included in Sec. 327 of P.L. 98-473.

6/ Includes -$282,000 as included in Sec. 325 of P.L. 99-190.

7/ Includes the proposal to fund Indian Health Facilities repair and improvement projects from Federal Indian Health Administration ($8,283,000) and IHS Tribal Health Administration ($1,717,000).

8/ Includes $1,500,000 as contained in the FY 1990 Department of Transportation Drug Bill.

Indian Health Service
Indian Health Facilities

Personnel Summary

	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate	Increase or Decrease
Full-time Equivalent of All Other Positions.........	247	247	--

Indian Health Service
Indian Health Facilities

Unobligated Balance by Activity and Total Available FY 1990

Activity	Unobligated Balance End of FY 1989	1990 Appropriation	1990 Estimated Obligations
Hospitals..................	$34,568,314	$13,239,000	$47,807,314
Outatient care facilities................	14,026,894	15,949,000	29,975,894
Sanitation facilities................	390,860	30,627,000	31,017,860
Personnel quarters..................	4,071,805	12,518,000	16,589,805
Unobligated balance offset..	—	-700,000	-700,000
Total estimate..............	$53,057,873	$71,633,000	$124,690,873

IHF - 10

Indian Health Service
Indian Health Facilities

FY 1991 Request by Project
Tribal/Federal Split
(dollars in thousands)

Project	Tribal	Federal	Total Request
Hospitals:			
New and Replacement:			
Pine Ridge, SD-Repl-Continue construction......	$ ---	$3,156	$3,156
Repair and Improvement..........................	3,000	7,000	10,000
Engineering studies, planning, investigations, and design fund			
Emergency and small projects fund			
Approximately 15 construction projects			
Total Hospitals..............................	3,000	10,156	13,156
Outpatient Care Facilities.....................	---	---	---
Sanitation Facilities..........................	---	---	---
Personnel Quarters.............................	---	---	---
Total Indian Health Facilities...............	$3,000	$10,156	$13,156

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The Indian Health Service (IHS) provides curative, preventive, and environmental health care services to more than a million American Indians and Alaska Natives throughout the continental United States and Alaska. To provide these services, the 12 IHS Area Offices and various American Indian and Alaska Native organizations operate 50 hospitals, 139 health centers, 5 youth regional alcoholism and substance abuse treatment centers, over 500 smaller health stations and satellite clinics, and approximately 2,000 units of staff quarters. These facilities range in age from less than 1 year to over 80 years old.

Tribal utility organizations also operate over 1,200 water supply and waste disposal facilities serving nearly 150,000 American Indian and Alaska Native homes.

There are two main aspects of the Indian Health Facilities program: Health Care Facilities and Sanitation Facilities.

> Indian Health Care Facilities, provide for the construction, repair, and improvement of health facilities and staff quarters required to provide direct health services to American Indians and Alaska Natives, including Youth Regional Treatment Centers for residential treatment of youth with alcohol and substance abuse problems.
>
> Sanitation Facilities Construction, provide for the construction of sanitation facilities for Indian and Alaska Native homes as authorized by the Indian Sanitation Facilities Act, P.L. 86-121.

Federal Program

> The Federal program consists of 43 hospitals, 66 health centers, approximately 100 smaller health stations and satellite clinics, 2 youth regional substance abuse treatment centers, and approximately 2,000 units of staff quarters.
>
> The budget request for FY 1991 includes an estimated $7 million for repair and improvement projects at Federal facilities, plus $3.156 million for Phase II construction of the Indian Health Service replacement hospital at Pine Ridge, South Dakota.

Tribal Program

> The tribal program consists of 7 hospitals, 73 health centers, 264 smaller health stations and satellite clinics, 3 youth regional substance abuse treatment centers, and 39 units of staff quarters.
>
> The budget request for FY 1991 includes an estimated $3 million for repair and improvement projects at tribal facilities.

INDIAN HEALTH FACILITIES

HIGHLIGHT STATEMENT

The Indian Health Service (IHS) provides curative, preventive, and environmental health care services to more than a million American Indians and Alaska Natives throughout the continental United States and Alaska. To provide these services, the 12 IHS Area Offices and various American Indian and Alaska Native organizations operate 50 hospitals, 139 health centers, 5 youth regional alcoholism and substance abuse treatment centers, over 500 smaller health stations and satellite clinics, and approximately 2,000 units of staff quarters.

Tribal utility organizations also operate over 1,200 water supply and waste disposal facilities serving nearly 150,000 American Indian and Alaska Native homes.

There are two main aspects of the Indian Health Facilities program: Health Care Facilities and Sanitation Facilities.

> Indian Health Care Facilities, provide for the construction, repair, and improvement of health facilities and staff quarters required to provide direct health services to American Indians and Alaska Natives, including Youth Regional Treatment Centers for residential treatment of youth with alcohol and substance abuse problems. Since 1980, 11 new or replacement hospitals, 8 health centers, and 412 units of staff quarters have been constructed. Four youth regional treatment centers have been renovated and a fifth site is operational while undergoing renovation.
>
> Sanitation Facilities Construction, provide for the construction of sanitation facilities for Indian and Alaska Native homes as authorized by the Indian Sanitation Facilities Act, P.L. 86-121. During the past year, more than 7,000 American Indian and Alaska Native homes received sanitation facilities, while approximately 3,500 homes received sanitation facilities improvements.

Self-Determination

The IHS and tribal governments have implemented a cooperative program for tribal consultation and participation with IHS in policy development, planning, and program operations. Within the Indian Health Facilities program, tribes are responsible for approximately $50 million under P.L. 86-121 and P.L. 93-638 agreements and contracts, including architectural/engineering services and construction of facilities.

Health Care Facilities

The IHS manages over 7.5 million square feet of space, ranging from hospital intensive care suites to residential apartments to utility plants. These facilities range in age from less than 1 year to over 80 years old. Much of this space (e.g. hospitals originally built as tuberculosis sanatoriums) was built when medicine was practiced much differently than it is today and service populations were much smaller.

The goal of the health care facilities program is to work in tandem with the IHS Maintenance and Repair program to provide the best possible physical plant within which health care delivery can be carried-out safely, efficiently, and economically. While maintenance and repair is concerned with the daily operations of existing facilities, the health care facilities program is primarily concerned with improving the working environment, through major repair, renovation and modernization of existing structures, replacement of existing structures, or construction of an entirely new facility where none has existed previously.

To this end, the IHS Headquarters regularly solicits proposals from the IHS Area Offices for essential repair and improvement projects and for urgently needed new or replacement facilities. These proposals are objectively evaluated and prioritized, with the most vital being proposed for funding.

The FY 1991 budget request contains $10 million for approximately 15 repair and improvement projects at existing IHS and tribal facilities, plus $3.156 million for the second phase of a 3-phase construction project for the Indian Health Service replacement hospital at Pine Ridge, South Dakota.

The IHS also constructs Youth Regional Treatment Centers authorized by Public Law 99-570, the Anti-Drug Abuse Act of 1986, in Section 4227, Indian Health Service Youth Program, (b) Centers.

> "The Secretary shall construct or renovate a youth regional treatment center in each area under the jurisdiction of an Indian Health Service area office. For purposes of the preceding sentence, the area offices of the Indian Health Service in Tucson and Phoenix, Arizona, shall be considered one area office. The regional treatment centers shall be appropriately staffed with health professionals. There are authorized to be appropriated $6,000,000 for the construction and renovation of the regional youth treatment centers, and $3,000,000 for the staffing of such centers, for each of the fiscal years 1987, 1988, and 1989."

Since the initial authorization, regional youth treatment centers have been renovated and are operational in the following IHS Areas:

Albuquerque	Nashville
Navajo	Oklahoma City.

A fifth regional treatment center, in Alaska, is operational while undergoing renovation.

In the years prior to FY 1988 the utilization rate of the youth treatment system has increased by approximately 3.5% annually. Since authorization of construction funds, the number of youth placed in treatment has grown from 934 in FY 1987 to 1,263 in FY 1988, an increase of 35 percent in one year. With the expected completion of additional centers in FY 1990-1992 this rate of growth is expected to further increase dramatically. Operational bed capacity in FY 1989 is 144 beds.

Sanitation Facilities

The Sanitation Facilities Construction Program is an essential component of the comprehensive health services activities of the IHS. A dramatic impact on the reduction of infant mortality, gastroenteritis morbidity, and other environmentally related diseases has resulted from the provision of improved water supplies, sewage disposal facilities, solid waste sites, and technical assistance to Indian water and sewer utility organizations, in conjunction with new and rehabilitated housing programs.

The IHS, in cooperation with the tribes and various Federal Indian housing programs, continues to construct essential water and sanitation facilities for new and renovated Indian housing units. This cooperative Federal effort in water, sewer, solid waste, and housing is coordinated by the IHS in accordance with an interdepartmental agreement among the Department of Housing and Urban Development (DHUD), the Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA), and the IHS. However, the IHS, tribal governments, and Indian housing authorities continue to be full partners in the planning and implementation of this essential preventive health endeavor. The tribes and Indian housing authorities rely on the IHS because of the IHS emphasis and efforts in serving the "total community," including existing homes, by combining and coordinating the efforts of various programs whenever feasible.

In addition to the ongoing heavy workload associated with services to DHUD homes, IHS is working closely with the tribes and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in the implementation of the Wastewater Construction Grants Program funded by EPA.

The FY 1991 IHS Facilities budget request contains no new funding for Federal or tribal construction of sanitation facilities (wells, septic tanks, water purification, etc.) for Indian homes. The DHUD is expected to transfer more than $15 million to the IHS during FY 1991 for the purpose of constructing essential sanitation facilities for approximately 1,400 new DHUD homes. The IHS will continue to work with other Federal agencies and tribes to promote safe water and adequate sewage disposal in Indian communities.

Accomplishments

Indian Health Care Facilities

Since 1980, 11 new or replacement hospitals, 8 health centers, 4 regional youth treatment centers, and 412 units of staff quarters have been constructed at a total cost of $258 million. A fifth youth regional treatment center, in Alaska, is operational while undergoing renovation.

During FY 1989, obligations for new construction of health facilities and staff quarters units totaled $33 million. Anticipated obligations for FY 1990 for new construction are $25 million. Currently active health care facilities and staff quarters construction projects are listed in the status report on pages IHF - 27 through IHF - 38.

During FY 1989, six Repair and Improvement projects were constructed for a total of $5.3 million. During FY 1990, 14 Repair and Improvement projects will be initiated for a total of $10 million.

Since the initial authorization, regional youth treatment centers have been renovated and are operational in the following IHS Areas:

- Albuquerque
- Nashville
- Navajo
- Oklahoma City.

A fifth youth regional treatment center, in Alaska, is operational while undergoing renovation. Between 1990 and 1992, facilities are planned for construction and operation in three additional areas: Aberdeen, Phoenix, and Portland. The operational bed capacity in FY 1989 is 144 beds.

Sanitation Facilities

During the past year, more than 7,000 American Indian and Alaska Native homes received sanitation facilities, while an additional 3,500 homes received sanitation facilities improvements. With the completion of these facilities, 1,300 American Indian and Alaska Native communities plus 30,000 individual homes will have been provided with water supply and/or sewage disposal facilities. In total, nearly 170,000 homes have been served with safe water supply and waste disposal facilities. At this time, approximately 80 percent of Indian homes have safe water and an adequate means of sewage disposal, compared to the national average of 98 percent for all U.S. populations.

EMPHASIS OBJECTIVES

In addition to the key program accomplishments described above, which will be continued in FY 1991, some additional objectives for the Indian Health Facilities program that will be emphasized include:

- o Place major emphasis on a comprehensive effort to improve the planning, design, and quality of Indian health care facilities, biomedical equipment, and the institutional environment.

- o Develop guidance for the P.L. 86-121 program to ensure thorough, consistent evaluation and reporting of sanitation deficiencies. The deficiencies data is required for the Annual Report to Congress in accordance with P.L. 100-713.

- o Update priority systems for health care facilities, quarters, and develop a substance abuse facilities priority system.

- o Begin automation of the Program of Requirements and the Project Justification Document process.

- o Begin development of a comprehensive, integrated reporting system for tracking the status of all projects planned or under construction.

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

New and Replacement

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase (+) Decrease (-)	
	FTE	BA	FTE	BA	FTE	BA	FTE	BA
Direct Approp.	--	$2,700,000	—	$3,359,000	—	$3,156,000	—	-$203,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

Federal Health Facilities

Hospitals - New and Replacement

The Indian Health Care Facilities Program is concerned with providing medical and health facilities needed to deliver health services directly to American Indians and Alaska Natives. In addition, under authority of P.L. 83-568, the Transfer Act, the Indian Health Service (IHS) undertakes construction of comprehensive health care facilities to replace obsolete facilities and construction of new facilities to establish inpatient and outpatient care in isolated locations. The objective of the new and replacement activity is to provide the medical and health facilities needed to provide IHS high quality health care to American Indians and Alaska Natives.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS

Please see the chart on page IHF - 23 for details on projects for FY 1989 and FY 1990.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

The FY 1991 budget request of $3,156,000 is needed to continue construction of the Indian Health Service replacement hospital to meet the needs of the Pine Ridge Service Unit population.

Pine Ridge Comprehensive Health Care Facility

Project Cost Estimate

Planning (FY 1984 Appropriation)	$1,168,000
Construction (FY 1984 Appropriation)	192,000
Construction (FY 1987 Appropriation)	9,677,000
Construction (FY 1991 Request)	3,156,000
Construction and Equipment (FY 1992 Request)	12,563,000
Total Project Cost	$26,756,000

IHF - 18

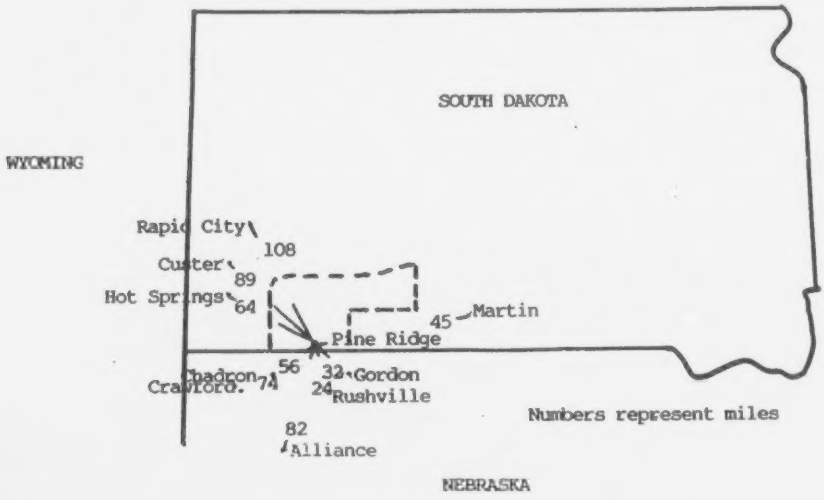
The existing Pine Ridge Hospital is a 58-bed facility and is functionally inadequate to provide the comprehensive health care, inpatient or outpatient, required on the reservation. The existing building was constructed in 1912 and a new addition was added in 1961. The obstetrical and optometry clinics, mental health, social services, and health education programs are housed in separate structures. This separation causes patient flow problems in the best of circumstances. However, in inclement weather the problems are compounded not only for the patients but also for the staff. The total space requirement for the projected programs is 110,302 gross square feet of space (gsf). The present facility is 52,009 gsf, less than half the required space.

Topography

The reservation is situated in southwestern South Dakota on the Nebraska state line, about 50 miles east of the Wyoming border. It is approximately 4,340 square miles in area with the greatest east-west distance being about 90 miles and the greatest north-south distance being about 50 miles.

There are three regions within its border. Open prairies and grasslands form the southern and eastern sections. In the central section are rolling pine clad hills. North of the wooded area are approximately 160,000 acres of badlands.

The Pine Ridge Village, in the southwestern corner of the reservation, is the administrative headquarters for the Service Unit, the Bureau of Indian Affairs, Tribal Government and state agencies. Kyle, approximate geographic center of the reservation, is the second largest community and the headquarters for the Community College system. The third major community is Wanblee in the extreme northeast corner of the reservation. Numerous small villages and settlements are scattered throughout the reservation.



Economy and Employment

The economy is based primarily on government employment or government subsidies. There is virtually no service industry on the reservation. Remaining pockets of employment are provided by the school districts, independent schools, and independent ranching operations.

Community and Referral Facilities

A survey was conducted to determine if there are alternative sources of health care for the Pine Ridge Service Unit population. The findings of the survey showed that there are limited services available to the targeted population. The only hospital accredited by the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO) within a 100 mile radius, other than Pine Ridge, is Box Butte General Hospital, located in Alliance, Nebraska, 82 miles due south. This facility is over 100 miles from the majority of the population.

The nearest IHS hospital is Rosebud, South Dakota, about 100 miles away. The Rosebud replacement hospital was completed in September 1989 and is not designed to handle the Pine Ridge workload.

Tertiary care is available in Rapid City, South Dakota, 108 miles away, and Denver, Colorado, 400 miles away. Access to either of these locations by the Pine Ridge population would be extremely difficult. Pine Ridge is located in a remote and isolated area of the state, public transportation was never developed for this area and is not available to the population.

1991 Request

In FY 1984, $1,360,000 were appropriated for planning and design and in FY 1987, $9,677,000 were appropriated for phase I construction. The FY 1991 request of $3,156,000 will allow the IHS to continue construction.

The Pine Ridge Health Facility will be a major comprehensive curative and preventive health care program planned to meet the total health needs of the Pine Ridge Service Unit population. The new facility will have 45 inpatient beds consisting of 29 general medical/surgical beds, 8 pediatric beds, and 8 obstetrical beds. It will also provide space for a full range of outpatient care and a comprehensive community health services programs.

A cost analysis was conducted to determine whether the Aberdeen Area IHS could contract for health care services at a reasonable cost in comparison to direct service delivery. The analysis showed that it cost from 57 percent to 111 percent more to contract for services rather than provide direct care.

Workloads

	1985	1991
Population	16,255	17,911
Outpatient Visits	49,410	46,386*
Admissions	3,117	3,407
Average Daily Patient Load	27.0	34.2

* Does not include 1991 workload for Manderson and Kyle, SD since new health centers are proposed for these locations.

Repair and Improvement

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Estimate		Increase (+) Decrease (-)	
	FTE	BA	FTE	BA	FTE	BA	FTE	BA
Direct Approp.	--	$5,307,000	--	$9,880,000	--	$10,000,000	—	+$120,000

PURPOSE AND METHOD OF OPERATION

Hospitals - Repair and Improvement

The Indian Health Care Facilities Program is concerned with providing medical and health facilities needed to deliver health services directly to American Indians and Alaska Natives. In addition, under authority of P.L. 83-568, the Transfer Act, the Indian Health Service (IHS) undertakes major repair and modernization of existing facilities. Objectives of the repair and improvement activity program are: 1) to ensure compliance with all buildings/grounds accreditation standards of the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations; 2) to provide improved facilities for inpatient and outpatient care; 3) to ensure IHS health care facilities meet existing building codes and standards and improve the IHS overall facilities management capability, and 4) to provide alternate energy sources and initiate energy conservation measures.

Federal Health Facilities

Twelve repair and improvement projects in FY 1990 were located at federally operated facilities.

Tribal Health Facilities

In FY 1990, one repair and improvement project was constructed at facilities operated by tribally contracted programs. Unless directly contracted by tribal programs, design and construction of repair and improvement projects is handled by the Area Office through the Office of Engineering Services.

ACCOMPLISHMENTS:

Please see the chart on page IHF - 23 for details on projects for FY 1989 and FY 1990.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION:

The Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Bill, 1990, Conference Report provided the following information:

> "The managers agree that IHS shall use the $10,000,000 included for repair and improvement projects for the highest priority projects; and shall include a breakdown of the projects funded in the fiscal year 1991 budget justification."

This information is provided on page IHF - 23.

RATIONALE FOR BUDGET REQUEST

The FY 1991 request of $10,000,000, of which an estimated $3,000,000 is for tribal health facilities and $7,000,000 for Federal health facilities, will provide for the following repair and improvement projects:

- Approximately 15 construction projects funded sequentially from the repair and improvement priority list to be updated in FY 1990.
- Emergency and small projects for special projects and unanticipated critical repair and improvement needs which emerge each year. The utilization of a general repair and improvement fund has been successfully employed by other PHS agencies and permits a greater responsiveness.
- Engineering studies, planning, investigations, and design that will be used for preliminary planning, feasibility studies, engineering investigations, and design for current and upcoming repair and improvement projects.

Indian Health Facilities
Summary of Projects FY 1989 - 1990
(dollars in thousands)

Project	1989 Appropriation	1990 Appropriation
Hospitals:		
New and Replacement:		
Anchorage, AK-Repl-Complete design and land acquisition 1/	$2,500	$---
Winnebago, NE-Feasibility study	50	---
Phoenix, AZ-Feasibility study	150	---
Crow, MT-Repl-Complete design 1/	---	247
Kotzebue, AK-Repl-Complete design and start sitework 1/	---	3,112
Total New and Replacement........................	2,700	3,359
Repair and Improvement:		
Engineering Studies, Planning, Design and Inspection Fund	350	---
Mt. Edgecumbe, AK Hospital	2,200	---
Gallup, NM Hospital	780	---
Talihina, OK Hospital	644	---
Albuquerque, NM Area Hospitals	830	---
Portland, OR Area-5 Locations	503	---
Cass Lake, MN Hospital	---	*
Whiteriver, AZ Hospital	---	*
Keams Canyon, AZ Hospital	---	*
Colville, WA Health Center	---	*
Crow, MT Hospital & Personnel Quarters	---	*
Rapid City, SD Hospital	---	*
Standing Rock, SD Svc. Unit-4 Facilities	---	*
Navajo Area	---	*
Mt. Edgecumbe, Kotzebue, Barrow, AK	---	*
Lame Deer, MT Health Ctr.-Personnel Qtrs.	---	*
Albuquerque, NM Hospital	---	*
Lawton, OK Hospital	---	*
Tuba City, AZ Hospital-Personnel Quarters	---	*
Design Fund	---	*
Emergencies & Small Projects Fund	---	*
Total Repair and Improvement....................	5,307	9,880
Total Hospitals................................	8,007	13,239

* A bulk fund is appropriated for the repair and improvement activity for the highest priority projects.

Indian Health Facilities
Summary of Projects FY 1989 - 1990
(dollars in thousands)

Project	1989 Appropriation	1990 Appropriation
Outpatient Care Facilities:		
Ft. Hall, ID-Repl-Complete construction and purchase of equipment 1/	$5,474	$ —
Wagner, SD-Repl-Complete construction and purchase of equipment 1/	4,227	—
Ft. Belknap, MT Health Facilities-Sitework	298	—
Taos, NM-Repl-Planning	50	—
Tohatchi, NM-Repl-Planning and design	581	—
Ft. Yuma, AZ-Repl-Planning and design	667	—
Pinon, AZ-Repl-Planning and design	50	840
Blackfeet Tribal Drug & Alcohol Treatment Facility at Browning, MT-Additional renovation work on 1937 portion of hospital	314	—
Puyallup, WA-Complete construction and purchase of equipment 1/	—	8,070
Sallisaw, OK-Complete construction and purchase of equipment 1/	—	3,714
Second Mesa, AZ-Planning and design	—	642
Taos, NM-Planning and design	—	213
White Earth, MN-Planning and design	—	970
Youth Regional Treatment Centers (Department of Transportation Drug Bill Amendment)	—	1,500
Total Outpatient Care Facilities..................	11,661	15,949
Personnel Quarters:		
Kotzebue, AK Hosp-Design and site purchase for 50 unit apartment complex 1/	—	1,707
Pine Ridge, SD Hosp-Site development activities for 96 units of personnel quarters 1/	—	988
Barrow, AK Hosp-Phase I construction for 29 units of personnel quarters 1/	—	8,901
Belcourt, ND Hosp-Design and sitework for 50 units of personnel quarters	—	922
Total Personnel Quarters........................	—	12,518
Sanitation Facilities............................	42,000	30,627
(Number of Homes)	(4,100)	(3,340)
Unobligated Balance Offset........................	—	-700
Grand Total Facilities..........................	$61,668	$71,633

1/ The following table reflects projects with previous funding (dollars in thousands):

Project	Fiscal Year	Amount	Purpose of Funding
Hospitals: New & Repl.:			
Anchorage, AK	1982	$60	Reprogrammed for seismic study
	1984	2,000	Phase I planning
	1987	4,500	Phase II planning
	1988	5,000	Site purchase, preliminary sitework and acquisition of design services
Crow, MT	1986	15	Reprogrammed for feasibility study
	1988	860	Planning and design
Kotzebue, AK	1986	1,958	Planning and design
Outpatient Care Facilities:			
Ft. Belknap Hlth. Facs.	1987	807	Planning
Ft. Hall, ID	1985	8	Reprogrammed for site survey
	1987	428	Planning
	1988	100	Site work
Puyallup, WA	1988	392	Planning and design
Sallisaw, OK	1988	205	Planning and design
Wagner, SD	1984	360	Design
	1986	99	Planning
Personnel Qtrs:			
Barrow, AK	1988	750	Plan and design 29 units of personnel quarters
Kotzebue, AK	1988	652	Design 50 unit apartment complex
Pine Ridge, SD	1988	571	Design 96 units of personnel quarters

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

ALASKA NATIVE MEDICAL CENTER REPLACEMENT
ANCHORAGE, ALASKA

Appropriation

FY 1982	$60,000	Reprogrammed for seismic study
FY 1984	$2,000,000	Planning and design
FY 1987	$4,500,000	Design
FY 1988	$5,000,000	Site purchase, preliminary site work and design services
FY 1989	$2,500,000	Complete design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	39,275	99,677	84,573	536	103.0	8.0	170	172,860	0
(93)	49,844	148,853	105,240	764.5	116.3	7.5	150	353,406	0

Current Status
Program Justification Document (PJD) approved 5/8/87. PJD and Program of Requirements (POR) revised in accordance with new IHS Bed Methodology. Amended PJD approved 6/16/88. Amended POR approved 2/9/89. Negotiations for site completed 4/15/88. Preliminary site work underway. The A/E has been selected; award of design contract is expected in the Spring of 1990.

BARROW PERSONNEL QUARTERS (29 UNITS)
BARROW, ALASKA

Appropriation

FY 1988	$750,000	Plan and design 29 units
FY 1990	$8,901,000	Complete design and start Phase I construction

Current Status
PJDQ approved 11/22/88. The A/E has been selected; award of design contract is expected in the Spring of 1990.

BELCOURT OUTPATIENT DEPARTMENT ADDITION
BELCOURT, NORTH DAKOTA

Appropriation

FY 1988	$1,142,000	Planning and design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(86)	8,340	62,781	40,297	114	15.8	3.6	46	53,334	33
(94)	10,300	71,552	50,177	243.5	19.6	3.5	27	97,002	50

Current Status
Draft PJD for ambulatory care addition with renovation of inpatient area submitted to IHS-HQ on 8/25/87. Additional modifications to PJD were completed on 1/22/88; PJD approved 6/1/88. Design contract awarded 4/25/89. Scheduled design completion date is 2/91.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

BROWNING HOSPITAL MODERNIZATION
BROWNING, MONTANA

Appropriation

FY 1981	$1,050,000	Design
FY 1983	$6,700,000	Phase I construction
FY 1984	$8,415,000	Complete project
FY 1986	$1,079,395	Reprogrammed from this project
FY 1988	$19,000	Reprogrammed into project for completion
FY 1989	$314,000	Complete renovation of 1937 hospital (Blackfeet Tribal Drug & Alcohol Treatment Facility)

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	6,487	52,891	29,946	97.5	12.4	2.9	34	40,184	33
(87)	6,584	50,000	39,547	214.5	21.2	3.9	27	102,844	59

Current Status

Three phases of construction. Phase I (new construction) completed and beneficial occupancy 12/85. Phase II (1960 building renovation) completed 4/87. Phase III (1937 building renovation) design completed 5/23/87. Construction began 10/20/87 completed 11/88. Renovation of basement of 1937 building to start 1/90 with completion estimated for 7/90.

CROW HOSPITAL REPLACEMENT
CROW AGENCY, MONTANA

Appropriation

FY 1986	$15,000	Reprogrammed into project for Phase II Site Survey
FY 1988	$860,000	Planning and design
FY 1990	$247,000	Complete design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(87)	12,457	43,065	30,173	106	12.4	3.2	34	35,247	31
(95)	15,987	44,826	31,609	205	15.2	3.5	24	94,496	31

Current Status

PJD/POR revised in accordance with new IHS Bed Methodology. PJD Amendment approved 11/05/88. Phase II site selection report approved 3/14/89. POR sent to OES for approval 3/14/89. Crow Tribe proposal to design hospital denied because of tribal financial accounting problems. Project stopped at request of Tribe. Project restarted 4/89. The A/E has been selected; award of design contract is expected in the Spring of 1990.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

DULCE PERSONNEL QUARTERS (4 UNITS)
DULCE, NEW MEXICO

Appropriation

FY 1988	$515,000	Design, construct and equip 4 units

Current Status

Area submitted PJDQ to IHS-HQ on 7/31/87. PJDQ completed and sent to Albuquerque IHS for review and recommendation for approval on 10/89. Phase I & II Site Section and Evaluation Report being completed by OES Region VI.

FT. BELKNAP HEALTH FACILITIES
HARLEM/HAYS, MONTANA
REPLACE HOSPITAL AND HEALTH STATION

Appropriation

FY 1987	$807,000	Design
FY 1989	$298,000	Start construction

Workloads

Ft. Belknap:

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	GSF	QTRS
(85)	1,777	20,180	5,917	63	21,932	13
(93)	2,271	14,981	10,610	66	28,608	13

Hays:

(85)	1,184	3,470	4,910	0	1,690	0
(93)	1,514	9,085	6,434	16	13,471	5

Current Status

PJD approved 2/12/87. POR approved 3/10/88. Project stopped at request of Tribe.

FT. DEFIANCE HOSPITAL REPLACEMENT
FT. DEFIANCE, ARIZONA

Appropriation

FY 1988	$2,204,000	Planning and design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	23,566	89,421	63,330	215	27.3	4.4	49	66,080	62
(95)	30,820	114,386	80,667	470.1	46.3	3.5	62*	164,410	155

Current Status

New IHS Bed Planning Methodology applied and the Area submitted an amended PJD on 11/27/89. Site approved. Scheduled award of design contract in FY 1990.

* Includes 20-bed Adolescent Phychiatric Unit.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

FT. HALL HEALTH CENTER REPLACEMENT
FT. HALL, IDAHO

Appropriation

FY 1985	$8,000	Reprogrammed from completed projects for site survey
FY 1987	$428,000	Planning and design
FY 1988	$100,000	Site work
FY 1989	$5,474,000	Complete project

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	GSF	QTRS
(85)	4,051	30,803	14,850	35.5	4,224	0
(91)	4,603	33,160	20,530	74.2	28,915	0

Current Status

Under construction - Scheduled completion date 9/90.

FT. YUMA HEALTH CENTER
FT. YUMA, ARIZONA

Appropriation

FY 1989	$667,000	Planning and design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	STAFF	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	2,475	18,375	61	17	10,520	0
(94)	3,063	20,432	48.5	0	26,350	0

Current Status

PJD approved 12/09/88. POR approved 3/22/89 but concurrence being withheld pending availability of site. Project on hold at request of Congress because of their concern on planned closure of inpatient beds.

KOTZEBUE HOSPITAL REPLACEMENT
KOTZEBUE, ALASKA

Appropriation

FY 1986	$1,958,000	Plan and design
FY 1990	$3,112,000	Complete project and for land escrow account

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	5,159	19,251	17,960	58	8.2	4.1	27	40,850	31
(93)	6,701	33,409	23,661	146	10.0	3.9	17	79,941	70

Current Status

PJD approved 2/12/87. POR approved 9/3/87. Maniliiq Corp. submitted P.L. 93-638 contract proposal for design. Proposal approved by Area and concurred with by IHS-HQ. New IHS Bed Methodology being applied. Award of design contract to Maniliiq Corp 7/13/88. A/E selected. A/E contract awarded 2/7/89. Estimated design completion date is 12/90.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

KOTZEBUE PERSONNEL QUARTERS (50 UNITS)
KOTZEBUE, ALASKA

Appropriation		
FY 1988	$652,000	Design 50 unit apartment complex
FY 1990	$1,707,000	Complete design and purchase land

Current Status

PJDQ completed and approved 11/03/88. Kikiktagruk Inupiat Corporation has submitted a letter of intent to build quarters and lease to IHS. Proposal currently under consideration. Land purchase will be necessary before design contract can be awarded.

KYLE PERSONNEL QUARTERS (17 UNITS) - PHASE I
KYLE, SOUTH DAKOTA

Appropriation		
FY 1987	$1,615,000	Design and construction

Current Status

OASH approved PJDQ 5/27/87 for design of 21 units and construction of 17 units. Design contract awarded 4/88. Final construction drawings submitted 12/9/88. Estimated construction contract 6/89. Scheduled construction completion - Spring 1990.

KYLE PERSONNEL QUARTERS (7 UNITS) - PHASE II
KYLE, SOUTH DAKOTA

Appropriation		
FY 1988	$700,000	Plan, construct, and equip 7 units

Current Status

PJDQ for 7 additional units quarters approved 4/15/88. Design contract awarded 6/88. Final construction drawings submitted 12/9/88. Estimated construction contract 6/89. Scheduled construction completion - Spring 1990.

NEAH BAY PERSONNEL QUARTERS (4 UNITS)
NEAH BAY, WASHINGTON

Appropriation		
FY 1988	$472,000	Design, construct and equip 4 units

Current Status

PJDQ approved 12/2/88. Land Use Agreement with Coast Guard finalized and submitted for IHS signature. A draft of the Phase II Site Survey has been submitted for review.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

PARKER HEALTH CENTER RENOVATION
PARKER, ARIZONA

Appropriation

FY 1987 $50,000 Reprogrammed to project by IHS for engineering analysis
FY 1988 $693,000 Planning and design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	3,066	21,115	15,927	56	20	17,841	0
(96)	3,874	57,790	37,164	168		73,732	0

Current Status

Draft PJD and POR submitted on 11/15/89 for review. Project on hold pending final decision regarding whether or not to retain inpatient services in existing facilities.

PHOENIX INDIAN MEDICAL CENTER
PHOENIX, ARIZONA

Appropriation

FY 1989 $150,000 Planning study

Current Status

Area developing scope of work for the planning study.

PINE RIDGE HOSPITAL REPLACEMENT
PINE RIDGE, SOUTH DAKOTA

Appropriation

FY 1984 $1,360,000 Design
FY 1987 $9,677,000 Phase I construction

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	16,255	49,410*	36,322	138	27.0	3.7	58	52,009	52
(91)	17,911	46,386	37,652	332.6	34.2	4.2	45	110,302	135

* Includes OPVs that will go to Kyle when that facility is complete.

Current Status

Previous site selections unsuccessful. New site selected by Tribe and Phase II Site Selection Report approved. New IHS Bed Methodology applied to approved PJD to verify need for 45 beds which was approved 3/88. Design contract awarded 3/88. Schematic drawings submitted 11/88 and reviewed. Revised schematic drawings scheduled for 4/89. Construction scheduled to begin 6/90.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

PINE RIDGE PERSONNEL QUARTERS (84 UNITS)
PINE RIDGE, SOUTH DAKOTA

Appropriation
FY 1988 $571,000 Design 96 units

Current Status
PJDQ for 84 units submitted for approval on 12/5/88. Scheduled award of design contract by 5/90. Revised design completion date is 10/90.

PINON HEALTH CENTER
PINON, ARIZONA

Appropriation
FY 1989 $50,000 Planning study
FY 1990 $840,000 Planning and design

Current Status
The Area is developing the PJD and POR. Phase I site selection study submitted by OES in 8/89 and returned to OES for revision in 9/89.

PUYALLUP HEALTH CENTER REPLACEMENT
PUYALLUP, WASHINGTON

Appropriation
FY 1988 $392,000 Planning and design
FY 1990 $8,070,000 Construction

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	GSF	QTRS
(86)	6,966	23,595	9,174	35	9,720	0
(94)	8,608	33,143	23,242	77.5	35,931	0

Current Status
Design contract awarded 10/89, currently in conceptual design phase. Design scheduled for completion in 10/90.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

ROSEBUD HOSPITAL REPLACEMENT
ROSEBUD, SOUTH DAKOTA

Appropriation

FY 1982	$1,248,000	Planning and design
FY 1985	$1,006,000	Site work
FY 1986	$10,304,000	Phase I construction
FY 1987	$8,142,000	Complete project

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	8,573	45,576	28,913	114	16.2	3.1	29	40,069	33
(88)	8,619	50,000	34,185	249	25.6	4.1	35	88,999*	109

* IHS directed to expand scope of facility to 94,893 gsf. This will allow total enclosure of third floor for future use as surgery suite if needed. Presently the space can be used for other purposes. The enclosure also reduces exterior wall area and consequently the energy requirement for space conditioning. Work to be accomplished within approved budget.

Current Status
Construction contract (P.L. 93-638) signed with Tribe 1/23/87. Start of construction 5/87. Construction completed 8/3/89. Surgery suite currently under design.

ROSEBUD PERSONNEL QUARTERS (76 UNITS) - PHASE I AND II
ROSEBUD, SOUTH DAKOTA

Appropriation

FY 1987	$4,845,000	Design and construction of 51 units
FY 1988	$2,500,000	Design and construction of 25 units

Current Status
Tribe's proposal to design and construct quarters under P.L. 93-638 approved 6/24/87. Design contract awarded 8/88. Concept/schematic drawings submitted 10/88. Design completion expected 3/89. Construction started 7/89 for 66 units with an option for 10 additional units. Scheduled construction completion 10/90.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

SALLISAW HEALTH CENTER REPLACEMENT
SALLISAW, OKLAHOMA

Appropriation

FY 1988	$205,000	Planning and design
FY 1990	$3,714,000	Construction

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	GSF	QTRS
(85)	4,957	11,349	4,327	8	2,346	0
(93)	6,108	26,130	18,324	51	21,945	0

Current Status
PJD approved 7/28/87. POR approved 2/10/88 with ASH concurrence 4/88. IHS has requested OGC to seek preliminary title opinion from the Department of Justice to purchase the site. Award of design contract pending site acquisition.

SECOND MESA HEALTH CENTER
SECOND MESA, ARIZONA

Appropriation
FY 1990 $642,000 Planning and design

Status
The Phoenix Area is currently developing the PJD and POR including projected workloads. OES has been asked to perform the Phase I/II site survey.

SHIPROCK HOSPITAL MODERNIZATION
SHIPROCK, NEW MEXICO

Appropriation

FY 1985	$96,000	Reprogrammed for feasibility study
FY 1986	$8,200	Reprogrammed for feasibility study
FY 1987	$3,175,000	Design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	36,382	100,333	77,855	219.5	37.5	4.2	50	56,250	62
(93)	45,159	143,420	101,572	545.2	57.6	4.5	75	206,025	62

Current Status
New IHS Bed Methodology applied to approved PJD to verify need for 75 beds. Amended PJD prepared by Area and approved on 6/14/88. POR approved on 11/08/88. A/E design firm has been selected and award of design contract is pending contract negotiations.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

SUPAI PERSONNEL QUARTERS (2 UNITS)
SUPAI, ARIZONA

Appropriation

FY 1988	$246,000	Design, construct and equip 2 units
FY 1989	$10,000	Reprogrammed to complete project

Current Status

PJDQ approved 2/11/88. Site selected and Phase I and II Site Survey Reports approved 5/23/88. Construction is 99% complete.

TAOS HEALTH CENTER REPLACEMENT
TAOS, NEW MEXICO

Appropriation

FY 1989	$50,000	Planning
FY 1990	$213,000	Complete design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	GSF	QTRS
(88)	1,420	8,243	6,468	13	5,964	0
(89)	1,684	12,791	8,252	35.5	21,534	0

Current Status

PJD reviewed by IHS-HQ 12/12/89. Returned to Area with comments. Phase I Site Selection and Evaluation Report 3/31/87. Phase II and Feasibility Study being completed by OES-VI.

TOHATCHI HEALTH CENTER
TOHATCHI, NEW MEXICO

Appropriation

FY 1989	$581,000	Planning and design

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	GSF	QTRS
(86)	8,066	14,326	11,397	10	3,456	0
(94)	9,802	36,848	25,840	88	37,966	0

Current Status

PJD approved 6/23/87. POR approved 10/3/88. A/E firm selected for design. Award of design contract pending fee negotiations.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

TOPPENISH HEALTH CENTER REPLACEMENT
TOPPENISH (YAKIMA), WASHINGTON

Appropriation

FY 1985	$12,000	Reprogrammed for site survey
FY 1986	$616,000	Design
FY 1987	$850,000	Site development and utilities
FY 1988	$7,884,000	Complete project

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	GSF	QTRS
(85)	8,812	41,969	18,713	52	7,200	0
(91)	10,161	49,521	24,830	121.2	40,387	0

Current Status
Yakima Tribe signed P.L. 93-638 contract for construction 12/6/88. Construction began 3/89. Currently 35% completed. Scheduled completion date is 9/90.

WAGNER HEALTH CENTER MODERNIZATION
WAGNER, SOUTH DAKOTA

Appropriation

FY 1984	$360,000	Design
FY 1986	$99,000	Planning
FY 1989	$4,227,000	Complete construction & purchase of equipment

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	ADPL	ALOS	BEDS	GSF	QTRS
(85)	2,113	22,636	14,298	32	6.3	3.7	26	18,835	5
(91)	2,464	24,901	16,656	55.5	0	0	0	35,589	5

Current Status
PJD approved 9/15/86. PHS concurred with approval of POR on 7/20/87. Feasibility study completed and submitted to IHS-HQ with approved POR on 5/29/87. A/E selection complete and design contract awarded 5/88. Concept drawings submitted 8/88. Schematic drawings submitted 11/88. Expected design completion - Spring 1990. Revised construction beginning date is 9/90.

WINNEBAGO HOSPITAL
WINNEBAGO, NEBRASKA

Appropriation

FY 1989	$50,000	Planning study

Current Status
Area is developing scope of work for planning study and PJD.

STATUS OF CURRENT PROJECTS

WOLF POINT HEALTH CENTER REPLACEMENT
WOLF POINT, MONTANA

Appropriation

FY 1984	$200,000	Planning and design
FY 1985	$3,454,000	Complete project

Workloads

	POP	OPV	PCPV	STAFF	GSF	QTRS
(85)	1,915	16,257	8,384	7	2,000	0
(91)	2,037	19,500	12,700*	41	18,213	0

* Reflects 1989 workload projection.

Current Status

Design completed 12/87. Ft. Peck Tribes submitted P.L. 93-638 contract proposal for construction. IHS-HQ concurred with approval of proposal. Contract awarded 8/16/88. Ground breaking 8/23/88. Completion 3/90.

Justifications of Appropriation Estimates
for Committees on Appropriations
Fiscal Year 1991

INDIAN EDUCATION

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

Indian Education

Fiscal Year 1991 Budget Request **Page No.**

Appropriation language.................................... 1
Explanation of language changes.......................... 1
Language analysis... 2
Amounts available for obligation......................... 3
Budget authority by activity.............................. 4
Budget authority by object................................ 5
Summary of changes.. 6
Authorizing legislation................................... 8
Table of estimates and appropriations.................... 9
Significant items in congressional appropriations reports....... 10

Justification:

Account summary... 11

Activities:

1. Grants to local educational agencies and Indian-controlled schools (Subpart 1)........................ 13
2. Special programs for Indian students (Subpart 2)...... 20
3. Special programs for Indian adults (Subpart 3)........ 27
4. Program administration (Subpart 4).................... 30

INDIAN EDUCATION

For necessary expenses to carry out, to the extent not otherwise provided, the Indian Education Act of 1988, [$74,149,000] $75,762,000, of which [$55,041,000] $56,556,000 shall be for subpart 1 and [$16,361,000] $16,304,000 shall be for subparts 2 and 3: Provided, That [$1,600,000] $1,578,000 available pursuant to section 5323 of the Act shall remain available for obligation until September 30, [1991: Provided further, That appropriations for subpart 2 remaining unobligated at the end of fiscal year 1989, which would otherwise be returned to the general fund of the Treasury, shall be merged with and made a part of the fiscal year 1990 Indian Education appropriation and shall remain available for obligation until September 30, 1990] 1/ 1992. (Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.)

Explanation of Language Changes

1/ Language authorizing a reappropriation of fiscal year 1989 funds is deleted. Such language is not necessary because no reappropriation of funds is proposed for fiscal year 1991.

Indian Education

Language Analysis

Language Provision	Explanation
Provided, That [$1,600,000] $1,578,000 available pursuant to section 5323 of the Act shall remain available for obligation until September 30, [1991:...] 1992.	The general provisions of the annual appropriations law prohibit the availability of funds beyond the fiscal year of appropriation. This language makes funds for the fellowship program available for an additional year.
[Provided further, That appropriations for subpart 2 remaining unobligated at the end of fiscal year 1989, which would otherwise be returned to the general fund of the Treasury, shall be merged with and made a part of the fiscal year 1990 Indian Education appropriation and shall remain available for obligation until September 30, 1990]....	Unless otherwise specified, appropriations are available for use only in the year of appropriation. This language allowed fiscal year 1989 funds that would otherwise have been returned to the Treasury to remain available for use in fiscal year 1990.

Indian Education

Amounts Available for Obligation

	1989	1990	1991
Appropriation:			
Annual	$71,553,000	$74,149,000	$75,762,000
Reappropriation (P.L. 101-136)	---	509,000	---
Sequester	---	-1,038,000	---
Subtotal, adjusted appropriation	71,553,000	73,620,000	75,762,000
Recovery of prior-year obligations	59,000	---	---
Unobligated balance, start of year	19,000	29,000	---
Unobligated balance, end of year	-29,000	---	---
Unobligated balance lapsing	-639,000	---	---
Total obligations	70,963,000	73,649,000	75,762,000

Indian Education

Budget Authority by Activity

	1989 Appropriation	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request
1. Grants to local educational agencies and Indian-controlled schools (Subpart 1):			
(a) Grants to LEAs........	$49,248,000	$50,825,000	$53,556,000
(b) Indian-controlled schools.............	3,500,000	3,451,000	3,000,000
Subtotal.........	52,748,000	54,276,000	56,556,000
2. Special programs for Indian students (Subpart 2):			
(a) Planning, pilot, and demonstration projects.............	1,935,000	1,908,000	1,908,000
(b) Educational services...	3,710,000	4,070,000	4,070,000
(c) Educational personnel development			
(i) Section 5321(d)..	1,169,000	1,153,000	1,153,000
(ii) Section 5322....	1,093,000	1,078,000	1,078,000
(d) Resource and evaluation centers.........	2,300,000	2,268,000	2,268,000
(e) Fellowships............	1,600,000	1,587,000 1/	1,578,000
(f) Gifted and talented program..............	500,000	493,000 2/	---
Subtotal.........	12,307,000	12,557,000	12,055,000
3. Special programs for Indian adults (Subpart 3)..	4,000,000	4,078,000	4,249,000
4. Program administration:			
(a) Salaries and expenses..	2,206,000	2,403,000	2,558,000
(b) National advisory council..............	292,000	306,000	344,000
Subtotal.........	2,498,000	2,709,000	2,902,000
Total............	71,553,000	73,620,000	75,762,000

1/ This amount includes $9,000 due to a reappropriation of fiscal year 1989 funds.

2/ This amount has been made available for obligation due to a reappropriation of fiscal year 1989 funds.

Indian Education

Budget Authority by Object

	1989 Appropriation	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request
Full-time equivalent of full-time permanent positions.....	48	48	48
Full-time equivalent of all other positions..............	2	2	2
Total compensable workyears....	50	50	50
Personnel compensation:			
Full-time permanent..........	$1,576,000	$1,846,000	$1,909,000
Other than full-time permanent..................	29,000	30,000	30,000
Other personnel compensation......................	26,000	12,000	16,000
Total personnel compensation.........	1,631,000	1,888,000	1,955,000
Personnel benefits.............	225,000	285,000	307,000
Benefits for former personnel..	2,000	---	---
Travel and transportation of persons......................	132,000	103,000	133,000
Standard level user charges....	160,000	153,000	159,000
Transportation of things.......	4,000	---	---
Communications, utilities, and other rent...................	114,000	91,000	78,000
Printing and reproduction......	20,000	14,000	18,000
Other services.................	2,955,000	2,912,000 1/	2,455,000
Supplies and material..........	14,000	14,000	19,000
Equipment......................	41,000	1,000	46,000
Grants, subsidies and contributions...............	66,255,000	68,159,000 2/	70,592,000
Total..................	71,553,000	73,620,000	75,762,000

1/ This amount includes $493,000 reappropriated for the Gifted and Talented program.

2/ This amount includes $9,000 reappropriated for the Fellowship program.

Indian Education

Summary of Changes

1990 Appropriation	$73,118,000
1990 Reappropriation	502,000
Total budget authority	73,620,000
1991 Request	75,762,000
Net Change	+2,142,000

	1990 base	Change from base
Increases:		
Built in:		
1. Increases to cover annualization of 1990 pay raise, within-grade raises, proposed pay raise for 1991, scheduled Executive Service pay raise, higher worker's compensation costs, and an additional paid day in 1991	$2,173,000	+$89,000
2. Increase to cover higher rent for OIE and NACIE	153,000	+6,000
Program:		
1. Increase in Subpart 1 to raise the per-student payment under the formula grants to local educational agencies program	50,825,000	+2,731,000
2. Increase in Subpart 3 to maintain level of services	4,078,000	+171,000
3. Increase for travel to monitor grants and provide technical assistance	103,000	+30,000
4. Increase for ADP equipment to purchase additional personal computers for program office staff and pay costs of connecting OIE to local area network (LAN)	—	+45,000
5. Increases for equipment repair and maintenance, printing, training, and field readers, and cost adjustments for ADP services, supplies, and non-ADP equipment and contracts	188,000	+ 36,000
Subtotal		+3,108,000

Indian Education

Summary of Changes — Continued

	1990 base	Change from base
Decreases:		
Built in:		
1. Decrease in GSA telecommunications charges.....................	$62,000	-$13,000
Program:		
1. Decrease in funds for Subpart 1 discretionary grants for Indian-controlled schools to reflect recent number and quality of applications...........	3,451,000	-451,000
2. Decrease in Subpart 2 Fellowship program to reflect FY 1990 one-time reappropriation	1,587,000	-9,000
3. Decrease in Subpart 2 Gifted and Talented program to reflect FY 1990 one-time reappropriation and because no funds are requested for this activity in 1991.............	493,000	-493,000
Subtotal..............		-966,000
Net change............		+2,142,000

Indian Education

Authorizing Legislation

Activity	1990 Authorized	1990 Appropriation	1991 Authorized	1991 Request
Grants to local educational agencies and Indian-controlled schools (IEA-1-5316)........................	Indefinite	$54,276,000	Indefinite	$56,556,000
Special programs for Indian students:				
Planning, pilot, and demonstration projects; educational services; educational personnel development (IEA-2-5321(g)(1))......................	$35,000,000	7,131,000	$35,000,000	7,131,000
Resource and evaluation centers (IEA-2-5321(g)(2))..	8,000,000	2,268,000	8,000,000	2,268,000
Educational personnel training programs for teachers of Indian children (IEA-2-5322(c)).........	Indefinite	1,078,000	Indefinite	1,078,000
Fellowships for Indian students (IEA-2-5323(e)).....	Indefinite	1,587,000[1]	Indefinite	1,578,000
Gifted and talented program (IEA-2-5324(e)).........	3,000,000	493,000[2]	3,000,000	---
Special programs for Indian adults (IEA-3-5330(e))....	Indefinite	4,078,000	Indefinite	4,249,000
Program administration:				
Office of Indian Education (IEA-4-5343).............	Indefinite	2,403,000	Indefinite	2,558,000
National Advisory Council on Indian Education (IEA-4-5343)......................................	Indefinite	306,000	Indefinite	344,000
Total definite authorization..................	46,000,000		46,000,000	
Total appropriation...........................		73,620,000		75,762,000

1/ This amount includes $9,000 due to a reappropriation of fiscal year 1989 funds.

2/ This amount has been made available for obligation due to a reappropriation of fiscal year 1989 funds.

Indian Education

Table of Estimates and Appropriations

	Budget Estimate to Congress	House Allowance	Senate Allowance	Appropriation 1/
1982	$81,096,000	$82,096,000	$81,096,000	$77,852,000
1983	51,119,000	67,457,000	66,216,000	69,185,000
1984	1,243,000	71,243,000	67,248,000	68,780,000
1985	68,780,000	68,780,000	68,780,000	67,404,000
1986	67,292,000	67,656,000	67,356,000	67,071,000
1986 Reduction (P.L. 99-150)				-405,000
1986 Sequester				-2,884,000
1987	75,729,000 2/	67,236,000	62,000,000	64,036,000
1988	64,217,000 3/	66,343,000	66,343,000	66,326,000
1989	67,653,000	68,153,000	72,297,000	71,553,000
1990	74,168,000	74,149,000	74,149,000	74,149,000
1990 Reapprop.				509,000
1990 Sequester	-1,038,000			-1,038,000
1991	75,762,000			

1/ Reflects enacted supplementals, rescissions, and reappropriations in amounts appropriated prior to fiscal year 1985.

2/ Request based upon proposed legislation that the Administration did not send forward.

3/ Amended President's Budget reflecting reduction in estimated cost for the Federal Employees Retirement System (FERS).

Indian Education

Significant Items in Congressional Appropriations Reports

Item	Action taken or to be taken
1989 Conference Report	
Gifted and Talented Program	
"For the gifted and talented program, the managers agree to provide $500,000 to initiate a pilot program. The Department of Education is to assess the costs associated with this program as compared to programs benefitting more students, and report to the Committees on Appropriations on their findings."	The Department will prepare such a report after the recipient of the contract to be awarded under this program has obtained this information and reported it to the Department.
1990 Conference Report	
Gifted and Talented Program	
"The managers expect the Office of Indian Education to work with the tribally-controlled community colleges to enable them to develop acceptable proposals for the gifted and talented pilot program."	Staff of the Office of Indian Education and the Grants and Contracts Service met with representatives of the tribally-controlled community colleges, who were in Washington for another meeting, on November 14, 1989. At that time, they briefed the college representatives on the process for preparing and submitting proposals for the contract for the Gifted and Talented pilot program. After the RFP is published, technical assistance will also be available to potential applicants from Grants and Contracts staff.

Indian Education

Account Summary

	1989 Appropriation	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request
1. Grants to local educational agencies and Indian-controlled schools (Subpart 1)................	$52,748,000	$54,276,000	$56,556,000
2. Special programs for Indian students (Subpart 2).......	12,307,000	12,557,000 1/	12,055,000
3. Special programs for Indian adults (Subpart 3).........	4,000,000	4,078,000	4,249,000
4. Program administration:			
(a) Salaries and expenses....	2,206,000	2,403,000	2,558,000
(b) National advisory council	292,000	306,000	344,000
Subtotal.......	2,498,000	2,709,000	2,902,000
Total..................	71,553,000	73,620,000	75,762,000

1/ This amount includes a reappropriation of $502,000 of fiscal year 1989 funds.

The Indian Education Act was originally enacted June 23, 1972 after a series of hearings and reports documented the educational disadvantagement of the Indian population. The Act authorizes a variety of programs to supplement State, local, and tribal educational efforts to improve educational opportunities for Indian children, college students, and adults. These programs include: supplementary programs in the schools of local educational agencies and BIA-operated or BIA contract schools; enrichment programs in Indian-controlled schools; special educational services to Indian children, including activities to serve gifted and talented Indian students; training for Indian educational personnel; fellowships for Indian students; adult education; and regional centers that provide technical assistance. To ensure Indian direction of all these efforts, parental and community participation in program development and implementation is required.

Over the last 15 years, more than $900 million has been made available to support the Indian Education Act programs. About 1,000 school districts and 100 Indian organizations and tribes receive Federal contributions each year to further their efforts in providing educational services to both federally and non-federally recognized Indians. This support has supplemented other Federal programs assisting Indian education, including Chapter 1, Bilingual Education, Impact Aid, and the programs of the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

Indian Education

Account Summary--Continued

Federal money, in combination with the much larger sums provided by the State and local governments, has had a positive effect on the educational progress of Indians. Between 1970 and 1980:

- The percentage of Indian adults 25 and over who are high school graduates increased from 33 percent to 55.8 percent.
- The median years of school completed for the Indian population aged 25 and older increased from 9.8 to 12.2 years.

Despite this progress, Indians, as a group, still lag behind the national average in such areas as years of school completed, high school retention rate, median family income, per capita income, and percentage of families above the poverty level. For example, more than 25 percent of Indian children aged 5 through 17 live in poverty, and almost 24 percent of the 16- and 17-year olds do not attend school. These statistics argue for continued funding of Indian Education Act programs and continued efforts to strengthen these programs as vehicles for Indian educational improvement and economic development.

In fiscal year 1990, the Administration expects to begin two efforts that may have implications for the future of Indian education. One is a study proposed by the Secretary to collect information on matters related to Indian education, including: (1) problems in Indian education that need to be addressed, (2) educational practices that have proven successful in serving Indian populations, and (3) the incidence and prevalence of school dropouts and the reasons why the educational system is failing these students. A related activity to be initiated in 1990 and coordinated with this study will be the planning for the White House Conference on Indian Education, authorized by the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments. The sum of $500,000 was appropriated to the White House Office of Intergovernmental Affairs for 1990 for use in planning activities for this conference. Among the purposes of the Conference is the development of recommendations for the improvement of educational programs to make them more relevant to the needs of Indians.

For 1991, the Administration requests a net increase of $2,142,000 for the Indian Education Act programs. The Subpart 1 formula grant program would be increased by $2,731,000 to raise the average per pupil payment. A decrease of $451,000 would be made in the Subpart 1 discretionary program to reflect the recent quantity and quality of applications. Reflecting the 1990 reappropriation, the Subpart 2 total will decline by $502,000. The Subpart 3 Adult Education program would be increased by $171,000 to maintain the current level of services and support the Administration's continuing commitment to reducing illiteracy. Finally, program administration would be increased by $193,000 primarily to cover increased personnel compensation and benefits costs.

Indian Education

---

1. Grants to local educational agencies and Indian-controlled schools (Indian Education Act of 1988, Subpart 1)

1991 Authorization: Indefinite

Budget Authority:

1990 Appropriation	1991 Request	Increase or Decrease
$54,276,000	$56,556,000	+$2,280,000

Purpose and Method of Operation

Subpart 1 of the Indian Education Act supports two programs for Indian students. Under one program, grants are awarded on a formula basis to local educational agencies (LEAs). Under the other, grants are awarded on a competitive basis to reservation-based, Indian-controlled schools. Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) contract schools are treated as LEAs under the formula grant program and thus may receive funds from both programs. These are current-funded programs, but funds appropriated and awarded in one fiscal year are generally used for activities that are carried out during the next fiscal year.

As authorized by the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments, schools operated by the Bureau of Indian Affairs are now eligible for formula grants, effective with fiscal year 1989. Approximately 100 BIA-operated schools serving some 27,000 students are eligible to apply for these funds.

Under the formula program, funds must be used to supplement the regular school program. Projects provide tutoring, remedial reading and mathematics, counseling and guidance, and Indian cultural and heritage activities. The amount of an LEA's grant is based on a formula that multiplies its Indian student enrollment by its State's average per-pupil expenditure for education. The grant is then ratably reduced according to the level of available appropriations.

The Indian-Controlled Schools program is authorized by a set-aside of up to 10 percent of the amount appropriated for the Subpart 1 formula program. Tribes and Indian organizations that operate schools on or near reservations compete for funds to develop special enrichment programs that supplement an already established school program.

Accomplishments

In fiscal year 1989, the Department awarded 1,162 formula grants totaling $49,239,742 to 1,023 public school districts, 81 BIA-operated schools, and

Accomplishments — Continued

58 BIA contract schools enrolling approximately 347,000 Indian children in 41 States. Grants ranged from $913 to $1,360,477.

The Department also awarded 20 discretionary grants totaling $3,500,000 to 18 Indian-controlled schools serving nearly 6,000 Indian children in 12 States. These discretionary awards ranged from $82,236 to $366,347. Two schools with two grants each received total awards of $467,917 and $499,510. Eleven, or about 61 percent, of the schools receiving grants under the Indian-controlled schools program in 1989 also received Subpart 1 formula grants.

The Department of Education is required by statute to conduct program audits of one-fourth of the formula grant recipients each year and report its findings to the Congress. (This requirement was changed by the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments from one-third of the formula grant recipients, effective with FY 1989.) This so-called "rolling audit" has been carried out since 1981 and nearly all the local agencies have been visited at least once, many two or three times. The Department has begun using alternative methods for monitoring, particularly for the smaller grantees. Methods such as telephone monitoring that are less costly, but that would still yield the necessary information, are being used. The Department has transmitted to the Congress the mandated report on these audits of FY 1986 grantees, who used their funds for activities in FY 1987. The report on FY 1987 grantees has been drafted and is now undergoing review by various Departmental offices.

On May 4, 1989, the Department published final regulations for the formula grant program to incorporate new provisions contained in the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments. The major change is the inclusion of BIA-operated schools as eligible applicants for formula grants. Other changes include requirements for the minimum information that must be contained on a student certification form in order for a student to be counted for funding purposes and other requirements an applicant must fulfill when counting students for inclusion in its application. A provision was also added to the regulations to encourage program improvement, under which applicants whose projects are not making satisfactory progress in meeting their established goals will be required to submit amended applications that state the changes that will be made in order to meet those goals. Additional technical changes were made to conform the regulations with the reauthorized statute.

1991 Budget Proposal

For 1991, the Administration requests $56,556,000 for Subpart 1 of the Indian Education Act, an increase of $2,280,000 over the 1990 amount. The entire amount of the increase would be applied to the formula grant program. An amount of $451,000 is also proposed for reallocation from the

Indian Education

1. Grants to local educational agencies and Indian-controlled schools

---

1991 Budget Proposal — Continued

discretionary grants for Indian-controlled schools to the formula grant program so that the formula grant program would have a total increase of $2,731,000 or 5.4 percent.

Studies by the House Appropriations Committee Surveys and Investigative Staff (1983) and by Abt Associates (1985) have shown that the BIA contract schools—which account for most of the grantees under the discretionary program—receive almost twice as much per child from all sources as do comparable local public schools. In 1989, twelve of these schools received both formula and discretionary grants under Subpart 1, and some of them received an average of more than $1,000 per child from Subpart 1 programs alone, as well as additional funds from Subpart 2. The contract schools also receive more per child from Chapter 1 than the average rate paid to other schools in any of the States. In addition to these funds, basic operating costs for the contract schools come from the BIA. The program office has found that the number and quality of applications for these discretionary grants has declined in recent years. For this reason, the Department proposes to reduce the funds available for this activity and requests that the amount of that reduction be reallocated under the formula grant program.

In 1989, Subpart 1 formula payments to LEAs amounted to an average of $143 for each Indian child counted. (Approximately 78 percent of those counted are estimated to receive services, resulting in an average of about $182 for each child participating.) In contrast, payments under the discretionary program averaged about $588 per child at the Indian-controlled schools. The Administration acknowledges the need for supplemental funding for the Indian-controlled schools because of their isolated locations and difficult operating conditions and, therefore, continues to request funding for their support. However, the lower level of funding requested for 1991 is expected to fund fewer awards than in the past.

Indian Education

1. Grants to local educational agencies and Indian-controlled schools

Impact Data	1989	1990	1991
Subpart 1 total funds	$52,748,000	$54,276,000	$56,556,000
Formula grants:			
Funding:			
LEAs	$45,473,661	$46,025,000	$48,496,000
BIA contract schools	1,501,481	1,653,000	1,743,000
BIA-operated schools	2,264,600	3,147,000	3,317,000
Total	49,239,742	50,825,000	53,556,000
Number of awards:			
LEAs	1,023	1,020	1,020
BIA contract schools	58	60	60
BIA-operated schools	81	80	80
Total	1,162	1,160	1,160
Number of States in which awards made:			
LEAs	41	41	41
BIA contract schools	17	17	17
BIA-operated schools	9	9	9
No. of eligible children:			
LEAs	314,367	314,400	314,400
BIA contract schools	11,300	11,300	11,300
BIA-operated schools	21,523	21,500	21,500
Total	347,190	347,200	374,200
Estimated number of students served	270,800	270,800	270,800
Range of awards:			
Highest	$1,360,477	$1,392,800	$1,467,500
Lowest	$913	$935	$985
Average payment per eligible student from non-BIA-operated school	$143	$146	$154
Average payment per eligible student from BIA-operated school	$123	$146	$154

Indian Education

1. Grants to local educational agencies and Indian-controlled schools

Impact Data — Continued	1989	1990	1991
Subpart 1 total funds	$52,748,000	$54,276,000	$56,556,000
Discretionary Grants to Indian-controlled schools:			
Funding	$3,500,000	$3,451,000	$3,000,000
No. of awards	20	20	17
New awards	18	14	13
Continuations	2	6	4
No. of students served	5,949	6,000	5,100
Average payment per student	$588	$575	$588
Range of awards:			
Highest	$366,347	$370,000	$400,000
Lowest	$82,236	$82,000	$80,000

Indian Education
FY 1989 Grant Awards, by State
Subpart 1 - LEA Formula Grant Program 1/

State	Number of Grants	Amount
Alabama	12	$1,004,611
Alaska	47	6,426,344
Arizona	102	6,441,815
Arkansas	2	78,227
California	112	3,911,262
Colorado	8	308,283
Connecticut	1	22,023
Florida	7	97,274
Idaho	11	181,882
Illinois	1	121,005
Indiana	1	13,754
Iowa	4	108,856
Kansas	8	208,776
Louisiana	8	382,126
Maine	4	60,417
Maryland	4	149,577
Massachusetts	3	113,528
Michigan	65	1,982,305
Minnesota	53	1,754,775
Mississippi	2	9,090
Missouri	1	2,558
Montana	33	1,670,735
Nebraska	8	268,146
Nevada	12	431,719
New Jersey	3	71,709
New Mexico	55	4,519,120
New York	16	1,057,383
North Carolina	20	2,074,980
North Dakota	27	907,652
Ohio	2	39,893
Oklahoma	323	7,683,753
Oregon	23	946,083
Rhode Island	1	35,809
South Dakota	43	1,488,997
Tennessee	1	2,916
Texas	4	99,209
Utah	13	456,012
Vermont	1	83,293
Virginia	2	15,317
Washington	73	2,395,972
Wisconsin	40	1,256,959
Wyoming	6	355,597
41 Totals	1,162	49,239,742

1/ Grants are awarded to local educational agencies (LEAs) based on the number of Indian children in each LEA multiplied by the average per pupil expenditure in the LEA's State. Amounts are ratably reduced according to available appropriations.

Indian Education

Subpart 1 - Discretionary Grants to Indian-Controlled Schools

State	FY 1988 Number of Grants	FY 1988 Amount	FY 1989 Number of Grants	FY 1989 Amount
Arizona	1	$245,555	—	—
Florida	—	—	1	$87,379
Iowa	1	130,018	—	—
Kansas	2	252,420	1	82,236
Minnesota	5	1,080,919	4	967,427
Mississippi	—	—	1	316,971
Montana	2	303,026	2	344,034
Nevada	—	—	1	117,245
New Mexico	3	376,212	3	315,299
North Dakota	1	223,256	1	366,847
Oklahoma	4	604,303	2	275,026
South Dakota	1	77,535	2	311,302
Washington	1	77,535	1	177,219
Wyoming	1	142,561	1	139,015
Total	22	3,435,805	20	3,500,000

2. Special programs for Indian students (Indian Education Act of 1988, Subpart 2)

1991 Authorization: Indefinite[1/]

Budget Authority:

1990 Appropriation	1991 Request	Increase or Decrease
$12,557,000[2/]	$12,055,000	-$502,000

[1/] Specific appropriation ceilings are provided for some Subpart 2 program activities. The total of these definite authorizations is $46 million.

[2/] Reflects a reappropriation of $502,000 in Gifted and Talented and Fellowship funds.

Purpose and Method of Operation

Subpart 2 of the Indian Education Act authorizes a variety of discretionary programs designed to improve the quality of educational programs for Indian students.

- Planning, pilot, and demonstration projects are designed to plan, test, and demonstrate the effectiveness of educational approaches for Indian students at the preschool, elementary, and secondary levels. All grantees are Indian tribes and organizations.

- Educational services projects serve Indians at the preschool, elementary, and secondary levels. All grantees are Indian tribes and organizations. The Hawkins-Stafford Amendments specifically identified dropout prevention projects and projects to encourage Indians to acquire a higher education as authorized activities under this program.

- Educational personnel development projects train Indians for careers in education. There are two programs. Under Section 5321(d), awards are made primarily to universities for graduate programs in education. Under Section 5322, awards are made to Indian tribes, which usually subcontract with a local university or college for undergraduate programs to train Indians for careers as teachers or teacher aides.

- Fellowships are for Indian students in the fields of medicine, psychology, law, education, business administration, engineering, and natural resources. Awards are based on academic record, leadership potential, and commitment. Priority is given to fellowship applicants for graduate studies in business administration, natural resources, engineering, and related fields and to applicants planning to study in the area of guidance counseling with a specialty in alcohol and substance abuse counseling and education.

Purpose and Method of Operation--Continued

- Resource and evaluation centers provide technical assistance in evaluation and other areas and disseminate information to Indian education projects. Center staff conduct workshops, make site visits to provide technical assistance, and prepare and distribute printed materials.

- Gifted and talented centers, demonstration projects, and research, development, and dissemination projects were newly authorized by the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments. The purpose of these activities is to address the special needs of gifted and talented Indian students in elementary and secondary schools.

All Subpart 2 programs are discretionary and competitively awarded. Applications are reviewed by panels of field readers and agency program specialists and are evaluated based on criteria specified in regulations. With the exception of the fellowship program, Subpart 2 programs are current funded. Fellowship funds are made available for two fiscal years. For the other Subpart 2 activities, funds appropriated and awarded in one fiscal year are generally used for activities that take place during the next fiscal year.

Accomplishments

For 1989, planning, pilot, and demonstration program funds of $1,935,000 supported 16 projects to serve some 8,400 students. Of the 16, one is a planning project, nine are pilot projects, and six are demonstration projects. The projects are in the following areas: alcohol and drug abuse education and prevention, computer-assisted instruction, competency testing, curriculum development, gifted and talented, materials dissemination, tutoring, and multi-purpose.

For the educational services program, in 1989, 25 discretionary grants totaling $3,710,000 were awarded to provide educational services to about 4,600 Indian students. The projects can be grouped into the following general categories: alcohol and drug abuse education and prevention (1), computer-assisted instruction (2), curriculum development (1), dropout prevention (1), gifted and talented (1), guidance counseling (2), Indian cultural heritage (3), language instruction (2), leadership training (1), preschool (3), tutoring (4), and multi-purpose (4).

The educational personnel development programs awarded 14 grants at a total cost of $2,318,115 in 1989. Carryover funds from fiscal year 1983 that were recovered in subsequent years made up $56,115 of this total. Among these grants, $784,487 supported graduate programs at 4 universities; $526,900 went to 3 Indian organizations; $415,484 went to 3 tribes or tribal schools; and $591,244 went to 4 tribal community colleges.

Accomplishments — Continued

For resource and evaluation centers, three-year contracts have been awarded to operate five regional centers that provide technical assistance and training to grantees. February 1990 will begin the third and final year of these contracts. They will be recompeted this year.

During the past year, the centers conducted 47 workshops to provide pre-application training assistance to over 600 grantees and 160 workshops in specialized areas for some 800 grantees; made approximately 500 site visits; and provided regional coordination services for 52 SEAs, 127 Indian tribes, and 175 Indian organizations.

In the fellowship program, 1989 awards were made to 124 Indian students to attend 71 institutions in 28 States. Fellowships were awarded to 29 undergraduate students and 95 graduate students in the following fields of study: business administration (13), law (19), education (20), engineering (18), medicine (22), natural resources (12), psychology (13), and clinical psychology (7). The Department of Education coordinates with similar programs in the Bureau of Indian Affairs to ensure that there is no duplication in awards.

Because no acceptable applications were submitted for the 1989 competition for a contract under the new gifted and talented program, the funds were reappropriated for use in fiscal year 1990. A new competition will be held in fiscal year 1990, and the recipient will conduct activities during fiscal year 1991. The contractor will be asked to identify the population of gifted and talented Indian students and suggest approaches that will provide needed services to these students.

On May 18, 1989, the Department published final regulations for the fellowship program that contain technical changes resulting from the enactment of the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments, as well as a substantive change to base the awarding of fellowships primarily on merit. While financial need is no longer a threshold criterion for applicants for fellowships, it is still the determining factor in setting the amounts of fellowship awards. This change is expected to have little effect on the distribution of fellowship funds, because scholastic merit has always been a key factor in the selection of fellowship recipients and the vast majority of applicants have demonstrated financial need, as defined by the need analysis index used by the Office of Postsecondary Education for the Department's need-based student assistance programs. This change is expected to expedite the processing of fellowship applications, which will help ensure compliance with the requirement in the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments that fellowship recipients be notified of the amounts of their awards at least 45 days prior to the beginning of their academic terms. The regulations also implement a provision in the Drug-Free Schools and Communities Act of 1986 to give priority to fellowship applicants planning to study in the area of guidance counseling with a specialty in alcohol and substance abuse counseling and education.

Accomplishments — Continued

Another set of final regulations related to the enactment of the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments, published in final on May 11, 1989, made technical changes to the general provisions and discretionary grant regulations and established requirements and funding criteria related to the new gifted and talented program. Also included in these regulations was the identification of consortia of Indian tribes or organizations, LEAs, and institutions of higher education as eligible applicants for grants for projects that encourage Indian students to acquire a higher education and to reduce the rate of dropouts among Indian elementary and secondary students. These projects were specifically identified in the Hawkins-Stafford Amendments as authorized activities of the educational services program.

Also in 1989, a contractor for the Office of Planning, Budget, and Evaluation began a formal review of the Fellowship program. This study will attempt to contact all Fellowship recipients for fiscal years 1985-89 to solicit information on degree progress or completion, subsequent employment, and involvement with the Indian community. The colleges and universities attended by fellows will also be contacted for information on institutional characteristics. Data collection from the program files has begun. Questionnaires will be mailed to fellows and calls will be made to institutions in the spring, and the study is expected to be completed in the fall.

The Department hopes that this study of the Fellowship program will be the beginning of a systematic review of all Indian Education program activities. While evaluations of some program activities have been conducted in the past, many of these occurred some time ago and need to be updated. To support this effort, the Department is requesting $250,000 for FY 1991 to initiate one or two studies of Subpart 2 activities. These funds are requested under the Program Administration account in the Labor, Health and Human Services, and Education appropriations bill.

1991 Budget Proposal

The Administration requests $12,055,000 for Subpart 2 programs in 1991, $502,000 less than the 1990 appropriation. Except for the Fellowship and Gifted and Talented activities, all programs would be kept level with their 1990 amounts. These two programs are reduced by the amount of the reappropriation of 1989 funds for use in 1990. The request for the fellowship program is the amount of the regular 1990 appropriation. No funds are requested for the Gifted and Talented program for fiscal year 1991, because no information is yet available from the pilot program for which funds were initially appropriated in 1989 and then reappropriated in 1990. The Department is in the process of publishing a request for proposals for a contract for the pilot program. The recipient of the contract for the pilot program will collect information and report on available programs for gifted and talented Indian students. This information will form the basis for developing a policy for the operation of the authorized activities of the Gifted and Talented program.

Indian Education

2. Special programs for Indian Students

Impact Data	1989	1990	1991
Subpart 2 total funds	$12,307,000	$12,557,000[1]	$12,055,000
Planning, pilot, and demonstration (Section 5321(b))	$1,935,000	$1,908,000	$1,908,000
No. of awards	16	16	16
New awards	12	11	11
Continuations	4	5	5
No. of participants	8,392	8,000	8,000
Range of awards:			
Highest	$186,325	$185,000	$185,000
Lowest	$70,518	$70,000	$70,000
Educational Services (Section 5321(c))	$3,710,000	$4,070,000	$4,070,000
No. of awards	25	28	28
New awards	20	18	19
Continuations	5	10	9
No. of participants	4,594	5,000	5,000
Range of awards:			
Highest	$350,302	$350,000	$350,000
Lowest	$49,949	$50,000	$50,000
Educational personnel development (Section 5321(d))	$1,225,115[2]	$1,153,000	$1,153,000
No. of awards	7	7	7
New awards	7	1	1
Continuations	---	6	6
No. of participants	659	660	660
Per-student cost	$1,774	$1,800	$1,800
Range of awards:			
Highest	$277,424	$277,000	$277,000
Lowest	$56,115	$60,000	$60,000

---

[1] This amount includes a reappropriation of $502,000.

[2] This amount includes carryover funds of $56,115.

Indian Education

2. Special programs for Indian Students

Impact Data — Continued	1989	1990	1991
Subpart 2 total funds	$12,307,000	$12,557,000[1]	$12,055,000
Educational personnel development (Section 5322)	$1,093,000	$1,078,000	$1,078,000
No. of awards	7	7	7
New awards	7	1	1
Continuations	—	6	6
No. of participants	598	600	600
Per-student cost	$1,827	$1,800	$1,800
Range of awards:			
Highest	$225,940	$226,000	$226,000
Lowest	$59,025	$60,000	$60,000
Resource and Evaluation Centers (Section 5321(e))	$2,300,000	$2,268,000	$2,268,000
No. of centers	5	5	5
Range of awards:			
Highest	$489,000	$482,000	$482,000
Lowest	$391,000	$385,000	$385,000
Fellowships (Section 5323)	$1,600,000	$1,587,000[2]	$1,578,000
No. of awards	124	120	120
New awards	51	50	50
Continuations	73	70	70
Range of awards:			
Highest	$33,276	$33,000	$33,000
Lowest	$765	$800	$800
Gifted and talented program (Section 5324)	$500,000	$493,000[3]	—
No. of awards anticipated	1	1	—

1/ This amount includes a reappropriation of $502,000 of fiscal year 1989 funds.

2/ This amount includes $9,000 of reappropriated fiscal year 1989 funds.

3/ This amount has been made available for obligation due to a reappropriation of fiscal year 1989 funds.

Indian Education

Subpart 2 - Discretionary Grants

FY 1989 Awards by State

Educational Services and Planning, Pilot, and Demonstration Programs

States	Number of Grants	Total Funds
Alaska	1	$128,180
Arizona	3	537,462
California	4	680,273
Colorado	1	110,889
District of Columbia	1	116,527
Kansas	1	91,441
Massachusetts	1	110,840
Minnesota	5	985,062
Mississippi	1	166,165
Montana	1	82,621
Nebraska	1	120,763
New Mexico	5	533,535
North Dakota	2	222,033
Oklahoma	3	352,614
South Dakota	1	49,949
Utah	1	113,070
Washington	6	747,965
Wisconsin	3	475,606
Total	41	5,644,995

Educational Personnel Development

California	1	190,654
Montana	3	661,937
New Mexico	1	59,025
Oklahoma	3	526,900
Pennsylvania	1	194,917
South Dakota	2	206,731
Wisconsin	2	356,459
Wyoming	1	121,492
Total	14	2,318,000

3. Special programs for Indian adults (Indian Education Act of 1988, Subpart 3)

1991 Authorization: Indefinite

Budget Authority:

1990 Appropriation	1991 Request	Increase or Decrease
$4,078,000	$4,249,000	+$171,000

Purpose and Method of Operation

Subpart 3 of the Indian Education Act supports programs to enable Indian adults to acquire basic literacy, complete secondary school, and secure the education necessary for them to benefit from vocational training. Many projects also offer consumer education and other special services such as academic and career counseling, aptitude and vocational testing, and job referral.

Grants are awarded on a competitive basis to Indian tribes, organizations, and institutions. Although this is a current-funded program, funds appropriated and awarded in one fiscal year are generally used for activities conducted during the next fiscal year.

Accomplishments

In fiscal year 1989, the Department awarded 32 grants to projects serving approximately 7,200 Indian adults. These awards went to 12 tribes, 14 Indian organizations, and 6 tribal community colleges. Eleven of the awards were in urban areas and 21 in rural or reservation settings. The grants ranged from $28,468 to $307,414.

A 1985 study of the program by Pelavin Associates found that generally the services delivered by Subpart 3 projects are those that seem to be the most needed by Indian adults. They concentrate on providing adult basic education and preparation for the high school equivalency examination. The study also found little duplication of services between Subpart 3 projects and those funded by other Federal programs, such as the Adult Education Act or adult education activities funded by the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

1991 Budget Proposal

For 1991, the Administration requests $4,249,000 for Subpart 3 programs, an increase of $171,000 over the 1990 appropriation. Although there has been some improvement in the educational status of Indian adults (between 1960 and 1980 the percentage of Indians age 25 and older with less than a 5th

1991 Budget Proposal — Continued

grade education decreased from 22 percent to 8 percent; the percentage with a high school diploma increased from 18 percent to 56 percent), there is still a great need for assistance. More than 300,000 (44 percent) of Indian adults aged 25 and older have not graduated from high school. About 60,000, or eight percent of this age group, have had less than a 5th grade education.

This request reflects the Administration's continued commitment to efforts to combat illiteracy and will allow the program to maintain the current level of services. Coordination with the BIA's adult education program and the Adult Education Act's State grant program will continue, and efforts will be made to target awards more effectively on the neediest adults and localities. The program emphasizes adult basic education, especially literacy, and preparation for the high school equivalency examination.

Impact Data	1989	1990	1991
Budget authority	$4,000,000	$4,078,000	$4,249,000
No. of awards	32	32	32
New awards	30	20	24
Continuations	2	12	8
No. of participants	7,200	7,200	7,200
Range of awards			
Highest	$307,414	$307,000	$307,000
Lowest	$28,468	$28,000	$28,000

Indian Education

Subpart 3 - Special Programs for Indian Adults

Discretionary Grant Awards by State

State	FY 1988 Number of Grants	FY 1988 Amount	FY 1989 Number of Grants	FY 1989 Amount
Alaska	—	—	1	$87,901
Arizona	—	—	2	228,457
Colorado	1	$141,191	1	128,101
Idaho	—	—	1	122,586
Louisiana	1	34,631	1	64,410
Massachusetts	1	124,987	1	146,232
Michigan	2	153,316	1	28,468
Minnesota	2	278,362	5	823,975
Mississippi	1	316,326	1	307,414
Montana	4	585,030	3	355,373
Nebraska	1	105,555	—	—
Nevada	—	—	1	98,528
New Mexico	1	148,850	1	87,107
North Dakota	—	—	2	161,429
Oklahoma	2	284,968	4	577,539
South Dakota	1	50,831	1	87,260
Utah	2	137,642	2	159,187
Vermont	1	62,942	—	—
Washington	5	575,369	4	536,033
Total	25	3,000,000	32	4,000,000

4. Program administration
(Indian Education Act of 1988, Subpart 4)

1991 Authorization: Indefinite

	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request	Increase or Decrease
OIE			
PC&B	$1,949,000	$2,024,000	+$75,000
Discretionary	454,000	534,000	80,000
Total.............	2,403,000	2,558,000	+155,000
FTE	45	45	---
NACIE			
PC&B	$224,000	$238,000	+$14,000
Discretionary	82,000	106,000	24,000
Total.............	306,000	344,000	38,000
FTE	5	5	---
Indian ED Program			
PC&B	$2,173,000	$2,262,000	+$89,000
Discretionary	536,000	640,000	104,000
Total.............	2,709,000	2,902,000	+193,000
FTE	50	50	---

Purpose and Method of Operation

This activity finances the salaries and expenses of the Office of Indian Education (OIE), which administers the Indian education programs, and the National Advisory Council on Indian Education (NACIE), which advises the Secretary on Indian education matters. This is a current-funded program for which funds are available from October 1 to September 30.

Of the total employment of 50 full-time equivalents (FTE), 45 are allocated to OIE and 5 to NACIE.

OIE operates under the supervision of the Department's Assistant Secretary for Elementary and Secondary Education in administering programs designed to:

- o respond to the special educational needs of Indian students and adults in areas such as remedial reading and mathematics, counseling and guidance, language instruction and tutoring, and Indian culture and heritage;

- o improve the quality of educational programs for Indians through demonstration and service projects;

Purpose and Method of Operation -- continued

- o make awards to universities, tribes, and Indian organizations to train Indian adults for careers in education, and provide fellowships for Indian students in specified professional fields; and

- o award contracts to operate regional centers that provide technical assistance and disseminate information to Indian education projects and applicants.

The National Advisory Council on Indian Education consists of 15 members who are Indians or Alaskan Natives and are appointed by the President. The mandated functions of the Council are specifically set forth in section 5342 of the Indian Education Act. That section calls for the Council to advise the Secretary regarding administration of any program in the Department of Education in which Indian children or adults can participate or from which they can benefit; review applications; evaluate Indian Education programs and disseminate results; and assist in the development of regulations. Each year NACIE submits an annual report of its activities, findings, and recommendations to Congress.

Accomplishments

In fiscal year 1989, Office of Indian Education staff administered 1,393 grant awards through seven programs and five contracts for Regional Resource and Evaluation Centers. There has been a gradual increase in OIE's grant awards over the past few years due to increases in funding.

- o *Under Subpart 1*: Formula Grants to Local Educational Agencies-- 1,162 grants totalling $49.2 million were awarded to supplement regular school programs and provide special educational services to Indian children; for Indian-Controlled Schools-- 20 grants totalling $3.5 million were made to 18 Indian-controlled schools to support special enrichment projects that supplement established programs;

- o *Under Subpart 2*: Educational Services for Indian Children-- 25 discretionary grants totalling $3.7 million will provide otherwise unavailable educational programs and services for Indian children at the preschool, elementary, and secondary levels; Planning, Pilot and Demonstration-- one planning grant, nine pilot grants and six demonstration grants, together totalling $1.9 million, will support efforts to plan, test and demonstrate the effectiveness of educational approaches for Indian children at the preschool, elementary, and secondary levels; Educational Personnel Development-- 14 grants totalling $2.3 million will train Indians for careers in education; Indian Fellowships-- 124 fellowships totalling $1.6 million were awarded to Indian students to pursue degrees in medicine, psychology, law, education, business administration, engineering, and natural resources; and

---

Accomplishments -- continued

- *Under Subpart 3*: Educational Services for Indian Adults-- 32 grants totalling $4 million will enable Indian adults to acquire basic literacy skills, complete high school, and secure the education necessary to benefit from vocational training.

Section 5314(e) of the Indian Education Act requires that the Secretary of Education conduct annual "audits" of a sample of not less than one-fourth of the total number of school districts receiving funds under Subpart 1 and report the findings to Congress. In December 1989, OIE submitted to Congress the *Annual Report to Congress on formula grant projects for fiscal year 1986 (conducted during school year 1986-1987)*. The annual report for school year 1987-88 (fiscal year 1987 funds) is in the Departmental clearance process and is expected to be sent to Congress in March.

The National Advisory Council on Indian Education published and sent to Congress its 15th Annual Report, which describes NACIE's major activities, findings, and recommendations. NACIE met the requirements of its charter by having three full council meetings. In addition, NACIE's Council members participated in the process of selecting a Director of the Office of Indian Education and submitted to the Secretary a list of nominees for that position. In 1990, NACIE plans to begin implementing a more comprehensive approach to Native American participation in Federal education programs by identifying the programs from which they can benefit. When visiting Indian tribes, organizations and institutions, Council members will investigate issues and problems such as program eligibility and impediments to participation, including legislative restrictions. The Council will then attempt to resolve the problems or call them to the attention of those who can do so, such as the Department and Congress.

1991 Budget Proposal

The 1991 request of $2,902,000 for Program Administration is an increase of $193,000 over the 1990 appropriation level of $2,709,000. This budget will provide $2,558,000 for OIE and $344,000 for NACIE and will support a total of 50 FTE--45 in OIE and 5 in NACIE.

The 1991 budget proposal includes the following increases over the 1990 appropriation level:

- The category of personnel compensation and benefits is increased by $89,000 over the 1990 level of $2,173,000. This includes an increase of $75,000 for OIE and an increase of $14,000 for NACIE to cover the costs of: annualization of the 1990 3.6 percent pay raise, a proposed 1991 pay raise of 3.5 percent, within-grade increases for OIE and NACIE employees, promotions, increased benefits costs, and an extra paid day in 1991.

1991 Budget Proposal -- continued

- The discretionary activities category is increased by $104,000 in 1991, of which $80,000 is for OIE and $24,000 for NACIE. Other changes from the 1990 level are as follows:

  -- Travel for OIE is increased by $15,000. This increase will permit OIE staff to visit more project sites than the 359 expected to be visited in FY 1990. There will also be longer, more in-depth site visits. These two factors will help to ensure increased accountability and improved monitoring quality. OIE staff will continue to: monitor one-quarter of all Subpart 1 grantees--approximately 275--as mandated; re-visit grantees where deficiencies are found to see that corrective action has taken place and to provide technical assistance; monitor on-site Subparts 2 and 3 discretionary grant projects and monitor Resource and Evaluation Center activities.

  -- Travel for NACIE is increased by $15,000. This increase will enable NACIE to conduct more oversight reviews and site visits and to meet and share information with other Indian education organizations.

  -- Contracts (non-ADP) are increased by $10,000. This increase will cover the cost of OIE participation in two conferences: the National Indian Education Association ($5,000) and the National Adult Indian Education Association ($5,000), where workshops will be held to provide guidance to members of those associations on preparing successful applications for programs administered by OIE and to showcase successful projects. The cost of participating in these conferences includes renting space, equipment, and furniture at the conference site.

  -- ADP equipment is increased by $45,000. Of this increase, $15,000 will cover the cost of three personal computers that will enable OIE staff to perform its work more effectively and meet the demands of an increasing workload without an increase in staff. In FY 1991, OIE will pay its share ($30,000) of equipment costs for the installation of the Local Area Network (LAN) connections in OIE. The LAN gives users rapid and direct access to central Departmental systems, such as the Primary Accounting and Grants and Contracts Management systems and can increase the efficiency and effectiveness of office computer systems.

  -- Field reader costs for OIE are increased by $5,000. This increase is primarily to cover the increased costs for travel and per diem. All programs currently administered by OIE will be competed in FY 1991, including the Resource and Evaluation Centers, which are competed once every three years.

1991 Budget Proposal -- continued

Minor discretionary increases totalling $27,000 are offset by a decrease of $13,000 (GSA telecommunications), resulting in a net increase of $14,000. These increases are included to allow for inflation in the object classes for rental payments, printing, interagency agreements, training, equipment repair and maintenance, ADP services contracts, and supplies.

Other Activities Affecting Indian Education Program Administration

For FY 1991, the Department has requested a total of $250,000 [under the Department of Education Program Administration account in the Labor, Health and Human Services, and Education appropriations bill] to conduct one or two evaluations of Indian Education program activities. These evaluations will be the beginning of a systematic review to determine whether current program efforts are successful and appropriate.

Pursuant to P.L. 101-136, Congress appropriated $500,000 for the White House Conference on Indian Education (WHCIE), which is authorized to be held by September 30, 1991. One of the tasks of the WHCIE is to explore the feasibility of establishing an independent Board of Indian Education that would assume responsibility for all existing Federal programs relating to the education of Indians. NACIE and OIE are expected to participate in planning for the conference and advising and assisting the Interagency Task Force responsible for conducting the conference and related activities.

Indian Education

Summary of Changes

Analysis of Changes to Program Administration

1990 Appropriation	$2,709,000
1991 Request	2,902,000
Net Change	+193,000

	1990 base	Change from base
Increases:		
Built-in:		
1. Increase in personnel compensation for annualization of 1990 3.6 percent pay raise, within-grade increases, merit pay increases, the proposed 1991 3.5 percent pay raise, promotions, and an extra paid day in 1991	$1,877,000	+$63,000
2. Increase in benefits for both the Civil Service and Federal Employees' Retirement Systems, the government's share of health benefits, workers' compensation, and other benefits costs related to the pay raises	285,000	+22,000
3. Increase in rental payments imposed by GSA	153,000	+6,000
Program:		
1. Increase in travel to monitor and provide technical assistance to grantees; to conduct oversight reviews and site visits; attend conferences and workshops; and to meet and share information with Indian education organizations	103,000	+30,000

Indian Education

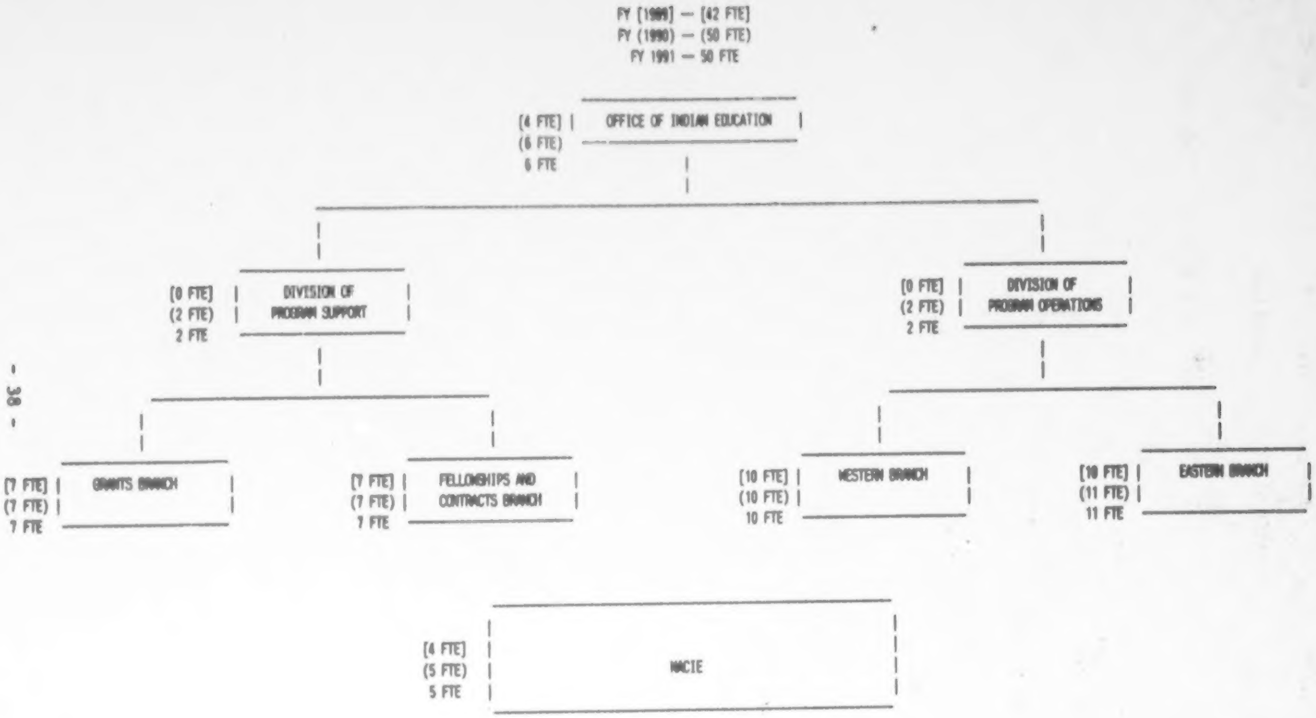
Summary of Changes - continued

	1990 base	Change from base
Program:		
2. Increase in printing due to increased printing costs of OIE's application packages, envelopes, and stationery..........	$14,000	+$4,000
3. Increase in interagency agreements for OIE's share of departmental common support expenses.....	26,000	+1,000
4. Increase in training for OIE's share of departmental common support expenses..................	6,000	+3,000
5. Increase in equipment repair and maintenance to cover NACIE's equipment maintenance agreement, word processing system, and other equipment repair..................	2,000	+2,000
6. Increase in (non-ADP) contract costs to cover OIE's participation in two conferences (NAIEA/NIEA)....	19,000	+10,000
7. Increase in field reader costs, primarily to cover the cost increases for travel and per-diem..............................	70,000	+5,000
8. Increase in ADP services contracts to cover OIE's departmental central ADP services costs ($1,000) and contractor support to connect OIE to the Local Area Network (LAN) at $5,000.	37,000	+6,000
9. Increase in supplies to cover office supplies and for OIE's share of departmental common support expenses, e.g. for copy paper..............................	14,000	+5,000

Indian Education

Summary of Changes - continued

	1990 base	Change from base
Program:		
10. Increase in ADP equipment to cover the purchase of three micro-computers at $5,000 each and for equipment to connect OIE to the Local Area Network at $30,000.................	---	+$45,000
11. Increase in employee awards for exceptional job performance........	$11,000	+4,000
Subtotal.......................		+$206,000
Decreases:		
Built-in:		
1. Decrease in GSA telecommunications charges............................	62,000	-13,000
Subtotal.......................		-13,000
Net change.....................		+193,000


FY [1989] — [42 FTE]
FY (1990) — (50 FTE)
FY 1991 — 50 FTE
[4 FTE]
(6 FTE)
6 FTE
OFFICE OF INDIAN EDUCATION
[0 FTE]
(2 FTE)
2 FTE
DIVISION OF PROGRAM SUPPORT
[0 FTE]
(2 FTE)
2 FTE
DIVISION OF PROGRAM OPERATIONS
[7 FTE]
(7 FTE)
7 FTE
GRANTS BRANCH
[7 FTE]
(7 FTE)
7 FTE
FELLOWSHIPS AND CONTRACTS BRANCH
[10 FTE]
(10 FTE)
10 FTE
WESTERN BRANCH
[10 FTE]
(11 FTE)
11 FTE
EASTERN BRANCH
[4 FTE]
(5 FTE)
5 FTE
NACIE

Indian Education Program Administration

Budget Authority by Object

(in thousands of dollars)

	1989 Appropriation	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request
11.1 Full-time permanent	$1,470	$1,846	$1,909
11.3 Full-time temporary	0	0	0
11.3 Part-time	12	14	15
11.3 Consultants	17	16	15
11.5 Overtime	2	1	1
11.5 Awards	22	11	15
11.8 Other compensation	0	0	0
11.0 Compensation subtotal	1,523	1,888	1,955
12.0 Benefits	209	285	307
11,12 Comp./benefits subtotal	1,732	2,173	2,262
13.1 Severance	2	0	0
21.0 Travel	123	103	133
22.0 Transportation of things	0	0	0
23.1 Rental payments to GSA	157	153	159
23.2 Non-GSA telecommunications	0	0	0
23.3 GSA telecommunications	68	62	49
23.4 ADP rentals	0	0	0
23.5 Postage/fees	70	29	29
23.6 Other equipment rentals	0	0	0
24.0 Printing	18	14	18
25.1 Interagency & reimbursables	38	26	27
25.2 Training	6	6	9
25.3 Equipment repair/mainten.	2	2	4
25.3 Building alterations/repair	0	0	0
25.4 Contracts (non-ADP)	19	19	29
25.4 Field Readers	60	70	75
25.6 ADP services contracts	17	37	43
25.0 Other services subtotal	142	160	187
26.0 Supplies	17	14	19
31.2 Equipment - non-ADP	1	1	1
31.4 Equipment - ADP	39	0	45
43.1 Interest and dividends	0	0	0
Total Obligations	2,369	2,709	2,902
Lapse	129	0	0
Budget Authority	2,498	2,709	2,902

Office of Indian Education

Budget Authority by Object

(in thousands of dollars)

	1989 Appropriation	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request
11.1 Full-time permanent	$1,319	$1,674	$1,728
11.3 Full-time temporary	0	0	0
11.3 Part-time	12	14	15
11.3 Consultants	1	0	0
11.5 Overtime	1	0	0
11.5 Awards	21	11	15
11.8 Other compensation	0	0	0
11.0 Compensation subtotal	1,354	1,699	1,758
12.0 Benefits	183	250	266
11,12 Comp./benefits subtotal	1,537	1,949	2,024
13.1 Severance	2	0	0
21.0 Travel	81	70	85
22.0 Transportation of things	0	0	0
23.1 Rental payments to GSA	136	132	137
23.2 Non-GSA telecommunications	0	0	0
23.3 GSA telecommunications	64	58	45
23.4 ADP rentals	0	0	0
23.5 Postage/fees	58	17	17
23.6 Other equipment rentals	0	0	0
24.0 Printing	14	9	12
25.1 Interagency & reimbursables	36	25	26
25.2 Training	6	6	9
25.3 Equipment repair/mainten.	2	1	1
25.3 Building alterations/repair	0	0	0
25.4 Contracts (non-ADP)	14	16	24
25.4 Field Readers	60	70	75
25.6 ADP services contracts	17	37	43
25.0 Other services subtotal	135	155	178
26.0 Supplies	12	12	14
31.2 Equipment - non-ADP	1	1	1
31.4 Equipment - ADP	38	0	45
43.1 Interest and dividends	0	0	0
Total Obligations	2,078	2,403	2,558
Lapse	128	0	0
Budget Authority	2,206	2,403	2,558

National Advisory Council for Indian Education

Budget Authority by Object

(in thousands of dollars)

	1989 Appropriation	1990 Appropriation	1991 Request
11.1 Full-time permanent	$151	$172	$181
11.3 Full-time temporary	0	0	0
11.3 Part-time	0	0	0
11.3 Consultants	16	16	15
11.5 Overtime	1	1	1
11.5 Awards	1	0	0
11.8 Other compensation	0	0	0
11.0 Compensation subtotal	169	189	197
12.0 Benefits	26	35	41
11,12 Comp./benefits subtotal	195	224	238
13.1 Severance	0	0	0
21.0 Travel	42	33	48
22.0 Transportation of things	0	0	0
23.1 Rental payments to GSA	21	21	22
23.2 Non-GSA telecommunications	0	0	0
23.3 GSA telecommunications	4	4	4
23.4 ADP rentals	0	0	0
23.5 Postage/fees	12	12	12
23.6 Other equipment rentals	0	0	0
24.0 Printing	4	5	6
25.1 Interagency & reimbursables	2	1	1
25.2 Training	0	0	0
25.3 Equipment repair/mainten.	0	1	3
25.3 Building alterations/repair	0	0	0
25.4 Contracts (non-ADP)	5	3	5
25.4 Field Readers	0	0	0
25.6 ADP services contracts	0	0	0
25.0 Other services subtotal	7	5	9
26.0 Supplies	5	2	5
31.2 Equipment - non-ADP	0	0	0
31.4 Equipment - ADP	1	0	0
43.1 Interest and dividends	0	0	0
Total Obligations	291	306	344
Lapse	1	0	0
Budget Authority	292	306	344

Detail of Full-Time Permanent Positions

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Request
Organization: OIE			
Executive level I			
Executive level II			
Executive level III			
Executive level IV			
Executive level V			
Subtotal	0	0	0
ES-6			
ES-5			
ES-4			
ES-3			
ES-2			
ES-1	1	1	1
Subtotal	1	1	1
GS/GM-16	0	0	0
GS/GM-15	3	3	3
GS/GM-14	4	4	4
GS/GM-13	7	7	7
GS-12	14	16	17
GS-11	3	2	1
GS-10	0	0	0
GS-9	1	0	0
GS-8	1	1	1
GS-7	2	3	3
GS-6	2	2	2
GS-5	5	4	4
GS-4	0	0	0
GS-3	1	1	1
GS-2	0	0	0
GS-1	0	0	0
Subtotal	43	43	43
Ungraded	0	0	0
Total full-time permanent positions	44	44	44
Unfilled positions, end of year	12	0	0
Total full-time permanent employment, end of year	32	44	44
Average ES grade	1.0	1.0	1.0
Average ES salary	$68,700	$70,600	$81,000
Average GS/GM grade	10.8	10.9	11.0
Average GS/GM salary	$34,216	$35,896	$37,295

OFFICE OF NAVAJO AND HOPI INDIAN RELOCATION

FISCAL YEAR 1991

APPROPRIATION SUMMARY STATEMENT

The Office budget request for fiscal year 1991 is $31,449,000. This represents a total decrease of $5,369,000 from the previous year, related primarily to New Lands road construction. The funds requested will support the operation of the Office, Incentive Bonus Payments, Housing Acquisition and Construction, and Discretionary Funding to facilitate and expedite resettlement activities.

Component elements of the Budget Proposal include:

- Operation of the Office	4,510,000
a. Expenses of the Commissioner	
b. Executive Direction	
c. Advisory Assistance Services	
d. Housing Acquisition and Site Development	
e. Administration, Finance and New Lands Management and Coordination	
- Incentive Bonus Payments	527,000
- Relocation Payments (Housing)	21,100,000
- Discretionary Funds	5,312,000

Consistent with the provisions of P.L. 93-531 and its associated Amendments Act of 1980, P.L. 96-305 and 1988, P.L. 100-666, the Office will continue efforts towards the final settlement of the long standing dispute between the Navajo and Hopi Indian Tribes.

Operation of the Office

Long Range Goal: Assure that all relocation-resettlement activities conducted by the Office are consistent with the intent of Congress and the Executive Branch as expressed by P.L. 93-531, and the Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation Amendments Acts of 1980, P.L. 96-305 and 1988, P.L. 100-666. This includes the planning of adequate infrastructure in conjunction with BIA and IHS on the New Lands to support the resettlement of families to that location. This goal is essential for completion of the Office's mandated responsibilities.

Major Objectives:

1. Conduct monthly meetings and support various other activities of the Commissioner, as necessary, to insure the proper review and oversight of the Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation.

2. Maintain an effective management structure for the direction, implementation, and management of Office policy by agency staff.

3. Provide necessary research and evaluation of ongoing and new program proposals for dissemination by agency management.

4. Maintain an effective program of federal and legislative coordination to insure that the necessary resources from appropriate federal participants are included in the overall relocation implementation efforts.

5. Provide ongoing engineering and technical support to relocation planning and implementation activities.

6. Conduct a comprehensive program of Relocation Operations and Advisory Assistance Services for Navajo and Hopi families participating in resettlement activities. This will include necessary family counseling assistance, the payment of incentive bonuses, the acquisition of decent, safe, and sanitary replacement housing, the disposal of abandoned property and improvements on the former Joint Use Area, and various other activities necessarily associated with relocation- resettlement.

7. Conduct a comprehensive program of resale dwelling and new construction building inspections. Through ongoing inspections, decent, safe, and sanitary housing for relocatee families shall be provided within the prevailing benefit ranges.

8. Conduct planning and evaluation programs directed towards determining the feasibility of involving the private business sector in developing workable commercial alternatives for lands acquired for occupancy by relocatee families.

9. Utilize discretionary funding assistance for projects designed to facilitate and expedite relocation efforts through practical land usage alternatives.

10. Conduct administrative and financial management programs in support of all agency activities.

Current Method of Accomplishing Program Objectives

The Office has operated a program of relocation operations and advisory services since 1977. As of the end of FY 1989 a total of 1,708 families have received relocation assistance and a total of 964 remain to be relocated. Approximately 176 of these families still reside on the partitioned lands and 788 reside elsewhere.

- A total of 1,658 Navajo families have relocated from the Hopi Partitioned Lands, 875 to on-reservation homesites and 783 off-reservation. (119 of the on-reservation homesites are located on the New Lands.) 176 Navajo HPL families remain to be relocated approximately residing on the HPL and 788 residing elsewhere.

- A total of 14 Hopi families have relocated from the Navajo Partitioned Lands, 12 to on-reservation homesites and two off-reservation. 10 Hopi NPL families remain to be relocated.

- A total of 36 Navajo families who were forced to move from District Six as a consequence of the decision in U.S. vs. Kabinto have received relocation benefits. The replacement homes of 20 of those families are located at on-reservation homesites and 16 off-reservation (4 of the on-reservation homesites are located in the Rural Community on the New Lands). 17 District Six families remain to receive benefits.

During 1990, it is estimated that an additional 270 families will relocate. During fiscal year 1990 the Office will be utilizing a portion of the housing funds to underwrite the cost of specific project engineering design activities. These costs are properly allocated to this category because they are directly associated with the provision of housing and infrastructure on the New Lands.

During FY-1990 and FY-1991, the Office will maintain a planning program with the Navajo Tribe to develop multifaceted land usage alternatives for available sites. The actual involvement of relocatees in this effort will be a key factor in its implementation. Discretionary Funds may be used by the Office to assist both Tribes in meeting and reducing the burdens imposed by this Act.

Program Accomplishments:

The Office's primary program accomplishments during FY-1989 are identified in the table "Output/Workload Measures." Additional information about activities and accomplishments during FY-1989 is provided below:

- 266 families, in the following categories, were relocated in 1989: 188 to on-reservation homesites (71%) and 78 off-reservation (29%).

- 262 Navajo families were relocated from the Hopi Partitioned Lands.

- No Hopi families were relocated from Navajo Partitioned Lands.

- 4 Navajo families who were evicted from District Six as a consequence of the decision in the case of the United States v Kabinto, 1972 received benefits as provided for in Public Law 96-305.

- The combined results of the appeals of denied applications and the review of previously certified applications consisted of a net decline of two Navajo families certified as eligible for agency assistance.

- No Hopi families were certified as eligible for agency assistance.

7

- No Navajo families who applied for benefits as District Six evictees were certified as eligible for agency assistance.

- 170 on-reservation homesite leases were approved and received from the Navajo Tribe.

- As of the end of fiscal 1989, a total of 1,082 cases were closed because of the end of the 2 year post-move follow-up period. There was an active/open caseload of 626 cases.

- The following illustrates the status of the families who have been certified eligible for benefits as of the end of fiscal 1989:

Certified	2,672	There are 218 active appeals of denied applications.
Relocated	- 1,708	
Remaining	964	includes 176 full-time residents of the HPL.
Homes Being Built	72	includes 11 full-time residents of the HPL.
Seeking Homes	- 119	includes 9 full-time residents of the HPL.
Social Counseling	773	includes 156 full-time residents of the HPL.

During fiscal year 1990, the following goals are projected:

- 270 Navajo HPL, District Six Evictee and Hopi families will receive relocation benefits for a program total of 1,978. An estimated 694 families will remain to be relocated. It is estimated that fewer than 129 of the remaining families will be residing on the partitioned lands and that approximately 565 will be residing elsewhere.

- On-reservation group move projects will be continued and completed in cooperation with the Navajo Tribe, the Indian Health Service, and the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

- Planning and development of New Lands will continue to be a high priority supported by significant contractor and staff resources.

- Planning efforts will be continued to assess the impacts of on-reservation relocation and to identify mitigating measures.

- Continue work with BIA and the IHS on the New Lands for the purpose of planning and implementing infrastructure projects on the cluster sites and in the rural community.

- Conducting administrative hearings on eligibility denials for approximately 75 of the 218 pending appeals pending at the end of fiscal 1989.*

---

*It should be noted that approximately 650 denied cases are likely to be affected by the decision in Sands v. NHIRC -- which will mean an appeals caseload of approximately 800 denied applications. The agency is conducting a staff review of options for administratively complying with the Court's order in the Sands case. Possible certifications as a result of the Sands case are not included in estimates of the number of families remaining to relocate/receive their relocation benefits. Current projections indicate that the Sands decision could result in 200-300 additional certified households.

Resource Requirements : (Dollars in thousands)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Approp Enacted	FY 1989 Carryover	Relocation Pursuant to P.L. 99-177	Trnsfd* to Office Per P.L. 100-666	FY 1990 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Change to Base
Operation of the Office	3,474	4,035	6,435		-5,870	4,600	4,510	- 90
Relocation Payments (housing)	18,800	20,500	61	- 396		20,165	21,100	+ 935
Assistance Payments (bonus)	1,034	1,518	1,046			2,564	527	-2,037
Discretionary Funds	4,065	10,765	2,506			13,271	5,312	-7,959
Total	27,373	36,818	10,048	- 396	-5,870	40,600	31,449	-9,151

*Unobligated carryover from funds transferred to the Commission by the BIA and committed to range program and other New Lands activities.

Program Objectives:

To provide effective relocation assistance to families subject to resettlement as a result of partition. To continue in the planning and development of the New Lands made available for resettlement purposes. To coordinate activities with other federal participants. To utilize Office resources to mitigate the impacts of relocation through sound economic development planning.

Output/Workload Measures:

Function	Actual FY 1989	Estimated FY 1990	Estimated FY 1991
1. Eligibility Appeals Hearings	45	75	75
2. Pre-move Counseling Sessions	984	999	999
3. Housing Counseling Services	798	810	810
4. Homesite Feasibility Studies	205	206	206
5. Construction Inspections	1,224	1,242	1,242
6. Properties Disposed	62	76	76
7. Post-Move Home Contacts*	62	65	65
8. Post-Move Referrals to Other Agencies	42	152	152
9. Home Warranty Inspections	752	888	888
10. Families Relocated This Fiscal Year	266	270	270
11. Total Families Relocated	1,708	1,978	2,248
12. Estimated Families Remaining	964	694	424

*Contacts by Office staff.

Program Objectives for Proposed Funding Level

1. The Office, during FY-1991, plans to relocate an additional 270 families for a program total of 2,248. An estimated 424 families will remain to be relocated. It is estimated that fewer than 82 of the remaining families will be residing on the partitioned lands and that approximately 342 will be residing elsewhere.

2. Significant efforts will be made to continue planning and development activities on the New Lands. The Office will be working jointly with BIA and IHS to initiate necessary infrastructure development on the New Lands.

3. Relocatee families will continue to be contacted individually to give them additional information on the New Lands and to request that they choose a relocation site.

4. The Office will continue to work closely with various other federal agencies with statutory responsibility for provision of services to Indian communities. The Office will continue to coordinate planning and development efforts with these agencies so that these services will be made available to the relocatees on the New Lands as well as on existing reservation sites.

Summary of Requirements by Object Class
(dollar amount in thousands)

Appropriation:	Salaries and Expenses and Special Funds	FY 1990 Approp Enacted	FY 1989 Carryover	Reduction Pursuant to P.L. 99-177	Trnsfd* to Office Per P.L. 100-666	FY 1990 Base	FY 1991 Request	Change To Base
11.1	Full-time permanent positions	2,234	2,584		- 2,348	2,470	2,500	+ 30
11.3	Other than full-time permanent							
11.8	Special personnel services payments							
11.9	Total personnel compensation	2,234	2,584		- 2,348	2,470	2,500	+ 30
12.1	Personnel benefits: Civilian	296	408		- 379	325	355	+ 30
21.0	Travel and transportation of persons	270	395		- 336	329	280	- 49
22.0	Transportation of things	5	5			10	5	- 5
23.2	Rental payments to others	200	39			239	240	+ 1
23.3	Communications, utilities, and misc chgs	230	39			269	235	- 34
24.0	Printing and Reproduction	50	11			61	50	- 11
25.0	Other services	650	245		- 108	787	695	- 92
26.0	Supplies and materials	50	2,704		- 2,699	55	50	- 5
31.0	Equipment	50	5			55	100	+ 45
32.0	Lands and structures	20,500	61	- 396		20,165	21,100	+935
41.0	Grants, subsidies, and contributions	12,283	3,552			15,835	5,839	-9,996
	Total Requirements	36,818	10,048	- 396	- 5,870	40,600	31,449	-9,151

*Unobligated carryover from funds transferred to the Commission by the BIA and committed to range program and other New Lands activities.

Title of Activity: Operation of the Office

Authorization: P.L. 93-531; 88 Stat. 1712 Sec. 12; 25 U.S.C. 640d.

(dollar amounts in thousands)

Program ToElement	FY 1990 Approp Enacted	FY 1989 Carryover	Trnsfd to Office Per P.L. 100-666	FY 1990 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Carry To Base
Operation of the Office	4,035	6,435	-5,870	4,600	4,510	- 90
FTE	(103)			(103)	(95)	

Base Program: The operations of the Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation can be broken down into five program areas:

1. Expenses of the Commissioner
2. Executive Direction, statistics, reporting & personnel
3. Advisory Assistance Services
4. Housing Acquisition and Site Development
5. Administration, Finance and New Lands Management and Coordination.

Explanation of FTE Increases: Under the provisions of P.L. 100-666 the Office had transferred to it all unexpended funds that were appropriated to the Bureau under P.L. 99-190 and all authorities granted to the Assistant Secretary for the Bureau of Indian Affairs under that same citation. During Fiscal Year 1989, the Office absorbed seven positions from the Bureau for the purpose of continuing the Assistant Secretary's counseling program for the New Lands. Additionally, the Office assumed the responsibility for range improvement and management on the New Lands with a permanent staff of six professionals and eighteen temporary, intermittent range crew employees, drawn from the relocatee population on the New Lands, for a total of 24 additional FTE. In Fiscal Year 1990, the Office's FTE increased to seventy-two for the basic program. This FTE increase was needed in order to accommodate the increased level of funding for housing acquisition. In addition to these seventy-two FTE, the twenty-four positions for the range management program and the seven positions for the counseling component brought the total FTE to 103. For 1991 the Office has not included the seven FTE for the counseling component and the Office will attempt to absorb these personnel through attrition by the end of FY 1990. The range management component will be funded from the monies transferred to the relocation office from the Bureau of Indian Affairs under the provisions of P.L. 100-666, and therefore, no additional funding for these activities is requested.

Expenses of the Commissioner: The Commissioner has the authority and responsibility for the formulation of all agency management and operational policy and the oversight of all agency programs. Public meetings are held throughout the year to present Office policy to the affected groups and to gather input on ongoing agency activity as well as to stimulate new ideas.

Executive Direction: This branch supervises all of the Office's operational programs, coordination of legal services, implementation of Office policy and the development and implementation of program initiatives.

This branch also provides internal program review and produces the Monthly Program Update and Report, Annual Reports of the Office, and special activity reports. Monitoring and review of joint venture proposals from other federal, state and Tribal entities engaging in relocation program activities is also undertaken. The agency personnel functions are also included in the Executive Director's office.

Advisory Assistance Services: Advisory Assistance Services provide ongoing consultation with the relocatee family from the beginning to the end of the process. These services include pre-move counseling to inform the families of various options available in the selection of a home, evaluation of economic and social status of the relocatees, coordination of other federal and state agency assistance activities for relocatee families and referral assistance to existing service providers upon completion of the relocation process. Within the limits of available resources, the Office will continue its increased emphasis on post-move counseling services.

Housing Acquisition and Site Development: This branch provides for a full range of real estate acquisition activity and includes new construction contracting, acquisition of new and resale dwellings, procurement of modular units, and monitoring of any necessary warranty or housing repair programs. Coordination of group moves and other innovative approaches to housing acquisition is also encompassed within this activity. This branch also provides engineering and technical assistance to other agency components. This includes engineering reports, engineering and topographic analysis, construction and housing inspections, technical support service coordination with other agencies, analysis of proposed construction plans and on-reservation building site feasibility analysis. The primary mission of this unit is to insure that relocatee dwellings meet all applicable decent, safe, and sanitary standards, and that building sites offer families the best possible structural alternatives.

Administration, Finance and New Lands Management & Coordination: This branch provides necessary administrative and financial management services to the agency. This includes the preparation and presentation of the Office's budget proposals, all internal financial management programs, support for agency program departments through improved supply and equipment maintenance systems, all financial reporting and disbursement, personnel services, vehicle fleet management, facilities & communications management, data and word processing, discretionary fund program contracting and grant management, procurement, contracting for services, and cooperative/reimbursable agreements with other agencies.

This branch also provides the technical analysis attendant to planning and development of lands for relocation purposes and assesses the development necessary for facilities and services. Such analyses include negotiations with current permit or lease holders, engineering analysis, grazing capability analysis and review of the sites by potential relocatee occupants. Utilization of existing federal and state agency surveys and studies in the area of soil composition, water development and mineral composition is stressed to avoid duplication of effort.

JUSTIFICATION

Operation of the Office: (Decrease of $90,000 from Base)

Explanation
There is no actual decrease from amounts appropriated. The Office had prior year recoveries and deobligations which were carried forward into the FY-1990 base. There is an actual increase of $475,000 from 1990 appropriations. This increase is to support increased activity and personnel associated with increased housing funding.

Title of Activity: Relocation Operations

Authorization: P.L. 93-531, 88 Stat. 1712, Sec. 27; 25 U.S.C. 640d.

(dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Element	FY 1990 Approp Enacted	FY 1989 Carryover	Reduction Pursuant To P.L. 99-172	FY 1990 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Change From Base
Relocation Assistance Payments	22,018	1,107	- 396	22,729	21,627	- 1,102
FTE	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)

Base Program: Relocation Operations encompasses two components: assistance (bonus) payments and relocation payments for housing. The bonus payments are given as an incentive to those families who voluntarily participate in the relocation program. In 1991, the Office expects to relocate an additional 270 families. The relocation payments for housing include: disposal of acquired property on the HPL/NPL, costs of obtaining homesite leases and other permits from the Navajo and Hopi Tribes, the acquisition of housing for relocatee families through resale dwelling purchases in existing communities or the construction of new homes on or off reservation and payments associated with the relocation process including moving expenses. It also includes certain engineering costs necessary to developing sites, both on the existing reservation and the New Lands.

JUSTIFICATION

Relocation and Assistance Payments: (Decrease of $1,102,000 from Base)

Explanation

P.L. 100-666 increased the Office's authorization for housing acquisition funds from $15,000,000 annually to $30,000,000 annually. The Office has requested $21,100,000 of this authorization during Fiscal Year 1991 for the purpose of funding the acquisition of relocation housing. P.L. 100-666 also transferred $12,900,000 remaining in BIA funds to the Office. All of these funds have been dedictaed to non-housing expenses such as cadastral surveys, Rio Puero River water quality study, range improvement and management. During 1987 the Office was appropriated additional funds to pay bonuses associated with BIA acquired housing. Approximately $1,000,000 of those funds remain and so the Office requires only $527,000 in additional bonus authority during 1991. Therefore, while there is a reduction from base of $1,102,000 the component is actually funded at the same level as 1990.

With the housing funds available, the Office will be able to relocate approximately 270 families. This will support (1) the acquisition of replacement housing, (2) payments due families for reasonable search and moving expenses to new locations, (3) necessary payments for miscellaneous expenses such as title and escrow fees and homesite acquisition costs (4) costs directly associated with engineering and planning for New Lands housing construction.

Title of Activity: Discretionary Funds Management

Authorization: P.L. 93-531, 88 Stat. 1712, Sec. 27; 25 U.S.C. 640d.

(dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Element	FY 1990 Approp Enacted	FY 1989 Carryover	FY 1990 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Change to Base
Discretionary Funds	10,765	2,506	13,271	5,312	- 7,959
FTE	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)

Base Program: Public Law 96-305 authorized not to exceed $6,000,000 annually as a discretionary fund. The purpose of this fund, as defined by Congress, is: "to facilitate and expedite the relocation efforts of the Office..." The Office anticipates utilizing these funds to underwrite the cost of a broad range of activities designed to support land development, group moves, economic development, water development, utility extensions and other activities which will facilitate and expedite the program.

Discretionary funds will be primarily used to facilitate and expedite efforts associated with the development of the New Lands for resettlement purposes and to underwrite individual infrastructure costs, in addition to basic benefits, for individuals moving to the existing Navajo Reservation (as opposed to the New Lands). This includes the finite physical planning necessary to develop site facilities such as; water source improvements, waste disposal systems, utilities, chapter service centers, and overall resource management implementation projects.

DISCRETIONARY FUNDS

Public Law 96-305 authorized not to exceed $6,000,000 annually as a Discretionary Fund. The purpose of this fund, as defined by Congress, is: "to facilitate and expedite the relocation efforts of the Office..." The Office anticipates utilizing these funds to underwrite the cost of a broad range of activities designed to support land development, group moves, economic development, water development, utility extensions and other activities which will facilitate and expedite the program.

During previous years, the Office has coordinated specific infrastructure development projects with the Navajo Tribe, the Navajo Tribal Utility Authority, the Indian Health Service and other organizations to "cost share" a variety of construction efforts. In all cases, the projects are directly related to the provision of services and community facilities for relocatee families at their resettlement sites. Efforts to provide basic services to existing communities during this process assists the host chapters in absorbing the pressures of an increased population (relocatee families) on already limited or under-developed resources and service capabilities.

In addition to the normal funding goals and discretionary funds actions, Congress, during the last year and half, have either necessitated or mandated the inclusion of additional items in the Office's discretionary funds category.

First, as has been noted previously in this document, the Office's assumption of all the responsibility for road building and site development on the New Lands has made evident major cost items in the area of archaeological inquiry and mitigation which were not previously the Office's responsibility. This budget therefore includes monetary items of shortfall during fiscal year 1990 plus projected needs in fiscal year 1991. If approved as submitted, the Office would reprogram during fiscal year 1990, from housing funds, to underwrite the necessary archaeological expenses during that year and would then, in fiscal year 1991, make up the amount previously reprogrammed in order to be back on track with the number of moves projected through the end of fiscal year 1991.

Additionally, the FY 1990 Conference Report to the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act included language to begin requesting funds in the Office's budget for road construction on the New Lands. After careful review of the existing priorities funded from the Discretionary Fund, and its statutory limit of $6,000,000, the Administration concluded that it can best meet the intent of the Conference Report language by funding road construction on the New Lands from the Federal Highway Trust Fund allocation provided to the BIA. Appropriations language has been included in the BIA construction budget to meet the road construction needs on the New Lands.

Specifically, during FY 1991, the Office recommends and proposes to participate in the following projects with Discretionary Funds: and tribal government; and program analysis and planning for specific projects.

New Lands Cultural Resource Protection Program

In fiscal year 1989 the Office hired a cultural resources manager to oversee the extensive archaeological survey and site mitigation work that was required of the Office to fulfill its responsibility as "lead federal agency" in the development of the New Lands.

The Office's role is primarily administrative. Actual on site field work is conducted by staff from the Navajo Nation Archaeological Department (NNAD) and the Zuni Archaeological Program (ZAP) through cooperative agreements executed between those two organizations and the Office. Relationships have been, or are in the process of being developed between the Office and the Museum of Northern Arizona for curation, and Northern Arizona University for special studies required to assist in cultural resource management.

The cultural resource management work associated with the development of the New Lands falls into four categories.

1. Initial site surveys must be conducted to determine if cultural resources exist in areas identified for development. In general, the philosophy of the Office is to avoid archaeological sites. However, due to the density of these sites it is rarely possible to do this. Federal law requires that an inventory of cultural sites be conducted prior to any federal undertaking and that sites that are eligible for listing on the Register of Historic Places be identified.

2. Detailed analysis of sites known to be in the vicinity of construction activities and efforts to mitigate impacts to those sites is the second category of the cultural resources program. The Office has developed a six phase approach to the effect mitigation process. This approach is outlined in a programmatic agreement covering all New Lands development and agreed upon by the National Historic Advisory Council, the Arizona State Historic Preservation Office, the Navajo Historic Preservation Office, the Indian Health Service, the Bureau of Indian Affairs, the Hopi Tribe, the Zuni Tribe and the Office.

   Also included in this category of cultural resource protection is the overall New Lands recording and management of cultural sites including special studies of the known cultural sites of major significance.

3. The storage of cultural artifacts removed from the New Lands is the third area of expenditure for the cultural resource program. When it is determined that the most appropriate way of protecting cultural artifacts is to remove them from the lands they must be stored in an acceptable facility. Specifications for storage of cultural artifacts are strictly regulated by federal regulations. The Museum of Northern Arizona has been identified by the Office as the most appropriate organization with which to enter a curation agreement.

4. Assessment and mitigation of effects to cultural resources that are encountered during construction through unanticipated discoveries. On occasion, despite extensive surface evaluation, cultural sites are encountered during construction activities. When this occurs it is necessary to conduct evaluations of those sites and determine what level of data recovery is necessary. The level of site mitigation is dependent of the nature of the unanticipated discovery. Currently, mitigation work has been budgeted for several unanticipated discoveries already encountered and it is necessary to include a budget amount for future discoveries.

The following budget has been coded to reflect which of the four categories delineated above that they apply to:

ARCHAEOLOGY BUDGET
1990 NEW LANDS

Project	Category	Cost Estimate
HOUSING AND INFRASTRUCTURE		
-Navajo Springs Housing Cluster Phase II/III	2	$ 50,000
-Chambers Housing Cluster Phase II/III	2	50,000
-Little Silversmith Housing Cluster Expansion Phases I/II/III	2	100,000
-Parker Draw Housing Cluster Expansion Phases I/II/III	2	100,000
-Hogan Well Housing Cluster Phases I/II/III	2	100,000
-Kelsey Housing Cluster Phase I	2	50,000
-Padres Mesa Housing Cluster Survey	1	20,000
-Navajo Springs Housing Cluster Expansion Survey	1	20,000
-Rim Housing Cluster Expansion Survey	1	20,000
-Chambers Housing Cluster Expansion Survey	1	20,000
ROAD DEVELOPMENT		

-Navajo Route 2015 Unanticipated Discovery	4	67,000
-Navajo Route 2007 Unanticipated Discovery	4	6,000
-Navajo Route 2030 Phase I	2	30,000
-Navajo Route 2002 Phase I	2	30,000
-Navajo Route 2007 Extension Phases I/II/III/IV/V	2	450,000
-Navajo Route 2025	1 & 2	30,000
OTHER DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS		
-Industrial/Commercial Sites Survey	1	50,000
-Range Improvements Survey	1	150,000
-Recreational Grounds Survey	1	20,000
-Historic Land Use Study	2	50,000
-Remote Sensing Feasibility Study	2	8,000
-Small Projects and Unanticipated Discoveries	4	50,000
-Curation Agreement	3	400,000
	SUB-TOTAL	$1,871,000

ARCHAEOLOGY BUDGET
1991 NEW LANDS

Project	Category	Cost Estimate
HOUSING AND INFRASTRUCTURE		
-Barth Lake Housing Cluster Phases I/II/III	2	$ 100,000
-North Well Housing Cluster Phases I/II/III	2	100,000
-Hardscrabble Housing Cluster Phases I/II/III	2	100,000
-Padres Mesa Housing Cluster Phase I	2	50,000
-Rural Community Expansion Phase I/II/III	2	100,000
-Kelsey Housing Cluster Phases II/III	2	50,000
-Interstate Housing Cluster Phase I	2	50,000
-Dead Wash Housing Cluster Phase I	2	50,000
ROAD DEVELOPMENT		

-Barth Lake Access Survey and Phase I	1 & 2	30,000
-Hardscrabble Access Survey and Phase I	1 & 2	30,000
-Kelsey Access Survey and Phase I	1 & 2	30,000
-North Well Access Survey and Phase I	1 & 2	30,000
-Padres Mesa Access Survey and Phase I	1 & 2	30,000
OTHER DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS		
-Small Projects and Unanticipated Discoveries	4	50,000
	SUB-TOTAL $	800,000

Infrastructure Cost

Funding to continue the provision of infrastructure costs in addition to basic benefits. Requested funds would support the related costs of approximately 270 moves.

SUB-TOTAL $ 2,016,000

Training Program

The Congress provided the Office with additional discretionary funding during FY 1989 to underwrite the expense of an economic development project on the New Lands which would provide basic construction trades training to our relocatees in order to maximize their employability with local contractors during the completion of the relocation program. The original funding provided for the construction of a training facility as well as the actual programmatic expenses of training the relocatees and providing a subsistence stipend during the training period. In order to continue this program during FY 1991, the Office would require the amount indicated. SUB-TOTAL $ 250,000

Post Move Counseling Contracts

The Committees provided funds for local post move contracts during FY 1989, along with instructions to continue such services in future years. The Office has contracts

with NACOG, Winslow Community Counseling Center, and the Navajo Tribe to provide these ancillary services. Approximately $300,000 per year is required to continue these services.	SUB-TOTAL $ 300,000

On-Reservation Support Projects

For continuation of the Hopi Tribal agreement for property disposal, counseling, and planning activities.	SUB-TOTAL $ 75,000

TOTAL REQUEST $5,312,000

JUSTIFICATION

Discretionary Funds Management (Decrease of $7,959,000 from Base)

Explanation
The decrease is accounted for primarily by the absence of New Lands road construction funding.

Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation

Salaries and Expenses

Program and Performance

The Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation was established by Public Law 93-531 to plan and conduct relocation activities associated with the settlement of a land dispute between the two tribes. The three-member Commission which was appointed on July 1975, submitted a plan for such relocation to the Congress and is continuing to conduct relocation activities.

Amending legislation, P.L. 96-305, authorized the Office to grant Life Estates to eligible applicants, conduct a program of Discretionary Funding, and engage in land evaluation/analysis for possible acquisition as relocation sites, and provide for its own administrative, fiscal and housekeeping services.

Amending legislation, P.L. 100-666 reorganized the Commission to replace the current Board of three Commissioners, appointed by the Secretary of Interior, with a single Commissioner to be appointed by the President of the United States with the advice and consent of the United States Senate. Additionally, P.L. 100-666 addressed several other policy concepts regarding the allowability of some improvement to properties in the District Six area, clarified the authority of the Commissioner for final planning authority on the New Lands, addressed certain legal expenditures for tribal expenses related to the relocation dispute, and other miscellaneous housekeeping issues. P.L. 100-666 also increased the Office's annual housing authority from $15,000,000 to $30,000,000, increased the total amount of money available for incentive payments to $13,500,000 and provided an additional authority for the expenditure of Discretionary Funds which requires no match from outside sources when such expenditures are directly in the interest of the relocatee and in support of provision of infrastructure and related facilities to relocatees.

NAVAJO AND HOPI INDIAN RELOCATION COMMISSION

Federal Funds

General and special funds:

SALARIES AND EXPENSES

For necessary expenses of the Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation as authorized by Public Law 93-531. [36,818,000] $31,449,000 for operating expenses of the Office. (Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, Public Law 101-121)

Program and Financing (in thousands of dollars)

Identification Code 48-1100-0-1-806	1989 Actual	1990 Est.	1991 Est.
Program by activities:			
Operation of office	10,242	9,255	10,392
Assistance payments (bonus)	921	1,518	527
Relocation payments (housing)	15,716	18,470	21,100
Discretionary fund payments	6,942	6,165	5,312
Total obligations	33,821	35,408	37,331
Financing:			
Recovery of prior year obligations	-910		
Unobligated balance available, start of year	-2,675	-10,048	-11,062
Unobligated balance transfered	-3,782		
Unobligated balance available, end of year	10,048	11,062	5,180
Budget authority	36,502	36,422	31,449
Appropriation	27,373	36,818	31,449
Recesion		-396	
Transfer from other accounts	9,129		
Appropriation (adjusted)	36,502	36,422	31,449
Relation of obligations to outlays:			
Obligations incurred, net	33,821	35,408	37,331
Obligated balance, start of year	6,965	10,713	12,248
Obligated balance, end of year	-10,713	-12,248	-14,947
Adjustment in unexpired accounts	-910		
Outlays	29,164	33,873	34,632

NAVAJO AND HOPI INDIAN RELOCATION COMMISSION

SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Identification Code 48-1100-0-1-806	1989 Actual	1990 Est.	1991 Est.
Personnel compensation:			
11.1 Full-time permanent	2,552	2,734	2,947
11.3 Other than full-time permanent			
11.8 Special personal service payments			
Total personnel compensation	2,552	2,734	2,947
12.1 Personnel benefits: civilian	403	356	402
13.0 Benefits for former personnel			
21.0 Travel and transportation of persons	307	320	340
22.0 Transportation of things		5	5
23.2 Rental payments to others	217	200	240
23.3 Communications, utilities, and misc charges	146	230	235
24.0 Printing and reproduction	39	50	50
25.0 Other services	6,232	2,650	2,695
26.0 Supplies and materials	253	2,660	3,378
31.0 Equipment	93	50	100
32.0 Lands and structures	15,716	18,470	21,100
41.0 Grants, subsidies, and contributions	7,863	7,683	5,839
99.9 Total Obligations	33,821	35,408	37,331

Personnel Summary

	1989	1990	1991
Total number of full-time permanent positions	103	103	95
Total compensable workyears: Full-time equivalent employment	103	103	95

*See FTE Explanation, page 8.

Exhibit A

FY 1991 STAFF REQUIREMENTS

POSITION	NHIRC GRADE	ANNUAL SALARY	% FTE	COST
OFFICE OF THE COMMISSIONERS				
Commissioner	SES	82,512	1	82,512
OFFICE OF THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR				
Executive Director	31	81,511	1	81,511
Executive Secretary	14	32,341	1	32,341
Attorney	27	78,297	1	78,297
Personnel Officer	21	48,604	1	48,604
Research/Publication Officer	21	59,653	1	59,653
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT				
Director	28	76,888	1	76,888
Management Analyst	19	45,854	1	45,854
Financial Officer	19	42,014	1	42,014
Accountant	10	22,550	1	22,550
Accounting Technician	11	26,515	1	26,515
Financial Clerk	7	21,610	1	21,610
Admin Coordinator	19	39,593	1	39,593
Secretary	10	22,767	1	22,767
Secretary	7	23,825	1	23,825
Clerk-Typist	5	16,954	1	16,954
Receptionist/Typist	5	16,722	1	16,722
Data Clerk	3	14,948	1	14,948
Clerk	7	32,655	1	32,655
Admin Contract Spec	19	45,854	1	45,854
Proc/Prop Mgt Spec	17	31,965	1	31,965
Supply Technician	9	23,825	1	23,825
Land Use Manager	23	46,762	1	46,762
Lands Develop Spec	19	33,862	1	33,862
Range Technician	11	21,665	1	21,665
Info/Reception Asst	9	19,443	1	19,443
Archeologist	19	39,837	1	39,837
Field Archaeologist	15	29,892	1	29,892
ADP Systems Supv	23	59,244	1	59,244
Computer Op/Prog Train	7	17,635	1	17,635
Computer Programmer	17	30,414	1	30,414
Computer Prog/Analyst	19	32,876	1	32,876
OFFICE OF OPERATIONS				

Exhibit A (cont.)

Director	28	57,407	1	57,407
Elig/Appeals Supv	19	45,854	1	45,854
Elig/Appeals Supv	16	37,853	1	37,853
Housing Supervisor	19	48,694	1	48,694
Housing Acquis Spec	15	35,711	1	35,711
Housing Acquis Spec	15	29,141	1	29,141
Housing Acquis Spec	15	32,797	1	32,797
Housing Acquis Spec	15	27,063	1	27,063
Housing Acquis Spec	15	29,892	1	29,892
Housing Acquis Spec	15	29,892	1	29,892
Housing Acquis Spec	15	29,892	1	29,892
Clerk-Stenographer	7	22,850	1	22,850
Secretary	9	23,575	1	23,575
Clerk-Stenographer	7	19,479	1	19,479
Inspect/Compl Supv	20	48,665	1	48,665
Supv Construction Insp	17	36,399	1	36,399
Construction Inspector	15	26,674	1	26,674
Construction Inspector	15	26,304	1	26,304
Construction Inspector	15	26,099	1	26,099
Site Selection Tech	15	30,162	1	30,162
Engineering Tech	15	25,158	1	25,158
Clerk-Typist	7	17,464	1	17,464
Clerk-Stenographer	7	17,988	1	17,988
Home Maintenance Train Spec	13	38,708	1	38,708
Warranty Officer	17	30,258	1	30,258
Engineering Tech	15	25,509	1	25,509
Counseling Supervisor	20	40,998	1	40,998
Counseling Specialist	15	25,509	1	25,509
Counseling Specialist	15	30,458	1	30,458
Counseling Specialist	15	26,542	1	26,542
Counseling Specialist	15	33,277	1	33,277
Counseling Specialist	15	27,068	1	27,068
Counseling Specialist	15	28,293	1	28,293
Counseling Specialist	15	27,531	1	27,531
Counseling Specialist	15	33,779	1	33,779
Counseling Specialist	15	29,892	1	29,892
Counseling Specialist	15	29,892	1	29,892
Secretary	8	23,144	1	23,144
Secretary	7	18,528	1	18,528
Clerk-Stenographer	7	19,479	1	19,479
*+Supv Range Conservationist	22	39,822	1	39,822
*+Range Conservationist	19	37,346	1	37,346
*+Range Conservationist	19	35,316	1	35,316
*+Range Technician	11	22,680	1	22,680
*+Range Technician	11	24,000	1	24,000
*+Range Technician	11	25,574	1	25,754
+Laborer Leader	WL-2	19,272	1	19,272

Exhibit A (cont.)

+Laborer Leader	WL-2	19,272	1	19,272
+Laborer Leader	WL-2	19,272	1	19,272
+Laborer Leader	WL-2	19,272	1	19,272
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
+Laborer	WG-2	17,536	1	17,536
			23	

*+ Following completion of Range Improvement Program, the agency may request an increase in FTE, for the professional positions,(FY 1992 or 1993 through the life of the agency) for continuing Range Management on the Trust Lands.

+ Range improvement positions which will no longer be needed at the conclusion of the range improvement construction project.

INSTITUTE OF AMERICAN INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE CULTURE AND ARTS DEVELOPMENT

BUDGET ESTIMATE, F.Y. 1991

INSTITUTE OF AMERICAN INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE CULTURE AND ARTS DEVELOPMENT

Budget, Fiscal Year 1991

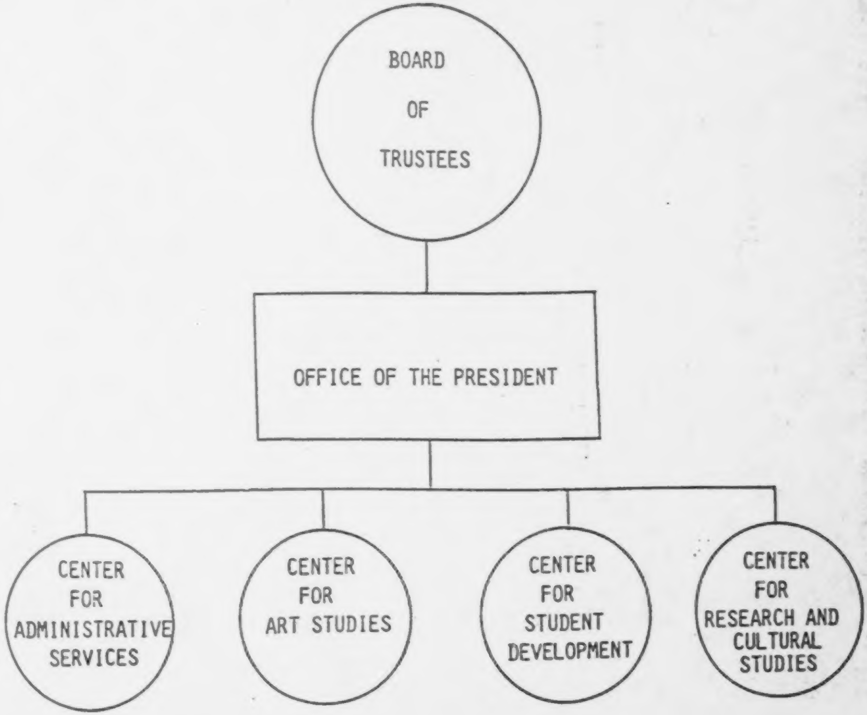
Table of Contents

Item	Page Number
Organization Chart	1
General Statement	2
Summary Table	3
Appropriation: Operation of the Institute	
Justification of program and performance:	
Administration of the Institute:	
Board of Trustees	4
Office of the President	5
General Administration	6
Center for Art Studies:	
Instructional Services	7
Center for Student Development:	
Student Services	8
Center for Research and Cultural Studies:	
Learning Resource Center, Library, Cultural Studies and Communication Graphic Arts	10
Museum:	
Museum	11
Facilities:	
Operation and Maintenance	12
Appropriation: Contribution to the Endowment Fund	
Justification of program and performance:	
Endowment Fund	14

INSTITUTE OF AMERICAN INDIAN ARTS

ORGANIZATION CHART

INSTITUTE OF AMERICAN INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE
CULTURE AND ARTS DEVEOPMENT


BOARD OF TRUSTEES
OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT
CENTER FOR ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
CENTER FOR ART STUDIES
CENTER FOR STUDENT DEVELOPMENT
CENTER FOR RESEARCH AND CULTURAL STUDIES

INSTITUTE OF AMERICAN INDIAN ARTS

GENERAL STATEMENT

The Institute of American Indian and Alaska Native Culture and Arts Development (IAIA) was established by Public Law 99-498, as amended by Public Law 100-153 and 100-297. The exciting challenge began in June 1988 with the official separation of IAIA from the Bureau of Indian Affairs. That separation was completed in June 1989. The Institute operates under the direction and control of a Presidentially appointed Board of Trustees confirmed by the Senate, a majority of whom are American Indian.

The Institute, cradled in the Sangre de Cristo Mountains of Northern New Mexico is the only educational institution devoted to the study of American Indian and Alaska Native Arts and Cultures. While serving students nationally, the Institutes Associates of Fine Arts academic curriculum prepares students for advanced degrees. It is fully accredited by the North Central Association of Colleges and Schools and the National Association of Schools of Art and Design.

The Institute's work and the appreciation for the rich heritage of Native Americans has propelled IAIA into the international arts arena. The Institute seeks to broaden public exposure to both traditional and contemporary American Indian and Alaska Native artistic and cultural expressions. This exposure will continue to illustrate the leadership quality of all the Institute's endeavors including the Center for Research and Cultural Exchange, the IAIA Museum, the Center for Arts Study and the Center for Student Development.

The Fiscal Year 1991 budget request seeks Federal support: for an increase in student enrollment; to more firmly establish a solid academic program at the Institute; to start up the Learning Resource Center; to make the transition to the new Museum; to provide much needed equipment replacement and facilities improvements; to provide self insurance funds within the supply budgets; to provide required salary support for employees; to establish the use and maintenance of computers and computer system; to launch a Capital Campaign to finance the building of a new campus; to provide for temporary studio space until the new campus is built; to create a Development Office to promote private giving to the Institute; to build an Endowment fund to increase the long term fiscal stability of the Institute; and to lay the groundwork to finance the implementation of the Institute's mandated mission.

SUMMARY TABLE

		FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	(+)/(-) From 1990
Appropriation:				
Federal Funds:				
Operation of the Institute:				
Board of Trustees	($)	163,100	186,500	+ 23,400
Office of the President		388,750	465,250	+ 76,500
General Administration		652,440	1,004,790	+ 352,350
Facilities		724,325	1,107,325	+ 383,000
Art Studies		566,330	860,730	+ 294,400
Student Development		897,110	1,039,210	+ 142,100
Research & Cultural Exchange		475,925	608,625	+ 132,700
Museum		232,020	502,020	+ 270,000
Total Operations......		4,100,000	5,774,450	+1,674,450
Contribution to the Endowment Fund		250,000	350,000	+ 100,000
Total, Appropriations requested		4,350,000	6,124,450	+1,774,450

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Administration of the Institute
Subactivity: Board of Trustees

		FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1990
Office of the Chairman	($)	48,930	53,930	+ 5,000
Board of Trustees		114,170	132,570	+ 18,400
Total Requirements	($)	163,100	186,500	+ 23,400

A. Office of the Chairman

Base Program ($48,930): The Chairman of the Board of Trustees, in addition to assuring the carrying out of Board duties and responsibilities, is involved on a daily basis in providing guidance to the President of the Institute on matters of transition and governance. The Chairman also is directly involved in planning and implementing development programs. Funds for the Office of the Chairman provide salary costs for clerical support, supplies, materials, equipment and travel costs of the Chairman for meetings outside of the regularly scheduled Board meetings primarily concerning institutional development.

B. Board of Trustees

Base Program ($114,170): The Board of Trustees is composed of 13 voting members and six non-voting members. The voting members are appointed by the President of the United States, with the advice and consent of the United States Senate. The non-voting members include two members of the United States Senate and two members of the House of Representatives, the President of the Institute and the President of the student body of the Institute.

The Board is charged with the formulating and approval of policies for the Institute, the establishment of management goals and objectives, the budget, the development of procedures and organizational structures which will provide a mechanism for the implementation of policies, goals and objectives, other matters of governance and development programs. Funds for the Board of Trustees provide travel expenses per diem while on travel status, legislatively mandated stipend for actual days of Board meetings, transcription of the minutes of the meeting and incidental expenses of Board meetings.

Increase from FY 1990:

Office of the Chairman (+ $5,000): The additional funds reflect increase travel and associated expenses related to Chairman's responsibilities concerning building, development and other Board Committee activities.

Board of Trustees (+ $18,400): The increase is necessary to fully fund additional meetings of the Development, Academic Affairs, and Administrative Planning and Personnel Committees.

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Administration of the Institute
Subactivity: Office of the President

	FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1990
President of the Institute ($)	286,375	304,625	+18,250
Development Office	102,375	160,625	58,250
Total Requirements ($)	388,750	465,250	76,500

A. President of the Institute

Base Program ($286,375): The President of the Institute is appointed by the Board of Trustees and serves as the chief executive officer of the Institute. The President is responsible for carrying out the policies developed by the Board and overseeing the daily operations of the Institute. Funds identified support the full-time salary of the President, an assistant, a secretary, a public affairs office, supplies, materials, and travel costs.

B. Development Office

Base Program ($102,375): To meet the objectives foreseen in the authorizing legislation of the emergence of a growing Institute, it is essential that funds outside the Federal Government be identified in order to obtain the necessary non-Federal matching funds for the Endowment program and to support special educational and museum centered activities. The funds in these areas will support the salary costs of a developmental officer, clerical support, supplies, materials, and travel.

Increase from FY 1990:

President of the Institute (+18,250): The requested fund will support proposed adjustments in salaries and benefits ($10,000), supplies/materials ($3,000) and expected increase in the FICA tax ($1,000). Since the Institute has employed a full-time president an increase in funds to support travel costs is also requested ($4,250).

Development Officer (+58,250): The requested increase in funding will be used to support the expected increase in salary and benefits of a full time development officer and full-time secretary ($16,750) and will also support the cost of publishing and distributing promotional brochures and travel costs in meeting with prospective donors. ($11,500). An FTE in the Development office is needed to cope with increased work load ($30,000).

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: **Center for Administrative Services**
Subactivity: **General Administration**

		FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1990
Administrative Services	($)	487,440	839,790	+352,350
Financial Services		40,000	40,000	-0-
Legal Services		125,000	125,000	-0-
Total Requirements	($)	652,440	1,004,790	+352,350

A. Administrative Services

Base Program ($487,440): The Office of Administrative Services is responsible for directing, planning, evaluating and maintaining comprehensive programs in the areas of personnel management, property management, procurement, warehousing, facilities management, accounting and general administrative support. Funding is to be used for salary costs, supplies, telecommunication services, motor vehicle leases, contract services and travel expenses.

B. Financial Services

Base Program ($40,000): The Institute has continued its contractual arrangements with the private sector to provide accounting, payroll and audit services. The contractors also manage money from the Student Bank, sales from the museum shop, and various grants we receive.

C. Legal Services

Base Program ($125,000): As an independent corporation, the Board of Trustees may sue and be sued; enter into contractual arrangements; and will be subject to various laws governing personnel matters and workers compensation. Funding will be used to retain legal counsel to advise the Board and the President of the Institute and to represent the Institute when required.

Increase from FY 1990:

Administrative Services (+352,350): The Institute is in the process of offering fringe benefits to its employees such as medical, dental and life insurance, increased funding will be required ($40,000) to cover these costs; also, funds ($95,000) are requested for pension costs. IAIA is also in a position where it is required to reimburse the Bureau of Indian Affairs for severance payments to former BIA employees at IAIA who chose to accept severance instead of retaining a position with the Institute on June 30, 1989 ($103,000). The Institute is planning to bring accounting services in-house, this will require the use of computer and computer software ($74,350) and extra staff ($30,000). An upgrade of the telephone system ($10,000) is also necessary.

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity:	Center for Art Studies
Subactivity:	Art Studies

		SY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1989
Instructional Services	($)	566,330	860,730	+294,400

Base Program ($566,330): Art Studies services to the students are provided through the Departments of Two-Dimensional Art, Three-Dimensional Art, Performing Arts, Creative Writing, Museum Studies, Art Foundations, and Arts Management. The Institute offers two year programs leading to Associate of Fine Arts degrees.

Eligible American Indian and Alaska Native students are assisted with direct scholarship for tuition. Non-eligible students pay per credit hour. IAIA students also receive other support - 30% receive Pell Grants, 30% tribal scholarships, 8% receive GSL and 3% receive college work study.

Increases from FY 1990:

Art Studies (+ $294,440): An increase ($173,000) to fund the additional positions which will be required for the 1990-91 school year. The Institute also invites guest speakers to give master classes ($20,000). Funding will also be required to provide Faculty in-service training ($15,000) and travel ($2,500). Supplies, material and equipment costs such as art supplies are also expected in increase. IAIA has reestablished its performing arts department resulting in substantial supply and equipment needs, especially in the music section. In addition the serious underfunding of equipment in past years under the BIA, must begin to be addressed. Supplies and equipment include such necessary items as instructional slides, slide cabinets, floor looms, slab rollers and a lithopress among others ($75,000). Additional funds are also requested for the creative writing department programs such as the extended artist-in-residence and matching funds for the NAROPA poetry award ($8,900).

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Center for Student Development
Subactivity: Student Services

		FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1989
Office of the Dean	($)	141,500	162,500	+ 21,000
Office of Admissions		277,610	303,610	+ 26,000
Housing and Counseling		288,000	317,100	+ 29,100
Food Services		190,000	256,000	+ 66,000
Total Requirements	($)	897,110	1,039,210	+142,100

A. Office of the Dean

Base Program ($141,500): The Dean of Students heads the Office of Student Services and is responsible for administering admissions and records, counseling and guidance, extra curricular activities, financial aid services, placement, housing, and alumni services. Funds for the office will be utilized for salaries, clerical support, supplies, materials and travel costs.

B. Office of Admissions

Base Program ($277,610): Under the direction of the Dean of Students and subject to the policies of the Board of Trustees, the Office of Admissions is responsible for student recruitment and assisting eligible students in obtaining financial aid to meet the costs of education, room and board. Funds will be used for salaries, supplies, equipment and travel costs incurred in the recruitment of students nation-wide including Alaska.

C. Housing and Counseling

Base Program ($288,000): Staff in Housing and Counseling are responsible for developing dormitory policies; assisting students in obtaining off-campus housing; providing educational and personal guidance and counseling. Funds in this category also support the costs of staffing the dormitories and student activities.

D. Food Services

Base Program ($190,000): The Institute has a contract with the College of Santa Fe to provide meals for student living in the dormitories and also for those living off campus.

Increase from FY 1990:

Office of the Dean (+21,000): IAIA has experienced an increase in student enrollment leading to additional staff salaries and benefits. Funding will also be used for adjustments in supplies, materials, and increased travel expenses due to inflation.

Office of Admissions (+26,000): Increased funding will be used for recruitment purposes ($11,000), keeping sufficient student records ($4,000), to cover costs of a revision of the catalog ($5,000), and IAIA's contribution to Federal College Work Study Program ($6,000).

Housing and Counseling (+29,100): Housing and Counseling Office will be using funding to purchase new desks and mattresses ($22,000), for staff training ($4,600) and ($2,500) for student activities in order to purchase equipment for recreational use needed because College of Santa Fe closed its gym.

Food Services (+66,000): Funding will be used to cover inflationary costs of the program. Also to purchase meals for additional students who receive board scholarships. IAIA anticipates additional students in FY '91 due to the trend of increased enrollment.

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Center for Research and Cultural Exchange
Subactivity: Learning Resource Center, Library, Cultural Studies and Communication Graphics Arts

		FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1990
Center for Research and Cultural Exchange	($)	475,925	608,625	+132,700

Base Program ($475,925): The Center for Research and Cultural Exchange programs provide for the cultural and educational components of the Institute. In addition to tribal, national and international outreach, this Center includes most of the non-studio courses at the College. Cultural Studies includes ethnohistory, art history, literature, and a broad range of academic topics. The Learning Resource Center and the Library for the College are also within this Center. Funds in this office support salaries and expenses of staff and faculty, program development, and student exchange programs.

Increase from FY 1990:

A departmental head and an ethno-scientist professor need to be hired for the area of Cultural Studies ($66,000). Funding will support anticipated costs for curriculum and material development ($6,000), supplies, material and equipment ($16,200) and anticipated travel and training costs for the addition of two full-time equivalent positions in the area of Cultural Studies ($1,000). The Learning Resource Center (LRC) will start up in this fiscal year. The LRC teaches college survival skills and assists students with special learning needs. Operations and start up for new courses ($20,000), to develop a Learning Resource Center related professional library ($600). In Communication Arts component to enhance availability of video equipment and supplies for student use ($7,000) and for equipment and supplies in the area of Graphic Arts ($12,700). To cover anticipated expenses related to training and development needs identified for the Curriculum Committee ($3,200).

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity:	Museum
Subactivity:	Museum

		FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1990
Museum	($)	232,020	502,020	+ 270,000

Base Program ($232,020): The Museum is an educational function of the college which provides opportunities for students, faculty and the public to increase their understanding and appreciation for Native American arts and culture. Students obtain first-hand experience in museum operations and sales, in exhibitions, and in conservation. In-service training opportunities are available to the Institute's faculty. Through local and traveling exhibitions and lecture series, opportunities are available to members of the public to expand their appreciation of both traditional and modern Indian art. Funds will also support salaries and expenses of the Director of the Museum and its staff.

Increase from FY 1990: An increase of ($57,000) is needed to fund the additional staff positions of exhibit director and museum conservator. Materials such as cabinets and shelves will be needed to help maintain the Museum's collections ($20,000). Magnifying machines are needed for the classrooms ($1,800), and guest speakers are invited to make presentations to the students ($1,000). The Museum also acquires art work for the permanent collection, receives appraisal service and frequently updates display equipment ($20,000). Equipment is needed to record the collection ($10,600). Funding is requested for matching funds ($60,800) for various museum grants, such as reinstallation of the Permanent Collection. Funds are requested to set up exhibitions at the Museum ($19,200). Exhibition construction contract to hold major exhibitions and to fund in-house and contract costs ($79,600).

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Facilities
Subactivity:

		FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1990
Facilities Lease	($)	660,000	700,000	+ 40,000
Museum Operation and Maintenance		64,325	174,325	+ 110,000
College of Santa Fe Operations & Maintenance			20,000	+ 20,000
Facilities Purchase			104,500	104,500
Project Management			108,500	108,500
Total Requirements	($)	724,325	1,107,325	383,000

A. Facilities Lease

Base Program ($660,000): The Institute leases classroom, dormitory, and office space from the College of Santa Fe (CSF). CSF services provided under the lease include routine maintenance and janitorial services.

B. Operation & Maintenance

Base Program ($64,325): The Institute operates a museum in a converted bathhouse on the old campus. These funds allow for the operation and maintenance of this facility to store and display the museum's collection. It is anticipated that by late summer 1992 this facility will be closed down.

Increase from FY 1990:

Facilities Lease (+ $40,000): The contract with the College of Santa Fe is renewed each year. The increase represents estimated additional costs of FY 1991.

Facilities Purchase ($104,500): IAIA will be required to purchase two portable buildings to provide additional classroom space that is unavailable for lease from CSF.

Museum Operation & Maintenance (+ $110,000): The Institute has received from Congress and the General Services Administration space to house the Museum, instructional space, and office space and costs for renovations. In the new Museum, the Institute will be responsible for funding security and operational costs of the facility. Security for the building is estimated at ($60,000) annually. Regular operations and maintenance will cost ($50,000) annually.

College of Santa Fe Operations & Maintenance (+ $20,000): In the past funds have not been budgeted for maintenance and as a result, the buildings are in a serious state of disrepair. Non-routine building maintenance and remodeling is needed for the expanded student enrollment. Routine maintenance is covered in the College of Santa Fe lease.

Project Management ($108,500): The project manager will be overseeing the design and building of the new IAIA campus. Funding is necessary for a construction and planning assistant ($32,000), office supplies and equipment ($5,200), project vehicle ($15,000), travel ($6,300) and contracted services including architectural and engineering ($50,000).

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Contribution to the Endowment Fund
Subactivity:

		FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase From 1990
Endowment Fund	($)	250,000	350,000	+ 100,000

Base Program ($250,000): A trust fund has been established to provide endowment to defray expenses associated with the operation of the Institute. The long-range goal of the Institute is to lessen the amount of Federal funding required as a percentage of the total cost of operation of the Institute. The increased leverage provided by the Endowment matching program to the subsequent earnings derived there will assist the Institute in meeting this objective.

The Federal contribution is available only upon certification to the Secretary of Treasury, that an equal amount of non-Federal funds have been committed to the trust fund.

Increase from FY 1990:

An increase of $100,000 is requested, which will bring the payment to the Endowment Fund to the level of $350,000.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

Budget Justifications for Fiscal Year 1991

Submitted to the Committees on Appropriations

Congress of the United States

January 1990

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

BOARD OF REGENTS

Under Separate Boards of Trustees

JOHN F. KENNEDY CENTER
FOR THE PERFORMING ARTS

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART

WOODROW WILSON
INTERNATIONAL CENTER
FOR SCHOLARS

Secretariat•

Office of Inspector General

THE SECRETARY•

UNDER SECRETARY•

BOARDS AND COMMISSIONS

- Advisory Council on Education
- Archives of American Art Board of Trustees
- Arthur M. Sackler Gallery Visiting Committee
- Cooper-Hewitt, National Museum of Design Advisory Board
- Cultural Education Committee
- Folklife Advisory Council
- Freer Gallery of Art Visiting Committee
- Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden Board of Trustees
- Horticultural Advisory Committee
- Joint Sponsoring Committee for the Papers of Joseph Henry
- National Air and Space Museum Advisory Board
- National Board of the Smithsonian Associates
- National Museum of African Art Commission
- National Museum of American Art Commission
- National Portrait Gallery Commission
- National Science Resources Center Advisory Board
- Smithsonian Council
- Women's Committee of the Smithsonian Associates

TREASURER•

- Business Management Office
  - Concessions
  - Mail Order Division
  - Office of Product Licensing
  - Smithsonian Museum Shops
- Office of Accounting and Financial Services
- Office of Financial Management and Planning
- Office of Risk Management
- Office of Sponsored Projects

GENERAL COUNSEL•

Assistant Secretary
for
INSTITUTIONAL INITIATIVES•

Assistant Secretary
for
ADMINISTRATION•

- Management Analysis Office
- Office of Equal Opportunity
- Office of Facilities Services
  - Office of Architectural History and Historic Preservation
  - Office of Design and Construction
  - Office of Environmental Management and Safety
  - Office of Plant Services
  - Office of Protection Services
- Office of Information Resource Management
- Office of Personnel Administration
- Office of Planning and Budget
- Office of Printing and Photographic Services
- Office of Procurement and Property Management
- Travel Services Office

Assistant Secretary
for
RESEARCH•

- International Environmental Science Program
- Joseph Henry Papers
- National Zoological Park••
- Office of American Studies
- Office of Fellowships and Grants
- Office of Quincentenary Programs
- Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory
- Smithsonian Environmental Research Center
- Smithsonian Institution Archives
- Smithsonian Institution Libraries
- Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute

Assistant Secretary
for
MUSEUMS•

- Anacostia Museum••
- Archives of American Art••
- Arthur M. Sackler Gallery and Freer Gallery of Art••
- Conservation Analytical Laboratory••
- Cooper-Hewitt, National Museum of Design••
- Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden••
- International Gallery
- National Air and Space Museum••
- National Museum of African Art••
- National Museum of American Art••
  - Renwick Gallery••
- National Museum of American History••
- National Museum of Natural History/ National Museum of Man••
  - Museum Support Center••
- National Portrait Gallery••
- Office of Exhibits Central
- Office of Horticulture
- Office of Museum Programs
- Office of the Registrar
- Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service

Assistant Secretary
for
PUBLIC SERVICE•

- National Science Resources Center
- Office of Wider Audience Development
- Office of Conference Services
- Office of Elementary and Secondary Education
- Office of Folklife Programs
- Office of Interdisciplinary Studies
- Office of Public Affairs
- Office of Telecommunications
- Smithsonian Institution Press
  - *Smithsonian Magazine*
  - *Air and Space Magazine*
- Visitor Information and Associates' Reception Center

Assistant Secretary
for
EXTERNAL AFFAIRS•

- Office of Membership and Development•
  - Smithsonian National Associate Program
- Office of Congressional Liaison•
- Office of International Relations
- Office of Special Events
- Smithsonian Resident Associate Program

December 1989

• Secretary's Management Committee
•• The assistant secretaries for research and museums collaborate in the oversight of scholarly and presentational activities in these bureaus and offices

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

FISCAL YEAR 1991 ESTIMATES OF APPROPRIATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

ORGANIZATION OF THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

INTRODUCTION 1

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING 14

SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Summary Tables. 17

Special Employment Initiatives 21

Uncontrollable Increases. 22

Research

Office of the Assistant Secretary. 31
Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory. 36
Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute. 47
Smithsonian Environmental Research Center. 54
National Zoological Park 58
Smithsonian Institution Archives 70
Smithsonian Institution Libraries. 72
International Environmental Science Program. 78
Major Scientific Instrumentation 85

Museums

Office of the Assistant Secretary. 93
National Museum of Natural History/Museum of Man 98
National Air and Space Museum. 111
National Museum of American History. 121
National Museum of the American Indian 128
National Museum of American Art. 136
National Portrait Gallery. 144
Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden. 153
Arthur M. Sackler Gallery/Freer Gallery of Art 157
Archives of American Art 165
Cooper-Hewitt Museum 169
National Museum of African Art 175
Anacostia Museum 180
Conservation Analytical Laboratory 186
Office of Exhibits Central 191
Smithsonian Traveling Exhibition Service 194
Museum Support Center. 199

Page

Public Service

Office of the Assistant Secretary 211
Smithsonian Institution Press 218
Office of Folklife Programs 223
Academic and Educational Programs 228

International Activities 235

Administration 243

Facilities Services

Office of Design and Construction 257
Office of Protection Services 260

Office of Plant Services 265

FACILITIES PLANNING, RENOVATION, RESTORATION, AND CONSTRUCTION

Construction and Improvements, National Zoological Park 269

Repair and Restoration of Building 273
--Major Capital Renewal 274
--Repairs, Restoration and Code Compliance 277
--Detail of FY 1991 Request by Building 282

Construction 287
--National Museum of the American Indian 287
--Natural History East Court Building 289
--Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute 290
--Construction Planning 292
--Minor Construction, Alterations, and Modifications 293

APPENDIX

Visitors to the Smithsonian, FY 1985 - FY 1989 299
Columbus Quincentenary 300
Special Foreign Currency Program 304
Federal Expenditures for Consulting Services 306
Smithsonian Institution Financial Summary, FY 1989 - FY 1991 307
Smithsonian Institution Authorization Citations 308
Adjustments to FY 1990 Appropriation 315

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION
FY 1991 BUDGET REQUEST
($000's)

APPROPRIATION ACCOUNT	FY 1990 APPROPRIATION	FY 1991 REQUEST
Salaries and Expenses	$225,479	$256,174
Repair and Restoration	26,468	28,656
Construction	8,320	16,189
Zoo Construction	6,423	6,671
TOTAL	$266,690[1]	$307,690

INTRODUCTION

Visitors to the Smithsonian are consistently impressed by its numerous buildings, its well-maintained gardens, its exhibit halls, its theaters and lecture halls, and its several public cafeterias, including the recently completed Wright Place in the National Air and Space Museum. The Institution's managers constantly maintain, renovate, improve, and replace these facilities to reverse the ravages of time and heavy use. Moreover, the Institution recognizes its responsibility to reinvest not only in the infrastructure of bricks and mortar but also in the infrastructure of programs conducted within these building, halls, and theaters.

FY 1991 is a year in which the Smithsonian plans to initiate a multi-year program of reinvestment in its foundations to obtain greater future yields in the increase and diffusion of knowledge among the American people and the peoples of the world.

FY 1991 BUDGET PRIORITIES

The Smithsonian Institution's request for all operating and capital budget accounts in FY 1991 totals $307.7 million, or $41.0 million over the FY 1990 base.

SALARIES AND EXPENSES:

The Salaries and Expenses (S&E) request of $256.2 million and 4,630 workyears represents an increase of $30.7 million (net of redirections) over the FY 1990 appropriation. The Institution's various program and operating infrastructure requirements were the central theme in its budget deliberations for FY 1991 and represent $7.5 million of the requested increase. The Institution has, however, selected two principal themes for new program initiatives--Global Change Research and Cultural Pluralism--as exceptions, since each responds to a clear national and public imperative. These initiatives represent $8.3 million of the request, including $6.5 million related to the National Museum of the American Indian. As part of the FY 1991 S&E budget, the Institution requests that a total of $22.9 million remain available until expended to support the instrumentation program ($5.8 million); collections acquisition ($1.2 million); Museum Support Center equipment and move ($3.3 million); exhibition reinstallation ($1.0 million); the National Museum of the American Indian and the repatriation program ($11.6 million).

---

[1] Reflects final Gramm-Rudman-Hollings reductions totaling $3.452 million.

STEWARDSHIP OF THE PUBLIC TRUST:

Review of the resource requirements necessary to carry out the public trust and to achieve the Institution's goals makes it evident to Smithsonian management that the majority of these requirements do not represent new or expanded service levels. Instead, most of these requirements constitute a growing backlog of resource deficiencies that have reached critical proportions. These deficiencies now jeopardize the Institution's ability to manage the National Collections it holds in trust for the American people and its ability to increase knowledge and understanding among future generations. During FY 1991 budget deliberations, the Institution grouped like deficiencies throughout various Smithsonian bureaus and offices into several broad categories in an effort to portray the magnitude of these deficiencies. Table 1 provides a summary of the $7.5 million and 41 workyears the Institution is requesting for various infrastructure requirements in FY 1991 and shows the remaining need the Institution intends to address in future budget years. Following the table is a category-by-category explanation of the importance of beginning to address these catch-up requirements.

TABLE 1
RESOURCES REQUESTED FOR FY 1991 FOR INFRASTRUCTURE
COMPARED TO THE UNFUNDED BACKLOG OF REQUIREMENTS

Infrastructure Bundle	FY 1991 Requested Increases FTE	FY 1991 Requested Increases $000	Unfunded Requirements Backlog FTE	Unfunded Requirements Backlog $000
Reinstallation of Permanent Exhibit Halls	1	$900	15	$5,247
Human Resource Management	9	426	9	668
Audit Deficiencies	9	260	9	418
Information Systems	9	1,228	42	6,753
Space Deficiencies	1	248	1	1,336
Major Scientific Instrumentation	12	4,400	Not Applicable	
Conservation of Library and Archival Collections	0	0	89	6,167
Library and Collections Acquisition	0	0	1	2,588
Collections Management	0	0	101	9,233
Clerical Support Staff	0	0	40	1,142
Specialized and Technical Staff and Support Costs	0	0	144	5,932
Laboratory and Scientific Equipment (Non-Computing)	0	0	2	2,506
Computers (Hardware)	0	0	3	2,250
Facilities Maintenance Deficiencies	0	0	136	8,010
Health and Safety of Staff and Visitors	0	0	18	1,305
Security of Facilities and Collections	0	0	136	6,527
Total	41	$7,462	746	$60,082

Reinstallation of Permanent Exhibit Halls - The Smithsonian receives visitors from all over the world who come to be enlightened, educated, and inspired. The Smithsonian is the "National" museum and, as such, has a public responsibility to reflect current concerns and perceptions of the Nation and the world.

After years of good service, "permanent" exhibitions become obsolete, both in their interpretive or presentation strategies and in their interest to the public. Many of the Institution's exhibitions have long outlived the timeliness and accuracy of their content, and funding for upgrading or replacement has not been available. Moreover, few Smithsonian museums have had the funding to incorporate new exhibition techniques, such as laser discs and computers, that increase understanding among a museum-going constituency increasingly experienced in these methods and expecting their use. These new technologies also enable museums to explain exhibits in less space by reducing the area devoted to lengthy descriptive labels.

In order to revitalize exhibits that are now decades old and to increase the accuracy of their content, the Smithsonian is asking for a no-year appropriation of 1 workyear and $900,000 in FY 1991. This amount will allow two museums to increase their exhibition base funding for an extended program of phased replacement of the oldest exhibit halls. These funds will support technical upgrade, intellectual refurbishment, or total replacement of existing, outdated "permanent" exhibitions within the National Museum of Natural History and the Freer Gallery of Art. This funding will guarantee that the information and presentation of Smithsonian exhibits reflect contemporary interests and achievements. In future years, the Institution will request an additional $5.2 million per annum to undertake the reinstallation of the various exhibit halls that are outdated.

Human Resource Management - In its May 1989 report, Improving Personnel Operations and Policies, the National Academy of Public Administration (NAPA) urged that, for the Smithsonian Institution's long-term organizational health, its personnel office be transformed from a "procedures and process" operation to an organization that provides leadership in managing the Institution's human resources. To that end, the Academy recommended that the Office of Personnel Administration be responsible for human resource planning and budgeting, personnel policy development and administration, management and supervisory training, oversight, and related information systems. The Academy went on to reaffirm that with these responsibilities come greater effectiveness and accountability.

To achieve prerequisite efficiency and effectiveness, the report made many recommendations pertaining to day-to-day operations. In addition, the Academy pointed out that the ratio of employees served to personnel staff was well above the ratio recommended by the President's Council on Management Improvement. This finding confirmed the general perception both within and outside the personnel office that it is understaffed.

To implement the recommendations in the NAPA and other reports on the Institution's human resource management infrastructure, the Institution seeks additional resources of 9 workyears and $426,000 in the FY 1991 budget. The Institution will seek an additional 9 workyears and $668,000 in future years to meet the remaining requirements for human resource management.

Audit Deficiencies - The Smithsonian maintains a strong program of audit and review of its financial and program activity. In addition to the triennial review of internal controls, an outside certified public accounting firm performs an annual financial audit. The Smithsonian Office of the Inspector General performs financial and program audits on a regular cycle, and the Government Accounting Office and other agencies perform special audits from time to time.

These reviews and audits identify deficiencies in internal controls, policies, and procedures; in compliance with internal and external requirements; and in meeting the needs of the public. Additionally, they identify areas where efficiency improvements are possible. By implementing the recommendations from these audits and reviews, the Smithsonian improves internal controls; limits the potential for waste, fraud, and abuse; and becomes more effective in meeting public needs and more efficient in carrying out its programs. Implementing recommendations to eliminate such deficiencies represents an investment with an expected and important return.

For FY 1991, the Institution is requesting 9 workyears and $260,000 to eliminate its most critical audit deficiencies. Bureaus have identified a remaining less critical backlog of 9 workyears and $418,000 needed annually to eliminate all known audit deficiencies.

Information Systems - In early 1989, the Office of Information Resource Management held an Institution-wide planning symposium to assess the state of Information Resource Management (IRM) in the Institution and to initiate an ongoing process for IRM planning and development. Through formal presentations, discussion groups, and critiques, users and providers of information services gained a comprehensive overview of information handling and services. In the course of discussion, attendees identified an urgent need to focus IRM efforts on the solution of the most pressing systems development and service delivery requirements, including systems for the management of museum specimens and objects and bibliographic and archival materials. It also became clear that the resources available for information-related services are inadequate to provide the up-to-date technologies, systems, and communications necessary for the conduct of Institutional activities.

In the short term, the Institution must allocate resources to meet three objectives:

-- to allow access to collections management, research, public service, and administrative information;

-- to develop, design, implement, and maintain computer systems;

-- to define how information technologies can be used to meet established goals.

The unique role of the Smithsonian in education and research is in jeopardy. Its accessibility as a resource to researchers worldwide and its public status are diminishing. Increasingly complex research, education, and business demands for information exceed the capabilities of the Institution's existing technologies. To reclaim its position as a leader in research, education, and collections and to remain accountable as a public trust, the Smithsonian must have the resources to utilize appropriate advanced information technologies.

The Institution is requesting Federal funding of 9 workyears and $1.2 million to address its most pressing needs for information systems. Bureaus have identified a backlog of an additional 42 workyears and $6.8 million for other systems.

Space Deficiencies - Historically, the Institution has housed administrative and other central support functions in museum buildings on the Mall. With the growth of collections, research, and public programs, however, space in museums has gradually become very limited. Increasingly, the Institution has relied on leased space (in buildings convenient to Mall activity) to house administrative functions. There are two primary centers of off-Mall support: L'Enfant Plaza for administrative functions, and the Service Center on North Capitol Street for light industrial, warehouse, and technical support.

The Institution presently leases 99,000 square feet of space at L'Enfant Plaza for accounting, personnel, publications, design and construction, and procurement and contracting functions. The Institution uses both Federal and Trust resources to pay for the rental space in direct proportion to the number of Civil Service and Trust employees in each office. The Institution anticipates additional need for leased space as buildings on the Mall must accommodate growth in public programs.

The Institution's Service Center on North Capitol Street contains about 165,000 square feet of space. However, the Institution needs a Service Center of approximately 350,000 square feet to house all related activities in one place and to free space on the Mall for public programs. The Institution is examining options for a lease-purchase agreement on a suitable facility and will require additional funding for an alternative facility, possibly as early as FY 1992.

For FY 1991, however, the Institution requires 1 workyear and $248,000 to administer and pay the costs of additional leased space for its current programs.

Major Scientific Instrumentation - A major portion of the Institution's request for additional funding for research will enable the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory (SAO) to continue two important projects involving the development of new and the reconfiguration of existing instrumentation. The Smithsonian request for FY 1991 includes an increase of $4.4 million for these two projects. The construction of the submillimeter telescope array will allow SAO scientists to study more effectively the formation of stars and planetary systems and the puzzling processes taking place in the cores of galaxies and quasars. The conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope (MMT) to a telescope with a single 6.5-meter diameter mirror will enable SAO to gather data on objects much fainter than is currently possible and to study more than twice as much of the universe.

Conservation of Library and Archival Collections - The Smithsonian's archives and libraries--books, documents, films, photographs, and recordings--are national resources. Their words and images are fuel to generate energy in the powerhouse of knowledge and understanding. Some are renewable; many unique ones are not. All are fragile; all deteriorate with use. Conservation and sustained investment are essential to maintain them. Replaceable items must be replaced; unique ones must be preserved. If the Smithsonian does not replace and preserve these items, it only hastens their deterioration, destruction, and depletion. Deferred investment simply intensifies a growing national debt of future replacement and renewal costs. Conservation is not a one-time need; it represents an essential sustained capital investment. Each year that the investment is not up to optimum levels accelerates cumulative deterioration, increases total cost and total lost, and makes it ever more difficult to recover these collections.

The Institution has identified an unfunded backlog of 89 positions and—$6.2 million needed annually for the ongoing conservation of library and archival collections.

Library and Collections Acquisition - Modern researchers are dependent on the availability of published results from colleagues. The most utilized and timely source of such information is scholarly journals. The more than 40,000 journals in the sciences reflect the incredible degree of specialization in the scientific fields alone. Thus, an active scholar in a scientific discipline (e.g., molecular biology) can no longer simply read one or two of the scores of specialized journals available. To scientists and scholars, immediate access to the full range of scholarly literature is as important as research equipment.

The relative weakness of the dollar against foreign currencies has resulted in the escalation of subscription costs for many of the foreign journals upon which Smithsonian scientists and scholars rely. The Institution has in recent years attempted to maintain its current level of service by cancelling some of the lesser-used journals, taking advantage of interlibrary loans, and utilizing private document delivery services. Although the Institution has vigorously pursued these options, journals dealing with such pivotal international issues as global change and molecular genetics are not a regular part of the Institution's journal base. Hence, the Institution needs new resources to ensure that its scholars have regular access to information in those fields in which advances are occurring. The Smithsonian Institution Libraries manages the collection of periodicals for the entire Smithsonian community and for various related agencies represented within the Institution, including the United States Geological Survey, Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of Agriculture, and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Without access to scholarly journals, Smithsonian staff cannot conduct research in critical areas of national interest ranging from global warming to embryo transfer and space research.

The Institution has identified a backlog of 1 workyear and $2.6 million needed annually to address deficiencies in library acquisitions and acquire other collections resources.

Collections Management - The Smithsonian is not the "Nation's attic" as much as it is the "Nation's treasure chest." The care of collections is a sacred responsibility to the American public now and for future generations. With proper care, the National Collections can continue to offer future scholars valuable opportunities for study that cannot be envisioned today.

However, collections care is technical, tedious, and never complete, for the standards of care continuously increase as the museum profession learns more about the composition of objects and the effects of environment. The Institution has spent considerable sums to improve the registration, storage, restoration, and conservation care of objects and is proud of demonstration projects such as the Collections Information System (CIS) and the Museum Support Center. Despite advances such as these, responsibility for the care of collections escalates as they grow and age. Research on new preservation techniques and related advancements and automation make collections care an increasingly complex and expensive endeavor. For FY 1991, the Institution is requesting a no-year appropriation to continue the equipping of and move of collections to the Museum Support Center. The Institution must begin installation of collections into the storage units that will be ready to receive them. As additional resources become available, the Institution also must make technical improvements in the management of collections in the National Museum of American

History and the National Portrait Gallery; make progress on the herculean conversion of the records of the National Museum of Natural History; and take advantage of the closing of the Freer Gallery of Art to bring its collections storage and conservation systems up to modern standards. To fulfill public responsibilities to the "Nation's treasures," the Smithsonian must maintain a program of adequate care for the collections entrusted to it.

To supplement base resources, an additional 101 workyears and $9.2 million annually have been identified as a backlog requirement for addressing collections management deficiencies.

Clerical Support Staff - Over the past years, growth of public demands and programs at the Institution has resulted in a deficiency in clerical support. Productivity in many programs would increase measurably if additional clerical support were available to scientists, curators, and other museum specialists. The shortage of clerical support slows the Institution's progress in addressing critical programmatic imperatives such as global environmental change research and cultural diversity.

The shortage in clerical support is most evident at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI). As the Institute expands its biological research in forest dynamics and canopy biology, scientists will require additional clerical support so they can focus on research rather than spend time on clerical tasks. STRI has identified clerical support needs totaling 19 workyears and $500,000 and must correct this shortage in the near future. At the same time, shortages in clerical support exist throughout the Institution. Other bureaus reporting shortages include the Joseph Henry Papers, Smithsonian Environmental Research Center, National Science Resources Center, Office of International Relations, Office of Congressional Liaison, and other administrative and support areas. The Institution will require an additional 40 workyears and $1,142,000 annually in future budget years to eliminate its clerical support deficiency.

Specialized and Technical Staff and Support Costs - Among the Institution's major areas of concern over the past decade has been the closing of selective gaps in its research programs through the recruitment of new professional staff. A related objective has been to provide an adequate level of technical assistance to members of the professional staff so they can be more efficient and productive in the advancement of scholarship and public programming. For too long, many of the highly trained staff within the Institution have had to perform functions best suited to technicians, functions that divert them from their primary responsibilities. In addition to dealing with these deficiencies in existing programs, the Institution must also address the need to staff newly constructed or recently renovated facilities. The teaming of scholars with a proficient technical support staff is essential for the Institution to meet the many challenges facing the Nation in the next few years.

The Institution has identified a need for 144 workyears and $5.9 million annually. Examples of the programs needing technical staff and support costs are:

-- Biomedical Technology: The National Zoological Park (NZP) is developing advanced fields of biomedical technology with particular emphasis on the role of genetics in animal reproduction and physiology. The world's main hope for saving many species of animals from total extinction is the pioneering work performed at NZP in the related areas of embryo transfer and cryobiology.

-- Museum Research: In the domain of museum research, the Institution plans a more vigorous professional presence at the National Air and Space Museum (NASM), the National Museum of American History (NMAH), the Cooper-Hewitt Museum, and the National Museum of American Art, especially to take advantage of new collections that have entered their possession within the past five years. The study, preservation, and exhibition of these specialized collections demand a skilled and competent staff. For example, NASM's significant collections in avionics, currently the focus of its Computer Gallery, and the soon-to-be-opened exhibition "The Information Age" at NMAH require staffing within a field that has only recently emerged as a unique sphere of scholarship. In the arts, the Cooper-Hewitt Museum requires additional staff to promote its extraordinary decorative arts collection. The National Museum of American Art requires positions at both the technical and professional levels to meet the pressing need for the cataloguing, study, and exhibition of major 19th- and 20th-century holdings in the American visual arts.

-- Research and Public Programming: As steward of the National Collections and important natural research areas, the Institution commits itself to the proper guardianship of its holdings as well as to the research and public programming that derive from these unique resources. The selective addition of staff will allow the Smithsonian to meet these trust obligations on behalf of the world's citizens, advancing scholarship and public understanding with the prudence and discernment for which the Institution is renowned. Within the National Museum of Natural History (NMNH), the Institution's largest biological bureau, the total ratio of technicians to research staff has been woefully inadequate for more than a decade. Future requests will seek to redress this imbalance in the interests of facilitating and improving scholarship in global change research and other significant fields of national interest.

-- Theoretical Astrophysics: At the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory (SAO), filling gaps in the field of theoretical astrophysics is crucial to supporting advances in ground-based and space-borne astronomy. In addition, an infusion of more junior staff into the ranks of the research community will ensure continuous representation of the latest thinking within the varied fields that constitute astrophysics.

-- Global Change: At the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI), the opening of a new laboratory on Barro Colorado Island, with its research programs on global change, requires new technical assistance as well as increased professional strength. For the past two decades, STRI's scholarly community has had virtually no technical support staff. The Institution must take remedial action to correct this deficiency. New staff, and the attendant costs, will sustain and reinforce the vital study of global change and tropical rain forest canopy biology.

Laboratory and Scientific Equipment - The Smithsonian is not exempt from the difficulties faced by other research institutions in overhauling an obsolete research infrastructure. The availability of up-to-date research equipment is a basic necessity for scholars to remain competitive with their peers worldwide. In this respect, one significant difference between the Institution and universities is its inability to obtain National Science Foundation funding for this purpose. Thus direct Federal funding is essential. Failure to obtain necessary equipment will seriously impair the Institution's ability to meet crucial objectives in global environmental research. In the end, new facilities and talented scholars will be left without the opportunity to make full use of their skills.

For the past six years, the Institution has placed major emphasis on improving its research facilities. It is not sufficient, however, to provide scholars with new or renovated space without also supplying them with the attendant tools of their trade: research equipment. All the Institution's research bureaus and research support offices have prepared equipment acquisition and replacement plans detailing their requirements over the next decade. In the process it has become clear that, in an era in which research equipment has become increasingly sophisticated and is rapidly superseded by technological advances, much of the Institution's equipment inventory is obsolete. The Institution has systematically begun to rebuild the critical infrastructure requirements of laboratory and scientific equipment in selected areas.

The Institution must also acquire equipment for the new Barro Colorado Island laboratory, where existing equipment is more than 20 years old. The National Zoological Park requires equipment to take advantage of the rapid advances in the biomedical field for the study and care of endangered species. The Conservation Analytical Laboratory requires resources to replace equipment purchased or obtained more than a decade ago, some under excess property guidelines. The Museum Support Center requires new equipment to complete the furnishing of its modern Laboratory for Molecular Systematics. In future years the Institution will require an additional 2 workyears and $2.5 million annually to ensure it has an adequate base to replace its scientific equipment on a regular basis.

Computers - The computer is an indispensable tool for the production and dissemination of research. Scholars increasingly use computers to communicate through networks that provide bibliographic information, store research data, and prepare, or even publish, manuscripts. Due to limited resources, the Smithsonian has been unable to realize fully the potential of computer technology for increasing efficiency and productivity in the scholarly realm. The Institution now seeks to purchase, install, and create effective computer networks for all its scholars, not just those in bureaus that have made some progress in this area. The Institution will seek to replace and upgrade computers, software, and networks for bureaus already using computer technology. The Institution must also implement a computer acquisition program for small bureaus that lack even rudimentary computing equipment.

The Institution has identified computer needs that will require an additional 3 workyears and $2.3 million annually.

Facilities Maintenance Deficiencies - The Smithsonian owns, operates, repairs, and maintains more than five million square feet of space in more than 200 buildings. These buildings range in age from new to more than 140 years old, and many appear on the registers of historic landmarks. Many are, in fact, among the most precious "artifacts" the Smithsonian holds in trust for the Nation. The Smithsonian must operate and maintain these buildings to ensure the continued functioning of its many diverse programmatic activities and to preserve them for use by future generations.

The Institution has identified a backlog of essential maintenance and repair projects last estimated at $229 million. By increasing staff and equipment for facilities maintenance, the Institution will slow the rate of deterioration of its buildings and thus slow the rate at which new repairs add to the backlog. Additional staff for facilities maintenance will also ensure timely completion of the Repair and

Restoration of Buildings projects. Custodial staff will improve the cleanliness of the interiors, and gardeners will maintain the grounds around the buildings in the manner appropriate for important and highly visible public buildings in the Nation's Capital. Support staff for the Education Center in the Quadrangle will ensure maximum utilization of this important resource for public programs.

While not requesting an increase for FY 1991, the Institution has identified an annual requirement of 136 workyears and $8.0 million.

Health and Safety of Staff and Visitors - The Institution is concerned about the health and safety of its staff and visitors. In recent years, Congress has allocated resources for a solid foundation for an environmental management and safety program. Staff members are now available to assess environmental and safety hazards of the physical plant and to identify necessary changes to buildings or work practices. The Institution needs resources, however, to carry out these changes, particularly at the bureau level. Staff of the Office of Environmental Management and Safety is developing programs required by law or regulation to inform and protect employees who work with dangerous chemicals or are exposed to hazardous conditions and to identify fire or safety risks in the workplace and public areas of Smithsonian buildings. Additional resources will allow coordination of these efforts at the bureau level and ensure that the laboratories and offices throughout the Institution carry out the safety programs.

An occupational health program is also in place, but the Institution will soon need additional resources to meet statutory obligations to staff. Presently the Smithsonian is unable to meet several mandatory requirements for health monitoring of all employees exposed to hazardous materials or working under extreme physical conditions. Additional funds will increase the number of physical examinations and streamline the medical records essential to such a program to make them more useful in a number of contexts. The Smithsonian has established programs in wellness and substance abuse, but these programs will also require increased support. Additional resources will make counseling services available to more employees whose personal problems are interfering with their well-being and job performance. Without these resources, the Institution will fail to meet the government standard for occupational health care for its more than 5,000 employees.

The Institution will require an additional 18 workyears and $1.3 million annually to correct all known health and safety deficiencies.

Security of Facilities and Collections - The Smithsonian has more than 136 million items in its collections, on display in exhibitions, or in storage. In addition to the very high intrinsic value of objects such as gems and coins, most of the objects are irreplaceable examples of human experience and achievement as well as global development and change. The collections are stored within the museum buildings on the Mall, at specially designed storage facilities in Suitland, Maryland, and in some leased warehouses in Washington, D.C., Virginia, and elsewhere around the United States. In addition, the Institution has research facilities in a number of remote locations in Panama and Arizona. Security in Smithsonian facilities consists of a complex combination of alarm systems throughout the buildings and physical surveillance by guards at entrances and in public galleries.

In the past several years, serious erosion of base resources to support the security program has undermined the Institution's ability to provide adequate protection for its collections and facilities. The political situation in Panama has also diverted Mall-based security resources to protect the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute staff and properties. In recent years staffing shortages have caused the periodic closing of exhibit galleries when guards were not available for full coverage. This solution interferes with the public's enjoyment of the exhibitions and activities presented at the various museums and with achievement of the Smithsonian's mission to increase and diffuse knowledge. The alternative is a reduction in security coverage, which places the collections and public property at an unacceptable level of risk of loss or irreparable damage. The Office of Protection Services must hire additional guards for galleries, entrances and exits, and grounds and must replace or maintain communications and security systems vital to the effectiveness of the security force.

The Institution has identified a backlog in security totaling 136 workyears and $6.5 million annually.

INITIATIVES IN RESPONSE TO NATIONAL IMPERATIVES:

Global Change Research - During the past three years, countless studies and testimony have been presented before Congress and scientific groups concerning the effects of natural and human activities on the global environment. A recent report by the National Academy of Sciences serves as the best summary of the current situation. Rapidly evolving changes in the global environment have captured the attention of scientists, policy makers, and citizens around the world:

-- the increase of atmospheric greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide, methane, and the chlorofluorocarbons;

-- the expected consequent changes in global climate and sea level;

-- a global depletion of stratospheric ozone, and the observed Antarctic "ozone hole";

-- widespread desertification and reduction in the diversity of plant and animal species;

-- extensive damage to mid-latitude forests;

-- acidification of lakes and soils in many regions.

At the least, these changes have far-reaching and potentially disruptive implications for the world's natural resources. In the worst case, the changes collectively threaten the life-support system of the earth. The problem of global environmental change is crucial and urgent.

The Smithsonian Institution is ideally positioned to undertake important research initiatives in the field of global change by building upon its current programs. With more than 150 scientists in a variety of biological and physical science disciplines (coupled with its stewardship over large, protected areas in both the tropical and temperate zone), the Institution can undertake comparative studies to assist in understanding the complexities of this global problem.

For more than 20 years, the Institution's International Environmental Science Program has been monitoring both biological and physical processes, and it currently possesses an incomparable set of data for both tropical and temperate sites. The proposed enhancements to this program, in conjunction with proposed research initiatives at both the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI) and the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center (SERC) will exploit and build upon the unique data already in the possession of the Institution. The permanent nature of the Smithsonian's study preserves at STRI and SERC fit the criteria for global monitoring centers cited in the National Academy of Sciences Report and endorsed by the Federal Coordinating Council for Science, Engineering, and Technology (FCCSET) Committee on Earth Sciences.

In addition to studies dealing with biological and physical processes, the National Museum of Natural History (NMNH) will expand ongoing research on biological diversity in tropical Latin America to additional rain forest sites. NMNH will emphasize multi-disciplinary study of organisms and their reaction to broad processes of global change. Recent studies have conclusively determined that, without an integrated and multi-disciplinary approach to this issue, scientists will be unable to find adequate solutions for arresting environmental degradation.

The information that the Institution will generate as the result of proposed initiatives in global change research will be broadly available to policy makers and members of the scientific community. These scientific findings are also certain to form the basis for exhibitions in the National Museum of Natural History, the National Air and Space Museum, and other venues for public programming. The Institution's proven ability in sustaining long-term research at permanent sites is a crucial function that distinguishes the Smithsonian from Federal organizations and most universities involved in such research.

For FY 1991, the Institution is requesting 14 workyears and $1.0 million to undertake various research inquiries to assist in understanding the phenomenon of global environmental change.

Cultural Pluralism - The demographics of the United States are changing, and the pluralism of our country is ever more evident. What has been the dominant cultural group will no longer be the majority in our work force and our schools. This change and the exciting self-pride that minority groups are exerting calls for new responses on the part of the Smithsonian to be more sensitive in its public programs, hiring practices, training opportunities, exhibition presentations, and collections acquisition. As a national institution, the Smithsonian must assume a viewpoint that is deliberately inclusive in all respects.

The Smithsonian has much work to do if it is to continue to advance this "national imperative." The Institution must create exhibitions and programs that rethink the relationship between the indigenous peoples and the New World conquerors. The Columbus Quincentenary Program provides this opportunity. It will celebrate the accomplishments of minority people and make known to others the richness of their history. The Smithsonian must assist in training minority people who wish to enter the Smithsonian's professional work force and increase the number of trained minority people in the museum profession at large. The Institution must be sensitive to the wishes of the native-American communities for their human remains. It must plan for the new National Museum of the American Indian (NMAI) and make it a reality, particularly through preparing native-American staff to assume positions of professional leadership within the new museum. In addition to these efforts, the Smithsonian must make sure that its programs and exhibitions welcome all peoples.

This is an exciting time. The Smithsonian is working on many fronts to reflect with accuracy and enthusiasm the new and forgotten realities of neighbors, immigrants, and indigenous peoples. For FY 1991, the Institution is requesting 103 workyears and $7.3 million to undertake various initiatives that will broaden the cultural diversity of its public programs.

FACILITIES:

Construction - The Smithsonian's request for the Construction program for FY 1991 totals $16.2 million. Consistent with its emphasis on ensuring an adequate infrastructure for current programs and services, the Institution is requesting a funding level that accurately represents its real short-range needs. Within the request are $4.0 million for minor construction, alterations, and modifications to existing buildings to meet the changing requirements of current programs, and $1.0 million to conduct detailed planning for future construction projects.

The remaining $11.2 million is for planning, design, or construction for a number of pressing projects on the immediate horizon. Within this amount is $8.1 million related to the National Museum of the American Indian, $1.5 million for the Natural History Building East Court "in-fill" project, and $1.6 million for a floating laboratory for the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute. This list of projects represents the Institution's most pressing new space requirements taken from a ten-year construction plan designed to address systematically a variety of space and program deficiencies.

Construction and Improvements, National Zoological Park - The request for the construction program at the National Zoological Park for FY 1991 is $6.7 million. The request includes $2.7 million to fund the highest priority repair and restoration projects at the Rock Creek Park site and Front Royal, Virginia. The remaining $4.0 million includes $3.3 million to continue the implementation of the Rock Creek Master Plan and $.7 million for the Front Royal Development Plan.

Repair and Restoration of Buildings - The Smithsonian is requesting $28.7 million for the Repair and Restoration account. The Institution must continue to eliminate the substantial backlog of deferred maintenance and repairs in its various facilities and protect the integrity of its physical infrastructure. Within this amount is $13.9 million for the Major Capital Renewal program and $14.7 million for Repair, Restoration, and Code Compliance projects. The increase in Repair and Restoration funding sought for FY 1991 brings the Institution one step closer to the projected optimal annual level of $35 million.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING

In addition to the support provided by Federal appropriations, the Institution receives nonappropriated funds to expand and enrich its programs. The Institution presents nonappropriated fund activities (Trust funds) along with the Federal budget request to provide an overview of all uses of funds for each Smithsonian bureau. The estimates for Trust funds are subject to the uncertainty of donations, grants and contracts, fluctuations in visitor attendance, and the volatility of the economy, the last of which directly affects restaurant, mail order and shop revenues, Associates' memberships, and other auxiliary activities. The Institution's gross operating revenue, less the expenses of the auxiliary activities, represents the net operating revenue available for programmatic and other worthwhile purposes.

The FY 1990 Trust budget comprises approximately 28 percent of net operating revenues. These revenues include grants and contracts received from government agencies. The Smithsonian expects grants and contracts will total nearly $30 million in FY 1990. The Institution anticipates gross Trust fund revenues, excluding government grants and contracts, will be approximately $248 million in FY 1990. However, the Institution projects net income will be in the $61 million to $62 million range (which includes $22 million for restricted purposes).

The Trust funds include unrestricted funds, restricted funds, and government grants and contracts, and the Institution applies them in the following manner:

Unrestricted Funds

General - The sources of general unrestricted funds are investment income; unrestricted endowment income; net proceeds from the museum shops, mail order division and food service concessions; sales of Smithsonian books, records, and other products based on designs and objects in the collections; the Resident Associate and National Associate Programs (including the Smithsonian and Air and Space magazines); and overhead recovery on grants and contracts the Smithsonian receives and from internal administrative fees charged to other Trust-funded activities. Overhead recovery is the principal source of Trust support for central management and administrative service units of the Institution, such as legal counsel, accounting, personnel, procurement, and budget. General funds also support various activities, such as the Visitor Information and Associates' Reception Center, the Cooper-Hewitt Museum, Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute, Office of Telecommunications, Office of Folklife Programs, and a variety of Institutional and bureau-based programs. The Board of Regents approves these allotments.

Special Purpose - These funds arise from revenue-producing activities operated by various bureaus and offices. The two largest of these activities are the Theater and Spacearium operations of the National Air and Space Museum. Special Purpose funds also include: miscellaneous revenues from the sale of posters, exhibit brochures, and publications; tuition reimbursement from universities; the museums' share of sales in the restaurant and museum shops; membership and admission fees; exhibit rental income; and investment income from current fund balances.

In FY 1979, the Board of Regents approved the annual transfer of General funds to Special Purpose funds for certain programs previously financed through Federal appropriations. These include the Institution's various fellowship programs (FY 1990 allotments of $3 million). The Institution also uses Special Purpose funds to make awards under its Collections Acquisition, Scholarly Studies, and Educational Outreach Program. Of the total $4.98 million approved for the Program in FY 1990, $1.88 million is available to purchase exceptional objects important to the collections.

During FY 1989, the Smithsonian was able to acquire the George V. Allen Collection of photographs of North American Indians, 1500 photographs and stereocards which enhance the National Museum of Natural History's National Anthropological Archives. The Smithsonian Institution Libraries purchased the Franklin Institute Collection of Trade Catalogs which includes 56,500 items. In addition, the Cooper-Hewitt Museum purchased the Henry and Ludmilla Shapiro Collection of Soviet Porcelain, 99 plates and tableware and 141 figural works crafted between 1919 and the 1980s.

The Institution also has designated $2.55 million of this Program for innovative scholarly research projects which by definition or because of their schedule do not fit within the Federal budget process. These include multi-disciplinary research projects initiated by the Institution's research staff, sometimes in collaboration with scholars from other institutions. Often the work is of an interdisciplinary nature and is conducted at more than one bureau. For example, this year the Institution awarded a grant for a joint proposal from the Conservation Analytical Laboratory and the Anthropology Department of the Museum of Natural History. This work will use chemical analyses of subfossil vertebrate bones and teeth to advance our understanding of paleodisease diagnosis and contribute to the broader study of paleopathology. In another project utilizing modern technical analyses, researchers will study Iranian metalworks in both the Arthur M. Sackler Gallery and Freer Gallery of Art. Results will illustrate the wide range of manufacture and decoration practiced by early workers from that region. The program also funded a project at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute on the domestication and rearing of Paca, a species with great potential for providing alternative solutions to the destruction of tropical faunas and floras.

The Institution has allocated the remaining $550,000 of the $4.98 million available for this Program to conduct a wide range of educational outreach programs of benefit to the public, with special focus on diverse cultural audiences. The projects that were supported by the Educational Outreach Program for 1989 included a series of activities sponsored by the National Museum of American History (NMAH) in association with the exhibition, "Way to Independence: Memories of a Hidatsa Indian Family 1840-1920," a traveling exhibition organized by the Minnesota Historical Society. Collaborating with a program committee of American Indian people from the three affiliated tribes of North Dakota, NMAH developed a program of multiple outreach and educational activities. The program included a one-day symposium on the present and future history of Mandan/Hidatsa/Arikara people of Fort Berthold, North Dakota; a workshop and performance by the Mandaree Singers of Fort Berthold; a dramatic performance by a Sioux actress based on the life and words of Buffalo Bird Woman, the main character of the exhibition; and a symposium and publication on the development of dams and their affect on American Indian people. As a result of the NMAH program, the Smithsonian is now in a long-term relationship with the Three Affiliated Tribes regarding the program and facilities development for their community museum and for KMHA radio.

In FY 1985, the Board of Regents approved an annual Trust fund allocation for the Special Exhibition Fund (SEF). Although the Institution has generally met the cost of exhibition programs with Federal funds, supplements--including donations from individuals, foundations, and corporations--are increasingly necessary. The Special Exhibition Fund, with $3.52 million in FY 1990, will provide additional funds for temporary or permanent exhibitions proposed by Smithsonian bureaus that, regardless of scale, are outstanding in terms of their educational value to the public. The Fund gives special consideration to exhibitions that approach content in imaginative ways; that allow bureaus to explore new or expand current interpretive or exhibition techniques; that are worthy but, by their nature, unlikely to attract private funds; and that are likely to reach previously under-served audiences. During FY 1989 the Special Exhibition Fund helped support planning for the National Museum of American Art's exhibition, American Folk Art: The Herbert Waide Hemphill, Jr. Collection, which will be the first major showing of Hemphill's most significant acquisitions of American folk art spanning the 18th through the 20th centuries. The collection is a wide-ranging index of American folk art that illustrates the distinctly personal viewpoint of a collector which has influenced positive changes in the attitudes of the public and art historians in the field of folk art. SEF also provided partial funding for the National Portrait Gallery's multicultural exhibition: To Color America: The Portraits of Winold Reiss. Winold Reiss was a German-born artist, who painted a significant group of portraits of Native Americans, African Americans, Mexicans and Asians. The exhibition gives the public the opportunity to see these groups realistically portrayed and breaks through stereotypes of the 1920s and 1930s.

Restricted Funds

Restricted Trust funds include gifts, grants, and endowments from individuals, foundations, organizations, and corporations that specify the use of the donation or bequest. Generally, these funds provide support for a particular exhibit or research project. The Freer endowment is the largest restricted endowment in the Institution. Under the terms of the original gift and bequest, this fund is strictly limited to uses benefiting the Freer Gallery of Art.

Government Grants and Contracts

Various government agencies and departments provide grants and contracts for special projects which only the Smithsonian can conduct because of its expertise in a particular area of science, history, art, or education and because of its ability to respond quickly to certain needs.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Summary of FY 1991 Increases

FY 1990 Appropriation	$225,479,000 1/
Legislated Pay Requirements	4,125,000
FY 1990 Base	$229,604,000
FY 1991 Requested Increases	
Uncontrollable Increases	11,157,000
Program Increases	15,413,000
FY 1991 Request	$256,174,000

1/ Reflects reduction of $3,074,000 pursuant to Public Law 99-177 and Public Law 101-119 (Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 and 1987 amendments).

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION
"SALARIES AND EXPENSES"
SUMMARY OF THE 1989 APPROPRIATION AND THE 1990 AND 1991 ESTIMATES

(Dollars in Thousands)
FTE= Full-Time Equivalent

		FY 1989 ACTUAL		FY 1990 BASE				FY 1991 ESTIMATE		ANALYSIS OF INCREASE		
PAGE NO.	UNIT	FTE	AMOUNT	FTE	APPROPRI-ATION*	LEGISLATED PAY REQUIREMENT	TOTAL	FTE	AMOUNT	FTE	UNCONTROL-LABLE	PROGRAM
	RESEARCH											
31	Assistant Secretary for Research	22	1,663	36	1,586	31	1,617	36	1,647	0	30	0
36	Astrophysical Observatory	104	10,750	110	10,991	176	11,167	125	12,532	15	403	962
47	Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute	115	5,777	131	5,910	100	6,010	142	6,457	11	341	106
54	Smithsonian Environmental Research Center	30	1,426	37	1,837	35	1,872	39	2,071	2	49	150
58	National Zoological Park	339	14,190	349	14,569	327	14,896	354	15,391	5	395	100
70	Smithsonian Institution Archives	13	592	15	613	13	626	15	639	0	13	0
72	Smithsonian Institution Libraries	97	5,150	106	5,377	86	5,463	107	5,571	1	108	0
78	International Environmental Science Program	10	757	13	770	8	778	15	920	2	8	134
85	Major Scientific Instrumentation	0	836	0	2,147	0	2,147	0	5,765	0	0	3,618
	Subtotal	730	41,141	797	43,800	776	44,576	833	50,993	36	1,347	5,070
	MUSEUMS											
93	Assistant Secretary for Museums	21	1,699	25	1,231	23	1,254	26	1,487	1	133	100
98	National Museum of Natural History	537	26,357	585	27,505	593	28,098	593	29,762	8	605	1,059
111	National Air and Space Museum	224	9,594	227	10,165	222	10,387	228	10,698	1	240	71
121	National Museum of American History	330	14,446	347	15,218	352	15,570	348	16,024	1	359	95
128	National Museum of the American Indian	0	0	61	3,946	85	4,031	179	11,618	118	1,051	6,536
136	National Museum of American Art	114	5,545	122	5,581	111	5,692	123	5,817	1	110	15
144	National Portrait Gallery	88	4,125	89	4,212	84	4,296	89	4,403	0	82	25
153	Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden	72	3,453	78	3,508	70	3,578	78	3,678	0	70	30
157	Arthur M. Sackler Gallery/Freer Gallery of Art	61	4,296	68	4,331	69	4,400	68	4,668	0	68	200
165	Archives of American Art	16	1,062	23	1,126	23	1,149	23	1,172	0	23	0
169	Cooper-Hewitt Museum	28	1,288	32	1,462	26	1,488	32	1,514	0	26	0
175	National Museum of African Art	49	3,503	58	3,610	52	3,662	58	3,713	0	51	0
180	Anacostia Museum	14	905	20	1,002	36	1,038	20	1,073	0	35	0
186	Conservation Analytical Laboratory	39	2,526	42	2,551	49	2,600	42	2,648	0	48	0
191	Office of Exhibits Central	47	1,886	46	1,937	35	1,972	46	2,006	0	34	0
194	Smithsonian Traveling Exhibition Service	13	665	17	793	15	808	18	874	1	66	0
199	Museum Support Center	35	4,405	42	4,263	27	4,290	42	4,316	0	26	0
	Subtotal	1,688	85,755	1,882	92,441	1,872	94,313	2,013	105,471	131	3,027	8,131

PAGE NO.	UNIT	FY 1989 ACTUAL		FY 1990 BASE				FY 1991 ESTIMATE		ANALYSIS OF INCREASE		
					APPROPRI-	LEGISLATED PAY					UNCONTROL-	
		FTE	AMOUNT	FTE	ATION*	REQUIREMENT	TOTAL	FTE	AMOUNT	FTE	LABLE	PROGRAM
	PUBLIC SERVICE											
211	Assistant Secretary for Public Service	25	1,391	26	1,452	35	1,487	26	1,640	0	138	15
218	Smithsonian Institution Press	27	1,214	29	1,269	25	1,294	29	1,391	0	82	15
223	Office of Folklife Programs	10	809	9	1,027	7	1,034	10	898	1	11	(147)
228	Academic and Educational Programs	13	836	17	841	15	856	17	846	0	13	(23)
	Subtotal	75	4,250	81	4,589	82	4,671	82	4,775	1	244	(140)
235	INTERNATIONAL ACTIVITIES	11	740	12	916	13	929	13	990	1	21	40
243	ADMINISTRATION	291	17,244	349	19,945	394	20,339	384	23,611	35	960	2,312
	FACILITIES SERVICES											
257	Office of Design and Construction	40	2,337	44	2,757	58	2,815	45	2,901	1	86	0
260	Office of Protection Services	702	22,261	764	23,339	514	23,853	767	24,437	3	584	0
265	Office of Plant Services	472	37,054	493	37,692	416	38,108	493	42,996	0	4,888	0
	Subtotal	1,214	61,652	1,301	63,788	988	64,776	1,305	70,334	4	5,558	0
	GRAND TOTAL	4,009	210,782	4,422**	225,479	4,125	229,604	4,630**	256,174	208	11,157	15,413

Note: Workyear estimates are rounded to whole workyears on all tables.

*Reflects the distribution of Gramm-Rudman-Hollings reductions of $3.074 million, reorganizations, and permanent reprogrammings.
(See crosswalk in the Appendix section.)
**OMB full-time equivalent ceiling is 4,397 for FY 1990 and 4,510 for FY 1991.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

"Salaries and Expenses"

Report of Appropriation by Objects of Expense

(Dollars in thousands)

	1989 Actual	1990 Base	1991 Estimate	1991 Increase Over 1990
11 Personnel Compensation	$120,739	$132,796	$142,764	$9,968
12 Personnel Benefits	21,298	26,042	29,022	2,980
13 Benefits to Former Employees	165	146	146	0
21 Travel and Transportation of Persons	2,029	2,158	2,683	525
22 Transportation of Things	667	816	920	104
23 Rent, Communications, and Utilities	19,955	20,489	25,683	5,194
24 Printing and Reproduction	1,735	1,937	2,007	70
25 Other Services	25,999	24,489	29,485	4,996
26 Supplies and Materials	9,896	10,192	12,400	2,208
31 Equipment	6,290	9,281	9,786	505
Acquisition for Collections	1,920	1,233	1,253	20
41 Grants	83	15	15	0
42 Insurance Claims and Indemnities	5	10	10	0
TOTAL	$210,781	$229,604	$256,174	$26,570

SPECIAL EMPLOYMENT INITIATIVES

With the Congress' strong endorsement, the Institution has successfully implemented phases I and II of its "Special Employment Initiatives"--the Fiscal Year 1989 "Quick Hire" program and the Fiscal Year 1990 "Step Up 90" upward mobility program. Given ongoing interest in Congress, and in response to recommendations contained in House Report 101-391, The Challenge of Cultural Diversity and Cultural Equity at the Smithsonian Institution, the Smithsonian is requesting from the Congress an additional four workyears and $248,000 to continue its progress toward diversifying the professional workforce of the Institution.

Phase I was designed to identify and recruit qualified external candidates to professional positions created on a temporary basis. Only three vacancies remain of the twenty-two approved professional positions under the "Quick Hire," and these are being actively recruited. The "Quick Hire" program was so named originally because of the use of appointment authority which enabled the Smithsonian to make temporary appointments up to grade 12 without going through the U.S. Office of Personnel Management, thus shortening the length of time from recruitment to appointment. This authority combined with some temporarily available funds made it a feasible proposition to hire several minority professionals at grades 11 and 12. Since the Congress has now approved making these positions permanent, the last three available slots are being advertised and hired through the normal channels.

The second phase, "Step Up 90," is focused internally and designed to expand on the Smithsonian's upward mobility program in order to give opportunities to already onboard employees. The first six positions will open for recruitment in February 1990 and the last four will be decided upon shortly.

In the Committee on Government Operations' House Report 101-391, The Challenge of Cultural Diversity and Cultural Equity at the Smithsonian Institution, recommendation 3 states:

> "The Smithsonian should retain and institutionalize its "Quick Hire" program, as a means to increase and improve Minority employment presence at the Institution. Specifically, the Smithsonian should use this program to target those bureaus and offices where there are presently no minorities in research, curatorial or administrative positions."

In response to this recommendation, Phase III, Affirmative Cultural Transition (ACT), will place four positions in targeted bureaus where underrepresentation of minorities in professional positions continues to be a concern. Rather than specifying grade levels and type of position at this time, the Institution prefers to keep some flexibility in the program to adjust grades and provide training and other objects funding support as necessary to the particular circumstance. Those organizations that have been targeted for these permanent positions include the Cooper-Hewitt National Museum of Design, the Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden, the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory and the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service. Each of these organizations will propose a specific position(s) to remain open until qualified minority candidates surface through the normal civil service competitive process.

FY 1991 UNCONTROLLABLE INCREASES

The Smithsonian Institution seeks funds to pay costs that are beyond its control. These costs result from established practices in regulating wages, higher rental costs, and the effects of inflation and other factors. The Institution requests $11,157,000 for the following uncontrollable costs:

Salary and Related Costs	
Necessary Pay:	
--Annualization of FY 1990 Legislated Pay Raise	$ 1,375,000
--FY 1991 Legislated Pay Raise (50 percent of FY 1991 costs)	2,022,000
--Annualization of New FY 1990 Positions	1,753,000
--One Additional Workday	650,000
--Payroll Base Deficiencies	344,000
Other:	
--Workers' Compensation	264,000
--Personnel Payroll System	71,000
Total, Salary and Related Costs	$ 6,479,000
Utilities, Communications, and Postage	$ 4,213,000
Rental Space	$ 465,000
Grand Total, Uncontrollable Increases	$ 11,157,000

SALARY AND RELATED COSTS - The Institution requests a net amount of $6,479,000 for the projected higher salary and benefits costs in FY 1991 for FY 1990 staff. The Smithsonian has calculated the funds required to annualize the FY 1990 general pay raise in FY 1991 ($1,375,000); 50 percent of the funding required in FY 1991 for the FY 1991 legislated pay raise ($2,022,000); and the annualization of new FY 1990 positions (50 workyears and $1,753,000). In FY 1991 the Institution also requires funds to cover salary and benefit costs attributable to one additional paid day ($650,000), payroll base deficiencies within several Smithsonian offices ($344,000), increased workers' compensation costs ($264,000), and increased operating costs for the Personnel Payroll System ($71,000).

Annualization of FY 1990 Legislated Pay Raise - The Smithsonian has included an amount of $1,375,000 in its FY 1991 estimates to annualize the 3.6 percent January 1990 pay raise. In accordance with the pay plan established by the President under Section 5305 of Title 5, United States Code, annual salaries for Smithsonian General Schedule, Merit Pay, and Executive level employees increased on January 1, 1990. Prevailing practices required a Wage Funding authority to review Wage pay scales in each geographic area. The pay plan also provides that Wage Board employees receive the same pay increase as General Schedule employees. The Institution will absorb the partial-year cost of this pay raise in FY 1990.

FY 1991 Legislated Pay Raise - The FY 1991 request assumes a 3.5 percent pay raise, effective January 1991, for civilian, military, and executive level employees. The Smithsonian seeks $2,022,000 to fund 50 percent of the partial-year costs of this anticipated FY 1991 legislated pay raise in FY 1991. This request for partial funding of the 1991 pay raise cost estimate for 3/4 of the year is in compliance with specific guidance from the Office of Management and Budget.

Annualization of New FY 1990 Positions - The Institution requires an amount of 50 workyears and $1,753,000 to annualize the partial-year funding provided for the new positions approved in FY 1990. This amount represents the restoration of the funding reduced by Congress in applying a 25 percent salary lapse rate to new FY 1990 positions.

Additional Workday - Currently, base funding is available for employee compensation for a 260-day workyear. FY 1991, however, contains 261 workdays and requires additional funding to cover employee salary and benefit costs for the extra day. The Institution requests $650,000 to cover this uncontrollable cost.

Payroll Base Deficiencies - The Institution requests $344,000 to address payroll related base deficiencies in several of its smaller offices--most of which are in the Public Service area. These offices have experienced a gradual erosion of base funding as a result of low turnover, staff promotions, pay increases, and/or the occasional need to fill vacancies at higher grades to attract the best available candidates. Offices with small operating budgets have little flexibility to reprogram resources and, for obvious reasons, are particularly vulnerable to this type of base erosion. The requested funding will restore the respective budgets to a current services level. The Institution has provided a line-item by line-item breakdown of this request, along with the other components of Necessary Pay in a table at the end of the Uncontrollable Increases section.

Workers' Compensation - The Smithsonian requires a total of $1,133,000 to meet the provisions of Section 8147(b) of Title 5, United States Code, as amended on April 21, 1976, by Public Law 94-273. This law provides for payments to be made to employees for injuries and to their families in cases where work accidents result in employee death. These payments are determined and made by the U.S. Department of Labor's Employment Standards Administration, which subsequently bills agencies for costs incurred for their employees. While the number of visitor injuries has declined, the number of on-the-job injuries experienced by Smithsonian staff has increased. A major portion of the rise in injuries may be the product of increased reporting. This situation results in additional costs because of the necessary medical treatment and non-productive time resulting from the injuries. The Institution continues to strengthen its Accident Safety Program administered by the Office of Environmental Management and Safety (OEMS). This Program includes management training to better understand the workers' compensation program, employee training in safe working environments, and supports a staff whose duties include identifying and eliminating potential accident hazards. OEMS has implemented a new automated management information system for accident data which will facilitate the analysis of injury and accident data in an effort to identify target areas requiring additional action. The FY 1991 bill for the Institution's Federal portion, $1,133,000, covers the actual expenses incurred for the period July 1, 1988, through June 30, 1989. With the amount of $869,000 in its base for workers' compensation, the Institution requires an additional $264,000.

Personnel Payroll System - The Institution uses the computer services of the U.S. Department of Agriculture's National Finance Center (NFC) to support personnel management and payroll production. With base Federal funds of $522,000, the Smithsonian requires an increase of $71,000 for the Federal share of processing the payroll and personnel data and related communication services for current staff and anticipated new positions.

UTILITIES, COMMUNICATIONS, AND POSTAGE - An FY 1990 Federal base of $15,844,000 and anticipated reimbursements of $600,000 ($16,444,000) is available to fund the costs of electricity, steam, gas, fuel oil, water, communications, and postage for nearly all Institution facilities. The Smithsonian needs an increase of $4,213,000 in FY 1991 to cover anticipated costs.

The Smithsonian's projections of future utilities costs consider a variety of factors. These include:

-- comparative data on actual energy consumption in previous years for each facility;

-- adjustments for normal weather conditions for this geographic region based on information provided by the National Weather Service;

-- actual and projected rates charged by utility companies;

-- actual and projected reimbursements for utility costs from concessions, museum shops, and the Friends of the National Zoo;

-- modifications to work and public spaces within facilities;

-- continued energy conservation efforts in all Smithsonian buildings;

-- improvements installed to heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems and components throughout the physical plant;

-- the design of new facilities;

-- projected increases in consumption caused by expanded use of computers and other equipment throughout the Institution.

The following table shows the costs and base funds available to cover the components of the Utilities account from FY 1989 to FY 1991.

ANALYSIS OF UTILITIES AND COMMUNICATIONS COSTS
FY 1989 - FY 1991

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate
ELECTRICITY			
Use - Millions of KWH	112.2	115.0	116.4
Unit Cost - Average per KWH	.059	.060	.061
Cost - $000's	$6,620	$6,900	$7,100
FY 1991 Estimated Cost			$7,100
FY 1990 Base			$6,633/1
Base Shortage, Electricity			$ 467

STEAM			
Use - Millions of Pounds	223.5	225.8	225.8
Unit Cost - Avg. per 1,000 lbs.	15.50	15.50	15.50
Cost - $000's	$3,464	$3,500	$3,500
FY 1991 Estimated Cost			$3,500
FY 1990 Base			$3,239
Base Shortage, Steam			$ 261
GAS			
Use - Millions of Cubic Feet	1.193	1.275	1.275
Unit Cost - Avg. per Cubic Ft.	.7058	.7058	.7058
Cost - $000's	$ 842	$ 900	$ 900
FY 1991 Estimated Cost			$ 900
FY 1990 Base			$ 800
Base Shortage, Gas			$ 100
FUEL OIL/WATER			
Cost - $000's	$ 235	$ 250	$ 250
FY 1991 Estimated Cost			$ 250
FY 1990 Base			$ 150
Base Shortage, Fuel Oil/Water			$ 100
D.C. GOVT. WATER/SEWER			
Cost - $000's	$ 0	$2,742	$2,742
FY 1991 Estimated Cost			$2,742
FY 1990 Base			$ 0
Base Shortage, D.C. Water/Sewer			$2,742
COMMUNICATIONS			
Cost - $000's	$3,800	$3,900	$4,065
FY 1991 Estimated Cost			$4,065
FY 1990 Base			$3,900
Base Shortage, Communications			$ 165
POSTAGE			
Cost - $000's	$2,000	$2,050	$2,100
FY 1991 Estimated Cost			$2,100
FY 1990 Base			$1,722
Base Shortage, Postage			$ 378
TOTALS			
FY 1991 Estimated Cost			$20,657
FY 1990 Base			$16,444/1
FY 1991 Requested Increase			$ 4,213

1/ Reflects FY 1990 Federal base plus anticipated reimbursements in FY 1991 of $600,000.

Electricity - The major component of the Utilities account is electricity. The FY 1991 estimate reflects an increase in overall consumption associated with full occupancy of pods at the Museum Support Center (MSC), new facilities at the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory (SAO) expected to be occupied and in full operation, and general increases associated with major automation efforts under way in all Smithsonian facilities. The consumption increase also reflects higher than previously planned use of electricity at the new restaurant in the National Air and Space Museum (NASM), although the increased cost is offset by a reimbursement received from the operator of the restaurant. The FY 1991 rate estimate includes a small average rate increase to cover the 4.32 percent rate increase approved by the Maryland Public Service Commission in June 1988 for electrical service furnished to customers. As a result of this rate increase and the anticipated consumption increase, an additional $467,000 is necessary to cover estimated electricity costs in FY 1991.

Steam - The FY 1991 estimate reflects an estimated increase in steam consumption over current levels associated with a return to more normal winter weather patterns. As a result of this consumption increase, an additional $261,000 is necessary to cover estimated steam costs for FY 1991.

Gas - The FY 1991 estimate reflects a slight consumption increase over the current level associated with the full occupancy of the pods at the MSC. As a result of this consumption increase, an additional $100,000 is necessary to cover estimated gas costs for FY 1991.

Fuel Oil/Water - The FY 1991 estimate reflects a 12 percent rate increase in the cost of water and sewer provided by the Washington Suburban Sanitary Commission that became effective on July 1, 1988. In addition, water and sewer consumption at MSC has increased significantly as this facility continues to move toward full operation. As a result of both the consumption and rate increases, an additional $100,000 is necessary to cover estimated fuel oil and water costs for FY 1991.

D.C. Government, Water/Sewer - The District of Columbia Government has indicated that the Institution must reimburse it for $2,742,000 in service charges for D.C. water/sewer in FY 1990. The Institution must absorb the FY 1990 charges. As no rate increases are anticipated, the Institution requests $2,742,000 for FY 1991.

Communications - The Institution continues its efforts to limit communications costs through increased monitoring and review of long distance calls, limiting access to long distance lines to reduce the potential for abuse, and increased monitoring of telephone charges to reduce billing errors. Despite these measures, telephone costs continue to rise. Additional expenses associated with the use of FTS 2000 are anticipated due to higher rates for off-net usage of this new system. A Panama to Washington communications data link, expected to be fully operational by FY 1991, will also generate additional costs. Finally, additional costs for installations and monthly service associated with new facilities at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI) and SAO are also predicted. An additional $165,000 is necessary to cover estimated communications costs in FY 1991.

Postage - Ongoing efforts to control postage costs have resulted in reducing the cost of postage services to the Institution. Postage costs for domestic mailings remain rather constant as a result of eliminating first-class package service and placing tighter controls on the use of express mail service. Management has instituted an internal review of mailing practices at locations off the Mall to ensure that established policies and objectives are consistently followed. However, despite these steps and controls, postage costs continue to increase, primarily as a result of increased volume associated with program activities and responses to public information requests. The Smithsonian request for FY 1990 was reduced by $328,000 as directed by OMB due to proposed legislation that would create a separate class for government mail. To date, this legislation has not been introduced. The additional $378,000 requested for FY 1991 restores this reduction and provides additional funds to cover the costs of an anticipated increase in mailing volume.

Energy Conservation - The Institution continues to monitor and limit all forms of energy consumption. An automated energy management system reduces peak energy demand by selectively shutting down equipment when necessary. This system, when fully installed, will monitor equipment in all buildings for fluctuations or malfunctions and alert staff to inspect for problems. Ongoing efforts also include:

-- continuing the phased program of performing comprehensive building energy audits;

-- renovating heating, ventilating, air conditioning, plumbing, and electrical systems;

-- reducing lighting levels in work and nonpublic areas;

-- installing more efficient lighting fixtures;

-- operating heating and air conditioning systems at the minimum level necessary to prevent damage to the collections;

-- curtailing electrical consumption during nonpublic hours;

-- increasing attention to energy conservation when determining space use, modifying space, and designing new facilities.

Through the use of the Facilities Management computer system, the Smithsonian will eventually gain closer control over building lighting systems. This system conserves electricity by turning lights on and off as use fluctuates. Automated lighting controls are now in place at the Natural History Building, the Air and Space Building, the Quadrangle Complex, and the American History Building. The Smithsonian plans to install such a system for the American Art and Portrait Gallery Building in FY 1990/FY 1991 and in later years in other major buildings.

RENTAL SPACE - For FY 1991, the Institution's central rental account requires $265,000 for uncontrollable expenses. The FY 1991 base includes redirection to the rental account of $138,000 ($140,000 pre-GRH) approved in FY 1990 for space renovations. This account provides for the Federal portion of the rental expenses for program and administrative activities located at L'Enfant Plaza, the Smithsonian Institution Service Center at 1111 North Capitol Street, the research bureaus of the Archives of American Art in New York City and Boston, Massachusetts, and storage space at the Fullerton Industrial Park in Springfield, Virginia. The amounts below reflect projected costs for rental space at these sites:

FEDERAL RENTAL PROGRAM ADMINISTERED BY THE OFFICE OF PLANT SERVICES
FY 1989 - FY 1991

($000's)

	FY 1989 Actual Cost		FY 1990 Estimated Cost		FY 1991 Estimated Cost	
	Federal	Trust	Federal	Trust	Federal	Trust
L'Enfant Plaza	$1,074	$1,163	$1,416	$1,240	$1,648	$1,374
North Capitol Street	989	115	1,090	130	1,150	138
Archives of American Art:						
- New York	135	--	160	--	170	--
- Boston	10	--	15	--	20	--
Fullerton	32	--	298	--	309	--
Total Costs	$2,240	$1,278	$2,979	$1,370	$3,297	$1,512
Base	$2,034	$1,278	$2,894	$1,370	$3,032	$1,512
Surplus/(Deficit)	$ (206)	$ --	$ (85)	$ --	$ (265)	$ --

The FY 1991 estimate for Federal rental costs for L'Enfant Plaza reflects annual cost increases specified in the lease agreement and takes into account the offsetting Trust fund contribution for shared administrative activities and office space occupied by the specific auxiliary activities on the Mall.

The projected rental expense for space at 1111 North Capitol Street includes the annual cost increase specified in the current lease, with the allocation policy on administrative and programmatic space also governing the Federal/Trust apportionment of costs for this location.

The projected rental expense for the Archives of American Art represents funding requirements for the spaces occupied in New York and Boston.

Finally, the projected rental expense for Fullerton reflects the continuing cost of storage space approved for the Smithsonian Institution Archives in FY 1989 and the National Museum of American History in FY 1990.

For FY 1991, the projected Federal share of the central rental account is $3,297,000. The Institution's Federal base is $3,032,000 in FY 1990. Therefore, the Smithsonian requires an additional amount of $265,000 to defray space rental costs at these locations in FY 1991.

Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory Rent ($200,000) - The Institution's request for an increase of $200,000 will meet projected increased costs of rent for SAO's operations at Cambridge.

60 Garden Street Property ($80,000) - SAO leases approximately 90,000 square feet of space from the Harvard College Observatory. Rental is negotiated annually and is dependent on the actual costs of operating and maintaining the buildings during the previous year. Thus, for FY 1991, the Federal portion of the total estimated increase in cost of deferred maintenance and operating expenses is $80,000 per year.

160 Concord Avenue Property ($78,000) - SAO's five-year lease at 160 Concord Avenue expires in November 1990. SAO intends to renew the lease for the next five-year period. Based on current market conditions in Cambridge, SAO estimates the Federal portion of this increased cost at $78,000 per year.

Other Space ($42,000) - Mostly because of SAO's success in winning four major competitions for NASA-sponsored projects--ranging from submillimeter astronomy to high-energy astrophysics--SAO will require additional space in Cambridge. SAO apportions its rent between Federal and Trust funds in relation to the total cost of rent and the total space occupied. In order to satisfy space requirements, SAO will rent an additional 15,000 square feet. Because the unit cost of this rental is expected to be substantially higher than the average rental SAO is now paying, the Federal part of SAO's rent will perforce increase. This increase is estimated at $42,000 per year.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION
FY 1991
NECESSARY PAY REQUIREMENTS

(Dollars in Thousands)

	Annualization of New FY 1990 Positions		Annualization of FY 1990 Pay Raise	FY 1991 Pay Raise (50% 3/4 FY)	Additional Workday	Payroll Base Deficiency	Total Necessary Pay
	FTE	$					
Assistant Secretary for Research		0	10	16	4	0	30
Astrophysical Observatory	0.75	31	58	86	28	0	203
Tropical Research Institute	8.75	243	33	49	16	0	341
Environmental Research Center	0.50	15	12	17	5	0	49
National Zoological Park	2.50	73	109	161	52	0	395
Smithsonian Institution Archives		0	4	7	2	0	13
Smithsonian Institution Libraries	1.00	21	29	42	16	0	108
Internat'l Environmental Science Prog.		0	3	4	1	0	8
Major Scientific Instrumentation		0	0	0	0	0	0
Assistant Secretary for Museums	1.00	64	8	11	4	46	133
National Museum of Natural History	0.75	21	198	291	95	0	605
National Air and Space Museum	0.50	23	73	109	35	0	240
National Museum of American History	0.50	14	117	173	55	0	359
National Museum of the American Indian	25.00	968	28	42	13	0	1,051
National Museum of American Art		0	37	55	18	0	110
National Portrait Gallery		0	28	41	13	0	82
Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden		0	24	35	11	0	70
Sackler Gallery/Freer Gallery of Art		0	23	34	11	0	68
Archives of American Art		0	8	11	4	0	23
Cooper-Hewitt Museum		0	9	13	4	0	26
National Museum of African Art		0	17	26	8	0	51
Anacostia Museum		0	12	17	6	0	35
Conservation Analytical Laboratory		0	16	24	8	0	48
Office Exhibits Central		0	12	17	5	0	34
Traveling Exhibition Service	1.25	51	5	8	2	0	66
Museum Support Center		0	9	13	4	0	26
Assistant Secretary for Public Service	0.25	5	12	17	4	100	138
Smithsonian Institution Press		0	9	13	4	56	82
Office of Folklife Programs	0.25	5	2	3	1	0	11
Academic and Educational Programs		0	5	6	2	0	13
International Activities	0.25	9	4	6	2	0	21
Administration	3.50	100	132	191	60	142	625
Office of Design & Construction	0.75	30	19	28	9	0	86
Office of Protection Services	2.50	80	171	252	81	0	584
Office of Plant Services		0	139	204	67	0	410
GRAND TOTAL, SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION	50.00	$1,753	$1,375	$2,022	$650	$344	$6,144

OFFICE OF THE ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR RESEARCH

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	22	1,663	6	418	-	2,061	-	183	-	362
FY 1990 -Estimate	36	1,586	6	662	-	2,254	-	281	-	79
-Base	36	1,617								
FY 1991 Estimate	36	1,647	6	662	-	2,252	-	281	-	24

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	36	0	36
11 Personnel Compensation	953	26	979
12 Personnel Benefits	147	4	151
21 Travel	49	0	49
22 Transportation of Things	2	0	2
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	20	0	20
24 Printing & Reproduction	11	0	11
25 Other Services	389	0	389
26 Supplies & Materials	23	0	23
31 Equipment	23	0	23
Total	1,617	30	1,647

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	30
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The mission of the Office of Assistant Secretary for Research is to provide guidance, planning, and overall policy direction to the Smithsonian Institution's research efforts and research support activities. The Office strives to facilitate, strengthen, and plan for the future development of Smithsonian research worldwide. In addition, the Office works to develop and foster an environment conducive to the creation and dissemination of original, world-class scholarship that contributes to human knowledge and creates an appreciation and renewed respect for the relevance of ideas in modern society by the citizens of the world. Within the

Institution, the Office works to create an ambience which encourages and respects all views, to develop effective linkages between scholarship and other Institutional endeavors and to promote tolerance of differing viewpoints. Also included in this line-item are the Joseph Henry Papers, the Office of American Studies, and the Office of Fellowships and Grants.

The Joseph Henry Papers researches and publishes the manuscripts of Joseph Henry, first Secretary of the Smithsonian and a leading 19th-century American physicist. The Office of American Studies conducts a graduate program in the field of American material culture, incorporating course work at the Smithsonian. The Office of Fellowships and Grants provides central management and administrative responsibility for the Institution's programs of research grants, fellowships, and other scholarly appointments. (The latter two offices are new components in this line-item. For FY 1990 and prior years, budget information for these offices appeared in the Special Programs section.)

The Smithsonian is not seeking additional funds for FY 1991 programmatic increases for the offices included under the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research. The Institution requires $30,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - I. Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research: With base funding of 20 workyears and $879,000, the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research (OASR), in concert with the Secretary and other appropriate management staff, supervises the research activities of the Institution. OASR serves as the major Institutional liaison for research centers in the United States and abroad. The Office is responsible for enhancing the Institution's scholarly environment and productivity by initiating cyclical outside evaluations of scholarly activities; fostering regular reviews of individual scholars' performance; providing increased research opportunities through internal competitive funds; creating and coordinating central programs that support individual and group research efforts; broadening the base of funding for research through both Federal and private funds; assessing programmatic effectiveness and making recommendations for curtailment of selected activities; deepening and selectively expanding the Institution's activities in areas of high Institutional priority; and establishing joint programs, appointments, and cooperative efforts with other scholarly institutions, including the Nation's universities. This Office is also responsible for tracking external research trends and ensuring that they are appropriately coordinated with current Smithsonian activities. The Office oversees and coordinates scientific diving activities which support collection and study of underwater subjects and environments by a variety of Smithsonian research bureaus. In addition, the Office provides support for carbon dating to appropriate Smithsonian research units.

A fundamental responsibility of this Office is to develop guidelines to ensure the superior quality of research conducted at the Institution. The Office provides guidance on shifts of emphasis, suggestions for new areas of research, access to state-of-the-art facilities and equipment, and advice on selecting and promoting scholarly staff. In addition, the Office strives to improve the dissemination of Smithsonian research findings to the general public and to specialized audiences.

II. Joseph Henry Papers: With base funding of 5 workyears and $233,000, the Joseph Henry Papers collects, transcribes, researches, edits, annotates, and publishes the manuscripts of Joseph Henry, a pioneer American physicist and the first Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution. Publication objectives are a 15-volume letterpress series, an indexed 90,000-item microform edition, and special publications for a more general audience. The project is a source of unpublished and little-known letters and papers, collected from 30 foreign countries and 328 depositories in the United States. The documents and commentary provided by the editors give insight into the history of science, the development of Federal policy toward the sciences, the institutional and social structure of the scientific community in the 19th century, and the history of the Smithsonian Institution.

The Henry Papers staff expects the publication of the sixth volume of the series in FY 1990. This volume, covering the years 1844-46, details Henry's work at the College of New Jersey (now Princeton University). In laboratory notebooks, Henry describes his extensive experimentation in electricity and magnetism. Letters, notes, and newspaper articles trace the establishment of the Smithsonian Institution and Henry's election as the first Secretary. In FY 1990, the Henry Papers staff will complete the preliminary selection of 300 manuscripts from the 3,720 available for publication in volume 7. This volume will focus on Henry's efforts to establish the Smithsonian Institution as a center for the support of original research. Staff efforts to transcribe, research, and annotate these manuscripts will continue through FY 1991.

In addition to its publication program, the Henry Papers project is a centralized resource for Henry correspondence that includes an automated 60,000-item document index and the Alexander Graham Bell-Joseph Henry Library. Both are essential for research in the history of science and the cultural history of the United States. Students, interns, scholars, genealogists, and the general public use this material to study such subjects as the history of acoustics, electricity, magnetism, meteorology, museums, and photography.

III. The Office of American Studies: With base funding of 2 workyears and $110,000, the Office of American Studies (OAmerS) sponsors a graduate program in American material culture in cooperation with various universities located in the Washington, D.C., area and in other cities. The director of the program and cooperating scholars teach three or four seminars a year to graduate students in American studies or American history departments of affiliated universities for academic credit. Through the program, both scholars and students pursue American studies using the unique resources of experts, objects, manuscripts, and books available in various bureaus of the Smithsonian, and disseminate the knowledge acquired during course study and research performed at the Smithsonian.

IV. The Office of Fellowships and Grants: With base funding of 9 workyears and $364,000, the Office of Fellowships and Grants (OFG) manages centralized fellowship and internship programs, all other stipend appointments, and other programs that support research. Trust funds support most of these programs. These programs facilitate communication and collaboration between the Institution and universities, museums, and research centers. They strengthen international and culturally diverse participation in Smithsonian research and related fields. In addition, the Office publishes Smithsonian Opportunities for Research and Study, an annual publication with information about the Institution's fellowships, internships, grants, and research activities.

OFG manages a variety of programs that enable students and scholars to study at the Smithsonian. In FY 1989, OFG awarded 103 predoctoral and postdoctoral fellowships through the Institution-wide program. Thirty-three of these recipients were foreign students and scholars from 20 countries. In addition, Federal and Trust funds allotted to the bureaus for specific programs supported 27 fellowships. Under the Short-Term Visitor Program, 131 persons came to the Institution. Seventy of the participants represented 32 countries. The Regents Fellowship Program continues to bring eminent scholars to the Smithsonian. Two fellows began their residencies in FY 1989. The Office also administered internship stipend awards for 169 students in FY 1989.

Several programs provide scholarly support to Smithsonian professional staff. Under the competitive Scholarly Studies Program, 31 research proposals received grants. Some of these awards involved collaborative studies with scholars from other institutions. The Research Resources Program, established in FY 1988, supports projects to enhance use of the Smithsonian's documentary and archival collections. After review by an outside committee, OFG awarded ten grants. The workshop program provides funding for Smithsonian staff to organize seminars, symposia, and conferences. These activities bring together scholars from around the world to discuss a variety of subjects; 15 received support in FY 1989. Three Smithsonian staff members received the James E. Webb Fellowship. The fellowships allow recipients to further their specific administrative goals and promote excellence in the management of cultural and scientific not-for-profit organizations.

The Office also administers programs to increase minority participation in Smithsonian research. Thirty-three students joined ongoing research and museum studies in the Minority Internship Program. In addition, one student received an appointment under the Cooperative Education Program. One former appointee returned to complete her tour-of-duty. The Native-American Awards Program appointed 20 native-American students and scholars to work on native-American resources and activities at the Institution. Under the Faculty Fellowship Program, five minority faculty members received awards to conduct research in residence.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

I. Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research: Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Annual allotments provide these funds that support the salary, benefits, and expenses of the Assistant Secretary for Research. An allotment also supports three important international foundations that operate field research stations used by Smithsonian staff members as well as by others in the world scientific community. The Seychelles Islands Foundation operates the former Royal Society station on the Island of Aldabra, in the Indian Ocean, which supports biological research. The Charles Darwin Foundation operates a biological research station in the Galapagos Islands. The King Mahendra Trust for Nature Conservation provides scholars with access to unique environments on the Indian subcontinent by operating a field station in the terai region (a lowland plain) of Nepal, where significant ecosystem research is in progress. Smithsonian support facilitates the continued accessibility of these areas for the research community at large. Also, the Smithsonian provides support for the exchange of scholars and scientific information between the Smithsonian and other nations, principally the People's Republic of China and Cuba. A Special Purpose Fund provides support for cooperative agreements between the Smithsonian and the Nation's universities. The Research Opportunities Fund supports unanticipated general research.

Restricted Funds - These consist of restricted endowments, gifts, and grants from individuals, foundations, and corporations that specify the use of the donation or bequest. Smithsonian units receive competitive awards from the Seidell Endowment

Fund, which the OASR administers and which provides for dissemination of scientific information.

Government Grants and Contracts - The Office of Naval Research has provided contract funds for the continuation of studies in the area of manpower research and development.

II. Joseph Henry Papers: Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Funds are available from the Smithsonian's Research Opportunities Fund to support research projects.

Restricted Funds - Support in FY 1989 and FY 1990 from the National Academy of Sciences pays for incidental programmatic items not otherwise funded, including stationery, journal subscriptions, and additions to Henry Papers research collections. The Smith College Tuition Fund defrays travel and auxiliary support costs for staff, interns, and volunteers.

III. Office of American Studies: Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - OAmerS receives tuition reimbursement from cooperating universities, principally George Washington University and the University of Maryland, whose graduate students take courses offered by the Office of American Studies. The tuition reimbursement refunds the Smithsonian Institution for the use of its facilities by the students participating in Smithsonian classes and, in addition, provides honoraria and reimbursement for the services of outside experts participating in the program.

IV. Office of Fellowships and Grants: Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These funds are primarily for the Institution-wide fellowship programs. Shorter visits by scholars and students also receive support. A program allotment supports a part of the administrative expenses of the Office of Fellowships and Grants. The Regents Fellowship Program continues to bring distinguished visiting scholars to the Institution.

In addition, special purpose funds provide for minority internships and faculty fellowships, minority students pursuing graduate degrees under the Education Fellowship Program, and the Native-American Awards Program. The Scholarly Studies Program encourages research by Smithsonian staff in the sciences, arts, and humanities.

Restricted Funds - These funds consist of restricted endowments, gifts, and grants from individuals and foundations for a particular project. They include an endowment from the Walter Rathbone Bacon Scholarship for research on fauna outside the United States, and the James E. Webb Fellowship to promote excellence in the management of cultural and scientific organizations.

SMITHSONIAN ASTROPHYSICAL OBSERVATORY

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	104	10,750	50	3,705	35	2,311	-	216	111	16,742
FY 1990 -Estimate	110	10,991	50	3,900	35	2,000	-	100	119	19,000
-Base	110	11,167								
FY 1991 Estimate	125	12,532	50	4,000	35	2,000	-	100	121	20,000

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	110	15	125
11 Personnel Compensation	5,916	882	6,798
12 Personnel Benefits	1,004	243	1,247
21 Travel	90	0	90
22 Transportation of Things	50	0	50
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	625	240	865
24 Printing & Reproduction	120	0	120
25 Other Services	2,334	0	2,334
26 Supplies & Materials	175	0	175
31 Equipment	853	0	853
Total	11,167	1,365	12,532

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	203
Program Funds	962
Rent	200

ABSTRACT - 1990 marks the 100th anniversary of the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory (SAO), a bureau of the Smithsonian Institution devoted to basic research in astronomy, astrophysics, and space science. For a century, SAO has pioneered studies of physical processes that determine the nature of the universe. Today, its varied scientific programs are coordinated with the Harvard College Observatory and, together, the two observatories form the Center for Astrophysics in Cambridge, Massachusetts. In addition, SAO operates the Oak Ridge Observatory in Massachusetts and the Fred Lawrence Whipple Observatory in Arizona, the latter the site of the Multiple Mirror Telescope, a joint project with the University of Arizona.

Laboratory experiments, ground-based telescopes, and instruments aboard rockets, balloons, and space satellites provide scientific data. The Observatory's computers assist in the analysis of these data, with results and scientific interpretations published in scientific journals and reports. SAO also disseminates information to a wide audience through lectures, books, and the popular media.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests no-year funding in the Major Scientific Instrumentation line-item for the nonpersonnel support to complete the design and begin the construction of the submillimeter telescope array and to continue the conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope to an instrument with a single mirror, 6.5 meters in diameter. In addition, the FY 1991 request for SAO reflects an increase of 12 workyears and $782,000 for personnel costs and rent associated with the submillimeter telescope array. Since this increase is related to the Major Scientific Instrumentation request, the justification for these positions appears in the Major Scientific Instrumentation section of this budget.

For FY 1991, SAO also requests an increase of 2 workyears and $180,000 for atmospheric chemistry studies. The Institution requires $203,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff in this line-item. Also, the justification for an increase in rent costs totaling $200,000 appears in the Uncontrollable section of this budget.

PROGRAM - The Institution's third secretary, Samuel Pierpont Langley, founded the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory in 1890. The Observatory is now recognized as one of the world's premier centers for astrophysical research. From Langley's turn-of-the-century studies of solar-terrestrial relationships through the establishment of the first worldwide satellite tracking network at the dawn of the space age and on to the present, SAO has consistently advanced the frontiers of knowledge in techniques and fields as diverse as telescope design, optical and radio interferometry, x-ray astronomy, and cosmology. Since 1956 and its move to Cambridge, Massachusetts, SAO has worked closely with the Harvard College Observatory (HCO). Indeed, the partnership of the two observatories in the Center for Astrophysics (CfA) has fostered a broad interdisciplinary approach to research that combines observations across the entire electromagnetic spectrum with theoretical studies and laboratory experiments to provide a deeper understanding of the basic physical processes shaping the cosmos.

Research programs are organized in seven divisions, with efforts coordinated so as to complement each other: atomic and molecular physics, high-energy astrophysics, optical and infrared astronomy, planetary sciences, radio and geoastronomy, solar and stellar physics, and theoretical astrophysics. Data-gathering facilities include telescopes at the Fred Lawrence Whipple Observatory in Arizona and the Oak Ridge Observatory in Massachusetts. In addition, SAO scientists have access to data provided by instruments aboard rockets, balloons, and space satellites, as well as by laboratory experiments conducted in Cambridge. In support of this research, SAO maintains engineering and publications departments, a computation facility, an image-processing laboratory, and an extensive astronomical library. Because of its location outside of the Washington metropolitan area, SAO has its own administrative structure funded by both Federal funds and indirect charges to contracts and grants.

On behalf of the International Astronomical Union, SAO operates two global science information services: the Central Bureau for Astronomical Telegrams and the

Minor Planet Center. The first is responsible for receiving, verifying, recording, and disseminating information about transient astronomical phenomena such as comets and supernovae. The second center computes orbits and provides observational information on asteroids as well as serving as the official arbiter of minor planet nomenclature.

With support from the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, SAO serves as the United States gateway for SIMBAD (Set of Identifications, Measurements and Bibliography for Astronomical Data), an international astronomical data base maintained at Strasbourg, France. Through direct computer links, SAO provides American astronomers with access to this system which contains information on almost all known astronomical objects, including all published references since 1950.

The results of SAO research are published in established scientific journals, as well as in the CfA Preprint Series, SAO Special Reports, and other technical bulletins and papers distributed to scientific and educational institutions worldwide. Lectures, books, and the popular media disseminate information intended for wider, more general audiences. An extensive program of public information and education includes monthly "Observatory Nights" in Cambridge and regularly scheduled tours of the Arizona facility. HCO and SAO also conduct an innovative program to develop secondary school curriculum materials that use examples from astronomy to teach basic principles of physics and mathematics.

Among the significant scientific accomplishments of the past year were these highlights:

-- Gamma rays: Throughout the 1970s, a relatively strong signal of high-energy gamma rays was observed coming from the direction of the center of the Milky Way. These emissions were the result of collisions between electrons and positrons (the antimatter equivalent of electrons) that destroy each other to produce gamma rays in the cosmic version of a super-collider. The association of gamma rays with the galactic center suggested the presence of a massive black hole. However, in the early 1980s, the gamma-ray signals inexplicably disappeared and just recently--and just as mysteriously--reappeared. This year, an SAO scientist and a colleague at Bell Laboratories found that changes in an x-ray source known as GX1+4 located near the galactic center appears to mimic exactly the fluctuating gamma rays. Indeed, this suggests that GX1+4, a well-known binary system with a red giant star in orbit about a neutron star, could be the source of the mysterious on-again-off-again gamma rays. Observations by the Gamma Ray Observatory, now scheduled for launch by NASA in 1990, could pinpoint the source precisely and settle the question of where these mysterious gamma rays originate.

-- Moon rocks: Nearly two decades after the Apollo astronauts returned samples of lunar soil, an SAO scientist has identified a completely new rock type on the Moon. Tiny grains of a magnesium-rich mineral called cordierite, usually present only in very deep geological deposits, were found in a collection made by the Apollo 15 mission. The appearance of this rare mineral on the lunar surface suggests it was "excavated" by a massive meteorite impact, perhaps the same one that created the Moon's huge Imbrium Basin near where the sample was collected.

-- Silicon carbide: The close collaboration between radio astronomers and laboratory spectroscopists at SAO resulted this year in the discovery of a new molecule, silicon carbide (SiC), in the gaseous envelope around an evolved star. This free radical--a diatomic metal carbide--had long defied detection both on Earth and in space. However, the tantalizing suggestion of the molecule's distinctive lines seen in the spectra of a star by European astronomers led to its confirmation in SAO's laboratory.

-- Supernova: Although considerably faded since its discovery in February 1987, the supernova in the Large Magellanic Cloud continues to be an object of great interest to SAO scientists. One team using optical speckle interferometry to obtain unusually high resolution images of Supernova 1987A detected a slight displacement in the supernova's center of brightness with respect to the pre-explosion position of its suspected progenitor star Sanduleak-69 202. The finding suggests this star actually may have been part of a binary system and that one component survived the explosion. The presence of a second relatively bright star nearby could account for the "flattening" of the supernova's light curve, a possible reason why Supernova 1987A has not shown the expected steady, continuing decline in luminosity.

-- Satellite: The National Aeronautics and Space Administration has selected SAO to build and operate the Submillimeter Wave Astronomy Satellite (SWAS). This satellite will be used to study how molecular clouds in the Milky Way collapse to form stars and planets. Scheduled for launch by a Scout rocket in 1994, SWAS is part of NASA's recently revitalized Small Explorer Program, a series of small, relatively inexpensive scientific spacecraft that can be quickly developed and deployed by expendable rockets. The SAO experiment is one of only four selected from some 50 proposed in a nationwide peer-reviewed competition, and the only one to focus on phenomena outside the solar system. SWAS will complement very well the much higher angular-resolution measurements to be made with SAO's ground-based submillimeter telescope array.

A brief summary of the research conducted in each of SAO's seven divisions follows. In each section, the first paragraph describes the research in general terms, and the subsequent paragraphs describe recent accomplishments, in addition to those highlighted above. Following these descriptions of research activities, SAO's other programs of equipment and facilities development are discussed.

Atomic and Molecular Physics - Through a combination of theoretical studies and laboratory experiments, SAO scientists in this division explore the fundamental atomic and molecular processes occurring in a wide variety of astrophysical environments--from the interiors of stars through the dusty cores of interstellar clouds to the upper reaches of the Earth's atmosphere. These complex processes include the absorption and emission of light by atoms and molecules, molecule formation and destruction, and ionization, in which a positively charged atom or molecule is created and a free electron is simultaneously released.

One of the most remarkable discoveries associated with Supernova 1987A was the detection of emission from the molecule carbon monoxide. How this molecule could have been formed--or survived--in the hostile environment of intense radiation and extreme heat associated with the stellar explosion poses some significant challenges to current theory. Division scientists have developed new models that describe conditions in the supernova's expanding shell of gas and dust and offer some specific mechanisms for molecule formation.

Growing concern over depletion of the Earth's ozone layer and the prospect of global warming have turned a long-standing divisional interest in atomic and molecular processes of the atmosphere into a subject of some immediate urgency. In collaboration with colleagues in the Optical and Infrared Division, the spectra of several stratospheric molecules were obtained by a balloon-borne infrared spectrometer flown from Palestine, Texas, in May 1989. As part of the effort to determine what processes may preserve or destroy Earth's protective shield of atmosphere, SAO scientists analyze how the abundance of molecules such as ozone, carbon dioxide, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl vary with both time and altitude. This experiment represented the first infrared observations of several of these atmospheric constituents.

Since November 1988, the National Science Foundation has funded an Institute for Theoretical Atomic and Molecular Physics at SAO and Harvard University. By attracting and training graduate students of the highest quality, the Institute hopes to address a critical national shortage of theorists in this field. In support of the effort, the Institute also brings senior researchers to SAO for discussions and collaborations with the students and other staff members. In its first year, the Institute hosted some 30 visiting scientists for stays varying from several weeks to several months.

High-Energy Astrophysics - High-energy astrophysics is concerned with some of the most exotic objects and most energetic processes in the universe. Research in this division is directed toward understanding the mechanisms that generate x-ray radiation from objects such as neutron stars, quasars, and pulsars; studying the formation, evolution, and ultimate fate of stars and galaxies; and measuring the overall distribution of matter in the universe. Because x-rays are absorbed by the Earth's atmosphere, all observations must be made from balloons, rockets, or space platforms. SAO scientists are currently analyzing x-ray data from several past space missions and are preparing instrumentation intended for future flights.

In one such development, SAO has been working with NASA and industry on the Advanced X-ray Astrophysics Facility (AXAF), a major space observatory planned for launch sometime late this decade. During the past year, polishing and assembly were completed for a mirror system comparable to that planned for AXAF. Testing with NASA's special x-ray calibration facility showed the mirror's figure and surface finish met predicted performance specifications, and its ability to focus reflected x-rays was some 20 times better than the mirrors on the highly productive HEAO-2 (Einstein) Satellite designed by SAO scientists in the 1970s. The success of this preliminary experiment will allow the research team to proceed to the AXAF mirror fabrication with some confidence.

In March 1989, a massive flare on the surface of the Sun, the third largest on record, created a geomagnetic storm on Earth that disrupted radio communications, blew out power in Canada, and produced auroral displays seen as far south as the Gulf of Mexico. By lucky chance, a rocket-borne x-ray telescope using a new multi-layer mirror was launched from New Mexico in time to observe this gigantic solar eruption. This SAO-designed instrument obtained high resolution x-ray images of the flare's onset phase, which, when combined with simultaneous observations in other wavelengths, have provided new insights into the physical processes powering these events. The data suggest that flares may be triggered by some catastrophic instability in an arcade of magnetic loops extending into the Sun's outer atmosphere, or corona. The flare energy seems to be channeled along magnetic field lines from the x-ray flaring region out to optically bright areas in the solar chromosphere, which lies between the Sun's surface and its corona.

Approximately ten years ago, the x-ray source known as 4U2129+47 was linked with a highly variable star that dimmed and brightened every 5.2 hours. Scientists thought that this source consisted of two stars, bound in a binary system, in which one was a neutron star and the other a visible star whose optical variability was due to the changing orientation with respect to Earth of that "face" of the visible star that was heated by x-rays radiating from the neutron star. Moreover, the x-ray-emitting neutron star was probably blocked by a disk of accreting material so any x-rays reached Earth only after scattering from this disk in an x-ray halo. Observations of 4U2129+47 during a period of x-ray quiescence by SAO scientists and colleagues produced new information indicating that this is really a triple star system. Indeed, the observations provide the first convincing evidence for such a system among the special class of objects known as low-mass, x-ray binaries. Further study should reveal additional information about the three components, including their masses, relative separations, and orbital motions, and by inference, more about the origin and evolution of triple systems.

Optical and Infrared Astronomy - Optical and infrared astronomy research at SAO ranges from studies of the large-scale structure of the universe to the formation and evolution of stars. The many areas of interest include the kinematics of the halo of our galaxy, active galactic nuclei, gravitational lenses, supernovae, the chemistry of the Earth's atmosphere, and the dynamics of globular clusters and galaxies. In support of this research, SAO operates the Fred Lawrence Whipple Observatory in Arizona, site of the Multiple Mirror Telescope, the world's third largest optical telescope, jointly run with the University of Arizona. Other optical telescopes at the Whipple Observatory are used for large-scale surveys and observations; and a 10-meter-diameter light collector, the most sensitive of its type, is used for ground-based searches for high-energy gamma rays. In collaboration with Harvard, SAO also operates the Oak Ridge Observatory in Massachusetts, where a variety of instruments for research are involved with problems ranging from detection of earthquakes through asteroid orbital determinations to the search for extraterrestrial intelligence.

The Center for Astrophysics Redshift Survey, an ambitious project to map the three-dimensional distribution of some 15,000 galaxies in the northern sky, is now approximately two-thirds complete and has revealed the galaxies to be spread across giant "sheets" surrounding vast voids. During the mapping this year, evidence was found for one structure more than 400 million light years across. The existence of such an extraordinarily large structure poses serious questions about current theories concerning the origin and evolution of the universe.

While making extremely accurate measurements of the radial velocities of bright stars to detect periodic motion, SAO scientists discovered several low-mass companion objects. These otherwise invisible objects could be the elusive "brown dwarf stars" thought by some theorists to make up much of the mass of our galaxy.

Scientists in this division are actively developing new instrumentation for both ground-based and space optical and infrared astronomy. In addition to the experiment selected for flight aboard a Small Explorer Satellite, other instruments include two-dimensional-array electronic detectors, optical-fiber-fed spectrographs, and a prototype two-element optical and infrared interferometer with a baseline approximately 50 meters long to be erected at the Whipple Observatory. This prototype is being constructed in collaboration with four other institutions.

Planetary Sciences - Research in planetary sciences at SAO strives to understand the planets, satellites, and other small bodies of the solar system, as well as the processes that created them out of a great, whirling, primordial cloud of gas and dust billions of years ago.

For example, in an attempt to duplicate the physical processes present in that early solar nebula, laboratory studies were made on the evaporation of elemental constituents in meteorites. One such experiment made the first measurements of the fractionation of the elements into different isotopes.

Among the more interesting events reported by the Central Telegram Bureau and the Minor Planet Center were the discoveries made by a space-borne coronagraph of six comets in the vicinity of the Sun. A new study by an SAO scientist of the two dozen or so known "sun-grazing" comets, including some thought to have crashed into the solar surface, showed that all could have originated from the breakup of a single, large, progenitor comet in the fourth century B.C.

Adding new insight on the dynamics of the early solar system, a study of the stability of asteroids orbiting between Jupiter and Saturn showed that none could persist there for longer than some 20 or 30 million years.

Special chlorine- and potassium-solution detectors deep inside the Homestake Mine in South Dakota obtained data that will help better determine the cosmic-ray background for the solar neutrino flux, a measurement particularly crucial in this period of increasing solar activity.

Radio and Geoastronomy - Research in radio astronomy attempts to understand the structure, evolution, energy sources, and ultimate fate of those astronomical objects throughout the universe that emit radio waves. As pioneers in very long baseline interferometry (VLBI), SAO scientists use this radio observing technique to measure drifts among the continents, to probe the interior of the Earth, and to determine the distances to cosmic sources and study their structures.

A major effort has been to measure the size of our own galaxy and the distances to neighboring galaxies. By charting the relative motions of water-vapor masers surrounding a newly formed massive star, SAO scientists can determine with high precision the distance to that star. Over the past few years, this technique has been used to measure the distances to six such sets of masers distributed throughout the Milky Way. Scientists have made similar measurements of maser complexes in the nearby Galaxy M33 that may result in the first direct determination of that galaxy's rotation.

SAO scientists organized and participated in the first intercontinental VLBI observations of methanol masers, a type occurring in the vicinity of other masers but that mark a distinct episode in the development of new massive stars.

Various VLBI arrays were also used to measure the properties of relativistic jets emanating from quasars and active galaxies. The goal is to understand how particles are accelerated to velocities near the speed of light and why they are confined into such well-collimated streams. For example, one experiment using 18 antennas imaged the structure of the jet in the Galaxy M87 with unprecedented clarity. As part of international teams, SAO scientists also conducted VLBI experiments at millimeter wavelengths, achieving resolutions as fine as 50 microarcseconds, or sharp enough to produce images of the core regions of galaxies.

Using a 1.2-meter-diameter radio telescope installed at SAO last year, a sensitive survey of carbon monoxide distribution in the little-studied outer portions of the Milky Way led to the identification of two giant, star-forming regions. Other observations of carbon monoxide in the nearer Perseus spiral arm of our galaxy provided new details on the size and mass distribution of molecular clouds in the vicinity of stellar associations and supernova remnants, a vital step toward understanding the process of star birth in such clouds.

SAO continued its leadership in the development of instruments for astronomical research, including highly stable atomic clocks built to support programs of VLBI, deep space tracking and national time-keeping. For example, SAO-built clocks played a vital role at those NASA stations around the world monitoring the Voyager spacecraft encounter with Neptune.

Several division projects involve the development of instrumentation for future applications in space and on the ground. The POINTS (precision optical interferometer in space) system will provide astrometric measurements of stars with a resolution of 5 microarcseconds, thus providing data necessary for calibrating the cosmological distance scale as well as for improving tests of general relativity. Another study is analyzing the electrical conductivity and mechanical characteristics of the long tethers to be deployed from the space shuttle. Last, but by no means least, the so-called last frontier of ground-based astronomy soon may be conquered by an array of six submillimeter-wave radio telescopes now being designed at SAO. This past year SAO appointed a project director, and a leader for the receiver laboratory that is developing special, high-technology submillimeter receivers for the array.

Solar and Stellar Physics - Research in solar and stellar physics is concerned with understanding the physical processes underlying the behavior of the Sun and other stars. Stars like the Sun are studied to understand the dependence of observed properties on factors such as their age, composition, and physical association with others in pairs and groups. Of particular interest is the behavior of hot gas under varied conditions--in the Sun's interior, in the outer atmospheres of stars, in the space between the stars, and in the material ejected by young stars and supernovae.

SAO scientists continued their studies of stars in the early stages of development, with an emphasis on the circumstellar disks of gas and dust thought to surround all young stars as the precursors of planetary systems. Dark clouds were surveyed to determine the statistical importance of eruptive disk accretion in star formation. Other studies led to improved understanding of how material from these disks falls onto the surfaces of the still-forming central stars.

Studies of cool stars in binary systems led to the discovery that high-temperature emissions seen from such systems may be the result of collisions of the stellar winds pouring out from the two objects as they orbit each other.

One outstanding question in solar physics is what heats the Sun's corona, or outer atmosphere, and then accelerates it outward into interplanetary space as the solar wind. To investigate that region where the solar wind originates, SAO scientists are preparing an Ultraviolet Coronal Spectrometer (UVCS) for flight aboard the joint U.S.-European Solar Heliospheric Observatory (SOHO) later in this decade. Also, observational and theoretical studies of solar structure, heating, and energy transport by SAO scientists have led them to a new model that seems to account for the previously unexplained near constancy of the solar wind mass flux.

In addition, SAO scientists are studying magnetic activity cycles in other stars for clues to understanding how similar cycles in the Sun produce diverse geomagnetic phenomena and their possible links to terrestrial climate change. A new research tool being used for these observations is the Automatic Photoelectric Telescope (APT), a fully robotic instrument ideal for long-term monitoring of cyclic behavior. As a leader in the development of APTs, SAO has begun efforts to establish a global network of such instruments.

Optical speckle interferometry is an observing technique used to measure very small angles, e.g., the diameter of a star or the separation between two or more closely spaced objects. A series of several thousand individual frames are taken during each observation and then combined by computer to form a composite image representing the highest resolution attainable by ground-based telescopes. In addition to observations of Supernova 1987A, including the first direct optical measurement of a supernova's expanding shell, SAO scientists used this technique to detect disklike and halolike structures around stars, a possible molecular cloud around the star Mira, and the presence of bright features on the surface of the star Betelgeuse.

Theoretical Astrophysics - Theoretical astrophysicists study the objects and systems of the universe by means of mathematical analysis and computer simulations. Although usually intended to provide interpretations of observed phenomena, this research often results in the prediction of new phenomena not yet seen. Most investigations involve independent work by individual theorists, but collaborations among individuals and other groups at SAO is common, especially in four broad areas: cosmology and the early universe, supernovae and nucleosynthesis, stellar and planetary collisions, and atomic and molecular physics.

One of the most exciting theories of cosmology is the concept of an "inflationary universe," in which the infant cosmos is viewed as having suddenly and dramatically expanded to a significant fraction of current size within a fraction of a second of its creation. Although this theory solves many cosmological problems posed by the observed distribution of matter in the present universe, it is not without its own difficulties. Several investigations this year concentrated on how the geometry of large-scale structure in the universe might be made consistent with inflation models. No success has yet been achieved in solving this baffling problem.

Supernova 1987A was not only a bonanza for observers; it also stimulated much theoretical work on supernova hydrodynamics and related nucleosynthesis. A major surprise was the early detection of nuclear gamma rays from the supernova, thus implying that materials synthesized at great depths had been mixed toward the surface faster than expected. SAO investigations of this problem found that an overlooked process--convection in the supernova's expanding layers--could produce the required mixing.

Even 20 years after the Apollo missions, the origin of the Moon remains a mystery. In one of several computer programs developed at HCO and SAO to simulate stellar and planetary collisions, a planetary body is made to strike the early Earth under conditions that might lead to the formation of a moon. The result of this simulated cataclysm is the creation of a large secondary body with a mass and other physical characteristics similar to our Moon.

Theoretical studies of atomic and molecular physics have produced models for the atmospheres of other planets that may prove helpful in understanding the chemistry, physics, and hydrodynamics of the Earth's own complex, protective, and increasingly beleaguered atmosphere.

Scientific Equipment Replacement and Improvement Program - Since FY 1984, SAO has been undertaking a comprehensive long-term program to replace and improve obsolete laboratory and computer equipment. Additional funding received in FY 1987 offset cumulative erosion of the SAO base in the preceding several years. With these funds SAO made significant progress in developing a network for computers distributed throughout SAO. An Observatory-wide Ethernet system now links a Convex computer, work stations, and their associated disc and tape drives. The Observatory's aging and overworked VAX computers were replaced by a cluster of more modern computers with far greater computing power. In addition, microprocessor-controlled data acquisition and data presentation capabilities were obtained with these funds and substantially enhanced the effectiveness of existing laboratory equipment. Due to the uncompensated effects on the SAO base of promotions, and similar necessary actions, these equipment funds are now in very short supply.

Development of Scientific Instrumentation - Since FY 1989, the Institution has requested support for the nonpersonnel costs for two projects for the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory as no-year funding under the Major Scientific Instrumentation line-item:

-- the development of an array of submillimeter telescopes;

-- the conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope.

Both of these cutting edge scientific projects involve the fabrication of major new instrumentation that will take a number of years to plan, design, and complete. The Institution anticipates the development of the submillimeter array to continue through the mid-1990s; it will require total funding currently estimated at $30 million (1987) or $32.4 million (1989) for construction on a continental U.S. site; the cost would be about 25 percent higher if the Institution locates the array on a prime mountain site in Hawaii. The conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope, which SAO, in collaboration with the University of Arizona, expects to complete by FY 1995, will require total estimated funding from the Smithsonian Institution of no more than $10 million (1987) or $10.8 million (1989).

Facilities Development - With funding provided in FY 1988 and FY 1989 as part of the construction appropriation, SAO is designing and will construct a new base camp for the Whipple Observatory. The base camp will include an administrative building for purchasing, fiscal, engineering, and secretarial support; a visitor center, to serve as the focal point for public tours; a vehicle maintenance shop; a warehouse; and outside parking for approximately 60 vehicles to accommodate visitors, staff, shuttles, and heavy equipment used for road maintenance.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, SAO requests an increase of 2 workyears and $180,000 for atmospheric chemistry studies.

Atmospheric Chemistry Studies (2 workyears and $180,000) - Atmospheric scientists are reporting thinning of the ozone layer in parts of the Earth's upper atmosphere. Worldwide use of chlorofluorocarbons, which are chemicals used for refrigeration, insulation, and other purposes, and emissions of carbon dioxide, nitrous oxides, and methane are believed by some scientists to be linked to the partial destruction of the ozone layer. These chemicals when released in the air eventually rise into the stratosphere where ultraviolet radiation breaks them down, releasing chlorine or bromine molecules that can contribute to the destruction of the ozone layer. It is this ozone layer which protects the Earth from harmful ultraviolet radiation.

In order to assess the impact of human activities on the atmosphere, it is necessary to understand the chemical processes that take place there. With funding in FY 1991, SAO will develop its program to measure chemical abundances directly and to compare these measurements with theoretical calculations of the behavior of the volatile ozone layer. Instruments will record these measurements at different altitudes, times of day, times of year, and geographic locations. To interpret these data properly, SAO scientists will coordinate the measurements with their laboratory studies of molecular behavior under the conditions that prevail in the atmosphere.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests funding for two atmospheric physicists to develop instruments to make atmospheric measurements from balloons and spacecraft and to carry out laboratory studies of the spectra of molecules found in the atmosphere.

The global consequences of the depletion of the protective ozone layer could be the destruction of crops, marine life and forest, and the increase in skin cancer and other health problems in humans. Funding for this research will ensure continued contributions to the development of strategies to curb this imposing threat.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Unrestricted general funds come primarily from overhead charged on contracts and grants. These funds are used to support administrative positions and some other administrative costs of SAO. Special purpose funds come from two sources: external users of SAO's Computer Center and the Institution's Trust funds, with the latter providing by far the larger share. Since SAO only "breaks even" in the Computation Facility, there are no funds left over for this use. Trust funds provide direct support for some research as well as for the fellowship and visiting scientist programs, the largest uses of special purpose funds.

Restricted Funds - Restricted funds consist of specific endowments as well as gifts from individuals, foundations, or corporations earmarked for particular research purposes.

Government Grants and Contracts - SAO receives the majority of its funds through government agency contracts and grants for research in its particular areas of expertise and experience. This research is often carried out in cooperation with both government and academic institutions in the United States and abroad. In FY 1991, increased funding is expected through contracts from NASA to SAO for development of instrumentation for the Advanced X-ray Astrophysics Facility (AXAF), the Solar Heliospheric Observatory (SOHO), the Submillimeter Wave Astronomy Satellite (SWAS), and the Large Area Modular Array of Reflectors (LAMAR).

SMITHSONIAN TROPICAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	115	5,777	3	265	-	537	-	61	9	890
FY 1990 -Estimate -Base	131 131	5,910 6,010	3	222	1	355	-	250	12	1,020
FY 1991 Estimate	142	6,457	3	222	1	345	-	275	12	1,020

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	131	11	142
11 Personnel Compensation	3,300	340	3,640
12 Personnel Benefits	750	102	852
21 Travel	201	0	201
22 Transportation of Things	53	0	53
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	49	0	49
24 Printing & Reproduction	46	0	46
25 Other Services	705	0	705
26 Supplies & Materials	579	5	584
31 Equipment	327	0	327
Total	6,010	447	6,457

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	341
Program Funds	106

ABSTRACT - The Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI) is the Nation's premier center for basic research on the ecology, behavior, and evolution of tropical organisms. Located in Panama, STRI conducts scientific investigations throughout the New and Old World tropics. In addition to scientific staff, visiting scientists from the world over conduct research at STRI. The Institute applies results of this basic research to carefully selected conservation and resource management problems, seeking viable alternatives to traditional agricultural and forestry practices that contribute to the massive deforestation of the world's tropical forests. The terms of the Panama

Canal Treaties of 1979 designate STRI as the custodian of the Barro Colorado Nature Monument, a 12,000-acre tropical nature preserve located in the Panama Canal. The preserve consists of Barro Colorado Island (BCI) and five adjacent mainland peninsulas. Other STRI facilities include a marine laboratory at Naos Island (on the Pacific Ocean); a marine laboratory at Galeta Point and a field station in the San Blas Islands (both on the Atlantic Ocean); and a research library, laboratories, conference and study facilities, and administrative headquarters in Panama City. STRI scientists also engage in collaborative research with colleagues in U.S. universities and in other tropical countries, including Malaysia, India, Madagascar, Kenya, Senegal, Costa Rica, and Venezuela.

For FY 1991, STRI requests an increase of 2 workyears and $106,000 for global change research. The Institution requires $341,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute is the Nation's leading international center for basic research in tropical biology. STRI performs four major functions:

-- conducts fundamental research on the ecology, evolution, and behavior of tropical plants and animals, including mankind;

-- provides major facilities and logistical support for the international scientific community to study both terrestrial and marine tropical biology;

-- supports environmental education, conservation and management of tropical ecosystems;

-- protects and manages the Barro Colorado Nature Monument under a treaty-assigned responsibility.

A compelling need exists for improved understanding and conservation of tropical ecosystems. Conversion of tropical forest to scrub and grassland can affect regional and even global climatic patterns. It may adversely affect the North American environment. Extinction of species eliminates potential sources of medically and commercially important natural products. STRI's basic research provides the essential science base for the effective management and conservation of these resources.

In FY 1989, STRI continued its long record of progress and achievement in research, facilities development, and international education and conservation. Research publications from work done at the Institute should exceed the more than 200 published in 1988. STRI's annual report and STRI Contributions to Research, an annual offprint of STRI publications, summarize current research projects. Descriptions of significant accomplishments and major program activities during FY 1989 follow:

Greenhouse Gases and Tropical Forests - Tropical forests absorb large amounts of carbon dioxide, an atmospheric gas strongly implicated in the greenhouse effect and global warming. STRI scientists, in collaboration with scientists at the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center in Edgewater, Maryland, have begun the first-ever studies on how carbon dioxide affects tropical plants. The studies include raising common tropical plant species at normal and twice-normal concentrations of carbon dioxide.

Raised carbon dioxide led to increased growth, photosynthesis, and efficiency of water use, and decreased respiration. Species varied strongly in their responses, indicating that rising carbon dioxide may alter the structure and dynamics of tropical forests. The results also suggest that intact tropical forests can help reduce the rate at which atmospheric carbon dioxide increases over the next decade. The next stage of this work will involve studying the effects of carbon dioxide in the upper forest canopy, where most growth and photosynthesis occurs.

Ecological Interactions between Animals and Plants - Tropical forests contain a wide range of species that are potential sources of medicines. Exploring plant-animal interactions is an excellent way to identify candidate medicines. STRI scientists have found that a common caterpillar protects itself from predators by feeding on a plant that contains compounds that most insects find unattractive or even poisonous. The chemicals affect sugar metabolism, and recent tests show that they are potentially useful in the treatment of a wide variety of disorders, from obesity to diabetes to AIDS. They also hold promise as a deterrent to insect pests such as locusts.

This research originally sprang from the interest of scientists in the striking migratory habits of the moth adults of the caterpillar. It demonstrates the potential spin-offs of ecological research and the serendipitous nature of many important scientific discoveries.

International Forest Dynamics Project - The origin and maintenance of the great species richness in the tropics is a fundamental research interest at STRI. One important, long-term component of this program is the International Forest Dynamics Project, begun by STRI in 1980 with a 124-acre forest plot on Barro Colorado Island. STRI researchers supervise the mapping and measurement of more than 250,000 trees on the site every five years. The program has established sister plots in Malaysia and India and plans plots in other tropical countries.

A just-completed census of the Malaysian plot confirms the enormous biological diversity of tropical rainforests. Scientists have found 835 tree species, more than occur in all of the United States and Canada and more than twice the number found in the plot on Barro Colorado Island. The number of species in the Malaysian plot is the highest number recorded on a plot of this size.

From a knowledge of tree densities in tropical forests and their rates of survival, growth, and recruitment, foresters will be able to rapidly identify native species that have a potential for commercial reforestation. Because of the great species richness of many tropical forests and the low density of individual tree populations, researchers can obtain this information only from large-plot studies such as those conducted by STRI.

Effects of Global Change on Marine Species - The ocean conditions on which marine life depends may change substantially as a result of global warming. STRI scientists are examining potential changes through the long-term study of several species, primarily fishes.

Most species of tropical reef fishes reproduce by periodically sending larval brood off into the open ocean to grow. The young later return to settle near the shore. Previously, many scientists thought that ocean conditions in the tropics did not affect this recruitment. STRI scientists have been testing this and other hypotheses for several years by monitoring spawning and settlement of fishes in the vicinity of the San Blas field station and the Naos marine laboratory.

All fishes studied so far have species-specific seasonal patterns of settlement that are in fact strongly affected by ocean conditions. The effect is strongest in the Pacific, where the environment shifts substantially between wet and dry seasons. The changes in ocean conditions that scientists expect as the Earth warms may therefore have severe effects on populations of fishes, many of which are important sources of food.

Biological Catastrophes - STRI's long-term basic research programs provide a context for evaluating environmental catastrophes. A major oil spill occurred in April 1986 near STRI's Galeta marine laboratory on the Atlantic coast of Panama, significantly affecting marine and intertidal communities. STRI is conducting a five-year study on the impact of the oil spill on biological communities for the Minerals Management Service of the U.S. Department of the Interior. The Institute coordinates an international team of more than a dozen scientists to compare the recovery of biological communities in spill-affected areas with natural population variation prior to the spill. Damage to coral, seagrass, and mangrove communities has proven to be more severe and enduring than suggested by less rigorous studies elsewhere. This work is providing invaluable guidelines for management of oil spills in tropical and semitropical marine habitats. The findings are possible only because of the rigorous prespill research STRI conducted in the area.

Conservation Research - STRI scientists are developing agro-forestry techniques to produce a sustained-yield, economically viable buffer zone for the Barro Colorado Nature Monument. This zone will provide added protection against agricultural encroachment, regional climatic change, hunting, and forestry harvests. Scientists have planted both native and introduced species of trees and crops together in a 2.5 acre "Forest Garden." All foliage in the plot is palatable to livestock. Many species fix nitrogen and improve soil fertility. Researchers can use the project as a model for expanded agro-forestry in the deforested areas within the Panama Canal watershed. It is also a model for buffer zone projects elsewhere in the tropics.

Molecular Evolution and Plant Physiology Initiative - With funding provided in FY 1988 and FY 1989, STRI has established a research program in molecular evolution and plant physiology. While STRI scientists have always made some use of molecular and physiological techniques, this support significantly enhanced their ability to undertake major research in these fields.

Molecular evolution studies permit STRI scientists to address basic questions concerning processes of species formation, the maintenance of genetic variation in populations, and the nature of population differentiation. The program has already yielded intriguing and even surprising results on how barriers like the Isthmus of Panama affect evolution and how the reproductive biology of a species affects its genome. Studies of tropical plant physiology are providing essential insights into the nature of plant adaptation to environment, information necessary to apply basic knowledge to the urgent problems of forest conservation and management.

Visiting Scientists - STRI promotes additional basic research in tropical biology by hosting several hundred students who work in association with the staff and visiting scientists from many countries. These scientists can pursue research in biologically rich environments without being intellectually isolated. Hundreds of scientists from major universities and research institutions from most of the States and all over the world ensure a continuing infusion of new ideas leavened by the long tropical experience of STRI's permanent staff.

During FY 1989, scientists from Princeton University and the U.S. Geological Survey continued research on the role of tropical forests and wetlands in the production of greenhouse gases, including methane and carbon dioxide. These gases have significant effects on regional and global climatic patterns. Deforestation and agriculture are likely to alter the dynamics of gas production and circulation, further complicating predictions about the future of tropical and extratropical climates.

Publications - Work at STRI resulted in the publication of more than 217 scientific papers and books during calendar year 1988. Staff and visiting scientists are currently involved in more than 160 research projects that will produce at least the same number of publications.

Fellowships, Conservation, and Environmental Education - Because of its location in Panama, STRI is in an excellent position to play two significant roles in the study and conservation of tropical environments. First, STRI actively engages in the education of creative scientists from tropical and nontropical nations. Approximately 80 men and women (half from Latin America) representing a dozen nations participated in STRI's academic programs in FY 1989.

Second, STRI is aware that the survival of tropical ecosystems depends on the combined efforts of international organizations, governments, the private sector, and people in the tropical countries themselves. STRI is both a committed leader and participant in tropical conservation efforts.

STRI's premier reference library for tropical studies enhances its educational function in tropical biology by serving STRI's staff, visiting scientists, and students from universities and secondary schools in Panama. Currently, the library serves more than 1,000 patrons per month.

STRI is deeply involved in conservation activities. The Institute works actively with the Asociacion Nacional para la Conservacion y la Naturaleza, a local affiliate of the Nature Conservancy, in its efforts to purchase and protect endangered natural areas. STRI also works closely with the Kuna Indians in their conservation and environmental education efforts in Kuna Yala, their autonomously governed reservation on the Caribbean coast of Panama.

STRI research is providing protocols for the eventual domestication and use of wild species as a standard component of Panamanian agriculture. Studies of fast-growing plantation trees and new crop plants are in progress on the mainland west of Barro Colorado Island. The results of these studies will provide local farmers with sustained-yield agricultural techniques that will eliminate the need to continually remove forest to provide new crop land.

Because the primary emphasis of STRI continues to be basic research, its understanding of tropical organisms and environments deepens and broadens over time. As a result, STRI is better capable of applying this knowledge to the increasingly serious environmental and economic problems confronting tropical countries. STRI's educational programs are producing greater interest and expertise among students in the tropics in the application of basic knowledge to practical problems.

Facilities - STRI's research facilities in Panama include the Barro Colorado Nature Monument, marine laboratories at Naos Island and Galeta Point, a field station in the San Blas Islands, and a cloud forest station at an elevation of 6,500 feet in western Panama. STRI also operates a research vessel for studies in both the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. These facilities also serve as the home base for STRI programs in comparative and experimental research at numerous other sites throughout Panama and in other tropical countries.

The new Tupper Laboratory and Conference Center became operational during 1989. This facility provides STRI scientific staff and visiting scientists with modern office, laboratory, and conference facilities similar to those at major research universities. It supports development of plant physiology, molecular evolution, and global change programs at STRI. During FY 1990, STRI will complete construction of the new dormitory, kitchen, and dining hall on Barro Colorado Island, which will provide modest living facilities for the large number of researchers who use BCI.

As part of the Smithsonian's FY 1990 construction appropriation, STRI received funding to build a new laboratory and dormitory at Galeta, and a new, larger field station in San Blas. STRI also received funding to design an 80-foot research vessel that will replace the aging R/V Benjamin.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, STRI requests 2 workyears and $106,000 for global change research.

Global Change (2 workyears and $106,000) - Tropical environments are changing rapidly. Deforestation proceeds at an unprecedented rate, threatening the extinction of many species before science has a chance to understand their ecological roles and explore their possible benefits. This destruction may have global consequences through effects on atmospheric water cycles, the production of greenhouse gases, siltation of coastal marine habitats, and other pathways.

The Isthmus of Panama is a key region for examining global change from both a biological and geological perspective. STRI's permanent base in the tropics and multifaceted approach to tropical research make it uniquely suited for global change studies. The protected forest of the Barro Colorado Nature Monument is the only mainland tropical area under U.S. custodianship where long-term ecological studies are conducted.

STRI proposes to enhance its program in three aspects of global change research: long-term physical and biological monitoring, investigating the biological and geological mechanisms of change, and conservation and management studies. The Institute foresees an eventual program of 12 fully supported scientific staff in the areas of paleontology, human biology, atmospheric sciences, environmental physiology, and conservation science, with full implementation achieved in FY 1994.

For FY 1991, STRI requests funding to hire a scientist and technician for the program (2 workyears and $101,000) and for supplies and materials ($5,000) for the scientist. While recruitment for the new positions is pending, the Institution will require salary lapse (estimated $51,000) for the purchase of equipment, supplies and travel. STRI will request additional funding in subsequent years to hire and support additional scientists and technicians.

The urgent issues of deforestation, global warming, and other aspects of global change demand forceful attention. STRI has been performing research with relevance to these issues for more than 60 years. With STRI's experience, locations, and newly enhanced research facilities, expansion of its program in global change research will permit STRI to increase its contributions substantially in this important area of inquiry.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These funds derive from a variety of sources, including receipts and collections from users of Barro Colorado Nature Monument facilities (20 U.S.C. 79b (d)) and annual allotments. Such funds support, in part, the salaries and related costs of the fellowship program, the senior sabbatical program, insurance, supplies, and a long-term collaborative research program with the Forest Research Institute in Malaysia. Funds also support a short-term fellowship program in tropical biology; visiting scientists and students; field research; seminars and lectures; and environmental, conservation, and educational activities in Panama.

Restricted Funds - Funds are in the form of restricted endowments that specify the use of the donation or bequest and gifts and grants from individuals, foundations, organizations, or corporations for specific purposes. These funds further scientific research related to the biological, ecological, and behavioral processes that serve as the basis of tropical ecosystems; research related to geophysical events; publication and distribution of research results; and studies relating to endangered tropical environments. Continuing support from the Exxon Corporation provides short-term tropical biology fellowships and assistance to 30 students from developing Latin American countries.

Government Grants and Contracts - Beginning in FY 1987, the Minerals Management Service of the U.S. Department of the Interior awarded an over $4 million contract to fund a five-year study of the catastrophic oil spill at the Galeta field station.

SMITHSONIAN ENVIRONMENTAL RESEARCH CENTER

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	30	1,426	2	98	-	111	-	30	2	382
FY 1990 -Estimate	37	1,837	2	100	-	98	-	22	2	390
-Base	37	1,872								
FY 1991 Estimate	39	2,071	2	100	-	99	-	15	2	400

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	37	2	39
11 Personnel Compensation	1,044	77	1,121
12 Personnel Benefits	260	22	282
21 Travel	30	0	30
22 Transportation of Things	2	0	2
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	3	0	3
24 Printing & Reproduction	5	0	5
25 Other Services	183	10	193
26 Supplies & Materials	195	90	285
31 Equipment	150	0	150
Total	1,872	199	2,071

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay		49	
Program Funds		150	

ABSTRACT - The Smithsonian Environmental Research Center (SERC) in Edgewater, Maryland, performs basic scientific research on coastal land/water systems. SERC currently occupies 42,000 square feet of laboratory, office, educational, and support space and 2,600 acres of land on the Rhode River, a tidal river system. The interdisciplinary staff, visiting scientists, and students study how land use, air quality, and weather variations affect the movement of nutrients, eroded soil, and other materials through the system; the dynamics of plant and animal populations; and the overall health of the system.

For FY 1991, SERC requests 1 workyear and $150,000 to reinforce its capabilities to collect and analyze research data on global change. The Institution requires $49,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - SERC research aims to attain a better overall understanding of how coastal land/water environmental systems function. Research staff address a wide variety of ecological questions while conducting a long-term interdisciplinary study of a tidal subestuary of the Chesapeake Bay (Rhode River) and its watershed. This watershed contains a mosaic of upland and floodplain forests, marshlands, cropland, pasture, abandoned fields, and residential areas typical of the mid-Atlantic Coastal Plain. The Center has studied such problems as the effects of herbicides on plants in the Chesapeake Bay, the effects of acid rain on deciduous forest and fish reproduction, the role of riparian forests in alleviating pollution from agriculture and the effects of increasing concentrations of atmospheric carbon dioxide on natural communities.

Research Results - As part of a worldwide emphasis, SERC is conducting studies on the impact of global climate change on the environment. SERC published conclusions from three years of field research on the effects of elevated carbon dioxide concentrations on Chesapeake Bay tidal marshes. Researchers at SERC believe rising atmospheric carbon dioxide will have a major impact, both negative and positive, on climate and vegetation. To study this impact, SERC scientists compared Scirpus olneyi and Spartina patens communities. These species have different photosynthetic mechanisms for carbon reduction, and laboratory studies have found significant differences in their responses to elevated carbon dioxide. For Scirpus, elevated carbon dioxide resulted in increased shoot density (30 percent), above and below ground plant material (30 percent and 27 percent, respectively), water use efficiency (133 percent), carbon/nitrogen ratio in above-ground tissues (30 percent), and net photosynthesis (15 percent). However, with increased carbon dioxide, night-time respiration was decreased (40 percent) and the onset of fall senescence was delayed. For Spartina, elevated carbon dioxide had relatively little effect, but water use efficiency increased (77 percent) and night-time respiration decreased (32 percent). Based on the positive effects of elevated carbon dioxide on Scirpus and the negligible effect on Spartina, SERC scientists would expect Scirpus to become the more dominant species.

Understanding how the Earth's atmosphere interacts with forests is crucial to understanding and predicting how climate change will proceed and how altered atmospheric composition will affect forest ecosystems. SERC researchers are studying this phenomenon in a plot of forest at the Edgewater site in Maryland. The scientists studied the chemical interactions of rainwater with the leaves of this area. Leaf species and solution pH (acidity level) both affected the leaching of inorganic ions from seven species found on the site. Decreasing rainwater pH increased the rate of leaching of calcium and magnesium for all species, and the leaching rate of potassium and ammonium for most species. Most species take up sulfate at increased acidity levels. The studies indicate that the increased acidity of rainwater increases foliage nutrient loss through leaching.

SERC scientists continue long-term ecological studies of a dry tropical forest in the state of Quintana Roo, on the Yucatan Peninsula of Mexico. Results over a four-year period show significant annual differences in tree growth and litter production in response to variation in rainfall. However, blossoms and fruit production remained constant year to year. In September 1988, Hurricane Gilbert, the most intense tropical depression ever measured in the Caribbean, impacted this forest. The hurricane left trees standing but defoliated, with damage to most branches. Sprouting of new growth began within three weeks. Vines sprouted profusely in the understory. Leaf litter production nearly doubled. Scientists will follow the recovery of this forest from the hurricane in order to better understand the dynamics of these widespread but little-studied dry tropical forest ecosystems.

The Rhode River estuary is an extremely productive ecosystem. Past SERC research has shown that most of the primary production in this estuary is due to phytoplankton. New studies have focused on the role of planktonic microzooplankton in regulating these phytoplankton populations by grazing. Scientists use dilution and fluorescent dye-labeling techniques to measure grazing rates of specific zooplankton and the overall impact of zooplankton community grazing. In various field experiments, overall grazing by zooplankton reduced phytoplankton potential growth by 45 to 100 percent. The effects of phytoplankton density and species composition as well as the zooplankton species composition are important determinants of grazing rates. A better understanding of these grazing dynamics in conjunction with the effect on phytoplankton growth of nutrients, suspended sediments, light intensity, and dilution rates will allow a better understanding of phytoplankton populations in estuaries.

Solar Research Studies - The Smithsonian pioneered studies in the collection of data on the intensity and spectral distribution of solar radiation on the Earth's surface. For the past several years, a cooperative arrangement with the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) has enhanced these efforts. NOAA has provided office and laboratory space and utilities and has helped operate Smithsonian ultraviolet spectral radiometers at NOAA stations for Global Monitoring of Climatic Change (GMCC). These measurements permit calculation of the concentration of ozone in the atmosphere and the dose of harmful ultraviolet (UV) radiation at the Earth's surface. When ozone concentrations decline, UV doses on Earth increase, with potentially serious consequences. These Smithsonian UV measurements span a complete sun spot cycle, which averages 11 years. These unique data demonstrate the strong interaction of the solar sun spot cycle with the dynamics of ozone concentration changes in the stratosphere. The GMCC network will place into operation a new generation of spectral radiometer, under development at the Smithsonian, in FY 1990. It will allow more refined analyses of the atmospheric dynamics of ozone as well as applications in other regions of the solar spectrum.

Educational Activities - SERC provides a broad range of educational activities, including teacher-led field trips, self-guided nature trails, and guided tours. Groups of students and the general public observe firsthand a variety of natural habitats. A work/learn program enables students to work with scientists, both in the field and in the laboratory. Predoctoral, postdoctoral, and sabbatical programs for professionals at all levels enable visiting researchers to carry out collaborative or independent research at SERC. The results of SERC's research are disseminated through scientific journals, national and international scientific meetings and seminars, the training of scientists, and public education activities.

Facilities - In June 1989, the new Charles McC. Mathias Jr. Laboratory at SERC opened. The laboratory is named for Senator Mathias of Maryland, who served in the U.S. Senate from 1968 to 1986, and who championed legislation to protect the Chesapeake Bay during his Senate career. Constructed as an addition to an existing building, the Mathias Lab provides office and lab space for research programs focusing on ecological interactions that take place on the land and the estuary through the watershed, as well as multidisciplinary research on plant and animal communities and human impact on the landscape. The laboratory also has an instrument room and controlled chambers for growing experimental plants. The opening of the laboratory increased existing laboratory space at SERC by about one-third.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, SERC requests an increase of 1 workyear and $150,000 to reinforce its capabilities to collect and analyze research data on global change.

Global Change Research (1 workyear and $150,000) - The need and urgency for global change research is well recognized both nationally and internationally. SERC is already deeply involved in relevant research at its Edgewater, Maryland site and at field research locations around the globe. To keep pace with the expanded study and collection of data on this subject, SERC requires additional personnel and advanced computer technology to properly manage and analyze this information.

As part of this research, SERC is studying the effects of increased atmospheric carbon dioxide concentrations and the interactions of the earth with the forest canopy. SERC is also working with the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI) on a global change project. This program will compare data on the interaction of the atmosphere in the forest ecosystems at Edgewater with similar data from Barro Colorado Island in Panama. With funding provided in FY 1990, SERC will hire two environmental engineers to conduct this research, one stationed at SERC and the other at STRI.

Global change initiatives, such as these, generate immense volumes of data. The proper management and analysis of these data bases are essential for accurate reporting of research results. For FY 1991, SERC requests funds to hire an ecosystem modeler to manage and analyze the data bases. Funds also will support the upgrading of the SERC computer system.

The importance of global change underscores the growing need for continued research. The results of this research will increase the nation's and the world's understanding and knowledge of this subject and, therefore, assist scientists in developing future solutions to the problems associated with global change.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These funds, provided by allotments, support special events, work/learn and fellowship programs, and the salary costs of a docent coordinator and a public program director.

Restricted Funds - Donations, bequests, and foundation grants designated for specific subjects of investigation constitute these funds. For FY 1990, a grant from the World Wildlife Fund will continue to support investigation of the effects of land use changes in the Yucatan Peninsula upon migratory bird populations that nest in the Chesapeake region and winter in Mexico.

Government Grants and Contracts - Various Federal and State agencies supply funds for special projects conducted at SERC utilizing the expertise of the staff and the unique physical site characteristics. A grant from the Chesapeake Research Consortium supports research on the nutrient dynamics of the Chesapeake Bay watershed system, while a grant from the U.S. Department of Energy advances the study of greenhouse effects on marshes.

NATIONAL ZOOLOGICAL PARK

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	339	14,190	1	144	3	616	1	317	-	207
FY 1990 -Estimate	349	14,569	1	134	3	661	1	1,223	-	132
-Base	349	14,896								
FY 1991 Estimate	354	15,391	1	134	3	677	1	1,574	-	120

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	349	5	354
11 Personnel Compensation	10,957	385	11,342
12 Personnel Benefits	1,850	85	1,935
21 Travel	58	0	58
22 Transportation of Things	12	0	12
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	78	0	78
24 Printing & Reproduction	19	0	19
25 Other Services	408	0	408
26 Supplies & Materials	1,289	25	1,314
31 Equipment	207	0	207
Collections Acquisition	15	0	15
42 Insurance Claims & Indemnities	3	0	3
Total	14,896	495	15,391

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	395
Program Funds	100

ABSTRACT - Since 1889, the primary mission of the National Zoological Park (NZP) has been the advancement of science and the instruction and recreation of the people. The Zoo's living collection, open to the public, occupies 163 acres at Rock Creek Park in Washington, D.C. The Zoo also maintains the Conservation and Research Center (CRC), a major conservation, animal breeding, and research facility on 3,150 acres in Front Royal, Virginia. Through its programs in research, conservation, animal health,

and education, NZP serves the public and specialized audiences and promotes understanding of animal adaptations and evolution and the interaction of wildlife with the environment.

For FY 1991, the National Zoological Park requests an increase of 2 workyears and $100,000 to support its global change program. The Institution requires $395,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The major programs of the National Zoo are living exhibits, animal management, animal conservation and propagation, research, and public education and information. At the Rock Creek site, NZP cares for more than 4,544 animals comprising 481 species and approximately 1,400 plant species. The Zoo chooses its species primarily for their interest to the public and their contribution to research and conservation. At the Conservation and Research Center, the Zoo maintains over 700 animals representing 38 species whose status in the wild is precarious. These animals form the basis for the Center's long-term breeding and research program.

The National Zoo has certain features in common with other Smithsonian public facilities and some features that are unique within the Smithsonian Institution. Through its public functions of education and recreation, entertainment in the broad sense, the Zoo seeks to enhance public awareness about biology and related subjects. The Zoo concerns itself with all aspects of animal and plant life, both terrestrial and aquatic, small and large, past and present.

Since its first appearance, humankind has been an increasing influence on life on Earth, and biological history is an increasing concern of the Zoo as it attempts to represent the whole of life on earth, plant and animal, in all its complexity and glory. To this end, the Zoo will transform the animal-only zoological park into a biological park that will highlight the relationships of animals and plants. By displaying the spectacle and beauty of life on Earth, the BioPark will instill in visitors a concern for the future of all life in all its forms. This holistic approach will combine living exhibits of plants and animals with museum-type exhibits of structures, such as skeletons and fossils, and will make correlations with other Smithsonian entities.

Living Exhibits - The National Zoo exhibits animals primarily to excite Zoo visitors about biology and the natural world. It is rapidly shifting its focus from animal exhibits to BioPark themes, shedding traditional divisions between plants and animals, aquatic and terrestrial life, vertebrates and invertebrates, and even science and art. Museum exhibits have long put living things in separate aquariums, botanical gardens, and natural history and art museums. The BioPark emphasis displays the interrelation between plants and animals, living and extinct organisms, water and land, form and function. The idea of the BioPark also extends beyond formal exhibits to encompass such areas as butterfly gardens, which grow food plants to attract species of a local butterfly. Colorful graphics and labels identify the butterflies and the plants on which they feed. The BioPark will also show the effect of human activities on nature, including domestication, farming, hunting, and art.

In FY 1989, the Zoo opened a new 700-square-foot bat exhibit, located on the ground floor of the Lion-Tiger Exhibit. Visitors enter a cave where 160 bats of two species fly actively back and forth and roost on dead tree limbs and in a hollow tree. A pool and waterfall further enhance the exhibit.

The Zoo reopened the renovated elephant house in 1989. The interior of the building now features new sky lights and extensive planters full of tropical plants. The outside exhibits for elephants, rhinos, and hippos are in the process of renovation to provide a more pleasing naturalistic setting for the animals. The Zoo revised all interpretive materials in the elephant area including signs that explain important features of the biology of the animals.

The newly renovated Wetlands Exhibit, located in front of the Bird House, also opened in FY 1989. This naturalistic, thoughtful setting, surrounded by aquatic plants, will come alive each spring with the elaborate courtship rituals of ducks, geese, and swans.

Dorcas gazelles, hammerhead bats, spider monkeys, piping guans, emerald tree boas, and water dragons were among the nearly one thousand births and hatchings at the Zoo in 1989. Included in this total are some endangered species, such as Cuban crocodiles, Guam rails, Bali mynahs, and golden lion tamarins. Two new endangered species acquired by the Zoo, the Micronesian kingfisher and Sumatran tiger, are significant additions to the Zoo's exhibit program.

Animal Management - Two veterinary hospitals, one at Rock Creek and one at Front Royal, serve as the backbone of the medical and research programs of the Zoo's Department of Animal Health (DAH) and Department of Pathology (DP). The good health of the collection results from an aggressive approach and strong preventive medical program, with laboratory and pathology support from DP for all medical programs. The current medical case load consists of approximately 3,300 cases each year with about 525 animals hospitalized and 300 animals quarantined before joining the collection.

Some recurring medical problems become projects for the Zoo's applied clinical research program. These projects include a study of the epidemiology, treatment, and control of Shigellosis in primates, especially the Zoo's gibbons. Shigella infections, common in primates, cause morbidity and death and are a public health concern for the keepers. This study will use a new generation of antibiotic to eliminate the carrier state of the disease, followed by a vaccine to prevent its recurrence. The results of this study will help protect other primate collections and help explain how the disease affects humans. While studying the effect of the antibiotic, researchers will measure its level in the animals to ensure an adequate, but nontoxic dose. Zoo researchers are running this antibiotic study concurrently with similar studies on the Zoo's patient populations, including free-living elephants in Africa and cuttlefish housed in the new invertebrate facility.

Cystinuria, complicated with kidney and bladder stones, is an ongoing problem among the Zoo's maned wolf population. Researchers have tried surgical treatment for the stones with only short-term results. Studies assess whether diet is one method of control. Other studies assess whether new drug treatments for stone formation in humans can apply to wolves. This drug may help in treating the endangered maned wolves, 85 percent of which test positive for cystinuria.

The Zoo's studies of anesthesia continue, both in the collection animals at NZP and in free-living animals in Africa, Australia, and Brazil. Safe anesthesia is mandatory for medical and surgical care and aids in field studies of free-living species. The Zoo also uses applied clinical research on free-living specimens to better understand the medical problems of captive populations. For example, some scientists question the reliability of intradermal tuberculin in diagnosing tuberculosis (TB) in elephants. The staff tested free-living elephants in Africa, where TB was not reported, and found that some animals reacted positively to the TB test. This result has led to further study of blood and tissue samples. That will explain the causes of the apparent false-positive reactions, a continuing enigma in many nondomestic hoofstock.

Other problems the staff is studying include diaphragmatic defects in captive golden lion tamarins, a species the Zoo is reintroducing to wild populations in Brazil. One question concerns whether the reintroduction of this species of tamarin can endanger the free-living species. To answer the question, the staff will conduct a field study in Brazil using radiographs and ultrasound to evaluate the wild population for the diaphragmatic defects, and ovarian cysts. Once researchers determine the status of these wild tamarins, then they can make decisions about which animals to release. DAH is also diagnosing and evaluating other medical problems in golden lion tamarins such as gallstones and ovarian cysts.

During FY 1989, DAH developed and organized a national workshop on "Research Priorities for Single Species Conservation Biology," cosponsored with the National Science Foundation. For four days, Zoo staff and renowned experts in reproduction, natural populations and release biology, and small population biology exchanged insights. One outcome was a detailed document that identifies specific research areas of conservation biology worth Federal and private research support.

DAH's Reproductive Physiology Programs (RPP) continued their pioneering role in applying biotechniques to studying and conserving endangered species. Little data on breeding wild animals exist, and scientists have debated the best reproductive techniques for enhancing breeding and maintaining genetic diversity in wild animal stock. A sound understanding of reproductive processes is necessary for enhancing the breeding of any species. By taking a physiological research approach, scientists have achieved many improvements in the domestic livestock industry and many clinical successes in overcoming human infertility.

The objectives of the RPP are to:

-- study the breeding process in some captive and free-living wildlife species;

-- use biotechnology to assess and combat infertility;

-- consider the application of artificial breeding of captive endangered species;

-- create an international genetic resource to maintain biodiversity.

In 1989, RPP continued research efforts in endocrinology, embryology, fertility, and sperm/embryo freezing. Major research grants from the National Institutes of Health, the Scholarly Studies Program of the Smithsonian Institution, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and the National Science Foundation expanded these programs.

The Endocrine Research Laboratory (ERL) continued to make great strides in the noninvasive monitoring of hormones in wildlife species. Zoo staff completed projects to document the breeding cycle of the endangered Eld's deer, Pere David's deer, and Przewalski's horse. Researchers refined techniques for diagnosing pregnancy and gestation in these species, thereby enhancing species recovery plans. The staff developed new laboratory techniques to study, for the first time, the unique endocrine system of the free-living dwarf mongoose in the Serengeti National Park. This species lives in packs in which only one adult female actively reproduces. Zoo researchers speculate that these studies will reveal how dominance behavior affects breeding success.

The ERL applied urinary hormone technology for the first time in 1989 to the seasonally breeding male Eld's deer. Little is known about the endocrine systems of male wildlife species, and the Zoo hopes that this research will lead to the regulation of testis function, thereby improving the breeding chances of subfertile males. The past year also brought a new research fellow to the ERL, an expert in monitoring hormonal levels in fecal material. This technique gives another noninvasive way to assess breeding status in nervous wildlife species. A long-term project in the Mikumi National Park, Tanzania, uses this technique to study dominance behavior in free-living baboons.

The RPP continues its leadership in studying sperm and egg interaction in carnivores. Researchers completed many basic projects to refine laboratory techniques for in vitro fertilization (IVF) in domestic and rare species of cats. Staff placed particular emphasis on the effect of abnormal sperm, common in many endangered species, on the IVF process. New results showed that IVF could produce embryos of a highly endangered subspecies, such as the Florida panther, even when using 99 percent abnormal sperm. These new findings provide hope that rare animals, even those that are infertile, can reproduce by reproductive biotechnology.

The newest direction in embryology research involves taking genetic material from animals that die abruptly. Immature eggs can be collected directly from the ovaries of such animals, stimulated to grow and mature in vitro and then used to produce embryos by IVF. Studies in the domestic cat showed that 54 percent of collected eggs would mature in the laboratory, and 34 percent of these fertilized and developed to 16-cell-stage embryos. Researchers have started pilot projects using ovaries collected from the bobcat, tiger, leopard, and puma. Comparable maturation rates have resulted and some of these eggs have fertilized in vitro.

The Zoo continues to explore new methods for evaluating fertility and for artificially breeding rare species. Staff modified the in vitro fertilization system to assess fertility in some rare species. In 1989, researchers completed major studies documenting the usefulness of laboratory tests for evaluating fertility of domestic and nondomestic cat species. They also developed new techniques that could use IVF to assess the fertility of free-ranging species. Procedures using salt-stored eggs, for example, could assess the semen quality of species in the field. Two major field projects in the Kruger National Park also have provided new information. One field project involved studying the breeding season and endocrine system of the free-living impala and cape buffalo. The other involved the response of male African elephants to a synthetic hypothalamic hormone. It will help develop hormone treatments that control the unpredictable and aggressive behavior of captive bull elephants, thereby improving the safety and efficiency of captive breeding programs.

DAH has played a major role in the Zoo's black-footed ferret breeding program. Working with the Conservation and Research Center staff, DAH monitored the breeding activities of females by examining vaginal cells to decide the best time to introduce the male, a technique that could also detect vaginal sperm. Even though all the Zoo's animals were young and sexually inexperienced, three of four females became pregnant. They produced seven offspring, five of which survive. Research in the artificial breeding of ferrets continued. Artificial insemination produced young in the closely related Siberian Polecat. Sperm that had been frozen and then thawed were deposited directly in the uterus using a laparoscope. In 1989, the same procedure successfully produced domestic kittens for the first time. This procedure holds promise for a variety of rare species of cats.

Animal Conservation and Propagation - The Conservation and Research Center plays a leading role in wildlife conservation through its programs in breeding endangered species, inter-disciplinary research, and international training. CRC provides a unique environment for long-term breeding of endangered species, including mammals such as black-footed ferrets, Przewalski's horses, Arabian oryx, Burmese brow-antlered deer, clouded leopards, maned wolves, and red pandas, and birds such as Guam rails, Micronesian kingfishers, Bali mynahs, and red-crowned and white-naped cranes. The Center is one of two facilities in the country that is presently breeding black-footed ferrets. The success of this program is extremely encouraging, and plans are now underway to begin reintroducing captive-bred ferrets to the wild in 1991. To ensure that these reintroductions are successful, the Center's staff have been using the Siberian Polecat as a research surrogate to develop and test various rearing, pre-release conditioning, and reintroduction methods. The past year also saw a major step forward in the rescue program for the Guam rail, a species that was extirpated from the wild by an introduced snake and has been maintained only in captivity since 1985. In cooperation with the Government of Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Marianas, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, the University of Tennessee, and 12 mainland zoos, captive-bred rails are now being reintroduced to the snake-free island of Rota. The Center initiated a research and breeding program for Hawaiian birds during the past year with the acquisition of six Amakihi. Although not endangered, these small Hawaiian birds are part of a cooperative program to develop capture, transport, breeding and husbandry procedures that can be applied eventually to other closely related, and highly endangered Hawaiian species. The program will expand in the next year with the acquisition of two additional species--the Iiwi and Omao. Zoo staff members are managing many other endangered species at the Center under cooperative Species Survival Plans. Through these programs, the Zoo will continue its leadership role in endangered species propagation, research, and reintroduction.

Besides the research activities of the Zoo staff, CRC continues each year to serve more than 30 visiting scientists, students, and volunteers who conduct research on animals in the collection or on native flora and fauna. During the past seven years, more than 350 individuals from more than 35 developing countries have participated in Wildlife Conservation and Management, and Zoo Biology and Captive Animal Management courses at the Center. The Wildlife Conservation and Management Training course is given for two months each summer at the Center, and at overseas locations three times a year. This year, living quarters were extensively renovated and expanded to accommodate participants from Peru, Brazil, Ecuador, Bolivia, Guatemala, Mexico, Tanzania, Kenya, Liberia, Thailand, Indonesia, and the Philippines. One instructor recently went to Malaysia to help its wildlife department develop independent training and environmental education programs.

Over the past two years, NZP has conducted the Zoo Biology and Captive Animal Management training course for more than 120 mid-level zoo managers in Thailand, Malaysia, Brazil, Guatemala, and China. This program promotes conservation through the urban zoos of tropical countries and receives broad support. The Zoo has received requests for this training program from Morocco, Mexico, Argentina, and Indonesia.

The Zoo recently expanded conservation activities in Southeast Asia by hiring an international conservation officer to work directly with government and nongovernment organizations in Thailand, Malaysia, and Indonesia. This specialist will identify and address specific conservation training, management, and research needs. With the help of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Center staff members gave a workshop on microcomputer data management and analysis at the Bombay Natural History Society in India in early 1989. The Zoo recently received a Smithson Society grant to develop a worldwide electronic conservation bulletin board using microcomputers. This undertaking will enable a rapid international exchange of information on conservation and research issues among interested parties in both urban areas and remote field locations.

Research - A program of research and development is fundamental to scientific and technological advancement in all NZP program areas but especially to the fields of population and habitat conservation and captive propagation. To this end, the Department of Zoological Research is involved in a number of interrelated pure and applied research initiatives. Among these are the ecological, demographic and genetic assessment of wild and captive animal populations over the long and short term, comparative studies of mating systems in birds and mammals, factors influencing individual reproductive success, and the behavioral and physiological bases of growth and reproduction in a variety of vertebrate species. Subsumed within these initiatives are pre- and postdoctoral level training, collaborations with specialists within and outside the Smithsonian Institution and the integration of research results with the exhibition and education functions of NZP.

The success of NZP programs in conservation and propagation depends largely upon the Zoo's research. The reintroduction of the golden lion tamarins to the forests of Brazil would not have been possible without sophisticated and painstaking research on the structure of the social and family life of tamarins, including their foraging and feeding behavior, diet, metabolism, and genetics. The Zoo's field ecology program in the Poco das Antas Reserve, Brazil, focuses on the mating system, social organization, and communication systems of golden lion tamarins. Studies involve the ecology of associated vertebrates and invertebrates so that scientists can predict how and why the future population might expand. Scientists in Brazil are also planning research efforts in the endangered southeastern coastal rain forest of that country. By developing two new field stations, they can compare the fauna and flora of the different habitats in this nearly destroyed region.

A major new finding resulting from population assessment and surveys of habitat use in a large taxonomic grouping of neotropical migrant birds provides definitive evidence that local habitat degradation can have geographically far-reaching, and possibly global, effects on some vertebrate populations. Zoo research staff, in collaboration with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, has demonstrated that tropical deforestation in Mexico is having a measurably depressing effect on populations of forest dwelling migratory bird species in local neotropical winter ranges and thence on population numbers of summer ranges in North America. The cause and effect relationship is so strong that the FWS Breeding Bird Survey has reported significant declines in North American populations of such once common species as the woodthrush, the redstart and the red-eyed vireo. As yet effects on the ecology of North American forests that may result from habitat disturbances several thousands of miles away are undetermined.

Long-term studies of the vertebrates of the llanos region of Venezuela continue. Researchers focus on the social interaction among troops of howler monkeys when invaded by nontroop males. These invasions often lead to infanticide in mammals, a frequent occurrence whose function is being hotly debated.

Field studies of endangered species are yielding ecological and behavioral data useful for their preservation. Studies of the interaction of kit foxes, coyotes, and red foxes in the protected Carrizo Plain of California are seeking to determine why the number of endangered kit foxes are declining and to develop strategies for their preservation. NZP scientists are also charting the restoration of degraded habitat, studying methods to encourage support for conservation by local communities, testing new techniques to help tamarins survive in the Poco das Antas Reserve, and conducting studies of rare and little known small mammals such as the unique bamboo rat.

Research at the Zoo concentrates on understanding influences on the biology and behavior of animals. One major area of interest is growth. Studies focus on the natural growth patterns of different species to determine the course of development and evolutionary basis for species differences in adult behavior. For example, scientists are conducting studies that show the interaction of inborn behavior with learned behavior. Researchers apply these studies of learning to training adults and young of zoo-born animals for survival in the wild. The Zoo also compares the play patterns of ungulate juveniles to determine if the infant antelope who follows its mother from birth differs from the one who hides during the first weeks of life.

Studies by Zoo staff members have resulted in new understanding of the growth of marine mammals. The Zoo has reference data on the milk composition and concurrent growth and development of several species of seals and sea lions. With these data, scientists can correlate growth rates with ecological and evolutionary factors. Zoo researchers studying the endangered monk seal of Hawaii are examining the fact that female seals nurse other pups besides their own. The competition among the seal pups may result in some animals not receiving enough food to live. This behavior may derive from ecological conditions, and it may be contributing to the decline of monk seals. Future studies will assess whether the degree of fostering varies in different habitats.

A major new research project at the Zoo focuses on genetics. A population genetics study will aid in the long-term viability of zoo populations of critically endangered species. NZP scientists are developing computerized demographic models and long-term breeding plans for zoo populations of tigers, Asian lions, and golden lion tamarins. The Zoo's genetics specialists give advice on many international programs for endangered species, including Bali mynahs, California condors, black-footed ferrets, and tigers.

The use of several new molecular genetics techniques still support the conclusion that the three forms of lion tamarins, though very different in appearance, are almost the same biochemically. Recent studies comparing the lion tamarins with other tamarin species suggest that genetic similarity is specific to them and that other marmoset and tamarin species have more genetic variation. The Zoo is expanding technical expertise and state-of-the-art DNA fingerprinting techniques to document the pedigrees of captive colonies.

An analysis of the genetic variability of two endangered bird species, the Guam rail and the Guam kingfisher, both extinct in the wild due to depredation by an introduced snake, will permit the choice of genetically variable individuals for pairing during a future reintroduction.

Zoo staff members are conducting important new studies on the relationship among mating systems, reproductive behavior, and genetic paternity. Studies of the behavior of purple martins suggest that the young male from this colonial breeding species is not always the father of the young for which it cares. Similar results for other species of birds and mammals suggest that researchers must re-evaluate current theory concerning kin selection and the evolution of social behavior.

The Zoo continues to make major advances in the study of animal communication. The development of a new heart-rate monitoring technique in birds now allows NZP to evaluate the physiological responses of birds to potentially stressful situations, including social interactions. Initial studies have shown that when stressed, the heart rate of sparrows nearly doubles, to 1,000 beats per minute. Scientists will be able to determine whether the singing of other birds or interaction with other birds during territorial encounters results in a comparable stress level. Studies will also focus on whether the function of singing by tropical songbirds differs fundamentally from singing by temperate climate songbirds. Evidence suggests that the former use song to locate others of the same species and that the latter use song to disturb listeners and transmit distance information. Scientists also are conducting in-depth studies of vocal and long distance communications of the giant pandas and golden lion tamarins as mechanisms for promoting successful breeding and maintaining group isolation and cohesion.

Numerous projects now keep the Zoo's energetics laboratory busy. The successful application of energetic evaluation techniques to studies of mammal breeding strategies has led to an increase in research projects asking energetically related questions.

In recent years the increase in research programs, students, and research associates has strained the dispersed, outdated, and cramped facilities at the Department of Zoological Research. In mid-1988, NZP initiated extensive renovation of the Research Building. When completed, it will provide modern laboratory suites for nutrition, energetics, and video and audio analysis for the growing Department. The Zoo will have improved and enlarged animal holding and office space.

Public Education and Information - A major unifying theme of public and educational programming during 1989 has been reflection on the first 100 years of the National Zoo and its progress during that time. A second theme stressed by educational and public information programs is the urgent need for wildlife and habitat conservation.

The Zoo seeks to inform and educate the large and diverse audience it serves through a wide range of creative programs, exhibits, and materials. The National Zoo News, a newspaper for area teachers, keeps them informed about the Zoo and its many educational offerings, ranging from multi-visit hands-on programs to single-visit programs. Teacher-training workshops represent a key component of school programs. Outreach for schools in the Washington metropolitan area includes loan kits for teachers that feature objects, books, and related curriculum materials. The emphasis in recent years has been on activity-based programs, in which students closely observe animals. A dozen such programs are available, including "Dinosaurs and Living Reptiles," a two-visit program jointly conducted with the National Museum of Natural History; "Invertebrates"; and "Zoo Animals: A Closer Look," a six-visit program for city schoolchildren and their teachers. Symposia instruct high school students in research and conservation.

With its support society, the Friends of the National Zoo, the Zoo offers adult classes in conservation, animal behavior, and exotic animal medicine. Participants completing six courses receive certificates in wildlife studies. To date, several hundred people have received certificates, and many more have enrolled in the classes.

The Zoo is emphasizing cooperation with other Smithsonian bureaus by creating two joint programs in 1989. With the National Portrait Gallery and the National Museum of Natural History, the Zoo developed and tested the innovative "Bison, Butterflies, and Naturalists," which gives junior high school students an integrated understanding of historical and contemporary problems in conservation. With the National Museum of American History, the Zoo is experimenting to find new forms of informal learning to offer general visitors to the Zoo and the Museum. Methods include theater, demonstrations, hands-on activities and instruments to improve viewing.

The Zoo regularly creates educational exhibits to accompany and explain new animal exhibits. In 1989 and 1990, these will include the new Australia Exhibit and major renovations of the Bat Cave, Elephant House, and Great Flight Cage. Every year the Zoo conducts a program of identification and information labels on a range of subjects as diverse as the Zoo's collection, which change with new animals and new information about them. Other exhibits are also an integral part of the program. "A Walk through History," which draws upon the Zoo's rich photographic archives to depict its first 100 years, will be on display at sites throughout the Zoo during the Centennial year. A program of changing "Science in the Park" exhibits will begin in 1990. In cooperation with the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES), the Zoo is creating a traveling exhibition "The Good, the Bad, and the Cuddly: Human Perceptions of, and Attitudes toward, Animals." "Zoo Ark," a traveling exhibit created by the National Zoo, continues to circulate under the auspices of SITES, conveying information about zoos and worldwide conservation programs to family audiences throughout the country.

The Zoo's Master Graphics Plan aims at renovating all forms of orientation for the public to draw attention to the Zoo's Centennial, reflect the philosophy of the BioPark, and show major physical changes, especially the redirection and improvement to Olmsted Walk. As the first step, Zoo staff created an entirely new map brochure for all visitors.

Both in Washington, D.C., and across the United States, people share in the achievements of the Zoo through print, television, film, symposia and lectures, and cultural events. Special programs during 1989 highlighted the Zoo's Centennial, especially the opening ceremony on March 2, 1989, which featured First Lady Barbara Bush. In June an unprecedented all-day Community Open House presented behind-the-scenes work at the Zoo, previewed the Smithsonian-Kodak home video on the Zoo, and offered live music and other performances.

Continuing its successful ten-year-old program of public symposia on important zoo-related subjects, the Zoo presented "The History and Future of Zoos." The regular program of lectures sponsored by the Zoo was extended and a special series was sponsored by the Smithsonian Resident Associate Program. The Zoo's Centennial was featured in Smithsonian magazine and in a one-hour "Smithsonian World" program called ZOO.

Through these and many other programs, news and feature stories, publications, and other activities, the Zoo directly focused public attention on issues important to biology, wildlife, and conservation and engaged new audiences to increase public understanding of these topics. In addition, a lively and diverse series of musical performances at the winter holidays and on summer evenings, continued to reach out to new audiences and acquaint them with the Zoo and its missions.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the National Zoological Park requests an increase of 2 workyears and $100,000 to support its global change program.

Global Change Program (2 workyears and $100,000) - Recent evidence of population declines in migratory landbirds in North America are thought to be due directly to the habitat destruction and degradation that has occurred on mainly tropical wintering grounds over the past decades. This massive clearing of forest in Central and South America represents a major "experiment" on the effect of habitat limitation on bird populations. The fact is that we face a "Silent Spring" due to global change and will now study the effects of massive habitat destruction in one area of the globe on animal and plant communities in the United States.

North America is home to over 120 species of breeding landbirds that annually migrate to the tropics to over-winter. These birds not only have immense cultural and recreational value, but they protect temperate forests from damage by reducing populations of defoliating insects. They are part of the complex chains of the North American temperate forests, and the ultimate impact of their loss on North American temperate habitats due to habitat destruction in the southern portion of their range will provide researchers with important information about critical resource requirements of species immediately threatened due to global change. The 120 neotropical migratory bird species will act as sentinels; their fate over the coming decades will give the Zoo staff a foretaste of the impact of wholesale habitat destruction.

In FY 1991 the Zoo proposes to hire an avian ecologist (1 workyear and $46,000) and a biotechnician (1 workyear and $29,000) to study the effects of habitat destruction on migratory bird populations. This research will provide important data on methods for mitigating the effect of the massive global alterations. This Zoo staff will examine the little known role of the tropical forests in sustaining migratory bird populations and the effect of the destruction of critical tropical habitats. The research will establish techniques for translocating animals between forest fragments and for rearing and maintaining captive animals in conditions sufficiently similar to those in the wild. The goal of this research program will be the eventual return of animals to the wild.

The Zoo will use the remaining $25,000 to purchase necessary laboratory supplies for the Genetic Resource Bank. With funding provided in FY 1990 the Zoo has developed a program that will facilitate international efforts to preserve rare and threatened sources of animal biodiversity. The program has three functions: (1) fundamental research in the discipline of low temperature biology and storage of viable biological cells (especially sperm, embryos and tissues but also eventually plants and plant germ plasm); (2) develop and apply new concepts in cryobiology and state-of-the-art techniques of controlled breeding to conservation and propagation of rare animals; and (3) training of intra- and extramural scientists in the application of cryobiological techniques to archival and conservation activities.

This funding for the purchase of routine laboratory supplies for the Genetic Resource Bank will ensure that the Zoo remains in the forefront of research in this area and will permit a controlling influence on systems and materials subject to global change yet crucial to world conservation of biodiversity.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These funds come from a variety of sources, including allotments and fees for services and general use of the facilities by Trust-fund units or outside organizations. The Zoo uses these funds to support and maintain its facilities, purchase plants and animals for the collection, support a number of three-year assistantship programs, purchase scientific and research equipment, and meet the salary and support costs of the director.

Restricted Funds - Gifts and foundation grants continue to support specific research projects, programs, and the acquisition of animals for exhibit purposes. The Zoo receives outside funding from several foundations and organizations to support the training of zoo professionals from developing nations in wildlife management and zoo management. The Zoo's reintroduction programs continue to receive support from various organizations. On a limited basis, NZP receives funding, usually from private donors, for the purchase of animals for the collection.

Government Grants and Contracts - The Zoo has received funding from various government agencies and departments to support specific research projects. The research staff received a grant from the National Science Foundation (NSF) to study endocrine function in the free-living dwarf mongoose of the Serengeti National Park. A second grant from NSF funded a conference on Research Priorities for Single Species Conservation Biology. Zoo researchers are conducting a study of in vitro fertilization in domestic and nondomestic cat species with a grant from the National Institutions of Child Health and Human Development. A five-year grant from the National Institutes of Health, Division of Research Resources, supports a study on fertility and artificial breeding techniques in rare cats. The research staff is conducting a study of artificial breeding techniques in domestic ferrets with a grant from the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. This work with domestic ferrets is a first step to a major research project for the endangered black-footed ferret.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION ARCHIVES

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	13	592	6	201	-	24	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	15	613	6	215	-	-	-	-	-	-
-Base	15	626								
FY 1991 Estimate	15	639	6	215	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	15	0	15
11 Personnel Compensation	476	11	487
12 Personnel Benefits	60	2	62
21 Travel	4	0	4
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	9	0	9
24 Printing & Reproduction	1	0	1
25 Other Services	34	0	34
26 Supplies & Materials	22	0	22
31 Equipment	20	0	20
Total	626	13	639

Analysis of Increase

		Proposed Adjustments	
Necessary Pay		13	
Program Funds		0	

ABSTRACT - The Smithsonian Institution Archives (SIA) is the official repository of Smithsonian Institution records. SIA acquires records of the Institution's work and documentation of American science, technology, and museums and keeps them as evidence of the Smithsonian's past for future research.

Located in the Arts and Industries Building, the facility is convenient to principal users. A records center on North Capitol Street holds inactive records awaiting disposition. Remote storage for records that exceed central storage limits is in leased space in Springfield, Virginia. Modification of an existing building at the Conservation Research Center, Front Royal, Virginia is underway for security storage of documents.

For FY 1991, the Institution requires $13,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line item.

PROGRAM - The Smithsonian Institution Archives acquires, keeps, and services the Institution's historical records. Archives staff members locate documents to assist scholarly studies, and advise the Secretary and principal officers on archives and records management. They coordinate and advise archives work of bureau-based documentation centers throughout the Institution. They also provide advice to other museum archives around the country.

In FY 1989, the Archives began a multi-stage project to conserve deteriorating original architectural drawings of Smithsonian Buildings designated as national historic sites. In addition, the Archives rehouses historical records in alkaline folders and boxes to help retard natural deterioration. The Archives staff also identifies items of high intrinsic value, which are removed from regular files and preserved separately, replacing them with photocopies for general reference use. SIA published a general guide to archival, manuscript, and special collections resources throughout the Institution. Other publications included guides to the records of the Office of the Secretary (Samuel P. Langley) and to animal-related records at the National Zoological Park. SIA copied 3,500 nitrate negatives onto safety film and destroyed the negatives. Another 8,600 negatives in temporary remote storage await copying.

Statistical Summary of SIA Activity

	FY 1987	FY 1988	FY 1989
Total Holdings at Year-end (cubic feet)	13,441	14,393	15,830
Accessions Added (cubic feet)	1,334	1,070	530
Reference Inquiries	1,538	1,610	1,556
Items Provided to Researchers	5,552	6,148	5,625
Pages of Copy Provided Researchers	27,644	28,431	16,134

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Provided by annual allotment, these funds cover the salaries, benefits, and support costs for an archivist and an archives technician. They also support a temporary archives specialist and three program assistants engaged in a photographic collections project and the production of a guide to those collections.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION LIBRARIES

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	97	5,150	10	424	-	38	-	1	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	106	5,377	11	417	-	2	-	13	-	-
-Base	106	5,463								
FY 1991 Estimate	107	5,571	11	417	-	1	-	-	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	106	1	107
11 Personnel Compensation	3,295	84	3,379
12 Personnel Benefits	713	24	737
21 Travel	24	0	24
22 Transportation of Things	11	0	11
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	38	0	38
24 Printing & Reproduction	114	0	114
25 Other Services	609	0	609
26 Supplies & Materials	339	0	339
31 Equipment	320	0	320
Total	5,463	108	5,571

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	108
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Smithsonian Institution Libraries (SIL) serves the Institution and the public by providing information resources and services to support Smithsonian research, curatorial, publication, and administrative activities and participation in the creation of a national bibliographic data base and programs for publications, exhibitions, and interlibrary loans. Its collections of more than one million volumes, including more than 20,000 journals, are available to Smithsonian and outside scholars through a system of 14 branch libraries. SIL purchases books for all Smithsonian organizations and coordinates requests for automated information sources.

These services help to avoid duplication of library-related procedures, materials and expenses within the Institution. The Institution requires $108,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The Smithsonian Institution Libraries provides both centralized and decentralized services. The central collections support multi-disciplinary research and emphasize interdisciplinary topics such as management, fundraising, conservation, and museology. The specialized collections in the branch libraries are outstanding in natural history, American ethnology and culture, tropical biology, African art, decorative arts and design, astrophysics, the history of science and technology, aeronautics and astronautics, conservation research, and horticulture. SIL's collections include approximately 35,000 rare books, primarily in science, technology, applied art, aerospace, and natural history. The largest of these rare book collections is the Dibner Library, which has 19,000 volumes and manuscripts on the history of science and technology.

The Libraries carries out its responsibilities through three operational divisions: the Research Services Division, charged with direct reference assistance to Smithsonian researchers; the Collections Management Division, responsible for the selection, acquisition, and preservation of library collections; and the Automated Systems Division, which manages SIL bibliographic data bases, catalogues and maintains inventory control of SIL collections, and coordinates all automation of SIL operations. By centralizing acquisitions and cataloguing, preservation and conservation activities, administrative services, and interdisciplinary reference/information services, SIL has achieved system and cost efficiencies.

Research Services - The Research Services Division of the Smithsonian Institution Libraries provides direct library services to its users. SIL collections and services are accessible to users through 14 branch libraries and a service annex. SIL houses the collections in Smithsonian buildings on and off the Mall, including Cambridge, Massachusetts, New York City, and Panama. SIL allocates staff to branches based primarily on the size of the collections and the extent to which Smithsonian staff, visiting scholars and researchers, and the general public use each library. All branches offer sophisticated subject and information science expertise to provide users with the information they require.

In FY 1989, the Research Services Division introduced a revised form for reporting statistics, and correcting anomalies in the collection of data. For example, previous reporting methods counted intralibrary loans twice: first by the branch that loaned a volume to another branch, and second by the latter branch when the volume circulated to a borrower. Since a single volume is involved, that now counts as only one transaction. As a result, for the first time, the following statistics reflect actual transactions. In FY 1989, SIL circulated 23,184 items to borrowers. Locating articles and monographs not held by SIL requires searching both electronic data bases and printed indexes and catalogues. Once located, SIL either borrows the item from another institution or purchases a copy. SIL's participation in national computerized networks facilitates rapid retrieval of the requested item. Upon receipt, SIL then delivers the item to the user. Increasingly, SIL staff rely on commercial document delivery services to make information from professional journals more rapidly available. During FY 1989, SIL borrowed 10,539 items through the Library of Congress, other libraries and document delivery services.

In addition to borrowing items for Smithsonian researchers, SIL lends items to other libraries nationwide. In FY 1989 SIL loaned 4,639 volumes and photocopies from

SIL collections to users in other libraries via interlibrary loan, and 6,585 to users within the Institution.

The Research Services staff also supports research by preparing lists of new acquisitions and bibliographies on specific topics. Bibliographies direct users to new sources of information and are particularly useful in responding to frequently asked questions or for topics of general interest. SIL distributes several hundred bibliographies annually in response to inquiries, especially from the branches at the National Museum of African Art, the National Zoological Park, the Office of Museum Programs, and the Office of Horticulture. Some of these bibliographies, and acquisition lists prepared by these and other branches, are in such demand that SIL regularly sends them to other libraries both in the United States and abroad, to individual scholars, and to interested members of the public.

Reference staff assist researchers daily. In FY 1989, staff members responded to 52,980 reference questions. These ranged from straight forward requests for names, dates, and places to complex questions requiring several hours, if not days, of investigation to answer. To find the information requested, the staff uses a wide variety of reference tools, including standard published reference works and electronic data bases.

The Research Services Division is also responsible for housing and maintaining the collections. In the Museum Reference Center, staff re-organized the vertical files, the Center's most important reference source, for improved accessibility. SIL added new ranges of shelving at the National Zoological Park and at Central Reference and Loan Services to relieve crowding and provide room for expansion of the collections. SIL shifted the entire collection at the Museum Support Center to accommodate the large amount of material returned from the retrospective conversion project. Similarly, retrospective conversion of the Mollusks collection in the National Museum of Natural History branch library entailed rearrangement of the entire collection into the Library of Congress classification order. Support services for the collections housed at Smithsonian Institution Libraries Research Annex, located at 1111 North Capitol Street, continued in order to improve access to those materials.

As the result of an agreement between the SI Libraries and the Anacostia Museum, responsibility for the Museum's library collection transferred to SIL in March 1989. Incorporation of the collection, which consists of approximately 1,500 volumes including serial runs and sets of encyclopedias, into the SIL system will greatly enhance the Museum's research capabilities by giving it access to SIL's personnel recruitment, training, preservation, and automated cataloging services. As part of this transfer of responsibility, the Librarian position approved in the FY 1989 budget for Anacostia has been transferred to SIL. During FY 1989, SIL also expanded its services for the National Museum of Natural History to include the Museum's Naturalist Center.

Collections Management - Staff of the Collections Management Division select, acquire, preserve, and deaccession when necessary, library materials that form the SIL collections, which now contain more than 1,078,935 volumes. In early 1988, the Institution approved the revision of SIL's Collections Management Policies, which serves as a guide for collections acquisition, control, maintenance, and deaccession.

In February 1988, SIL established a program to enhance its ability to preserve non-rare materials. A 1986 preservation survey revealed that nearly one-third of the collections housed outside rare book facilities are too brittle to withstand continued use. SIL has found volumes published between 1870 and 1930 at particular risk, with more than 90 percent of them severely deteriorated. SIL contracted with a commercial micropublisher to film a 2,000-volume collection of publications from international expositions held between 1834 and 1915. The publisher completed the first unit of 50 reels of film in May 1989. SIL will produce an illustrated guide to accompany the microform collection. In FY 1990, SIL received an increase in funding that will provide for systematic review and treatment of SIL's "brittle books".

With funds provided in FY 1990 SIL will begin hiring library technicians to carry out the brittle books program. SIL will also purchase equipment to access national preservation data bases and to carry out quality control procedures for vendor-produced microfilm. The balance will be used for vendor contracts, supplies, and replacement copies.

The spiraling cost of serials subscriptions forced SIL to cancel further subscriptions as the cost of journal renewals increased by 10 percent. Inflation is particularly acute in foreign journals because of the weakness of the dollar abroad and the rise in rates charged to North American subscribers. Consequently, SIL is unable to place new subscriptions for expensive journals supporting the Smithsonian's new research emphasis relating to global environment issues.

Since June 1988, SIL has administered the Smithsonian International Exchange Service (SIES), which assists nonprofit institutions located in the United States and abroad. The organization sends preaddressed educational materials to interested foreign institutions, often on an exchange basis. In FY 1989, the service handled 78,361 packages. In March 1989, the SIES staff began to use automated mailing equipment, which has streamlined mail-processing routines. The new equipment also provides reports on users and shipments. SIES ships materials to and/or receives materials from 198 countries. SIES is part of SIL's Acquisitions Services, which separately maintains an active exchange program with nearly 3,900 partners worldwide.

Automated Systems - SIL uses electronic technology for most of its internal library operations, bibliographic access to collections by users, and for resource sharing and communication with other libraries.

Since 1974, SIL has participated in the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC), a national bibliographic utility, with almost 10,000 member libraries and a data base approaching 20 million records. SIL uses OCLC for creating and sharing records of its collections and for transmitting on-line interlibrary loan requests.

The Institution's Bibliographic Information System (SIBIS), installed in 1984, is the major mechanism for most SIL functions. It provides an on-line system with a central bibliographic data base. Electronic processing and machine-readable files that SIL can update and access from decentralized locations have replaced manual processes and card catalogues.

For the past eight years, SIL has conducted a program to convert its manual catalogues to machine readable format. The converted records, which conform to the highest national standards, form the SIL on-line catalogue. Through sophisticated search strategies, such as key word searching, SIL makes information about collections available from any location within the Institution. SIL has completed the basic conversion of standard manual files, with more than 410,633 records added to the data base. The program now concentrates on upgrading and converting partial and substandard records. SIL will also continue to bar code each volume represented in the on-line catalogue to allow electronic identification and circulation control.

The SIBIS acquisitions module is used for on-line requests, processing of orders, account maintenance, interface with accounting, and on-line access to order information. The system tracks ordered items for expected delivery date and automatically generates a claim notice for overdue items. In FY 1989, SIL also began to create SIBIS records for serial titles received as gifts or exchanges.

SIL continued to implement the SIBIS automated circulation system by installing it in the branches located at the National Zoological Park, the National Air and Space Museum, and in the Central Reference and Loan Service branch. The automated system will track the location and status of items in SIL collections. It also will improve accountability and provide more accurate data about the use of the collections.

In FY 1989, SIL installed upgraded software for the GEAC 9000 Bibliographic Processing System (BPS), which will enhance the on-line cataloguing capabilities and provide on-line authority control. Staff have received training and will test all aspects of the cataloguing module.

During FY 1989, SIL catalogued 29,966 rare, non-rare, trade literature, gift and older, uncatalogued items, both in-house and by contract. SIL added these records to the SIBIS on-line catalogue and to the OCLC data base, which makes them accessible to researchers nationally.

Outreach - In FY 1989, SIL continued its commitment to national and international responsibilities with a program of exhibitions, a lecture, and translated publications. On November 2, 1988, SIL presented a public lecture by Paul Vassallo, Director of the Washington Research Library Consortium, on the Consortium's plans to build a Super-Library in the metropolitan area. SIL's exhibition "Marbled Papers in Books" continued through December 1988. In July 1989, SIL opened "Stratigraphy's Golden Age: Murchison and His Silurian System," an exhibition presented in conjunction with the meeting of the 28th International Geological Congress. SIL published an illustrated brochure to coincide with the exhibition, which opened with a reception cosponsored by the History of Earth Sciences Society. Another exhibition brochure was published to coincide with the "Science and the French Revolution" exhibition that opened early in FY 1990. At the close of 1989, SIL opened an exhibit on preservation of library materials.

With funding from the Special Foreign Currency Program of the Institution, SIL administers the Science Information Program for Translations. This program provides scholars with English translations of scholarly monographs originally published in other languages on topics in the natural sciences and technological history. SIL catalogues the translations in a national bibliographic data base, distributes *gratis* copies to 180 libraries internationally, and registers the published translations with the National Technical Information Service (NTIS) to ensure their wide and continued availability to scholars. Currently SIL is administering the final stages of editing and production for 18 edited translations. The four works published this year include: *Keys to the Insects of the European Part of the U.S.S.R.*, vol. 5, p. 2; *Fauna of the U.S.S.R.. Lepidoptera*, vol. 4, no. 5 (Clothes Moths/Tineidae) (orig. pub. Leningrad, 1975); *Lepidopterous Fauna of the U.S.S.R. and Adjacent Countries* (orig. pub. Leningrad, 1973); and *Ground Beetles of Fennoscandia*, vol. 2 (orig. pub. Goteborg, Sweden, 1945). SIL placed one new order this year, and another 12 books are currently in India and Pakistan for translation.

Facilities - During FY 1989, SIL completed its seven-phase renovation of central administration, central processing, the National Museum of Natural History branch library and Central Reference and Loan Services. The renovation, begun in FY 1982, allows the SIL to make the best use of existing space in the Natural History Building to house the equipment, tools, and increased staff needed for highly sophisticated technical processing and library service. At the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center, SIL relocated to a separate library space with adequate lighting, shelving, and environmental control. The Museum Reference Center moved to new quarters as a result of reorganization within the Office of Museum Programs. Its new location provides additional shelving space for materials and a more rational design of reader and staff areas. The Anthropology Collection received additional space as a result of changes within the department as did the Mollusks location. Finally, the Institution has redesigned the Dibner Library as part of the National Museum of American History mezzanine construction. The Dibner will eventually expand to a new exhibition gallery in the public area.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - An allotment funds administrative salaries and related support costs including travel, training, and supplies. A program allotment supports such special events as public lectures and seminars.

Restricted Funds - Gifts and grants from individuals, foundations, endowments, organizations, and corporations provide these funds for specific purposes. These funds will support the preparation costs for a future publication on international exhibitions and provide for the purchase of rare volumes on the history of science.

INTERNATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE PROGRAM

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	10	757	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	13	770	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-Base	13	778								
FY 1991 Estimate	15	920	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	13	2	15
11 Personnel Compensation	252	92	344
12 Personnel Benefits	62	30	92
21 Travel	112	0	112
22 Transportation of Things	2	0	2
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	21	0	21
24 Printing & Reproduction	9	0	9
25 Other Services	244	20	264
26 Supplies & Materials	47	0	47
31 Equipment	29	0	29
Total	778	142	920

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	8
Program Funds	134

ABSTRACT - The International Environmental Science Program (IESP) is a multi-bureau interdisciplinary effort to coordinate the Smithsonian Institution's long-term monitoring and study of unique and significant ecosystems. The goal of the Program is to evaluate and eventually predict the impact of human activities and natural change on selected ecosystems. Research sponsored by IESP occurs at two permanent Smithsonian sites--the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI) in Panama and the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center (SERC) in Edgewater, Maryland--and several non-permanent sites throughout the world. (For FY 1990 and prior years, the

International Environmental Science Program budget line-item appeared in the Special Programs section.)

For FY 1991, IESP requests an increase of 2 workyears and $134,000 for global change research. The Institution requires $8,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The International Environmental Science Program sponsors research to meet the urgent need for long-term studies of the world's ecosystems, especially in tropical and subtropical regions where the rapid rate of tropical deforestation, loss of suitable soil, and resulting threat to wildlife are of critical importance. The Program provides funds for teams of scientists to monitor natural variations in specific environments unspoiled by humans. Recent U.S. Government and international commissions have reemphasized the need to expand long-term monitoring activities to gain further insight into biological diversity and the effects of global change.

Scientists maintain permanent IESP research sites at the Rhode River Estuary at Edgewater, Maryland and in the tropical lowland forest of Barro Colorado Island, in Panama and the Galeta Reef on the Atlantic side of the Isthmus of Panama. For more than 15 years, scientists have gathered information for a data base on the biological, physical, and chemical components of these ecosystems. Analyses of these data have produced speculations and verifiable hypotheses about long-term patterns in climate and disturbances resulting from human activity.

Research sponsored by the IESP also takes place at nonpermanent sites on Aldabra in the Seychelles and in Nepal, Egypt, Venezuela, Brazil, Mexico, and the Amazonian regions of Peru and Bolivia. Smithsonian scientists, with support from the host governments, are continuing their efforts at these sites to gather descriptive data that will aid in the development of verifiable hypotheses about climate change, genetic diversity, animal management, and natural area management.

The following highlights IESP's research accomplishments for FY 1989 at the Program's permanent and nonpermanent sites:

Edgewater, Maryland - Scientists have quantitatively documented how forests buffer the adverse effects of agricultural runoff in the Chesapeake region. Traversing these forests are small feeder streams that carry chemical runoff associated with farming in the area. Studies of 50 to 100-foot-wide sections along the streams found that forests transpire, on average, two-thirds the sum of precipitation and groundwater inputs and remove nitrate at a rate of more than 85 percent and sulfate at a rate of 25 percent. Removal of these agricultural chemicals by these forests prevents them from flowing into the Chesapeake Bay and aids in the Bay's preservation.

Scientists at Edgewater also studied the qualitatively different functional roles of headwater forests on small streams and floodplain forests on larger streams in the removal of undesired chemicals. Results show that headwater streamside forests trap primarily coarse particulates stemming from soil erosion, while floodplain forests trap finer particulates rich in phosphorus, a material used in agricultural fertilizers. Also, while headwater forests are more effective at processing shallow groundwater, floodplain forests are most effective at processing surface waters. The combination of forested streamsides on small feeder streams and forested floodplains on larger streams helps protect the quality of water that flows into the Chesapeake Bay under the complete range of normal conditions.

Estuarine scientists have long sought to understand the mechanism controlling animal populations in bottom-dwelling invertebrate communities. A variety of theories, especially functional-group theories, propose that adults may regulate community composition by affecting the survival or behavior of settling larvae, and this effect differs among adult species. To test this hypothesis, Edgewater scientists studied the influence of two types of clams, Macoma balthica and Mya arenaria, on bottom-dwelling invertebrates to observe the potential importance of such interactions. Researchers transplanted the two clams at various densities into buckets of defaunated sediment during the spring. Results of this research showed both species had generally similar effects on the density of invertebrates. Both Macoma balthica and Mya arenaria reduced the total invertebrate population, with the greatest decline occurring at highest clam densities. Although the clams also affected the densities of individual invertebrate species, the two had varied influence among species and between years. Indirect effects of the clams, resulting from their influence on one or two dominant species, may be more important in the short term in determining the population of certain invertebrate communities. While the two clams had differing impacts among species, there was no noticeable variance in total invertebrate population, an outcome that calls functional-group theories into question.

Aldabra - Researchers continued surveys of the flora and fauna of this atoll in the Indian Ocean. The 1989 field season supplemented previous seasons' work and also initiated new projects.

The staff collected about 600 pounds of fossiliferous limestone for processing in the laboratory. These samples include numerous species of extinct birds, predominantly shearwaters and petrels. This collection will supplement the data gathered in 1987 and 1988. On Ile Michel, staff collected a large sample of subfossil land snails. The Natural History Museum at Leiden and the Smithsonian will process the material.

Researchers measured and photographed 55 giant land tortoise skeletons as part of a project, started in 1987, to document the pattern of disarticulation and decomposition of tortoises under dry conditions such as occur on Aldabra. Researchers also collected humeri for a project on aging.

To balance the inventory of marine algae in the Aldabra group, the staff visited previously uncollected sites and gathered several new or rare species. The algal list now includes about 120 species. Staff collected valuable reproductive data on several species of Gracilaria, a genus containing several commercially important members.

General collections of insects emphasized herbivorous Heteroptera. Researchers collected between 50 and 100 species of Heteroptera, some of which will probably prove undescribable. They also investigated plant-insect relationships for 30 plant species and obtained detailed information on distribution and ecology for seven species of marine Heteroptera, a useful addition to the knowledge of Indian Ocean zoogeography.

The staff monitored the distribution of sea urchins in seagrass beds, examining the role of heavy rainwater runoff and storm-generated sandy "blowouts" on patterns of distribution and mortality of urchins. Using direct observation as well as gut-content examination, staff members also investigated the predation on urchins by triggerfish. Preliminary results indicate that urchins occur mainly in blowouts where they are less susceptible to salinity and temperature fluctuations. Researchers will incorporate the results of these investigations into the long-term seagrass ecology study.

In 1990 the program will include investigations at two sites in the granitic Seychelles, to allow for comparative studies in faunistics, floristics, and zoogeography of the islands of the western Indian Ocean. The granitics by their geological nature are very different from Aldabra, are more easily accessible, and the proposed work will supplement the Smithsonian's collections in an area that at present is poorly represented.

Nepal - In FY 1989, IESP supported the transformation of the former Smithsonian Terai Ecology Project field station in Royal Chitwan National Park to a South Asian ecology training center, NECTARI. The project, under the auspices of the King Mahendra Trust for Nature Conservation, pursues training in wildlife conservation and management skills that were introduced by the Smithsonian over the past ten years. The Smithsonian role in NECTARI is part of a collaborative enterprise with the World Wildlife Fund-United States and the U.S. Agency for International Development (USAID). The Smithsonian's share of support for this program will cease in FY 1992, although the Institution will continue to pursue specific projects in Nepal, most notably a program on the demography and reproductive biology of domestic Asian elephants with the support of USAID's Program in Science and Technology Cooperation.

Venezuela - During FY 1989, researchers conducted eight projects at the field site at Hato Masagural, Venezuela. Two projects studied the red howler monkey, a species that inhabits the gallery forest and savannah woodland habitat. The long-term demographic study of 55 social groups of this species involved monthly counts to develop a data base for interhabitat demographic comparisons. These counts allowed researchers to monitor the details of social interactions within groups invaded by adult males. The study of the red howler diet involved detailed field observations of feeding in several social groups and studies of the animals captured last year to determine the total food intake, nutrient content, and digestibility of certain food plants that red howlers eat. Scientists will conduct future tests using several other food plants and more controlled conditions. The research project on the Cebus, the other primate species found within the study area, included two separate investigations. One focused on the relative importance of demography, kinship, and dominance on social interactions within Cebus groups. The other dealt with the behavioral responses of Cebus to the presence of predators in the environment.

Nutritional analysis was an important component of the investigations of the dietary ecology of the Hoatzin, a bird that exploits several kinds of leaves. This investigation provides an opportunity to compare how sympatric species, from unrelated taxa and with different lifestyles and gut morphology, contend with the digestive and nutritional problems of folivary. Another ornithological project continues to monitor the long-term changes in the demography and species composition of two Venezuelan bird communities.

Researchers continue to study the snail kite, an endangered species in the United States. This year's investigations were intended to determine why this highly specialized feeder has diversified its diet in the llanos of Venezuela. The research included diet choice experiments, a study of seasonal changes in food abundance, and nutrient analysis of snail and crab meat. The snail kite investigators also conducted some preliminary studies on the nesting behavior of the parrotlot, a cavity nesting species that adapts well to artificial nests. This study may prove to have important conservation implications that scientists will develop further during the next fiscal year.

Other studies included investigations on caimans and the local moth fauna. The demographic study of caimans, the most heavily exploited genus of the world's crocodilians, included radiotelemetry and the continued monitoring of nearly 400 individually identifiable animals. This study also provided data on ranging patterns, reproductive biology, and growth rates that are invaluable in developing a plan for the conservation and management of caimans. The investigation of moths dealt with taxonomy, distribution, and the life history of species, especially those of economic importance. Entomologists at the National Museum of Natural History are currently examining and identifying the moth specimens collected in Venezuela. The majority of the research projects in Venezuela also provided scientific training to young Venezuelan biologists.

Brazil: Golden Lion Tamarin Project - The Golden Lion Tamarin Conservation Program continued to break new ground with its unique integration of basic research and conservation in the endangered Atlantic coastal rain forest of Brazil. During FY 1989, scientists continued monitoring the reintroduced golden lion tamarins in and near the Poco das Antas Reserve. By July 1989, 25 reintroduced tamarins remained from the original 67 released between FY 1984 and FY 1988, and 13 young survived from 15 born. The wild population has increased by 38 individuals in 11 groups. Scientists will release an additional ten animals in FY 1990. Moreover, scientists have involved local landowners in the protection of the golden lion tamarin and reintroduced tamarins will be living in remnant forest patches on seven ranches by the end of FY 1989.

Other studies of the behavior and ecology of wild golden lion tamarins continue, and scientists initiated several new studies of the fauna and flora of this endangered habitat in FY 1989. Analyses of habitat characteristics of wild tamarins now permit a description of the type of forest and density of critical resources in habitats golden lion tamarins prefer. An average tamarin family group, for example, has 5.2 members, and in a 0.1 hectare transect of their home range, has 4.3 dens in trees, 9.3 bromeliads, and 0.3 percent swampland. The dens are used for sleeping; the bromeliads contain water and small vertebrates and invertebrates that are prized foods; and the swampland contains preferred fruit trees. Information on habitat permits a more refined approach in choosing new habitats for future reintroductions and allows an analysis of differential mating success in groups relative to the presence of critical resources.

Studies of the density and distribution of small mammals in different habitat types continue. Additionally, scientists have recently trapped and radio tracked the rare and elusive bamboo rat. Researchers hope to chart the life history of this unusual rodent, determining its reproductive rate, mating system, and degree of territoriality. Researchers initiated studies of seed dispersal from different-sized forest plots and the role of bird species in dispersing seed in order to chart the processes of regeneration of tropical forest from pastureland and degraded habitats.

Educators continue to work closely with the local community in the region surrounding the major remnants of golden lion tamarin habitat. They are also training other educators in techniques of promoting a conservation ethic in small communities. In FY 1989, for example, they held another training course for education specialists from Brazilian parks and reserves. Finally, the new headquarters and education center for the Poco das Antas Reserve are now fully functional. Together they establish a significant center for conservation biology in the critical ecosystem of the Atlantic coastal forest of Brazil.

Brazil: Neotropical Lowland Research Program - In FY 1989, scientists conducted field and laboratory work in archeology, botany, entomology, ichthyology, and herpetology on the Amazonian and Atlantic forest biota. Results of these investigations provided new information on the composition and distribution of the neotropical biota that is important for the completion of several major publications and conservation planning. A highlight of the past year was the publication of Proceedings of a Workshop on Neotropical Distribution Patterns, a 488-page written record of a workshop cosponsored by the Smithsonian Institution and the Academia Brasileira de Ciencias with additional support provided by the National Science Foundation and the Conselho Nacional de Desenvolvimento Cientifico e Tecnologico. The publication includes six papers by Smithsonian participants.

All the individual research projects are long term and will proceed for the next five years. The anticipated addition of new long-term projects in botany and entomology will further strengthen the multi-disciplinary nature of the Program. Toward the end of the next five-year period the Program plans to hold another inter-disciplinary, international workshop or symposium.

Panama - IESP-funded research on Barro Colorado Island (BCI) continues to expand understanding of global change and to develop techniques for agroforestry and reforestation. Analysis of accumulated data from physical monitoring indicates an average decrease in rainfall on BCI of eight millimeters per year since 1923, for a total decrease of 20 percent over this time period, a decrease that may result from surrounding deforestation. Hydrographic and Meteorological Studies of a Caribbean Fringing Reef at Punta Galeta, Panama: Hourly and Daily Variations for 1977-1985, by John D. Cubit et al. (Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences, no. 32), published by the Smithsonian Institution Press in 1988, represents a summary of the physical monitoring until 1985. A similar summary of BCI data, edited by Donald Windsor, is now in press. As rainfall has declined, average temperature and rates of evapotranspiration have increased. Evidence from the forest irrigation study suggests that some species of trees may now be under considerable water stress during the dry season. Data from the Forest Dynamics Project show that occasional droughts significantly affect the recruitment of young trees into forest populations.

At Galeta, long-term monitoring of reef and mangrove communities continues to provide invaluable background for analyses of the impact of the April 1986 oil spill on these areas. IESP studies are supplemented by a five-year contract from the Minerals Management Service of the Department of the Interior that recognizes IESP's unequaled biological record at Galeta and benefits from its previous monitoring activities. Evidence gathered to date indicates that the effects of oil spills on tropical marine habitats are more severe and long lasting than previously suspected.

Mexico - In FY 1990, IESP continued long-term studies to determine how plant and animal populations recovered from the damage Hurricane Gilbert wrought on a dry tropical forest. FY 1990 results showed that the forest canopy began to recover but that some damaged trees continued to die. The greatest degree of change had occurred in the understory where numerous vines, which survived the hurricane, sprouted and grew rapidly. Soil studies continue to show that few tree species maintained viable seed in the soil before the hurricane. The diversity of birds found in the forest has almost recovered to pre-hurricane levels and the bird community still has many species more typical of open habitats. Only two species of birds that were common before the hurricane were not present immediately afterward but it is expected that both will return to the site. Huge areas of damaged forest burned during the dry season of FY 1989 but long-term study plots used in this study were only minimally affected.

In FY 1991, scientists will continue adding phosphorus fertilizer to half the long-term study plots to test the hypothesis that phosphorus limits the growth and recovery of dry tropical forests. Investigators will also continue to characterize the recovery of the forest by studying the growth and reproduction of trees, shrubs, and vines; measurements of leaf litter produced by the forest and the nutrient content of the litter; decomposition rates of the massive amount of wood that fell to the forest floor; and recovery of the bird community. Scientists will also sample areas that were burned to determine the impact that fires had on the already damaged forest.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, IESP requests an increase of 2 workyears and $134,000 for global change research at STRI. The collection of long-term data in tropical environments is increasingly important for understanding global change. Continued support of long-term monitoring programs at STRI will enhance the collection and use of these data.

Physical monitoring of meteorological and hydrological variables is performed at Barro Colorado and the Galeta marine laboratory. Researchers plan expansion of physical monitoring to other sites in the San Blas and Naos Islands and in the Perlas Islands in the Pacific. These studies will enable researchers to understand better how tropical habitats respond to changes in physical parameters such as rainfall, temperature, sea level, and the mix of gases in the atmosphere. Physical monitoring data are used by visiting and staff scientists at STRI and elsewhere, as well as by atmospheric scientists, climatologists, and resource managers studying global climate change. To expand its physical monitoring, IESP requests 1 workyear and $57,000 to hire an environmental engineer.

IESP began studying various biological species at Barro Colorado Island and Galeta more than 15 years ago. Today, with rapid global change predicted into the 21st century, biological monitoring has become increasingly important. An expanded long-term biological monitoring program will establish a critical baseline and document future biological response to these changes. An increase of $20,000 will permit an expanded program of biological monitoring at the San Blas station. This monitoring program will replace the data base on natural variation at Galeta that was terminated by the 1986 oil spill. Future plans involve expansion to Pacific habitats for comparison of organisms and communities in the Atlantic and Pacific, unique comparisons that STRI's location on the isthmus make possible.

With the continued and expanded physical and biological monitoring, IESP requires additional personnel and equipment to properly manage and analyze data collected. The physical and biological monitoring data base contains approximately 30 years of combined information collected at the Galeta marine station and on Barro Colorado Island. IESP requests funds to hire a data manager (1 workyear and $57,000) who will maintain and add to this existing data base. An enhanced data management program will allow IESP scientists to analyze, interpret, and publish data expediently. This capability is especially important as the monitoring program expands to the Pacific and San Blas.

While recruitment for the new positions is pending, the Institution will require salary lapse (estimated $58,000) for purchase of monitoring equipment and an upgraded computer system.

MAJOR SCIENTIFIC INSTRUMENTATION

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	-	836	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	-	2,147	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-Base	-	2,147								
FY 1991 Estimate	-	5,765	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation............................	0	0	0
21 Travel..................................	39	60	99
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities........	5	0	5
24 Printing & Reproduction.................	3	0	3
25 Other Services..........................	1,635	1,845	3,480
26 Supplies & Materials....................	140	1,713	1,853
31 Equipment...............................	325	0	325
Total	2,147	3,618	5,765

Analysis of Increase

	Proposed Adjustments
Necessary Pay.............................	0
Program Funds.............................	3,618

ABSTRACT - The development of major scientific instrumentation is vital to enable Smithsonian scientists to remain at the forefront of their fields. Because of the magnitude of the costs and the time required to fabricate new instruments and to reconfigure existing ones, the Institution requests funding for such projects under this line-item rather than under individual bureau line-items. Since these projects will, of necessity, require long-term development and multi-year funding, the Institution also requests that funds in this line-item be available until expended.

For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests no-year funding of $5,765,000 to continue the development of the submillimeter telescope array ($3,782,000) and the conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope ($1,983,000). The FY 1991 request includes the following increases over the FY 1990 level of funding for Major Scientific Instrumentation: an increase of $2,518,000 for the start of construction of the submillimeter telescope array (over the FY 1990 level of $1,264,000); and an increase of $1,100,000 for the conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope (over the FY 1990 level of $883,000). In addition, the Institution asks for an increase in the funding for the personnel costs and rent associated with the submillimeter telescope array as one-year funding in the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory (SAO) line-item. However, the justification for those positions is included here because of their relationship to the Major Scientific Instrumentation request.

PROGRAM - The development of major scientific instrumentation, such as telescopes, requires research and development (R&D) over an extended period of time. Teams of Smithsonian scientists, technicians, and contractors, focused on critical telescope elements such as optics, detectors, receivers, and support structures, are engaged in these R&D efforts. To facilitate the unique extended R&D efforts that are integral to the acquisition of major scientific instrumentation, the Institution established this no-year line-item in the FY 1989 budget.

Since FY 1989, the Smithsonian has requested funding under this line-item for two projects for the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory:

-- the development of an array of submillimeter telescopes;

-- the conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope.

Both of these forefront scientific projects involve the fabrication of major new instrumentation that will take a number of years to design and complete. SAO anticipates the development of the submillimeter telescope array to continue through the mid-1990s. SAO estimates that the array will require total funding at $30 million (1987) or $32.4 million (1989) for construction on a continental site and about 25 percent more on a site in Hawaii. SAO expects to complete the conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope by FY 1995. SAO estimates the total cost to the Smithsonian for the conversion will be no more than $10 million (1987) or $10.8 million (1989).

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE:

DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE SUBMILLIMETER TELESCOPE ARRAY

Scientific Justification - SAO's submillimeter wavelength telescope array will make fundamental contributions to astronomy and astrophysics in several areas:

(1) For studies of star formation, the array offers the prospect of detecting and studying gas falling into very young stars and, thereby, gaining detailed knowledge of how stars are formed. With unprecedented resolution and sensitivity, the array will provide images of high-velocity gas flows from recently formed stars. These images will elucidate the mechanisms that limit the growth of a star and will help answer the fundamental question, Why is the sun the size it is? The array will map the structure and motions of the disks that eventually contract into stars. Scientists will then be able to study the way in which these factors cause multiple star systems and planets to form.

(2) Use of the array will generate new information about galaxies. Detailed maps of the emission from carbon monoxide molecules will provide the first clear view of

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

the spiral structure of galaxies outlined by giant molecular clouds. The array will also allow astrophysicists to study the emission from the dust surrounding young stars in galaxies. Study of these emissions will reveal centers of star formation not visible with optical telescopes. These two new views of galactic structure will expand understanding of the now mysterious ways that spiral patterns in galaxies originate and sustain themselves.

(3) Because of its high sensitivity, the array will provide accurate measurements of the submillimeter wavelength emission from quasars and active nuclei of galaxies. These measurements will clarify the relationship between these enormously energetic objects and may reveal the source of their energy. These measurements also could be crucial to distinguishing between the mechanisms leading to quasars that emit radio waves and those that do not. An explanation for these mechanisms is one of the most important unsolved enigmas in the quest for understanding the source of energy in quasars.

(4) The array will give new information about the surfaces and atmospheres of planets and other objects in the solar system. Maps of Mercury, Mars, Saturn's rings, and some dozen additional bodies--asteroids and satellites--will reveal the temperature and structure immediately beneath the surface. This information is needed to understand the nature of the subsurface composition. New data gathered on emission from molecules in the atmospheres of Venus and Saturn's satellite Titan should also provide insight into planetary weather.

(5) Finally, the array is likely to make unexpected discoveries. Only a few telescopes will be able to work at submillimeter wavelengths. The array's ability to discriminate spatially will be at least ten times greater than that of any of these other, single, submillimeter telescopes. If the past is any guide, this unique capability should lead to serendipitous discoveries.

The last frontier for ground-based astronomy consists of observing the skies with telescopes sensitive to submillimeter waves, light with wavelengths between those of infrared and radio waves. The radiation from the formation of stars and planetary systems, and from the puzzling processes taking place in the cores of galaxies and quasars, is usually most intense at submillimeter wavelengths. Therefore, scientists can best study such processes at these wavelengths. Only in the past few years has technology advanced sufficiently to allow the construction of telescopes that can observe the universe at submillimeter wavelengths.

In 1982, the ten-year plan of the Astronomy Survey Committee of the National Research Council (NRC) recognized the desirability of submillimeter wavelength observations. Several single-antenna telescopes capable of such observations are now under construction or beginning operation. These telescopes will dramatically advance the field. None of them, however, will be able to discern details finer than about 10 seconds of arc. This limitation means that their resolving power will be less than one-tenth of the leading astronomical instruments in other wavelength regions, including the Very Large Array (VLA) and the Hubble Space Telescope (HST).

The NRC study also recommended development of advanced spatial interferometers at all wavelengths to improve resolving power. SAO's submillimeter wavelength telescope array will be a premier response to the NRC's recommendation. In 1983-84, a committee of seven SAO scientists conceived the proposed interferometric array; they subsequently published a study on the scientific need for the array and its technical feasibility. In particular, SAO scientists recommended an array of six submillimeter wavelength telescopes. The array would have resolving power of better than 1 second of arc. This resolution is far finer than for any single-antenna submillimeter wavelength telescope and comparable to that of the VLA and the HST.

Astronomers worldwide received SAO's 145-page study, and 25 astronomers with relevant expertise provided detailed reviews. (SAO received about a dozen other unsolicited signed reviews.) The strong consensus of the reviews supported SAO's conclusion that a submillimeter wavelength array has very high scientific potential, is technically feasible, and is of appropriate scale for SAO to undertake.

Status and FY 1991 Plans - SAO began its submillimeter program in FY 1987. In that year, SAO hired a submillimeter receiver scientist and started to equip a receiver laboratory. With funding provided in FY 1988 and FY 1989, SAO continued to develop the laboratory and to increase its expertise in the technology for submillimeter receivers, and hired a receiver leader to direct the laboratory. In 1988, SAO hired a project scientist to oversee the design specifications for the array in the light of its scientific goals. Further, SAO hired a technical leader to coordinate the design and development of the array subsystems. In 1989, SAO added a project director to manage the array program. Progress has been quite substantial. Existing data on atmospheric conditions above Mt. Graham, Arizona, and Mauna Kea, Hawaii, the two sites under consideration for the array, have been analyzed thoroughly and an extensive report completed. Special equipment for the most sophisticated part of the site-testing has been designed and its construction is well under way. Six small studies are also under way in cooperation with industry to identify the best approach for the manufacture and construction of the antennas. An extensive study of the techniques for calibration of the array was undertaken and completed. Further, the receiver laboratory is nearing the test phase on the first prototype submillimeter receiver for the array, and has started design for the second.

Our scientific and technical advisory group for the array, now consisting of 14 experts from other institutions in the United States, Europe, and Japan, met for two days at the Observatory in September 1989 to review our progress and plans. Their comments at the meeting and their 12-page written report were very helpful; overall, their assessment was very positive: "the entire committee is very enthusiastic about the project and impressed with the progress to date."

With the FY 1990 funding, SAO will nearly complete the design phase of the submillimeter array project. Three individuals to be hired in FY 1990 will complete the design team. Collectively, they will concentrate initially on completing the design of the antennas for the array, on the digital electronics associated with the array, and on the software involved with telescope control, data acquisition, and imaging of the celestial objects to be observed with the array.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests a total of $3,782,000 for the submillimeter array program in the Major Scientific Instrumentation line-item. This represents an increase of $2,518,000 over the FY 1990 base of $1,264,000. These funds will be used to complete design and begin the construction phase of the array, in particular to:

	(Millions)
Contract for design and construction of first two antennas	$2.6
Equip digital laboratory; develop intermediate frequency transmission system and phase lock distribution system	0.5
Develop computer architecture and select suitable system	0.1
Start site development	0.2
Improve prototype of 345 GHz receiver	0.35
Initiate correlator development	0.05
Total, FY 1991	$3.8

The SAO line-item of this budget reflects the staffing requirements related to the Submillimeter Telescope Array. With the funding increase requested in its base for FY 1991, SAO will fill 12 new positions (12 workyears and $746,000) for the project and support the space rental costs for these new positions ($36,000). The personnel SAO will hire in FY 1991 and their locations are:

Structural Design Engineer	- Cambridge
Chief Programmer	- Cambridge
Purchasing Agent	- Cambridge
Digital Engineer	- Cambridge
Secretary	- Cambridge
Receiver Technician	- Cambridge
Research Associate	- Cambridge
Site Manager	- for site, to be temporarily based in Cambridge
Site Engineer	- for site, to be temporarily based in Cambridge
Programmer	- for site, to be temporarily based in Cambridge
Digital Engineer	- for site, to be temporarily based in Cambridge
Electronic Engineer	- for site, to be temporarily based in Cambridge

Project Schedule - SAO will complete the design study early in FY 1991 and then initiate construction. Total costs are as in earlier estimates, about $30 million (1987) or $32.4 million (1989), including the design study and SAO personnel costs. SAO estimates annual operating expenses for the array to be about 8 percent of construction costs. The majority of these operating expenses represent personnel costs; SAO will hire almost all of these people during the design and construction phases of the project.

The following chart shows the total level of funding required for the project from FY 1989 through FY 1996, if the array is constructed on a continental site.

PROJECTED FUNDING FOR SUBMILLIMETER TELESCOPE ARRAY
FY 1989 through FY 1996
(1989 dollars)

	FTE	($ Millions)[1],[2]
FY 1989	3	0.8
FY 1990	6	1.6
FY 1991	18	4.7
FY 1992	23	7.0
FY 1993	28	6.5
FY 1994	28	5.4
FY 1995	34	5.4
FY 1996	34	1.0[3]
TOTAL	174[4]	32.4

[1] Rounded to the nearest $100,000; represents 1989 dollars.
[2] Includes all personnel costs for the project.
[3] In addition, $1.3 million will be required for approximately 6 months' operating expenses.
[4] Represents the cumulative workyear requirement over the eight-year period.

Conclusion - When operational, the SAO submillimeter wavelength telescope array will be a major scientific instrument of international stature. The array will be unique in the world in its combination of wavelength coverage and resolving power. It will measurably enhance the scientific competitiveness of the United States in astronomy. Since astronomical observations from space have suffered severe delays, the construction now of technologically advanced, pioneering ground-based instruments such as the SAO array is especially timely.

CONVERSION OF THE MULTIPLE MIRROR TELESCOPE

In FY 1988, SAO began the process of converting the Multiple Mirror Telescope (MMT) to a telescope with a single 6.5-meter diameter mirror. This conversion will more than double the light-gathering power of the telescope and increase its field of view about 100-fold. The converted telescope will therefore allow scientists to observe many objects simultaneously. For certain types of problems, the converted telescope will permit an approximately 100-fold increase in efficiency of data collection over the MMT.

Scientific Justification - The increased collecting area of the converted telescope will allow astronomers to gather, on objects 2.5 times fainter, data of the same quality as now obtained. This improvement will allow the use of the converted telescope in many new areas of research, where the extreme faintness of the objects involved precludes the use of the present telescope. Further, the added light-gathering power means that more than twice as much of the universe will be accessible for study than is now possible. SAO has already established itself as a world leader through the discovery and study of the "bubble" structure of the universe. Expanding such studies beyond the MMT's present horizon will be very important in determining if even larger structures exist. If they do, scientists might again have to rethink their understanding of the evolution of the universe.

The expanded capability of the converted telescope also will be especially beneficial for the study of clusters of stars and galaxies. SAO astronomers will be able to complete in a few hours projects that now require many nights on the MMT. For example, SAO scientists will conduct studies of the dynamics of clusters of stars, an area in which SAO scientists have been among the world leaders. Similarly, the study of clusters of galaxies, hitherto prohibitively demanding of telescope time, will become feasible. Research on these clusters may hold the key to understanding the distribution of matter in the universe. This distribution has a fundamental bearing on the evolution of the universe, in particular on how galaxies formed--a question that has baffled scientists for decades.

In addition, the telescope will be able to measure the velocities of gas in very distant galaxies. Astronomers can then compare these velocities, which are often related to the intrinsic brightnesses of the galaxies, with the apparent brightnesses of the galaxies to determine their distances. This technique will allow astronomers to determine the rate of expansion of the universe when it was younger. A measurement of this rate is critical for understanding the evolution and ultimate fate of the universe: Will it continue to expand forever, or will it eventually collapse?

The increased collecting area will allow pioneering studies of certain rapidly changing astrophysical phenomena. In such cases, changes occur too rapidly for astrophysicists to study them with any of today's telescopes. For example, some of these rapidly changing processes take place in double stars. The members of these stars are so close to each other that their surfaces almost touch. Scientists similarly can study phenomena in systems with one star whose core is so dense that not even light can escape from it--a black hole. Such systems give rise to very unusual conditions; their study will be possible with the converted telescope and may permit insights into new physical processes.

These examples provide just a small sample of the scientific justifications for the conversion of the MMT. A conference held at SAO in April 1986 resulted in a 50-page proceeding, which discusses in more detail the various reasons for the conversion.

Status and FY 1991 Plans - With funding provided for the conversion project in FY 1987 through FY 1990, SAO is:

-- purchasing the materials required for the casting of the mirror in the University of Arizona Mirror Laboratory;

-- contracting with consulting engineers to carry out the preliminary concept and design of the telescope;

-- developing the preliminary and detailed design of the primary mirror support and associated thermal control system for the mirror figuring, the cell to support the mirror, the building modifications, and the optics/support structure and telescope drive system.

Progress this past year has been made on a broad front. The glass for the casting has already been purchased, with deliveries to be completed in a few months. The casting itself is currently scheduled for February 1991 at the University of

Arizona's Mirror Laboratory, which successfully cast the third of three 3.5 meter diameter mirrors this past summer. The Mirror Laboratory is now polishing a 1.8 meter diameter mirror, with the technique being developed for use on the larger mirrors, such as the 6.5 meter mirror for the converted MMT. Substantial progress was also made on the design of the thermal control system for the converted telescope, on the means for recoating of the mirror in situ, on the optics-support structure, and on the needed building modifications.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests a total of $1,983,000 to continue the conversion process. This represents an increase of $1,100,000 over the FY 1990 level of $883,000. The main efforts in FY 1991 will be to:

-- cast the 6.5-meter primary mirror;

-- begin fabrication of the mirror polishing support;

-- begin fabrication of the primary mirror cell.

Project Schedule - SAO expects the conversion of the MMT will be completed by FY 1995 at a total cost to the Smithsonian of no more than $10 million (1987) or $10.8 million (1989). The exact cost of the conversion and the precise contribution of the University of Arizona are still not known, but the $10.8 million figure is believed to be a reliable upper bound for the Smithsonian contribution. This total includes amounts allocated in FY 1987 for the purchase of glass and refractories to meet projected requirements for FY 1990 and following years. The funding provided in FY 1988 was part of the one-year appropriation for SAO; since FY 1989, the Smithsonian requested and received funding for the MMT Conversion as no-year funding in this line-item. The breakdown of funds by year is shown in the following chart.

PAST AND PROJECTED FUNDING FOR CONVERSION OF THE
MULTIPLE MIRROR TELESCOPE
FY 1987 through FY 1994
(1989 dollars)

	($ Millions)1/
FY 1987	0.5
FY 1988	0.5
FY 1989	0.6
FY 1990	0.9
FY 1991	2.0
FY 1992	2.4
FY 1993	2.3
FY 1994	1.6
TOTAL:	10.8

1/ Rounded to the nearest $100,000.

Conclusion - The conversion of the Multiple Mirror Telescope is the most cost-effective way to ensure that Smithsonian astronomers will remain in the forefront of ground-based optical and infrared astronomy through the remainder of the 20th century and beyond.

OFFICE OF THE ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR MUSEUMS

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	21	1,699	1	282	-	233	1	34	-	10
FY 1990 -Estimate	25	1,231	1	239	-	-	1	173	-	-
-Base	25	1,254								
FY 1991 Estimate	26	1,487	1	253	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	25	1	26
11 Personnel Compensation	938	104	1,042
12 Personnel Benefits	168	29	197
21 Travel	33	25	58
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	24	2	26
24 Printing & Reproduction	10	5	15
25 Other Services	51	53	104
26 Supplies & Materials	16	5	21
31 Equipment	14	10	24
Total	1,254	233	1,487

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay		133	
Program Funds		100	

ABSTRACT - The Office of the Assistant Secretary for Museums (OASM) provides operational oversight for 12 museums and six major bureaus. It manages essential museum functions, including collections management, exhibitions, education, public orientation, and operations. OASM acts as a liaison with national and international museum organizations and conducts special studies to improve museum operations and methods. This line-item also includes the Office of Museum Programs (OMP) and the Office of the Registrar (OR). The Office of Museum Programs provides training and research services to the museum profession nationally and internationally. The Office of the Registrar is responsible for the development, oversight, and coordination of the Smithsonian's collections management policies.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests an increase of $100,000 to explore African-American programming. The Institution requires $133,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - I. Office of the Assistant Secretary for Museums - With base funding of 10 workyears and $650,000, the Office oversees the operating and public functions of Smithsonian museums and encourages the development of new techniques in museum administration and practices. The Office administers two Trust-funded programs, the Collections Acquisition Program, which helps with the purchase of major acquisitions by Smithsonian museums, and the Special Exhibition Fund, which provides partial funding for important and innovative exhibitions. The Office is planning the new Experimental Gallery, for the Arts and Industries Building, where new techniques can be tested for presenting information and objects to various types of audiences. The Office also works closely with museums and specialized committees and others to improve programs related to reaching a broader audience; encourages cooperation between Smithsonian and outside museums with common interests; and participates in planning new museum initiatives. In addition, the Office works cooperatively with national and international museum organizations and professionals in the areas of education, exhibitions, and collections management.

II. Office of Museum Programs - With base funding of 12 workyears and $432,000, the Office of Museum Programs (OMP) provides training and research services to the museum profession nationally and internationally. OMP gives professional focus to the study of museums as cultural phenomena, and of the work which shapes and maintains these institutions. Programs in career counselling, internships, and professional residencies are paired with regular course offerings on ethical, conceptual, and technical topics. National and international colleagues work along with Smithsonian staff members on similar problems, making exchanges of cultural perspectives possible. The Museum Reference Center, a branch of the Smithsonian Institution Libraries supports research and reference in the questions of starting, running, and changing museums. This facility is unique in the United States, providing answers to hundreds of questions from students and museum professionals each year and stimulating new lines of inquiry.

Under the guidance of the Assistant Secretary for Museums, the Office began an intense period of reassessment and redefinition in 1989. OMP adopted new objectives. and was charged to provide leadership in defining conceptual and ethical issues in museology within the broader profession and to provide professional staff development for museum practitioners in the Institution. Curators, designers, educators, conservators, collections managers, security personnel, and administrators at the Institution are now potential students in the training programs of the Office.

The Office gives special emphasis to creating training programs which will encourage greater numbers of Native American and non-western minorities to enter the museum profession. The Minority Awards Program continues to support study at the National Museum for professionals from culturally diverse communities throughout the United States. With funding provided in FY 990, the Office will train Native American museum workers in the techniques of preservation, registration, interpretation and exhibit of relevant museums specimens. This will take the form of seminars, workshops and direct experience of museum procedures in on-site settings. The office will hire a workshop facilitator to coordinate these instructional tasks.

In order to focus its mission as laboratory and discussion center, OMP eliminated former programs in technical assistance, consultation, and audio-visual production and distribution. The construction of a graduated curriculum for entry-level, mid-career, and senior museum professionals has now become the core of the Office's strategic planning. OMP is developing instructional materials and publications within the context of learning objectives for seminars, workshops, and conferences. Once tested in practice at the Institution, they will become available through other national distributors.

During 1989, the Institution also consolidated the responsibility for administering its intern programs, including career counselling, intern placement, orientation to the Institution and to museum careers, and special opportunities for resident research and hands-on learning, within the Office of Museum Programs. A staff group, enlarged by internal reorganization and the transfer of the intern registrar from another office, supports these better-integrated and more coherent services for students.

In 1989, the Museum Reference Center relocated to new, larger, and more accessible quarters. Collecting the ephemera of museum work--sketches of exhibitions, concept proposals, audience studies--began this year. This new aspect of collecting is in response to the emerging mission of this office to serve as a center for museological research as well as a timely reference resource.

III. Office of the Registrar - With base funding of 3 workyears and $149,000, the Office of the Registrar (OR) designs systems that keep the National Collections safe from harm and permit access by the widest audience possible. The National Collections--a red diamond, a yellow orchid, a Gilbert Stewart painting, Dizzy Gillespie's oddly bent horn--reflect the diversity of American interests. The Smithsonian represents these interests through more than 136 million artifacts and specimens.

Researchers and the public gain access to the National Collections through the Collections Information System (CIS). Staff enters information about objects and specimens into CIS and subsequently uses this information in exhibitions, publications, and public programs. Automation of CIS is a multi-year, interbureau effort organized by OR. This effort identifies appropriate technology, training needs, and resources crucial for effective collections management.

OR designs inventory and internal control procedures to provide accountability for Smithsonian collections. Collections management policy results from interaction between OR and the bureaus. In FY 1988, OR undertook the revision of the Institution's primary collections management policy directive. The Registrar's Council, which includes Collections Management staff from all Smithsonian museums, offers essential staff training and opportunities for the exchange of information. Working with the Office of Museum Programs, OR teaches principles and techniques of collections management to museum colleagues. As a leading participant in the International Council of Museums Documentation Committee, the OR maps the development of collections automation systems worldwide.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the Institution requests an increase of $100,000 to explore African-American programming.

I. Office of the Assistant Secretary for Museums

African-American Programming ($100,000) - The Smithsonian seeks to respond more fully to the needs and concerns of the African-American community through increased exhibits, studies, public programs, and other activities in the field of African-American culture not currently offered by the bureaus.

To strengthen this initiative, the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Museums will organize and provide staff to a broadly based advisory committee to advise the Institution on the feasibility of an African-American physical presence either within an existing Smithsonian museum or a new national African-American museum located in the Washington metropolitan area. The Office will also explore collecting issues through symposia and meetings with outside African-American collecting organizations, including traditionally black colleges and universities. Additionally, relationships with African-American museums and cultural centers, as well as organizations such as the Congressional Black Caucus, and the African American Museums Association, will be strengthened through the establishment of an information-exchange network. With these relationships and resources, the Smithsonian will then participate in and make additional contributions to African-American studies.

With funding provided in FY 1990, the Office will hire a director and program assistant to support this initiative. For FY 1991, the Office requests resources to cover the travel and per diem costs of an advisory committee composed of internal and external museum professionals and scholars in African-American art and history. These funds will also support contractual services to establish an information exchange network on African-American holdings, collections management, standards of curation and the production and circulation of traveling exhibits; symposia and meetings to explore collecting issues; and supplies, equipment, services and travel for the director and program assistant.

Working with a variety of African-American organizations, OASM will explore ways to highlight the collection-building and curatorial needs of African-American studies and consider the possibility of a dedicated presence within the Smithsonian museums.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

I. Office of the Assistant Secretary for Museums: Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Annual allotments provide unrestricted funds from the Smithsonian Institution's unrestricted general Trust funds to support the salary, benefits, and expenses of the Assistant Secretary; expenses for directorship search committees; and Institutional memberships in professional associations. Special purpose funds provide support for the Collections Acquisition Program, which facilitates the purchase of major acquisitions by the Smithsonian museums, and the Special Exhibition Fund, which provides partial funding through a competitive process for important and/or innovative exhibitions throughout the Institution. While the projected expenditures for FY 1990 and FY 1991 appear under this Office, the recipient organizations reflect the actual expenditures for FY 1989.

Restricted Funds - In FY 1989, the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Museums received a grant of $150,000 from the Rockefeller Foundation for the development of an

Experimental Gallery to study alternative approaches to exhibition design and production.

II. Office of Museum Programs: Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds- The Office of Museum Programs receives an annual allotment for awards to minority professionals attending the OMP workshops. These awards help defray travel and subsistence expenses. In addition, OMP has two revolving Trust funds for training and for the audio-visual loan and sales program to accommodate fees and services.

Restricted Funds - From FY 1982 through FY 1988, the Kellogg Foundation sponsored the Office of Museum Programs' project to "expand the educational influence of museums." The goal of the grant was to establish a network of museums throughout the United States that would examine issues and implementation strategies so that museums could increase their educational impact in their communities. In the course of the grant period, decision-makers from museums and representatives from other educational sources explored all aspects of museum operations. OMP will disseminate the print and nonprint products of the project.

III. Office of the Registrar: Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds- The Office of the Registrar receives an annual allotment to fund salary and support costs for the administrator of the Collections Information System.

NATIONAL MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY/MUSEUM OF MAN

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	537	26,357	3	331	3	1,561	17	2,292	18	915
FY 1990 -Estimate	585	27,505	3	322	3	1,053	17	3,085	10	780
-Base	585	28,098								
FY 1991 Estimate	593	29,762	3	378	4	1,231	17	3,102	10	759

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	585	8	593
11 Personnel Compensation	19,446	756	20,202
12 Personnel Benefits	3,113	173	3,286
21 Travel	502	20	522
22 Transportation of Things	74	4	78
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	77	5	82
24 Printing & Reproduction	297	0	297
25 Other Services	2,855	676	3,531
26 Supplies & Materials	966	6	972
31 Equipment	758	24	782
Collections Acquisition	10	0	10
Total	28,098	1,664	29,762

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	605
Program Funds	1,059

ABSTRACT - The National Museum of Natural History/Museum of Man (NMNH/MOM) houses the largest and most valuable assemblage of natural history specimens and human artifacts in the world. The Museum staff actively engages in the acquisition, preservation, care, and study of these collections, and makes them accessible to others. Museum scientists and scholars conduct research on living and fossil animals and plants, rocks, minerals, and meteorites. These studies help us understand the evolutionary relationships of animals and plants living today and in earlier periods

and shed light on the great physical changes that take place on our planet through time. Studies of human biology and culture are enriching our knowledge of human cultural and biological adaption and of the history and diversity of human evolution from its early stages to the present. Through its many exhibits, educational programs, and scholarly and popular publications, NMNH/MOM disseminates knowledge about the natural and cultural diversity of the world. Through both internal and external outreach programs, the Museum is deeply involved in science education.

For FY 1991, NMNH/MOM requests 7 workyears and $1,059,000 to support an associate director for public programs (2 workyears and $100,000); major exhibit hall renovations (1 workyear and $700,000); the Amazonia Biological Diversity Program (3 workyears and $134,000); global change and coastal oceans research ($50,000); and global change in Arctic ecosystems research (1 workyear and $75,000). The Institution requires $605,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item. In addition, a request totaling 22 workyears and $1,250,000, justified in the National Museum of the American Indian line-item, will fund native-American collections documentation research (18 workyears and $1,000,000) and a special committee on native-American materials (4 workyears and $250,000) to include existing collections of the Natural History Museum and the Heye collection of the Museum of the American Indian.

PROGRAM - The collections of the National Museum of Natural History/Museum of Man contain more than 119 million specimens of plants, animals, fossils, rocks, minerals, and human cultural artifacts. They are essential to the Nation's scientific community, because they provide fundamental documentation for the study of humankind and of the flora, fauna, and geology of our planet and outer space. The Museum shares its work with the scholarly community through publications, symposia, and scholarly exchanges and with the public through exhibitions, publications, and educational programs. Nearly six and one-half million visitors to the Museum in 1989 are testimony to the success of NMNH/MOM's public programs. These attendance levels make the Museum the most heavily visited natural history museum in the world.

In FY 1989, the Museum increased its holdings by approximately 674,817 specimens. This increase resulted from donations, purchases, expeditions of Museum scientists, and deposits from other government agencies. The Museum is responsible by law to serve as the ultimate repository for the collections of natural history, archeology, and ethnology gathered by U.S. government agencies. In addition, it provides laboratory space and research facilities for more than 50 scientists from affiliated Federal agencies with natural history missions, such as the Department of Agriculture, National Marine Fisheries Service, Fish and Wildlife Service, Geological Survey, and National Institutes of Health.

Worldwide Research - Scientific research on the Museum's collections and the publication of scientific findings are fundamental to the mission of the Museum. As concern about changes in the global environment continue to increase, the Museum is emphasizing programs and projects that will contribute to our understanding of these changes. Some of the Museum's 1989 research activities included:

-- A new impetus to the Museum's biological diversity programs was provided by the transfer in 1989 of the Biological Dynamics of Forest Fragments (BDFF) project from World Wildlife Fund (WWF) to the Smithsonian. With continued WWF support, as well as support from the Mellon Foundation and others, project researchers clarify the effects of deforestation by studying standardized patches of different sizes of isolated forest in Brazil to determine the biological mechanisms that result in extinction. This research complements the existing work conducted in other areas of Brazil and in Bolivia, Peru, and the Guianas. Expansion will significantly increase the sampling validity of the Museum's biodiversity research in South America.

-- The advent of molecular technology is the most significant new development for systematics research in decades. The Natural History Museum's Laboratory for Molecular Systematics, established in 1988, uses recombinant DNA methods to trace the relationships and evolutionary history of living organisms. As evolution is essentially a process of genetic change and diversification, molecular genetic methods can give direct access to information about evolutionary change. This information provides a powerful new tool for analyzing the relationships between organisms and the mechanics of diversification.

-- Under the leadership of four curators from the Departments of Paleobiology and Anthropology, the Museum is studying the history of global change through the geological record. Research concentrates on the intervals before and after extinctions and before the emergence of human influences. With a data base structure designed in FY 1988, major data acquisition has begun. The Museum's Terrestrial Ecosystems through Time, a late 1990 or early 1991 publication based on the 1987 workshop conference involving many scientists from other institutions, will establish the status and future goals of terrestrial ecosystems research. By FY 1990, ETE will expand its role in this research by engaging in new field and laboratory projects.

-- New dates and discoveries at an early hominid site at Olorgesaile, Kenya, under continuing excavation by a Museum anthropologist, reveal it to be one of the longest and richest records of the mid-Pleistocene, with artifacts and faunal remains dating from 220 thousand to 1.1 million years ago. During the 1989 field season, excavations began to uncover evidence of human prehistoric and historic interactions of humans with their environment.

Conferences and Workshops - The Museum organizes major international symposia to exchange scientific knowledge and ideas. Symposia also provide the public with greater knowledge of important scientific research. In addition, the Museum sponsors training workshops for the scientific community. Some notable 1988-89 gatherings included:

-- "Crossroads of Continents": At a major public symposium marking the opening of the Museum's "Crossroads of Continents" exhibition, leading Soviet and American scholars presented new findings on the archeology, ethnography, folklore, history, and current status of the ancient cultures of the North Pacific.

-- "Frobisher Conference: Vikings and Early Europeans in the Arctic": U.S. and Canadian archeologists, ethnologists, historians, metallurgists, geologists, physicists, and other scholars contributing data to an ongoing study of the oldest English settlement in the New World--Martin Frobisher's 1576-78 base camp on Kodlunarn (white-man's) Island, Frobisher Bay, the Canadian Arctic--met at NMNH/MOM on November 12-13, 1989. Organized by the Museum's Arctic archeologist, the conference discussed recent research findings and developed plans for a multi-year U.S.-Canadian interdisciplinary program exploring the archeology, history, and technology of the Frobisher voyages. A second thrust of the project is to look at the impact of Elizabethan contact on early Inuit culture in Eastern Baffin Island. The team is also planning ecological studies of the impact of the Little Ice Age on Eastern Arctic cultures, animals, and glaciers.

-- Caribbean Mangrove Ecology Workshop: Three dozen scientists participating in the Museum's Twin Cay, Belize, mangrove community study met to discuss findings. This long-term project, involving Smithsonian scientists and colleagues from American and European universities and museums, is documenting the biology, geology, ecological balance, economic importance, and aesthetic value of a mangrove swamp, using the example of a diverse and undisturbed one-square-kilometer swamp community on the barrier reef of Belize, a tiny Central American nation on the Caribbean coast.

-- Forensic Anthropology: Twenty-two forensic anthropologists, medical examiners, and law enforcement personnel from the United States, Canada, and Central America attended a week-long workshop on forensic anthropology, organized by the Museum's Department of Anthropology.

-- "Changing Patterns of Disease and Demography in the Americas before and after 1492": The Museum's third Columbus Quincentenary public forum brought leading international authorities together to discuss current research on human disease experience in the New World before and after the contact period.

Research Publications - A few of the 481 publications completed by Museum staff during 1988-89 included:

-- Global Volcanism, 1975-1985: The First Decade of Reports from the Smithsonian Institution's Scientific Event Network (SEAN): Reports from the SEAN Bulletin, a monthly publication of the Museum's Scientific Event Network, survey the decade's full spectrum of volcanism: small eruptions as well as large and subtle warning signs and disasters.

-- History of Indian-White Relations, vol. 4 of the Smithsonian's encyclopedic Handbook of North American Indians: Written by leading historians and anthropologists, the book surveys the history of Indian and white relations in North America from colonial times to the present.

-- Native Writings in Massachusett: To compile and write this book, two Museum anthropologists sought out and for the first time systematically transcribed and translated all known documents written by the Indians of southeastern Massachusetts in the Massachusett language, opening a window onto a segment of the history of colonial Massachusetts previously known only in fragments. The present-day Mashpee and Gay Head communities on Cape Cod and Martha's Vineyard--the principal descendants of the Indians who wrote in this language--have hailed the two-volume work as a major contribution to their cultural patrimony.

-- A Field Guide to the Marine Plants of the Caribbean: This guide, the first in its field, was researched and photographed in color by a team of four Museum marine botanists. Designed for both the marine biologist and the amateur skin diver, the guide took eight years to complete and involved oceanographic expeditions from Bermuda to Brazil and the Lesser Antilles to Panama.

-- Introduction to the Study of Meiofauna: This is the first book to summarize new advances in knowledge of a group of microscopic invertebrates of key ecological importance living in freshwater and marine sediments. A Museum marine zoologist who is one of the world's top authorities on meiofauna served as coeditor. Among the 54 essays in the book are contributions by six Museum researchers.

-- An Interdisciplinary Bibliography of Freshwater Crayfishes: This book by two Museum researchers brings together for the first time all the scientific literature and popular books and articles dealing with biological aspects of freshwater crayfish--more than 11,000 listings.

Collections Management - The Museum's more than 119 million specimens require continuous care and conservation as well as enhancement through acquisitions. Aided by the Smithsonian's Office of Information Resource Management, the Museum's multi-year effort to convert the collections inventory data base to a modern on-line Collections Reference System (CRefS) is under way. The Museum has transferred approximately 1.5 million collection records from the Departments of Vertebrate Zoology and Botany, permitting faster retrieval of collections information, immediate updating of records, and greater accuracy of data. Conversion of base inventory data in the Departments of Anthropology and Entomology will bring an additional 600,000 records on-line by spring 1990.

NMNH/MOM is continuing plans for an electronic collection image system of the Museum's native-American artifacts. The goal is to provide native-American artifact images to tribal museums and educational institutions throughout the country. The Museum also continues to work on long-range conservation strategies in an effort to improve the physical care of the collections. A department-by-department survey will determine conservation priorities.

Continuing projects in 1989 included moving approximately 418,000 specimens to the Museum Support Center (MSC); cleaning and stabilizing 1,500 collection items to prepare them for the move to the MSC; incorporating 537,000 specimens acquired in 1988 into the collection; and maintaining the loan and exchange programs, the most active of any museum in the world. The Museum loans and exchanges an average of 300,000 items annually.

Notable 1988-89 acquisitions included a collection of 4,000 silver spotted fritillary butterflies collected in Nebraska and eight other Western states, Canada, and Mexico. With many rare specimens, it is one of the finest butterfly collections donated to the Museum in recent years.

The Museum also acquired one of the finest private collections of American coal-age fossils ever amassed. Comprising 2,500 Paleozoic-era specimens of exceptional quality and spectacular size, it includes one-of-a-kind and rare imprints of ancient coal-forest seeds, cones, fern branches with long needlelike leaves, and the scalelike bark of fossilized trees that grew to 100 feet.

Exhibitions - Exhibitions are an important component of the Museum's commitment to communicate research and environmental issues to the public.

In the past year, the Museum has made significant progress in its effort to modernize the Native-American Halls. Museum staff have developed innovative and experimental displays for evaluation, testing, and possible incorporation into new permanent displays. A small theater shows films by and about native Americans; a demonstration area presents live performances and demonstrations of native-American handicrafts throughout the summer; and new displays continue to replace old exhibits. The Museum established a new temporary exhibits space. Physical improvements include new carpeting, new paint colors, lighting, and graphic enhancements. Planning continues for the creation of new permanent halls on native-American cultures.

In addition, six hall renovations are currently under development as part of the Museum's long-term renovation plan to update its 30 halls. These include:

-- Life in the Ancient Seas: The final element of the Museum's new permanent paleontology exhibition complex is scheduled to open in spring 1990. One of the exhibition's highlights will be a huge floor-to-ceiling mural, 121 feet long and 16 feet high--the first of its size and scope ever created--depicting life in the ancient seas, 200 to 500 million years ago.

-- Insect Zoo: Since opening ten years ago, the live Insect Zoo has become one of the Museum's most popular exhibits. The Museum has recently completed a new design model, with improved spaces and a recreated tropical rain forest. Following final detailing and engineering, NMNH/MOM hopes to begin construction in 1990 and to open the new hall in 1991.

-- Gems, Minerals and Geology: NMNH/MOM intends to rebuild the Geology, Minerals and Gems complex, which houses the best gem and mineral collection of its kind in the world. An innovative new design integrates Earth's spectacular mineral and gem treasures along with geological processes, such as plate tectonics and volcanism, into a single dynamic and educational experience.

-- Human Origins: Still in the early days of planning and design, the Museum's Human Origins Hall will present the physical and cultural characteristics that define what it means to be human and the scientific means and analyses by which these determinations are made.

-- Marine Mammals Hall: A major renovation of the existing Marine Mammals Hall will feature a new script, graphics, models, and other interpretive materials. The Museum will renovate and reopen a balcony overlooking the spectacular 92-foot model of the now-endangered Blue Whale.

Highlights of 1989 special exhibitions included:

-- "Crossroads of Continents: Cultures of Siberia and Alaska": This major international exhibition was on view in the Museum's Thomas M. Evans Gallery for six months in 1988-89. Developed jointly by the Museum and the Soviet Academy of Sciences, with the collaborative aid of the International Research and Exchange Board, the exhibition marked the first time the people of both continents have had the opportunity to view many early and important archeological and ethnographic collections from the remote but important North Pacific region. The exhibition will be seen in five other museums in the United States and Canada, as well as in Moscow, Leningrad, and two additional Soviet cities. NMNH/MOM scholars edited a 360-page catalogue, with contributions from Soviet and American scholars, that was published by the Smithsonian Institution Press. A "Crossroads" school packet and film program accompanied the exhibition.

-- "Iroquois Beadwork": This exhibition, on view from March 1989 to September 1, 1989, traced the evolution of the beadwork craft within the changing Iroquois culture from the introduction of glass beads in the 17th century to the present. The first of a planned series of temporary exhibitions from tribal museums and collections, the exhibition featured representative material from all Iroquois tribes.

-- "Nomads: Masters of the Eurasian Steppe": This unprecedented display of artifacts illustrating the lifestyles and cultures of the steppelands' nomadic people over a period of 3,000 years opened in November 1989. Ten years in the making, this international archeological-ethnographic exhibition was organized by the Academy of Sciences of the U.S.S.R. in cooperation with the Natural History Museum of Los Angeles County and featured treasures from nine leading Soviet museums.

-- "The First Egyptians": This exhibition, which opened in December 1989, focused on the customs and everyday life of early Egyptian society as it developed between about 4000 B.C. and 2700 B.C.--from small chiefdoms into the world's first nation-state. Organized by the University of South Carolina's McKissick Museum in Columbia it featured more than 130 artifacts, many never before seen in the United States.

-- "Flowers from the Royal Gardens of Kew: Two Centuries of Curtis's Botanical Magazine": This exhibition, on view from January 26, 1989 to April 30, 1989, featured 70 watercolors dating from the 18th to 20th centuries by renowned botanical illustrators. Currently on a nationwide tour, it was organized by the Royal Botanical Gardens, Kew (London, England), to celebrate the 200th anniversary of the magazine.

-- "Inside Active Volcanoes: Kilauea and Mount St. Helens": This major exhibition on the two active volcanoes in the United States opened at the Museum in July 1989 and attracted more than 500,000 visitors during its three-month stay. Developed by an NMNH/MOM volcanologist in cooperation with a U.S. Geological Survey colleague, it is now traveling nationally to 11 cities under the auspices of the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES). Featuring spectacular color photo murals and film sequences, the exhibition captured the power and beauty of the eruptions of Kilauea and Mount St. Helens. Touchable geological specimens and numerous interactive computer displays provided visitors with hands-on information about volcanoes and their activity. One highlight was a computer display that presented seismic activity on Hawaii Island as it happened. Linked by telephone to the Hawaii Volcano Observatory computer, the display dramatically showed that the island is one of the most seismically active places on Earth.

As part of the Institution's Columbus Quincentenary Program, the National Museum of Natural History is planning a major exhibition organized around the concept "Seeds of Change." The exhibition, which is set to open in October 1991, will examine plant, animal and disease exchanges that occurred between the Old and New Worlds transforming the cultural and ecological landscape of the Americas.

Education: Relying on nearly 300 docents who volunteer to provide educational services, the Museum's Office of Education produces programs and develops instructional materials to accompany Museum exhibits. Thirty-five thousand school children came to NMNH/MOM for special programs in 1989, while outreach programs taken to local schools reached another 16,000 students. Special facilities include the Discovery Room, a nationally known hands-on facility for children, which welcomed more than 100,000 visitors last year; the Naturalist Center, where natural history objects, books, and equipment for visitors aged 12 and older are available; and the live Insect Zoo. Nearly 20,000 people attended the Museum's Friday Film and Lecture Series and other special educational programs presented free throughout the year.

Among the special activities in 1989 was a new outreach program to the fast-growing Southeast Asian community in the Washington, D.C., area. It featured traditional music and dance of Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, and Thailand. In conjunction with the "Crossroads" exhibition, a free film festival showed recent Soviet films on the Siberian people and rare, early footage from Smithsonian and Finnish archives on the people of northern Alaska and Siberia. The first troupe of musicians and dancers from northeastern Siberia ever to appear in the United States presented free programs of music, dance, storytelling, and crafts.

NMNH/MOM has opened "Natural History Update," a large-screen natural history video program for continuous viewing in the Museum. This pilot project, put together by a small in-house staff, features short, up-to-date looks at Museum research and current natural history events to complement traditional museum displays. The objective is to generate public interest in new scientific findings and acquisitions as well as current newsworthy events, such as earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, oil spills, or forest fires. Drawing on still photographs and film clips from news media and filmed interviews with scientists, the videos provide deeper insights into current issues than is possible in television broadcasts. With environmental changes and new research advances influencing the world at an increasing rate, traditional exhibitions, which take years to produce, cannot keep pace. "Natural History Update" is an important adjunct to the educational purpose of the museum display halls.

In conjunction with plans to modernize the Museum's Native-American Halls, the Museum initiated a new series of public programs in July 1989 that bring to the Museum from tribes throughout the United States and Canada the practitioners of traditions such as pottery, storytelling, songs and dances, weaving and basketry, and jewelry-making and silversmithing. These public programs and demonstrations by contemporary native Americans and Alaskans provide a unique opportunity for Museum visitors to interact with representatives of a living cultural heritage.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, NMNH/MOM requests 7 workyears and $1,059,000 to support an associate director for public programs (2 workyears and $100,000); major exhibit hall renovations (1 workyear and $700,000); the Amazonia Biological Diversity Program (3 workyears and $134,000); global change and coastal oceans research ($50,000); and global change in Arctic ecosystems research (1 workyear and $75,000).

Associate Director for Public Programs (2 workyears and $100,000) - As the most popular natural history museum in the world, NMNH/MOM has a special responsibility to enhance visitors' knowledge of the natural world, the diversity of human culture, and global changes with an emphasis on the ways human activities impinge on natural processes. The goal of coordinating the efforts of the offices of education and exhibits under one associate director is to create a national model for public education in the natural sciences and anthropology that will build on the strengths of the Museum's collections and research interests and the size and diversity of the Museum's audience.

The primary responsibility of this position is to integrate and strengthen NMNH/MOM exhibits and educational programs that will enhance the total visitor experience. As the Museum moves from static display techniques to interactive exhibits and education, improved coordination of these traditionally parallel efforts is vital. This request will fund an associate director (1 workyear and $89,000) and secretarial support (1 workyear and $11,000). Base resources will fund travel and other support requirements.

NMNH/MOM's more than six million visitors each year come from around the world, as well as from local schools and colleges. By hiring a senior manager to coordinate public program efforts, the Museum will meet the needs of its wide-ranging constituency more efficiently.

Major Exhibit Hall Renovation (1 workyear and $700,000) - NMNH/MOM's 30 permanent exhibit halls comprise more than 200,000 square feet of exhibit space. As most of these halls are more than 20 years old, they present outdated cultural interpretation and scientific information to the public. The Museum is committed to bringing the exhibits up to date, to making NMNH/MOM a leader among U.S. and world museums, and to addressing the serious challenges of science education.

The increase will enable the NMNH/MOM to continue work on the Fourth Generation of Exhibits--a long-term renovation plan for its 30 permanent halls that will prepare for the 21st century. The staff and funds provided by this request will allow continuous upgrading, renovation, and maintenance services to assure the quality and improve the appearance of exhibits and public spaces, as well as the care and conservation of the National Collections on display, and the safety and comfort of more than six million visitors a year.

Existing salary and expenses resources and repair and restoration limits will not permit timely renovation of major exhibit halls. Ideally, the renovation should occur at an average rate of one and one-half halls per year, at an estimated mean cost of $4.0 million per hall. The ultimate goal is to renovate all the exhibit halls in NMNH/MOM. The following are the components of a typical budget for a hall measuring approximately 10,000 square feet in size: design costs, $750,000; demolition, $75,000; mechanical and safety, including electrical and sprinkler equipment, $185,000; walls, ceiling, and lighting, $250,000; exhibit casework, case lighting, headers, and panels, $1,800,000; casework installation, $270,000; installation of graphic elements, brackets, dioramas, specimens and artifacts, $325,000; audiovisual and installation, $185,000; carpet and installation, $60,000; and publicity and public programming, $100,000. The Museum schedules exhibit construction, whenever possible, in concert with repair and restoration, major capital renewal, and Museum Support Center move activities.

Careful planning is essential for exhibit renovation, often requiring scheduling several years in advance for demolition, object selection and preparation, and installation. Because of the magnitude of the costs involved in exhibit revitalization and the requirement of multi-year planning, the Museum requests that this funding ($700,000) for major hall renovation remain available until expended (unlike the balance of the salaries and expenses appropriation for this line-item, which are one-year funds). The "Introduction" section of this budget contains a further justification for no-year funding.

For FY 1991, requested funds include support for one conservator (1 workyear and $46,000) and support costs that, combined with private funds, will help renovate one major exhibit hall per year. The Museum will begin renovation of the Native-American

Hall and rebuilding of the Insect Zoo, Marine Mammals Hall balcony, and the Geology, Minerals and Gems Hall.

The modernized halls of the National Museum of Natural History/Museum of Man will display to millions of visitors landscapes and seascapes, living and extinct organisms, and the human cultures of the Earth. The Museum strives to complete its hall renovation in order that its visitors might better understand the beauties and complexities of the living planet.

Amazonia Biological Diversity Program (3 workyears and $134,000) - The loss of tropical rainforests and concomitant biodiversity is a threat to all humankind, particularly as it relates to hastening global warming and other changes. Addressing these urgent and ultimate problems must not be delayed, no matter how modest the initial effort. Tropical forests, especially in Brazil, are being destroyed by development at an alarming rate, and it is in the interest of the United States and the world community to help prevent this destruction.

The Institution seeks increased funding for the Museum's Amazonia Biological Diversity Program to assume administrative responsibilities for the Biological Dynamics of Forest Fragments (BDFF) Project transferred to the Smithsonian Institution in FY 1989 from World Wildlife Fund with short-term interim funding. Augmenting the Smithsonian's long-term studies of biodiversity, the project is critical to future conservation planning in Amazonia. The Amazonian rain forests maintain global climate cycles. The forests are a significant reservoir of carbon, which, if released into the atmosphere, will aggravate the greenhouse effect. Rainfall patterns, and hence agriculture, throughout South America depend upon moisture derived from the rain forest.

BDFF studies the changes that occur in the rain forest ecosystem as human development encroaches upon it. Researchers inventory the flora and fauna in a series of isolated forest reserves. Scientists measure the physical changes in the understory microclimate and soil moisture. Biotic and physical changes are then related to the size of the forest reserve under study. Resulting analyses will provide guidelines for the integration of conservation and economic development.

Graduate students and researchers from various Brazilian institutes, including Brazil's National Institute for Amazonian Research (INPA) as well as Smithsonian and other foreign researchers are involved in the project. The training of Brazilian graduate students is vital for establishing a cadre of nationals capable of designing development strategies that ensure maximum conservation of biological diversity.

The Museum requests funds to support a senior scientist (1 workyear and $76,000) to provide scientific direction and coordination for all the Museum's biological diversity programs in Amazonia, including BDFF and the Biological Diversity of Tropical Latin America Program (BIOLAT). A program administrator (1 workyear and $32,000) will manage BDFF, and a secretary (1 workyear and $24,000) will support biodiversity staff at the Museum. Support funds of $2,000 will offset increased communications costs.

It is certain that the pressure to develop the extensive rain forests of South America will continue to grow. It is also clear that we currently do not have sufficient data to make wise decisions about development. Data gathered by BDFF and the biologists trained under its auspices should interact synergistically to guide this development in such a way as to minimize the potentially devastating global changes that would result from poorly planned occupation of the Amazon.

Global Change and Coastal Oceans Research ($50,000) - The Smithsonian pursues basic research in environmental change in coastal ecosystems at a number of Institution sites. Among NMNH/MOM sites is the extremely important station at Carrie Bow Cay, Belize. Here the Caribbean Coral Reef Ecosystems Program, begun in FY 1985, has experienced resounding success in field and laboratory studies of Caribbean coral reef and related ecological systems. Including staff from the National Museum of Natural History/Museum of Man and scientific investigators from around the world, the small scientific station at Carrie Bow Cay has played host to 70 scientists and technicians annually.

The Museum seeks funding of $20,000 to establish a weather station located on the Belize Barrier Reef. Technicians will observe climatic and ocean conditions using 12 measurements including wind speed, wind direction, air temperature, solar radiation, water level, surface water temperature, and rainfall. NMNH/MOM seeks to document changes over the long term in the climate and ocean and the impact of these changes and catastrophic events, such as hurricanes, on the animal and plant populations in the Caribbean reef ecosystems. Such local changes linked to changes in rainfall and temperature globally, are integral to analyzing the greenhouse and global-warming trends. The scientists who have conducted studies of biological communities of the reef and mangrove since 1972 will design and monitor this weather station.

In addition to equipment costs, the Museum seeks funding of $10,000 to cover travel costs for a specialist to install the weather station and for a growing number of fellows and scientists conducting field research at Carrie Bow Cay. In addition, the research program requires that the Museum lease the field site for an additional three months ($20,000) to complete a full year. In subsequent years, this program will need related technical contracts for maintenance and data evaluation, as well as support for replacement parts and equipment.

As a result of long-term experience in the region, NMNH/MOM is uniquely suited for monitoring this key environment. The weather station will allow real-time transmission of the data to a computer on Carrie Bow Cay. Monitoring and recording of sensor data at all times will therefore be possible. Ongoing studies of biodiversity, food chain ecology, nutrient cycling, ecophysiology, and habitat mapping using satellite imagery will be improved by the availability of data from the weather station.

Global Change in Arctic Ecosystems Research (1 workyear and $75,000)- Archeological sites are, in effect, time capsules that contain records of former cultural and environmental conditions. Owing to exceptional preservation, Arctic and sub-Arctic archeological sites can yield important data on the impact of long-term climatic change on natural, biological, and cultural systems.

Climate exerts dominant control over the southern position of Arctic icepack, the position of the forest-tundra boundary, and the distribution of many species of plants and animals. Human cultures adapted to these extreme environments and their animals and plants appear to be similarly affected by climate, as positive correlation between climatic records and latitudinal shifts in the Eskimo-Indian boundary in Labrador demonstrates. More generally, correlation of archeological data with paleoenvironmental history provides a powerful tool for determining long-term impacts of global climatic change on human societies.

This research on Arctic ecosystems concentrates on two aspects of global change. In the climatically rigorous Eastern Arctic, researchers will look for signals of climatic and environmental change in cultural and demographic-territorial change of Indian and Eskimo cultures over the past 10,000 years. In the Western Arctic, researchers will place emphasis on social and technological factors of change seen through the dynamic interaction of Alaskan and Siberian cultures. The results of both studies will be linked with research results from other circumpolar areas to develop a general model of circumpolar cultural response to changing global environments.

The requested funding will support a Western Arctic archeologist (1 workyear and $46,000). Support funds ($29,000) will permit travel, fieldwork, and laboratory research needed to conduct archeological and ecological studies in the Eastern Arctic and Sub-Arctic.

The Smithsonian has a long history of archeological and environmental studies in both the Eastern and Western Arctic. Its Arctic Program is part of an international network of northern research centers, and its vast collections, archives, and educational programs, including major international exhibitions like "Crossroads of Continents," provide important resources for research, communication, and the training of future northern scholars.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - The Museum derives funds from a variety of sources. These funds represent the Museum's share of net proceeds of the museum shop, cafeterias, vending machines, and other receipts, such as sale of educational posters and folios; royalties from staff publications through the Smithsonian Institution Press; and tuition reimbursement grants by universities for courses taught by Museum staff members. During FY 1989, allotments provided for the costs of the Museum director and a support staff member, half-time administrative support for the Marine Systems Laboratory, a computer statistician to support Museum researchers, and events related to new exhibit openings.

The Museum uses special purpose funds to support special research publications, field research, Museum internships and fellowships, travel and supplemental training for support staff, collections acquisition, NMNH/MOM brochures and audio-visual equipment for exhibit halls, and other needs of the Museum's various departments. The Museum's Naturalist Center and Discovery Room also receive support for educational supplies, specimens, furnishings, and related materials.

NMNH/MOM benefits from the Institution's programs for Collections Acquisition, Scholarly Studies, Educational Outreach, Research Opportunities, the Women's Committee of the Smithsonian Associates, Smithson Society, International Exchange, and Special Exhibition funding initiatives for research, education, and exhibit projects. Funding for FY 1989 has provided wider audience participation initiatives, production of a Kiowa catalogue, research for the Human Origins Hall, support for the Columbus Quincentenary exhibition "Seeds of Change," and the design for a new Insect Zoo.

Restricted Funds - The Museum receives additional funding for specific programs and projects through endowments, donations, gifts, grants, and contracts from individuals, foundations, and corporations. Sources of this type of funding include ARCO Gas and Oil Company, Earthwatch, and Exxon Corporation. In combination with the generosity of private individuals, these resources allow for the pursuit of many long-term and short-term research projects and exhibits. One example of this type of

funding is gifts from members of the American Mining Congress, totaling more than $700,000, for the renovation of the Geology, Minerals and Gem Hall. Xerox Corporation has pledged $1.2 million for production of the Museum's Quincentenary exhibit, "Seeds of Change." Another example is support from Space Biospheres Venture (SBV) for the Marine Systems Laboratory Biosphere Project, which aims to provide food sources and a livable human habitat to sustain life during space travel through the development of seven major ecosystems. The prototype for this project is presently in the construction stages in Tucson, Arizona. The Hitachi Foundation has provided support for "Natural History Update," the new video program featuring current natural history events.

During FY 1989 Museum staff members conducted a variety of projects with restricted funds, including ethnographic research of Tobelorese communities of Indonesia, study of Arenal Volcano in Costa Rica, and investigation of powder X-ray diffraction of manganese oxide materials. These are but a few examples of activities carried out in the Museum and at field sites around the world.

NMNH/MOM is responsible for the management of the Smithsonian Marine Research Station at Link Port (SMSLP), Fort Pierce, Florida. Hunterdon Endowment funds are dedicated to the basic operation support of this oceanographic research facility, the research of one resident scientist, and supporting research activities of Smithsonian visiting scientists from NMNH/MOM and the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center, postdoctoral fellows, and numerous visiting investigators, both national and international. Research focuses on the life history, systematics, and ecology of a wide spectrum of plant and animal marine life. Seward Johnson Endowment funds provide for the support of the Johnson-Sea-Link submersible owned by the Harbor Branch Oceanographic Institution (HBOI), the host facility.

NMNH/MOM is currently developing a fund-raising strategy to support construction of a laboratory and residential facilities that will serve the mission of SMSLP and its research initiatives. Since the Museum's involvement with the SMSLP, its location has proven to be a growing source of study for virtually all scientific disciplines. These considerations, along with the advent of long-term lease agreements between the Smithsonian and HBOI, have made this major step forward possible.

Government Grants and Contracts - These funds are provided by various government agencies and departments for special projects conducted at the Museum to take advantage of its unique scientific expertise and variety of specialty fields. Examples of this type of activity are analysis of polar biological materials and cooperative systematics studies by the Smithsonian Oceanographic Sorting Center (SOSC) for the National Science Foundation; biosystematic research on Aedes mosquitoes conducted for the U.S. Army by an entomologist located at the Museum Support Center; and tumor registry in lower animals conducted by the Department of Invertebrate Zoology for the National Institutes of Health. Other agencies currently contracted with NMNH/MOM departments are the National Air and Space Administration, the U.S. Information Agency, the Department of Agriculture, the Department of Interior, and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

NATIONAL AIR AND SPACE MUSEUM

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	224	9,594	3	414	45	4,701	2	2,297	4	316
FY 1990 -Estimate	227	10,165	3	251	46	4,412	3	1,557	5	304
-Base	227	10,387								
FY 1991 Estimate	228	10,698	3	249	46	4,594	4	1,666	4	242

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	227	1	228
11 Personnel Compensation	6,760	227	6,987
12 Personnel Benefits	1,690	59	1,749
21 Travel	69	10	79
22 Transportation of Things	35	0	35
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	44	0	44
24 Printing & Reproduction	127	0	127
25 Other Services	662	15	677
26 Supplies & Materials	503	0	503
31 Equipment	497	0	497
Total	10,387	311	10,698

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay		240	
Program Funds		71	

ABSTRACT - The National Air and Space Museum (NASM) is an international repository for artifacts and documentation related to the development of aviation, space flight, and space science. Through its exhibitions, research, collections management, and education programs, the Museum serves a wide public and scholarly community interested in the history and technological achievements of aviation and space flight. In addition to its Mall location, NASM maintains a facility for the preservation and restoration of artifacts at the Paul E. Garber Preservation, Restoration, and Storage Facility in Suitland, Maryland.

For FY 1991, NASM requests an increase of 1 workyear and $71,000 to reinforce the Museum's capabilities in applying the technology of satellite data analysis to global-scale environmental studies. The Institution requires $240,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - Legislation established NASM on August 12, 1946. The completion of the Mall Museum in 1976 greatly strengthened NASM's role as a national resource for public and scholarly interest in the history of air and space technology. More than 126 million people have visited the Museum since it opened, making it the most popular museum in the world. NASM's collections include more than 300 historic aircraft, 250 spacecraft, and extensive holdings of artifacts, papers, photographs, films, microfiche, video disc, and technical drawings. These resources are available for interested American and foreign scholars to study.

The exhibition program uses state-of-the-art techniques in design, presentation, and equipment to convey the excitement of the subject matter to the visitor. Active scientific research programs, aimed at understanding astrophysics and both terrestrial and planetary geology, are important endeavors of the Museum. Ongoing programs in historical research, collections management, preservation, and restoration of artifacts are central to the Museum's curatorial efforts. As a public institution, NASM devotes considerable attention to education and outreach activities, offering workshops, lectures, films, planetarium presentations, docent tours, and written materials to schools and visitors to the Museum.

NASM handles exhibits preparation, collections storage and maintenance, preservation, and restoration at the Paul E. Garber Facility in Suitland, Maryland. At the Garber Facility, the Museum has restored more than 69 historic aircraft and spacecraft from its collection, with the restoration of additional artifacts planned each year. The Garber Facility also displays approximately 90 aircraft, numerous spacecraft, and other flight-related objects. In FY 1989 almost 33,000 people visited the Garber Facility.

Research - Research is the foundation of the Museum's efforts as a primary resource center for the science and technology of aviation, space, and geophysical science. Research findings also support the exhibitions and publications and educational, historic restoration, and archival programs. Research undertaken by the Museum staff encompasses the history of aeronautics; the history of space science and exploration; contemporary developments in these fields; comparative studies of the Earth and other planets using satellite images and data; and infrared astronomy. In addition, the Museum engages in two applied research and development programs: the historic preservation of aircraft and spacecraft, and the storage and retrieval of archival and photographic information.

-- Aeronautics: With funding provided in FY 1989, the Museum will hire two senior-level curators/historians for the Aeronautics Department. These two new positions represent the first phase of a multi-year program to enhance the Museum's ongoing historical research efforts and eliminate current gaps in staff expertise specifically in the area of high speed flight. This enhancement will build upon the Department's recent efforts to conduct more comprehensive research on the history of aeronautics and its role in the broader context of United States and world history.

NASM has entered a cooperative venture with the Smithsonian Institution Press to publish the Smithsonian History of Aviation series. Through this program, the Museum and the Smithsonian Institution Press intend to attract the highest quality manuscripts produced by scholars working with the Institution. In FY 1990, the Smithsonian History of Aviation series issued significant scholastic works on aviation history, such as Strike from the Sky: The History of Battlefield Air Attack, 1911-1945, by Richard Hallion, and Bonfires to Beacons: Federal Civil Aviation Policy Under the Air Commerce Act, 1926-1938, by Nick Komons. Additional publications in this series for FY 1990 will include Visions of a Flying Machine: The Wright Brothers and the Process of Invention, by Peter Jakab. Future publications will include translations of From the History of Soviet Aviation: The Aircraft of S. V. Ilyushin's Experimental Design Bureau, edited by G. K. Novozhilov, The Airplane in American Culture, edited by Dominic Pisano, World War I Airpower, by John Morrow, and Benjamin O. Davis, Jr., an autobiography by General Davis. In November 1989, the University of Washington Press published the catalogue accompanying NASM's centennial exhibit on Igor Sikorsky.

Other publications planned for FY 1990 include The Boeing 247, by Robert van der Linden. Research and writing continue on several books to appear in upcoming years. These include a publication exploring the history of the development of the small gas turbine engine in the United States, a historical perspective of the civil pilot training program during Franklin D. Roosevelt's presidency, and a history of blacks in aviation.

-- Space History: The Museum's joint program of research and documentation of the Hubble Space Telescope project, in collaboration with the History of Science Department at Johns Hopkins University, will serve as a rich source of research material for future historians and will provide a valuable current record of space technology. Cambridge University Press published The Space Telescope: A Study of NASA, Science, Technology and Politics, a monograph by Dr. Robert Smith on this project, in October 1989. Other publications in FY 1990 include A Directory of Sources for Air and Space History: Primary Historical Collections in United States Repositories, a preliminary edition by E. T. Wooldridge, Jr., original compiler, and Martin J. Collins, general editor; Space Technology and Planetary Astronomy by Joseph Tatarewicz; and A Spacefaring Nation, proceedings from the NASA/NASM seminar on space history, edited by Martin J. Collins and Sylvia Fries. The Space History Department is also conducting historical research on satellites, the interaction of aerospace and computing technologies, spacesuit technology, weather satellites, and the Soviet space program.

The Glennan-Webb-Seamans Project continues its preservation and research program on the history of the Nation's space program, with emphasis on its administration and management. In FY 1989, the Project conducted oral history interviews with key administrators and program managers from the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) and aerospace industry executives and managers. In FY 1990, the Project plans to sponsor several research case studies on the interaction between government and the aerospace industry in implementing the space program.

Preparation of an in-depth survey of Washington-area resources for space history, in cooperation with NASA and the U.S. Air Force History Office, continues in FY 1990. The success of the various oral history projects, which NASM began in FY 1986, has stimulated interest in experimenting with video histories and led to Sloan Foundation's funding of a pilot video history program. During the first two years, the Museum conducted video history sessions on a wide range of topics. These include the origins of the aerial reconnaissance studies at the Rand Corporation, the history of X-ray astronomy and aeronomy at the Naval Research Laboratory, aspects of the history of the Mariner Venus program, and observing techniques in ground-based astronomy. NASM continues to coordinate this Institution-wide video history project for Sloan Foundation, in cooperation with scholars from the National Museum of American History and has expanded new proposals to include the history of Soviet space biology and black aviation.

-- Earth and Planetary Studies: NASM established the Center for Earth and Planetary Studies (CEPS) in 1973. By analyzing remote-sensing data from satellites, the Center's scholars research comparative planetology and the development of the Earth's landforms and surface composition. In FY 1983, NASA designated the Center for Earth and Planetary Studies as a Planetary Image Facility, a repository allowing researchers access to the collections of images of the planets taken by NASA space probes. Researchers from the Smithsonian and other institutions make extensive use of this facility. Plans are now under way to link the Planetary Image Facilities across the country. Using this computer network, each facility can share the images in its collection with other facilities that store images and information from different space missions.

Research projects on satellite remote-sensing of desert fringe regions have increased scientists' understanding of the effects of climatic change on surface materials in Africa's Sahelian zone. The Center for Earth and Planetary Studies has also conducted fieldwork in the inland Niger Delta of Mali, western Egypt, and northern Sudan. By combining recent satellite images with those taken 14 years earlier, researchers can better assess the movement of sand and soil that has taken place as a result of the recent drought. CEPS continued research in mapping and analyzing surface features on the Moon and Mars throughout FY 1989 with funding by NASA. CEPS is also a partner in a NASA proposal for a major quantitative study, based on Landsat and other remote-sensing satellites, of the extent and rate of deforestation in the Amazon basin.

In FY 1990, the Center for Earth and Planetary Studies will move to a new location in the Museum. This increased office space, formerly the public cafeteria, will enable the Center to house additional staff, interns, fellows, graduate students, and the Center's mainframe computers currently located on another floor.

-- Laboratory for Astrophysics: NASM opened the Laboratory for Astrophysics in October 1988. Staff scientists of this new department will initially concentrate on the development and application of state-of-the-art technology for infrared astronomical spectroscopy, including instrumentation aboard the European Infrared Satellite Observatory. They will carry out research on planetary atmospheres, star formation, galactic shock phenomena, and other astrophysical processes. This new department has many interests in common with the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory. In addition, it will lend scientific insight and expertise to support the Museum's curatorial staff in communicating to the public an up-to-date scientific understanding of the universe.

Exhibitions - A new exhibition, "Beyond the Limits: Flight Enters the Computer Age," opened in May 1989. This major gallery traces the development and use of computers in aviation and aerospace industries from the 1940s and includes hands-on displays, interactive video units, a state-of-the-art theater, and a working robotic arm. The exhibit highlights seven areas to illustrate the primary applications of the computer in aerospace: Design, Aerodynamics, Computer-Aided Manufacture, Flight Testing, Air Operations, Flight Simulators, and Space Operations. A full-scale model of the radical X-29 aircraft with its forward-swept wings is on exhibit, along with spectacular video footage of the aircraft in flight. The exhibition also features a

CRAY-1, one of the first production-model supercomputers, and a robot that builds and flies paper airplanes.

Other exhibit openings in FY 1989 included the Structural Dynamic Test Vehicle for the Hubble Space Telescope, the largest astronomical space telescope ever built. The Museum's art gallery opened an exhibit of Italian futurist artwork in June 1989. "Aeropittura Futurista: Images of Flight in Italian Art from 1913 to 1942" depicted Italian futurism, the first artistic movement to embrace technology as its subject and to glorify the airplane as a symbol of the modern age. In July 1989, the Museum commemorated the 20th anniversary of the first lunar landing with a lunar landing party including complete video coverage of this historic event and an art exhibition, "Eyewitness to Apollo 11." The exhibition included 26 works of art and traced the development of the Apollo program and its crowning accomplishment--the Apollo 11 mission--through the eyes of artists as diverse in style and approach as Robert Rauschenberg and Norman Rockwell.

In FY 1990, the Museum opened an exhibit commemorating the centennial of Igor Sikorsky's birth. Illustrating benchmarks in his life as a pioneer designer and industrialist, this exhibit concentrates on Sikorsky's designs for aircraft, seaplanes, and helicopters. The Museum remodeled the Sea-Air Operations gallery in FY 1990 to expand the Ready Room and to offer a new film of aircraft carrier deck takeoffs and landings. This gallery highlights the six major aircraft carrier battles in the Pacific during World War II, with special tribute to the USS Enterprise, the most decorated carrier of the Pacific war. "Commuting in the Modern Manner," a new exhibit centering around the fully restored Grumman Goose, highlights the use of this amphibious aircraft during the 1930s.

The Museum's visitor information center will open in FY 1990. A highlight of the center is an interactive series of six satellite units, stationed throughout the Museum, which will provide visitors with current information on all Smithsonian museums, plus detailed information on all NASM galleries, films, and presentations. A prototype unit has been part of the Museum since FY 1989. Also in FY 1990, the Museum is presenting the work of artist Roland Emett, including drawings of his unique and whimsical sculptures, such as the Pussiewillow II.

In FY 1991, a major new gallery entitled "Embattled Skies: The Emergence of Air Power in World War I," will open. Emphasizing the first-time use of aircraft as a weapon in war, this gallery will highlight the grim realities of aerial combat in contrast to the romanticized myth of "knights of the air."

For FY 1992, the Museum is planning "Where Next, Columbus?" an exhibition in conjunction with the Columbus Quincentenary that will examine prospects for discovering other "new worlds" in space during the next 500 years of exploration. Other planned topics include the roles of manned and unmanned space missions; long-term exploration of the solar system; alternatives to the chemical rocket using advanced propulsion concepts; astrophysical and physiological limits to space flight; and life support systems.

NASM presents films related to aviation and space flight in a specially equipped theater that uses an innovative, high-resolution projection system (IMAX) and a giant screen for extraordinarily realistic effects. The latest IMAX film, On the Wing, which premiered in June 1986, compares natural and artificial flight using a mechanical replica of the flying reptile, pterodactyl. Another IMAX film, The Dream Is Alive, features film footage shot by the astronauts on three shuttle missions. A new film project planned for FY 1990, entitled *The Blue Planet*, will use new IMAX film footage shot by the astronauts on recent and forthcoming shuttle missions to explain the functioning of global environmental systems. In recognition of the International Space Year 1992, the Museum will coproduce another IMAX film, *To the Stars*, highlighting achievements in space exploration by different countries. A new show in the Museum's planetarium, "Calling All Stars," takes viewers on a voyage to other worlds to explore current scientific thinking on the question of extraterrestrial life and the prospects for radio communication with other civilizations in space.

Development of Collections - In FY 1989, the Museum acquired a Lockheed C-130 Hercules, a typical combat cargo carrier used in Vietnam; a McDonnell-Douglas F4S Phantom II, a Navy carrier and U.S. Air Force standard fighter used in Vietnam; a Rolls-Royce Conway turbojet engine, a pioneer jet engine used on Boeing 707s and Douglas DC-8s; a blimp gondola from a K-ship of the type used during World War II; and a Goodyear ZPG-3W airship gondola from one of the last lighter-than-air ships created for the U.S. Navy ca. 1950. In July 1989, the Museum and Air France finalized an agreement to add a Concorde airplane, the first commercial supersonic transport plane, to the Museum's collections after the airline retires it from commercial service.

In FY 1989, other important acquisitions included an antisatellite missile and pylon; a payload assist module; ordnance rockets and launchers; and a model of the "National Aero-Space Plane." Planned acquisitions for FY 1990 include a Pershing 2 missile (with a second one that the Museum hopes to trade for a Soviet SS-20 missile); an AQM-81A drone; an H-1 launch vehicle model; an H-2 launch vehicle model; and a MIDAS Infrared detector.

To date, NASM has acquired 31,000 feet of duplicate footage of original aviation newsreels produced by the Movietone News Company from 1919 to 1939. These cover subjects such as Charles Lindbergh and his Lockheed *Sirius*, the *Spirit of St. Louis* arriving at the Smithsonian Institution, Jack Northrop and the original flying wing, the Women's Air Derby of the late 1920s, a Graf Zeppelin over Berlin, and Amelia Earhart speaking to American women fliers. This extremely valuable footage (part of the collection of 800,000 feet of Movietone newsreel film on aviation currently owned by the University of South Carolina) is on nitrate film. Under the terms of an agreement signed with the university in FY 1986, NASM will retain a master negative and a duplicate positive film copy of any nitrate film footage transferred to safety film and return a positive copy to the University for its collection. The goal is to save all of this historically valuable material for future generations.

NASM is cooperating with England's Imperial War Museum to develop the collections of the American Aviation Building at Duxford Air Field in Cambridge. The Keeper of the War Museum and other staff from Duxford have visited NASM, and the museums have agreed to exchange minor collections.

Preservation and Restoration of the Collections - In FY 1989, NASM completed restoration of the German Arado 234, the first jet bomber; the ATS-6 applications satellite; an HS-293 glide bomb, a German World War II missile; the Mariner 10 structural/thermal engineering model; the Hughes *Racer*, a mid-1930s technological masterpiece for aircraft speed and design; the Hubble Space Telescope model; and the Mercury 14 capsule. Restoration will continue in FY 1990 on the rear fuselage of the B-29 bomber *Enola Gay*; the Japanese Aichi-Serian, a submarine-borne seaplane bomber designed for the sole purpose of bombing the Panama Canal during World War II; and a French Voisin, a World War I reconnaissance aircraft used for bombing. Restoration will begin in FY 1990 on the Sopwith Snipe, the ultimate Sopwith fighter design; a

Fokker D VII, the most highly regarded German fighter aircraft of World War I; the Herring Curtiss, an early aircraft of the Curtiss pusher variety, significant in the development of flight control systems; the Hawker Hurricane, an early World War II British fighter famous during the Battle of Britain; and a B-29 engine. Planned FY 1991 restoration projects include the first wing of the Enola Gay; the Apollo 11 lunar command module; the (Horten) Gotha GO229, a technologically significant attempt by the Germans to develop a flying wing as a jet fighter interceptor; and a Shoemaker Canonhouse, a pre-World War I aircraft featuring a unique flight control system; a Titan rocket engine; and the Mercury 14 capsule. The treatment program, initiated in FY 1983 to reduce further deterioration of aircraft not yet restored, remains at the heart of the restoration activities.

-- Video Disc Project: This preservation program for archival photographs and other visual collections consists of photographing the images on 35mm film and then transferring this film onto video disc format. The project has transferred more than 825,000 images and completed six discs. By facilitating greater access to the collection and eliminating the loss or destruction of the originals, this project has expanded the availability of these vast collections to scholars throughout the world. The sixth disc, completed in FY 1989, contains images from all the U.S. lunar missions (Ranger, Surveyor, and Apollo), including photographs of rock and soil samples. The seventh disc, currently in production, will focus on photographs in the Museum's collections of rockets, missiles, manned space missions, aeronautical artifacts, and engines, as well as a valuable collection of images from the Deutsches Museum of Germany. NASM is now soliciting ideas for disc eight, which the Museum will produce in FY 1991 and FY 1992. Collections under consideration include the Wright Field aeronautical collection and planetary images. The program shares its technical expertise with other offices throughout the Institution.

As part of a previous reorganization, the Museum established a new Collections Management Division. One major goal of this new Division is to gain better physical and intellectual control over its document and audio-visual collections by implementing a formal archival program. With funding provided in FY 1989, the Museum has begun to reinforce its support for various collections management efforts. They include locating, surveying, and describing the vast archival collection; acquiring equipment and materials necessary to initiate the Museum's conservation program; purchasing equipment for participation in the Institution-wide automated Collections Information System (CIS); and converting the film collection to a long shelf-life format.

Public Education and Orientation - The Museum's educational programs continue to serve an expanded national and international audience. The Education Resource Center (ERC), modeled after NASA's Teacher Resource Centers, opened in January 1988. It provides slides, video tapes, photographs, software, and written materials to educators on aerospace-related topics. To date, more than 4,670 teachers have visited the Center. In FY 1989, the Museum's education department held numerous workshops for in-service and graduate credit for teachers. Topics included weather, astronomy, living in space, the space shuttle, and manned space flights. The Center will repeat the most popular workshops in FY 1990. In FY 1989, the education department completed curriculum materials for "Beyond the Limits: Flight Enters the Computer Age," "Fragile Earth," "Exploring Space," and "Weather or Not." In FY 1990, planned curriculum materials include "Exploring Planets," "The Blue Planet," and an update to "Looking at Earth."

In summer 1989, with a grant from the Smithsonian Educational Outreach program, the Museum conducted four one-week workshops for students 8-14 years of age throughout the District of Columbia. The workshops, developed in cooperation with the Anacostia Museum, allowed the participants to visit NASM, the Anacostia Museum, and the Goddard Space Flight Center to launch their own handmade rockets.

The Museum also received a grant from the Association of Science and Technology Centers to train teachers from the District of Columbia in developing educational materials for their classrooms. Forty of the 94 members of the Museum's Regional Resource Program participated in the August 1989 meeting, receiving updated briefings from Museum staff on the Museum's collections, research, restoration, and education programs.

The Museum began a new educational outreach program in FY 1988 aimed at minority students in the local community. This program provides speakers and educational materials directly to the classrooms of elementary and middle schools. It is popular with the local community and will continue throughout FY 1990 and beyond.

The Museum launched Air and Space/Smithsonian magazine in FY 1986 as a bimonthly educational and informative publication addressing broad issues on aviation and space flight for the public. With more than 311,000 subscribers, Air and Space/Smithsonian has become a highly regarded source for up-to-date information on aeronautics and astronautics for the general public.

NASM continues to present numerous free lectures, seminars, symposia, and films to the public. The General Electric Aviation Lecture series for FY 1990 features Brig. Gen. Charles E. Yeager (USAF Ret.); Ralph Lightfoot, who worked with Igor Sikorsky in developing flying boats and helicopters; Air-Vice Marshal Ronald Dick (RAF) on transitioning from piston-powered aircraft to jets; and Group Capt. Peter Squire (RAF) on air war in the Falklands conflict. At the 13th annual Von Braun Memorial Lecture in January 1990, Gen. Bernard Schriever (USAF Ret.) spoke on the civilian military relationship in the space program. Najeeb Halaby, former administrator of the Federal Aviation Administration and past president of Pan American World Airways, will present the Charles A. Lindbergh Memorial Lecture.

Other highlights in FY 1990 include the International Conference on Aerospace History, which will consider topics such as "Manned vs. Unmanned Flight," "The Aviator and Astronaut as Icon," and "Problems in Writing the History of Technology." Also in FY 1990, a 14-part series of lectures and panel discussions on "The Legacy of Strategic Bombing" will examine the origins, practice, and consequences of strategic bombing, from its earliest premonitions before World War I, through its most intense employment during World War II, and up to its influence on the development of today's strategic nuclear arsenals. Guest speakers include Philip Morrison, Max Hastings, Freeman Dyson, Kurt Vonnegut, Curtis LeMay, R. V. Jones, Lewis F. Powell, John Kenneth Galbraith, Paul H. Nitze, Lord Solly Zuckerman, Bernard A. Schriever, McGeorge Bundy, and other experts in the field.

The Museum's Albert Einstein Planetarium will host the Tenth International Planetarium Director's Conference in September 1990. Planetarium directors from around the world will meet in Washington and also visit planetaria in New York, Philadelphia, and Richmond.

The Monthly Sky Lecture series continues in FY 1990 with the theme "The Contrast of Orderly and Chaotic Structures in the Universe." The film series continues its popular movies in FY 1990, including Twelve O'Clock High, Slaughterhouse Five, Dr. Strangelove, On the Beach, and War Games.

In August 1988, a new public cafeteria and restaurant began serving visitors to the Air and Space Museum. In a new glass-canopied addition to the building, this facility has expanded seating capacity and greatly improved access over the original third-floor cafeteria. Museum visitors have the option of cafeteria service at the "Flight Line" or full-service meals at the "Wright Place." From its August 1988 opening through September 1989, more than 1,885,450 patrons dined at these new facilities.

Publications - In FY 1989, the Museum published Beyond the Limits: Flight Enters the Computer Age, by Paul Ceruzzi, to accompany the new exhibit gallery of the same title. In FY 1990, the Museum will publish The Boeing 247, by Robert van der Linden; Visions of a Flying Machine: The Wright Brothers and the Process of Invention, by Peter Jakab; United States Women in Aviation, 1940-1985, by Deborah Douglas; Weather from Above: America's Meteorological Satellites, by Janice Hill; and a new edition of The Jet Age: The First 50 Years, edited by Walter Boyne, Donald Lopez, and Ron Dick. Future publications include Suiting Up for Space: A History of U.S. Space Suits, by Lillian Kozloski; The First Golden Age of Rocketry: Congreve and Hale Rockets of the Nineteenth Century, by Frank Winter; Science with a Vengeance: Origins of Space Science in the V-2 Era, by David De Vorkin; Commuter Airlines of the United States, by Ronald E. G. Davies and I. E. Quastler; Caring for the Collections of the National Air and Space Museum, by Lin Ezell; and A Catalog of the Art Collection of the National Air and Space Museum, by Mary Henderson.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE:

For FY 1991, NASM requests an increase of 1 workyear and $71,000 to reinforce the Museum's capabilities in applying the technology of satellite data analysis to global-scale environmental studies. Air and spacecraft provide vital observational platforms for monitoring global environmental consequences of human activity, such as desertification, deforestation, and soil erosion, as well as climate change and the decline of stratospheric ozone. Scientists in the Museum's Center for Earth and Planetary Studies (CEPS) apply the experience and techniques they have gained from planetary studies in various remote-sensing investigations of terrestrial deserts to analyze changes in our planet. With funding provided in FY 1990, NASM will hire a computer analyst and a remote-sensing technician to reinforce the application of remote-sensing analysis to global-scale environmental studies.

In addition, CEPS needs the expertise of an atmospheric scientist to make the atmospheric corrections necessary to interpret remote-sensing data. This specialist will interpret the surface geological record in arid regions and direct studies of natural and manmade climate changes. The scientist will also contribute to the development of Museum exhibits on global climate change and related environmental problems.

The requested increase will allow the Museum to hire a remote-sensing scientist (1 workyear and $46,000), to acquire the relevant satellite data ($15,000), and to pay support costs ($10,000) including travel expenses associated with presenting research at conferences and staying informed of the latest developments in the field. This position will reinforce CEPS current staff expertise in applying the technology of satellite data analysis to develop a deeper understanding of our environment.

Global change that will impact on the future of all life on Earth is presenting increasingly critical and difficult questions for this generation. To address these questions, NASM and CEPS can apply their expertise in planetary studies to analyze changes in our planet. A remote-sensing scientist will interpret climatic factors for environments as diverse as deserts and tropical forests to address these issues.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These funds come from a variety of sources, including the Museum's share of the net proceeds from the museum shops and restaurants, a share of the net proceeds resulting from bureau activities (such as the theater and planetarium), and small allotments. In addition to meeting expenses of the theater and planetarium, these funds finance fellowships, research chairs, guest lecturers, symposia, and special events. A portion of the proceeds from the theater and planetarium provide particular support for the production of new IMAX films, including The Blue Planet and To the Stars, as well as other planetarium shows and Museum programs. For example, in March 1989, Calling All Stars premiered in the Albert Einstein Planetarium. The show traces efforts to locate life in the Universe. The Museum also received corporate support for these new films. The Lindbergh Chair of Aerospace History and the International Fellowship provide continuing support for distinguished scholars to study at the Museum. Other fellowship programs include Guggenheim, Verville, and Martin Marietta internships, which support predoctoral and postdoctoral students, and minority students, and distinguished scholars in aviation and space science.

Restricted Funds - Funds provided are in the form of restricted endowments that specify the use of donations or bequests and of gifts and foundation grants by individuals, organizations, or corporations for specific purposes. Examples of these funds are the Ramsey Endowment, for research relating to naval flight history; the Guggenheim Endowment, for lectures and stipends; and the NASM Education Fund. The Sloan Foundation provided grants beginning in FY 1987 for a four-year video history program as well as a workshop, video disc, and curriculum package on aviation history. NASM received numerous corporate donations, both monetary and in kind, to support the gallery "Beyond the Limits: Flight Enters the Computer Age" in FY 1987, FY 1988, and FY 1989, and will receive further corporate donations in FY 1990. The Glennan-Webb-Seamans Fund for Research in Space History received additional funds in FY 1989 from corporate sources.

Federal Grants and Contracts - Various agencies and departments provide funds for special projects conducted at NASM because of the Museum's expertise in a given area. Continued funding from the National Aeronautics and Space Administration grant program supports research activity in planetary geology by the Museum's Center for Earth and Planetary Studies; specifically, photogeologic investigation of planetary tectonic features, the structural geology of the Basalt Plains of Washington State, and the Planetary Image Facility. The research project on satellite remote sensing of central Mali, which began in FY 1984, continues to determine the long-term effects of climate change on the fragile environment of the inland Niger Delta region. This research expanded to cover fringe areas of the world's deserts and has received continued financial support. Partial funding from NASA supported the Space Telescope Historical project, a joint effort between NASM and Johns Hopkins University, and resulted in a monograph published in October 1989. The Laboratory for Astrophysics has received funding from NASA for continued research in the field of infrared astronomy. The Education Resource Center receives support from NASA and other agencies.

NATIONAL MUSEUM OF AMERICAN HISTORY

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	330	14,446	3	152	9	1,519	3	2,710	-	15
FY 1990 -Estimate	347	15,218	2	184	9	368	2	1,796	-	-
-Base	347	15,570								
FY 1991 Estimate	348	16,024	1	131	9	340	2	1,773	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	347	1	348
11 Personnel Compensation	11,395	325	11,720
12 Personnel Benefits	1,936	66	2,002
21 Travel	152	10	162
22 Transportation of Things	54	0	54
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	79	0	79
24 Printing & Reproduction	105	33	138
25 Other Services	1,081	0	1,081
26 Supplies & Materials	374	0	374
31 Equipment	325	0	325
Collections Acquisition	69	20	89
Total	15,570	454	16,024

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	359
Program Funds	95

ABSTRACT - The National Museum of American History (NMAH) houses the National Collections that represent the political, cultural, scientific, and technological development of the United States. The Museum devotes itself to preserving the national heritage by improving and conserving its collections and interpreting these materials for the public and scholarly community. Through exhibitions, research publications, and an array of lectures, symposia, concerts, tours and demonstrations, and film and broadcast features, NMAH presents the unique cultural and scientific heritage of the United States to more than six million visitors per year. In addition to the Mall building, the Museum maintains the exhibition "1876 Centennial," located in the Arts and Industries Building, and cares for collections stored and exhibited at six buildings in Suitland, Maryland, and one building in Springfield, Virginia.

For FY 1991, the National Museum of American History requests an increase of 1 workyear and $95,000 to continue the development of programs and exhibits to commemorate the Columbus Quincentenary. The Institution requires $359,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The National Museum of American History possesses the largest and most comprehensive collection of its kind in the world. Covering a wide spectrum of materials, sizes, and descriptions, its holdings comprise 16 million stamps, one million numismatics specimens, and more than two million objects including railroad trains, automobiles, textiles, photographs, paintings, sculpture, paper materials, clothing and costumes, tools, power machinery, clocks, weapons, ceramics and glass, musical instruments, and scientific instruments of all kinds.

Collections Management - The Museum's goal is to preserve and protect this irreplaceable "history book of objects" through a strong collections management program that includes proper storage, conservation, registration, and archival functions.

-- Master Space Plan: The Museum's Master Space Plan is a long-term, multi-million dollar program that integrates the retrofitting of the American History Building's climate and safety systems with the redesign and reinstallation of the Museum's exhibition halls. During FY 1989, Phase I work proceeded on four floors of the Museum, including exhibit, storage, and office spaces. Staff cleaned, packed, recorded, and moved several thousand objects to off-site storage in Springfield, Virginia, as well as to other locations within NMAH.

-- On the Mall: In FY 1989, the Museum continued an active acquisition and loan program and relocated thousands of objects under the Museum's Master Space Plan. More than 17,000 objects came into the permanent collections, while the Museum loaned or borrowed 3,932 objects for exhibition or study. The Collections Management Steering Committee guided efforts to complete old accessions through Accountability Plans that establish priority targets and schedules. Staff began to use a newly designed, automated Local Collections Information System for tracking locations and doing new acquisitions, loans, and basic cataloguing. The Museum conducted a comprehensive internal study of its major functions as part of planning for the Smithsonian's Collections Information System. Staff continued to organize and make early collection files more accessible for research and accountability.

-- Off-site Storage: During FY 1989 and FY 1990, the Museum has continued the program begun in FY 1985 to clean collections of asbestos and make them accessible for exhibits, research, or loan. Staff placed sensitive collections from other Suitland buildings and from the Mall into modern storage cabinets in newly renovated Building 19 in Suitland, Maryland. The Museum upgraded security and storage in warehouse space at the Fullerton Industrial Park in Springfield, Virginia, and began sending collections there.

-- Museum Support Center: Since FY 1987, the Museum has been planning for the transfer of collections from several of its curatorial divisions to the Museum Support

Center (MSC) in FY 1991 and beyond. During FY 1989, NMAH staff prepared and packed 4,000 objects at Suitland, Maryland for eventual transfer to the MSC.

Collections Acquisition - In FY 1989, the Museum received many significant objects through purchases and gifts. The acquisitions of the Department of the History of Science and Technology included: three pioneering medical diagnostic instruments in the field of fiber optics; an experimental robot from the National Bureau of Standards; Digital Equipment Corporation's PDP-1, the first true minicomputer; the Xerox Alto, the source of many ideas for the Apple Macintosh computer; International Business Machines' SCAMP, the company's first microcomputer and one of the first personal computers; a spyglass made for the Signal Corps of the Confederate Army, early 1860s; and a terrestrial globe designed by Ellen Liza Fitz of Boston in 1878.

The Department of Social and Cultural History accessioned 21 outstanding occupational portraits documenting 19th-century trades; a toast rack made by Andrew Warner in the mid-1800s that is a fine example of a rare form of American domestic silver; the Larry Zimmerman Fair and Exhibition Collection of 5,000 items documenting world fairs; a collection of more than 100 labor union badges, ribbons, and emblems, ca. 1880-1920; the Salem China Company Collection of 300 pieces of ceramic tableware dating from 1930 to 1960; the Mormon pilaster capital (Sunstone) from Nauvoo, Illinois, 1846; drawings from Walt Disney's Steamboat Willie produced in 1928; a vaudeville trunk belonging to George Burns and Gracie Allen; a rare early 18th-century embossed silk counterpane; one of the first American presses for hobby printers, made in Boston ca. 1860; and the Erard Grand Piano, built for Queen Victoria--a mint example of one of the finest pianos of the mid-1800s.

Important donations to the National Numismatic Collection and the National Philatelic Collection included 48 ancient Greek silver fractional coins of the 5th and 4th centuries B.C. and two panes of stamps issued to U.S. soldiers in the World War I Expeditionary Force to send letters home.

Conservation - In FY 1989, the Division of Conservation surveyed, treated, and mounted more than 3,200 objects, primarily in response to exhibition and loan requests. Conservation of the Museum's costume and textile collections continued as a major emphasis in FY 1989. Staff examined, stabilized, and rehoused more than 350 flags, uniforms, and other textiles in the Armed Forces History collections. Architectural and engineering work began for the new laboratory devoted to the Museum's large collections of historic textiles, costumes, and fragile organic materials. The Division contracted a conservation technician to begin an exhibit cleaning and maintenance pilot program, resulting in substantial improvements to the safety and appearance of the objects.

Archives - In FY 1989, the Archives Center opened the privately funded Center for Advertising History, which sponsors oral history and other research projects relating to advertising in America. Distinguished industry and academic representatives serve on the Center's advisory board. Staff continued cataloguing and began microfilming and conserving the Duke Ellington Collection of musical manuscripts and related historical materials. Descriptive guides now serve researchers of African-American, military, and transportation topics in the Sam de Vincent Illustrated Sheet Music Collection. Additional support for researchers include a new guide to the popular Warshaw Collection of Business Americana and improvements to the facility, including larger research areas and compact, movable shelving.

Research - Staff members in the Department of Social and Cultural History are working on a variety of research projects that draw from the existing collections and inspire future collecting endeavors. Domestic Life staff, interns, and volunteers are studying changes in 20th-century American household technology. Research on patent models resulted in several publications and a major exhibition that will tour Japan. and the United States in 1990 to help commemorate the bicentennial of the American Patent System. Pioneering work on clothing by Division of Costume staff led to the Smithsonian Institution Press's publication of Men and Women: Dressing the Part, which explores how clothing reflects attitudes toward gender, a related exhibition, and several papers and publications on 18th- and 19th-century clothing. Graphic Arts researchers are doing groundbreaking work on type makers' marks, from which they will publish a catalogue of the world's largest collection of 19th-century American printing type. Other Graphic Arts projects include a checklist of prints based on the paintings of Albert Bierstadt and a catalogue of the collotypes in the collection. Division of Textiles staff is researching an 1834 sample book of fabrics from Fort Gibson, Oklahoma, to identify manufacturers involved in the Indian trade, the types of fabrics they marketed, and additional information on aspects of trade in the West.

Staff members from the Department of the History of Science and Technology have used the unique Smithsonian Videohistory Program to produce a videohistory of robots and interview important inventors, including Mikhail Timofeyevich Kalashnikov, the designer of the AK 47 assault rifle, and Dr. Robert Ledley, inventor of the first whole body CAT-scanner. Medical Sciences staff members are researching the use of silver in medical instrumentation manufacture and methods of producing dosage forms for homeopathic pharmaceuticals. Transportation staff has nearly completed a major project listing 48,000 photographic images in the Railroad collection and continue research on the design and adaptation of closed automobiles. The Division of Engineering and Industry's work with artifacts from the Boston firm of William Bond and Son has inspired a book manuscript now in progress, and Division of Electricity and Modern Physics staff is researching 19th-century electrical instruments invented by Charles Page. The Department has published original research in the areas of navigational instruments, the history of computing, and the fire ant campaign of the 1950s. Collections-based publications under way cover U.S. microscopes, the Eisenhower jacket, preserving military headgear, a history of the dentist's office, and American clocks. This Department also contributed to the patent model exhibit mentioned above.

Staff prepared the papers of the important 19th-century architect Robert Mills, designer of the Washington monument, for publication in microfilm in conjunction with the Universities of South Carolina and Iowa, with support from the National Historical Publications and Records Commission, and various private organizations.

Exhibitions - The Museum's long-term Exhibition Reinstallation Program calls for the redesign of many of the Museum's exhibit halls with an up-to-date interpretation and presentation of the collections. In FY 1989, NMAH installed 23 exhibitions. Highlights include: "The Ceremonial Court," a permanent hall that displays several First Ladies' gowns, White House china, jewelry, and other objects from the Museum's collections in a re-creation of various White House spaces; "The Way to Independence: Memories of a Hidatsa Family, 1840-1920," which chronicles the transformation of American society through the experiences of three members of a Hidatsa Indian family; "The Perpetual Campaign: How Presidents Try To Persuade the People," which celebrates the bicentennial of the first presidential inauguration and traces how presidential candidates over the years have sought the votes of the American people; "American Television from the Fair to the Family, 1939-1989," which follows television's journey

from the 1939 New York World's Fair to its all-pervasive window on the world 50 years later; "Duke Ellington, American Musician," which commemorates Duke Ellington's career and musical legacy; and "Men and Women: A History of Costume, Gender and Power," which takes a look at some of the standards of appearance and behavior for men and women in American culture. "Fabric of a Friendship" and "Delaware 350," a double traveling exhibition, marked the 350th anniversary of the first Swedish and Finnish settlements in the United States and the relationship between those early settlers and the Algonquin Indians of the Delaware River Valley. Another traveling exhibition, "Sports Feelings: U.S./Soviet Sports Photography," featured 120 American and Soviet sports photographs depicting the universality and humanity of sports.

In FY 1990, NMAH will open its largest and most interactive exhibition to date. "The Information Age: People, Information, and Technology," a permanent show focusing on people rather than machines, will allow visitors to understand how information technology has changed the ways we live and interact over the last 150 years. A major temporary exhibition, "From Parlor to Politics: Women in the Progressive Era, 1890-1925," will examine how the rhetoric and imagery of feminine domesticity paradoxically justified women's participation in major social and political restructuring of American society. In FY 1990, the Museum will complete plans for a comprehensive visitor information and signage system. A combination of interactive graphic display monitors and fixed directional signs will provide the visitor with information about exhibitions, collections, public programs, and staff.

Public Programs - In FY 1989, the Museum's Department of Public Programs presented a wide variety of education activities, publications, forums, and media events with an emphasis on encouraging the participation of minority audiences. Popular programs emphasizing the cultural heritage of African, Asian, Hispanic, and native Americans included: the Program in African American Culture, the Jazz in the Palm Court Series, the American Sampler Program, and the Jacksonville Bandstand Program. The All-American Music Series presented four free concerts a month in Carmichael Auditorium, and NMAH held a month-long Ellington Festival to commemorate the 90th anniversary of Duke Ellington's birth and the Museum's acquisition of the Ellington Papers. By revising training and use of docents, the Museum doubled visitor participation in tours and demonstrations. In October 1989, the Museum celebrated its 25th anniversary with demonstrations, behind-the-scenes tours, opportunities to "Ask-an-Expert," slide talks, music, special activities for children, tea in the Palm Court, and a Museum birthday cake.

Other highlights of the year include:

-- a three-day public conference on "Contemporary Black American Congregational Song and Worship Traditions," produced by the Program in African American Culture;

-- an American Sampler program on "Dancing and Drumming Traditions," which compared African-American and native-American 19th-century musical traditions;

-- a symposium on Spanish-native American relationships in the Southeast and the Southwest during the Colonial period, bringing together archeologists, historians, and ethnohistorians in a daylong public forum;

-- a performance-workshop by San Antonio's Little Joe y La Familia, including a commentary on the blending of Hispanic, Anglo-American, and Czech musical influences into the distinctive norteno style played by this group;

-- and a two-day public discussion of the Constitutional issues surrounding the internment of Japanese Americans during World War II, in conjunction with the "A More Perfect Union" exhibition.

With funds provided by Congress in FY 1990, the Museum will hire a permanent director to take charge of the new Program in Hispanic American History. The American Sampler program will continue in FY 1990 with music celebrating the French-American relationship, Spain in the New World, the African-American in the 18th century, the Scottish-Irish connection, as well as music of colonial America. Palm Court Cameos will highlight the music of Frank Loesser, Harold Arlen, Jule Styne, Johnny Mercer, Burton Lane, and Kurt Weill. Other programs will showcase rhythm and blues in America, and the music of Duke Ellington.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the National Museum of American History requests an increase of 1 workyear and $95,000 to continue the development programs and exhibits to commemorate the Columbus Quincentenary.

In 1986, the Museum began a five-year program of public symposia, archaeologically based exhibitions, and related publications. The program will develop a major permanent exhibition, "American Encounters," to commemorate the Columbus Quincentenary.

The exhibition will examine the results of Columbus's arrival in the Americas by exploring cultural interactions among Hispanics, native Americans, and Anglo Americans in the Rio Grande Valley of the American Southwest. The exhibition will emphasize the strategies devised by both native Americans and Hispanics to preserve the essence of their own cultures. In addition to the exhibition, NMAH's Program in Hispanic-American Culture will undertake research and produce publications and public programs on the development of Hispanic culture in the United States.

The Museum currently has a base of 4 workyears and $364,000 to support its Quincentenary programs. The requested increase will enable the Museum to hire a project administrator (1 workyear and $32,000) who will be responsible for initiating and monitoring all contractual services related to actual production of the exhibition. In addition, the expanded base of funding for the Columbus Quincentenary Program in FY 1991 will enable the Museum to:

-- proceed with the design and development of "American Encounters," opening in October 1992;

-- continue field research and collecting for the exhibition;

-- plan, develop, and test curriculum kits and interpretive activities for the exhibition;

-- present lectures, performances, and other public programs that demonstrate the nature and diversity of Hispanic-American culture.

The permanent exhibition and its related public programs will reinforce the Museum's commitment to new audiences. At the same time, the Smithsonian Institution will provide the general public with a more accurate presentation of America's multi-cultural past.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - This income is from various sources, including the Museum's share of museum shop and cafeteria sales, publications royalties, and various annual allotments. In FY 1990, these funds will support the salary and benefit costs for the museum director, various special events, and the unique chamber music performance and recordings program.

In addition, funds from the Institution's Collections Acquisition, Scholarly Studies, Educational Outreach Program, Research Opportunities, and the Special Exhibition Fund support research, education and exhibition projects. In FY 1989, these funds supported the creation of an expanded space for performance and the popular educational program, "Hands on History," as well as exhibits on: life in America during the 18th century; the Columbian Quincentenary; "Clocks, Capitalism and Culture," and Rock and Roll music. These funds also supported research on such diverse topics as the history of Rock and Roll, Southern black communities, decorated violins, and American drag race pioneers. The Museum used Educational Outreach funds to support programs on Black American Congregational Song, American Jazz, and a program given in conjunction with an exhibit on an Hidatsa American Indian family. Collections Acquisition funds provided for the purchase of two major items: the Mormon sunstone and Scott Molloy Labor History Collection.

Special purpose estimates for FY 1990 and FY 1991 do not reflect expenditures under these programs; this explains the variance in totals shown between FY 1989 and the subsequent two years.

Restricted Funds - The principal sources of income for these funds are individual or corporate gifts and foundation grants provided for specific purposes. In FY 1989, NMAH received the following gifts and grants: from IBM, Computerworld Information Technology Awards Foundation, the Bell Atlantic Corporation, Digital Equipment Corporation, Xerox Foundation, Intel, and Electronic Data System for a major permanent exhibition entitled "The Information Age: People, Information, and Technology"; from Bruce Springsteen and the Recording Industry Association of America in support of a live performance program entitled "Music In America"; from the American Chemical Society for a feasibility study in support of the "Science in American Life" exhibit; from the Noxell Foundation and Campbell Soup to support oral history projects on advertising history; from the American Dental Trade Association for an exhibit on "Health in America"; from Invent America, Inc., for patent model collections; from the Association of Japan-United States Community Exchange for an exhibition on 19th-century life in America; from Smithkline Beckman Corporation and Erno Laszlo Limited, for the restoration of First Ladies' gowns; from the Pott Foundation to produce a film for the Museum's Hall of American Maritime Enterprise; from the Edward John Noble Foundation for programs on music and performances; from the Electronic Industries Association for an exhibition celebrating the 50th anniversary of television; from the American Association of Retired Persons for an exhibit of photographs, entitled, "The Seasoned Eye"; from the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation in support of the Smithsonian Chamber Orchestra; and from the American Pharmaceutical Association to support the programs of the Museum.

In FY 1990, the Museum anticipates the following contributions: from United Media for an exhibit on children in the Cold War era; from the Friends of the First Ladies for a permanent exhibit reinstallation of the First Ladies Hall; and from The 50th Anniversary Foundation Inc., U.S. Airborne, for an exhibit on the history of the Airborne in the United States.

NATIONAL MUSEUM OF THE AMERICAN INDIAN

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	61	3,946	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-Base	61	4,031								
FY 1991 Estimate	179	11,618	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	61	118	179
11 Personnel Compensation	1,776	3,521	5,297
12 Personnel Benefits	533	1,063	1,596
21 Travel	98	375	473
22 Transportation of Things	0	100	100
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	159	222	381
24 Printing & Reproduction	0	20	20
25 Other Services	1,221	1,669	2,890
26 Supplies & Materials	117	310	427
31 Equipment	127	307	434
Total	4,031	7,587	11,618

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	1,051
Program Funds	6,536

ABSTRACT - Establishment of the National Museum of the American Indian (NMAI), based on the collection of the Museum of the American Indian, Heye Foundation, will provide the Smithsonian Institution with a significant and new vehicle of communication with American Indian people and the general public through its collections, research, and public programs that encompass this hemisphere. NMAI facilities will include a building of suitable size and design on the Mall at the foot of Capitol Hill east of the National Air and Space Museum; an exhibition and education center on the street-level floor of the Old United States Custom House in New York

City; and a collection, study, and conservation facility at the Museum Support Center in Suitland, Maryland.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests resources of 93 workyears and $6.536 million for: operations (71 workyears and $5.286 million above a base of 61 workyears and $4.031 million); the Native American Collections Documentation Research Program (18 workyears and $1.0 million); and the Special Review Committee on Native American Materials (4 workyears and $.25 million). The Institution requires $1.051 million for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item. In accordance with the terms of the authorizing legislation, the Institution requests that funding provided in this line-item remain available until expended.

The Smithsonian also is requesting $8.130 million for preparation of the Custom House space, initiation of design for the Suitland building, completion of overall programming, and continuation of planning for the Mall museum. Justifications for these activities are in the Construction portion of this budget.

PROGRAM - The Museum of the American Indian, Heye Foundation, located in New York City, opened its doors to the public in 1922. The Museum's founder, George Gustav Heye, initiated the collection near the turn of the century as a result of expeditions in this country and in Ecuador, Mexico, the West Indies, the Amazon, and Central America. The collection is one of the world's richest assemblages of artifacts of the indigenous cultures of the Western hemisphere. Its North American Plains material forms one of the largest groupings found anywhere. The great civilizations of the Inca, Aztec, and Maya are also represented, as well as the remote forest tribes of the Amazon and the Arctic Eskimo. From the American Southwest are Kachina dance masks, dolls, and baskets. The collection also includes a 40,000-volume library and a photographic archive with more than 80,000 negatives and prints chronicling Indian life.

The Heye Foundation collection will form the base of the Museum of the American Indian. When it opens its doors to the public, it will inspire an exponential increase in Native American studies and a range of new ideas for exhibitions, research, and insight into historic and contemporary Indian culture.

Federal funding in FY 1990 will allow the Smithsonian to:

-- develop plans for programs, exhibitions, research, and collections management;

-- provide central administrative services;

-- provide care and custody of the collection;

-- maintain and secure the existing buildings and temporary structures in New York;

-- transfer existing museum employees;

-- provide administrative costs to support the new Museum's Board of Trustees and expenses of its members, all of whom serve without compensation.

Funding in FY 1991 and future years will enable the Smithsonian to continue and expand these activities; construct a museum on the last site on the Mall as well as a collection and research center at Suitland; and renovate space for the George Gustav Heye Center at the Old United States Custom House in New York. The Suitland facility will provide a protected environment for collection materials not on display and make them available for research. Collection documentation and a resource collection of print materials will also be housed at the collection center, together with facilities for conservation treatment.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the Institution requests resources of 93 workyears and $6.536 million for: a fund-raising campaign (11 workyears and $670,000); additional central administration (3 workyears and $186,000); care and custody of collections (7 workyears and $1,132,000); continued formation of planning and coordination teams (10 workyears and $835,000); Native American staff development and training (12 workyears and $707,000); Custom House programs (5 workyears and $1,037,000); maintenance and security (23 workyears and $719,000); the Native American Collections Documentation Research Program (18 workyears and $1,000,000); and the Special Review Committee on Native American Materials (4 workyears and $250,000).

Fund-raising Office (11 workyears and $670,000) - Public Law 101-185, establishing the National Museum of the American Indian, requires that construction appropriations be supplemented by non-Federal funds. A national fund-raising campaign will attract both large and small gifts from a variety of non-Federal sources.

To administer fund-raising efforts for the NMAI, the Institution requests resources for professional fund-raising personnel and technical and clerical support staff (11 workyears and $471,000). Under the immediate supervision of a national campaign director, the staff will design the campaign and identify and recruit volunteers. The requested funds also will support research and cultivation of prospective donors ($162,000) as well as consultant expenses and reproduction costs ($37,000).

The new fund-raising office will also work to secure donated goods and services, especially donated office space in an off-Mall location for the duration of the fund-raising campaign.

Additional Central Administration (3 workyears and $186,000) - The Office of Procurement and Property Management has responsibility for all procurement, contracting, and property management of the National Museum of the American Indian. This responsibility has three components: acquiring necessary supplies, equipment, and services for the Museum's present operations and facilities in New York City; contracting for architectural and engineering services and construction services associated with the development of new facilities in New York City, Washington, D.C., and Suitland, Maryland; and providing purchasing and contractual support for the planning, development, and implementation of the research, collections management, exhibition, and other programs that will take place in those facilities. In anticipation of this additional workload, the position of contract specialist was established in the FY 1990 appropriation to serve initial administrative needs. To keep pace with expected programmatic and construction activities, the Institution requests two additional positions for FY 1991: a procurement specialist and a property management specialist (2 workyears and $94,000).

Like other Smithsonian museums, the National Museum of the American Indian will report to the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Museums (OASM). This Office assigns a program manager to each Smithsonian museum to assist in such day-to-day concerns as program policy, recruitment and promotion, budgetary and fiscal matters, and analysis of other issues on the museum's behalf for senior management review. An additional program manager in FY 1991 will allow OASM to serve the varied needs of the NMAI (1 workyear and $47,000).

For general operating support for these "impact" staff, the Institution seeks $45,000 for furnishings, equipment, supplies, and travel between Washington, D.C., and New York City operations.

Care and Custody of Collections (7 workyears and $1,132,000) - The relocation of the one million collection objects as well as visual media, archives, and library materials from existing museum facilities in New York to Washington, D.C., and Suitland, Maryland, is a formidable task. The large number of collection objects to be moved, the variety of types and physical conditions of these objects, the need for automated record keeping, the lack of physical space required for the move, and the distance of transfer pose unusual and complex challenges.

The collections support budget for the NMAI includes two components: existing and new permanent staffing and all other funding needs for the collections prior to, during, and after relocation from New York; and temporary staffing and one-time funding needs for the move of the collections from New York. In this context collections include objects, visual media, and archive and library materials.

The NMAI collection support priorities in FY 1991 are to assist in planning the new NMAI collection center in Suitland and to begin comprehensive planning of the relocation of the collections from New York. This overall planning will address such issues as development of an automated project management plan to schedule the move and update the schedule regularly; establishment of an appropriate automated data management system to control the objects during the move; determination of the types and quantities of move supplies and equipment needed; identification of any physical or chemical contaminants that must be removed from the collections prior to their relocation and development of plans for cleaning them; selection of the types of transport necessary; identification of physical needs of existing museum facilities in New York, together with recommendations for necessary modifications; and preparation of additional space for staging the move. Proper planning is necessary at the beginning of the process in order to ensure that the relocation itself will occur smoothly, efficiently, and in a timely fashion. The Institution expects that detailed planning will delineate most procedures for the move. It is inevitable, however, that some issues will not become known until the move itself is under way and will have to be dealt with as recognized.

The NMAI will hire both permanent and temporary administrative staff, conservators, museum specialists and technicians, data management staff, laborers, and others to accomplish the move of the collections from New York to Suitland. In addition, the NMAI may contract some work, such as conservation treatment or decontamination, to outside individuals or firms. Administrative staff will plan the move; revise the policies, procedures, and schedule as necessary; procure the necessary supplies and equipment; coordinate the logistics; and monitor progress. Conservators will assess the condition of the collections prior to the move, develop handling and packaging procedures and train the move staff to use them, and provide conservation treatment prior to the move when necessary. The specialists and technicians will inspect and clean objects, create automated invoices, and stabilize, pack, unpack, and place collections into permanent storage units in the NMAI collection center in Suitland. The data management staff will provide automated data to track the objects during the move and give other assistance in data management.

The laborers will transport collections from one location to another within a facility and onto trucks as well as provide other manual labor, such as the dismantling of existing shelving.

During the move, permanent collection management and data management staff will continue museum activities. Within limitations imposed by the move, for example, Native Americans and researchers will be allowed access to the collections, loans will be made, and objects will be prepared for exhibit.

Because the move will last several years, existing facilities in New York will require considerable improvements even while the collections are transferred. The collection objects themselves are stored in overly crowded conditions. No space exists for staging the move, storing supplies and equipment, providing minimum conservation treatment, cleaning and packing the collections, permitting temporary storage of prepared collections, or holding collections ready to be loaded onto move trucks. To provide space for all these functions, funds requested for FY 1991 will construct an annex to the Research Building in the Bronx.

Continued Formation of Planning and Coordination Teams (10 workyears and $835,000) - The major task of the planning and coordination teams will be to plan NMAI activities so that the museum building can be designed to serve programmatic needs. To accomplish these tasks, the Institution will establish representative committees for collections, public programs, facilities, administration, technology, and research and will provide staff assistance for each committee. The facilities project manager, assistant facilities project manager, research coordinator, and secretary will examine existing programs. They will also interview a wide spectrum of knowledgeable advisors and record their insights.

Under the direction of the NMAI director and in cooperation with numerous advisors, a new library services coordinator, archives technician, public programs coordinator, and secretary will develop the new museum's program plans. They will make preliminary recommendations for exhibitions, research, and outreach activities and prepare preliminary budgets to support them.

For all program planning efforts, the Smithsonian must strengthen its networks among American Indian communities nationwide. Continuous dialogue between the Smithsonian and the American Indian community will help accomplish program goals. The staff of the NMAI will work closely with Native American advisors to improve avenues for outreach activities. A public affairs specialist will produce a newsletter on the NMAI planning process for the American Indian community. Additionally, a full-time liaison coordinator will consult with American Indian communities on various phases of the program plan.

Included in this request are funds to rent and prepare office space and provide supplies for planning and coordination teams and for American Indian trainees assigned to senior staff members.

Native American Staff Development and Training (12 workyears and $707,000) - The Institution will organize an American Indian training program to increase the number of American Indian people in the museum field, in every discipline and at all levels. This training program will focus initially on the special training and development needs of American Indian tribal museums and cultural and community centers as well as on the emerging requirements of the National Museum of the American Indian, but it will expand as additional needs become evident. The first step is the creation of ten positions specifically for American Indian people who will serve as assistants to senior staff positions not initially occupied by American Indians. Each of these "upward mobility" positions will be awarded on a competitive basis within the American Indian community. Once hired, each trainee will have a training and promotion plan for moving toward increased authority and responsibility within the NMAI hierarchy.

Additionally, a training coordinator and a secretary will establish a program for assigning American Indian internships of various lengths and for various disciplines within NMAI and throughout the Smithsonian Institution. Undoubtedly, many interns will intend from the outset to return to their communities. Appropriate short- and long-term courses will augment the training opportunities for the interns, the "upward mobility" staff, and the American Indian museum community at large. The Institution will seek additional funding for internships and training courses in subsequent years.

Custom House Programs (5 workyears and $1,037,000) - In support of New York's Columbus Quincentenary observances, the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES) will use material from the Heye Foundation collection to develop an exhibition scheduled to open in 1992 in part of the Old Custom House in New York City. Funding is requested to begin planning the exhibition, identifying the objects, organizing and working with an advisory committee, and preparing preliminary designs. The Institution will seek funds for construction and installation of this exhibition in FY 1992.

A partial staff for the Custom House site, to include an assistant director, secretary, public programs coordinator, and security personnel, will help prepare ancillary programs for the 1992 exhibition and more permanent programs, including additional exhibitions, educational services, and a resource center, for the full opening of the Old Custom House site in 1994.

Maintenance and Security (23 workyears and $719,000) - The Smithsonian expects to assume responsibility for the security of the Heye Foundation collection and property of the NMAI in February 1990. The request for 23 positions, together with the ten guards provided in FY 1990, will achieve an acceptable level of security coverage for the Museum's exhibit and storage facilities.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests $350,000 to hire 15 guards to supplement existing guard staff in the exhibit galleries at Audubon Terrace and to provide a full complement of guards to secure the entrances and patrol NMAI facilities during the evening and night hours. The requested guards will protect the collections on exhibit and in storage, while allowing increased access by staff and scholars for study, documentation, and conservation of the artifacts. The additional resources also will ensure that the buildings are patrolled during each shift to protect against fire, water damage, theft, and vandalism.

The Office of Protection Services (OPS) plans to integrate the guard force now serving the Cooper-Hewitt Museum with the new guards for the NMAI, bringing the Smithsonian's total security force in New York to 46 guards. The existing supervisors at the Cooper-Hewitt will provide some of the supervision and training needed for the larger guard company. For the rest, the Institution requests funds to hire an assistant chief, a lieutenant, and five sergeants (7 workyears and $217,000). The Institution also requests one alarms technician who will install, maintain, and repair the security systems and devices at the Smithsonian's New York facilities (1 workyear and $35,000).

The requested resources will help reduce the risk of damage and theft of the valuable collections of Indian artifacts and historical materials. The Institution will request funding in subsequent years to upgrade the security systems at the NMAI facilities and to provide occupational health services to Smithsonian staff in the New York area.

In addition, $117,000 is necessary to cover the cost of utilities for the NMAI operation in New York. The Institution bases this estimate on actual costs for FY 1989 provided by the Heye Foundation. The requested amount will provide base funding for electricity ($59,000), fuel oil ($20,000), gas ($1,000), telephone ($20,000), and postage ($17,000).

Native American Collections Documentation Research Program (18 workyears and $1,000,000) - The Native American Collections Documentation Research Program has three objectives: to increase the Institution's ability to make timely and informed decisions in response to requests from Native American people for return of human remains, funerary objects associated with specific burials, and cultural artifacts of ceremonial or religious significance in the collections of both the National Museum of Natural History/Museum of Man and the National Museum of the American Indian; to initiate programs that will encourage increased dialogue and exchange of information between the Institution's scholarly community and Native American groups on matters of mutual interest and concern; and to initiate research programs that will attempt to obtain as much scientific information as possible on collections that may be repatriated.

The Program is, in part, a response to recently enacted legislation for the National Museum of the American Indian that mandates the return of certain materials in the Institution's collections. It also is a response to increasing interest by Native American people for knowledge about and access to collections relating to their culture and history. This funding will:

-- establish the provenance of Native American collections, including evidence linking items to known tribal groups and determining the legal and ethical circumstances surrounding the Smithsonian's collections and acquisition of those items;

-- open channels of communication between the scientific community and Native American groups to build better understanding and increased sensitivity to the cultural, ethical, and scientific issues pertaining to the Native American collections;

-- evaluate the present and potential scientific importance of particular collections and develop programs to obtain as much scientific information as possible before materials are returned;

-- review and make informed decisions on deaccessioning collection items.

The Institution will hire an administrator to provide overall direction to the Documentation Research Program and coordinate the activities of the staff. It also will hire one liaison officer, seven research specialists, and nine research assistants (18 workyears and $675,000). The remaining funds will provide for two postdoctoral fellows, travel expenses of staff and advisory committees, and the purchase of office and research equipment and supplies for the Program ($325,000). While recruitment for the new positions is under way, the Institution will require salary lapse (estimated $225,000) for space renovation in the Natural History Building and start-up equipment.

The Native American collections of the Institution are of substantial interest to Native American peoples. This interest will increase as the National Museum of the American Indian continues to develop. More accurate documentation and curation of the collections will make them more accessible to Native American groups and will identify those objects and collections that should be considered for return to these groups. The Native American Collections Documentation Research Program will enhance the Institution's responsiveness to repatriation requests by Native American communities and to the growing interest among Native American groups for anthropological information.

Special Review Committee on Native American Materials (4 workyears and $250,000) - The Institution will provide the administrative coordination for the special review committee that will monitor and review the inventory, identification, and return of American Indian human remains and funerary objects located in both the National Museum of Natural History/Museum of Man and the National Museum of the American Indian collections.

This committee consists of five non-Smithsonian people who also will advise the Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution on matters relating to disputes between Native American groups regarding jurisdiction over materials that may be returned and on disputes between the Institution and Native American groups regarding repatriation decisions.

To conduct these activities, the Institution will hire an administrator to coordinate overall repatriation endeavors, a fund manager, and two archives technicians to assist committee members and other researchers in reviewing archival documents (4 workyears and $125,000). The remaining funds will be used for committee member travel and compensation and office equipment and supplies ($125,000).

Matters reviewed by the committee will involve complex issues of tribal jurisdiction and law as well as the cultural and archeological context of disputed materials. An independent committee will provide a critical buffer between the concerns of the scientific and scholarly community and the interests of Native American groups.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING: The Smithsonian has established an unrestricted account to receive donations for the NMAI. Investment income may be available from the Heye Foundation endowment, which is to be included in the property transfer. Until the endowment becomes the property of the Institution, however, decisions regarding its management and funds generated cannot be made.

NATIONAL MUSEUM OF AMERICAN ART

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	114	5,545	-	74	3	1,055	-	827	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	122	5,581	-	65	3	460	-	1,000	-	-
-Base	122	5,692								
FY 1991 Estimate	123	5,817	1	194	3	554	-	654	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	122	1	123
11 Personnel Compensation	3,468	101	3,569
12 Personnel Benefits	655	24	679
21 Travel	45	0	45
22 Transportation of Things	59	0	59
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	45	0	45
24 Printing & Reproduction	118	0	118
25 Other Services	511	0	511
26 Supplies & Materials	311	0	311
31 Equipment	130	0	130
Collections Acquisition	350	0	350
Total	5,692	125	5,817

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	110
Program Funds	15

ABSTRACT - The mission of the National Museum of American Art (NMAA) is to acquire, preserve, study, and exhibit works of American art. Paintings, sculpture, graphic arts, and crafts--including photography and folk art--are within the scope of its collecting mandate. The Renwick Gallery, part of the National Museum of American Art, focuses upon American crafts and decorative arts. The Museum also maintains the Barney Studio House, a period home open for tours and interpretive programs.

For FY 1991, NMAA requests an increase of 1 workyear and $15,000 to continue the development of a series of exhibitions commemorating the Columbus Quincentenary. The Institution requires $110,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - With a permanent collection of nearly 35,000 objects, the National Museum of American Art is a nationally recognized center for research, exhibitions, and public education in American art. NMAA acquires several hundred new works of art each year, and, due to limited exhibition space, objects from the permanent collection rotate from storage to the galleries. The collection, however, is available for study and for loan to other museums throughout the country. Conservation staff restore and preserve these irreplaceable artworks to ensure their availability for future generations. Scholarly research by the professional staff results in publications, exhibitions, and educational programs.

Researchers from a variety of disciplines use the Museum's extensive reference materials. The NMAA has developed and maintains three unique research data bases:

-- Inventory of American Paintings Executed before 1914 - data on more than 250,000 paintings by American artists in both public and private collections;

-- Smithsonian Art Index - a list of artworks housed in the Institution's non-art museums;

-- Index of American Art Exhibition Catalogues - documentation of artistic activities in the United States and Canada.

These inventories comprise more than 500,000 computer entries and constitute the most complete data base in existence in the field of American art. A fourth computer-based research resource, the Inventory of American Sculpture, begun in 1985, will ultimately add more than 100,000 records to the Museum's data base.

Collections - The Museum received a number of significant gifts during FY 1989, including sculpture by Augusta Savage and Bryan Hunt, an important large drawing by Luis Jimenez, and an assemblage by Rudy Fernandez. These works strengthen the Museum's modern and contemporary holdings. Works by Man Ray, Max Weber, Tom Wesselman, William Henry Jackson, and Irving Penn augmented the graphic arts collection.

New accessions have enhanced the Museum's folk art collection, including paintings by Howard Finster and William Hawkins and sculpture by Felipe Archuleta and Jose Delores Lopez, as well as gifts from Herbert Waide Hemphill, Jr. Other gifts include paintings by Irene Rice Pereira, John Koch, Edwin Dickinson, Mark Roeyer, and Louis Lozowick, and maquettes by Mary Miss and Stan Dolega created for the General Services Administration's Art-in-Architecture Program. Donations of works by Paul Bogatay and Margaret Craver have supplemented the Renwick Gallery's collection.

The Museum purchased Louis Comfort Tiffany's Market Day Outside the Walls of Tangiers, one of the earliest American canvases to introduce the Orientalist aesthetic to the United States. NMAA also purchased Bryan Hunt's Stillscape I to accompany its companion piece, Stillscape II, which the Museum received as a gift. Both sculptures are on display in the Museum's courtyard. With support from the Smithsonian's Collections Acquisition Program, the Renwick acquired works by Dale Chihuly, William

Daley, Wayne Higby, and Toshiko Takaezu. Other purchases include paintings, sculpture, graphic works, photographs, and craft pieces by artists representing the full breadth of American artistic achievement.

As part of the Institution's Special Employment Initiative, funding for an additional curator position was provided in FY 1990. The new curator position will provide an expertise which will strengthen the museum's scholarly research capabilities, its exhibition program, and its collection efforts in an atmosphere of cultural diversity.

Publications - Smithsonian Studies in American Art, the Museum's scholarly journal, expanded to a quarterly schedule in 1989. Copublished with Oxford University Press and acclaimed since its debut three years ago, its circulation has reached 1,500. The Association of American Publishers, Inc., named the journal Best New Journal for 1989 in the Business/Social Sciences/Humanities category, and the American Federation of Arts selected the journal for an Award of Excellence in its annual design competition.

MIT Press and NMAA copublished The Photography of Invention: American Pictures of the 1980s, which includes contemporary works by 90 artists. With the Smithsonian Institution Press (SIP), the NMAA published Paul Manship in conjunction with an exhibition of Manship's work and The Patricia and Phillip Frost Collection: American Abstraction, 1930-1945 to accompany a major exhibition by the same title. Also published with SIP was the comprehensive study of Albert Pinkham Ryder by Elizabeth Broun, which will complement an exhibition on Ryder to open in 1990. Upcoming catalogues include two copublishing projects with SIP: Visual Poetry: The Drawings of Joseph Stella and a catalogue for the exhibition of the Herbert Waide Hemphill, Jr. Collection of American Folk Art. The Museum received a Getty grant for American Artists at the Nineteenth-Century Paris Salons, which will enable NMAA to copublish this work with Cambridge University Press.

The Museum and SIP produced a postcard book with 24 full-color images from the Frost Collection. For the Manship exhibition, the publications office produced two brochures: The Art of Paul Manship and Mythology and the Art of Paul Manship. In addition, the Museum published two newsletters: American Art Forum Highlights and The American Art Network, the latter serving the community of former Smithsonian fellows and scholars throughout the world.

The Washington Book Publishers' 1989 Design Competition winners included a first-place award for the fall 1988 issue of Smithsonian Studies in American Art and awards for both Paul Manship and Perpetual Motif: The Art of Man Ray, copublished by the Museum and Abbeville Press in 1988. The American Association of Museums presented an Award of Distinction to the Lucas Samaras invitation during its annual publications competition.

Research Resources - In March 1988, NMAA began a nationwide solicitation of information for its newest research data base, the Inventory of American Sculpture. The Museum issued questionnaires to more than 12,000 museums, historical societies, and cultural institutions around the country. NMAA extended this solicitation in FY 1989, mailing questionnaires to more than 10,000 private collections. The inventory will ultimately survey all outdoor sculpture in the United States, in cooperation with the National Institute for the Conservation of Cultural Property, the American Association for State and Local History, the National Conference of State Historic Preservation Officers, the National Park Service, and the Smithsonian's

Conservation Analytical Laboratory. The joint effort of NMAA and the National Institute for Conservation has already raised more than one-third of the fundraising goal for this project, including grants from the Getty Grant Program and the Pew Charitable Trust.

The Inventory of American Paintings Executed before 1914 will also benefit from the sculpture solicitation because the questionnaires include an appeal for new and updated information on paintings. NMAA's renewed contact with individuals and organizations that contributed information to this earlier research data base will enhance the Inventory of American Paintings for the 1,800 researchers who use this resource annually.

The Museum has preserved nearly 300 nitrate and deteriorated acetate negatives from its Peter A. Juley and Son Collection on stable film for future use. NMAA added more than 3,500 slides and 6,000 prints to its Slide and Photograph Archives in FY 1989. The total number of holdings now in the Museum's collection is nearly 120,000 slides and 250,000 prints and negatives.

Museum staff researched approximately 2,500 artists' names for the Artist Authority Project. This research ensures that the information on each recorded artist is accurate and identical among the seven data bases the Museum maintains. Mailings are in progress to request additional biographical information on selected artists.

Exhibitions - During FY 1989, the Museum exhibited works by individual artists and assembled showings based upon thematic topics relevant to American art. Museum curators organized six exhibitions, all of which are touring or will tour to museums throughout the United States:

-- "Perpetual Motif: The Art of Man Ray" explores the career of this famous surrealist artist, who worked in Europe and America during the first half of the 20th century, through a major retrospective of his paintings, photographs, sculptures, and assemblages (four venues);

-- "The Art of Paul Manship" reexamines the figurative subjects, animal sculptures, decorative works, miniatures, medals, and works on paper of this artist, whose work is experiencing a resurgence of popular and scholarly interest (eight venues);

-- "The Boat Show: Fantastic Vessels, Fictional Voyages" shows the diverse ways in which artists interpret the ship and its journey in a range of contemporary crafts media, including glass, ceramics, wood, and hay (three venues);

-- "The Photography of Invention: American Pictures of the 1980s" celebrates the 150th anniversary of the invention of photography with an assembly of contemporary works, primarily by young, avant garde artists (three venues);

-- "The Patricia and Phillip Frost Collection: American Abstraction, 1930-1945" is the premier showing of the Frosts' major gift of paintings and sculpture by members of the American Abstract Artists group, donated to NMAA in 1986 (four to five venues beginning in 1991);

-- "Masterworks of Louis Comfort Tiffany," at the Renwick, emphasizes Tiffany's interpretation of natural forms in the design of stained-glass windows, lamps, vases, and other works produced as commissions, many of them exhibited to the public for the first time (two venues).

In FY 1989, the Renwick Gallery hosted three exhibitions organized by other institutions: "American Art Pottery, 1880-1930 from the Cooper-Hewitt Museum" (toured by the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service); "Stephen deStaebler: The Figure" (toured by the Saddleback College Art Gallery); and "Bound to Vary: Billy Budd, Sailor" (toured by the Guild of Book Workers, Mount Holly, New Jersey).

In addition to exhibitions, NMAA curators organized two temporary installations: "Drawings from the Collection" and "Thomas Hart Benton and the U.S. Navy." "Images of Innocence: The Child in American Art" remained on view, and the Museum rotated miniatures for exhibition in the Doris M. Magowan Miniature Gallery. The Renwick installed new acquisitions from its growing permanent collection of contemporary American crafts, and NMAA remodeled and reinstalled galleries on its third floor. Both the Renwick and NMAA produced extended labels for major works in their permanent collections.

During FY 1989, NMAA lent more than 200 works from its collections to other museums throughout the United States and abroad, at the same time continuing its established policy of placing its European works on long-term loans to other institutions. Concluding a loan to the National Art Gallery of New Zealand in Wellington was a group of 17th- and 18th-century English and Dutch paintings, sent in exchange for the loan to the Museum of John Singleton Copley's portrait, *Mrs. Humphrey Devereux*.

Projected exhibitions for FY 1990 include: "Slave Quilts from the Ante-Bellum South"; "Treasures of American Folk Art from the Abby Aldrich Rockefeller Folk Art Center"; "American Drawings from the Cooper-Hewitt Museum: Training the Hand and Eye"; "George Ohr: The Mad Potter from Biloxi"; "Irving Penn Master Images" (co-organized with the National Portrait Gallery); "Albert Pinkham Ryder"; "Tradition and Innovation: New American Furniture"; "Missouri Portfolio: The Drawings of George Caleb Bingham"; "Contemporary American Beadwork"; "Visual Poetry: The Drawings of Joseph Stella"; and "American Folk: The Herbert Waide Hemphill, Jr. Collection."

The Museum continues research and preparation for the following exhibitions planned for FY 1991: "The West as America: 1820-1920," scheduled to open as part of the Smithsonian's Columbus Quincentenary program; "Tokens of Affection: The Portrait Miniature in America"; "Drawing with Color: Pastels of the 1980s"; "Homecoming: William H. Johnson and Afro-America, 1938-1945"; and, at the Renwick, "Contemporary American Studio Jewelry."

Interpretive Programs - During 1989, the Museum and its Renwick Gallery offered a diverse program of lectures, films, panel discussions, crafts demonstrations, seminars, family days, and workshops for teachers and students. In conjunction with Black History Month, these programs included a concert by the Howard University Jazz Ensemble accompanied by a lecture on the influence of jazz on 20th-century art, by Gwendolyn Everett; a poetry reading by E. Ethelbert Miller, director of the Afro-American Resource Center, Howard University; and an illustrated lecture, "Free Within Ourselves," presented by Dr. Reginia A. Perry, professor of art history at Virginia Commonwealth University, Richmond.

In conjunction with the exhibition "Perpetual Motif: The Art of Man Ray," NMAA offered an all-day international symposium, "Dada and Surrealism: A Symposium in

Honor of Man Ray," attended by more than 400 people. Participants included Dawn Ades, professor of art history and theory at the University of Essex in England; Michel Sanouillet, director of the Center du Vingtieme Siecle at the Universite de Nice in France; and Dickran Yashjian, chairman of the department of comparative culture at the University of California at Irvine. A grant from the Ebsworth Foundation supported this symposium. NMAA also offered four Man Ray films and a three-hour photography workshop for high school students and teachers.

To complement the special exhibition "The Art of Paul Manship," NMAA presented a series of six lectures and offered two children's workshops on mythology, storytelling, demonstrations in clay, and hands-on sculpture making. A variety of programs accompanied "The Photography of Invention" exhibition, including a series of four lectures, a computer demonstration by artist George Legrady, two photography workshops for students and teachers, and a workshop for visually impaired visitors.

During 1989, the Museum presented new interpretive programs designed to increase accessibility of two exhibitions. Visually impaired and other visitors could carry hand-held receivers through several sections of "The Photography of Invention" exhibition. These "sound sticks" relayed tape-recorded descriptions of selected works in the exhibition. In conjunction with "The Patricia and Phillip Frost Collection: American Abstraction, 1930-1945," an interactive video program allowed visitors to see five artists at work and to hear their observations on the life of the abstract artist during the 1930s and 1940s.

As part of the Institution's Special Employment Initiative, funding for an education specialist position was provided in FY 1990. The addition of the new position will help the Museum address a long-standing deficiency in the area of educational programming and assist the Museum in attracting minority audiences to attend its exhibitions and educational and public programs.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, NMAA requests an increase of 1 workyear and $15,000 to continue the development of a series of exhibitions commemorating the Columbus Quincentenary.

The National Museum of American Art will mark the historic international observance of the 500th anniversary of Christopher Columbus's voyages to the New World with a series of major exhibitions. These exhibitions will address three distinct themes in American art that illustrate the social and cultural changes resulting from interactions of European and indigenous American cultures during the 19th and 20th centuries.

With funding provided in FY 1989 and FY 1990, the Museum is developing the first of these exhibitions, "The West as America: 1820-1920." This exhibition will present artworks and cultural objects that portray the dreams that inspired America's westward expansion during the 19th century and the complex legacy of experience those dreams engendered, both for native Americans who had occupied their lands since Columbus's discovery and for the new settlers of the western lands. Using paintings, sculptures, graphic arts, printed books, and collateral materials to show how the receding frontiers of the West assumed a mythic attraction for Americans between 1820 and 1920, the exhibition will highlight an especially rich area of Smithsonian collections, including major works by George Catlin, Charles Bird King, John Mix Stanley, and Thomas Moran. New research will explore the dual nature of the settlement of the West, both the positive aspects of development and the problems and dislocations, physical and cultural, that attended this intrusion into nature's wilderness and the encounter with its native inhabitants.

During FY 1991, the Museum will continue preparation for two other Quincentenary exhibitions. "Chicano Art: Resistance and Affirmation" will explore the roots and complexities of the Chicano Art Movement through an examination of artwork produced between 1965 and 1985 by a particular segment of the Latino population in the United States--individuals of Mexican heritage who identified themselves as "Chicanos" with recognizable, culturally related characteristics. With its focus on artists of Mexican heritage, this exhibition is intended to appeal to members of the Hispanic community and intensify the significance of the Quincentenary celebration for them. "American Art at the 1893 World's Columbian Exposition in Chicago," being developed in collaboration with the National Portrait Gallery, will consist of approximately 150 to 200 works selected from the more than 1,200 paintings and sculptures originally displayed as part of the 1893 World's Fair which celebrated the 400th Anniversary of Columbus's discovery of America. The exhibition of these American works of art at the Exposition's Fine Arts Building is credited as a central factor in redefining both the American and European attitudes towards the artists of this country at the end of the 19th century. A catalogue for the NMAA/NPG retrospective will expand on themes in the exhibition itself through essays on the art, architecture, and cultural impact of the 1893 Columbian Exposition.

For FY 1991, the Museum requests the addition of 1 workyear and $15,000 to the existing FY 1990 base level for the Quincentenary exhibitions to continue development and installation of "The West as America," and to support the initial research and planning for "Chicano Art" and "American Art at the 1893 World's Columbian Exposition in Chicago." The requested increase will supplement the base level sufficiently to allow the Museum to hire a second research/planning assistant position to work on the latter two exhibitions. This assistant will also help the NMAA curatorial staff locate and compile material critical to the "Columbian Exposition" exhibition and accompanying publication.

Additional support for these Quincentenary exhibitions will ensure that NMAA makes a significant contribution to the Smithsonian's Columbus Quincentenary celebration by highlighting these three important aspects of American history as presented by American artists in their work.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Annual Smithsonian allotments and fees for services provide these funds. Examples of fees received are:

-- sale of deaccessioned works of art;

-- royalties from publications;

-- exhibition participation fees;

-- revenue shares from restaurant and gift shop sales;

-- sales of slides and photographs;

-- tuition reimbursement from universities for NMAA interns.

During FY 1989, funds from the J. Paul Getty Center for the History of Art and the Humanities continued to support the archival preservation of the Juley Collection of photographs. Exhibition fees allowed the employment of one full-time staff person in the registrar's office to coordinate NMAA loan activities. During 1989, exhibition fees also funded assembly costs of the Man Ray exhibition. Tuition reimbursements received from universities enabled NMAA to provide stipends for 11 summer interns in 1989. With allotment funding NMAA took temporary measures to prevent further damage to the Barney Studio House after structural tests found evidence of deterioration in 1988. Funds from the Smithsonian's Collections Acquisition, Scholarly Studies, Research Opportunity, and Special Exhibition Funds supported research, education, and exhibition programs.

Restricted Funds - Individuals, foundations, and corporations provide funds for specific purposes. A generous gift from the Renwick Collectors' Alliance in 1988 helped initiate the James Renwick Fellowship Program in American Crafts. The Institution awarded two fellowships in 1988 and two in 1989 to outside scholars for study at NMAA. In FY 1989, the Renwick Alliance also supported a four-month curatorial fellow ($5,000) and committed to a one-year position for a collections acquisition assistant ($30,000). The Renwick Alliance donated additional funds for the purchase of works of art ($30,000). The Museum used funds generated through the American Art Forum to purchase the painting Market Day Outside the Walls of Tangiers, by Louis Comfort Tiffany. NMAA received contributions from several sources for the programs associated with "The Photography of Invention" exhibition. Tiffany & Company provided funds for the Tiffany exhibition, which opened in September 1989. The J. Paul Getty trust grant program provided $30,000 to publish American Art at the Nineteenth-Century Paris Salons by Lois M. Fink.

NATIONAL PORTRAIT GALLERY

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	88	4,125	-	20	-	228	-	321	-	117
FY 1990 -Estimate	89	4,212	-	41	-	73	-	559	-	-
-Base	89	4,296								
FY 1991 Estimate	89	4,403	-	42	-	54	-	773	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation............................	89	0	89
11 Personnel Compensation..................	2,882	70	2,952
12 Personnel Benefits......................	393	12	405
21 Travel..................................	46	15	61
22 Transportation of Things................	98	0	98
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities........	40	0	40
24 Printing & Reproduction.................	85	0	85
25 Other Services..........................	179	10	189
26 Supplies & Materials....................	133	0	133
31 Equipment...............................	17	0	17
Collections Acquisition....................	423	0	423
Total	4,296	107	4,403

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay..............................	82
Program Funds..............................	25

ABSTRACT - The National Portrait Gallery (NPG) is dedicated to the exhibition and study of portraits of people who have made significant contributions to American history and of the artists who created such portraiture.

For FY 1991, NPG requests an increase of $25,000 for support of the Columbus Quincentenary exhibitions. The Institution requires $82,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The National Portrait Gallery explores the heritage and accomplishments of the American people by collecting, studying, preserving, and exhibiting portraits in all media as both historical and artistic documents.

As NPG's collections have expanded, research into American political, social, and intellectual history and the history of American art has substantially increased. The products of this research include special exhibitions using the portraits in the NPG collections as well as those borrowed from elsewhere, and books and journal articles of enduring scholarly value. Temporary exhibitions in the Gallery frequently present subjects or artists never before explored, and bring together works from public and private collections for display with objects in the Gallery's permanent collections. Professional conservators on the Gallery's staff care for the collections of the National Portrait Gallery.

The Gallery has maintained an active and successful program in recent years without substantial increases in budget or staff. As the 1990s begin, the Gallery will face new challenges in maintaining its acquisition activity in the face of increasing art prices, housing its collections in an orderly and safe manner, and managing its records. The Gallery will require additional funding to support its growing collections and necessary expansions in its curatorial, registrarial, and educational programs.

Collections Acquisitions - During FY 1989, several significant acquisitions enhanced NPG's collections.

Sculptures and Paintings: Through purchase, the Gallery acquired Cephas Thompson's portrait of William Wirt, U.S. attorney general for 12 years in the Andrew Jackson administration, as well as busts of the writers A. Bronson Alcott and J. P. Marquand and a bronze bust of former Institution Secretary S. Dillon Ripley by Walker Hancock. NPG also accessioned painted portraits of Gertrude Stein with Alice B. Toklas by Sir Francis Rose, and the artists Jacob Epstein, Ernest Lawson, Mark Tobey, and Thomas Seir Cummings.

A bronze bust of President George Bush by sculptor Marc Mellon augmented the NPG Presidential portrait collection. The bust was a gift from Vincent and Sheila Melzac. A second major gift to the collection was a portrait of Bishop George Berkeley. Acquired through a grant from the Morris and Gwendolyn Cafritz Foundation, the portrait has special significance, not only because it dates from the time when Berkeley was attempting to carry out his New World plan, but also because it was the work of colonial artist John Smibert, who accompanied Berkeley to America as the artist designated to teach painting and drawing at the Bermuda school. Other important gifts include the Rene Bouche portrait of Benny Goodman from Mr. Goodman's daughters and three self-portraits in different media by Victor Hammer.

Prints and Drawings: The Prints and Drawings Department acquired a number of significant portrait drawings in FY 1989, including Sally Avery's drawing of Milton Avery; Boardman Robinson's image of John Reed; self-portraits by Theodore Roszak and Stanton MacDonald-Wright; an English watercolor of Edward Sothern; pencil drawings by Miriam Troop of James Farrell, Howard Rusk, A. Philip Randolph, Joseph Hirshhorn, and Ellsworth Bunker; and crayon portraits by Hugo Gellert of Ethel and Julius Rosenberg, Mary Heaton Vorse, Gilbert Grosvenor, and others. The Gallery also added to the collection several groups of caricature drawings, including four works by Charles Johnson Post, 11 drawings by Peggy Bacon, six by Antonio Sotomayor, eight by Will Cotton, and 33 by David Levine, as well as one piece by Paolo Garretto. Several portraits of important African-American subjects now enhance the collection, including a lithograph of Henry Bibb, a drawing of Katherine Dunham, and posters of Jack Johnson and Dorie Miller. Other posters acquired include images of Alla Nazimova, Will Rogers, Veronica Lake, Lon Chaney, and John Gilbert. Among other major print purchases were a lithograph of Theodore Dreiser by Adolf Dehn, an etching of George Washington by Joseph Hiller, Jr., and a lithograph depicting Rouben Mamoulian by Don Freeman.

In addition to many smaller gifts to the collection, the Gallery received five drawings by Boris Chaliapin, a painted poster by Batiste Madalena, a pastel by Antonio Sotomayor, and a lithograph by Alexander Brook.

Photographs: Outstanding photographs purchased for the Gallery's collection in FY 1989 include a unique, life-size Polaroid Polacolor self-portrait of contemporary artist Lucas Samaras; a rare vintage print of Gertrude Stein and Alice B. Toklas taken in Stein's Paris home by Man Ray in 1923; a daguerreotype of future outlaw Jesse James at the age of three as well as a tintype portrait of the adult James from 1870; a vintage platinum print by Alice Boughton of poet and reformer Julia Ward Howe; a daguerreotype of artist Charles Loring Elliott attributed to Matthew Brady; a handsome, vintage portrait of artist Louise Nevelson by Lotte Jacobi; Paul Haviland's rare, cyanotype portrait of photographer Alfred Stieglitz from 1910; an informal view of photojournalist Arthur Fellig (better known as "Weegee") by news photographers Bert Brandt and Edward Jerry; and a dramatically posed, vintage silver print of evangelist Aimee Semple McPherson taken at the Gerhard Sisters' studio in St. Louis in 1923. "The Family," a limited edition portfolio of 73 portraits by Richard Avedon, commissioned by Rolling Stone magazine, depicts the men and women who constituted America's political leadership in 1976. Generous contributions from Mrs. J. Paul Austin and the James Smithson Society funded the acquisition of the Avedon photographs.

Several gifts also enhanced the Gallery's photographic holdings in FY 1989. A gelatin silver print of author Lillian Hellman by Marianne Cook joined the collection as a gift of the photographer, while an anonymous donor gave a portrait of author James Jones by Nancy Crampton. A 1948 vintage portrait of public official David E. Lilienthal came as a gift from the family of Mr. Lilienthal.

Collections Management - In the summer of 1989, NPG undertook an extensive drawings conservation inventory to review the housing and conservation needs of framed drawings. This project has been pending since the transfer of drawings to the Prints and Drawings Department several years ago. In the course of the inventory, NPG has rehoused a large number of drawings, identified several conservation emergencies, and made plans for the systematic rehousing and reframing of the majority of drawings.

The registrar's office continues to settle into its new office spaces. It has started reorganizing exhibition and outgoing loan files and will receive cabinets for this project in FY 1990. The registrar's office continues to expand its use of microcomputers. NPG uses computer data bases to monitor pending acquisitions in its custody, to record outgoing loans, to track the location of objects on view in the museum, and to create completed catalogue cards. Museum staff routinely enters new collections records in the data base. In-house automation of older inventory records continues to be a priority. Meanwhile, the Gallery relies on the Smithsonian's central computer for its complete collections records.

NPG renovated the packing and shipping room in FY 1989 to make maximum use of the available space. Card readers at entrances to collection storage areas within the Museum and in other "sensitive" workspaces now enhance security of these areas. The Museum is researching space-efficient cabinets, and a vendor will make recommendations within the next year.

Exhibitions - The National Portrait Gallery and the Museum of Broadcasting in New York co-organized "Pioneers of American Broadcasting" in October 1988. The exhibition featured inventors, entertainers, writers, and newscasters who had a significant impact on radio and television history. In addition to portraits and memorabilia, the exhibition included excerpts from radio and television programs played on monitors located throughout the galleries.

As part of its celebration of the Bicentennial of the Constitution, the Gallery joined the United States Senate and the United States House of Representatives in presenting "The First Federal Congress, 1789-1791," from March through July 1989. Senator Robert Byrd, Representative Lindy Boggs, and Smithsonian Secretary Robert McC. Adams opened this exhibition at a special reception attended by many members of Congress.

To commemorate the 200th anniversary of the Act of Congress establishing the Federal judiciary system, "Portraits of the American Law" opened in October 1989. This exhibition featured images of distinguished American jurists from the years of the early republic to the late 20th century. The primary purpose of this exhibition was to highlight those individuals who were pivotal interpreters and shapers of the U.S. legal system. Three national law firms provided partial support for the exhibition: Morgan, Lewis & Bockius, Vinson & Elkins, and Kirkland & Ellis.

"Isamu Noguchi Portrait Sculpture," the first major retrospective of this important but little-known aspect of the artist's work, opened in April 1989. Favorably reviewed in the national press, this exhibition went to a branch of the Whitney Museum in New York after its Washington closing in August.

"To Color America: Portraits by Winold Reiss" opened October 27, 1989 and will continue through April 1, 1990. It features images of various ethnic groups, particularly African Americans and native Americans, by the German-born artist, Winold Reiss. The Gallery has created a new exhibition area for this show by using a first floor central hallway and several adjacent rooms. The Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES) will tour a panel version of this show.

Two major photographic exhibitions will open in the spring of 1990. The first is a joint exhibition with the National Museum of American Art (NMAA) of the 120 master photographs given to the two museums by Irving Penn. NPG and NMAA are developing plans to circulate this exhibition in the United States and abroad. The second is a selection of the photographic treasures from the National Portrait Gallery collection.

In late spring and summer of 1990 the Gallery will open several smaller exhibitions: "Oliphant's Presidents" will feature 25 years of presidential caricature by Pat Oliphant, and "Working for TIME" will feature 22 portraits done for the cover of TIME magazine by Robert Vickrey. "The Five of Hearts," opening in June 1990, will feature the 1880s friendship of Henry Adams, his wife Clover, John and Clara Hay and Clarence King.

The last in the Gallery's series of exhibitions commemorating the Bicentennial of the Constitution will open in November 1990. Co-organized with the Tennessee State Museum in Nashville, this exhibition will focus on the executive branch of government through an examination of the life and presidency of Andrew Jackson. The exhibit will travel to Nashville in February 1991.

Other major exhibitions currently under development are an exhibition focusing on the artists and journalists who covered World War II (1993), a joint exhibition with the Wadsworth Atheneum in Hartford, Connecticut, and the Amon Carter Museum in Fort Worth, Texas, on the portraits of Ralph Earl (1991), and a major retrospective of the works of Cecilia Beaux (1992). NPG is planning two exhibitions as part of the Columbus Quincentenary observance. In the first exhibition, NPG is joining with the Prado Museum in Madrid and the Kimbell Art Museum in Fort Worth, Texas, in organizing an exhibition of 16th-century Spanish portraiture. The exhibit will focus on the creation of an indigenous Spanish portrait style from the time of Ferdinand and Isabella through the age of Philip II, the era when Spanish colonial influence in the Western Hemisphere was at its height. Many European museums will loan their portrait masterpieces for this exhibition. For the second Quincentenary exhibition, NPG joins the National Museum of American Art to present, in the spring of 1993, an exhibition based on the American paintings and sculptures originally shown in the 1893 World's Columbian Exposition in Chicago.

Loans from the National Portrait Gallery to museums around the world continue to increase. Due to the many international celebrations of the 150th anniversary of photography, loans from that collection have been particularly heavy, with items going as far as Czechoslovakia and Australia.

Publications - The National Portrait Gallery's publications department produces books and ephemera documenting the museum's collections and exhibitions for a general adult reading public. Exhibitions have been the focus of this activity in 1989, most notably with the publication of The First Federal Congress, an in-depth study of this landmark in history. This department has also completed, or initiated, work on four other exhibition-related books and various brochures. The Smithsonian Institution Press is distributing all but one of the books--Portraits of the American Law--which, in a new venture for the National Portrait Gallery, the University of Washington Press will distribute.

Of special interest in 1990 will be the catalogue for the Irving Penn photograph collection, produced to document the artist's gift to the National Portrait Gallery and the National Museum of American Art. This will be a collaborative project between the two museums, and the Smithsonian Institution Press will distribute the catalogue.

Education - The education department of the National Portrait Gallery combines a schedule of daily gallery tours, intensive elementary and secondary school programs, and senior citizen outreach programs. Trained education aides and docents conduct these tours and outreach programs. NPG's education program menu includes interactive school presentations such as "Westward Ho!" and "Posing for the Presidency," tour and slide-lecture presentations, and musical performances such as "Lerner and Loewe Remembered." NPG has developed programs to address the needs and interests of multi-cultural communities nation-wide and to broaden audiences locally. As part of the Institution's Special Employment Initiative, funding for a position of public programs coordinator was provided in FY 1990. This position assists NPG in developing and coordinating programs of symposia, lectures, films, and performances to appeal to multiple audiences.

"Cultures in Motion: Portraits of American Diversity" (CIM) promotes reexamination of portraiture, biography, and history through lectures, symposia, one-person biographical plays, recitals, concerts, storytelling, and other performance media. A successor to the former "Portraits in Motion," CIM's activities are a constructive way for museum visitors to broaden their understanding of the multi-cultural views of American history.

A brochure of adult outreach services developed by NPG invites "mobile seniors" to spend a morning or an afternoon at the National Portrait Gallery. The goal is to reach older adults living within two hours of the District of Columbia. NPG is conducting further research to develop supplemental education packages for teachers nation-wide and a self-guiding brochure of the museum for families with young children. NPG must complete the development work and acquire funding to produce these new publications.

The education department offers "Lunchtime Lectures" related to the Gallery's special exhibitions and highlights the permanent collection through slide-lectures on themes such as "Leading Ladies: Women and Reform in the United States" and "Men of Progress: Nineteenth-Century American Inventors." The department is also responsible for coordinating the National Portrait Gallery's internship program.

Research - The Catalog of American Portraits (CAP) continued to serve researchers in the fields of American history and American art history during FY 1989. Research requests increased in number and complexity over previous years. CAP added portrait records from the Midwest and California to its computer data base, bringing the total number of automated records to approximately 54,000. Participating institutions received automated printouts and accompanying negatives covering their portrait collections. CAP researched and updated information on some 6,000 portraits in the southern United States.

In cooperative research efforts with other Smithsonian museums, NPG shared information in the CAP concerning approximately 2,500 portraits of native Americans with the National Museum of Natural History's native-American programs and assisted the National Museum of American History's Division of Military History in the study of military uniforms as depicted in 18th- and 19th-century portraits. The Smithsonian Institution Collections Information System (CIS) will incorporate information from these research projects. CAP continues to play an active role in the development of this information system.

CAP's first priority in FY 1990 is to continue to serve research interests, both professional and private. Having filled two office vacancies (including a new field surveyor) in FY 1989, CAP expects greater progress in the collection and processing of research material. CAP will continue to seek funding for the completion of the national portrait survey.

During FY 1989, the Peale Family Papers staff continued its work of transcribing, researching, and annotating the selected papers of the noted artist and naturalist Charles Willson Peale and his artist-sons Raphaelle, Rembrandt, and Rubens. The staff has submitted volume 3, The Belfield Years: 1810-1820 to Yale University Press, with publication scheduled for April 1991. Work has begun on volume 4, which will cover the years 1820-1827, and on Charles Willson Peale's autobiography (volume 5), both scheduled for publication in 1993. The University of Pittsburgh Press will publish a volume of critical essays entitled Charles Willson Peale: New Perspectives to appear in April 1991 in celebration of the 250th anniversary of the artist's birth.

The project's research program to identify portraits painted by Rembrandt Peale (1778-1860) and to collect information about the extensive work of this important American artist is successfully under way. Publication of the catalog raisonne of Rembrandt Peale's oeuvre will provide a scholarly resource for art historians. An exhibition of Rembrandt Peale's portraits will follow the completion of the catalogue.

The National Museum of American Art/National Portrait Gallery Library continues to provide a full range of services to its readers. An unusually large number of fellows and interns used the Library during FY 1988 and FY 1989. In addition, the Library gave tours and orientations to groups both within the Smithsonian and outside.

The Library staff has almost completed a full stack inventory in preparation for the automated circulation system due to begin in FY 1990. The staff also has developed an automated system for tracking interlibrary loans and produced a detailed guide to Library policies and procedures that will be distributed to Smithsonian staff and fellows. To help develop a program to improve the publication exchange project, the Library staff received a Research Opportunities Fund grant.

At the "Periodicals Swap" at the Annual Conference of Art Libraries Society/North America in Phoenix in March 1989, the Library obtained many important missing periodical issues. Other additions to the Library collection in FY 1989 included the New York Public Library Artists' File (microfiche), American Biographical Archive (microfiche), New York Evening Post, 1829-1871 (microfilm), and The Nineteenth Century: The Visual Arts, and Architecture Specialist Collection (microfiche).

The Library's Bibliography on Portraiture will be published by G. K. Hall in 1990. This printed book catalogue lists books, book chapters, periodical articles, and selected monographs on portraiture. Covering portraiture as both an art form and documentation in all epochs of civilization, it will serve the needs of scholars and institutions here and abroad. A project to fund the archival processing and indexing of the Ferdinand Perret Papers, a scrapbook collection on California art and artists, is in the proposal stage. The Library is eagerly awaiting the publication of the NPG checklist on CD-ROM. The CD-ROM reader will be located in the Library for various uses by the Gallery.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, NPG requests an increase of $25,000 for support of the Columbus Quincentenary exhibitions. The 1992 Columbus Quincentenary presents a once-in-a-lifetime catalyst for American scholars and the public to explore the founding of the Americas. Of all the historical records available from the 15th and 16th centuries, the medium that can speak most vividly to many contemporary audiences is portraiture from that era. The collections of the National Portrait Gallery are among the richest assets of the Nation's art and history collections. NPG will contribute its extensive collections and unique expertise in the fields of portraiture, exhibition organization, and publication direction to the Quincentenary celebration by focusing on the people of that era whose decisions and accomplishments have in turn shaped the 20th century.

NPG will present two exhibitions and two research publications to commemorate the Quincentenary. The first involves a significant research initiative in collaboration with two internationally important museums, the Kimbell Art Museum in Fort Worth, Texas, and the Prado Museum of the Ministry of Culture in Madrid, Spain. "Spanish Portraiture in the 16th Century" will feature portraits from the age of King Philip II, when Spanish colonial influence in the Western hemisphere was at its height. This exhibition will feature portraits on loan from the Prado in Spain, the Kunsthistorisches Museum in Vienna, Austria, and the British Royal Collections. This exhibition will be on view in 1992 in Washington, D.C., and in Fort Worth. NPG and its partners also intend for this exhibition to tour other venues, including Spain. The catalogue for this exhibition will appear in both English and Spanish. Funding needs will continue into FY 1993 as the exhibition travels to other venues. The second Quincentenary exhibition, "American Art at the 1893 World's Columbian Exposition in Chicago," involves significant new research in art history conducted by NPG and the National Museum of American Art. This exhibition, based on works originally shown in Chicago at the 1893 World's Columbian Exposition, will be on view in FY 1993.

The National Portrait Gallery currently has a base of $15,000 to support these Columbus Quincentenary initiatives. The requested increase will provide an expanded base of $40,000 to continue the research and planning for the two exhibitions. This expanded base will support the contractual services of a guest curator ($20,000) and cover the extensive international travel necessary to find portraits appropriate for the exhibition and to arrange exhibition sites ($20,000).

The nationwide series of events centered around the Columbus Quincentenary presents unique opportunities for international cooperation among institutions and scholars. With its own collections, and through its partnership with other preeminent museums, NPG will interpret the figures and events of the Columbian era and their subsequent impact on the historical and cultural developments of 20th-century America.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Several sources constitute the unrestricted general and special purpose funds, including the Gallery's share of sales in the museum shop, allotments, sales of photographic reproductions of portraits in the collection, staff honoraria, and participation fees from museums to which the National Portrait Gallery loans exhibitions. These funds help defray the costs of public lectures, symposia, and special events in coordination with the opening of exhibitions, the associated costs of loan exhibition development and management, and the research expenses of staff preparing special publications or lectures. In addition, funds from the Smithsonian's Collections Acquisition, Scholarly Studies and Educational Outreach Programs, Research Opportunities Fund, Women's Committee, and Special Exhibition Fund support research, education, and exhibition projects.

Restricted Funds - Designated for specific purposes, these funds are in the form of gifts and grants from individuals, foundations, organizations, and corporations.

In FY 1989, the Gallery received a generous grant from the Morris and Gwendolyn Cafritz Foundation to purchase a painting of Bishop George Berkeley. The Gallery purchased other acquisitions, notably a portrait of Thomas Seir Cummings by Augustus Earle, 73 photographs by Richard Avedon, a bronze bust of S. Dillon Ripley by Walker Hancock, and a portrait of Gertrude Stein and Alice B. Toklas by Sir Francis Rose, all from the contributions of Mrs. J. Paul Austin, the Barra Foundation, Inc., the T. M. Evans Foundation, Inc., Leslie H. Goldberg, Chester H. Lasell, and William Vareika.

The Kirkland & Ellis Foundation; Vinson & Elkins, Attorneys at Law; and Morgan, Lewis & Bockius, Counselors at Law, lent their support in 1989 to NPG's "Portraits of American Law" exhibition. The Bicentennial Commission of the U.S. Constitution, Donaldson, Lufkin & Jenrette, Inc., and the Equitable Life Assurance Society of the United States have made generous contributions in support of the Gallery's ongoing exhibition programs. The Burlington Northern Foundation and the Anschutz Foundation made donations in support of "To Color America: Portraits by Winold Reiss" an exhibition that opened in late October 1989. The Gallery has also received generous gifts from the New Sweden '88 New York Committee, the New York Community Trust, and the Ruth and Frank Stanton Fund. The Gallery has received a number of smaller gifts from individual donors.

The extent and degree of outside support in the coming fiscal years cannot be projected, but fundraising is actively under way for several major projects in FY 1991 and 1992.

HIRSHHORN MUSEUM AND SCULPTURE GARDEN

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	72	3,453	-	14	-	838	-	1,849	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate -Base	78 78	3,508 3,578	-	20	-	485	-	1,598	-	-
FY 1991 Estimate	78	3,678	-	27	-	75	-	1,666	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	78	0	78
11 Personnel Compensation	2,250	58	2,308
12 Personnel Benefits	398	12	410
21 Travel	70	0	70
22 Transportation of Things	150	0	150
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	10	0	10
24 Printing & Reproduction	40	30	70
25 Other Services	175	0	175
26 Supplies & Materials	180	0	180
31 Equipment	150	0	150
Collections Acquisition	145	0	145
41 Grants	10	0	10
Total	3,578	100	3,678

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	70
Program Funds	30

ABSTRACT - Public Law 89-788, signed on November 7, 1966, established the Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden (HMSG) as the Smithsonian's modern and contemporary art museum. The collection is the basis of an active program of exhibitions. The Museum staff conducts extensive research, prepares catalogues, and offers a variety of educational activities.

For FY 1991, the Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden requests an increase of $30,000 to provide expanded support for its Quincentenary exhibition "Four Latin-American Modernists: Torres-Garcia, Rivera, Lam, and Matta." The Institution requires $70,000 for necessary pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - In keeping with its status as a museum of modern and contemporary art, HMSG conducts programs of research, exhibitions, collections management, acquisitions, deaccessions, and educational activities involving audiences of all ages. First opened to the public on October 4, 1974, the Museum attracts more than one million visitors a year, making it one of the most visited contemporary art museums in the United States.

Research - The Museum's resources include more than 13,000 works of art, a curatorial file providing information on artists and works in the collection, and a library with 35,000 books and catalogues. Students and researchers can view and study works of art not on display. The staff researches the provenance, exhibition history, iconographic significance, and physical condition of each work of art in the permanent collection. The staff also conducts extensive research in preparing exhibitions. A computer system gives access to collection information and recalls video images installed on the system.

Exhibitions - The Museum conducts an active exhibition program that draws upon works in its collection and other collections. Nearly 700 works from the permanent collection are on display at any one time. The Museum makes extensive loans to other museums.

In FY 1989, the Museum organized four major exhibitions: "Alberto Giacometti, 1901-1966"; "Recent Acquisitions 1986-1988"; "Robert Moskowitz: 1959-1989"; and "Francis Bacon." In the same fiscal year, the Museum displayed "Gerhard Richter: Paintings," an exhibition organized jointly by the Art Gallery of Ontario and the Museum of Contemporary Art, Chicago. After its initial showing at HMSG, the Giacometti exhibition traveled to the San Francisco Museum of Modern Art. The Moskowitz show will travel to the La Jolla Museum of Contemporary Art and the Museum of Modern Art, New York. The Bacon exhibition will travel to the Los Angeles County Museum of Art and the Museum of Modern Art, New York.

For the second year, the Smithsonian's Special Exhibition Fund partially supported two exhibition programs: "Directions" and "Works." The "Directions" series featured Austrian artist Walter Pichler,' Chinese-American artist Mel Chin, and American artists Erica Beckman and Keith Sonnier. Each exhibition was accompanied by a small catalogue. The innovative "Works" program integrates the Museum's building and grounds into the creative process. HMSG commissions artists to visit the Museum and create temporary site-specific works. "Works" artists in FY 1989 included Krzysztof Wodiczko, Daniel Buren, Buster Simpson, and Houston Conwill. During the exhibition, HMSG provides a free handout detailing the artists' styles. Each year the Museum produces a catalogue of "Works" exhibitions which is sold in the museum shop.

During FY 1989, the Museum's staff also organized small exhibitions based on the permanent collection: "Numbers, Letters and Lines"; "Thomas Eakins Photographs: A Selection from the Permanent Collection"; and "Ralston Crawford Photographs."

In FY 1990, HMSG will show two major exhibitions: "Culture and Commentary: An Eighties Prospective" and "Bay Area Figurative Art, 1950-1965." "Culture and Commentary" surveys the art of the 1980s by highlighting 15 artists from Europe, Canada, and the United States whose expressive voices have fully developed in this decade. HMSG will ask a number of artists to create site-specific works for this exhibition. The San Francisco Museum of Modern Art is organizing the "Bay Area Figurative Art, 1950-1965" exhibition.

In FY 1991, major exhibitions scheduled include "John Baldessari," organized by the Los Angeles County Museum of Art; "Sigmar Polke," organized by the San Francisco Museum of Modern Art; and the American Visual Arts Exhibition, "-X."

Collections Management - HMSG inventories its entire collection on a three-year cycle, with spot checks made at least annually. Work continues on integrating the bequest of Mr. Hirshhorn into the permanent collection. The staff develops object records and examines objects. Staff photographers record the objects for both identification and reproduction purposes. The office of the registrar is transferring the permanent inventory from the Institution's old mainframe computer to the new mainframe. This office also is working to add video images to the inventory system.

Acquisitions - The function of HMSG, as described in the legislation, is to be "a museum in Washington, D.C. where modern art could be exhibited and studied...[to]...enrich the culture of the Nation." To reflect current developments in the visual arts, an active acquisitions program is essential.

In FY 1989, the Museum purchased the following: Eva Hesse's Vertiginous Detour (1966); Leon Kossoff's Between Kilburn and Willesden Green, Autumn (1987); Jean Tinguely's The Sorceress (1961); Louise Bourgeois's The Blind Leading the Blind (ca. 1947-1949); Manuel Neri's Untitled (1981); and, Anish Kapoor's At the Hub of Things (1987).

The Museum periodically reviews its collections to identify works of art that it judges to be duplicates or non-contemporary art. The Museum's Board of Trustees must approve all requests for deaccessioning. Before deaccessioning works of art to the public, at auction, HMSG offers these works for sale to other museums of the Smithsonian Institution. According to the agreement with Mr. Hirshhorn, the Hirshhorn uses proceeds from any such sales to purchase new works of art.

Education and Public Orientation - To help visitors understand modern art HMSG creates a variety of educational materials. These include brochures and mini-catalogues distributed to the public free of charge. The education department trains docents to lead regular and special tours of the exhibitions. This department also programs the Orientation Room with both original creations and outside productions. HMSG's outreach programs assist visitors before they arrive at the Museum. In 1988, the Museum developed new outdoor signs to inform passersby of the current major exhibition.

The Museum sponsors three free film series: a lunchtime series about artists and their work; an evening series by artist film makers; and a Saturday series for young people. Other events held in the Museum's auditorium include concerts by the 20th Century Consort and lectures by artists, critics, and art historians. Occasionally, a symposium accompanies a related exhibition.

"Currents," a program of two free seminars, exposes high school juniors to the trends and ideas represented in new works of art. The students' comments and observations are printed in a free handout for the public.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden requests an increase of $30,000 to provide expanded support for its Quincentenary exhibition "Four Latin-American Modernists: Torres-Garcia, Rivera, Lam, and Matta." The 500th anniversary of Christopher Columbus's voyages provides all Americans with an opportunity for expanded international cultural understanding. The increased public awareness and respect of other cultures promoted by this event will build a long-term foundation for encouraging international cooperation and scholarly exchange with Latin America.

The exhibition "Four Latin-American Modernists: Torres-Garcia, Rivera, Lam, and Matta" is HMSG's contribution to the Smithsonian Institution's celebration of the Columbus Quincentenary. It aims to broaden public understanding of the Latin-American culture and, in particular, the impact of four Latin-American artists on modern art. By focusing on Diego Rivera, Joaquin Torres-Garcia, Wifredo Lam, and Matta, the exhibition examines their aesthetic merits and distinctive styles that eventually moved beyond modernism. The Hirshhorn Museum's exhibition in conjunction with the Columbus Quincentenary will provide insight on Latin-American culture and art.

The requested increase for FY 1991 will partially pay the costs of writing and editing an exhibition catalogue.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These funds come from several sources including the Museum's share of sales in the museum shop, plaza cafe, and other miscellaneous receipts. An allotment meets the travel expenses of the Museum's Board of Trustees. The 20th Century Consort, which has performed at the Museum for more than ten years, receives partial funding.

Restricted Funds - The Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden has four endowment funds. The first fund comes from the $1 million that Mr. Hirshhorn pledged at the signing of the initial agreement, and the second comes from the monies left to the Museum in his will. The third endowment comes from the sale of works of art. Finally, the Museum receives funds from the Holenia Trust, a Swiss foundation financed by Mr. Hirshhorn. The Museum can use these four funds only to purchase works of art. At the beginning of each year, the Museum's Board of Trustees has authorized 10 percent of the value of the endowment funds for use as a purchase fund for the current year.

Also, individuals, foundations, organizations, and corporations designate gifts and grants for specific purposes. Generous grants from the Xerox Corporation and Credit Suisse provided partial support for the Giacometti exhibition. In addition, Balair supplied air transportation from Switzerland and the Pro Helvetia Foundation contributed funds for the brochure and a symposium.

ARTHUR M. SACKLER GALLERY/FREER GALLERY OF ART

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	61	4,296	1	88	-	248	23	3,126	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	68	4,331	1	94	-	-	23	3,210	-	-
-Base	68	4,400								
FY 1991 Estimate	68	4,668	1	96	-	-	23	3,035	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	68	0	68
11 Personnel Compensation	2,179	51	2,230
12 Personnel Benefits	543	17	560
21 Travel	34	0	34
22 Transportation of Things	14	0	14
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	39	0	39
24 Printing & Reproduction	205	0	205
25 Other Services	371	160	531
26 Supplies & Materials	484	40	524
31 Equipment	440	0	440
Collections Acquisition	91	0	91
Total	4,400	268	4,668

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	68
Program Funds	200

ABSTRACT - The Arthur M. Sackler Gallery, established in 1982 and the Freer Gallery of Art, established in 1906, research, exhibit, acquire, care and manage collections of Asian art in each museum. In addition, the Freer collections contain a collection of American art by artists whose work was greatly influenced by Asian art. These two museums support complimentary programs. In exhibitions, the Freer Gallery cannot lend or borrow collections, but the Sackler Gallery can exhibit its own collections, as well as shows organized by other institutions. In addition, the

Sackler may lend objects from its collections. Collections acquisition for both museums is not duplicative but complementary, providing the fullest possible resources to draw upon for original research and exhibitions about, and preservation of, the cultural heritage of Asia.

For FY 1991, the Arthur M. Sackler Gallery/Freer Gallery of Art requests an increase of $200,000 as no-year funding for reinstallation of the Freer collections in the exhibition galleries following the building renovation currently in progress. The Institution requests that this increase for the reinstallation of the Freer exhibition galleries be available until expended. The Institution requires $68,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

ARTHUR M. SACKLER GALLERY:

PROGRAM - The goal of the Arthur M. Sackler Gallery is to expand knowledge and appreciation of works of art from Asian countries, and of the human and physical contexts from which works of art emerge, through exhibitions, research, publications, and public programs. Toward this end, Dr. Arthur M. Sackler gave to the Nation a collection of almost 1,000 objects in the fields of Chinese, Indian, Southeast Asian, Near Eastern, and Japanese art. This collection now includes Chinese jades spanning a period from Neolithic times (5000-1500 B.C.) into the 19th century; Chinese bronzes from the Shang (ca. 1523-ca. 1028 B.C.) through the Han (206 B.C.-A.D. 220) dynasties; Chinese paintings; Chinese lacquer; Near Eastern ceramics and metalwork; sculpture from Cambodia, India, and Thailand; and Japanese paintings, lacquer, ceramics, and prints.

Research - Research undertaken by both visiting scholars and the Gallery's curatorial and conservation staff provides the basis for exhibitions, publications, and collections acquisitions. In addition, the Sackler disseminates research results through a variety of public programs, including lectures by members of the curatorial staff on subjects of current research. Guest lecturers focus on topics related to Asian art and culture.

Exhibitions, exhibition catalogues, and scholarly papers and articles result from specific research projects. The Gallery's publications program also includes a quarterly magazine, Asian Art, written for general understanding. Produced in cooperation with Oxford University Press, it features color plates and an informative text relating to various research activities, the permanent collection, recent acquisitions, and special exhibitions. Also, the Gallery publishes free leaflets and gallery guides for the public.

Research in the area of conservation concentrates on the lead-isotope ratio analysis of Chinese bronzes in the Sackler and other collections and on the extension of identification methods into the field of organic colorants in paintings.

As a joint effort, the Freer and Sackler received a Scholarly Studies grant to study the ancient Near Eastern metalwork collections in both museums. The Sackler received a Scholarly Studies grant for research on Chang Dai-chien, the 20th-century Chinese artist to be featured in an exhibition at the Sackler in 1992.

Exhibitions - Exhibitions are another major focus of the Sackler Gallery. During the past year, several inaugural exhibitions continued to display portions of the initial Sackler gift, together with other objects on loan from the estate of Dr. Arthur M. Sackler. The inaugural exhibitions that remained during FY 1989 were

"Monsters, Myths, and Minerals," "Temple Sculptures of South and Southeast Asia," and "Chinese Buddhist and Daoist Imagery."

Besides the continuation of these popular inaugural exhibitions, several new exhibitions, mostly organized by the Sackler staff, opened to the public in FY 1989. They included "Recent Japanese Acquisitions," October 1988; "A Jeweler's Eye: Islamic Arts of the Book from the Vever Collection," November 1988; "Photographs of Afghanistan," April 1989; "Timur and the Princely Vision: Persian Art and Culture in the Fifteenth Century," April 1989; "Yani: The Brush of Innocence," June 1989; "The Noble Path: Buddhist Art from South Asia and Tibet," November 1989; "India Along the Ganges: Photographs by Raghubir Singh," December 1989; and "Ancient Chinese Bronzes and Jades," December 1989.

The Sackler will continue to originate and borrow exhibitions drawn from international public and private collections and from the Sackler Gallery collection. Many Sackler-organized exhibitions will travel to other museums and institutions. Future exhibitions include "Yokohama Prints from the Leonhart Collection," "Indonesian Court Arts," "Masterpieces of the Che School of Painting," "Paintings by Chang Dai-chien," "Selections from the Vever Collection," and "Mughal Gardens."

The Sackler plans additional exhibitions on Chinese mirrors, [illegible] bronzes, Chinese lacquer, Chinese garment hooks, Indian paintings from private collections, Sasanian metalwork, Chinese furniture, Near Eastern ceramics, Far Eastern ceramics, and Chinese sculpture. When funded, research catalogues will accompany the exhibitions.

Conservation - The Sackler Gallery must protect and conserve the art objects under its purview. This responsibility includes the objects in the permanent collections, in loan exhibitions held at the Sackler, and in Sackler-organized traveling exhibitions. The Sackler conservation effort includes object research to understand the origins of objects and thereby better develop the proper treatment of them. Expansion of the conservation facilities in the renovated Freer Building will also accommodate the requirements of the Sackler programs. The staff of the conservation laboratory have concentrated on particular items for future exhibitions, such as Buddhist and Tibetan sculpture. The staff also monitors environmental control of Sackler exhibition galleries and collections storage areas. The Freer Gallery of Art section of this narrative discusses the East Asian Painting Conservation Studio, which conserves Sackler collections as well.

Education - The Sackler Gallery attracts a large number of research scholars and has an active program of research fellowships and internships. Recipients work closely with curators on topics related to the collections. A grant from the Rockefeller Foundation established a Residency Program in the Humanities at the Smithsonian Institution. The Institution has awarded two to three postdoctoral appointments in Asian and African art (to the Sackler Gallery and the National Museum of African Art) each year since 1985. The Rockefeller Residency Program differed from existing fellowship programs in that it allowed the fellows to become directly involved in the plans and programs of the museums and to participate in symposia, exhibitions, and publications. Similar scholarly grant programs will advance the research and education programs based on Asian art collections and exhibitions at the Sackler.

The Sackler Gallery is developing an active educational program for local elementary, secondary, college, and university students. Programs allow students at secondary, undergraduate, and graduate levels and visiting researchers to participate in symposia and seminars, at which they come into direct contact with major works of art and distinguished scholars and curators. Topics of such symposia and seminars relate to current exhibitions, the Sackler collections, or some aspect of Asian art and culture.

Education programs during FY 1989 included weekly storytelling for children and adults; children's guides to exhibitions; hands-on experience in the galleries with noncollection items similar to exhibited artwork; workshops for children, adults, and teachers; special tours for specific age groups; films; musical concerts; lectures both in English and an Asian language; and other Asian cultural events. Gallery guides for every exhibition provided information that supplemented exhibition labels.

Educational outreach continued through a program for the elderly and the young. Docents gave illustrated slide lectures to community groups. Previsit education packets sent to schools prior to tours of the Sackler Gallery introduced specific areas of Asian art. Education staff furthered outreach expansion through an Asian-American community study. The "Noble Path" exhibition incorporated ideas that surfaced through the study.

Collections Acquisition - The Sackler Gallery continues to acquire art objects for the permanent collection, that are of central interest to the museum, including the arts of Asia in its broadest terms, from Japan to the Near East. Objects acquired for the collection will be of high quality in terms of aesthetic standards, cultural history, and physical condition. The Sackler Gallery acquires objects by gift, bequest, or purchase, provided that the objects meet established acquisition criteria.

While the Sackler Gallery does not have a Federal base for collections acquisition, the sale of merchandise at the Sackler museum shop provides modest Trust funds for this purpose. In FY 1989, purchases with these Trust funds included four Chinese paintings by Kung Hsien (ca. 1617-89) and a Chinese painting by Wen Zhengming (1470-1559). Gifts to the collection in FY 1989 included an Indian hair ornament of gold and a photograph from Afghanistan. The Sackler received a Chinese painting dated 1890-1900 for the study collection.

FREER GALLERY OF ART:

PROGRAM - The Freer Gallery of Art houses one of the most distinguished collections of Asian art in the world. The collections consist of more than 27,000 works of art from China, Japan, Korea, India, and the Near East and span 5,000 years. Included are paintings, sculpture, Biblical manuscripts, and other objects in stone, wood, lacquer, jade, pottery, porcelain, bronze, gold, and silver. The Peacock Room, by James McNeill Whistler, is part of an outstanding collection of late 19th- to early 20th-century American art that Charles Lang Freer, the Gallery's founder, considered a bridge between the arts of the East and West. The Freer shares with the Sackler Gallery a library of approximately 47,000 volumes relating to the objects in the collections, open to the public for reference.

Although extensive renovations closed the Freer to the public in the fall of 1988, research, conservation, collections management, authentication services, and other such activities continue. During the renovation, collection items are available for study by appointment in the temporary collections storage areas. The Freer will reopen in late 1992, after the completion of the tunnel to the Sackler Gallery.

The unique Asian collections in the Freer Gallery, together with notable holdings of American paintings, have made the museum an increasingly important center for students, scholars, and the public. With the Freer's reopening, museum tours, the Freer lecture series, and all other public programs will be available in an enhanced format as a result of the expanded and improved facilities the renovation makes possible.

Research - The Freer's primary area of focus is research. Freer Gallery research facilities--including the collections, curatorial staff, library, and technical conservation laboratories--form the nucleus of its specialized efforts. Research findings are available to the public through exhibitions, catalogues of exhibitions, articles, object files, free gallery leaflets, and public lectures at the Freer and at other similar institutions. Updating the research files on individual pieces in the collection continues during the renovation, as well as automation of collections records. These files and the collections in storage are available to visiting scholars and students.

Although the results of curatorial research are most visible in the Freer's exhibitions, the Freer also disseminates research results to the public through collections research records, lectures, and published papers and books, activities that continue while the exhibition galleries are closed to the public for renovation. During the renovation period, the Freer also plans to publish books on the Che School, Tryon, Seto-Mino wares, and a revised version of the catalogue, Chinese Figure Painting. Originally published in 1973 and out of print since 1978, this catalogue was the only study in its field. Revision of this text for publication required a comprehensive review of all literature written on the subject during the past 16 years, including scholarly developments based upon the original publication.

Exhibitions - During FY 1990, preparations continue for the 1992 reopening exhibitions which will feature the finest pieces in the Asian and American collections. As part of the planning process, continuing research on Charles Lang Freer and the history of the Freer Gallery will provide significant information for the reopening exhibitions. The complete reinstallation will require a major commitment of resources during the next three years to prepare all 20 galleries and exhibition corridors in time for the Gallery's reopening.

Conservation - In addition to its reputation for conserving and restoring objects, the technical laboratory of the Freer and Sackler galleries is a renowned research facility. For the past several years a primary concern of the laboratory staff was conserving and storing the Freer collections and preparing exhibits for the extensive reinstallation. During renovation, the environmental conditions in the temporary storage areas located in the Freer require continual monitoring by conservators.

Conservation research identified particular organic colorants in paintings and tested Chinese bronzes for lead content to help determine their provenance. Other Freer research examined unusual copper-green pigments on Ukiyo-e paintings, lead-white on Japanese paintings, discoloration of lead-white pigments on Persian paintings particularly in the Vever Collection, pigment samples taken from excavated objects (A.D. 5th-8th centuries) in Korean museums, microscopic paper fibers from very small samples, and metallurgy and properties of high-tin bronzes, including reconstructing the alloy and production methods used in making high-tin bronze mirrors from Aranmula, India. In addition, an analytical project on Chinese Buddhist bronze sculpture (A.D.

3rd-16th centuries) studied the provenance and bronze manufacture methods and how they relate to the history of Chinese bronze metallurgy.

The East Asian Painting Conservation Studio takes a more traditional approach toward conservation of East Asian paintings and screens than do Western conservation laboratories. The Studio uses traditional Japanese techniques, and the staff is considering using Chinese techniques on Chinese paintings. The Studio staff plans to train Americans in this specialized field to alleviate the critical shortage of skilled persons. Only three facilities in the United States currently restore and mount rare Far Eastern paintings and screens, and these facilities concentrate primarily on works for their respective museums.

Collections Acquisitions - In FY 1985, Congress established a Federal funding base for collections acquisition to the Freer Gallery. Recent acquisitions purchased with federal funds include a Japanese lacquer covered cosmetic box with maki-e and gold leaf decoration of the Tokugawa crest and chrysanthemum from Edo period ca. 1837 and an Indian mother-of-pearl plate dated from the Mughal period ca. 1650-1700. Purchases for the collections with FY 1989 Freer nonappropriated Trust funds included a Chinese painting from the Ming dynasty by Shen Chou. Eleven additional purchases with Trust funds are also pending approval before formal accession into the permanent collections. The staff is researching and classifying gifts to the Freer collections, including a Chinese ceramic bottle from the Ming dynasty, a Japanese dish from the Edo period, 25 Thai ceramics, 23 Vietnamese ceramics, and seven other Chinese ceramics.

Education - During FY 1989, the Freer Gallery carried out a wide range of research and scholarly activity that was available to the public through educational programs such as lectures. When the Freer reopens, educational materials available in the exhibition galleries will include a free introductory brochure for the visually impaired, free exhibition leaflets introducing various aspects of the Freer's collections, and docent-led tours. The education staff is developing these educational activities as well as new programs for the reopening.

Programs in place before the renovation will continue after the reopening. These include specific outreach programs that meet the needs of various groups such as the hearing and visually impaired. School and community groups studying specific aspects of Asian art may arrange tours of selected areas of the Freer. Docents will use customized slide sets when speaking to community groups. The education department will send special previsit education packets to schools before tours of the Freer Gallery. The need to expand outreach is a finding of the Asian-American Community Study.

Renovation Project - The Smithsonian initiated a major renovation of the Freer Gallery Building in 1988. The Gallery, closed to the public in the fall of 1988, will remain closed until the completion of the renovation and subsequent reinstallations of selections from the Freer collections in late 1992. The renovation project includes:

-- construction of an underground gallery connecting the Freer and the Sackler to create an additional 3,200 square feet of exhibition space and provide convenient access for visitors and staff who oversee and use both galleries' collections;

-- excavation and replacement of the Freer courtyard to create new space below the courtyard;

-- construction of a passenger elevator from a ground-level lobby on the south side of the building to improve gallery access for mobility-impaired visitors;

-- expansion of space for conservation activities and technical study of Asian and Near Eastern art, from 1,750 to 5,765 square feet;

-- expansion of collections storage space for the Freer by 11,500 square feet, or 70 percent, to accommodate collections that have nearly doubled since the Freer opened in 1923.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the Freer Gallery of Art requests an increase of $200,000 as no-year funding for reinstallation of the Freer collections in the exhibition galleries following the building renovation currently in progress.

The appearance of the Freer's exhibition galleries at the time of the reopening in 1992 is crucial to sustain the favorable public memory of the Freer before the renovation and to generate positive expectations of the future. The reinstallation of the Freer collections in the galleries must achieve the high standard of excellence in quality and content that has distinguished the Freer during its almost 70 years of public service.

The project calls for architectural millwork, the refurbishing of existing exhibition cases (most now more than 60 years old), props and seating, as well as for the construction of new cases and display devices, such as bases and pedestals. The project also requires the preparation and silk-screening of exhibition graphics, including case and wall labels; carpeting in exhibition areas; refurbishing the original grand hall light fixture; graphic illustrations and maps; and materials and supplies to support the installation of 20 galleries and exhibition corridors, totaling more than 25,000 square feet. Of particular concern in the reinstallation plans is increased security against vandalism, a disturbing development in the last year before closing the Freer. While security as a goal is unanimously accepted, there are a variety of solutions, with different aesthetic implications, that will be defined partly by the objects in question and partly by the financial resources available. A major consideration for the Freer is altering some traditional exhibition elements to improve accommodations for visitors with various physical and mental impairments.

Careful planning is essential for exhibit renovation, often requiring scheduling several years in advance for demolition, object selection and preparation, and installation. Because of current restrictions on specific funding, monies come from a variety of sources to pay for exhibit reinstallation. This further delays production. Because of the magnitude of the costs involved in exhibit revitalization and the requirement of multi-year planning, the Gallery requests that this funding ($200,000) for reinstallation of the Freer exhibition galleries remain available until expended. This is unlike the remainder of the salaries and expenses appropriation for this line-item which is a one-year appropriation. The "Introduction" section of this budget contains a further justification for no-year funding. While the Institution expects the reinstallation to cost a total of $3.0 million, the Gallery intends to raise one-half that amount privately. The Institution anticipates that it will request a second installment of funding for this reinstallation in its FY 1992 budget request.

The Freer Gallery of Art is the original national museum of Asian art and was the first Smithsonian museum devoted exclusively to the fine arts. Its reopening after four years will be a very significant event, and support for this project must reflect that significance. A portion of the Freer renovations is a historic restoration, appropriate for a landmark building, and the reinstallation of the public galleries must complement the quality of the restoration.

Exhibitions in the new Sackler Gallery have quickly achieved a reputation for high standards of craftsmanship and imagination, enabling visitors to understand and appreciate the art on display. Financial resources must be sufficient to achieve the same quality at the Freer. With these resources, the Freer will also maintain the national and international reputation in outstanding research and exhibition it has established over more than six decades.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Annual allotments to the Freer Gallery of Art and the Arthur M. Sackler Gallery provide funds to defray the costs of special events associated with the opening of new exhibitions and to cover the travel costs for members of the Freer and Sackler's visiting committees. These funds also support the position of coordinator for special programs for the Freer and Sackler galleries. The proceeds from sales in the Sackler museum shop support the purchase of acquisitions, the publication of exhibition catalogues and gallery guides, the operation of the shop, and the undertaking of special projects.

The Sackler received a Scholarly Studies grant for research on Chang Dai-chien, the 20th-century Chinese artist to be featured in an exhibition at the Sackler in FY 1992.

Restricted Funds - These funds are contributions in the form of grants and gifts from individuals, foundations, organizations, or corporations for specific purposes.

The major portion of the nonappropriated Trust funds for the Freer comes from the Charles Lang Freer bequest, which restricts their use. The funds help finance the Freer's professional curatorial and administrative staff, acquisitions for the collection and library, the maintenance of the Freer's courtyard, the operation of the Freer museum shop, the co-publication of the scholarly journal Ars Orientalis, an annual lecture series, the occasional publication of scholarly research, and other special projects. Funds from the Harold Stern Memorial Endowment support scholarly research in the field of Japanese art. Funds from the Forbes Endowment support research in conservation.

ARCHIVES OF AMERICAN ART

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	16	1,062	-	98	-	52	12	1,023	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate -Base	23 23	1,126 1,149	-	98	-	-	12	1,758	-	-
FY 1991 Estimate	23	1,172	-	98	-	-	12	1,707	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	23	0	23
11 Personnel Compensation	722	19	741
12 Personnel Benefits	121	4	125
21 Travel	22	0	22
22 Transportation of Things	10	0	10
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	25	0	25
24 Printing & Reproduction	29	0	29
25 Other Services	120	0	120
26 Supplies & Materials	24	0	24
31 Equipment	76	0	76
Total	1,149	23	1,172

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	23
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Archives of American Art (AAA), a national research bureau with regional centers in New York, Boston, Detroit, San Francisco, and Los Angeles, is the Nation's largest repository of archival source materials relating to the history of the visual arts in the United States. It holds more than nine million documents, 400,000 photographs, 75,000 works of art on paper, and approximately 3,000 tape-recorded oral and video interviews. The Smithsonian Institution houses original materials in Washington, D.C., with microfilm copies of many available in regional centers and through interlibrary loan across the country. Besides its primary mission of providing research materials for academic scholars, students, curators, collectors, and others studying the history of art, the Archives actively collects and preserves original source materials pertinent to such study. It also sponsors symposia, lectures, and other public programs to encourage research; conducts active membership and education programs; and publishes a quarterly journal.

The Institution requires $23,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - Founded in 1954 as a private institution in Detroit, the Archives of American Art became a bureau of the Smithsonian Institution in 1970. The Archives promotes the study of American art and cultural history by assembling and preserving an ever-expanding collection of letters, diaries, sketchbooks, business records, photographs, drawings, prints, and oral history and video interviews. In making these primary historical records available to researchers and the public, the Archives advances the scholarly study and interpretation of the arts in America.

Research - In FY 1989, some 3,700 faculty members, graduate students, museum curators, Smithsonian Fellows, and free-lance writers used the Archives collections for research, often for extended periods. Eight hundred other scholars across the country borrowed 2,400 rolls of microfilmed collections through interlibrary loans. Staff members presented the results of their own research in several books, articles, and formal papers. Acknowledgments and citations to the Archives and its holdings appeared in more than 200 books, exhibition catalogues, articles, and dissertations published or completed during the year.

Collections Development - Most of the collections acquired by the Archives in 1989 cover the early to mid-20th century. Helen Torr and Arthur Dove's diaries and other papers trace the activities of Mr. Dove, who is one of the best-known early American modernist painters, and an important group of Andrew Dasburg's correspondence includes letters from Louise Bryant, Mabel Dodge, Marsden Hartley, D. H. Lawrence, John Marin, and Georgia O'Keeffe. The Archives supplemented its extensive documentation of the 1913 Armory Show when it borrowed the financial records of the event from the Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden. The treasurer of the artists' society that organized the 1913 exhibition, Elmer MacRae, compiled the original reports, and the Archives will retain microfilm copies of these valuable records.

The Depression and immediate postwar period comprise two major fields of Archives strength. Several new acquisitions have enhanced scholarship in these areas. These acquisitions include: Stuart Davis's material on the Artists' Union magazine Art Front; additions to the already voluminous papers of Marcel Breuer and Joseph Cornell; and Charles Pollock's correspondence, which includes several letters from and many references to his more famous brother Jackson. The records of Christopher Willmarth and an installment of the records of Dimitri Hadzi augment the Archives' materials on contemporary American sculpture.

Papers of artists in other media include those of the photographer Nickolas Muray and the potter Maija Grotell. The Norlyst Gallery files, the extensive records of the prominent art historian and museum director John I. H. Baur, and the papers of the folk art collector Herbert Hemphill cover more art world activities.

The Archives' oral history program, always a fruitful activity, produced taped interviews with artists from an older generation such as Milton Resnick and Herman Cherry and with younger artists such as Lois Dodd, Otto Piene, and Joel Shapiro. An independent scholar, Ruth Bowman, donated a substantial collection of interviews which she conducted in the 1960s. These interviews recorded the observations of a wide range of notable artists, collectors, and museum directors, including the then-Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution, S. Dillon Ripley.

Exhibitions - A small but effective exhibition space in the new Archives' quarters in New York opened at the beginning of FY 1989, with Archives documents commemorating the 75th anniversary of the 1913 Armory Show. The second exhibition at the New York Regional Center showed a selection of new acquisitions including letters, photographs, sketches, cartoons, and printed items from various Archives' collections. As has long been the practice, the Archives also lent documentary material to museum art exhibitions throughout the country, including exhibitions at the Corcoran Gallery, the Art Institute of Chicago, the Pennsylvania Academy of the Fine Arts, the Graduate Theological Union in Berkeley, California, and the Danforth Museum in Framingham, Massachusetts. The American Art/Portrait Gallery Library opened its cases to a display of drawings, sketchbooks, and correspondence from the Oscar Bluemner papers.

Public Education - The quarterly Archives of American Art Journal is the chief means of disseminating information on the Archives' collections. The journal regularly publishes significant documents and oral history interviews, articles, reviews by art historians who use the Archives, and regional office reports on recent acquisitions. In FY 1989, the Smithsonian Institution Press published Reliable Sources, an illustrated book of artists' letters, sketches, and photographs drawn from the Archives' collections. Other works prepared by the staff and published during the year are a guide to Archives of American Art sources on African-American artists, a biographical dictionary of 20th-century Michigan artists, and a monograph on the African-American sculptor James W. Washington, Jr. The Archives' Washington office continued its monthly series of informal seminars on current research projects in art history and American studies.

Conservation and Care of Collections - The Philadelphia-based Conservation Center of Art and Historic Artifacts undertakes the conservation of fragile and deteriorating items for the Archives. Individual pieces treated for preservation in FY 1989 included 19th-century drawings, a lithograph, a volume of sketches by various artists, six photographs, three numbers of Alfred Stieglitz's scarce publication Camera Work, and 28 letters. The Archives' three-year campaign to transfer its card catalogue and other finding aids to a Smithsonian-wide computerized data base made substantial progress in FY 1989 with the entry of detailed descriptive information on nearly one-third of the 5,000 separate record groups.

With funding provided in FY 1989, the Archives hired an archives specialist to organize and manage its registrarial and cataloguing functions. The specialist will provide increased control of the collections, maintain acceptable standards for recording movement and use of the collections, and manage the necessary record keeping. The specialist will also be responsible for developing and maintaining the Archives' automated system to provide control over movement of all collections. This responsibility includes formulating policies and procedures necessary to implement this integrated system and training staff members in the use of the system. When the system is fully operational, Archives' managers will have an accurate and complete picture of the current status of all of the Archives' collections. By fulfilling the registrarial functions, the specialist will enable the Archives to respond more effectively and quickly to research needs and to assure that control of collections meets professional and Institution standards.

NON[illegible]OPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Provided through annual allotments, these funds defray costs associated with special events, supplement travel expenses incurred by the Archives' Board of Trustees, and provide partial support for general operating costs.

Restricted Funds - Fund-raising activities, gifts, foundation and corporation grants, the Board of Trustees, and a membership program generate funds for the Archives. A substantial portion of this income supports the Archives' general operating expenses, its oral history program, and its publications program.

Foundation and corporate grants provide the principal source of support for special projects. The Pew Charitable Trusts funded the Archives' Philadelphia Documentation Project for the final two years. Major grants from the J. Paul Getty Trust and the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation underwrite the costs of the Archives' retrospective cataloguing and automation project, and the Ahmanson and Times Mirror Foundations contribute to the support of the Southern California Research Center. The Henry Luce Foundation, Inc., provided funding for a three-year national collecting effort enabling the Archives to do further collecting work throughout the South, to begin an Asian-American documentation project on the West Coast, and to begin publication of guides to art-related sources for study in Philadelphia and Chicago. Funds from the Brown Foundation, Inc., have made possible the processing of the Walter Pach papers along with a fall 1989 exhibition in New York of selected documents and publication of a guide to the collection. Brown Foundation funds also underwrite the costs of general operations, as does income from the Wellin-Taubman Reserve Fund established in 1986 by the Archives' Board of Trustees.

COOPER-HEWITT MUSEUM

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	28	1,288	18	871	7	1,573	1	1,017	-	9
FY 1990 -Estimate -Base	32 32	1,462 1,488	18	933	7	1,095	1	934	-	-
FY 1991 Estimate	32	1,514	18	940	7	1,116	1	252	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	32	0	32
11 Personnel Compensation	956	23	979
12 Personnel Benefits	112	3	115
21 Travel	4	0	4
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	17	0	17
25 Other Services	297	0	297
26 Supplies & Materials	72	0	72
31 Equipment	30	0	30
Total	1,488	26	1,514

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	26
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Cooper-Hewitt Museum, the National Museum of Design, located in New York City, explores both the processes and the products of design. It examines the influence objects have on daily life--how they shape and are shaped by culture. The design concerns of the Museum are virtually unlimited, encompassing fields as various as urban planning, architecture, industrial design, landscape design, interior design, textiles, fashion, theater arts, advertising, graphic arts, and crafts. The National Museum of Design seeks to encourage "good design" as well as to foster an improved understanding of the design process, to raise the level of discussion in related fields, and to improve the dialogue between audience and designer. It pursues this goal through diverse programs, which include provisions for making the collections available for study, research, and display; educational programs for professionals, graduate students, and the general public; general exhibitions; publications; and conferences keyed to significant design issues.

The Institution requires $26,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The Cooper-Hewitt was originally established as the Museum of the Arts of Decoration of the Cooper Union in 1897 by the Hewitt sisters, granddaughters of Peter Cooper, founder of the Cooper Union for the Advancement of Science and Art. They saw it as a working laboratory--freely available to as broad a public as possible. The collections were acquired by the Smithsonian in their entirety in 1968. In 1972, the Carnegie Corporation donated the historic 1902 mansion, built as the private residence of Andrew Carnegie, and the McAlpin-Miller House, a small neighboring townhouse, to the Smithsonian as the permanent home for the Museum and its collections. The Museum reopened to the public as the Cooper-Hewitt National Museum of Design in October 1976. Today, students, professionals, and the general public use the Museum's collections as guides, inspirations, and references for their own creativity.

During FY 1989 the Institution acquired the Fox House, at 11 East 90th Street, with Smithsonian trust funds. The acquisition of Fox House represents an opportunity for the contiguous expansion of the Cooper-Hewitt facility. It will eventually provide physical space for museum activities and offices and it will house the Master's Degree program. The Museum plans to renovate and expand the adjacent Miller House (9 East 90th Street), which it has owned for a number of years, and these plans will be modified to include Fox House.

Collections - The Museum cares for approximately 170,000 permanent collection items including drawings, prints, wallcoverings, textiles, ceramics, glass, metalwork, jewelry, and related decorative arts from Europe, America, and Asia, spanning 3,000 years. The Museum's specialized library of 50,000 volumes includes more than 5,000 rare books, 3,000 trade catalogues, and subscriptions to 300 periodicals. In FY 1989, the Museum's library served more than 800 outside users, and circulated nearly 3,000 volumes. Cooper-Hewitt also has important industrial design archives, including materials from Henry Dreyfuss, Donald Deskey, Ladislav Sutnar, George Kubler, Therese Bonney, and Gilbert Rohde. Many consider the Museum's holdings among the finest of their kind in the world.

Exhibitions - The Museum presents 10-12 new exhibitions annually, many of which are originated by Cooper-Hewitt staff and consulting curators. These events draw many visitors to the Museum. In FY 1989, attendance totaled 136,424.

In October 1988, the Museum presented two international exhibitions: "The Modern Dutch Poster: The First 50 Years, 1890-1940," organized by Krannert Art Museum, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, and "Erich Mendelsohn: Architectural Drawings," organized and drawn from the collections of the Kunstbibliothek SMPK in Berlin. Opening in November 1988, in celebration of the 300th anniversary of the accession of William and Mary to the throne of England, was "Courts and Colonies: The William and Mary Style in Holland, England, and America," which included more than 250 works of art, architectural prints, drawings, furniture, ceramics, and silver from the late 17th and early 18th centuries. Under the gracious patronage of Her Royal Highness Princess Margriet of the Netherlands, the exhibition was co-organized by Cooper-Hewitt and the Carnegie Museum of Art in Pittsburgh. The international curatorial team consisted of colleagues from the Rijksmuseum in Amsterdam, the Victoria and Albert Museum in London, and staff from Cooper-Hewitt.

Many exhibitions are drawn from the Cooper-Hewitt's permanent collections. In December 1988, the Textile Department organized "Purses, Pockets, Pouches," a survey of textile techniques and materials involved in making purses, pockets, pouches, and portfolios, which included examples of small bags dating from the 17th to the 20th centuries. In January 1989, the Drawings and Prints Department, from its holdings of more than 7,000 American drawings, exhibited 75 drawings, watercolors, and oil sketches spanning the period from the 1830s to the 1930s and including works by such artists as Winslow Homer, Frederic Edwin Church, Thomas Hart Benton, Elihu Vedder, Thomas Moran, William Trost Richards, and William Merritt Chase. "American Drawings: Training the Hand and Eye" is currently traveling under the auspices of the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES) through October 1990.

The Museum also played a particularly significant and highly visible role in the international celebrations of the Bicentennial of the French Revolution with its presentation of another landmark exhibition, "L'Art de Vivre: Decorative Arts and Design in France, 1789-1989," which opened March 30, 1989. This exhibition filled the entire Museum and brought together more than 600 works from public, private, and corporate collections in France and the United States and attracted approximately 70,000 visitors. Some of the most notable visitors to the show included Mme. Mitterrand and Mayor Jacques Chirac of Paris.

"Polished Perfection: The Art of Turned-Wood Bowls," organized by SITES, opened on July 25, 1989. It included 34 works by 21 North American master turners and four early American settlers, originating from the private collection of Edward Jacobson. "Views of Rome: Drawings and Watercolors from the Vatican Library," also organized by SITES, opened at the Museum on August 8, 1989. With 81 drawings ranging from the 16th-19th centuries, it focused on the physical changes of the ancient monuments of Rome and the Campagna over the years, as well as changing artistic viewpoints. Also in August, the Decorative Arts Department presented an exhibition of 19th-century jewelry from the Museum's permanent collection which includes Renaissance Revival designs from Giuliano Castellani.

"The Intimate World of Alexander Calder," opened on October 17, 1989. The exhibition is comprised of personal works by the sculptor for family and friends, such as miniature mobiles and stabiles, household utensils, toys, jewelry, wire sculpture, drawings, and countless other items. Organized by the Musee des Arts Decoratifs in Paris, the exhibition is accompanied by a 400 page book of the same title. In November 1989, the Museum presented an exhibition developed from the Drawings and Prints Department holdings of the work of E. McKnight Kauffer, the 20th-century graphic designer-illustrator particularly noted for his posters featuring British Rail and American Airlines and for his costume and stage designs. In the spring of 1990, the Cooper-Hewitt will present another project involving the collection. "Color, Light, Surface" will focus on textiles of the last decade, particularly innovative works involving surface effects and color, new fibers, dye techniques, and the effects of light on textile surfaces. For presentation in the Museum's garden in the summer of 1990, the Museum plans a "hands-on" exhibition of architect-designed doghouses that addresses design issues for the blind. The project is organized in cooperation with Guiding Eyes for the Blind, Inc. In September 1990, the Museum will present "Drawings by Francesco and Giovanni Carlo Bibiena," an exhibition of work by the renowned 18th-century stage and theater designers, which is organized by the Museo National de Arte Antigua in Lisbon and circulated by Art Services International. Future exhibition plans include the continuing development of an exhibition and publication on "Czech Architecture and Design, 1900-1950," scheduled for 1992. The project is a joint undertaking with the National Museum of Technology in Prague, the National Museum of Decorative Arts, Prague, the Canadian Centre for Architecture, Montreal, and, possibly, a second American venue. Also in 1992, as its contribution to the Columbus Quincentenary celebrations, Cooper-Hewitt will present an exhibition on maps and the age of exploration.

Publications - Cooper-Hewitt publishes exclusively with private funds. In November 1988, the Museum produced Courts and Colonies: The William and Mary Style in Holland, England, and America, a 252-page catalogue that has received critical acclaim. A thematic publication containing nine essays, L'Art de Vivre: Decorative Arts and Design in France, 1789-1989, accompanied the exhibition of the same name. The Museum is in the process of editing both Housing: Symbol, Sites, Structure, a project of the director emeritus which will appear in conjunction with the "Home" project, and The Catalan Spirit: Gaudi and His Contemporaries, inspired by the Museum's FY 1987 exhibition. Also, Cooper-Hewitt received a Federal Design Achievement Award for its 1985 publication Wine: Celebration and Ceremony.

Education - In addition to those visitors who enjoy Cooper-Hewitt exhibitions and publications, the Museum serves a large and diverse group who enroll for lectures, courses, symposia, workshops, and tours organized throughout the year by the Programs Department. These audiences, some of whom receive undergraduate college credit from Parsons/New School for course work completed at the Museum, annually average 5,000-6,000. During FY 1989, programs included:

-- Enid and Lester Morse Lecture Series: "The Palatial Setting: The Architectural Legacy of the Reign of William and Mary" and a major symposium on decorative arts of the period, entitled "The Glorious Revolution in the Decorative Arts during the Reign of William and Mary," which was made possible through the generous support of Mr. and Mrs. Lester Morse;

-- Lillian Brizel Sapirstein Lecture: "19th-Century French Jewelry: Empire to Art Nouveau" and a seminar, sponsored by the Comite Colbert and HG, entitled "A Taste for History: Fashion and Furnishings in 19th-Century France," both offered in conjunction with "L'Art de Vivre";

-- "1939 World's Fair Programs: The Larry Zim Memorial Lecture on the 50th Anniversary of the 1939 World's Fair," held in commemoration of the Larry Zim bequest of 1939 World's Fair materials to the Smithsonian Institution and the Cooper-Hewitt Museum, and a special showing of vintage film footage on the Fair compiled from historic documentary films and rare home movies;

-- programs related to themes in the Museum's collections, including a symposium on magazine design, a colloquium on American ceramics, a lecture on the architecture of Erich Mendelsohn, and a series on French and Italian garden history; and

-- a lecture series on African textiles in celebration of Black History Month.

The Programs Department also organized an architectural study tour to Central Europe and is planning a similarly focused tour of the Soviet Union in 1990.

The Cooper-Hewitt/Parsons School of Design Graduate Studies Program in the History of European Decorative Arts has graduated six classes since its inception in 1982. The Graduate Program is the first academic degree-granting program ever offered by the Smithsonian Institution. Each year, 15-20 students enroll for a two-year period of classwork, field trips, and independent study in various areas of the history of design and decorative arts. Accredited by the New York State Board of Regents, the Program awards a master of arts degree upon completion of course work and research requirements. Graduates have assumed a wide range of professional, curatorial, and educational positions.

Special Events - Much of the Cooper-Hewitt's year-round activity depends substantially upon the support received from approximately 5,500 members, individual or foundation benefactors, and corporate sponsors and patrons. The Museum hosted several special events during FY 1989 at which major corporate patrons celebrated the Cooper-Hewitt's work and their own interest in the design arts. Firms include Air France, Henri Bendel, the Hearst Corporation, AMEV Holdings, Krug, Christofle, and the hotel members of the Comite Colbert. Hermes held a special benefit reception for the Museum's Junior Committee. At the opening reception and ceremonies for "Courts and Colonies," one of the largest events of FY 1989, the Museum was honored by the presence of Her Royal Highness Princess Margriet of the Netherlands, her husband Mr. Pieter Van Vollenhoven, and their son Prince Bernard, as well as the Netherlands Ambassador to the United States, Richard Fein and Mrs. Fein; the Netherlands Ambassador to the United Nations, Adriaan Jacobovits de Szeged and Mrs. Jacobovits de Szeged, Consul General Adrien F. Tieleman and Mrs. Tieleman, and British Counsul General Sir James and Mrs. Mellon. Nearly 2,000 guests attended the gala opening of "L'Art de Vivre," including Mayor Edward I. Koch of New York City; the Ambassador of France, Emmanuel de Margerie and Mrs. de Margerie; Consul General Benoit D'Aboville; designer Philippe Starck, and actress Catherine Deneuve. Of special note was the Garde Republicane, sent to New York by President Francois Mitterrand in celebration of the opening of the American festivities for the Bicentennial of the French Revolution.

Nearly 2,000 members enjoyed the Museum's annual June Garden Party. In a separate event, Mayor Koch delivered the opening remarks for the Museum's single-evening celebration of New York City's 11th annual Museum Mile Festival, at which more than 5,000 New Yorkers toured the Museum. A series of six free musical concerts sustained the festive mood throughout the summer season.

Collections Management - Among the Smithsonian's art museums, Cooper-Hewitt has a tradition of being one of the most active collectors, borrowers, and lenders. In FY 1989, the Museum acquired more than 2,324 items (385 by purchase, 1,937 by gift, and 2 bequests), lent 387 to 42 other museums, and borrowed 1,471 from 177 lenders. The Museum's two conservators treated 380 objects in the same period.

Efforts to refine the collection remain an important part of modern collections management activity at Cooper-Hewitt. During FY 1989, the Museum continued deaccessioning substantial groups of textiles, old master prints donated expressly for eventual sale, and paintings inappropriate to the scope of the collection.

Acquisitions - The most significant purchase of FY 1989 was the Henry and Ludmilla Shapiro Collection of Soviet porcelains. This collection, unique in the United States, comprises more than 250 examples of tablewares and figural porcelains made from the time of the Russian Revolution to the present day. The porcelains are an exceptionally complete survey of propagandistic ceramics made and promoted in the Soviet Union. The Museum acquired this collection with assistance from the

Collections Acquisition Program matched by funds raised by the Decorative Arts Association of the Cooper-Hewitt and a special donation, in the form of a generous discount from the collection's appraised value, from the Shapiros. The Museum also received a gift of the remaining materials in the Donald Deskey Archive, from the designer. The Museum received a portion of the materials as a donation in 1975 while the rest were in the Museum's care on loan. The entire Archive contains nearly 2,400 drawings and blueprints and more than 25 linear feet of documentary artifacts from every aspect of Deskey's career. An exhibition surveying his career, built around materials in the Archive, is in the planning stage.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - The Museum obtains these funds from a variety of sources, including museum shop sales, product development, individual and corporate memberships, admission fees, donations, fund-raising events, and allotments. The allotments support salaries of the director, administrative officer, three curators, registrar, and various staff members and help defray expenses associated with special events such as exhibition openings. Special purpose funds support the Museum's programs, exhibitions, and publications.

Restricted Funds - Designated for specific purposes, these funds derive from grants, bequests, and other donations from individuals, organizations, and corporations. In FY 1989, these funds supported exhibitions such as "Courts and Colonies: The William and Mary Style in Holland, England, and America," "L'Art de Vivre: Decorative Arts and Design in France, 1789-1989," and smaller projects. In FY 1990, funds raised will support the exhibition, "The Intimate World of Alexander Calder" and a future exhibition "Cooper Union Legacy" (working title).

In FY 1988, the Museum received a challenge grant from the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation for a permanent research endowment. The Museum made important progress in FY 1989 in the drive to raise the $400,000 matching funds. Other significant fund-raising accomplishments culminating in FY 1989 included grants from the Shell Oil Company and the Dutch American West-India Foundation for "Courts and Colonies"; the Andy Warhol Foundation for the Visual Arts for "The Intimate World of Alexander Calder"; the Peter Krueger-Christie's Foundation, Inc. for an annual fellowship to a promising scholar; the James Smithson Society for the publication of a new Cooper-Hewitt visitor's brochure; Banco di Santo Spirito, and the American Friends of the Vatican Library for "Views of Rome"; Van Munching and Co. for "The Modern Dutch Poster"; the Helena Rubinstein Foundation for scholarships in the Graduate Program; and numerous other grants and in-kind gifts or donated services.

Government Grants and Contracts - Various government agencies and departments provide these funds for specific program support. The Museum annually seeks funding in varying amounts from the New York State Council on the Arts for exhibition support and other programs.

NATIONAL MUSEUM OF AFRICAN ART

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	49	3,503	1	76	-	278	-	69	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	58	3,610	1	51	-	60	-	48	-	-
-Base	58	3,662								
FY 1991 Estimate	58	3,713	1	61	-	50	-	25	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	58	0	58
11 Personnel Compensation	1,706	41	1,747
12 Personnel Benefits	339	10	349
21 Travel	45	0	45
22 Transportation of Things	86	0	86
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	4	0	4
24 Printing & Reproduction	128	0	128
25 Other Services	763	0	763
26 Supplies & Materials	411	0	411
31 Equipment	50	0	50
Collections Acquisition	130	0	130
Total	3,662	51	3,713

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	51
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The National Museum of African Art (NMAfA) is the only museum in the United States devoted to the collection, preservation, research, exhibition, and interpretation of the visual arts of sub-Saharan Africa. Founded in 1964 as a private nonprofit institution, the Museum became a bureau of the Smithsonian Institution in August 1979 following the enactment of Public Law 95-414. In December 1986, the Museum moved from its original Capitol Hill location to its new facilities on the Mall as a part of the Quadrangle Complex, which opened to the public in September 1987.

The Institution requires $51,000 for necessary pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - NMAfA endeavors to instill an appreciation and understanding of the diverse cultures in Africa south of the Sahara. Although the Museum's primary emphasis is on the traditional cultures of the sub-Saharan region, it also studies and exhibits the ancient and contemporary arts of the entire continent. The Museum develops and presents a variety of interpretive programs including exhibitions, lectures, gallery tours, classes, workshops, audio-visual presentations, and publications. The aesthetics of traditional African art are part of every program, and the Museum actively cooperates and coordinates its activities with those organizations and institutions whose purposes are complementary.

Research - The Museum's program of scholarly publications complements its intensive program of exhibitions. In FY 1989, the Museum published the catalogue Foreheads of the Dead: An Anthropological View of Kalabari Ancestral Screens by Dr. Nigel Barley, curator at the British Museum, to accompany the exhibition "Kalabari Ancestral Screens: Levels of Meaning." The Museum's curators authored a 20-page color brochure, which was available in the exhibition gallery. During the same year, Dr. Herbert Cole, recent Rockefeller Fellow in residence at the Museum, completed Icons: Ideals and Power in the Art of Africa, a book that accompanies the exhibition of the same name, which opened in October 1989. The book, which includes photographs of all the exhibited works as well as field photography of art in Africa, examines five persistent iconographical themes in the history of African art.

Several important collection-related research projects currently in progress will result in publications and exhibitions. For example, archival and oral history research on the life and works of the Yoruba master carver Olowe of Ise. This research, to be published in the first monograph ever devoted to a traditional African artist, has as its basis a major Olowe sculpture donated to the permanent collection. In addition, the first major publication devoted to the Museum's permanent sculpture collection is now in the research stage. Members of the research staff will study, identify, and place on exhibition an extraordinary collection of 85 ceramic vessels from Central Africa. They will also determine the origins and uses of a group of utilitarian objects, including containers, stools, headrests, and pipes primarily from East and Southern Africa, and will place them on exhibition.

In June 1989, the Museum hosted the Arts Council of the African Studies Association's Eighth Triennial Symposium on African Art, the most important regular meeting of African art studies specialists worldwide. More than 250 national and international scholars and specialists took part in more than 100 scholarly presentations. The Museum made abstracts of selected papers available to the participants. A program of films on African art accompanied the symposium. Funding from the Arts Council of the African Studies Association and the National Museum of Natural History augmented NMAfA staff support and a special grant to the National Museum of African Art from the Shell Companies Foundation in support of this endeavor.

The Eliot Elisofon Archives, a major research component of the National Museum of African Art, is one of the world's largest photographic archives on African art, cultural history, and environment. Its holdings have grown to more than 140 collections consisting of approximately 200,000 color slides, 78,000 black-and-white photographs, and more than 140,000 feet of motion picture film and video tape.

Among the Archives' most important acquisitions during FY 1989 were 40 cartes de visites and 33 cabinet cards of Senegalese peoples, published by Bonnevide, ca. 1880; an album of 52 postcards of Sierra Leone, ca. 1900-1920; 143 color slides of Ethiopian art and archeological sites, 13th-18th centuries; 326 color slides of art and field images from Ethiopia, the Sudan, and the Niger River; 56 black-and-white prints of the William Brill African Art Collection; and 112 black-and-white copy prints of African art from private collections transferred from the National Gallery of Art to the study file of the Archives.

International scholars and museum staff continue to make extensive use of the Museum's archival holdings. In FY 1989, for example, Archives staff processed 4,538 images in response to requests for slides and prints and also provided research and reference service for exhibitions and publications.

Library - The National Museum of African Art Branch of the Smithsonian Institution Libraries (SIL) system, one of the major African art library collections in the world, provides reference and research support not only for museum staff but for national and international scholars, including those from Africa. As a result of a major acquisitions program from 1985 to 1988, the collection now exceeds 20,000 volumes. The Library continues to develop its collection to serve the expanding research needs of the Museum and the growing number of external scholars and students who make frequent and extended use of library materials through on-site visits and interlibrary loan. The Library is a major contributor in the field of African art bibliography through its new biennial publication, The Arts of Africa: An Annotated Bibliography (Crossroads Press), the first volume of which will appear in 1990. The Library also continues an active outreach program through the publication and distribution of the monthly Library Acquisition List to about 700 individuals and institutions worldwide.

Conservation - In the area of ethnographic conservation, the National Museum of African Art has a research facility that allows conservators and resident conservation interns and fellows to contribute to both fundamental and applied research on the materials of ethnographic objects. Staff conservators not only treat objects in the permanent collection but also examine and conserve objects on loan to the Museum. In addition to the 90 objects examined during FY 1989, conservation staff also developed prototype packing techniques for a unique and extremely fragile group of Kalabari (Nigeria) ancestral screens on loan from the British Museum.

Current and future research projects include:

-- identification of corrosion processes on West African ironwork to determine appropriate conservation treatment;

-- technical analysis of the Museum's collection of Benin (Nigeria) copper alloy objects in cooperation with the Smithsonian Conservation Analytical Laboratory;

-- research on a self-contained dehumidification system to permanently reduce the relative humidity in metals storage areas and so arrest electrolyte corrosion;

-- examination and radiography of an outstanding Sapi-Portuguese ivory saltcellar, on loan to the Museum, to determine if there has been restoration.

Exhibitions - In the spring of 1989, the Museum opened three exhibitions: "Gold of Africa: Jewelry and Ornaments from Ghana, Cote d'Ivoire, Mali, and Senegal," an important collection of West African gold objects from the Barbier Mueller Museum, Geneva, Switzerland; "Sounding Forms: African Musical Instruments," a major international loan exhibition organized and circulated by the American Federation of Arts; and "The Essential Gourd," an exhibition organized by the UCLA Museum of Cultural History. The Pepsi-Cola Company provided generous support for an extensive public relations campaign and the opening reception for both "Gold of Africa" and "Sounding Forms."

The Museum's FY 1990 exhibition schedule opened in late October 1989 with a major loan exhibition, "Icons: Ideals and Power in the Art of Africa." The exhibition is guest curated by Dr. Herbert Cole, professor of art history at the University of California at Santa Barbara and 1988 Rockefeller Fellow in Residence at the Museum. An exhibition of photographs by Bernard Plossu, "The African Desert," opened in November 1989. "Yoruba: Nine Hundred Years of African Art and Thought," organized by the Center for African Art will follow.

Future exhibitions will include the installation of an extraordinary collection of 85 ceramic vessels from Central Africa and a group of utilitarian objects including containers, stools, headrests, and pipes primarily from East and Southern Africa. Both collections are important recent additions to the Museum's permanent collection. Also for FY 1991, the Museum is planning "African Reflections: Art from Northeastern Zaire," organized by the American Museum of Natural History, New York and "Portraiture: Sierra Leone Paramount Chiefs," photographs by Vera Viditz Ward, originated by the Museum.

Development of Collections - The Museum continues to develop its collections by acquiring works of art of outstanding aesthetic quality. An active and continuing acquisitions program, through purchase and gift, remains one of the Museum's highest priorities. The collection is the basis for exhibitions, public programs, and research.

In FY 1989, noteworthy gifts included a rare Yoruba palace door carved by Olowe of Ise (Nigeria), a Tiv chair, a Bassa mask (Liberia), a rare Kongo cast copper bracelet (Zaire), and an East African gourd with a figurative stopper. Through purchase, the Museum acquired a Chamba standing male figure (Nigeria), a Kwere gourd with a seated female figure (Zambia), and 15 utilitarian objects primarily from East and Southern Africa. A grant from the James Smithson Society made possible the acquisition of a collection of 75 utilitarian objects primarily from East and Southern Africa. With funds provided by the Collections Acquisition Program of the Board of Regents, the Museum acquired a major collection of 85 ceramic vessels from Central Africa. These important works are a major addition to the national collection of African art that the Museum is selectively building.

Education - The National Museum of African Art develops and presents a variety of programs to increase public awareness and understanding of African art. Interpretive programs such as lectures, films, gallery talks, and workshops supplement an active exhibition schedule. These programs offer a range of opportunities and incentives for learning about Africa and its artistic heritage. During FY 1989, the Museum offered more than 1,200 public programs, serving more than 40,000 visitors. An additional 3,000 individuals in senior care centers and hospitals participated in the Museum's various outreach programs. Through the Museum's film lending program, videotapes on African art reached an estimated audience of more than 6,000 individuals.

In FY 1989, the Museum hosted a reception for the National Art Educator's Conference and gave teacher workshops to more than 300 local educators. The Museum's education staff participated in the D.C. Public Schools Chapter 1 Museum Project by offering a structured series of programs on African art and culture to elementary classes from McGogney Elementary School and Green Elementary School. In conjunction with the D.C. Chapter of the Links, the education staff developed a series of gallery discussions, workshops, films, and slide programs for female high school students. The Museum also continues to sponsor classes and lectures on African art each year in conjunction with other Smithsonian programs, universities, and outside organizations.

The Museum's docent training program ensures that knowledgeable volunteer guides are available to conduct tours and other educational programs. To serve the thousands of visitors who participate in docent-led gallery tours, the Museum recruited and trained 40 new docents in FY 1989. The active docent corps now numbers nearly 100.

In its continuing effort to assure that the Museum's education programs successfully reach the broadest possible audience, the Museum plans to evaluate program quality during FY 1990. Also in FY 1990, the Museum's pretour materials for teachers will include background on African geography, history, culture, and contemporary art in addition to information on specific art programs. These improvements come in response to requests from teachers, docents, and museum staff, who find that visiting students understand African art better if they have a basic knowledge of the continent and its people before they arrive at the Museum.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These funds come from the Museum's share of net proceeds from the museum shop, courses conducted in cooperation with Washington metropolitan area public education institutions, and allotments. NMAfA uses these funds to provide additional support for the Museum's education and collections acquisition programs, exhibition openings, publications, and travel costs associated with meetings of the Museum's commission. In FY 1990, an allotment will also support the salary costs of one employee. In FY 1989, a grant from the James Smithson Society made possible the acquisition of an important group of 75 utilitarian objects, including containers, stools, headrests, and pipes, primarily from East and Southern Africa. Funds from the Smithsonian's Collections Acquisition Program allowed the Museum to purchase 85 ceramic vessels from Central Africa.

Restricted Funds - Individuals, foundations, organizations, and corporations contribute these funds in the form of grants and gifts for specific purposes. Also, the Museum receives income from a collections acquisition endowment established in FY 1988. A generous pledge over a five-year period, begun in 1988, augments the Museum's federal publication funds. A grant from the Women's Committee of the Smithsonian National Associates Program enabled the Museum to acquire the videotape series, Things Fall Apart, based on a novel by the celebrated Nigerian author Chinua Achebe, for its public education program on the Igbo people of southeastern Nigeria. A contribution from a private donor provided direct support for special events associated with the "Gold of Africa" exhibition.

ANACOSTIA MUSEUM

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	14	905	1	29	-	24	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate -Base	20 20	1,002 1,038	1	47	-	-	-	-	-	-
FY 1991 Estimate	20	1,073	1	57	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	20	0	20
11 Personnel Compensation	590	30	620
12 Personnel Benefits	91	5	96
21 Travel	5	0	5
22 Transportation of Things	4	0	4
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	2	0	2
24 Printing & Reproduction	58	0	58
25 Other Services	226	0	226
26 Supplies & Materials	47	0	47
31 Equipment	15	0	15
Total	1,038	35	1,073

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	35
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - Located at Fort Stanton Park in southeast Washington, D.C., approximately six miles from the Mall, the Anacostia Museum is a national resource on African-American history and culture in America. The Museum's exhibitions, scholarly and applied research, historical documentation, and interpretive and educational programs offer scholars and the public the opportunity to study the history and culture of black America from a unique, multi-ethnic perspective. The Smithsonian Institution does not seek any additional FY 1990 programmatic increases for the

Anacostia Museum. The Institution requires $35,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The Anacostia Museum is a national prototype for scholarly and applied research, historical documentation, exhibitions, and educational programs that interpret for the public the experiences of African Americans and their contributions to science, history, and the arts. The Anacostia Museum collaborates with other Smithsonian museums and programs, when possible, to conduct research and develop exhibitions on subjects related to African-American history and culture.

Established in 1967 as a cultural resource for the people of Anacostia, the Museum has developed more broadly into a museum on African-American history and culture. Today it is a valuable source of materials on African-American history, working with other museums and research institutions, universities, and archives throughout the United States to enhance the awareness and appreciation of the historical and cultural contributions of African Americans to American society. The Museum has developed innovative ways for introducing nontraditional museum audiences to the worlds of science, history, and the arts. The Museum is an active member in several professional museum associations including the American Association of Museums and the African American Museums Association.

Research - Since its founding in 1967, the Anacostia Museum has documented the history and culture of African Americans and their significant contributions to the heritage of this nation. During the past few years, the Museum has strengthened its research capabilities and expanded its exhibition program.

A new registrar position will allow the Museum to strengthen the research department's curatorial functions. The registrar will coordinate loan requests, examine artifacts, and supervise the handling, mounting, and storage of artifacts. In addition, the registrar will catalogue the Museum's growing permanent collection and serve as liaison between research department historians and design and production department staff.

As a result of an agreement between the Museum and the Smithsonian Institution Libraries in May 1989, the responsibility for the administration of the Anacostia Museum's library collection has transferred to the Libraries. The incorporation of this collection, which consists of approximately 1,500 volumes including serial runs and sets of encyclopedias, into the SI Libraries' system, greatly enhances the Museum's research capabilities by giving it access to SIL's personnel recruitment, training, preservation and cataloging services. As part of this transfer of responsibility, the librarian position approved for Anacostia in the FY 1989 budget has been transferred to the Libraries.

During FY 1989, the Museum conducted research on two exhibitions scheduled for FY 1990 and FY 1992:

-- "P. H. Polk: The Man and His Work," scheduled to open in late FY 1990, will feature Prentice H. Polk's photographic depiction of 20th-century southern folklife. It will include vintage and signed prints from the P. H. Polk estate, Tuskegee University archives, and private lenders and galleries. Born in 1898, Polk was a photographer whose documentation of southern folklife spanned more than half a century and gained national recognition during the last decade of his life. In addition to Polk's photographs, videotape excerpts of television interviews with Polk conducted by NBC, CBS, and Metro Media News will allow visitors to learn more about the man himself as well as his work. Louise D. Hutchinson, former director of research at the Anacostia Museum, is the guest curator.

-- "To Achieve These Rights: The African-American Struggle for Equal Rights in the District of Columbia, 1791-1991" (working title) is scheduled to open early in FY 1992. Commemorating the bicentennial of the District of Columbia, the exhibition will examine, from a legal history perspective, the struggle by African Americans to secure equal rights in the Nation's Capital. It will focus on how the laws of Congress and the District have affected African Americans and how African Americans have sought to change the laws.

Collections Management - During FY 1989, the Museum completed its collections management policy and sent it forward for the Institution's review. Institutional endorsement of this policy is an essential prerequisite for the establishment of a permanent Anacostia collection. Also in FY 1989, the Museum completed an inventory of its current collection of 5,000 valuable books, letters, photographs, and artworks.

Exhibitions at the Museum - The Anacostia Museum presented "Inspiration: 1961-1989," a retrospective showing of art created by 35 members of the District of Columbia Art Association (DCAA), from January to March 1989. It included such well-known and respected African-American artists as Richard Dempsey, Lois Mailou Jones, Alma Thomas, and James Wells. Representing a wide range of visual expression, the 62 works in the exhibition displayed media such as acrylic, oil, colored pencil, collage, watercolor, pen and ink, and mixed media on plywood and copper. A catalogue chronicling DCAA's history accompanied the exhibit.

"The Real McCoy: African-American Invention and Innovation, 1619-1930," which opened in the summer of 1989, has earned widespread media coverage and an enthusiastic reception from visitors. It examines the synthesis of African, native-American, and European technologies during the early colonial period. It also studies the impact of slavery on African-American invention and the achievements of 19th- and 20th-century African-American inventors. During three years of research, the exhibition's curator had located more than 150 artifacts in many states, including Alabama, California, Hawaii, Massachusetts, Michigan, and Ohio. Highlights of the exhibition include:

-- archeological artifacts illustrating African technological traditions in 17th-century America;

-- 18th-century woodworking tools by Cesar Chelor, the first identified African-American toolmaker;

-- patent models submitted to the U.S. Patent Office by African-American inventors;

-- manufactured goods by innovative African-American entrepreneurs;

-- prototypes of the modern gas mask and traffic signal invented by Garrett Morgan.

A catalogue accompanies the exhibit. The Museum recently produced an interactive video on inventiveness and problem-solving geared toward young African-American visitors as a complement to the exhibit. Distribution of the video to schools, community groups, and other institutions will expand the reach of the exhibit's experience.

Traveling Exhibitions - The Anacostia Museum has produced several traveling exhibitions related to the history, culture, and achievements of African-Americans. These include "Out of Africa"; "The Frederick Douglas Years"; "Black Women: Achievements Against the Odds"; and "Mary McLeod Bethune and Roosevelt's 'Black Cabinet'." These traveling exhibitions, circulated by the Museum and by the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES), allow the Museum to reach a diverse national audience. SITES' brochure, "Black History and Ethnic Studies Exhibitions from the Smithsonian Institution," highlights 16 SITES exhibitions currently available for travel, including "Black Women" and "Out of Africa," that are of particular interest to institutions looking for traveling exhibitions in these fields.

"Black Women: Achievements Against the Odds" profiles the lives, careers, and accomplishments of 200 African-American women. Among them are Madame C. J. Walker, America's first African-American millionaire; Edomonia Lewis, one of the first African-American female artists to gain international recognition; civil rights activist Rosa Parks; performer Bessie Smith; and former congresswoman Barbara Jordan.

"Out of Africa" documents the early chapters of African-American history. It addresses the trans-Atlantic slave trade, slave life in the American colonies, the abolition movement, and colonization efforts by free African-Americans in West Africa.

SITES has selected two additional Anacostia Museum exhibitions for its program: "The Real McCoy" and "Climbing Jacob's Ladder: The Rise of Black Churches in Eastern American Cities, 1740-1877." Several institutions and organizations, including the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and the U.S. Patent Model Foundation, have already expressed interest in a traveling version of "The Real McCoy." "Climbing Jacob's Ladder" will go on tour as early as April 1990. The Museum is currently redesigning three SITES exhibitions--"Out of Africa," "The Frederick Douglass Years," and "Mary McLeod Bethune and Roosevelt's 'Black Cabinet'"--in lightweight formats that will be suitable for community centers, schools, and other nontraditional sites for Smithsonian exhibits.

Public Education and Orientation - During FY 1989, the Anacostia Museum presented a variety of public programs to complement "Inspiration: 1961-1989." Exhibiting artists participated in the show, helped to plan programs, served as panelists, conducted tours, and presented demonstrations that ranged from etching to portrait paintings.

FY 1989 public programs for "The Real McCoy" included sessions during which visitors and local inventors explored the process of inventing, patenting, and marketing. Visitors also learned more about historical inventors and innovators through films, videos, lectures, workshops, and seminars. Programs included:

-- "So You Want to be an Inventor," a seminar for adults describing the patent process as well as the trials, tribulations, and pitfalls of being an inventor;

-- "Inventors for a Day," a workshop led by the education department staff at which children, assisted by their parents, developed their own inventions and innovations;

- -- teacher workshops and seminars that suggested strategies for teaching about African-American inventors, creativity, and the patent process;
- -- films and videos on Dr. George Washington Carver, Madame C. J. Walker, and Benjamin Banneker.

Lunch Box Forums at the Museum included lectures by Frank O. Price, inventor of the game "Quarterback Draw Football," and Cortland O. Dugger, who developed barium magnesium aluminate, also known as Duggerite. Mr. Dugger explained his continuing work with electromagnetic conductors. The Museum also presented the forum, "A New View: Black Women as Artists."

The Friends for the Preservation of Afro-American Culture, organized by Anacostia's education program in 1988, draws participants from the Washington metropolitan area interested in preserving African-American culture. Guest speakers at the monthly sessions have included Karen Jefferson, curator of manuscripts at Howard University's Moorland-Spingarn Research Center; James Walker, associate director of the Sumner School Museum and Archives; and Louise D. Hutchinson, former director of the Museum's research department.

During the summer of 1989, one hundred children from throughout the Washington metropolitan area attended the popular Aerospace Workshop, sponsored jointly by the Museum and the National Air and Space Museum (NASM). Supported by a grant from the Smithsonian Educational Outreach Program, the workshop's unique curriculum taught children to build and fly kites and hot air balloons. They also learned about African-American contributions to aviation and space and visited NASM and the Goddard Space Flight Center.

On June 19, 1989, the Museum sponsored a Juneteenth celebration to commemorate the day Texas slaves received formal notification of their freedom--two and one-half years after the fact. Events included tours of "The Real McCoy" and demonstrations of quilting, doll making, cartooning, tie dyeing, and braiding. Visitors enjoyed entertainment ranging from Texas-style blues and jazz to gospel music, poetry, storytelling, and African drumming and dancing. The Fort Stanton Civic Association, officers from the D.C. Police Department's Seventh District, the D.C. Recreation Department, several Smithsonian offices, and a citizen advisory committee assisted the Museum in the celebration.

Future Development - The Smithsonian is committed to the continued existence and growth of Anacostia Museum, which is unique among all other museums in the Institutional complex for its close ties with the community it serves. In a report last year directed to the House Subcommittee on Appropriations, the Secretary states:

> The Anacostia Museum has a distinctive history and purpose, and is not a facility that should be thought of as disappearing if and when a National Museum of African American History and Culture comes into existence in central Washington. ...it should be emphasized that it has played a strategic part in the founding of the African American museum movement. Moreover, the conception underlying it has always been that it would maintain strong ties to the Anacostia community. While it is not, and in that location cannot become, a substitute for a new national museum, its future also cannot be completely dependent on the latter.

Careful attention is being paid to the particular needs of the Museum, and no action on Anacostia is being delayed until larger issues involving a greater African American presence on the Mall can be resolved. The most pressing need is identifying new leadership for the Museum, which is essential for its future development. A search committee, that will consist of prominent individuals with knowledge of various African American communities as well as museum operations, is being assembled, and a date for its first meeting has been determined. To ensure overlap with larger issues, two members of the search committee--one on Anacostia's staff and the other from outside the Institution--will also serve on the working committee that is being established for the African American Presence on the Mall Project. Although the Institution is committed to their separateness, it is equally committed to forging bridges that will ensure effective communication between Anacostia and the Project as they both develop and evolve according to their own timetables and identities.

Since the death of John Kinard, the Museum has been undergoing a process of necessary stabilization and reassessment. Its internal organization is being studied by staff for more effective operating procedures, and its mission is being rethought and reaffirmed with discussions involving the Museum, its Board, and central Smithsonian administration. Last December the entire Museum staff discussed its mission and future with the Secretary. The Museum's Board has been meeting on a more frequent basis than it has in the past, is studying other Smithsonian boards, and is reconsidering its own definition and function within the Museum.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - An annual allotment supports the salary and benefit costs of an exhibit specialist. During FY 1989, the exhibit specialist completed new exhibit cases and other display materials for "The Real McCoy." In FY 1990, the exhibit specialist will build and finish all necessary exhibit components for the P. H. Polk exhibition. He also will construct special packing crates for traveling exhibitions.

Additional funds derived from donations and exhibition rentals purchase supplies and materials to support the Anacostia Museum's programs.

Restricted Funds - These are gifts that organizations and individuals have designated to support specific Anacostia Museum programs.

CONSERVATION ANALYTICAL LABORATORY

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	39	2,526	-	-	-	36	-	7	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	42	2,551	-	-	-	50	-	-	-	-
-Base	42	2,600			-					
FY 1991 Estimate	42	2,648	-	-	-	50	-	-	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	42	0	42
11 Personnel Compensation	1,599	39	1,638
12 Personnel Benefits	291	9	300
21 Travel	55	0	55
25 Other Services	400	0	400
26 Supplies & Materials	120	0	120
31 Equipment	135	0	135
Total	2,600	48	2,648

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	48
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Conservation Analytical Laboratory (CAL) located at the Museum Support Center in Suitland, Maryland, is the Smithsonian's specialized research facility for the conservation and technical study of museum objects. CAL helps the Smithsonian and other museums in the study, preservation, and conservation of objects of artistic, scientific, cultural, and historical importance. CAL staff examines the conservation-related properties of these materials, extracts historical information from their technical record, and improves conservation treatment technology. Staff conservators apply the knowledge gained from scientific research directly to the actual treatment of objects. Experience with a wide range of materials and expertise in analytical and technological studies enables CAL to engage successfully in a spectrum of interactive and collaborative research with anthropologists and art historians. The diversity and the wide variety in the state of preservation of objects in the National Collections provide the overview needed to define directions in conservation research. CAL also conducts a conservation training program that includes basic and advanced conservation training, supports and organizes workshops and seminars, and disseminates the latest knowledge in the field of conservation and cultural materials research to museums and research professionals throughout the United States and the world. The Institution is not seeking additional funds for FY 1991 programmatic increases for the Conservation Analytical Laboratory. The Institution requires $48,000 for necessary pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - Archaeometry - CAL scientists develop or apply methods of chemical and physical analyses of museum objects and related materials and integrate the results of these analyses with archeological, anthropological, or art historical data on the objects and materials. These analyses provide data concerning materials, dates, provenances, attributions, and historical technologies that, in combination with contextual information and typological and stylistic analyses, help answer questions on the history of these objects and the cultures from which they derived.

During FY 1989, CAL scientists, in collaboration with scholars representing institutions from all over the world, engaged in several archeological projects involving both the Old and the New World. Using CAL's facilities for neutron activation analysis at the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), scientists analyzed ceramic artifacts and clay sealings and tablets from the sites of Tell Leilan in Syria and Tepe Gawra, Nineveh, Arpachiyah, and Tell Brak in Northern Mesopotamia as part of a study of settlement trends and the emergence of social complexity. Using the same analytical technologies, scientists analyzed 16th-century Spanish majolica samples excavated by collaborating Spanish archaeologists at kiln sites in Seville. This work is part of a project that examines the supply of Spanish colonial sites in the New World. In collaboration with other United States universities and museums, CAL researchers expanded the analytical work on archeological native-American ceramic artifacts to evaluate historical, social, and economical relationships among various native-American groups.

The lead isotope spectrometry program focused on early Bronze Age tin sources in Anatolia. Analyzing samples from an ancient mine in the Taurus Mountains and from archeological artifacts from that region, CAL researchers found evidence that the mine was a source of tin during this period. As part of a collaborative agreement with researchers at the National Research Institute for Cultural Properties in Tokyo, CAL made preparations for the exchange and shared use of lead isotopic analytical data. Within the framework of the same agreement, researchers initiated a joint research project on the technological development of Jomon ware, a prehistoric pottery from Japan. Other examples of ceramic technology research include work on prehistoric figurines from the Dolne Vestonice site in Czechoslovakia.

Using neutron activated autoradiography along with more conventional methods of examination, CAL's research in art history focused on the work of the 19th-century American artist Albert P. Ryder. CAL staff, in collaboration with curatorial and conservation staff at the National Museum of American Art examined nine paintings by this artist as part of the scholarly preparations for a special exhibit of his work planned for 1990.

Conservation Science - CAL's conservation science program pursues research in the chemical and physical deterioration processes of materials in museum collections and the rates that affect these processes. By specific Smithsonian requests, CAL scientists perform chemical, physical, and other technical analyses for conservators and curators Institution-wide.

In a cooperative program with the National Gallery of Art and the Canadian Conservation Institute, CAL scientists examined the mechanical effects of temperature, relative humidity, shock and vibration on paintings in transit. The results will be discussed at an international conference on art in transit at the Tate Gallery in London in 1991.

CAL scientists implemented a research program to study the effects of cleaning solvents on oil paint layers. In order to prepare paint standards for this research, CAL scientists and conservators examined the historical evidence for various methods of oil extraction and purification and obtained adequate supplies of appropriately treated oils and traditional pigments.

CAL researchers examined large numbers of historical wet collodion glass negatives to systematically characterize manufacturing techniques and to identify materials. This work precedes characterizing the deterioration processes of these plates. It will lead to recommendations for conservation treatment, printing, exhibition, storage, and handling of these materials.

In a new biogeochemistry program, CAL scientists studied lactating and nursing habits in a hunter-gatherer society by applying isotope spectrometry to individual amino acids derived from protein extracted from archeological human bone. The study of ancient disease patterns by identifying specific antibodies in archeological skeletal material continued.

Researchers concerned with the characterization and kinetics of polymer degradation brought the research on the aging of cellulose into a second stage and evaluated mildly accelerated aging conditions for their appropriateness in testing the long-term behavior of cellulosic materials. A new project in this area addresses the urgent need for research into the degradation of modern polymeric materials, which have been used in the manufacture of many artistic and historic objects collected over the last century.

Conservation Technology: Research and Treatment - CAL conservators pursue a variety of projects aimed at the development, improvement, and testing of treatment technology. They also provide technical advice and assistance to Smithsonian bureaus with problems requiring their special expertise.

Besides being involved in research of solvent action on paint films, CAL's painting conservators developed innovative preparation techniques for cross-sections and thin-sections from paintings. This technique allows more economical use of microscopical samples for examination and analysis. The conservators provided treatment assistance to the National Air and Space Museum (NASM), the Cooper-Hewitt Museum, and the National Museum of American History (NMAH), including the study and treatment of Thomas P. Dewing's paintings that adorn the 100,000th Steinway piano.

Paper conservators continued evaluating the effects of treatments that involve washing in various solvents, including water, and drying under various conditions on the optical, chemical, and mechanical properties of paper. This type of work also included coated papers, which by their very nature present special problems. Paper conservators assisted the Smithsonian Institution Archives by surveying collections of watercolors, paintings on paper, and drawings. Similarly, they surveyed collections of botanical drawings and gouache paintings on photographs in the National Museum of Natural History (NMNH). Conservators also provided treatment assistance to the National Museum of American Art (NMAA) and NMAH.

Research in textile conservation included developing protocols for the use of modern synthetic dyes to match historic natural dyes for restoration purposes and the effects of pesticides on the lightfastness of textile dyes. Assistance to other bureaus included treatment of a 30-foot parabolic reflector for NASM and development of a method for removing pencil marks from a color field painting for NMAA. In an international assistance project made possible through funding by the Asian Cultural Council, CAL provided expert advice in situ for museums in Singapore, Jakarta, and Manila.

CAL's objects conservators investigated the effectiveness and appropriateness of various consolidants for the mechanical strengthening of fragile archeological plasters. Another research project examines the historical use of zinc as a sculpture medium. The conservators surveyed objects in Jakarta in preparation for the "Java Seas" exhibition at NMNH and performed treatments for the Anacostia Museum and the Arts and Industries Building. One objects conservator provided on-site conservation and training assistance for the excavation at Harappa, Pakistan.

The research interests of CAL's furniture conservators centered on characterizing historic furniture finishes and the abrasiveness of various packing materials to furniture finishes. Treatment assistance was provided to the Cooper-Hewitt Museum and NMAH.

Conservation Training - CAL offers a variety of training opportunities in conservation at different levels of expertise and experience. The graduate-level furniture conservation training program finished its third year, with the first class completing its course work. The students of this class now serve a one year internship at various museums as a last requirement before graduation. Meanwhile, CAL selected seven new students from a large number of applicants to form the second class, which started in late FY 1989.

In the second year of the joint CAL - Johns Hopkins University program for graduate training of conservation scientists, CAL staff organized and taught two semester courses on the properties of inorganic materials in museum objects and on the principles and practices of conservation. The three students enrolled in the program have selected research topics for their doctoral theses: the degradation of silk, the nondestructive detection of interior defects in wooden artifacts, and the deterioration of archeological glass. On a CAL postdoctoral fellowship in conservation science, a scientist is studying the nature of coatings on Benin bronzes in the National Museum of African Art (NMAfA) collections and their implications for the conservation of these objects.

CAL awarded six recent graduates from academic conservation training programs postgraduate internships in the Smithsonian; two of these interns worked at CAL, while the other four served at various Smithsonian museums. CAL also hosted other interns at less advanced levels of experience: six students spent summer internships with CAL's textile and paper conservators; two students in academic conservation training programs spent internships at CAL during the year; and two preprogram interns who spent the year at CAL were subsequently accepted into academic training programs. A chemist from the National Museum in Jakarta worked for three months with the textile conservator.

Again, CAL organized several advanced training courses for conservators in various specialties. The eight courses outside the furniture conservation training program included: Conservation of Earth Science Collections; Theory and Applications of the Paper Suction Table; Color Theory and Measurement; Materials Used for Display of Collections; Analysis of Historic Textile Dyes; Textile Pest Control; and the Use of Modern Textile Dyes in Conservation. In addition, the four courses in this year's furniture conservation training program curriculum were available to professionals outside the program.

Information - CAL's information program provides specialized bibliographic and reference research support to professionals in the Smithsonian Institution and other museums. It maintains current information files on conservation and archaeometry literature, technical information, commercial products data, and internally generated reports. Users can access data on CAL Conservation Reports electronically through the Smithsonian Institution Bibliographic Information System (SIBIS). CAL maintains on-line access to the conservation literature data base of the Bibliographic Conservation Information Network (BCIN), which includes the Art and Archaeology Technical Abstracts (AATA), and to the materials information data base of the Materials Conservation Information Network (MCIN). Both BCIN and MCIN are parts of the international Conservation Information Network (CIN), a cooperative network founded by the Getty Conservation Institute in cooperation with CAL, the Canadian Conservation Institute, the International Center for Conservation (ICCROM) in Rome, the International Council of Museums (ICOM) in Paris, and the International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS), also in Paris. CAL devotes considerable staff effort to integrate these institutional data bases, which are available to conservators worldwide. New accessions further increased CAL's unique collection of reprints from the professional literature in conservation, archaeometry, and related subjects, and this resource now contains about 22,000 reprints.

The public information program continues to provide information in response to questions from an audience ranging from the general public to conservation professionals. On the average, CAL answers 60 questions from the general public and 25 from professionals each month. The CAL Information staff also performs an average of 12 data base searches per month, half of which are done on request from other CAL staff, one-quarter for other Smithsonian professionals, and one-quarter for professionals in museums outside the Institution. In addition, CAL has given out more than 1,300 copies of its 165-page text Approaches to Pest Control in Museums in answer to questions and as supplements to courses since its publication in FY 1986.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These derive from the fees charged to participants in the advanced conservation specialist programs sponsored by CAL. These fees partially offset the expenses incurred in organizing the courses. CAL received grants from Scholarly Studies and Research Opportunities funds provided support for a number of ongoing research projects.

OFFICE OF EXHIBITS CENTRAL

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	47	1,886	-	-	-	39	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	46	1,937	-	-	-	150	-	-	-	-
-Base	46	1,972								
FY 1991 Estimate	46	2,006	-	-	-	150	-	-	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	46	0	46
11 Personnel Compensation	1,427	28	1,455
12 Personnel Benefits	256	6	262
21 Travel	6	0	6
22 Transportation of Things	1	0	1
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	1	0	1
25 Other Services	65	0	65
26 Supplies & Materials	164	0	164
31 Equipment	52	0	52
Total	1,972	34	2,006

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	34
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Office of Exhibits Central (OEC) is essential to the success of many Smithsonian exhibitions. OEC's specialists and up-to-date facilities offer expertise in all phases of exhibit design and production to Smithsonian units with little or no exhibition capability. Most OEC projects are unique and involve the exhibition of objects from the Institution, other museums, and private collections.

The Smithsonian is not seeking additional funds for FY 1991 programmatic increases for the Office of Exhibits Central. The Institution requires $34,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The Office of Exhibits Central provides comprehensive service and expertise in exhibition design and production. "Inside Active Volcanoes: Kilauea and Mount St. Helens," produced in FY 1989 for the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES), provides a sample of the range of OEC work:

-- Design. OEC designed every feature for the SITES' traveling exhibition and for the installation in the Evans Gallery at the National Museum of Natural History, from exhibit cases to interpretative text panels, and from gallery wall colors to the placement of objects in cases.

-- Editing. OEC received large portions of the script in outline form. The OEC editor researched, using materials provided by the curators, and wrote or rewrote the majority of the copy. In addition to shaping the script to support the photographs and objects, OEC edited and structured the script to be informative to a lay audience.

-- Graphics. OEC's graphics laboratory silk-screened labels, text panels, diagrams, and maps and mounted photographs.

-- Models. OEC's model shop fashioned two full-scale dioramas, one to depict the destruction caused by the Mount St. Helens eruption incorporating a tree stump from the actual blast zone, and one to depict a forest flooded with lava from Kilauea. The model shop also produced a scale model of a lava lake at Kilauea with cutaway view, and a cutaway model of Kilauea showing the dikes along the rift zone. The model shop also prepared custom brackets and mounts for all the artifacts.

-- Fabrication. OEC built all the exhibit furniture, including text and photo panels, wall-hung vitrines, freestanding exhibit cases, pedestals, and all the acrylic vitrines. OEC also built shipping containers with custom interiors that will ensure the safety of the objects and exhibit components during travel.

Although "Inside Active Volcanoes" was the largest and most complex project in FY 1989, OEC completed more than 200 other projects, supporting nearly every Smithsonian office and bureau. These projects in FY 1989 included:

-- Anacostia Museum. The OEC model shop made three patent models based on original patent drawings and three mannequins for the "The Real McCoy: African-American Invention and Innovation, 1619-1930" exhibition. OEC also edited the exhibit script as well as designed and edited the gallery brochure.

-- National Museum of African Art. OEC designed the installation for the "Gold of Africa" exhibition.

-- National Museum of American History. The OEC model shop created 20 lifelike mannequins for the "Men and Women: A History of Costume, Gender, and Power" exhibition. One challenge was to capture a sense of action in a figure posed riding a bicycle. Each mannequin has a face cast from life (most of the faces were cast from OEC staff volunteers).

-- National Zoological Park. OEC's taxidermy specialist has been working on an unusual project for the Zoo's Conservation and Research Center. The Zoo has been breeding black-footed ferrets for reintroduction into the wild. Before they can be released, the ferrets have to learn to fear predators. To that end, OEC has mounted a taxidermied badger on a radio-controlled model truck chassis, which the Zoo will use to teach the ferrets to run from such predators. OEC has also designed a taxidermied owl posed in flight to teach the ferrets about winged predators.

-- Reading Is Fundamental (RIF). The RIF program conducts an annual contest for which school children submit posters promoting reading. OEC matted and framed posters and produced labels and a text panel for the Smithsonian exhibition of winning entries.

-- Resident Associate Program (RAP). OEC produced two exhibits for RAP. For "RAP Commissions Art," OEC framed original prints and produced text panels and labels. For "Discover Graphics," OEC matted and framed the works on paper and produced the exhibit text panel and labels.

-- Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES). In addition to the Volcano exhibit, OEC designed, edited, and produced 14 new exhibits for SITES. "Facing the Gods: Ritual Masks of the Himalayas" was complete with wall-hung and freestanding cases for 75 masks. Because the masks do not travel in their exhibit cases, each mask was permanently mounted on a fabric-covered panel to limit direct handling during the tour and packed in custom shipping containers. OEC adapted "Badges of Pride: Symbols and Images of American Labor" from an exhibit at the Museum of American History. The touring exhibit included 30 interpretive text panels and about 75 artifacts. OEC designed, edited, produced, and crated this exhibition for SITES. OEC also designed, edited, and produced "Plains Indian Arts: Continuity and Change," an exhibit comparing 19th-century and contemporary native-American objects. Staff designed and fabricated custom brackets, mounts, and packing for each artifact.

-- "Documents for Liberty: The Bicentennial of the French Revolution, 1789-1989." For this special project of the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Museums, OEC designed the display in the Arts and Industries Building for two French documents, including banners and a gallery brochure. OEC also adapted exhibit cases, built custom mounts for the documents, and silk-screened the text.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Proceeds from the sale of the OEC book A Freeze-Dry Manual through the Smithsonian Institution Press and reimbursements from internal Smithsonian units provide these funds. OEC uses the funds to purchase supplies, materials, and services in support of OEC activities; to defray costs associated with special events; and to supplement travel expenses.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION TRAVELING EXHIBITION SERVICE

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	13	665	8	304	24	2,135	-	437	-	64
FY 1990 -Estimate	17	793	8	314	24	1,835	-	518	-	10
-Base	17	808								
FY 1991 Estimate	18	874	8	374	24	1,543	-	449	-	4

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	17	1	18
11 Personnel Compensation	407	53	460
12 Personnel Benefits	102	13	115
21 Travel	15	0	15
22 Transportation of Things	72	0	72
25 Other Services	129	0	129
26 Supplies & Materials	3	0	3
31 Equipment	80	0	80
Total	808	66	874

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	66
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES) brings the National Mall to museum-goers beyond Washington, D.C. Drawing upon the collections and research expertise of the Smithsonian, SITES circulates exhibitions around the world to museums large and small, and to libraries, schools, community centers, university galleries and municipal buildings. The same topics that inform Smithsonian exhibitions--art, natural history, archeology, anthropology, design, popular culture, science and technology--also are explored in SITES exhibitions.

As soon as funding becomes available, SITES plans to increase the availability of its programs among American audiences that have not been able to benefit from the Smithsonian's presence beyond the National Mall. Included in this challenge will be a commitment to develop exhibitions especially for smaller, budget-limited museums, many of them in non-urban areas. Diverse minority audiences also will be intended beneficiaries, for many of the nation's ethnic groups remain unaffiliated with the institutions that SITES traditionally has served. Additional Federal appropriations will be critical to SITES' ability to expand the Smithsonian's presence to these new places and groups, however, since without an increase SITES cannot offer traveling exhibitions at affordable rates. By way of illustration, SITES estimates that an increase of 24 workyears and $1,400,000 would be required to offer low-cost exhibitions by reducing the participation fees that SITES now must charge to host museums. For FY 1991, the Institution requires $66,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - SITES is a high-visibility outreach arm of the Smithsonian. Its exhibitions reach an estimated 11 million people every year. Host museums and educational institutions book SITES exhibitions for periods of four to eight weeks by paying a preestablished rental fee as well as one-way shipping costs and insurance. Every SITES exhibition includes curatorial and registrarial information, handling and installation instructions, publicity materials, publications, and recommended educational activities and public programs.

SITES' primary commitment is to the circulation of Smithsonian-based exhibitions and research. In FY 1991, for example, SITES' program, funding permitting, will include:

-- a National Zoo exhibition about human perceptions of and attitudes toward animals;

-- a second version of the Anacostia Museum exhibition "Climbing Jacob's Ladder," which surveys the growth of black churches in America (first version is scheduled to begin tour in April 1990);

-- an Anacostia Museum exhibition on African-American invention;

-- a National Museum of American History exhibition on the relationship between fashion, gender, and social roles;

-- a National Air and Space Museum exhibition about space transportation technology;

-- a traveling version of the National Museum of Natural History's Columbus Quincentennial Exhibition, "Seeds of Change";

-- a National Portrait Gallery exhibition surveying the work of Winold Reiss;

-- a Sackler Gallery exhibition by one of India's leading photo-journalists;

-- an exhibition based on the Office of Folklife Program's activities with groups in urban Philadelphia.

Some SITES programs will originate at non-Smithsonian museums or with private collectors. Projects from outside the Smithsonian are accepted into SITES' schedule after being reviewed by staff teams, which evaluate proposals based on the needs and interests expressed by host museums in the field, and on the availability of collections that might not be represented by the Smithsonian's own holdings. Depending on the availability of funds in FY 1991, such programs will include an international loan exhibition from the Soviet Union entitled "Moscow: Treasures and Traditions"; an exhibition designed to address geographic illiteracy and co-sponsored with the National Geographic Society; an exhibition about America's mounting garbage crisis; an exhibition entitled "Contrasts," that looks at the impact of industrialization on centuries-old traditions in Puerto Rico; and "Coming of Age in America," an exhibition on the aspirations and realities faced by the Nation's ever-growing, elderly populations.

At any given time, more than 120 SITES exhibitions are in circulation around the country or globe, or are in some stage of planning and production. Annually, the number of new exhibitions fluctuates from between 25 and 30. *Smithsonian* magazine, by publicizing the locations of certain SITES shows in each issue, helps to increase the Institution's national audience. SITES also markets exhibitions directly to some 9,000 institutions and individuals through *Update*, its annual catalogue of available exhibitions, and through a quarterly newsletter called *Siteline*.

During FY 1989, 92 SITES exhibitions traveled in the United States to 200 cities in 46 states and the District of Columbia. Total exhibition bookings came to 330 in FY 1989, including 3 bookings outside of the United States.

Alabama	5
Alaska	3
Arizona	1
Arkansas	3
California	14
Colorado	10
Connecticut	9
District of Columbia	5
Florida	20
Georgia	12
Hawaii	2
Idaho	2
Illinois	2
Indiana	8
Iowa	7
Kansas	6
Kentucky	8
Louisiana	1
Maine	1
Maryland	6
Massachusetts	12
Michigan	16
Minnesota	4
Mississippi	4
Missouri	8
Montana	7
Nebraska	2
Nevada	3
New Hampshire	1
New Jersey	4
New Mexico	3
New York	20
North Carolina	9
Ohio	23
Oklahoma	5
Oregon	3
Pennsylvania	11
Rhode Island	3
South Carolina	5
South Dakota	1
Tennessee	12
Utah	2
Virginia	6
Washington	6
West Virginia	5
Wisconsin	8

These numbers do not total 330 because some exhibitions were double-booked for extended showings in particular cities.

Again depending on the availability of funds, SITES also tries to maintain an international program, sharing collections from the Smithsonian and other sources in addition to exhibition expertise with people outside the U.S. In FY 1989, four SITES exhibitions traveled abroad. Two exhibitions went to Canada: "Child to Child: American-Soviet Children's Art Exchange," and "Art of Botany." "Power and Gold: Jewelry from Indonesia, Malaysia and the Philippines" toured Hong Kong and Taipei, Taiwan.

Apart from its exhibition services, SITES regularly advises colleagues at other museums on professional topics such as shipping and insuring artifacts, developing public programs, and handling exhibit installation, security, design and contract matters. Often these issues are covered in SITES' Workshop Program, which brings together representatives from institutions slated to host SITES exhibitions. Museum professionals with like concerns thus have an opportunity to pool their resources, sharing program ideas, technical information, and presentation strategies that heighten audience interest and involvement.

To expand further its service capabilities, SITES has initiated a program to underwrite exhibition tours with State Humanities Councils. SITES' activities in New Mexico set the model for this partnership. There, the State Council agreed to fund participation and shipping fees for a group of host museums willing to book SITES exhibitions consecutively. Institutions throughout New Mexico that independently could not have afforded a SITES program thus not only scheduled a show but also created accompanying public programs by pooling their limited funds.

Notwithstanding the inroads SITES has made in expanding the Smithsonian's profile, diverse segments of the American public continue to have little if no formal relationship to the Institution. In the face of a no-growth budget, SITES will find it impossible to extend the benefits of the Smithsonian's exhibition offerings to people of all ages and backgrounds, thus strengthening the Smithsonian's role as a national educational resource.

At present, SITES' total operating budget consists of two general categories: direct subsidies and recoverable costs. Direct subsidies involve non-reimbursable expenses from three funding sources: a Federal appropriation; a limited amount of nonappropriated Smithsonian Trust fund support; and outside grants and contracts. SITES must recover all remaining operating costs through participation (rental) fees that are charged to exhibitors. SITES can only reduce exhibition participation fees and in turn respond to the program needs and financial realities of resource-poor institutions if alternative funding to offset these costs becomes available.

SITES brings the Smithsonian to millions of visitors beyond the Nation's capital. SITES hopes to ensure that each of these visitors benefits fully and directly from the Institution's program services.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - The bulk of SITES' operating budget comes from participation fees collected from museums and other recipients of traveling exhibitions. These funds, supplemented by an allotment, support exhibition development costs including salaries and benefits, exhibition production, publications, materials, outside specialists, and contractual services. The Smithsonian also supports certain SITES exhibitions on a selective basis with monies from the Special Exhibition Fund.

Restricted Funds - Individuals, organizations, and corporations donate gifts and foundation grants for specific SITES projects. During FY 1989, SITES received grants

INTENTIONAL BLANK

from the Goodwill Games for "Moscow: Treasures and Traditions"; from the MacArthur Foundation for a Spanish language version of "Tropical Rainforests: A Disappearing Treasure"; from MCI Communications Corporation for "Inside Active Volcanoes: Kilauea and Mount St. Helens"; and from the American Association of Retired Persons for "Coming of Age in America."

Government Grants and Contracts - Various levels of government provide funds for support of specific exhibitions. A contract with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, for example, recently enabled SITES to circulate a National Museum of American History exhibition about duck stamps, entitled "The Legacy Endures."

MUSEUM SUPPORT CENTER

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	35	4,405	-	-	-	17	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	42	4,263	-	-	-	59	-	-	-	-
-Base	42	4,290								
FY 1991 Estimate	42	4,316	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	42	0	42
11 Personnel Compensation	865	20	885
12 Personnel Benefits	209	6	215
21 Travel	14	0	14
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	4	0	4
24 Printing & Reproduction	1	0	1
25 Other Services	202	0	202
26 Supplies & Materials	89	0	89
31 Equipment	2,906	0	2,906
Total	4,290	26	4,316

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	26
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Museum Support Center (MSC), located in Suitland, Maryland, adjacent to the Institution's Suitland Facility, provides a state-of-the-art facility for the care, conservation, and storage of the Institution's collections. The conservation facilities at the MSC include the Conservation Analytical Laboratory and conservation laboratories for the National Museum of Natural History/Museum of Man and the National Museum of American History. The collections storage area at the MSC occupies four discrete sections (or pods) and provides three types of storage space: collections storage in cabinets; "wet" collections storage on open shelving for biological specimens in alcohol; and "high-bay" storage for very large objects. (For

FY 1990 and prior years, the Museum Support Center budget line-item appeared in the Special Programs section.)

For FY 1991, the Institution is not requesting a programmatic increase for the Museum Support Center. The FY 1991 estimate continues the FY 1990 level of funding for the purchase and installation of collections storage equipment and components ($2.849 million); the preparation and transfer of Initial Move collections to the MSC, including a program to evaluate the effectiveness of cleaning techniques to remove asbestos contamination from museum objects prior to their move (6 workyears and $404,000); and the ongoing administration, information management, and building management services at the MSC (36 workyears and $1.063 million). As part of the FY 1991 level of funding, the Institution requires $26,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item. Beginning in FY 1991, the Institution requests that funding for MSC collections storage equipment and for MSC Move costs be available until expended (for FY 1991, this no-year request equals a total of $3.253 million).

PROGRAM - The Institution's Museum Support Center provides state-of-the-art facilities for the conservation and preservation of museum objects; conservation training; and the storage of museum collections. The unique design of the MSC creates two wings, one for laboratories and one for storage, on either side of a central corridor.

Conservation facilities occupy a significant portion of the laboratory wing, where activities include conservation treatment, scientific analysis, and training. The Conservation Analytical Laboratory (CAL), the Anthropology Conservation Laboratory of the National Museum of Natural History (NMNH), and some of the facilities of the Division of Conservation of the National Museum of American History (NMAH) are at the MSC. The Museum Support Center branch of the Smithsonian Institution Libraries, one of six conservation libraries in the world and one of only two in this country that provide a reference service on conservation, maintains a collection of more than 15,000 books and 180 periodical titles.

The Smithsonian Oceanographic Sorting Center, a specialized research and service unit of the National Museum of Natural History, also occupies space in the laboratory wing. The Sorting Center sorts and classifies marine animals and plants which oceanographic expeditions collect, and then distributes these specimens to scientists around the world.

In late FY 1988, the National Museum of Natural History established a new Laboratory for Molecular Systematics at the Museum Support Center. This laboratory builds upon the Museum's broad expertise in systematic and evolutionary biology and incorporates historical and ecological perspectives. It will enable molecular study of the genetics of organisms by the largest single team of systematic biologists in the world. The laboratory will focus on DNA molecular analysis.

The storage wing consists of four storage pods, each approximately the size of a football field and 28 feet high. Collections stored in cabinets on three levels of concrete decks will occupy approximately five-eighths of the total storage space (Pods 1 and 2, and a portion of Pod 4). In addition, Pod 3 provides open shelving for storing "wet" collections (those in alcohol), and a portion of Pod 4 will allow "high-bay" storage of very large objects.

The move of millions of objects and specimens to the Museum Support Center is unprecedented in the museum world. The volume, characteristics, and variety of the collections and the distance of the transfer pose special challenges. The Smithsonian coordinates each phase of the Move using an automated project management system for highly complex projects. This system provides management with automated information on relevant variables that affect the complex schedules, enabling management to update that information easily and quickly. In addition, the MSC Move staff determines the specific methods of packaging and modes of transport appropriate to the particular collections and objects involved. The Institution currently projects that the Initial Move efforts will continue at least through FY 1996.

Early in the MSC planning process in the late 1970s, the Smithsonian established the concept of the Initial Move to ensure a systematic transfer of millions of designated objects from the National Museums of Natural History and American History to the Museum Support Center over a multi-year period. The Smithsonian intends to continue procuring Initial Move collections storage equipment to house these designated collections. The Initial Move collections will occupy approximately two-thirds of the MSC storage space, and the remaining third will be available for future Growth.

I. Museum Support Center Collections Storage Equipment

Current Status of MSC Collections Storage Equipment Reprocurement (December 1989) - In FY 1989, the Institution and the General Services Administration (GSA), acting as the Smithsonian's agent, made significant progress in the reprocurement of collections storage equipment for MSC. GSA awarded the new contract for the general construction of the structural deck system, mechanical, electrical, and sprinkler systems on October 13, 1988, to the Grunley Construction Company, Inc. The new contractor resumed construction on November 11, 1988. The Smithsonian took occupancy of Pod 1 on June 19, 1989, and of Pod 2 on November 4, 1989. The contractor expects to complete Pod 4 by February 28, 1990.

During FY 1989, GSA also issued four of the anticipated eight bid solicitations for collections storage equipment. These four packages will provide the majority of the storage equipment required to relocate the Initial Move high-density collections to MSC:

-- Shelving Cabinets: Installation of shelving cabinets began on July 7, 1989. The contractor had installed 633 shelving cabinets by December 31, 1989.

-- Drawer Cabinets: Installation of drawer cabinets began in October 1989. The contractor will have installed 856 drawer cabinets by January 31, 1990.

-- Insect Cabinets: GSA awarded the contract for insect cabinets on June 9, 1989. Installation of insect cabinets will begin in March 1990.

-- Botany Cabinets: GSA awarded the contract for botany cabinets on June 13, 1989. Installation of botany cabinets will begin in June 1990.

GSA plans to solicit the final four bids for collections storage equipment--for 96- by 50-inch large drawer and shelving cabinets, cantilever shelving units, compactor screens, and specialized fencing storage units--during calendar year 1990. GSA anticipates the final completion of manufacture and installation of all storage equipment packages during 1993.

GSA currently estimates the reprocurement costs, including the construction of decking and utilities and the manufacture and installation of Initial Move high-density storage equipment for Pods 1, 2, and 4, to be approximately $27.7 million. A total of $27.4 million, including funding which the Smithsonian has already transferred to GSA through FY 1989 ($24.6 million), and funding provided in the FY 1990 appropriation ($2.849 million), is available for this reprocurement. Assuming no change in the GSA estimate, the Institution will require approximately $300,000 in FY 1991 to complete the reprocurement. (At the present time, unit price costs for the four types of storage equipment for which contracts have been awarded are firm, excluding escalation; the remaining four are still based on estimates. Under the terms of the contracts, GSA has built in annual escalation costs for equipment not installed within one year after contract award, limited to an annual maximum increase of 10 percent of the Producer Price Index for filing cabinets and cases and of 10 percent of the Engineering News Record Skilled Labor Index for freight and installation.)

MSC Collections Storage Equipment Requirements After the Completion of the Reprocurement - Following the completion of the reprocurement, the Institution must address the three remaining requirements for MSC collections storage equipment that had been deferred from previous years to finish the reprocurement: the design, purchase, and installation of (1) the Initial Move "high-bay" storage equipment for Pod 4; (2) the balance of the "wet" storage equipment for Pod 3; and (3) the balance of the collections storage cabinets for Pods 1, 2, and 4.

"High-Bay" Collections Storage Equipment: The Smithsonian deferred the purchase of the Initial Move "high-bay" storage equipment for several years in order to complete the reprocurement of the high-density storage equipment for the Initial Move. In FY 1991, the Institution plans to design the "high-bay" system, which will store such items as totem poles, whale skeletons, rickshaws, weaving looms, and furniture. This storage equipment will consist of industrial cantilever shelving racks approximately 24 feet high; the necessary mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems; and material-handling equipment to access these collections. Both NMNH and NMAH need this type of storage equipment.

Following the preparation of the final design of the system, the Smithsonian will contract for the components of the "high-bay" system and its installation. The current preliminary cost estimate of the final design and installation of the "high-bay" storage system, including escalation to FY 1991 price levels, exceeds $2.0 million. This funding level is based on the estimated cost of this equipment in FY 1985, adjusted for escalation. The Institution will refine this cost estimate after the final design is complete. Actual cost for the "high-bay" storage equipment may vary with the actual bids received at the time of procurement and the effective inflation rate for the city of the bidder during bid submission.

"Wet" Collections Storage Equipment for Growth Areas in Pod 3: The Smithsonian completed the Initial Move of "wet" collections in 1985. Within the next six years, the Institution plans to purchase additional "wet" storage equipment to occupy the balance of the Growth storage areas of Pod 3. The installation of the additional "wet" storage system will require metal columns, catwalks, and all utilities for the three-level, self-supporting structure of open shelving. The first phase of this work will require the services of an architectural/engineering firm to provide a design and a procurement cost estimate.

The present preliminary estimate for completing the Growth storage equipment in Pod 3 ranges from $6.1 to $8 million. The $6.1 million estimate is based on the cost data for the design, management and inspection, and construction costs of the first part of the "wet" storage system installed in 1983, adjusted to include inflation at the rate of 6 percent per annum. The $8 million estimate also takes into account that the storage equipment for the Growth areas in Pod 3 will be more complicated than the original equipment, resulting in higher costs. Following the design work of an architectural/engineering firm, the Institution can provide a more accurate estimate of total cost, including an appropriate cost for inflation.

Collections Storage Cabinets for Growth Areas in Pods 2 and 4: After the completion of concrete decks and installation of Initial Move storage equipment in Pods 2 and 4, the Institution will begin to purchase and install storage equipment for the Growth areas in these two pods. At this time, the Institution cannot determine the specific number of the various types of cabinets, drawers, and other equipment it will require, nor can it determine the specific timetable for the installation of the Growth storage equipment. The Institution currently anticipates, however, that the purchase and installation of some of this storage equipment could begin as early as FY 1991.

Preliminary cost estimates for the procurement of collections storage equipment for the high-density Growth areas in Pods 2 and 4 total as much as $11.2 million, without taking escalation into account. According to some of the cabinet manufacturers, escalation over the period of one year can be as high as 15 percent for the cabinets alone. Escalation on the freight charges and the installation costs for the storage equipment will further increase these costs. In an effort to reduce these costs, GSA has written the current collections storage equipment procurement documents for the Initial Move to permit it to purchase many, if not all, of the cabinets for Growth space in Pods 2 and 4 on the same contracts. These contracts provide for unit price costs for cabinets, shelves, and drawers as well as for freight and installation. As indicated previously, these contracts also provide for annual escalation, limited to a maximum of 10 percent, based on the Producer Price Index for filing cabinets and cases and on the Engineering News Record Skilled Labor Index for freight and installation. These provisions will be in effect for a period of five years, which began in calendar year 1989. If the Smithsonian cannot provide GSA with sufficient funding to procure these cabinets and their components by the end of each of these contracts, new bid solicitations will be required. New cost estimates will be required as well, because the cabinets and their components will probably cost more.

In addition to the purchase of cabinets for the Growth space, the Institution eventually will need new steel cabinets to replace a large number of existing wood frame cabinets and drawers from the Museum of Natural History that it is relocating to the MSC as part of the Initial Move. The new cabinets, which will be six inches deeper than the existing cabinets, will permit the Smithsonian to make more efficient use of the available storage space at the MSC. Moreover, since the acid in the wood frame cabinets is deleterious to many of the objects stored in them, replacement with new metal cabinets will provide a better long-term storage environment. Cost estimates for this replacement total as much as $4.8 million without taking escalation into account.

In summary, the Institution estimates that the procurement of new cabinets for Growth high-density areas and the replacement of the existing wood frame cabinets will require as much as $16 million (in 1989 dollars), without taking escalation into account. Assuming escalation calculated at 10 percent per year and procurement of these cabinets in FY 1991 and FY 1993, the cost to complete the high-density storage equipment (after the Initial Move) will total $21.4 million. Two factors that may cause this preliminary cost estimate to fluctuate are: (1) inflation; and (2) the actual numbers and types of cabinets, shelves, and drawers procured, if they differ from the ones predicted in the preliminary cost estimates, since they are based on the Initial Move procurements.

Future Funding Requirements for MSC Collections Storage Equipment: Based on the above projections, the Institution currently estimates that it will require a total of approximately $24.1 to $31.4 million to complete the equipping of the Museum Support Center. During FY 1991, the Institution will use the balance of the equipment funding of $2.849 million to begin to purchase the remaining storage systems and cabinets. Beginning in FY 1992 and continuing through FY 1995, the Institution expects to request a level of funding of $8 million each year to continue the purchase of this equipment.

Need for No-Year Funding for MSC Storage Equipment: Beginning in FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests no-year funding for the design, procurement, and installation of collections storage equipment for MSC. No-year funding will permit flexibility in the procurement of the remaining storage equipment, especially for "high-bay" storage in Pod 4 and the "wet" storage equipment in Pod 3. Because of the time required to bid and award contracts for major projects such as the MSC storage equipment systems, the procurement process may exceed the period of availability of funds in a one-year appropriation.

After the Smithsonian receives its appropriation, it must prepare a scope of work for the design of the equipment and allow time for potential contractors to submit bids. The Institution must then review and evaluate these bids and award the design contract. Document preparation takes time; then design takes several months, following which the Institution prepares the designer's documents for the storage equipment as solicitation documents to procure the system. The Smithsonian must then allow for appropriate bidding time by the suppliers who desire to manufacture and install the storage equipment, which can take several months, depending on the system being procured.

The Institution then reviews and evaluates the bids to perform this work and awards the procurement contract. The labor-intensive and time-consuming nature of this process makes it extremely difficult to obligate funding within a single fiscal year. The provision of no-year funding for the storage equipment project will allow the design, procurement, construction, and installation processes to proceed smoothly without the pressures of hasty year-end obligations to avoid the loss of funding. In addition, no-year funding will permit the most efficient and cost-effective use of funding for procurement of the remaining phases of storage equipment for the Growth areas at the MSC. The Institution then will procure each phase or portions of each phase when needed.

II. Move of the Collections to the Museum Support Center

Current Status of the Move of Collections to the MSC (December 1989) - From FY 1983 to the present, the MSC Move staff has transferred in excess of 313,700 specimen lots to the "wet" collections storage equipment in Pod 3. While problems in procuring the storage equipment for the Initial Move into Pods 1, 2, and 4 have delayed the permanent relocation of other collections to the MSC, the Institution has continued to prepare collections and to move selected ones to temporary storage locations at the MSC until their permanent storage space becomes available. These collections from the National Museum of Natural History include:

-- more than 197,500 archeological objects (representing 25 percent of those collections) and 17,500 ethnological objects from the Department of Anthropology;

-- more than 4,198,000 insect specimens from the Department of Entomology;

-- more than 36,700 petrology and meteorite specimens from the Department of Mineral Sciences;

-- more than 3,000,000 specimens from the Department of Paleobiology;

-- 213,800 specimens from the Department of Botany, including diatoms and algae;

-- 27,500 specimens from the Department of Invertebrate Zoology.

The MSC Move staff has inspected these objects for pests and conservation problems and has properly stabilized these collections. The collections relocated to MSC are in less-crowded and better-controlled conditions than collections stored in most other Smithsonian storage areas. As a result, they have far greater potential for long-term preservation and use.

In FY 1989, the staff cleaned, prepared, and packed 1,500 historic toys from the Museum of American History's Division of Domestic Life. These specimens are in temporary storage at the Garber Facility until storage equipment is available at the MSC. Staff also continued to move collections from the Departments of Botany, Entomology, Invertebrate Zoology, and Vertebrate Zoology to temporary MSC storage locations.

The Move technicians will continue in FY 1990 to prepare and pack collections from the Museum of American History and will store them temporarily at the Suitland Facility. The MSC Move will hire conservators to determine appropriate supplies and methods for stabilizing and packing the collections. Late in FY 1990, the Move staff will begin to prepare and pack the collections of other departments. These collections will remain in the buildings currently storing them until sufficient permanent storage equipment is ready at MSC in early FY 1991.

The MSC Move's current priority is to update and refine plans for relocating collections to permanent MSC storage locations beginning in FY 1991. Based on the planned delivery schedules for reprocured storage equipment, the Institution has proposed a new schedule for moving the collections of the Museum of Natural History and the Museum of American History to ensure that the Move is accomplished as timely and effectively as possible. Coordinating this complex project requires considerable advance planning.

Future MSC Move Requirements, FY 1991 - FY 1996 - Beginning in FY 1991, the Institution will begin to move collections into the Initial Move storage equipment that will be in place at the MSC by then. To effect this move, the Institution will hire administrative staff, museum specialists, technicians, and conservators. The Institution may contract some work, such as conservation and asbestos decontamination, to outside individuals or firms. The administrative staff will procure the necessary supplies and equipment, coordinate the logistics, continue the planning, monitor the progress of the Move against the proposed schedule, and revise the schedule as necessary. The specialists and technicians will inspect, clean, invoice, stabilize, pack, transport, unpack, and place collections into permanent storage equipment at the MSC. The conservators will develop handling and packaging procedures and train the Move staff to use them.

The initial focus of the Move in FY 1991 will be on high priority collections and collections that will take a long time to move, including NMAH and NMNH's Departments of Anthropology, Vertebrate Zoology, and Entomology. Over time, the Institution will move collections from all divisions of the seven departments of NMNH (Anthropology, Botany, Entomology, Invertebrate Zoology, Mineral Sciences, Paleobiology, and Vertebrate Zoology) and the two departments of NMAH (History of Science and Technology, and Social and Cultural History). In addition, at the appropriate time, those collections already in temporary storage at the MSC will be relocated into their permanent storage equipment. The Institution also will relocate thousands of existing collection storage cabinets from the Museum of Natural History to the MSC for storing collections of the Departments of Mineral Sciences, Invertebrate Zoology, and Paleobiology.

The four years from FY 1991 through FY 1994 are the most critical years for the Initial Move. For example, the curatorial departments that are moving smaller numbers of collections will relocate their Initial Move specimens during this four-year period, while the move of much larger collections, such as Anthropology, will begin during this period and continue through at least FY 1996.

The increased Initial Move activity will require a substantial increase of funding in the next few years to achieve this plan. The Smithsonian projects that the preliminary estimate for the MSC Move from FY 1991 through FY 1996 will total at least $5 million. In order to bring this project to a timely and successful conclusion, the Institution will reevaluate and refine these cost estimates as the project proceeds and more information becomes available. The MSC Move administration expects FY 1992 to be the year in which the greatest resources will be necessary, both in terms of funding levels and staffing.

To date, the Smithsonian has focused on the Initial Move into the high-density storage equipment. During this time, however, many of the collections of the curatorial departments have continued to grow. As a result, the distinction between those collections and activities designated for the Initial Move and those collections targeted for the future Growth Move has blurred. The Institution may need to conduct some Growth Move activity prior to completing the Initial Move activity. The Institution expects to require additional funding for Growth Move activities before FY 1995. In the near future, the Institution will explore the needs for the Growth Move activities in more detail.

Because the Institution is currently storing many of the collections in areas contaminated by asbestos, a special responsibility of the Move process is to clean these collections prior to the Move. After establishing acceptable asbestos decontamination techniques, the Smithsonian will proceed with specialized cleaning of the objects. The $5 million cost estimate includes the cost of this cleaning including potential cleaning contracts.

Institutional Benefits to an Expeditious Completion of the Move - A timely and expeditious Move will benefit the Institution for three reasons. First, because the delay in installing the collections storage equipment has postponed the Move so long, the museums scheduled to move collections into the MSC are desperate for the proper storage for their collections and for the space relief that the relocation will provide. Second, the Smithsonian needs to reduce the time spent on the Move in order to reduce its total cost because the longer the Move lasts, the more it will cost as a result of inflation. Third, the Institution must delay other major projects if the Move does not occur quickly.

For the Natural History Building Master Implementation Plan to proceed, the Smithsonian must move these collections to the MSC in a timely fashion. Specifically, the contractor will not be able to make many of the required mechanical changes in the NMNH Building nor remove the asbestos insulation in the attics or treat it to ensure the safety of the collections and staff until these collections have been moved. Any delay in moving these collections scheduled for relocation to the MSC may delay this as well as other Natural History Building renovations.

As the Institution completes construction of its collections storage areas and installs its storage equipment, the Move will relocate millions of collections from the overcrowded storage areas on the Mall. This relocation will eventually free up some exhibit halls that museums are presently using for collections management and research purposes and are thus closed to the public. Relocating these collections from exhibit halls now occupied by collections management and research activities will permit the museums to return some of these exhibit galleries on the Mall to public use. Plans for gallery renovation are under way.

Collections in their current overcrowded, pest-infested, asbestos-contaminated conditions are not available for research or exhibit. For example, among the collections needing relocation are native-American ethnological objects currently stored in one of the Natural History Building's attics, which has exposed asbestos insulation. Moreover, many specimens represent species at risk of extinction through continued human impact on the planet. With the destruction of certain ecosystems, these specimens will become increasingly important for the study of biodiversity, pollution effects, and the physical destruction of the Earth's environment. Some collections, including tropical plants and mammal specimens, are in immediate danger of complete deterioration in the poor environmental conditions at the Garber Facility and the Smithsonian Institution Service Center.

Collections relocated to the MSC will be more accessible to researchers. With the improved environmental and storage conditions at the MSC as well as the cleaning and stabilizing received in preparation for the Move, the collections will also be better preserved for future generations of museum visitors, educators, and researchers. Support for the Move will allow the National Collections to survive and continue to serve the public.

Need for No-Year Funding for MSC Move - The MSC Move is very labor intensive. Any changes in the schedule of purchase and installation of the collections storage equipment, any delays as a result of hiring or losing staff, or any other unanticipated event can produce significant changes in the proposed Move schedule. The Smithsonian requests the provision of no-year funding for the MSC Move to allow shifts in the peak activity between fiscal years, without end-of-year restrictions resulting in the loss of appropriated funding. This provision will increase the overall efficiency of the Move, will ensure that sufficient Move funds remain available if there are changes in the schedule, and will provide the most cost-effective way to accomplish this project.

Asbestos Decontamination Techniques - During FY 1989 and FY 1990, the Institution has evaluated the effectiveness of various cleaning techniques to remove asbestos remove asbestos contamination from museum objects prior to moving them to the Museum Support Center. Cleaning is necessary because asbestos has contaminated these objects' present collections storage areas in the National Museum of Natural History, the National Museum of American History, and the Suitland Facility. An evaluation of various techniques will ensure that staff and/or contractors clean the collections effectively and that the collections pose no health threat to researchers or the public when the specimens are examined or displayed. The evaluation uses surface-testing and air-monitoring methods to indicate the level of contamination, both before and after cleaning. The Institution anticipates that it will complete this program in FY 1991.

III. Administration and Facility Management

The Office of the Director of the Museum Support Center coordinates activities of the various user and support units; oversees the automated data processing center used for registration and collections management activities, including the Move to the MSC; and arranges services to meet the research and informational requirements of MSC occupants. The Office also oversees the procedures established to control and account for the flow of collections into and out of the MSC and ensures the safety of the collections against pest infections and other hazards. Under the general supervision of the MSC's Office of the Director, the facility manager is responsible for providing shipping and receiving services, moving equipment and objects, overseeing safety and security operations, and cleaning and maintaining all aspects of the building. Because of the need to maintain very strict environmental standards for the care and storage of museum objects, cleanliness is a fundamental requirement for the successful operation of a collections management facility.

As custodian of the National Collections, the Smithsonian possesses more than 136 million art objects, natural history specimens, and artifacts. With the responsibility for preserving these collections for future generations of scholars and visitors, the Institution pays careful attention to the acquisition, conservation, and storage of these objects. With the additional responsibility for researching and understanding the immense cultural and scientific heritage inherent in these collections, the Institution provides laboratory and support services for the world's leading students and scholars to study them. A critical factor in ensuring the preservation and study of the National Collections is the development of facilities such as the Museum Support Center, which provide the optimum conditions for collections storage, research, and conservation. The Museum Support Center maintains the highest levels of building management and support activities, including computer services.

The MSC Office of the Director provides the infrastructure support services required for the care, conservation, storage, and move of the collections at the MSC. The MSC Office of Information Management provides computer services to staff throughout the Institution. The MSC VAX computer supports a variety of Institutional systems devoted to research, collections management, communications, and other administrative functions. Of particular significance is the MSC Move invoice system, which controls the Initial Move of more than 36 million objects and specimens into the MSC.

In 1988, the Institution looked back at the accomplishments of MSC's first five years and looked forward to its full potential, as a state-of-the-art facility for collections storage, conservation, and research. In the year since that anniversary, the MSC has seen the establishment of the new Laboratory for Molecular Systematics and the installation of the first storage cabinets on the newly constructed third floor of the Pod 1 storage area. The MSC is rapidly achieving this potential and the expanded level of computer support for automated information management will enable the Institution to better preserve the data and use of the National Collections for the benefit of both current and future generations.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - An allotment has supported the purchase of special laboratory equipment for the Conservation Analytical Laboratory.

ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR PUBLIC SERVICE

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	25	1,391	44	2,751	-	504	-	1,036	-	38
FY 1990 -Estimate	26	1,452	46	2,926	-	93	-	600	-	-
-Base	26	1,487								
FY 1991 Estimate	26	1,640	46	2,959	-	85	-	1,000	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	26	0	26
11 Personnel Compensation	1,091	117	1,208
12 Personnel Benefits	177	21	198
21 Travel	22	0	22
22 Transportation of Things	2	0	2
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	22	0	22
24 Printing & Reproduction	47	0	47
25 Other Services	67	15	82
26 Supplies & Materials	26	0	26
31 Equipment	33	0	33
Total	1,487	153	1,640

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	138
Program Funds	15

ABSTRACT - The Office of the Assistant Secretary for Public Service encourages and supports the development of programs to advance the Institution's objectives in education, information, primarily through activities involving publication (print, audio, video and optical) folklife programs, the development of wider audiences and efforts to celebrate the achievement and contributions of women and major ethnic minority groups. It advises the Secretary on general policy issues and program planning for Public Service activities. This line-item also includes the Office of Wider Audience Development, the Office of Telecommunications, the Visitor Information and Associates' Reception Center, and the Office of Public Affairs. The Office of Wider Audience Development provides advice and assistance to Smithsonian managers and the Secretary on management policy that can be changed or improved to increase minority involvement in programs, exhibitions and other audience related activities. The Office of Telecommunications produces programs for radio, film, and television relating to a variety of Smithsonian research and scholarly activities. The Visitor Information and Associates' Reception Center is a central support unit responsible for Institution-wide information and assistance programs for the public, Associate members, Smithsonian staff, and volunteers. The Office of Public Affairs acquaints the public with the programs and policies of the Institution by working with newspapers, magazines, television, and radio to gain media exposure for its exhibits, public events, and research.

For FY 1991, the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Public Service requests $15,000 for Columbus Quincentenary activities in the Office of Public Affairs. The Institution requires $138,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM:

I. The Office of the Assistant Secretary for Public Service - With base funding of 6 workyears and $354,000, the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Public Service coordinates and supervises the Institution's general information and educational and public service programs and advises the Secretary on the development of policies and activities for these programs. The bureaus and offices reporting to the Assistant Secretary include the Office of Wider Audience Development, the Office of Telecommunications, the Visitor Information and Associates' Reception Center, the Office of Public Affairs, the Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian magazine and Air and Space magazine, the Office of Folklife Programs, the Office of Interdisciplinary Studies, the Office of Elementary and Secondary Education, the National Science Resources Center, and the Office of Conference Services.

In FY 1990, as part of the Institution's Special Employment Initiative, Congress provided funding for the position of the director of the Office of Wider Audience Development and a media specialist. The Director will provide program direction for the Office of Wider Audience Development, including networking with culturally diverse institutions and organizations outside the Smithsonian to develop joint ventures; and developing periodic seminars for Smithsonian staff and specialists from cultural and educational organizations to explore in-depth pertinent themes of contemporary concern which bear on public interest. The media specialist will provide expertise as well as special sensitivity to cultural diversity considerations in all Smithsonian Public Service media activities.

II. Office of Telecommunications - With base funding of 5 workyears and $241,000, the Office of Telecommunications (OTC) produces programs for radio, film, and television relating to a variety of Smithsonian research and scholarly activities. Distributed nationwide, these diverse programs are an important part of Smithsonian outreach, as they support and interpret the research, exhibition, and education goals of the Institution.

OTC produces two major program series. "Here at the Smithsonian," an award-winning series of short features for television, launched its eighth season with 17 new subscribing stations. It is telecast in seven of the ten largest cities across the country. "Radio Smithsonian," a weekly half-hour series, is carried by 90 stations nationally, reaching a potential weekly audience of four million people. Programs in both series focus on exhibitions, research, and performance activities throughout the Institution.

In FY 1989, OTC completed several other film and video projects. Two major video programs premiered in the fall of 1989 in the Smithsonian Information Center in the Great Hall of the Castle. One element, a 20-minute orientation program, runs continuously in two theaters. The other component, an interactive video disc program, will help visitors effectively plan their time at the Smithsonian. Computer-based touch screens provide information about each of the Institution's Washington museums and the National Zoological Park, along with details about visitor services, tours, demonstrations, and special attractions for children.

OTC completed a major one-hour film titled The Earth in Our Hands, for television and educational distribution. The film shows how working models of entire ecosystems can provide a better understanding of our planet and teach us how to better manage Earth's limited resources. Robert Redford narrates the film, based on the work of the Smithsonian's Marine Systems Laboratory.

OTC also produced several new video programs for museum exhibitions. In the Hall of American Maritime Enterprise at the National Museum of American History (NMAH), nine short films will depict the role of towboats, the lifeblood of commerce on the Mississippi River and other inland waterways. The Office produced three audio-visual pieces for the NMAH exhibition, "Men and Women: A History of Costume, Gender, and Power." They reflect the cultural roles men and women played in the Hollywood films of the 1920s, in television situation comedies of the 1950s, and in television advertising of the 1980s. Working with the NMAH Division of Musical History, the Office produced an interactive video to accompany an exhibition on the 90th anniversary of Duke Ellington's birth. The video features five of his film appearances spanning his career from 1929 to 1974.

For the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service (SITES), the Office produced a ten-minute film to accompany an exhibition on Frank Lloyd Wright's decorative arts. The film explores the complex issues of preserving Wright's architectural legacy--both his buildings and his furnishings. The National Museum of American Art (NMAA) requested an interactive video disc to enrich a showing of the Patricia and Phillip Frost Collection. The program focuses on five artists who pursued abstract art in the 1930s and 1940s, a time when figurative art was much more popular.

During FY 1989, OTC provided administrative oversight for the production of the new Smithsonian Video Collection, a series of programs for home video. The Collection completed six programs during the year: Dinosaurs, Insects, Gems and Minerals, First Ladies, The National Zoo, and The Flying Machines. Production began on a comprehensive tour of Smithsonian museums, called Supertour.

OTC worked on several projects designed to reach wider audiences. A Spanish-language television pilot consisting of four two-minute features debuted at the National Hispanic Media Conference to very positive reviews. The pilot was financed by a Smithsonian Educational Outreach grant, and fundraising is under way to support further production. A Latino media consultant prepared a report on long-range goals for Smithsonian media programs intended for Latino audiences. In addition, planning has begun for a radio series presenting a native-American perspective on the

Columbus Quincentenary, and funds are being sought for a new series of vignettes for African-American commercial radio.

OTC is working with the National Museum of Natural History to develop a series of short, up-to-date video pieces highlighting current natural history events. The pieces will run in a prominent space in the museum and may be distributed nationally in the future. The Office is also producing the video program to be seen at the end of the major exhibition "The Information Age," set to open at the National Museum of American History in May, 1990. This multi-screen program will emphasize that communications and computer technologies are tools whose use is under human control.

OTC plans to actively market its award-winning programs. The popular film Movie Palaces and the new production The Earth in Our Hands will both receive concentrated attention so can they reach the broadest possible audience.

III. Visitor Information and Associates' Reception Center - With base funding of 2 workyears and $181,000, the Visitor Information and Associates' Reception Center (VIARC) is a central support unit responsible for Institution-wide information and assistance programs for the public, Associate members, Smithsonian staff, and volunteers. Operating seven days a week, many VIARC programs involve coordinating and directing volunteers who constitute a primary source of support for the Institution's public information programs and for project assistance behind the scenes.

Information services operates the new Smithsonian Information Center in the SI Building which includes two orientation theaters featuring a 20-minute orientation video; state-of-the-art interactive "touch screen" programs with information on the Smithsonian's museums and facilities in English and six foreign languages; rolling screen monitors that display information on daily Smithsonian activities and events; large scale models that detail the location of Smithsonian museums, major monuments, memorials and federal buildings in Washington's monumental core; electronic maps with adjacent interactive programs that locate and provide specific information about other popular visitor attractions in the nation's capital; and a series of backlit panels that interpret the range of collections and services found in each of the Institution's facilities. VIARC also is responsible for staffing 16 museum information desks in 11 buildings; staffing 2 Associates' reception desks; answering the Institution's public inquiry telephone lines; providing daily recorded information on Dial-A-Museum and Dial-A-Phenomenon; and responding to the Institution's public inquiry mail. VIARC also operates mobile information units out of doors during summer months and regularly conducts special tours of the Smithsonian Institution Building known as the Castle. VIARC also administers the Institution's exterior graphic information system. Other support services include recruiting and placing volunteers behind the scenes and operating an outreach program to promote previsit education and membership.

The Information Resources Division compiles, coordinates, and produces a variety of reference materials, information aids, and publications to support VIARC programs. This Division also oversees the prepublication review of visitor-oriented materials prepared by other Smithsonian offices.

Accelerated recruiting and training activity has increased the volunteer information specialists corps to more than 600. This level allows VIARC to staff the 74 daily information desk assignments and the Smithsonian Information Center. Outreach efforts continue to increase minority participation in this program. The Telephone Information Service handled more than 450,000 calls in FY 1989. The popular

Dial-A-Phenomenon recording on short-lived celestial events attracted thousands of interested callers. Specially recorded information telephone lines provided highlights of Smithsonian activities during Black History Month, Women's History Month, Asian-Pacific American Heritage Week, and Hispanic Heritage Month. The Public Inquiry Mail Service received and handled some 65,000 pieces of general information and research mail.

VIARC enhanced its exterior graphic information system with the installation of directional signs to the Anacostia Museum and general information directories on the Mall, a joint project of the National Park Service and the Smithsonian Institution.

Some 1,700 behind-the-scenes volunteers were active during the year, providing short- and long-term assistance on special projects including translation services in 38 languages.

IV. Office of Public Affairs - With base funding of 13 workyears and $676,000, the Office of Public Affairs (OPA) acquaints the public with the programs and policies of the Institution by working with newspapers, magazines, television, and radio to gain media exposure for its exhibits, public events, and research. A major goal of the Office is to encourage culturally and economically diverse audiences to take part in the many resources of the Smithsonian. With funding provided in FY 1990, the Office of Public Affairs will hire a clerk-typist to provide clerical support for its expanded outreach efforts to the Asian and Native American communities.

In an effort to describe these resources to the millions of people who are unable to visit the Smithsonian museums, the Office prepares the Smithsonian News Service, which provides more than 1,000 daily and weekly newspapers with a free, monthly package of four feature-style articles on subjects in art, history, science, technology, and contemporary life. The News Service translates one of the four articles into Spanish. This translation accompanies the English versions to 100 Hispanic and bilingual newspapers in the United States (including Puerto Rico) and Canada and more than two dozen newspapers and publications in Latin America. Based on the results of a FY 1989 readership survey, in FY 1990 the News Service will change its format to be more useful to its subscribers. It will, however, continue to emphasize stories of particular interest to culturally diverse audiences.

In FY 1989, OPA substantially expanded its programs to reach a broader range of ethnic communities, including African Americans, Hispanics, and native Americans. It also began a program of media outreach to Asian Americans with attendance at the Asian American Journalistic Association meeting in San Francisco. The programs involve the coordinated preparation and distribution of news releases, brochures, public service announcements for radio and television, and direct media contact. The theme of this program is "The Smithsonian Is for Everybody." OPA produced media-related programs for the African-American community, including a television public service announcement, radio and newspaper advertisements, a monthly calendar of events for African-American newspapers, and bus and subway posters. For Hispanic audiences, OPA also prepared news releases and radio public service announcements, a calendar of events, a television public service announcement, and a brochure of Latino resources. The Office coordinated the participation of the Smithsonian at the annual Hispanic Media Conference in FY 1989, thereby acquainting 1,200 journalists with the resources of the Smithsonian. This effort included a major address by Smithsonian Secretary Robert McC. Adams and an exhibition.

The staff also produced two television public service announcements with a multi-heritage focus. The Office successfully launched a native-American internship. The initial intern, a Seneca Indian, prepared an exhibit for the National Indian Educators Conference, developed new mailing lists, and designed a newsletter for outreach to tribal communities. The succeeding intern, a Pueblo Indian, continues this work.

OPA focuses on the communication of research activities to the media through direct contact with journalists, resulting in many major articles appearing in such national publications as the New York Times and the Washington Post. In FY 1988, the circulation of Research Reports, a periodical devoted to reports on research in the arts, history, and science, reached a record of nearly 55,000 readers, including the scholarly community, foundations, universities, and Smithsonian contributing members. As a result of a readership survey, the Office is also revising the format and contents of this publication to make it more useful to its broad constituencies. In addition, the Office completed writing a new booklet that describes behind-the-scenes research at the Smithsonian. When published in FY 1990, the booklet will be useful to United States and foreign researchers, journalists, and visiting dignitaries.

OPA prepares a wide variety of other publications, including the Smithsonian monthly staff newspaper, The Torch, visitor brochures in English and six other languages, a guide for disabled visitors, a brochure on the Smithsonian for journalists, a monthly calendar of events, and flyers for various bureaus such as the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute and the Anacostia Museum.

OPA conducts and coordinates extensive media campaigns on behalf of the Institution to publicize many events. In FY 1989, this included the observance of Hispanic Heritage Month, Black History Month, and Asian-Pacific American Heritage Week.

In addition, the Office designed and carried out media campaigns on behalf of the Anacostia Museum exhibition, "The Real McCoy: African-American Invention and Innovation, 1619-1930"; the International Gallery exhibition, "Caribbean Festival Arts"; the dedication of the new Mathias Laboratory at the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center; Smithsonian activities commemorating the bicentennial of the French Revolution; and the Festival of American Folklife. The Office also worked closely on advertising and publicity plans for the television series Smithsonian World, the Smithsonian Video Collection, and the Columbus Quincentenary.

OPA advises Smithsonian bureaus and offices on public information policies and programs. The Office monitors their public information materials, the Institution's many relations with corporate and other sponsors, and the advertising and promotional plans and materials of corporate sponsors. OPA informs management of public and media attitudes and needs.

The Office continues to receive acclaim for the work of its staff from the National Association of Government Communicators and the Society for Technical Communication.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Public Service requests $15,000 for Columbus Quincentenary activities in the Office of Public Affairs. The Smithsonian's pan-Institutional Columbus Quincentenary Program will commemorate the voyages of Columbus to the Americas through exhibitions, symposia, publications, and television. The Program will focus on cultural, historical, and scientific implications of the encounter between Europeans and indigenous peoples. Its issues will continue to be of global importance into the 21st century. As the Columbus Quincentenary will incorporate the contribution of Hispanic and native-American cultures, OPA will make a special effort to involve these audiences in the observances.

For FY 1991, the Office of Public Affairs requests an increase of $15,000 to support the costs of promotion of all Quincentenary activities on radio, including the production of radio ads ($3,000), and the purchase of radio air time ($12,000). The Institution anticipates that it will request additional funding in FY 1992 and FY 1993 to promote Quincentenary programs.

The requested funds will help make sure the public is aware of the Smithsonian's Columbus Quincentenary activities.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds:

I. Office of the Assistant Secretary for Public Service - Annual allotments provide for the salary, benefits, and support costs of staff members assigned to the immediate Office of the Assistant Secretary for Public Service and consultants for electronic media activities.

Trust funds also support expenses associated with the Office of Wider Audience Development, including the Cultural Education Committee, which fosters the development of pan-Institutional outreach efforts designed to attract diverse cultural audiences. A Special Purpose fund provides for the Educational Outreach Fund, which fosters research on improved, expanded, and innovative methods of outreach activity. While the projected expenditures for FY 1990 and FY 1991 appear under this Office, the recipient organizations reflect the actual expenditures for FY 1989.

II. Office of Telecommunications - An annual operating allotment provides support for nine full-time staff members and costs associated with the production of educational and informational materials for television, film, and radio. Nominal subscription fees received for the "Here at the Smithsonian" television series and "Radio Smithsonian" help defray production and distribution costs. The sale of films and video programs provides additional funds.

III. Visitor Information and Associates' Reception Center - An annual operating allotment supports the Center's work as the Institution's public service bureau responsible for the information and assistance activities.

IV. Office of Public Affairs - Allotments provide support for public outreach activities such as wider audience advertising with the African-American, Hispanic, native-American, and Asian-American media, public service announcements for radio and television, "Welcome" brochures for museum visitors, monthly newspaper advertisements of general Smithsonian events, and the Smithsonian employee newsletter.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION PRESS

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	27	1,214	40	18,799	-	56	-	7	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	29	1,269	40	19,490	-	-	-	-	-	-
-Base	29	1,294								
FY 1991 Estimate	29	1,391	41	17,651	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	29	0	29
11 Personnel Compensation	1,040	70	1,110
12 Personnel Benefits	153	12	165
21 Travel	3	0	3
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	6	0	6
24 Printing & Reproduction	40	0	40
25 Other Services	28	15	43
26 Supplies & Materials	15	0	15
31 Equipment	9	0	9
Total	1,294	97	1,391

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay		82	
Program Funds		15	

ABSTRACT - A member of the Association of American University Presses since 1966, the Smithsonian Institution Press (SIP) is responsible for editing, designing, producing, and distributing books, sound recordings, and other printed materials prepared by Smithsonian scientists, historians, and curators, as well as scholars from educational institutions around the world. Such materials also include research monographs, technical and scientific series, exhibition catalogues for Smithsonian museums, educational pamphlets, and informational leaflets.

For FY 1991, the Smithsonian Institution Press requests an increase of $15,000 to support the Columbus Quincentenary publishing program. The Institution requires $82,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The Federal publication activity of the Press is a fundamental extension of the Smithsonian's basic research activities. The scientific, technological, and historical monographs that the Press publishes propagate research by Smithsonian curators and staff experts to libraries, museums, research institutions, and interested members of the public throughout the United States and abroad. Because of the Smithsonian's extensive use of computers to compile research results, the Press is able to assemble a wholly electronic typescript of each federally funded research monograph. The Press's desktop publishing equipment eliminates the cost of phototypesetting for all of these publications. The resulting cost containment has enabled sponsoring Smithsonian bureaus to restrain the escalation of their publication budgets. In addition to publishing research findings, the Press edits and designs exhibition catalogues, educational pamphlets, and informational leaflets that serve the millions of visitors to the Smithsonian in Washington, D.C., and its extensive programs conducted nationwide and worldwide.

Additionally, the Press acts as the official agent of the Smithsonian Institution in procuring services from the Government Printing Office (GPO) to create government forms, museum guides, and instructions, as well as in providing professional assistance to Smithsonian authors upon request. The Press also edits, designs, and produces *Smithsonian Year*, the Institution's annual report to its Board of Regents and the Congress.

Federally funded books published during FY 1989 include *The Great Tzotzil Dictionary of Santo Domingo Zinacantan with Grammatical Analysis and Historical Commentary*, by Robert M. Laughlin with John B. Haviland (Smithsonian Contributions to Anthropology, no. 31); *Field and Laboratory Investigations from Victoria Land and the Thiel Mountains Region, Antarctica, 1982-1983 and 1983-1984*, edited by Ursula B. Marvin and Glenn J. MacPherson (Smithsonian Contributions to the Earth Sciences, no. 28); *Seagrasses*, by Ronald C. Phillips and Ernani G. Menez (Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences, no. 34); *The Autochthonous North American Musk Oxen Bootherium, Symbos, and Gidleva (Mammalia: Artiodactyla: Bovidae)*, by Jerry McDonald and Clayton E. Ray (Smithsonian Contributions to Paleobiology, no. 66); and *Technology in Miniature: American Textile Patent Models, 1819-1840*, by Barbara Suit Janssen (Smithsonian Studies in History and Technology, no. 49).

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the Smithsonian Institution Press requests an increase of $15,000 to support the Columbus Quincentenary publishing program. The planned Quincentenary observance of the Columbus landing of 1492 provides a matchless opportunity for the American people to reflect on the 500-year encounter between the Old and New Worlds. It is altogether appropriate that the Smithsonian Institution take a leading role in the coordination of a national program of research, reflection, and celebration. Within the constellation of exhibitions, new scholarship, and outreach activities planned by the Smithsonian, the publication of books for the general public and for the scholarly community is an especially important task.

At the center of the Press's Quincentenary publishing program is the *Columbian Consequences* project. This three-volume series addresses the social, demographic, ecological, and ideological repercussions of Columbus's arrival. Deliberately timed to *precede* the observances of 1992, the series explores the nature of early European-native-American interaction across the Spanish Borderlands, the area of Spanish colonial settlement in the New World running from northern California to Florida. The project is being carried out for the Press under the direction of Dr. David Hurst Thomas, member of the National Academy of Sciences and curator at the American Museum of Natural History, New York.

Columbian Consequences is prepared and offered in response to the dual challenge facing the American scholarly community as it looks toward the celebrations of 1992. Already a host of events, presentations, and exhibitions for the interested public, as well as symposia and specialized publications, reflect an upsurge in scholarly activity around issues raised by the Quincentenary. These generalized and specialist endeavors tend to proceed along parallel and nonintersecting tracks. Columbian Consequences represents a fundamental synthesis of these two approaches by exploring the range and diversity of contemporary thought about the encounter and by providing an interested public with an accurate and factual assessment of what did and what did not happen during that crucial period in America's, and the world's, history. Indeed, a principal reason for completing the series by 1991 is to provide this important and authoritative resource to all the community and educational groups preparing programs that explore the many aspects of the Quincentenary. Columbian Consequences, when completed, will represent at once the broadest and most academically up-to-date account of the Spanish colonial period available to the public.

This vast project draws together the research of more than 100 scholars in the fields of anthropology, archaeology, history, and geography and includes contributions from native-American scholars. The Press published the first volume by redirecting other resources, but requires additional funds as a one-time need for FY 1991 for honoraria for commissioned articles, preparation of maps, and partial support of Dr. Thomas's three years of research and editorial development of this complex project.

The Columbian observance of 1992 should be an occasion for the self-education of the American people at least as deep and far reaching as the American Revolution Bicentennial of 1976. The Columbian Consequences project will help to stimulate widespread public discussion on the social, demographic, ecological and ideological repercussions of this important historical period.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - The sale of Trust-funded books and recordings, royalties, and special publishing services produce these resources. The funds thus produced support the necessary services required to develop, market, warehouse, and distribute records and scholarly and general interest books published in connection with the Institution's research collections, exhibitions, and other programs.

University Press Division - Both the public and the scholarly media noted publication of several University Press titles this year, particularly Women of Deh Koh: Lives in an Iranian Village, by Erika Friedl; The Recovery of Meaning: Historical Archaeology in the Eastern United States, by Mark P. Leone and Parker B. Potter; Men and Women: Dressing the Part, by Claudia Brush Kidwell and Valerie Steele; Amelia Earhart, by Doris Rich; Albert Pinkham Ryder, by Elizabeth Broun; and Eyewitness to War: Prints and Daguerreotypes of the Mexican War, 1846-1848, edited by Martha Sandweiss, Rick Stewart, and Ben Huseman. At the same time, the Press continued to strengthen and deepen the subject diversity of its list by the quality and number (approximately 85) of books published in the fields of art, science, anthropology, archaeology, aviation, and history. The lead title in the Press' new publishing field of music is Thomas L. Riis's Just Before Jazz: Black Musical Theater in New York, 1890 to 1915, illustrated with photographs, sheet-music facsimiles, musical examples, and newspaper reviews.

The Press has announced a new series, the Smithsonian History of Aviation, and this year has published the lead title: Strike from the Sky: The History of Battlefield Air Attack, 1911-1945, by Richard P. Hallion. Other aviation titles published include High Honor: Recollections by Men and Women of World War II Aviation, edited by Stuart Leuthner and Oliver Jensen; Cierva Autogiros: The Development of Rotary-Wing Flight, by Peter W. Brooks; and (new in paperback) A Dream of Wings, by Tom D. Crouch.

The Smithsonian Series in Archaeological Inquiry was enhanced this year by publication of the first of two volumes reporting evidence of human habitation in the ancient site of Monte Verde: A Late Pleistocene Settlement in Chile, by Tom D. Dillehay. Off the press at almost the same time was the first volume of David Hurst Thomas's three-volume Quincentenary series on the Spanish Borderlands (the northern rim of New Spain): Columbian Consequences: The Californias, Texas, and the Southwestern Heartland. Volumes published in the Smithsonian Series in Ethnographic Inquiry include: Pilgrims of Paradox: Calvinism and Experience among the Primitive Baptists of the Blue Ridge, by James L. Peacock and Ruel W. Tyson, Jr.; Ritual Passage, Sacred Journey: The Form, Process, and Organization of Religious Movement, by Richard P. Werbner; Cloth and Human Experience, edited by Annette Weiner and Jane Schneider; and Symbolic Immortality by Sergei Kan.

Publishing in the natural sciences was notable for the Press in this fiscal year, with these titles in the lead: Sharks in Question: The Smithsonian Answer Book, by Victor G. Springer and Joy P. Gold; Turtles of the World, by Carl H. Ernst and Roger W. Barbour; Marine Plants of the Caribbean: A Field Guide from Florida to Brazil, by Diane Littler, Mark Littler, et al.; and The Restless Sun, by Donat G. Wentzel. The Press also announced a new series, the Smithsonian Series in Comparative Evolutionary Biology.

Smithsonian Collection of Recordings - The Recordings program publishes both popular recordings suitable for direct mail marketing to Smithsonian Associates and recordings of scholarly interest. During FY 1989, the program released Beethoven: Piano Trios, Op. 70 with the Castle Trio performing on original instruments. Another release was The Twelve Trio Sonatas, Op. 3 of Corelli, performed by the Smithsonian Chamber Players. Two more additions to the classical repertoire were recently released: Beethoven: Op. 18 String Quartets, and Hayden: Op. 77 String Quartets, both performed by the Smithson String Quartet. With its continuing emphasis on American contributions to our musical heritage, the Recordings program produced Jazz Piano, programmed by Martin Williams; American Musical Theater program annotated by Dwight Bowers; and two rereleases in the compact disc format: Revised Classic Jazz, programmed by Martin Williams; and American Popular Song, programmed by Dwight Bowers, James Morris, and J. R. Taylor. This year, for the fifth year in a row, a Smithsonian Collection release, The Classic Hoagy Carmichael, produced with the Indiana Historical Society, received nominations for National Academy of Recording Arts and Sciences (NARAS) "Grammy" awards in the categories of Best Historical Album and Best Album Notes.

Smithsonian Books - The "popular book" division of the Press, Smithsonian Books publishes books for a general audience on subjects that relate to Smithsonian collections and research interests. These books, marketed primarily by direct mail to Smithsonian Associates and other lists, are also available to the general public through licensing arrangements with several trade publishers, including the sales force of the University Press Division. Some of the titles currently available are: Lords of the Air: The Smithsonian Book of Birds; Images of America: A Panorama of History in Photographs; In the Age of Mankind: A Smithsonian Book of Human Evolution; Exploring the West; The Smithsonian Book of Flight; The Smithsonian Book of North American Indians; and Treasures of the Smithsonian. In addition, Smithsonian Books has successfully marketed a 60-minute video, The Magnificent Whales. The goal of the program is to continue publishing well-written, carefully researched, commercially successful, and critically well-acclaimed books and related videos.

For FY 1990, Smithsonian Books plans to publish an anthology of Smithsonian magazine articles to commemorate the 20th anniversary of the magazine, and a sequel to the Smithsonian Book of North American Indians titled After Columbus: The Indians of North America since the Coming of The Europeans, by Herman Viola.

OFFICE OF FOLKLIFE PROGRAMS

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	10	809	15	819	-	561	-	390	-	831
FY 1990 -Estimate -Base	9 9	1,027 1,034	15	795	-	100	-	618	-	1,800
FY 1991 Estimate	10	898	15	817	-	100	-	700	-	1,700

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	9	1	10
11 Personnel Compensation	371	33	404
12 Personnel Benefits	52	10	62
21 Travel	28	10	38
22 Transportation of Things	5	0	5
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	36	0	36
24 Printing & Reproduction	52	0	52
25 Other Services	452	-189	263
26 Supplies & Materials	20	0	20
31 Equipment	18	0	18
Total	1,034	(136)	898

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay		11	
Program Funds		-147	

ABSTRACT - The Office of Folklife Programs (OFP) researches, conserves, and presents living folklife traditions found in the United States and abroad. Major activities include the annual Festival of American Folklife, Smithsonian Folkways Records, the Smithsonian Folklife Studies series of publications and documentary films/recordings, research projects, museum exhibits, symposia for the Columbus Quincentenary, educational projects, and the Folklife and Folkways Archives. (For FY 1990 and prior years, budget information for the Office of Folklife Programs appeared in the Special Programs section as par of the American Studies and Folklife Programs line-item.)

For FY 1991, the Office of Folklife Programs requests 1 workyear and $50,000 for Columbus Quincentenary programs. The Institution requires $11,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item. The FY 1991 estimate reflects a reduction of $197,000 associated with nonrecurring costs for the French Bicentennial in FY 1990.

PROGRAM - The Office of Folklife Programs researches American and worldwide folklife traditions and publishes and presents research to scholarly and public audiences. OFP conserves folklife traditions through documentary and archival collections of music, narrative, performance, and material culture. The annual Festival of American Folklife, held on the Mall, gives national recognition to thousands of traditional musicians, craftspeople, and other artists. The Festival encourages participants to maintain and transmit their cultures to future generations. The Festival and other OFP activities also allow the public to learn about diverse American cultures and the cultures of other nations. OFP cooperates with other Federal and State agencies to advance the Nation's interest in folklife.

Research and Publications - OFP currently engages in research on folklife traditions in Hawai'i, the Virgin Islands, Washington, D.C., and Francophone America; the traditions of African-Americans in Philadelphia; immigrant cultures from Latin America and Southeast Asia; Navajo music; American-Indian cultural resource issues; and the culture of family farming in the United States. International projects include the study of African epics; Indian folk arts; Soviet and Soviet-American music and folklore; Indonesian culture; Senegalese folklore; and Caribbean and Brazilian music and culture.

OFP disseminates research through scholarly journals and presentations, Smithsonian Folkways Records, Quincentenary symposia, a program book published for the Festival of American Folklife, and the Smithsonian Folklife Studies series. Series releases this year include the documentary film D.C. Firefighters and a monograph on Tule technology. Other scholarly projects include articles on cultural representation and conservation, publications on native-American culture, African epic traditions, Caribbean cultural history and folklife, and a radio series on diverse American and world folk traditions. Smithsonian Folkways newly released albums, with scholarly notes, include Musics of Hawai'i, Caribbean Social Music, Cajun Social Music, Puerto Rican Music in Hawai'i, Hawaiian Drum Chants, Big Bill Broonzy Sings Folk Songs, various children's albums by Ella Jenkins, and American folk music albums of Pete Seeger, Leadbelly, Woody Guthrie, Elizabeth Cotten, and Phil Ochs.

Exhibitions and Public Programs - The Smithsonian's Festival of American Folklife, held annually on the Mall since 1967, has stimulated broad interest in traditional culture and provides a model for the research-based presentation of culture. The 1989 Folklife Festival featured programs on Hawai'i, the cultural conservation of native-American cultures, and Creolization in Caribbean culture. The French Bicentennial afforded a timely and unique opportunity to present Festival programs on French culture in France and North America. In 1990, the Festival will feature programs on the U.S. Virgin Islands, Senegal, and the music of struggle. The Music of Struggle program at the 1990 Festival of American Folklife will examine through performance and workshops the ways that folk communities in the United States and worldwide have utilized traditional music as a unifier and source of strength when facing contemporary challenges. The Festival will draw an estimated 1.5 million visitors.

The Festival has effects beyond the Mall: Hawai'i, featured in the 1989 Festival, plans to restage the exhibition in that State and has expanded its folk arts program. Previous Festivals have generated research materials for scholars of folklore, ethnomusicology, and social anthropology in Louisiana, Tennessee, Michigan, and Massachusetts. As a national and international model for the research-based living presentation of culture, the Festival hosted observers from several other nations, a variety of State arts agencies, and U.S. universities and other festivals and institutes.

During FY 1990, OFP scholars will participate in a symposium "Seeds of Industrialization," the third in a series of Quincentenary symposia dealing with New World cropping systems and related cultural expressions. Through the Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service, OFP is currently touring "The Grand Generation," an exhibition on the folklife of the elderly, and "Stand by Me: African American Expressive Culture in Philadelphia," a photo-text exhibit. Future plans include museum and traveling exhibitions on Southeast Asian immigrants, and American-Indian cultural continuity.

For FY 1991, OFP plans Festival programs on the cultural importance of the family farm in the U.S. heartland, Indonesian folklife, and native American cultural use of land. OFP plans future programs with the States of New Mexico, Washington, and Missouri. Other plans include programs on the folklife traditions resulting from Columbus's voyages and the subsequent juxtaposition of cultures. OFP is discussing country programs with Algeria, China, the Soviet Union, the Arab Gulf States, Thailand, Australia, Pakistan, Spain, and many Latin American nations.

Archives and Education - The Folklife and Folkways Archives contain audiotapes, records, videotapes, photographic images and film, paper files, and books documenting folklife traditions from all parts of the United States and some 47 countries. Highlights of the collection include materials on occupational folklife, family folklore, immigration stories, American musical traditions, and the performance traditions of African-Americans, American Indians, and other ethnic groups.

The Archives is a valuable resource for ongoing research. In FY 1990, visiting fellows will use the Archives to research American folk musics, Caribbean culture, Southeast Asian immigrant folktales, Pakistani folk beliefs, and other topics. Major archival activities include accessioning Folkways materials and conserving and cataloguing folklife materials.

Educational projects include developing OFP materials for schools around the country and hosting the Summer Folklore Institute for community-based "amateur" researchers, particularly from minority groups. This unique program enables 12 community scholars annually to join with museum and academic experts to develop a broad-based strategy for studying and representing diverse, grass-roots American traditions.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the Office of Folklife Programs requests 1 workyear and $50,000 for Columbus Quincentenary programs. The Columbus Quincentenary is a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity for all the peoples of the Americas to see the important contributions made by their ancestors to contemporary American culture.

As part of the Smithsonian's Quincentenary programs, the Office of Folklife Programs will present "living exhibitions" on the National Mall; a series of three symposia dealing with cultural expressions from agricultural, commercial, and industrial societies in the Americas; a scholarly program of folklore, ethnographic and ethnomusical research; and associated publications. The first "living exhibition" entitled "The Caribbean: Cultural Encounters in the New World" was presented at the annual 1989 Festival of American Folklife in June-July. The Festival's "living exhibitions," as opposed to the exhibitions of conventional museums, use people who play music, make crafts, and tell stories from their own cultures, rather than using a static exhibition of objects to communicate those traditions.

The requested increase will provide an expanded base of 2 workyear and $160,000 to allow OFP to continue to research and develop the "living exhibitions" to be presented on the Mall in FY 1991 and FY 1992. This presentation in FY 1991 will examine the expressive culture, including occupational folklore, music, rituals, and crafts associated with the agricultural and subsistence activities of native peoples throughout the Western hemisphere. Research will concentrate on traditional folklife associated with pre-Columbian agricultural systems that have survived, adapted, or changed over the past 500 years. OFP will conduct field research in selected but varied New World settings and employ scholars and experts from within the studied culture groups. Research will document:

-- practitioners of indigenous ethnobotany and medicine;

-- the occupational knowledge and skills associated with native hunting, gathering, and garden cultivating;

-- craft, musical, ritual, and performance traditions associated with the production, distribution, and celebration of native foodstuffs and materials such as corn, potatoes, wild rice, fish, animal horns, and skins.

With funding provided in FY 1990, the Office of Folklife Programs will hire a clerk-typist to provide clerical support for these Quincentenary activities. For FY 1991, the increased funding will permit OFP to hire a program coordinator (1 workyear and $32,000) to take over program development from existing staff as the demands for this responsibility expand to a full-time requirement. In addition, the FY 1991 request will provide increased funding to support the expanded requirements for contract researchers, travel, and documentation expenses ($18,000). OFP will document the living exhibitions, the symposia, and the prerequisite field research on which the exhibitions and symposia are based, using audio, video, and written media.

With the Columbus Quincentenary, Americans from several nations will enjoy a common celebration of their diverse cultures. Participants will see not only the contribution of their own heritage to modern American culture, but also the impact of many nations' traditions, crafts, and skills on the American way of life.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Allotments and concessions at the Festival of American Folklife provide these funds, which support salaries and related program costs. The Smithsonian's Educational Outreach, Special Exhibition, and Research Opportunities Funds support such projects as the Summer Folklore

Institute, the planning of an exhibition on the experience of Southeast Asian immigrants, and the conduct of scholarly research.

Restricted Funds - Individual gifts and grants from private foundations and corporations provide these funds, which OFP uses for specific programs or components. Funds in FY 1989 from the Hawai'i Visitors Bureau helped support the Hawai'i program. The American Committee on the French Revolution provided partial support for the French culture program at the Festival of American Folklife. Grants from the Music Performance Trust Funds supported the American-Indian and Caribbean programs. Additional gifts aided the publication of Folkways Records and supported other projects.

Government Grants and Contracts - Various State and local governments provide these funds to support performances and programs at the annual Festival of American Folklife. In FY 1989, OFP received these funds to support the Hawai'i program.

ACADEMIC AND EDUCATIONAL PROGRAMS

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	13	836	7	709	-	73	-	133	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	17	841	9	795	-	2	-	155	-	-
-Base	17	856								
FY 1991 Estimate	17	846	9	817	-	2	-	6	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	17	0	17
11 Personnel Compensation	571	11	582
12 Personnel Benefits	112	2	114
21 Travel	10	0	10
22 Transportation of Things	1	0	1
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	7	0	7
24 Printing & Reproduction	42	0	42
25 Other Services	83	-23	60
26 Supplies & Materials	20	0	20
31 Equipment	10	0	10
Total	856	(10)	846

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	13
Program Funds	-23

ABSTRACT - Research and education are among the principal objectives of the Smithsonian. To attain these goals, the Institution promotes scholarly and academic ties with other learned institutions and offers resources to the general public as well as the academic community. Scholarly and academic ties develop and flourish through programs in higher education, symposia and seminars, and learning opportunities at the elementary and secondary levels. This line-item includes the Office of Interdisciplinary Studies (OIS), the Office of Elementary and Secondary Education (OESE), and the National Science Resources Center (NSRC). (For FY 1990 and

prior years, the Academic and Educational Programs budget line-item appeared in the Special Programs section. The Office of Fellowships and Grants, formerly presented in this line-item, is now a component of the Assistant Secretary for Research budget line-item.)

For FY 1991, the Office of Elementary and Secondary Education requests to retain $15,000 of the $38,000 provided to OESE in FY 1989 for its Columbus Quincentenary program to support a program for school teachers and administrators in conjunction with the Columbus Quincentenary. The Institution requires $13,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM:

I. Office of Interdisciplinary Studies - With base funding of 4 workyears and $172,000, the Office of Interdisciplinary Studies explores gaps in scholarship. The Office presents findings of new research in the physical, natural, and human sciences and the humanities. Through symposia, colloquia, and seminars, the Office raises questions about issues and trends in modern civilization and publishes books and other educational materials based on these encounters. Thus, it serves both internal and external audiences. It is a vital public service link between the Smithsonian and partners in the world of learning.

In October 1989, OIS presented its tenth international symposium entitled, "Les Droits de L'Homme and Scientific Progress." Sponsored by both the Smithsonian and the National Academy of Sciences, the symposium was the scholarly centerpiece of the United States' commemoration of the 200th anniversary of the French Revolution, the United States Bill of Rights, and the Declaration of the Rights of Man and the Citizen. Leading members of the science and technology communities of France and the United States, took part, first at Thomas Jefferson's Monticello and the University of Virginia in Charlottesville, Virginia, and then in Washington, D.C. As with all its international symposia, the Office will publish a book and other educational materials based on information derived from the symposium.

As an outgrowth of a five-day international symposium, in 1987, entitled "Constitutional Roots, Rights, and Responsibilities," OIS completed a video entitled Democracy and Rights: One Citizen's Challenge. The production, a joint project with the Close-Up Foundation, explored the story of one citizen's pursuit of equal rights in the context of desegregation. Participants in the video production included Justice Sandra Day O'Connor, who served as narrator, and officials of the Close-Up Foundation. On May 2, 1989, OIS hosted the premiere screening of the video and received favorable responses from such viewers as Justice Lewis Powell, Justice O'Connor, and Smithsonian Regent Jeannine Clark. As a sequel to the video, OIS plans to produce another film documentary to emphasize duties and responsibilities that make the Constitutional system work.

For FY 1990, OIS will inaugurate a series of seminars, "Research on Contemporary Cultures and Civilizations," modeled in part on the World War II series at Columbia University organized by Ruth Benedict and Margaret Mead. Comparative studies of three cultures (including the United States) in each seminar will enhance Americans' understanding of other cultures and shed light on the multi-ethnic aspects of American culture. The seminars will focus on key myths and symbols around which plural societies and minorities organize their identities. Participants will examine childhood socialization to find out how individuals learn to become adults in different kinds of cultures. Insight and data from the seminars--particularly on problems the United States has in communicating with other cultures--will eventually reach wider audiences through publications.

Consultation is under way in native-American research and educational institutions and other national and international arenas for ideas to incorporate in the 1992 symposium, "Exploring the Unknown," to be held as part of the Smithsonian's commemoration of the Columbus Quincentenary.

In FY 1990, as part of the Institution's Special Employment Initiative, Congress provided funding for a program specialist position. The new position enables the Office of Interdisciplinary Studies to develop more major symposia, colloquia and seminars directed at minority audiences and to increase public awareness and understanding of other ethnic American cultures.

II. Office of Elementary and Secondary Education - With base funding of 8 workyears and $409,000, the Office of Elementary and Secondary Education is the Smithsonian's central education office. It designs, develops, and implements Institution-wide programming in education. OESE disseminates the products of this programming locally, nationally, and internationally. It also develops Institution-wide policies and goals for education. National programs that exceed the scope of the individual museums and their respective education offices receive special attention.

OESE offers many programs to encourage cooperation and exchange of information between the Smithsonian and schools in the metropolitan Washington area. Let's Go, a newsletter published five times a year, informs more than 11,000 Washington area educators about the variety of learning opportunities available at the Smithsonian. In addition, a multi-disciplinary workshop and seminar program for teachers includes one-week courses on topics such as teaching life sciences through direct observation, using primary source materials to interpret history, and teaching American cultural history through art. Accredited by all metropolitan area school systems, these courses have served more than 350 teachers and administrators in FY 1989.

To share these same teaching concepts with a national audience, OESE distributes free to schools across the country the quarterly newsletter, ART TO ZOO. Since 1976, ART TO ZOO has been a highly regarded publication and a staple of OESE programming. It represents a cost-effective way of interpreting Smithsonian resources for a large and culturally diverse constituency of teachers, students, and museum educators. Currently, ART TO ZOO reaches more than 70,000 teachers (and two million students) in more than 25,000 schools; in addition, it goes to more than 100 museums that use it in program planning. This publication costs the Institution less than 27 cents per issue, a very low per teacher price. OESE also circulates, free of charge, slide-loan packages and curriculum kits, which reach an estimated 5,000 students yearly.

Under the terms of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, the Smithsonian is legally responsible for making its programs accessible to people with disabilities. To help the Institution fulfill this responsibility, OESE has created a program that now serves as the central Smithsonian resource on museum access. The program offers staff and docent-training sessions and programs for and about disabled individuals. It also provides sign language instruction for Smithsonian employees and sign language interpreters for a wide range of Smithsonian programs. Since 1983, the demand for interpreter services has increased by more than 50 percent. Throughout FY 1989, the Office continued to make Smithsonian programs accessible to disabled visitors. This effort included, in addition to the above activities, dissemination of a manual and videotape package designed to help museums, zoos, and historic sites across the country serve disabled people. OESE distributed the package to more than 300 organizations.

To commemorate the Columbus Quincentenary, OESE is developing a series of multicultural education packets written in English, Spanish, and Portuguese. The packets will introduce preschool age children to the cultural and animal life of the Americas. In addition, OESE will develop curriculum materials around the themes of a special Quincentenary television series. For FY 1991, OESE plans to undertake a program to provide elementary and secondary educators with knowledge and resources to help them improve their teaching about Latin America.

III. National Science Resources Center - With base funding of 5 workyears and $260,000, the National Science Resources Center is a joint undertaking of the Smithsonian Institution and the National Academy of Sciences to improve the quality of science and mathematics teaching in the Nation's schools. The NSRC identifies, develops, and disseminates science and mathematics teaching materials that are imaginative, classroom tested, and scientifically up to date. The Center also organizes leadership development institutes for science teachers and other school system personnel. These institutes encourage sharing of successful resource materials and help build a talent pool to staff local program improvement efforts. NSRC staff works with teachers, state and local school systems, research scientists, educational and scientific organizations, science museums, private foundations, and corporations to develop these programs.

In 1987, the Smithsonian and the National Academy of Sciences established an advisory board for the National Science Resources Center that includes representatives from several major corporations, eminent scientists, and educational leaders throughout the country. The board counsels the NSRC executive director on broad policy issues and helps set priorities for the Center's programmatic activities.

Because there is a special need to increase the scientific and technological literacy of young children, NSRC has undertaken several projects to improve the teaching of science in the Nation's elementary schools. NSRC's Elementary Science Resource Collection and Computer Information data base is used by school systems and science museums that are initiating projects to improve the teaching of science in elementary schools. The data base includes bibliographic information and brief annotations about the materials in the Elementary Science Resource Collection. The data base is available to school systems across the Nation through a computer telecommunications network.

NSRC has also published an elementary science resource guide entitled Science for Children: Resources for Teachers. In addition to information about the materials in the Elementary Science Resource Collection, this guide includes a directory of science museums and other organizations that provide hands-on science kits and assistance to elementary school teachers. NSRC has distributed copies of this guide to the Nation's 16,000 superintendents of schools and members of the National Science Supervisors Association. Teachers, principals, parents, and the general public can obtain copies of Science for Children from the National Academy Press.

"Science and Technology for Children" (STC) is a four-year elementary science curriculum development project. The project is developing curriculum units for grades 1-6 in the areas of physical science, life science, earth science, and technology. STC units use simple, inexpensive materials to teach science and link science to the broader elementary school curriculum by emphasizing reading, writing, art, and mathematics. Teachers across the country will field-test STC units to refine and validate them.

NSRC is developing a network of teachers, scientists, science educators, and school administrators who are working to improve the teaching of elementary school science. NSRC also sponsors leadership development institutes to prepare selected teachers, science supervisors, and principals to organize hands-on elementary science programs in their school districts. These institutes help school systems arrange effective in-service education programs, establish science materials support systems, and develop community support for their hands-on science programs.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM CHANGE - With funding of $38,000 provided in FY 1989 and FY 1990, OESE is developing educational materials for preschool teachers and students in commemoration of the Columbus Quincentenary. For FY 1991, OESE requests to retain a portion of this funding ($15,000) to undertake a second project for the Quincentenary.

In 1985, the Smithsonian initiated planning for a pan-Institutional program to commemorate the 500th anniversary of the landing of Christopher Columbus in the Americas. The Institution's commitment to move beyond traditional Euro-centric interpretations to highlight the experience and contributions of all peoples affected by the Columbus landfall in the Americas has invigorated its plans to commemorate the Columbus Quincentenary.

As part of this multi-cultural perspective, the Office of Elementary and Secondary Education will concentrate its efforts in FY 1991 to help elementary and secondary educators improve their skills for teaching their students about Latin America. The program's three components are: a two-and-one-half-day symposium; a one-hour video; and a special issue of the periodical ART TO ZOO. In addition, the Office will publish a report on the symposium.

The symposium's focus will be the effects of cultural transplantation--from Latin America to the United States--on the folk art traditions of storytelling, textile arts, and music. OESE will develop this theme through scholarly presentations, performances by Latin-American artists, and workshop sessions demonstrating specific ways that teachers can apply in their classrooms the knowledge and insights they have gained from the performances and presentations.

The one-hour video will document the performances, while a special issue of ART TO ZOO will show teachers how to use multi-cultural resources in their own communities for teaching about Latin America. The video, the conference report, and the special issue of ART TO ZOO will be available as a package to schools across the country.

OESE will use the retained funding to cover the costs of the performance ($2,500), the symposium ($8,500) and to publish the symposium report ($4,000). OESE will seek outside funding for the video.

With the Columbus Quincentenary observance fast approaching, students in elementary and secondary schools around the country will soon take a renewed interest in learning about the experience and contributions of all peoples affected by the Columbus landfall in the Americas and about the effects of cultural transplantation. As a result of this program, their teachers will be better prepared to answer their questions and to use up-to-date multi-cultural resources to give the students a better understanding of the historical significance of the Quincentenary.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

I. Office of Interdisciplinary Studies:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - An annual allotment from unrestricted funds provides funding for salaries and partial office support. In addition, an annual allotment supports certain program development costs including honoraria, publications, and travel costs for speakers appearing in symposia and colloquia.

Restricted Funds - Funds provided are in the form of restricted endowments that specify the use of donations or bequests and of gifts and foundation grants by individuals, organizations, or corporations for specific purposes. Examples of these funds are the Sergei N. Grimm endowment, which finances research related to scientific urban planning, and the Barrick W. Groom endowment, which perpetuates both inter-bureau and inter-disciplinary programs. During FY 1989, OIS received grants from the Florence Gould Foundation and the John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation for the international symposium entitled, "Les Droits de L'Homme And Scientific Progress."

II. Office of Elementary and Secondary Education:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - As part of the Institution's affirmative action effort, a Career Awareness Program (CAP) for the District of Columbia Public Schools introduces minority young people to career opportunities at the Smithsonian. OESE plans and runs CAP with help from the various Smithsonian museums, whose staff members work directly with the students, providing first an overview and then more profound exposure to a wide variety of Smithsonian careers. Through the District's Summer Youth Employment Program, 50 CAP graduates from this and past years worked at the Smithsonian during the summer of 1989. In a related effort and in collaboration with Washington, D.C.'s School Without Walls, OESE initiated a program in which high school students publish their own newsletter about the Smithsonian for dissemination to other schools in the area.

In FY 1989, the Office continued to sponsor regional workshops in communities across the United States to promote the use of museums as educational resources. These one-day events in Wilmington, North Carolina; Amarillo, Texas; and Tallahassee, Florida reached an estimated 1,000 teachers and school administrators. In addition, OESE collaborated with WETA to develop a series of teacher's guides to the 1989-1990 season of "Smithsonian World."

The High School Intern Program, now in its 14th year, gave 40 graduating seniors an opportunity to participate in a learning-service program at the Smithsonian, working behind the scenes with curators and other museum professionals. Young people from all 50 states and the District of Columbia are eligible to apply for admission to either of two five-week sessions.

In July 1989, the Office convened the third annual meeting of the Smithsonian Advisory Council on Education, bringing a panel of seven outside experts to the Institution to advise about developing programs for teenage audiences. In a related effort, the Office convened monthly meetings of education staff from throughout the Institution to discuss issues of common concern. For Smithsonian educators, the Office offered a seminar series on program evaluation in collaboration with the special assistant to the Secretary on institutional studies.

III. National Science Resources Center:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - An allotment from unrestricted funds provides partial funding for the core operations of the National Science Resources Center. These resources provide support for salaries and core support necessary for the development, with the assistance of the National Academy of Sciences, of program initiatives to attract further support from the private sector.

Restricted Funds - Funds provided are in the form of gifts and grants from individuals, organizations, or corporations. A grant from the John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation supports "Science and Technology for Children," a four-year elementary science curriculum development project.

INTERNATIONAL ACTIVITIES

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	11	740	11	546	-	557	-	180	-	71
FY 1990 -Estimate -Base	12 12	916 929	10	692	-	150	-	-	-	-
FY 1991 Estimate	13	990	10	648	-	150	-	-	-	-

* FTE - Full-time equivalent
**FTP - Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	12	1	13
11 Personnel Compensation	445	47	492
12 Personnel Benefits	64	12	76
21 Travel	35	0	35
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	10	0	10
24 Printing & Reproduction	7	0	7
25 Other Services	330	2	332
26 Supplies & Materials	38	0	38
Total	929	61	990

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	21
Program Funds	40

ABSTRACT - The International Center monitors, coordinates, and enhances Smithsonian-wide international endeavors. The Center provides support for the diverse range of Smithsonian international programs through the work of several independent divisions: the Office of International Relations; the International Gallery; the Office of Quincentenary Programs; and the Office of Conference Services. Through the International Center, the Smithsonian also supports international research programs, such as UNESCO's Man and the Biosphere Program and the Council of American Overseas Research Centers.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests an increase of 1 workyear and $40,000 to continue pan-Institutional planning for the Columbus Quincentenary. The Institution requires $21,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - From its inception, the Smithsonian has been an international institution. During the course of the past 140 years, Smithsonian researchers have spanned the globe, forming unique collections and establishing a worldwide network of correspondents and collaborators. Today, the Institution's international activities take place on a number of different levels, from informal scholar-to-scholar contacts to highly structured Institutional programs.

In FY 1985, the Smithsonian established the Directorate of International Activities to advance the global objectives of the Smithsonian's charter by facilitating its international research and encouraging collaborative work abroad. Following an internal program review in FY 1987, the Institution reorganized the various parts of the former Directorate of International Activities into a new International Center in April 1988. A fundamental objective of the Center is to help place the Institution's scholarly work at the service of the general public as it seeks to understand a changing international scene. Located in the S. Dillon Ripley Center of the Quadrangle Complex, the International Center provides facilities for discourse and exhibitions on a wide array of international matters. Bureau-generated programs fostered by the International Center include conferences, symposia, seminars, exhibitions, lectures, performances, film showings, and workshops. An International Activities Council, composed of the Assistant Secretaries for Research, Museums, Public Service, and External Affairs, provides oversight and policy guidance for the International Center as well as for the broad range of international programs undertaken throughout the Institution.

As part of the reorganization that established the International Center, the Smithsonian created or combined several offices to provide Institution-wide support and coordinating services: the Office of International Relations, the International Gallery, the Office of Quincentenary Programs, and the Office of Conference Services. Responsibility for the individual offices of the International Center is divided among the Assistant Secretaries on the International Activities Council.

Office of International Relations - The Office of International Relations (OIR), which reports to the Assistant Secretary for External Affairs, provides basic liaison support and coordination for the international aspects of Smithsonian research and museum programs. This responsibility includes:

-- supplying guidance and information on foreign affairs and international relations;

-- facilitating communications and logistical arrangements for research and participation in meetings abroad;

-- assisting in drafting and negotiating agreements relating to international cooperative programs;

-- assisting foreign scholars and officials who visit the Smithsonian or participate in its programs in the United States;

-- compiling and updating the "Profile of Smithsonian International Activities";

-- obtaining passports and visas for Smithsonian travelers.

The Office also manages the Smithsonian Special Foreign Currency Program and other international research exchange grants programs.

International Gallery - The International Gallery, which reports to the Assistant Secretary for Museums, presents exhibitions that deal with significant global topics from various disciplinary points of view or cultural perspectives. The first two exhibitions presented in the International Gallery, "Generations" and "Tropical Rainforests: A Disappearing Treasure" illustrate this emphasis. "Generations" explored the richness and diversity of cultures from ancient times to the present as they celebrate the art and rituals associated with birth. "Tropical Rainforests" examined the destruction of the Earth's most biologically diverse habitat, using a cross-disciplinary approach that drew extensively upon research conducted at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute, the National Museum of Natural History, the National Zoological Park, and other international research centers.

The third International Gallery Exhibition, "Caribbean Festival Arts" opened in June 1989. Organized by the Saint Louis Art Museum, this exhibition focuses on the arts of three pan-Caribbean festivals: a widely celebrated masquerade commonly known as Jonkonnu, an Islamic festival commemorating the death of Hussein, and the pre-Lenten Carnival culminating in Mardi Gras. Exhibits explore the European, Middle Eastern, and African sources for festival themes, costumes, and accoutrements; the development of these arts in the Caribbean; their present reality in the lives of Caribbean populations; and the diffusion of these festivals to sites such as New York, Toronto, Miami, New Orleans, and London. Public programs related to this exhibition take place in the Caribbean marketplace reconstructed in the open Concourse area of the S. Dillon Ripley Center. The International Center is disseminating information about the exhibition to West Indian communities in particular, which have not routinely visited the Smithsonian.

Office of Quincentenary Programs - The Office of Quincentenary Programs, which reports to the Assistant Secretary for Research, coordinates and supports the development of a wide range of programs at the Smithsonian to commemorate the 500th anniversary of Christopher Columbus' landfall in the Americas. For the Smithsonian, the occasion offers an opportunity to take a closer look at the past, present, and future implications of this anniversary. The Smithsonian promotes the development of a centrally coordinated, pan-Institutional Quincentenary program to reflect the diversity of Smithsonian research interests and provide the general public with a broader perspective on the significance of the Columbian voyages.

Twenty bureaus and offices of the Smithsonian are planning programs in collaboration with scholars from throughout the United States and abroad. This interdisciplinary and international dimension will highlight the experiences and contributions of all peoples who were affected by Columbus' voyages of exploration. Through these programs, the Smithsonian aims to present an alternative to traditionally Eurocentric interpretations of the history of the Americas.

To inform the public about all the Quincentenary activities at the Smithsonian and to provide a forum for discussion of relevant themes, the Office will publish a quarterly newsletter, "The New World," with editions in English, Spanish, and Portuguese beginning in 1990. As part of the Institution's Special Employment

Initiative, funding for a program specialist position was provided in FY 1990. This position is responsible for the coordination and continued development of "The New World," as well as the development of a database of contacts from the academic, professional and business communities in Latin America.

The Office of Quincentenary Programs is working with other Smithsonian bureaus, as well as with scholars from native-American, African-American, Hispanic, and other minority communities. Currently, the Office is completing the development of educational materials and a game related to the symposium "Ice Age Origins: Americans Before Columbus." A series of scholarly and public symposia will continue through 1992, exploring a diverse range of topics related to the encounters of cultures. These programs involve scholars from the Smithsonian, and other institutions in the United States and Latin America. The Smithsonian will publish symposia proceedings and, in some instances, Smithsonian staff will develop thematically relevant educational materials for varying grade levels. In keeping with its interest in developing outreach activities, the Office has established the American Indian Outreach Program to plan a traveling exhibition on ethnobotanical themes. In collaboration with native-American educational and tribal centers, the exhibition will circulate to native-American communities across the country. The Office coordinates plans for "The Buried Mirror," a five-part television series written and narrated by Carlos Fuentes. The series is the centerpiece of the Smithsonian's Quincentenary commemoration.

In spring 1989, the Smithsonian and the University of Maryland co-sponsored a scholarly symposium entitled "Violence and Resistance in the Americas: The Legacy of Conquest." Teachers, professors, students, and the interested public attended the two-day event. In the fall of 1990, the Office will sponsor a public symposium entitled "The Image of Women in the Americas: Myth and Reality." Plans for future Quincentenary symposia include a teleconference that will focus on ecological exploitation and cultural diversity using the Andean region as a case model. The symposium will use satellites to link communities throughout the hemisphere. During 1991, the Office will organize a symposium on the Americas in cooperation with a number of Ibero-American countries.

The Smithsonian's Columbus Quincentenary commemoration will also serve as the basis for the establishment of a permanent program focusing on the history and cultures of the Americas. As part of this plan, the Institution has initiated several programs that lend themselves to a permanent presence after the Quincentenary year is past. They include the Program in Hispanic American History at the National Museum of American History, the American Indian Outreach Project, an "Institute of the Americas" and the Smithsonian Quincentenary Council of the Americas. The Office of Quincentenary Programs is coordinating bureau-based planning for the last three of these initiatives.

After the Quincentenary, the American Indian Outreach Project will continue to develop programs that will appeal to the interests of American Indian communities. The Smithsonian would circulate these exhibitions outside of Washington and publish related materials for distribution to American Indian students.

As another long-term initiative developing out of the Quincentenary, the Smithsonian is looking into the possibility of establishing an entity with the provisional title of "Institute of the Americas," which should facilitate a scholarly exchange concerning intellectual, cultural, ecological and other issues that affect this hemisphere. This issue-oriented approach can help to solve such problems as the exploitation of our natural and cultural resources. Non-Smithsonian scholars and policy makers will come to the Institution to pursue research in these fields and to share their ideas and perspectives with Smithsonian staff. The Institution is currently planning first to create a Quincentenary Council of the Americas in support of the Quincentenary and then found the proposed Institute. The Office of Quincentenary Programs is currently identifying prominent businessmen and scholars from the United States, Latin America and the Caribbean to serve on this Council. In this capacity, members will establish goals, identify problems and issues on which to focus, and help to secure funding for the Institute.

Office of Conference Services - The Office of Conference Services, which reports to the Assistant Secretary for Public Service, schedules and coordinates conferences and workshops initiated by scholars and staff throughout the Institution. Each year the Smithsonian sponsors approximately 50 professional meetings, ranging from small workshops to major international conferences. For many years, the responsibility for handling all of the logistics of each meeting, from the early conceptual stages through the actual meeting, rested exclusively with the sponsoring research or curatorial department. Faced with these additional duties, the departments or bureaus often found it necessary to hire temporary coordinators. To deal more efficiently with such organizational details and logistical matters, the Institution created a central Office of Conference Services in 1988. This Office now works with sponsoring bureaus, offering the necessary level of support for specific meetings on a case-by-case basis. In FY 1989, for example, the Office handled the logistical arrangements for several dozen conferences, including the Forum on Global Change, the Eighth Triennial Symposium on African Art, and the third annual World Food Colloquium.

Support for International Research - In addition to the new offices established within the International Center, the Smithsonian continues to support other programs in international research under the International Center umbrella. Primary among these programs are the Smithsonian Institution/Man and the Biosphere Biological Diversity Program and the affiliated, independent Council of American Overseas Research Centers.

Smithsonian Institution/Man and the Biosphere Biological Diversity Program - In 1986, the International Center, in cooperation with the National Museum of Natural History and UNESCO's Man and the Biosphere Program, established a new program to formulate biological diversity inventory procedures and administer training in their use. Based on studies and surveys conducted in several protected areas of the United States and Latin America, including the Smokey Mountains of Tennessee, Bolivia, Peru, Ecuador, and Puerto Rico, the program developed an initial methodology for conducting detailed biological diversity inventories of species-rich areas around the world.

Though useful institutional linkages have also resulted from this program, its most important objective is the training of biologists, conservationists, managers of protected areas, and related professionals from developing countries. This training provides researchers in the field of biodiversity conservation from these countries with the skills and education necessary to independently manage and conserve their natural resources. In a number of cases, these trained researchers have later undertaken fieldwork in association with Smithsonian counterpart scholars. This program has organized training workshops for almost 200 participants in several countries of Latin America and the Caribbean, as well as in the United States. The United States Agency for International Development (USAID), Man and the Biosphere

Program, the World Heritage Fund, the World Wildlife Fund, and Conservation International have funded training activities over the last three years.

With funding provided in FY 1990, the International Center will hire a program manager for the Program. Important goals of the Program in FY 1991 include:

-- to provide a team of 16-20 researchers, educators, conservationists, nature reserve managers, and other key individual from five Latin American countries with basic training in the principles of biological diversity conservation, the management of protected areas, ecology, and related biological research;

-- to arrange exchanges of scientific and technical expertise through consultations and training workshops, utilizing regionally or nationally recognized experts;

-- to institutionalize these short-term intensive courses in five Latin American countries, so that authorities there may provide their own national, regional, and international training in future years.

Council of American Overseas Research Centers (CAORC) - American overseas research centers are the recognized extensions of the advanced foreign research programs of major American universities and museums. They constitute the channel through which research information about countries important to United States interests invigorates American academic institutions. These centers operate in Italy, Greece, Turkey, Cyprus, Tunisia, Morocco, Iran, Egypt, Jordan, Israel, Yemen, India, Pakistan, and Hong Kong. They provide fellowship funds, access to local research resources, logistical support, liaison with host-country officials, and library and housing facilities to thousands of American academics. The facilities of each center offer contacts for American scholars and their host-country colleagues, and their publication and seminar programs disseminate research results worldwide. The private structure of the centers and the unbiased research they promote make them respected focuses of American academia in the countries in which they operate. As a result, they contribute considerably to a positive United States image abroad.

The Council of American Overseas Research Center facilitates and coordinates the work of its 14-member institutions. Federated in 1981, the existing centers create a forum to identify and address common concerns. CAORC links its member research centers, United States and foreign institutions, and scholars into a global information network. It fosters collaboration among research centers to strengthen academic programs and administrative procedures and sponsors international research projects. The Council undertakes the establishment of new centers in areas where research exchange opportunities are lacking.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the Institution requests an increase of 1 workyear and $40,000 to continue pan-Institutional planning for the Columbus Quincentenary. In 1992, the world will commemorate the 500th anniversary of the voyages of exploration of Christopher Columbus. The Smithsonian began planning in 1985 to develop a wide range of programs to commemorate the Columbus Quincentenary. Through these programs, the Institution will contribute to a broader public understanding of the complex issues surrounding the 1492 landfall and the subsequent five centuries of interactions between European and indigenous cultures.

Through the Office of Quincentenary Programs, the Smithsonian is developing long-term collaborative initiatives with Latin American institutions on timely issues of mutual concern. In addition, the Office is working with several Smithsonian bureaus to plan a model program incorporating Quincentenary themes into small traveling exhibitions for distribution to native-American communities.

To assist current staff in the coordination of these activities, the Office requests funds to support a research assistant (1 workyear and $38,000) and the development of educational, outreach, and promotional materials ($2,000). As programs accelerate and organizations and countries become more aware and interested, it is imperative that last-minute research efforts be initiated to accommodate new activities, as well as to determine the accuracy of new data as it is uncovered. After the Quincentenary, this position would help support research conducted through the new Institute of the Americas.

The Columbus Quincentenary programs will not only commemorate the historic event but also examine the cultural, historical, and scientific implications of the pan-hemispheric encounter. Expanded support for the programs and activities developed by the Office of Quincentenary Programs will enable the Smithsonian to make the Columbus Quincentenary an important contribution to international understanding.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Allotments provide funds to support planning and development of research and exhibition programs for the International Center and for administration of Columbus Quincentenary activities. A special purpose fund provides stipend support for international scholarly exchanges aimed at strengthening the Smithsonian's institutional linkages.

Restricted Funds - Restricted funds consist of gifts, grants, and other donations from individuals, foundations, organizations, and corporations for specific purposes, such as undertaking research abroad, supporting exchanges of researchers and collections, mounting exhibitions and staging performances, screening films, and other public presentations in the International Center.

ADMINISTRATION

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	291	17,244	206	11,315	17	2,023	-	116	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	349	19,945	215	14,755	17	1,556	-	128	-	-
-Base	349	20,339								
FY 1991 Estimate	384	23,611	223	15,882	17	1,807	-	129	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	349	35	384
11 Personnel Compensation	12,070	1,455	13,525
12 Personnel Benefits	3,644	692	4,336
13 Benefits to Former Employees	146	0	146
21 Travel	133	0	133
22 Transportation of Things	15	0	15
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	100	247	347
24 Printing & Reproduction	105	-18	87
25 Other Services	3,119	718	3,837
26 Supplies & Materials	574	14	588
31 Equipment	428	164	592
41 Grants	5	0	5
Total	20,339	3,272	23,611

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	625
Program Funds	2,312
Workers' Compensation	264
Personnel Payroll System	71

ABSTRACT - Administration includes central management, planning, oversight, and review provided by the Offices of the Secretary, Under Secretary, Assistant Secretary for Administration, General Counsel, and Treasurer. It also covers a wide range of specialized administrative and technical offices, such as Inspector General, Business

Management, Congressional Liaison, Equal Opportunity, Facilities Services (responsible for Design and Construction, Plant Services, Protection Services, Environmental Management and Safety, and Architectural History and Historic Preservation), Financial Management and Planning, Accounting and Financial Services, Risk Management, and Sponsored Projects. Other offices in this group include Information Resource Management, Management Analysis, Personnel Administration, Planning and Budget, Printing and Photographic Services, Procurement and Property Management, Special Events, and Travel Services. These units receive both appropriated funds and nonappropriated Trust funds for their operating support in approximate balance to the overall funding of the Institution. However, Trust funds entirely support some offices, such as Business Management, Sponsored Projects, and Risk Management.

For FY 1991, the requested increase for administrative units totals 28 workyears and $2,162,000. These increases will enable the Institution to augment the Inspector General function (1 workyear and $31,000) and allow for delegated examining authority and other personnel support (9 workyears and $426,000). In addition, the requested increases will allow a major expansion of the Institution's automation efforts (4 workyears and $952,000) and a consolidation of rent administration responsibilities (1 workyear and $47,000). Furthermore, the proposed increases will improve accounting systems (13 workyears and $505,000) and provide space for new or expanding public service and management activities ($201,000). In addition, the Institution requires $625,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

Also contained in this line-item are 4 workyears and $248,000 associated with the Institution's special employment initiative. Justification for these resources appears in the central Special Employment Initiative section of this budget. The Institution requests $264,000 for workers' compensation and $71,000 for the Personnel Payroll System. The Uncontrollable Increases section of this budget request contains justifications for these increases.

Decreases totaling $98,000 partially offset the requested increases. These include nonrecurring expenditures in FY 1990 in the Office of Information Resource Management for the personnel payroll system ($50,000) and in the Office of Accounting and Financial Services related to the new accounting system ($48,000).

PROGRAM - The Office of the Secretary, with the assistance of the Office of the Under Secretary, is responsible for management and administration. This responsibility includes policy determination, program planning, legislation, and oversight and performance evaluation of activities. The Office of the Assistant Secretary for Administration, with the assistance of the Director of Facilities Services, is responsible for administrative and facilities services.

The Office of the Inspector General (OIG) performs all internal audits and investigates fraud, waste, and abuse, or white-collar criminal activity. OIG audits Federal programs as well as Trust-funded activities. The Office reports audit results and recommends measures to improve program administration. OIG also audits claims, cost proposals, and cost and pricing data arising from contracts, grants, and other financial agreements. OIG investigates allegations of criminal activities by employees or contractors. The results of these inquiries serve as the basis for appropriate administrative, civil, or criminal remedies. OIG staff also investigates areas with the potential for fraud and abuse. The Smithsonian's certified public accountants consider the work of the Office in determining the nature, timing, and extent of their audit procedures. The Institution provides reports on audits and investigations to the Audit and Review Committee of the Board of Regents and to the Congress.

The Office of the General Counsel (OGC) provides counseling to the Smithsonian Board of Regents and the Secretary. The Office also advises other Institutional officers on pertinent legal matters; coordinates and oversees litigation and other adversarial proceedings; and reviews administrative claims arising out of Smithsonian operations. Generally, OGC monitors all aspects of Smithsonian activities for legal implications as new developments in the law affect the Institution.

The Office of the Treasurer oversees financial management and, through the Business Management Office, certain Institutional income-producing activities, including museum shops, mail orders, product development and licensing, and concessions. Financial management duties rest in the Office of Accounting and Financial Services, the Office of Financial Management and Planning, the Office of Sponsored Projects, and the Office of Risk Management. These offices handle accounting, payroll, financial reporting, financial systems development, administration of grants and contracts, insurance matters, Treasury and bank relations, and investment management.

The Office of Congressional Liaison, reporting to the Assistant Secretary for External Affairs, develops and maintains the Institution's relationships with the Congress; prepares and clears legislative materials; arranges Smithsonian participation at legislative hearings; and acts as central liaison with Federal agencies and organizations with related interests.

The Office of Equal Opportunity plans, conducts, and monitors a positive action program to ensure equality in employment practices and program activities. Major efforts include affirmative action programs, program and facility access for disabled persons, employee counseling and complaint processing, upward mobility, special programs for women and Hispanics, and community outreach to minority and women's groups in Washington, D.C., and elsewhere.

The Office of Facilities Services directs a wide range of security, operation, maintenance, and repair programs for Smithsonian facilities as well as safety and health programs for staff and visitors. It oversees modifications and improvements to the physical plant to support growth in programs and activities and develops strategies for planning for future facilities development and utilization. Reporting to the Director of Facilities Services are the Office of Environmental Management and Safety (OEMS) and the Office of Architectural History and Historic Preservation (OAHP). OEMS advises and assists Smithsonian bureaus concerning fire protection for their facilities and the National Collections. OEMS also monitors occupational safety and health, including industrial hygiene and hazardous materials control and reviews, disseminates, and implements the requirements of all new fire, safety, health, and environmental laws, regulations, and standards. OAHP compiles and updates the architectural history of the Smithsonian for research and publication. The Office reviews design and construction projects as they apply to historic preservation regulations to ensure compliance with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act and oversees the Smithsonian Furnishings Collection.

The Office of Information Resource Management (OIRM) helps determine information resource management policy; oversees planning for automated systems and information technologies; coordinates the Smithsonian Information Resource Management (IRM) program; ensures the integrity and security of automated Institutional data; oversees the application of computer and communications technology to the Smithsonian's scientific, scholarly, and management information needs; ensures compatibility among systems; and facilitates user access information systems and computer processing. OIRM acquires, develops, and maintains automated information processing and data communications systems; administers the Smithsonian's data processing cost centers; operates computer systems and voice and data communications networks; and offers pertinent training to users.

The Management Analysis Office provides advisory assistance to Smithsonian administrative operations. The Office studies organizations, systems, and procedures; prepares and distributes management's policy statements and operational guidelines; undertakes a periodic internal controls review of the Institution; oversees the Institution's forms management program; and publishes a biweekly staff bulletin.

The Office of Personnel Administration (OPersA) provides personnel services, advice, and assistance to managers and employees of the Institution. Within the laws and regulatory requirements of Federal oversight agencies and within the policies of the Institution, the Office oversees recruitment, staffing, and position classification; wage and salary administration; performance management and merit pay systems; employee relations; and benefits administration. The Office also is responsible for labor-management relations; training and career development; employee assistance; job and retirement counseling; workers' compensation; unemployment insurance; personnel policy development; personnel management evaluation; and records and data processing and maintenance.

The Office of Planning and Budget (OPB) coordinates Institution-wide, long-range planning efforts, advises management on related matters, and prepares the Five-Year Prospectus. The Office formulates the Institution's consolidated Federal and nonappropriated Trust fund budgets and submits them for review and approval by the Secretary and the Board of Regents. OPB prepares justifications for approved budgets for submission to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) and to the Congress. OPB serves as liaison with OMB and Congress on budgetary matters. OPB monitors appropriated budgets and nonappropriated Trust fund budgets to ensure the Institution meets program needs, achieves budgetary goals, and maintains accountability. The Office maintains central financial information data bases for use in management reports, budgetary planning, and special analyses.

The Office of Printing and Photographic Services (OPPS) offers technical advice, guidance, and photography and duplicating services to curatorial, scientific, technical, and administrative staff. Photographic services include studio and on-site photography, photographic copy restoration, printing, preservation of originals under archival conditions, development and maintenance of an automated catalogue of photographs, investigation and application of new photographic technologies, and sale of materials to the public.

The Office of Procurement and Property Management (OPPM) provides central logistical support and acquisition policy guidance. This responsibility is achieved through policy administration, planning, management, and coordination of the procurement, contracting, property management, and supply programs. As the Institution's principal acquisition service, OPPM procures supplies, materials, contractual services; and equipment in support of research and educational programs. OPPM also acts as the Smithsonian's space-leasing agent. In addition, OPPM provides preacquisition policy guidance and administers contracts on behalf of various

Smithsonian units. OPPM ensures that the performance of these functions is effective and conforms to Federal and Smithsonian policy, rules, and regulations.

The Office of Special Events (OSE) plans, arranges, and oversees luncheons, receptions, and dinners associated with exhibition openings, seminars, lectures, and meetings. Smithsonian bureaus and offices may sponsor events or cosponsor events with outside organizations. In addition, the Office prepares and distributes a monthly master calendar of special events.

The Travel Services Office (TSO) makes travel arrangements at the lowest possible cost for Smithsonian employees to comply with Smithsonian and Federal travel regulations. The Office enforces the government contract carrier program and the Fly America Act. TSO works closely with other offices to develop and implement new and revised travel regulations and distributes announcements about pertinent changes.

Progress in Administrative and Technical Support - The Institution has placed major emphasis on administrative and support operations to ensure their responsiveness to needs. The following activities during FY 1989 and planned for FY 1990 are noteworthy:

In April 1989, the Institution established the Office of the Inspector General (OIG, formerly named the Office of Audits and Investigations) to meet the requirements of the Inspector General Act Amendments of 1988. During FY 1989, the OIG issued 14 internal audit reports, 40 contract audit reports, and 50 investigative reports on fraud, waste, and abuse affecting Smithsonian programs and operations. In October 1989, the OIG submitted its first semiannual report to the Board of Regents and the Congress on its audit and investigative activities.

The Institution's diverse programs present a wide range of legal questions and issues for advisement by the Office of the General Counsel. In addition to the continuing need to define the unique legal nature of the Smithsonian Institution in various contexts, the OGC caseload includes evolving areas of the law such as the right of publicity, hazardous waste management, sexual harassment/discrimination, drug testing, AIDS, and repatriation of native-American remains and artifacts. Ongoing matters entail trust law, Constitutional law, intellectual property rights, cultural property laws and treaties, immigration, real property transactions, contracts, labor relations, endangered species regulations, civil rights, employee standards of conduct and ethics, estates, and tax laws.

During FY 1989, the Office of Congressional Liaison (OCL) was involved with legislative activity that resulted in enactment of measures establishing a National Museum of the American Indian and providing for the disposition of native-American skeletal remains. for the reappointment of two citizen members of the Smithsonian's Board of Regents; and the appointment of two new citizen members to fill existing vacancies on the Board. Matters of pay equity, taxation, and environmental concerns, as well as proposals to build an extension to the National Air and Space Museum and to create a National Museum of African American History and Culture, also required the attention of OCL.

The Office of Planning and Budget (OPB) took action to facilitate an informed and constructive dialogue about the possibility of engaging in Institution-wide strategic planning. OPB, with a small group of central and bureau managers, previewed a series of educational sessions with leading planning experts who had worked with a variety of organizations, including the private sector, government agencies, nonprofit organizations, and colleges and universities. The Office refocused the Five-Year Prospectus on the Secretary's "Areas of Emphasis" and programmatic goals. This change followed other improvements to the internal planning process that brought greater focus on broad management and program issues, called for specific planning objectives, and identified a series of planned action steps over the next five years to achieve these objectives. The Office also implemented the first phase of a new automated Personnel Cost Projection System (PCPS) and issued additional releases to the Smithsonian Institution Budget Manual.

A major priority of the Office of the Treasurer is to improve the centralized accounting and financial systems. The Smithsonian contracted with the U.S. Department of Agriculture's National Finance Center (NFC) to process both its Civil Service and Trust payrolls. The Institution converted to the NFC system in November 1987 and, over the course of FY 1988 and FY 1989, refined this relationship. The NFC system has significantly reduced errors and will improve reporting to bureaus and offices. The Offices of Financial Management and Planning (OFM&P) and Accounting and Financial Services (OAFS) continue to work closely with the Offices of Planning and Budget and Information Resource Management to implement the new Personnel Cost Projection System using NFC data processed by the Institution's new accounting software. Beginning in April 1988, the Institution solidified specifications as a first step in developing a new financial system in response to directives of the Office of Management and Budget. Following a rigorous procurement process, the Office of Financial Management and Planning purchased off-the-shelf accounting software. OFM&P, consistent with government-wide efforts, began preliminary work that will lead to conversion during FY 1990 of the Institution's general ledger and automation of its accounts payable and procurement systems. The Treasurer initiated steps to strengthen inventory procedures within the merchandising activities under the Office's control as well as administrative oversight in the Office of Sponsored Projects. With the active participation of many bureaus and offices, the Office of Risk Management is pioneering an institutionalized Disaster Preparedness Program aimed at protecting staff and visitors while securing collections in the event of catastrophe. The new Trust-funded restaurant facility at the National Air and Space Museum opened in August 1988, greatly enhancing public food services.

The Travel Services Office continued to improve the quality and efficiency of the services offered to Smithsonian travelers. Through training and automation, the Office shortened response time for hotel and car rental requests. TSO is working cooperatively with the Office of Accounting and Financial Services in implementing the recommendations of the Office of the Inspector General in the "Report on Audit of the Diners Club Credit Card System" to eliminate the duplication of effort in entering data into computer systems.

The Office of Printing and Photographic Services (OPPS) initiated three projects of national importance. Since it opened almost six years ago, the cold storage facility has become one of the most successful and imitated photographic facilities of its type. A limited expansion in FY 1989 kept pace with the increasing numbers of photographs maintained in the collection. Under a research program in applied photographic preservation, OPPS continues testing new toning solutions to eliminate a suspected carcinogen from Smithsonian photographic laboratories. OPPS modified its testing procedures to include newly developed hydrogen peroxide fuming equipment that will increase the validity of the project results. In its continuing experiments with still-video systems for collections management projects, the Office is learning how to adapt photography to a new technology of electronic still-imaging. These experiments will offer state-of-the-art techniques for capturing and using collection images for a wide range of applications. The Office recently completed a project with the School of Visual Communications at Ohio University in the experimental use of electronic images for newspaper reproduction.

In 1989, the Office of Information Resource Management (OIRM) implemented new Collections Information System (CIS) data bases within the National Museum of Natural History for the Mammals, Birds, Reptiles and Amphibians, and Botany collections. CIS work is under way on Entomology and Anthropology data bases and the permanent collections of the National Museum of American Art and the National Air and Space Museum. The National Museum of American History and OIRM defined functional and data requirements in advance of the migration from the Museum's outdated system to CIS. OIRM implemented the first phase of Generic Report and Search Processor that allows users to define and generate their own reports. A management and registration system for the Resident and National Associate Programs to control scheduling, booking, and charging for Smithsonian events nears completion.

OIRM, the Office of the Treasurer, and the Office of Financial Management and Planning supported the acquisition of a new general ledger and budgeting capability for the Institution. This year also saw the implementation of an integrated staff identification, telephone book, and mailing list system; an automated staff "locator" system; and a digital paging system linking the Museum Support Center, the Mall, and the National Zoo. OIRM implemented the first phase of an Institution-wide electronic mail system and completed a study to determine future requirements for data communications throughout the Smithsonian. OIRM will establish data communications service between the Mall and the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute in Panama by the end of 1990.

OIRM trained more than 1,100 Smithsonian staff in the use of microcomputer and mainframe systems and handled more than 3,600 computer-related inquiries at its "HELP" desk. The Office initiated a long-term IRM planning process and established IRM partnerships across the Institution. This new cooperative and comprehensive approach to IRM planning will help to coordinate future budget requests and information systems planning. OIRM also undertook a self-evaluation effort to assess its ability to meet the needs of the Institution. This effort positions OIRM to fulfill its mission and take advantage of appropriate advances in information technology.

The Office of Procurement and Property Management continued to increase the number, complexity, and total dollar value of transactions processed. Contractor work is progressing on the installation of new transformers throughout 13 museums to relieve PCB dangers before the Environmental Protection Agency deadline. The contractor completed the Smithsonian Information Center construction, and the Center opened to the public in November 1989. The Property Management Program continues to produce savings for the Institution. The Institution better utilized excess property in FY 1989 through a semiautomated excess property recording and review system. Redesigned warehouse space allows more efficient storage and retrieval.

Major activity in the Office of Personnel Administration centered on the study completed by the National Academy of Public Administration, Improving Personnel Operations and Policies. The Institution made some progress in implementing the report's recommendations. Components of the report speak to the efficiency and effectiveness of personnel operations, the responsiveness of the system, affirmative action efforts, and opportunities to be explored, including human resource management.

In FY 1988 and FY 1989, the Office of Facilities Services implemented a more formal goal-setting process to define program direction and provide a framework for strengthening program management and increasing support for the Institution's activities. Human resources and organizational development are key issues, while goals emphasize leadership, cross-development, and training for individual growth of staff members and increased productivity. The Office is working to improve the quality of new hires, with emphasis on attracting minority and women candidates for professional and managerial positions. In addition, the Office is developing management systems for tracking facilities management activities, analyzing program effectiveness, and sharing information within the Facilities Group and with other Smithsonian organizations. The Office has further defined the process for long-range facilities planning and development and has prepared a ten-year plan for construction or acquisition of major new facilities.

The Office of Environmental Management and Safety revised the Smithsonian Handbook on Safety and Environmental Management to expand its scope and current relevance. Additionally, working with the Office of Museum Programs, the Office conducted a three-day workshop for small domestic and foreign museums and other educational and cultural institutions. This unique workshop addressed program development and problem solving for fire protection, disaster planning, occupational safety and health, and environmental management.

During FY 1989, the Office of Architectural History and Historic Preservation (OAHP) began a research project on the American Art and Portrait Gallery Building and initiated studies for a guide to all Smithsonian buildings. The Office also started a videotape project to record restoration and preservation activities in the Smithsonian Institution Building. The Office organized the architectural records and photographs and augmented those materials with records from the Smithsonian Institution Archives. Members of the staff delivered papers before professional societies, submitted a paper for publication, and supervised the work of graduate and undergraduate students. OAHP has contracted for the reproduction and sale of pieces in the Smithsonian Furnishings Collection. Royalties on the sale of these reproductions will allow OAHP to make future acquisitions for the Collection.

EXPLANATION OF PROGRAM INCREASE - For FY 1991, the requested increase for administrative units totals 28 workyears and $2,162,000 as follows:

Activity	FTE	Amount
Inspector General	1	$31,000
Treasurer	13	$505,000
Office of Facilities Services	1	$47,000
Office of Information Resource Management	4	$952,000
Office of Personnel Administration	9	$426,000
Additional Space Rental Requirements	0	$201,000

Decreases totaling $98,000 partially offset the requested increases. These include nonrecurring expenditures in FY 1990 in the Office of Information Resource Management for the personnel payroll system ($50,000) and in the Office of Accounting and Financial Services related to the new accounting system ($48,000).

Office of the Inspector General (1 workyear and $31,000) - The requested increase will deter criminal activity and other forms of misconduct at the Institution by increasing the expertise of the OIG investigative function. The investigative function addresses a wide variety of technical Smithsonian activities including procurement, financial management, and collections management. Investigations in these areas typically require a high degree of technical knowledge in the financial management field.

OIG auditors supplement the skills of the investigative staff in conducting such investigations when availability permits. With increases in OIG investigative cases, it has become increasingly more difficult to assign audit personnel to the investigative staff and still meet audit obligations.

The requested position for an auditor (1 workyear and $31,000) to support the investigative staff will enable the OIG to conduct complex investigations and still meet the OIG audit priorities in a timely manner.

Office of the Treasurer (13 workyears and $505,000) - The requested funding will support the implementation of a new Financial Accounting System that will produce more timely and accurate financial information. The System will readily respond to internal and external audits; it will conform to the Federal Core Financial Management System Requirements and provide information pertinent to Internal Control Systems. The Institution will install the core of the System (the general ledger, accounts payable, and financial reporting programs) by the end of FY 1991. To ensure that these programs are operating at acceptable standards, they must be supported by computer system analysts and specialists specifically schooled in the software acquired. These positions will allow:

-- full and accurate documentation of the System;

-- a stringent schedule for reconciling accounts;

-- maintenance and updating of accounting policy and procedures.

These essential support functions will make the new Financial Accounting System feasible and provide the means to keep it up-to-date and adaptable to changes in the financial environment.

The new Financial Accounting System will depend upon sophisticated software and hardware and a new communications network. The communications network will gradually expand to financial management users in bureaus throughout the Institution. The requested funding will provide the technical personnel and resources needed to facilitate the associated accounting interface with the Institution's mainframe computer and provide the ability to plan and implement changes to the software mandated by regulations or recommended by management.

The technical personnel will maintain up-to-date documentation of the accounting system. The personnel request is for two computer systems analysts and three computer specialists (5 workyears and $166,000). Additional funds are requested for software ($50,000) to upgrade the communications network and for equipment ($60,000) to expand the personal computer user base within the Office of Accounting and Financial Services and the accounting service units located in the museums.

Reconciling accounts is a critical internal control function. The procedure is valuable since it identifies posting errors. Reconciling an account can expose unauthorized transactions and transactions omitted either intentionally or unintentionally. Internal and external auditors are constantly examining the account reconciliations on file in the Office of Accounting and Financial Services. Past and present audit reports reflect inaccuracies in Smithsonian postings that could have been avoided if accounts were reconciled in a more timely and complete manner. Currently, all reconciliations are essentially done by hand. Staff time available to perform reconciliations approximates the same level of 1979, yet the number of accounts and volume of transactions have increased eight-fold. The requested funding will provide three accountants (3 workyears and $96,000), and three accounting technicians (3 workyears and $63,000) to operate an account reconciliation program that meets the requisite standards of timeliness, completeness, and audit worthiness.

Maintaining updated accounting policy and procedures is a never-ending job. Whether it be creating new or revising the old, extensive analysis of the Institution's financial environment is required to develop policy and procedures that comply with generally accepted accounting and internal control principles. The job of revising a policy or procedure is not completed until it is implemented and later tested for compliance. The new Financial Accounting System will require a substantial rewrite of existing accounting policies and procedures. The requested funding will provide two systems accountants (2 workyears and $70,000) to update present policies and procedures and direct more work hours toward implementing and testing.

Office of Facilities Services (1 workyear and $47,000) - A recently completed study, noting the increasing use of leased space, recommends that the Institution consolidate the administration of associated rental accounts, now a collateral part-time function involving four support units, within the Office of Facilities Services. This change will assure the integrity and effective management of these accounts and the considerable funding involved. To implement this necessary change, the study indicated the need for a full-time position dedicated to these purposes. Accordingly, the additional position will serve as a focal point for all matters concerning rentals, including space requirements, projections, budgeting, space management, funding administration, reporting, and related functions.

Office of Information Resource Management (4 workyears and $952,000)- Ironically, when the Smithsonian opens its "Information Age" exhibit at the National Museum of American History in 1990, it will be ten years behind in its own use of the advanced information technologies on display. Information technology tools enable the Institution, as a national resource, to provide productive research and meaningful educational programs. These technologies include computers, computer programs, systems development methods, and communication lines and networks. While the Smithsonian pioneered the use of automation for museums in the late 1960s, the Institution has not kept pace with technology. Its first on-line objects collections system, implemented less than five years ago, uses ten-year-old technology. Modern research, education, and business demands for information by the public and the Institution exceed the capabilities of the Institution's existing technologies. Many of its collections rely upon manual card and paper filing systems that require labor intensive research techniques for use. Most collections and research information is not available to the public, and scientists and scholars can only access small subsets of Smithsonian files. The Smithsonian's leading role in research and education is in jeopardy. To reclaim its position as a leader in research, education, and collections management, the Smithsonian must utilize advanced information technologies to a far greater extent.

However, today's technologies require significant, long-term investments to implement and maintain. Not only are private providers of many essential automation services nonexistent, current Smithsonian budgets fail to cover the rising costs of information technology. There is a chasm between available resources and increasing technology demands and costs. Addressing this infrastructure gap with concomitant staff and dollars is the only solution to meet today's research, education, and administrative objectives and to lay the foundation for future advancement.

An Institution-wide Information Resource Management (IRM) advisory group of users advocates a wide range of better information resource technology services. The requested resources address these needs and will advance objectives in three areas: planning, development, and services.

A stronger planning capability will define how information technologies can meet established goals. Because of other pressing operational and resource demands, OIRM currently conducts only limited planning activities and has limited capacity to coordinate Institution-wide IRM planning. The lack of specific resources for this purpose prohibits the Institution from producing the IRM plan required by OMB A-130 and other applicable regulations. Because information planning activities suffer from a lack of coordination, there has been a troubling proliferation of incompatible equipment and application systems. For lack of staff that can be devoted to this function, there is no long-term plan to integrate, and maintain systems or to convert to a more efficient, effective, and technologically advanced operating environment. With 1 workyear and $80,000 OIRM will develop a long-term, integrated, Institution-wide IRM plan. This IRM plan will provide a more systematic means for keeping pace with advancing technologies. This plan will also allow the Institution to estimate more accurately its computer capacity requirements and thereby avoid future computing deficiencies. A long-term IRM plan will permit the Institution to select appropriate advanced technologies and to integrate Smithsonian priorities and requirements.

Development includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of Institution-wide computer systems. Current resources have been and are increasingly inadequate both to meet long pending and new requests for systems development and to maintain existing information systems. The problem is exacerbated by four incompatible computers. The OIRM's current systems development base consists of 10 workyears and approximately $200,000 in contract assistance to serve the entire Institution. These limited resources cannot make measurable progress in automating the Institution's vast collections for the varied purposes of exhibition, research, educational study, and publication. To illustrate, less than 3 percent of the Institution's collections are currently automated for these purposes. With 3 additional workyears and $227,000, OIRM will give top priority to information systems most critical to the Smithsonian's mission. These staff will facilitate the completion of the Collections Information System (CIS), which will offer on-screen access to, and better accountability for, the National Collections. CIS will also combine with library and archival systems currently on separate hardware in the Smithsonian Bibliographic Information System (SIBIS). Through these links and others to facilities management, geographic, and administrative systems, CIS will create vast opportunities for research and exhibits. CIS will support curators, research scientists, and the public worldwide.

Services include computing and communications activities that support automation of, and access to, information. OIRM currently operates four computer systems used extensively throughout the Institution. The costs of meeting current and growing user demands for computing services and escalating support costs for maintenance and systems software have already far surpassed available resources. With its request for $645,000, OIRM could support sufficient computer capacity to meet current and short-term projected computer usage. However, substantial computer upgrades are expected beginning in 1992 with completion of systems migration from the Honeywell and major enhancements to the Smithsonian Financial Accounting System. Without these added funds, current operational systems will deteriorate. This deterioration would reverse the limited benefits of past automation of program and administrative functions. With the requested additional resources Smithsonian collections managers, researchers, librarians, and administrators will continue to benefit from direct and automated access to their data.

For the Smithsonian to carry out effectively its mission "to increase and diffuse knowledge," it must utilize advances in information technologies. Without sufficient means to automate, and assure access to, its diverse research, education, and cultural information resources, the Smithsonian cannot achieve its public service goals. Current and future museum visitors and scholarly researchers grew up in the "information age" and are computer literate. Visitors require interactive exhibits and automated public access to collections, research, archival, and library holdings. The Smithsonian must recover from infrastructure gaps and acquire resources to make optimum use of information technologies. With additional resources, the Institution will create and maintain a long-term IRM plan, improve the delivery and maintenance of information systems, and increase the level of computer and communications services.

Office of Personnel Administration (9 workyears and $426,000) - The Institution has often lost good job candidates for its various specialized positions because of the length of time involved in the hiring process. To overcome this problem, the Office of Personnel Administration (OPersA) has delegated examining authority from the U.S. Office of Personnel Management (OPM) for some 14 core occupations including positions in the research, curatorial and security classifications. However, to capitalize upon its delegated authority, the Institution must have additional staff to undertake these examinations. These staff will expedite the hiring process, concurrent with parallel efforts to recruit more women and minorities in such positions.

Greater delegated personnel authority follows from OPM's current policy and recommendations of various study groups, such as the Volker Commission. With this new authority, the Institution's personnel office will act as OPM's agent and examine for selected occupations peculiar to the Smithsonian. As a result, the Institution will eliminate examining delays and better coordinate recruitment, internal placement, and promotions. It will also enable the Institution to attract applicants whose educational and experience backgrounds better match the job needs of the Smithsonian. The Institution requires 5 workyears and $276,000 to staff this new authority effectively.

Even before receiving delegated examining authority, staffing in OPersA had not kept pace with the recent growth of the Institution. There has been a slow deterioration of the level and quality of services and responsiveness to the public. In its May 1989 report Improving Personnel Operations and Policies, the National Academy of Public Administration observed, "A 1987 report by the President's Council on Management Improvement endorsed 1:72 as a government-wide benchmark" for a personnel-to-employee ratio. The Academy cited Smithsonian's personnel-to-employee ratio as 1:92. It further recognized that this "benchmark does not represent an ideal, but is a standard against which to judge the adequacy of OPersA's staffing level when considering a variety of factors." The requested increase of 4 workyears and $150,000 is a first step in the incremental reduction of this staffing gap and will result in better and more timely service to the Institution and the public.

Additional Space Rental Requirements ($201,000) - The Institution is under increased pressure to provide space on the Mall for new or expanding public service and management activities. There is special demand for space in the Castle (much of which is allocated to the highly successful new Visitor Information Center and to the Woodrow Wilson Center) and in the Arts and Industries Building (which is used increasingly for education purposes). These needs have been met largely by the centralization of administrative support activities in nearby commercial space at L'Enfant Plaza, where the Institution presently leases 99,000 square feet of space. This trend toward leasing nearby space for administrative functions is likely to continue with available Castle space allocated to senior management functions and the Arts and Industries Building devoted to activities having requirements for public interaction. The Institution anticipates, for example, that the development effort will require expansion in the Arts and Industries Building. With all present space allocated, it will be necessary to relocate one or more other activities to L'Enfant Plaza. To meet this need, the Institution requests funding for the acquisition and preparation of an additional 5,000 square feet of space. Using the Institution's cost-sharing policy, the 70 percent Federal share is $155,000 based on estimated rental forecasts of $31.00 per square foot of space. In addition, a one-time increase of $46,000 is sought partially to cover the costs of preparing this space. The Smithsonian will cover the remaining 30 percent of the rental costs of $65,000 and modification costs of $19,000 from Trust funds.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Funding of these centralized services from both appropriated and nonappropriated sources produces a ratio of Federal and Trust fund administrative support approximately in proportion to the operating program expenditures of the Institution as a whole. The amounts shown under Unrestricted General represent administrative expenditures for those units that are organizationally under Administration. Other units that receive administrative allotments appear in the appropriate section of the budget request. For example, administrative costs for the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory appear within its nonappropriated Trust funds section. This section also includes expenditures for producing, distributing, and marketing photographic material and slide sets and funds to help defray the costs of the Office of Printing and Photographic Services. The Office of Equal Opportunity receives a program allotment that supports community outreach through exhibits and publications specifically aimed at women and minorities. Funds also provide for the identification and implementation of new financial and administrative management systems. Special Purpose funds include gifts received through unrestricted bequests that, in accordance with the Bylaws of the Board of Regents, subsequently transfer to the endowment. Anticipated expenditures in the Special Purpose category include support of studies in ornithology, computer conversion costs, a computer cost center, and small amounts used for legal seminars and research.

Restricted Funds - This category includes foundation grants for scientific research publications and general research projects and expenditures against investment income earned on endowment bequests.

OFFICE OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	40	2,337	9	488	-	2	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	44	2,757	9	434	-	-	-	-	-	-
-Base	44	2,815								
FY 1991 Estimate	45	2,901	9	449	-	-	-	-	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	44	1	45
11 Personnel Compensation	2,100	74	2,174
12 Personnel Benefits	300	12	312
21 Travel	20	0	20
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	25	0	25
24 Printing & Reproduction	100	0	100
25 Other Services	130	0	130
26 Supplies & Materials	45	0	45
31 Equipment	95	0	95
Total	2,815	86	2,901

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	86
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Office of Design and Construction (ODC) provides professional architectural and engineering services to support the development, operation, maintenance, repair, and improvement of the Smithsonian's physical plant. These support service responsibilities include short- and long-range feasibility analyses, master plans, design and engineering studies, design development, contract document preparation, project management, contract administration, and preparation of cost estimates for budgets and construction. The staff reviews contracts, plans interior design and space renovations, provides technical consulting support, and operates construction field offices.

The Smithsonian is not seeking additional funding for FY 1991 programmatic increases for the Office of Design and Construction. The Institution requires $86,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - The Office of Design and Construction staff consists of electrical, mechanical, structural, and civil engineers; architects; construction and program managers; planners; estimators; technicians; computer specialists; and administrative support positions. The main function of the Office of Design and Construction is to provide the expertise necessary to plan, design, construct, and administer a program for all construction, repair and restoration projects for Smithsonian buildings, museums, and research facilities. The buildings serviced are primarily in the Washington metropolitan area. Other facilities serviced include the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center in Edgewater, Maryland; the Cooper-Hewitt Museum in New York; the Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory in Cambridge, Massachusetts; the Whipple Observatory in Arizona; the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute in Panama and Linkport in Florida.

The ODC staff provides professional and technical support to guarantee a safe and proper environment for visitors, staff, and the National Collections. Through the repair and restoration program, the staff works to preserve, repair, rehabilitate, and correct code violations of an aging physical plant. The staff also provides professional assistance to bureau managers on exhibition construction and space modification projects. These services include:

-- providing program management assistance for major museums with construction, renovation, and related needs;

-- preparing contract documents including designs, specifications, and cost estimates for construction projects;

-- preparing master facility plan studies and related analyses;

-- planning for construction and facility development and physical plant utilization;

-- developing related budget, construction, and change order estimates for the construction and repair and restoration programs;

-- reviewing exhibit designs prepared by museum staffs to ensure compliance with safety, health, and accessibility requirements and compatibility with existing building systems.

The Office maintains an extensive file system of technical specifications and drawings related to facility projects and programs involving all Smithsonian buildings and sites except the National Zoo. This resource supports the current and future work of ODC and other Smithsonian organizations.

Funds committed annually for various facilities and exhibition projects come from construction, repair and restoration, and salaries and expenses appropriations and from Trust funds. Most recent major construction, repair, and restoration projects include:

-- construction of the Quadrangle link to the Freer Gallery of Art;

- additions and alterations to the Freer Gallery of Art;
- construction of the Tupper Laboratory and Conference Center at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI);
- major construction at Barro Colorado Island in Panama;
- construction of the Ridge Dormitory at the Whipple Observatory;
- replacement of PCB transformers at all existing locations;
- removal of asbestos from various facilities;
- repairs, including fire protection, disabled access, and health and safety improvements for various buildings and museums.

In addition to current activity, ODC planners and design professionals prepared detailed preliminary facility requirements data and planned projects for future years. Detailed plans were prepared for the Whipple Observatory Base Camp construction and the Tropical Research Institute facility development. Preliminary construction plans and projects include the Silver Hill collections storage facility, the Natural History Building utility systems replacement master plan, the U.S. Custom House planning study for Museum of the American Indian, and the Air and Space Building extension site evaluation study.

During FY 1989, ODC's professional staff administered 155 construction service contracts and 85 architectural and engineering service contracts. In addition, the staff reviewed 67 exhibit installation projects and supervised 55 interior design and space-related projects.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - These funds provide salary and partial support costs as ODC services both Trust and federally funded programs.

OFFICE OF PROTECTION SERVICES

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	702	22,261	-	7	1	324	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	764	23,339	-	8	1	140	-	-	-	-
-Base	764	23,853								
FY 1991 Estimate	767	24,437	-	8	1	140	-	-	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	764	3	767
11 Personnel Compensation	16,466	467	16,933
12 Personnel Benefits	3,294	117	3,411
21 Travel	60	0	60
22 Transportation of Things	3	0	3
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	30	0	30
24 Printing & Reproduction	10	0	10
25 Other Services	3,280	0	3,280
26 Supplies & Materials	345	0	345
31 Equipment	360	0	360
42 Insurance Claims & Indemnities	5	0	5
Total	23,853	584	24,437

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	584
Program Funds	0

ABSTRACT - The Office of Protection Services (OPS) protects the visitors, staff, collections, and facilities of the Smithsonian Institution by providing guard, physical security, and medical services. The authority of OPS to provide these services derives from Public Law 82-206 and Public Law 88-391, both regarding the policing of Smithsonian buildings and grounds, and from Public Law 91-616, which relates to employee health. The Institution requires $584,000 for Necessary Pay for existing staff funded in this line-item.

PROGRAM - OPS is a support organization responsible for protecting the collections, facilities, and other property of the Smithsonian from damage, destruction, or loss from any cause and for creating and maintaining a safe environment for visitors and staff. This broad mission includes a responsibility to:

-- determine the protection requirements of Smithsonian facilities and to meet these requirements by operating a guard force;

-- procure, install, and maintain an alarm network and to respond to its signals;

-- install and maintain locks and other security hardware in Smithsonian facilities;

-- investigate activity involving the physical security of property;

-- plan and provide health services for employees;

-- take appropriate action to eliminate health hazards from the work place;

-- provide emergency medical treatment for the injuries and sudden illnesses of visitors and staff.

OPS provides security management, guard, investigative, and occupational medical services for the major Smithsonian facilities in Washington, D.C., including 14 museums and art galleries, and to the Cooper-Hewitt Museum in New York City. OPS offers technical assistance and advisory services in security matters to all Smithsonian bureaus. To accomplish its mission, OPS employs a force of security officers and a staff of administrators, training specialists, alarm systems specialists and technicians, investigators, museum security specialists, a medical officer, nurses, emergency medical technicians, and an employee assistance counselor.

The security force operates 24 hours a day, every day of the year, to patrol and provide access control at major facilities in or near Washington, D.C., and at the Cooper-Hewitt Museum in New York City. Uniformed guards, plainclothes officers, and K-9 (canine) officers patrol galleries and the grounds around Smithsonian buildings day and night. They respond to emergencies; operate and respond to the signals of an alarm network that covers all Smithsonian facilities, including the National Zoological Park and the Smithsonian Mail Order Center in Springfield, Virginia; conduct security and fire patrols after the museum buildings close to the public; investigate accidents; report fire and safety hazards and malfunctions associated with mechanical and electrical equipment; and provide information to museum visitors. The Office coordinates protection arrangements, especially those related to VIP visits and exhibitions of international interest, in cooperation with the State Department, the Secret Service, the U.S. Park Police, and other Federal and local agencies. In recent years, OPS has concentrated on reducing the number of thefts committed in Smithsonian facilities. Plainclothes officers patrol areas with high crime rates, and OPS intensively trains its officers in police methods and security practices. OPS thoroughly investigates reported incidents, which have begun to decline in recent years (FY 1984, 179; FY 1985, 204; FY 1986, 263; FY 1987, 327; and decreased to 279 in FY 1988 and 242 in FY 1989).

The training of museum security officers is a specialized area in which OPS takes pride and which has gained renown in the museum community. Training staff instructs all new guards (including K-9), prepares guards for higher-level officer positions, and conducts refresher courses for the force. OPS also trains guards from other agencies and museums. Over the past several years, the staff has trained K-9 teams from Fairfax and Loudoun Counties and Falls Church, Virginia; Kanawha County, West Virginia; and the Annapolis, Maryland, Police Department, as well as guards and guard supervisors from Detroit Institute of Arts; the Museum of New Mexico, Santa Fe; the Virginia Museum of Fine Arts, Richmond; the U.S. Air Force Museum, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio; the Amon Carter Museum of Art, Fort Worth, Texas; the High Museum of Art, Atlanta, Georgia; the National Aquarium, Baltimore, Maryland; the Bishop Museum, Honolulu, Hawaii; and other agencies across the United States. OPS assists the Institution's Office of Museum Programs in providing security training for small museums throughout the country. Every year OPS hosts a large museum security conference that has attracted international participants. Through all these activities, OPS plays a leading role in improving the security of cultural objects.

An expansive network of locks, alarms, and other devices is necessary to control access to and provide protection for Smithsonian facilities and property. OPS advises curators and exhibitors on appropriate security systems and plans, designs, acquires, installs, and maintains security systems in Smithsonian facilities in the Washington metropolitan area. In addition, OPS provides advice on security systems for facility, exhibit, and collections protection to Smithsonian organizations outside the Washington metropolitan area and to other museums, libraries, churches, historic sites, and corporations.

OPS developed the Proprietary Security System (SIPSS) to provide complete internal control of the equipment used in and the information provided by its security systems, to improve the timeliness of OPS response to the signals received from its alarms, and to control the costs associated with operating a security system. All Washington-area facilities have SIPSS. Changing field wiring and devices from leased telephone lines to Smithsonian-owned lines and devices will continue through 1991.

OPS conducts and arranges for security management surveys to determine protection requirements of Smithsonian facilities, investigates alleged and actual violations of the law occurring on Smithsonian premises, and escorts shipments of valuable objects to and from the Smithsonian. The investigative program resolves collections losses, thefts, and other serious internal matters. Successful resolution of collections losses and thefts requires coordination with the United States Attorney, the Department of Justice, and the court system.

OPS provides occupational medical services and counseling for Smithsonian employees and emergency first aid for employees and visitors. The medical officer, occupational health nurses, employee assistance counselor, and emergency medical technicians assist in identifying and eliminating hazardous work environments, monitor the health of employees exposed to occupational hazards, and provide first aid for on-the-job injuries of employees. Major program elements include general protection and monitoring of employees exposed to various specific hazards (e.g., asbestos, loud noise, pesticides, and other toxic chemicals); medical evaluation of individuals selected for certain hazardous jobs or for certain job duties or functions (e.g., underwater diving evaluations [92 through June 30, 1989]); employee counseling to deal with substance abuse and emotional problems (482); routine medical treatments (e.g., allergy shots [900], flu shots [561], and dressing changes) requested by an employee's private physician to reduce the amount of work time employees miss for simple health care; required immunizations for Smithsonian employees on official travel (393); health education, major disease-screening programs, CPR training (307 employees), and first aid training (128 employees). OPS provides these occupational medical services at the Washington-area facilities and at major remote facilities as well. There were 17,372 visits to Smithsonian health units in FY 1989. This figure includes services performed by health staff during visits to the remote facilities.

The occupational medicine program has expanded rapidly since April 1983, when OPS appointed its first full-time medical officer. Occupational health units operate in the National Museum of American History, the National Museum of Natural History, the National Air and Space Museum, the National Zoological Park, the Museum Support Center, and the Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden, and health services are available in other facilities during regular visits by health staff members. The program formerly suffered from a staffing shortage of occupational health nurses, but the introduction of higher pay rates in FY 1989 has alleviated the problem. A similar shortage of emergency medical technicians remains a problem for OPS. To accommodate the increasing number of Smithsonian employees identified as being at risk from exposure to hazardous materials. OPS has acquired new equipment and developed a new examination program for exposure to asbestos (535 examinations) and other toxic substances (127) and animal parasites (30). OPS gave audiometric examinations to employees requiring a hearing conservation program (344) and provided hearing protection devices. In FY 1989, OPS health personnel completed 5,219 screening examinations.

According to Executive order and mandates from OPM and OSHA, OPS will continue to develop its current occupational health programs. These programs need additional funding and space to be administered efficiently, but OPS will use existing base resources in the interim to accommodate these federally-mandated programs. OPS will be able to undertake additional required programs when the resources needed to administer these programs becomes available. OPS foresees a rapidly-escalating demand for employee counseling, monitoring of employees exposed to toxic chemicals, health-screening tests, and pre-employment physicals. OPS also would like to promote all types of voluntary screening programs to increase employee participation in its health programs, because greater participation by Smithsonian employees will result in greater savings and efficiencies in human resources for the entire Institution.

In discharging its responsibilities to ensure diving safety, OPS holds meetings with Smithsonian divers to explain the medical standards consistent with those of the American Academy of Underwater Sciences, Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society, and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. OPS reviews medical qualifications of those planning to dive, performs physical examinations of divers, represents the Smithsonian on appropriate committees of national diving organizations, especially with regard to scientific diving, and provides liaison on medical aspects of scientific diving with Federal agencies, legislative committees, and scientific societies. The medical officer regularly visits Smithsonian research sites to observe and evaluate health hazards for divers.

OPS has expanded its counseling program for employees with alcohol, drug abuse, or emotional problems that affect work performance, bringing the Institution into full compliance with the requirements of Public Law 91-616. The certified counseling staff is available to employees on a full-time basis. The number of referrals is increasing dramatically as the Employee Assistance Program (EAP) becomes publicized more widely to employees and supervisors. There were 482 EAP visits in FY 1989.

An outside contractor is updating the employee medical records system and will complete the extensive computerization in FY 1990. In addition, OPS is now conducting stringent inspections of all Smithsonian and National Zoological Park food service facilities and requires testing all food handlers for tuberculosis.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - The use of guard services at after hour special events and lectures at Smithsonian facilities provides allotments and reimbursements. These funds purchase supplies, materials, and equipment.

OFFICE OF PLANT SERVICES

(Dollars in Thousands)

Fiscal Year	APPLICATION OF FUNDS									
	FEDERAL FUNDS		UNRESTRICTED FUNDS				RESTRICTED FUNDS		GOV'T GRANTS & CONTRACTS	
			General		Special					
	FTE*	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount	FTP**	Amount
FY 1989 Actual	472	37,054	6	726	3	281	-	-	-	-
FY 1990 -Estimate	493	37,692	6	1,214	3	393	-	3	-	-
-Base	493	38,108								
FY 1991 Estimate	493	42,996	6	1,235	3	403	-	2	-	-

* FTE = Full-time equivalent
**FTP = Full-time permanent

Detail of Federal Funding

	Base FY 1990	Proposed Adjustments	Est. FY 1991
FTE Allocation	493	0	493
11 Personnel Compensation	13,083	331	13,414
12 Personnel Benefits	2,450	79	2,529
21 Travel	25	0	25
22 Transportation of Things	1	0	1
23 Rent, Communications & Utilities	18,835	4,478	23,313
24 Printing & Reproduction	3	0	3
25 Other Services	1,151	0	1,151
26 Supplies & Materials	2,286	0	2,286
31 Equipment	272	0	272
42 Insurance Claims & Indemnities	2	0	2
Total	38,108	4,888	42,996

Analysis of Increase

Necessary Pay	410
Utilities	4,213
Rent	265

ABSTRACT - The Office of Plant Services (OPlantS) operates, maintains, and repairs 14 museums and art gallery buildings and many other work and collection storage areas located in the Washington metropolitan area and New York City. In support of research, exhibitions, education, and other public programs, OPlantS provides utilities, transportation, mail services, exhibits renovation, and other program services. OPlantS also provides technical service and assistance to several

Smithsonian units located outside the Washington metropolitan area, including the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute in Panama, the Fred Lawrence Whipple Observatory in Arizona, and the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center in Edgewater, Maryland.

The Office of Horticulture, South Group Facilities Management, and Quadrangle Facility Management are also part of this line-item. The Office of Horticulture manages the Smithsonian grounds and provides horticultural assistance to Smithsonian bureaus. A greenhouse-nursery supports the horticultural needs of the Smithsonian. South Group Facilities Management offers a full range of maintenance services for the Arts and Industries Building and Smithsonian Institution Building. Quadrangle Facility Management offers a variety of administrative and maintenance support services for the Arthur M. Sackler Gallery, the National Museum of African Art, and the S. Dillon Ripley Center, located in the Quadrangle Complex.

The Institution requires $410,000 for necessary pay for existing staff funded in this line-item. An increase of $4,478,000 justified in the Uncontrollable Increases section of this budget will support the Institution's utilities and rent, including D.C. water and sewer charges.

PROGRAM - I. Office of Plant Services: With base funding of 362 workyears and $14,840,000, the Office of Plant Services operates, maintains, and repairs more than five million net usable square feet in museums and art galleries in Washington, D.C., and New York City. The Office provides maintenance of building interiors and exteriors; elevators, escalators, mechanical, and electrical equipment; and lighting and refrigeration components, as well as oversight of emergency property repairs accomplished by service contracts. Trade and craft support includes plumbing, electrical, woodcrafting, and plastering efforts. In addition to furthering research projects and office relocations and modifications, OPlantS provides these services to support exhibition installations and public events throughout all Smithsonian facilities.

The Office's automated Facility Monitoring System continually analyzes and controls mechanical equipment throughout the Institution. This system monitors areas of buildings requiring stable humidity and temperature control and alerts a control center when deviations occur. Because this automated system identifies abnormalities so quickly, immediate adjustments allow the Smithsonian to avoid costly repairs and prevent damage to the National Collections. The automated Preventive Maintenance System ensures increased reliability, decreased repair costs, and longer life by scheduling regular preventive maintenance on building operating systems. This system schedules preventive maintenance for fire prevention systems, guard stations, and automatic lighting, as well as roofing systems and heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems in all museums and the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center (SERC).

The Office maintains and operates a supply warehouse to stock and distribute frequently used supplies and materials. To obtain the best prices, OPlantS purchases materials in bulk and stores them for future distribution. In addition to supporting office relocations and modifications, OPlantS offers packing, crating, warehousing, and moving services for museum objects and collections. The Office also provides a full range of transportation services for the Institution, as well as mail services and postage monitoring.

In FY 1989, OPlantS continued providing program support to museums and other Smithsonian organizations. This support included preparing halls for new exhibitions, renovating office space to accommodate changing program needs, and continuing the installation of automated exhibit lighting systems. The building inspection program continued, ensuring identification and disposition of facility repair needs by OPlantS personnel.

Significant accomplishments in FY 1989 included providing trade and craft services such as electrical, plumbing, woodcrafting, and painting in support of more than 90 exhibits projects. Notable among these exhibits were "Crossroads of Continents" at the National Museum of Natural History; "Caribbean Festival Arts" at the International Gallery in the Quadrangle Complex; "Beyond the Limits: Flight Enters the Computer Age" at the National Air and Space Museum; "Ceremonial Court" at the National Museum of American History; and "Gerhard Richter" at the Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden.

Other significant OPlantS accomplishments were installing playground equipment for the Smithsonian Early Enrichment Center, completing construction of the new Mathias Laboratory at SERC, providing assistance to the Inaugural Committee for the Inaugural Ball and other activities held at Smithsonian facilities, and receiving an award from the Potomac Electric Power Company in recognition of outstanding contributions in support of the annual electrical Load Curtailment Program.

II. Office of Horticulture: With base funding of 46 workyears and $1,758,000, the Office of Horticulture (OH) applies the discipline of horticulture in educational, scientific, research, exhibition, and display activities throughout the Smithsonian. OH manages the grounds and gardens surrounding 14 museums and support facilities on the Mall and elsewhere in the Washington metropolitan area to ensure healthy, safe, and attractive landscaped areas. The Office also manages the Mary Livingston Ripley and Enid A. Haupt Gardens, which provide a respite to visitors and serve as horticultural educational exhibitions.

OH manages landscaped areas. Staff responsibilities include turf management, tree and shrub feeding, disease and insect control, condition monitoring, and the watering of hundreds of trees, shrubs, and innumerable flowers in exhibition gardens and landscaped areas. More than 100,000 plants and artifacts are under OH's management, including garden furniture and plants grown at the Smithsonian greenhouse-nursery complex at the U.S. Soldiers' and Airman's Home that are used in Smithsonian museum interior and exterior displays. OH units extensively use resources within the Horticulture Branch Library to support these programs. Removal of ice, snow, and trash from the gardens is also the responsibility of the Office.

In FY 1989, the Office continued work to improve the soil in the Enid A. Haupt Garden (EAHG). OH lightened the compacted soil by using organic amendments and introducing 20,000 earthworms and earthworm casings. Seasonal plantings in EAHG provide continual enjoyment to visitors. Review of walkways improvements for wheelchair access continues. The 100-year-old European linden tree, a focal point in the garden, was blown over during a windstorm. Five linden trees planted in a semicircle around the Downing Urn replaced it.

OH continued to work with the Office of Product Development and Licensing (OPDL) on reproduction and marketing of OH Artifact Collection items. OPDL contracted with Garden Source, a garden furnishings manufacturer, to produce two small 19th-century urns and a 19th-century flower stand, also being offered as a fountain. OH also worked with OPDL on a jigsaw puzzle made from images of seed packet covers.

In FY 1989, the Office of Horticulture provided significant numbers of plants used in exhibition projects within the various Smithsonian museums. Among these exhibitions were "Flowers from the Royal Gardens of Kew" at the National Museum of Natural History and "Caribbean Festival Arts." During the year, seven changing exhibitions in the north foyer of the National Museum of Natural History were installed. These included tropical plants, ivies, ferns, bromeliads, ornamental grasses, poinsettias, and cymbidiums. OH distributed fact sheets with cultural requirements and bibliographies at each exhibition. OH provided special plants for the Hawaiian display at the Festival of American Folklife. OH placed first in the Institutional Class of the National Capitol Orchid Society exhibition for the "Best Exhibit" in the show.

During December 1989, OH mounted the 13th annual "Trees of Christmas" exhibition in the National Museum of American History. OH staff displayed thousands of handcrafted ornaments on twelve trees, each portraying a different theme and craft. Volunteers from throughout the United States made ornaments from natural and manufactured materials, then donated them to the Institution at the conclusion of the exhibition.

III. South Group Facilities Management: With base funding of 41 workyears and $1,167,000, South Group Facilities Management responds to the needs of the two oldest and most historic buildings of the Smithsonian: the Arts and Industries Building and the Smithsonian Institution Building, known as the Castle. The staff is responsible for cleaning, minor maintenance, labor services to include intrabuilding office moves, lamping, craft services, shipping and receiving, and special events. The Office also contracts for and coordinates maintenance, trash removal, pest control, and renovation projects.

IV. Quadrangle Facility Management: With base funding of 44 workyears and $1,051,000, Quadrangle Facility Management provides a wide variety of support services to the Education Center of the S. Dillon Ripley Center, Museum of African Art, Arthur M. Sackler Gallery, Resident Associate Program, National Associate Program, Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service, and the International Center. These services include space-scheduling and custodial, labor, rigging, minor maintenance, lamping, shipping and receiving, and other services. The automated scheduling and maintenance program greatly enhances the reliability and effectiveness of housekeeping, public events, and related support services.

NONAPPROPRIATED SOURCES OF FUNDING:

Unrestricted General and Special Purpose Funds - Allotments provide unrestricted Trust funds to cover salaries and support costs in the Office of Plant Services. These allotments also provide the Trust-fund share of space rental costs for administrative activities located at L'Enfant Plaza. Reimbursements from Trust-funded client organizations provide special purpose funds for support services offered by OPlantS. These funds purchase supplies, services, equipment, and landscaping materials.

CONSTRUCTION AND IMPROVEMENTS
NATIONAL ZOOLOGICAL PARK

1989 Appropriation	$5,305,000
1990 Appropriation	$6,500,000
PL 99-177 & PL 100-119 (Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 and 1987 Amendments)	$6,423,000
1991 Estimate	$6,671,000

Appropriations to this account provide funding for:

-- repairs, alterations, and improvements to plant property;

-- additions to existing facilities and minor new facilities, including exhibits;

-- plans and specifications for construction;

-- renovation, restoration, and construction of new facilities outlined in the Master Plan initially approved in FY 1973 by the Fine Arts and the National Capital Planning Commission and approved after revision in 1986.

The Zoo contracts for most construction and improvement projects. If the contractor's estimates are above acceptable cost levels, a more economical alternative is to hire permanent or temporary labor to accomplish the work. The account also funds related expenses such as relocation of animals during the renovation or construction of facilities and major grounds maintenance resulting from storm damage.

In keeping with the 1889 charter, the National Zoological Park endeavors to "administer and improve" the Zoo for "the advancement of science and instruction and recreation of the people" (20 U.S.C. 81). The National Zoological Park (NZP) complex includes 163 acres in the Rock Creek Valley of Washington, D.C., and a 3,150 acre Conservation and Research Center (CRC) located in Front Royal, Virginia. Since 1890, exhibition and public educational functions have been centered in the Rock Creek Valley portion of the National Zoological Park. Conservation, research, and breeding functions take place at both Rock Creek and the Conservation and Research Center at Front Royal. Since 1975, CRC has assumed primary responsibility for saving threatened and endangered animal species.

ROCK CREEK MASTER PLAN - The National Zoo's Rock Creek facilities undergo major renovations and improvements through implementation of the Master Plan. The Congress has appropriated a total of $53,330,000 over the period FY 1974 - FY 1989 to carry out major portions of the Master Plan. Full implementation of the Master Plan, as revised in 1986, will place the National Zoological Park among the world's finest zoos.

Smithsonian Tropical Science and Global Environmental Science Gallery - Phase I ($3,000,000) - As an extension of the Amazonia Exhibit, the Zoo proposes to construct (over a two-year period) the Smithsonian Tropical Science and Global Environmental Science Gallery to educate and inform visitors about tropical biology and global problems. This 8,000-square-foot space will consist of 6,000 square feet of exhibit space and 2,000 square feet of support and office space. The Zoo will construct the exhibit area as flexible-use gallery space. The Zoo will seek an additional $1,700,000 in FY 1992 for the final phase.

This expanded component of the Zoo's Amazonia Exhibit will showcase the complexity of interactions among plants and animals. The Gallery will spotlight the exquisite nature of the little things that make the tropical ecology work. Exhibits will provide closeup views of the complex web of partnerships and competition that exist among plants and animals. In the Gallery, visitors will explore the myriad of specialized adaptations and relationships that the rich tropical environment nurtures.

The Gallery will also serve to inform visitors of the global environmental effect of the destruction of tropical rain forests. NZP will use the Gallery to explore topics such as the greenhouse effect, global warming, and satellite monitoring. In the area of conservation, the Gallery will emphasize creative alternatives to forest destruction and the rising commitment to preserve these priceless natural riches. The Gallery will address such subjects as how indigenous people use and live with the forest, the forces threatening the forest, the impact of destruction, initiatives for responsible development, and suggestions for what each person can do to save the rain forests.

The Smithsonian Tropical Science and Global Environmental Science Gallery will be a major step forward in zoo exhibitory, setting an example of how new techniques of information transfer apply to a zoo setting. Visitors will learn a new way of looking at nature and will leave with a heightened sense of appreciation for the remarkable tropical ecosystem and the need to conserve it.

Hall of Humankind Design ($300,000) - To enhance its animal husbandry standards, the Zoo has made remodeling the Monkey House, constructed in 1906, a priority. Accordingly, the Zoo is requesting design funds for a Hall of Humankind to replace the outdated concept of a monkey house. The new facility will treat the biology of primates in an innovative manner by looking at human origins, biology, and cultural achievements in this context. Paralleling and complementing exhibits on human origins in the National Museum of Natural History, the Zoo's exhibit will use living animals such as tool-using capuchin monkeys, language- and drawing-capable apes, orb-weaving spiders, leaf-cutting ants, and honeybees as analogues of the social, technological, agricultural, communicative, and artistic accomplishments of humans.

The actual construction of this new facility will start in FY 1992, at an estimated cost of $3,000,000.

CONSERVATION AND RESEARCH CENTER DEVELOPMENT PLAN - The construction strategy at the Conservation and Research Center is to develop an infrastructure that will serve equally well any of the major functional paths that the Center may follow in the next 20 years. All projects conform to the Center's Development Plan.

Water Systems and Hydrants ($600,000) and Road Improvements and Extensions ($100,000) - CRC's 70-year-old water distribution system has deteriorated from corrosion and needs extensive upgrading to eliminate the currently inefficient double-direction water main, persistent leaks, and rusty water. All ancient fire hydrants will also be replaced and suitably relocated in order to improve fire protection. The Center's 20-year-old road system has deteriorated as a result of overuse and annual freeze-thaw cycles. Because many of the water mains needing replacement are located under the existing roads, the Zoo will simultaneously upgrade the water system and road system.

RENOVATION, REPAIR AND IMPROVEMENTS:

Rock Creek ($1,871,000) - The National Zoological Park is responsible for the repair and preventive maintenance of existing facilities. The Zoo strives to maintain a safe environment for its visiting public and staff, to provide ecologically suitable and comfortable enclosures for the animals, and to maintain buildings in good condition. The funding requested for FY 1991 will help ensure that the Zoo's future preventive maintenance program will not include a large backlog of major repairs.

The Zoo's Rock Creek facilities, on 163 acres, include more than 450,000 square feet of buildings and 160,000 square feet of roofs. Along with the Park's perimeter fence measuring 10,564 linear feet, the Zoo's in-ground utility distribution system includes over 4,600 linear feet of high voltage electrical lines, approximately 4,000 lineal feet of medium voltage electrical lines, 16,000 linear feet of water mains, 6,000 linear feet of gas mains, 28,000 linear feet of sewer lines, and 14,000 linear feet of storm drains. The Zoo's preventive maintenance program includes the care of these utility systems to ensure safe operation of the facilities. An extensive system of pedestrian paths and vehicle roadways also requires regular maintenance.

The major projects planned for FY 1991 at the Rock Creek facility include:

-- ongoing HVAC repairs;

-- roof repairs to animal buildings and support facilities;

-- repairs to antelope yards;

-- repair and replacement of exhibit rockwork and glass;

-- repair and replacement of animal exhibit doors;

-- painting of animal exhibit spaces;

-- renovation of laboratory and support spaces.

The National Zoological Park requests $1,871,000 to continue its program of renovation, repair, and preventive maintenance at the Rock Creek facility. Funding at this level will enable the Zoo to provide the required level of maintenance to all buildings.

Conservation and Research Center ($800,000) - The Conservation and Research Center at Front Royal is a nonpublic facility devoted to the conservation of endangered wildlife through programs in propagation, research, and international training. The 3,150-acre facility includes more than 89 structures ranging from animal shelters to research laboratories and residences. The property has 2 1/2 miles of roads, 20 miles of jeep trails, and more than 30 miles of fences.

Funding in FY 1991 will enable NZP to complete the required maintenance and upkeep of these diverse facilities. Specific projects scheduled for FY 1991 at CRC include:

-- roof repairs to several residences and animal barns;

- renovation and repair of hoofed stock sheds at Slate Hill, Rockhill, and Longfield pastures;
- renovations and repairs to Building 17;
- interior renovation of Building 112;
- exterior and interior renovation of Building 142;
- installation of nonslip flooring in Veterinary Hospital quarantine areas;
- grading and repair of selected roads.

The $800,000 that NZP requests for FY 1991 will extend the Center's preventive maintenance program and help reduce future costly repairs at this important facility.

REPAIR AND RESTORATION OF BUILDINGS

1989 Appropriation	$20,735,000
1990 Appropriation	$26,769,000
PL 99-177 & PL 100-119 (Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 and 1987 Amendments)	$26,468,000
1991 Estimate	$28,656,000

Smithsonian facilities include 14 museums and gallery buildings in Washington, D.C., and New York City and total more than 5.5 million square feet of building space. These museum buildings house research and collections management activities and a wide range of exhibitions in the fields of science, history, technology, and art. The Institution also operates and maintains restoration, storage, aircraft, and spacecraft display facilities in the Museum Support Center at Suitland, Maryland; centers for biological research, conservation, and education in Panama and on the Chesapeake Bay near Edgewater, Maryland; a center for astrophysics in Cambridge, Massachusetts; and the Whipple Observatory on Mt. Hopkins in Arizona. These facilities range in age from new to more than 140 years old, and many appear on the registers of historic landmarks.

The Repair and Restoration of Buildings (R&R) account pays the cost of repairs, corrective measures to meet life safety and health regulations, and replacement or renovation of major building components or equipment. This budget document discusses the repairs and renovations at the National Zoological Park as a separate justification.

The heavy public use of buildings and the demands on building equipment and systems for constant temperature and humidity levels to protect the National Collections exacerbate the natural aging process of building materials. Eventually, even effective preventive maintenance and regular repair programs cannot keep the equipment components of building systems operating. The Institution must overhaul heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC), and electrical and plumbing systems periodically to replace deteriorated equipment, wires, ducts, and pipes. It must repair the effects of weather on the exterior of buildings and guard against interior damage. In addition, the enactment of new codes and regulations calls for building modifications to ensure a safe and healthful environment for visitors and staff.

In past years, funding levels for maintenance, repair, and preservation of buildings have not kept pace with the rate of deterioration. A substantial backlog of essential repair work exists. These repairs are vital to ensure continued functionality of building equipment and systems, long-term preservation of the buildings, or compliance with life safety and health codes and standards. The most recent (January 1990) estimate of the backlog of projects is $229 million. This reflects a marked increase over prior year backlog totals. Further inspection has uncovered additional requirements or more extensive damage and deterioration. More detailed studies have also recommended higher cost estimates. Only sustained major funding increases will reduce this backlog and preserve buildings for continued use by future generations. Annual funding at the "current services" level in the Repair and Restoration of Buildings program is not sufficient to support the work required. Some of the work is, in fact, more urgent today because inadequate funding in the past prevented the timely repair or replacement of building systems and components.

The Smithsonian separates projects under the R&R program into two categories and accordingly requests funding in two subaccounts. The first subaccount, Major Capital

Renewal, includes funds for the cyclical replacement of major building systems and equipment and major renovation projects required to assure long-term preservation of the buildings. These projects are different in magnitude, expense, and planning complexity from the more routine ongoing restoration work, preventive maintenance projects, or repairs undertaken when a piece of equipment fails. More than half the identified backlog consists of these major replacement requirements for HVAC and electrical systems at the Natural History, American History, Smithsonian Institution, Arts and Industries, and American Art and Portrait Gallery buildings.

The second R&R subaccount is Repairs, Restoration, and Code Compliance. Funding requested through this subaccount will eliminate, over a period of time, the remainder of the backlog of repairs and other work needed to meet safety and health requirements. This subaccount encompasses six categories of routine maintenance and repair projects. This budget request presents an aggregate amount for each of the six categories, with a description of the kinds of work planned.

The composition of the FY 1991 R&R budget request follows:

REPAIR AND RESTORATION OF BUILDINGS

MAJOR CAPITAL RENEWAL	$13,930,000
REPAIRS, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE	
General Repairs	3,935,000
Facade, Roof, and Terrace Repairs	3,790,000
Access, Safety, and Security Projects	2,725,000
Fire Detection and Suppression Projects	925,000
Utility Systems Repairs	2,051,000
Advanced Planning and Inspection	1,300,000
Subtotal	$14,726,000
TOTAL REQUEST	$28,656,000

Following the narrative description of the program for FY 1991, a listing shows all planned projects by building and R&R category.

MAJOR CAPITAL RENEWAL:

Projects in this category involve replacing major building systems and components that have outlived their useful lives. Complete replacement ensures long-term operation and preservation of the building. Modifications to the building also improve energy efficiency, meet fire detection and suppression requirements, and correct hazardous conditions. By coordinating these kinds of tasks, the Institution saves money and avoids repeated disruption to activities in the building. The Smithsonian achieves operating efficiencies as well by designing new building systems and components to work together. For example, by installing multiple-paned windows and increasing insulation, the Smithsonian can install heating and cooling equipment with lower capacity. The equipment costs less to purchase and install, and long-term operating costs are lower. The impact of renovation work on programmatic activities is a key factor in planning a major project. The overhaul of a building causes serious disruption to activities in the building. The Institution must relocate staff and collections from the areas under construction to prevent damage and to allow staff to continue working during the construction period.

For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $13,930,000 for the projects listed below:

American History Building ($3,790,000) - A 1982 study of the HVAC system of the 25-year-old American History Building recommended replacement of the deteriorated heating, ventilation, air conditioning, and refrigeration equipment systems and controls. Replacement of these systems will ensure the continued provision of required environmental conditions in an energy efficient manner. The study also recommended modifications to the building envelope to increase energy efficiency. The Institution recently completed the required window and roof replacement and facade repairs using previously provided funding.

The 1986 Master Coordination Plan established a detailed schedule for replacing the HVAC and related systems. This plan also incorporated anticipated life safety and fire protection improvements and asbestos removal work so that workmen could isolate vertical portions of the building and accomplish all work required in each segment at the same time. This scheduling of complex but interrelated projects will result in less disruption to the Museum's activities and save money through a single contract for each vertical portion. The final phases of the project will incorporate all work required in the office areas of the fourth and fifth floors and in the basement of the building.

Work in each vertical quadrant includes replacing the mixing boxes, controls, and air-handling equipment; installing new sprinkler and smoke detection systems, constructing new fire walls and other fire protection improvements originally outlined in the Fire Protection Master Plan; and removing asbestos present in mechanical rooms and other areas of the building. The Museum is coordinating this project with its exhibit renewal program. The project includes the cost of relocating artifacts and personnel displaced in the course of the work.

The first phase of this project began with funding received in FY 1987 ($1.2 million) and FY 1988 ($1.6 million) and includes all work required in the east quadrant of the building. Funding received in FY 1989 ($2.1 million) will cover Phase II, the west central quadrant. The Institution will use the $3,675,000 appropriated for FY 1990 for Phase III in the west quadrant and design costs for the next phase of work. Of the $3,790,000 requested for FY 1991, funds will support Phase IVa construction in the east central quadrant ($3,300,000); design of the final phase of work which will include construction on the fourth and fifth floors ($290,000); and relocation of staff and collections displaced by the work in progress ($200,000).

Natural History Building ($10,140,000) - Over the past several years the Institution undertook a number of separate studies of the Natural History Building to address energy conservation, fire detection and suppression, communications, security upgrading, asbestos abatement, and other remedies to building deficiencies, especially in the HVAC and electrical systems. As a result of these studies, the Institution realized the magnitude of the work required and initiated a Master Implementation Plan to ensure that the Natural History Building is maintained in an effective manner. The Institution will schedule work in a way to minimize disruption within the building and to reduce costs by grouping tasks. The Museum will coordinate the exhibit reinstallation program with the renovation project. The Institution proposes to fill in the East Court space with a new building to provide permanent space for expansion of the Museum's current activities. The Museum will use this new building during the renovation project as staging space, to allow relocation of staff and collections affected by the renovation work to a safe space while work is in progress. Construction of this building will require relocation of the current chiller plant to a new vault under the parking lot as well as accommodation for other functions now in the East Court space. The Construction section of the budget request includes a justification for the East Court Building.

Guided by a Fire Protection Master Plan developed in 1979, fire protection improvements and asbestos removal and containment work are well under way. However, the replacement of the HVAC and critical electrical equipment is the more significant aspect of this project, and thus governs the overall work schedule. The majority of the HVAC equipment is now more than 25 years old and requires replacement to avoid system failure. The automatic temperature control system is obsolete and does not operate satisfactorily. The age of 90 percent of the electrical lighting and power panels in the building is in excess of 20 years. Some of the electrical panels date from 1910 and present a potential safety hazard. Other panels installed in the 1960s are not UL (Underwriters' Laboratory) approved as meeting established safety standards, and replacement circuit breakers are no longer available. The main high-voltage switchgear equipment, which serves all the transformers for the Natural History, Freer Gallery, Arts and Industries, and Smithsonian Institution buildings, is approximately 40 years old. The Smithsonian must completely replace these components and other related electrical equipment because repair parts are no longer available.

The Institution completed a detailed plan for the replacement of building systems at the Natural History Building in the fall of 1989. The plan spreads the work over a number of years to provide the most cost effective construction sequence, minimize disruption of programs, and obviate Museum closings. The scope of work includes:

-- replacing the HVAC system with a new centralized system located in new penthouses over the east and west wings;

-- replacing the chiller plant with updated equipment in a new vault beneath the southeast corner of the parking lot;

-- modifying the building envelope, specifically by installing roof insulation, replacing single-glazed windows with triple-glazed windows, replacing roof rain leaders, and installing air locks or vestibules at entrances and loading docks;

-- centralizing laboratories with new exhaust air systems;

-- improving the automatic temperature control system;

-- connecting the equipment to a central control and monitoring system.

The project will incorporate remaining fire protection work originally conceived under the Master Plan. Work will also include removing or encapsulating asbestos insulation located in the attics and attached to equipment, ductwork, and piping throughout the building.

Funds appropriated in FY 1986 ($235,000) supported the Master Implementation Plan and the evaluation of the potential requirements for interim measures to keep the facility operational through the construction period. With amounts of $100,000 and $475,000 received in FY 1987 and FY 1988, respectively, the Institution completed planning for the renovation project and began assessing requirements for the relocation of staff and collections affected by the construction. The plan includes a detailed schedule and cost estimate on which to base future budget requests. The

Institution will use the $1,000,000 and $9,950,000 appropriated in FY 1989 and FY 1990, respectively, for design and construction of the new underground chiller plant; predesign work for the entire renovation project; and detailed design of the penthouses over the east and west wings, and the roof, attic, and window work.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests $10,140,000 for the construction of the penthouses and for emergency replacement of electrical and HVAC equipment not expected to remain operative throughout the construction period ($9,150,000); preparation of design and specification documents for the next phase of construction ($540,000); and relocation of staff and collections ($450,000).

REPAIRS, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE:

Projects in this category include:

-- minor, unscheduled, but essential repairs to sidewalks, roads, parking lots, waterproofing, electrical and lighting systems, plaster walls, and marble floors;

-- repairs to facades, roofs, terraces, and window frames;

-- improvements to assure access for the disabled; asbestos abatement, renovations to elevators, correction of exhaust problems, construction of chemical and hazardous material storage facilities, installation of emergency electrical generator system; and installation of security devices and lighting;

-- installation of heat and smoke detection systems, sprinkler and chemical suppression systems, fire doors and fire rated walls, and lightning protection and exit capability improvements;

-- repairs and energy conservation improvements to HVAC plumbing, electrical, and communications systems;

-- inspection and advanced design of future-year projects and long-range planning for repair and restoration of Smithsonian facilities.

For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $14,726,000 for the projects listed below:

General Repairs ($3,935,000) - Funds requested in this category support a wide variety of projects. These funds provide resources for minor, unscheduled, but essential repairs that the Institution cannot anticipate specifically or do not fit into one discrete category. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $3,935,000 for such projects as:

-- replastering and painting of damaged areas in the Rotunda and exhibit halls in the Arts and Industries Building;

-- repairs to the electric snow melting system beneath the east and west ramps to the parking garage at the Air and Space Building;

-- replacement of the failing suspended ceiling system on the third floor of the Air and Space Building;

-- structural repairs to the Tivoli Administration Building at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute;

-- repairs to sidewalks, parking lots, and roads at various locations;

-- general repairs at off-Mall facilities;

-- emergency repairs required throughout the Smithsonian.

In addition, the funds will allow the completion of several projects begun in previous years. These projects include:

-- repair and modification of the public rest room facilities at the Air and Space Building;

-- design for restoration work on the lower level of the Old Dominion Building and repairs to the water tower at the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center;

-- renovation and repair of the Freer Gallery Building to correct electrical and lighting problems and repair or replace badly deteriorated plaster walls and cracked marble floors on the gallery level, and to remove asbestos and repair the HVAC system in the basement;

-- repair of waterproofing and leak detection at the American Art and Portrait Gallery Building.

Facade, Roof, and Terrace Repairs ($3,790,000) - Maintaining the integrity of the exteriors of all Smithsonian buildings is critical. This maintenance will prevent major structural and interior damage and deterioration due to age, water intrusion, and weathering. Proper care will ensure a safe environment for visitors, staff, and collections. In addition, energy conservation demands weather-tight exteriors. Work in this category includes a variety of projects accomplished cyclically and varies with the life of the materials used. For example, roofs need replacing nearly every 20 years; facade joints need recaulking and repointing about every ten years; and window frames and other exterior trim need repainting every five years. Several Smithsonian buildings now require large-scale restoration. The Institution plans to offer additional protection for building exteriors through an enhanced preventive maintenance and repair program.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests $3,790,000 for facade, roof, and terrace repairs. Planned projects include roof inspection, repair, or replacement at the American Art and Portrait Gallery Building, the Cooper-Hewitt Museum, and the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute. Work will continue at the Smithsonian Institution Building to restore the windows and the facade stones and to repoint the building's facade masonry. The Institution will complete the resurfacing of the deteriorated plaza at the Hirshhorn Building and correct a water intrusion problem caused by penetration through the inner court window wall sills. Other projects funded from this subaccount include:

-- repairing, restoring, and painting the historic iron fence at the Cooper-Hewitt Museum;

- -- repairing the waterproofing membrane beneath the terrace at the American History Building;
- -- repairing and painting wooden and metal facades and building elements at a variety of locations.

Access, Safety, and Security Projects ($2,725,000) - The Institution continues to emphasize providing better access for disabled persons, improving environmental conditions for the health and safety of visitors and staff, and correcting facility conditions that threaten the security of the National Collections.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests $2,725,000 for a number of important projects in these areas. Projects to improve access for disabled persons in order to meet current code requirements include:

- -- modifying the entrances to the Arts and Industries and Smithsonian Institution Buildings to ensure full access by the disabled, elderly, and visually impaired;
- -- modifying and modernizing rest rooms in the Smithsonian Institution Building for handicapped access and more flexible use by female employees and visitors.

Among the projects planned for correction of hazardous conditions are:

- -- continuing the asbestos abatement program;
- -- renovating elevators at the Natural History Building to ensure safe operation;
- -- constructing storage facilities for chemicals, fuel, and other hazardous materials at several locations at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute.

Other safety-related projects that will continue include correcting the fume hood exhaust deficiencies at the Museum Support Center and installing emergency electrical generator systems at several facilities.

Projects for FY 1991 to improve security of the collections, staff, and visitors include:

- -- completing installation of internal barriers and monitoring equipment in the Numismatics vault at the American History Building;
- -- installing elevator monitor panels at the Air and Space Building;
- -- completing the security system at the Freer Gallery Building;
- -- improving illumination around buildings and in parking lots on the Mall and at the Anacostia Building for more effective surveillance.

Fire Detection and Suppression Projects ($925,000) - A major Institutional priority is to provide the best fire protection and safety measures available under today's standards and with state-of-the-art technology. Every major Smithsonian facility has a fire protection master plan. For FY 1991, the request of $925,000 will continue fire protection master plan work in the Natural History, American History, Air and Space, American Art and Portrait Gallery, Cooper-Hewitt and Hirshhorn buildings. Work will include the installation of heat and smoke detection systems, sprinkler and chemical suppression systems, and fire doors and walls and the improvement of exit capability.

Utility Systems Repairs ($2,051,000) - Funds in this category will maintain, repair, and upgrade the heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems, and plumbing, electrical, and communications systems throughout the Institution's facilities. Ongoing renovations, repairs, and replacements of deteriorated equipment components are essential for ensuring continued energy efficient operation of utility systems. The long-term preservation of the National Collections is dependent upon stable temperature and humidity conditions.

Energy conservation remains a high priority at the Smithsonian. The most significant energy savings will result from upgrading HVAC systems, replacing obsolete equipment, and improving the efficiency of environmental zones. The Institution modifies existing HVAC systems to accommodate programmatic growth, changes in the use of buildings, and the environmental needs of collections as they become better understood. The Institution uses an integrated approach to renovations and modifications to plan for long-range, systematic HVAC improvements that will meet museum environmental requirements in an energy efficient manner.

Comprehensive HVAC studies and energy audits for most of the buildings facilitate planning of other improvements. The scope of HVAC studies includes field investigations of age, condition, and performance of existing equipment, controls, and current operating conditions; reviews of existing drawings, specifications, operating manuals, and hygrothermograph records; analyses of the relationship between the building structures and HVAC systems; and assessments of programmatic needs for environmental control. The data gathered by these studies provide a basis for determining redesign or replacement needs of existing HVAC systems; developing construction cost estimates; and establishing priorities for the repair, replacement, or modification of such equipment components as air-handling units, chillers, condensers, compressors, cooling towers, automatic temperature and humidity controls, pumps, pipes, fans, filters, ductwork, and related electrical and plumbing systems. At the same time, energy audits investigate all factors relating to energy use, such as power-consuming equipment and building conditions (doors, windows, insulation, floors, and partitions). After identification of energy conservation opportunities and evaluation of costs and potential energy savings, plans will guide the renovation and improvement work. This process identified a number of major system replacements that the Major Capital Renewal subaccount will fund in addition to minor repairs and renovations requested in the Utility Systems Repairs category.

Funding of $2,051,000 requested in FY 1991 in this category will support routine repair, replacement, and modification projects. These projects include:

-- continuing miscellaneous HVAC repairs at the Hirshhorn Building and the Anacostia Building;

-- repairing HVAC, electrical, and plumbing systems at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute;

-- renovating the cooling tower at the Museum Support Center;

- -- renovating or repairing electrical systems at the McAlpin-Miller House of the Cooper-Hewitt Museum and various buildings at the Silver Hill Facility and the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute;
- -- replacing the deteriorated central drinking water chiller at the American History Building;
- -- replacing the microwave communications tower to improve telephone service to Barro Colorado Island at the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute;
- -- constructing a weather enclosure for the uninterruptable power source for the Multiple Mirror Telescope at the Fred Lawrence Whipple Observatory.

Several planned utility improvement projects include continuing code compliance and energy conservation measures at the Cooper-Hewitt Museum, installing state-of-the-art automated controls on HVAC equipment, and auditing energy efficiency at the Smithsonian Institution Building. In addition, the project to install cabling in the Mall master raceway system will continue.

Advanced Planning and Inspection ($1,300,000) - Systematic and comprehensive planning is a vital component of an effective facilities management program. Funds in this category support projects to inspect and plan long-range repair and restoration needs and to develop advanced design of future-year projects. The amount of $1,300,000 requested in FY 1991 will continue development of an integrated master plan for all facilities and update the master plan for the Smithsonian Environmental Research Center. The funds will initiate an accessibility master plan for the Institution and plan restoration requirements in the Natural History Building and the Cooper-Hewitt Museum. In addition, the Smithsonian will continue to use these funds to design smaller, single-year projects before receipt of appropriations as a basis for more accurate cost estimates. The Institution can realize significant cost savings in escalation costs by completing the design of projects in advance of receipt of funding.

REPAIR AND RESTORATION OF BUILDINGS

Detail of FY 1991 Request by Building

FACILITY, ACCOUNT, AND PROJECT TITLE	SUBCATEGORY	ESTIMATED COST
Air and Space Building		
REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Third Floor Ceiling Replacement	General	650,000
Public Rest room Modifications	General	265,000
Snow Melter Repair at Ramps	General	300,000
Elevator Monitor Panel Installation	Access	40,000
Fire Protection Master Plan Implementation	Fire	300,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$1,555,000
American History Building		
MAJOR CAPITAL RENEWAL		
Master Coordination Plan, Phase IVa		3,300,000
Design, Phase IV		290,000
Relocation		200,000
SUBTOTAL		$3,790,000
REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Terrace Repairs	Facade	650,000
Numismatics Security Study Implementation	Access	35,000
Panic Hardware Installation	Fire	25,000
Drinking Fountain System Replacement	Utility	50,000
SUBTOTAL		$760,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$4,550,000
American Art and Portrait Gallery Building		
REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Waterproofing and Detection	General	50,000
Roof Moisture Repair	Facade	50,000
Fire Protection Improvements	Fire	125,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$225,000
Anacostia Building		
REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
General Repairs	General	30,000
Building and Parking Lot Illumination	Access	50,000
HVAC System Repairs	Utility	150,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$230,000

Arts and Industries Building		
REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Rotunda and Halls Painting	General	165,000
Disabled Accessibility Modifications	Access	200,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$365,000
Cooper-Hewitt Museum		
REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
General Repairs	General	50,000
Roof Replacement	Facade	2,000,000
Fence Repair and Painting	Facade	80,000
Fire Protection Improvements	Fire	200,000
Electrical Renovation, McAlpin-Miller House	Utility	250,000
Energy Study Implementation	Utility	400,000
Restoration Planning Study	AdvPlan	50,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$3,030,000
Freer Gallery Building		
REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Gallery Level Renovation	General	800,000
Miscellaneous Repairs	General	500,000
Security System Completion	Access	400,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$1,700,000
Hirshhorn Building		
REPAIR, RESTORATION AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Plaza Resurfacing	Facade	300,000
Court Sills Repairs	Facade	30,000
Fire Protection Improvements	Fire	70,000
HVAC Systems Repairs	Utility	260,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$660,000
Museum Support Center		
REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Fume Hood Modifications	Access	100,000
Cooling Tower Renovation	Utility	90,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$190,000
Natural History Building		
MAJOR CAPITAL RENEWAL		
Master Plan Improvements		9,150,000
Design		540,000
Relocation		450,000
SUBTOTAL		$10,140,000

REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Elevator Repairs	Access	90,000
Public Area Restoration Planning	AdvPlan	50,000
SUBTOTAL		$140,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$10,280,000

Silver Hill Facility

REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
General Repairs, All Buildings	General	100,000
Electrical Repairs	Utility	225,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$325,000

Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute

REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
General Repairs	General	100,000
Structural Repairs, Admin. Bldg. - Tivoli	General	45,000
Roof Repairs, Various Sites	Facade	55,000
Chemical/Hazardous Material Storage-Gamboa	Access	50,000
Chemical/Hazardous Material Storage-Naos	Access	50,000
HVAC, Electrical, & Plumbing Repair-Ancon	Utility	100,000
HVAC Repairs/Replacement, Building 352-Naos	Utility	30,000
Electrical Rewiring - BCI	Utility	35,000
Communications Structure Replacement-BCI	Utility	45,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$510,000

Smithsonian Institution Building

REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Window Restoration/Replacement	Facade	200,000
Facade Restoration (Masonry)	Facade	50,000
Facade Repointing	Facade	175,000
Rest room Modifications	Access	160,000
Disabled Accessibility Modifications, South Tower	Access	100,000
Energy Audit	Utility	75,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$760,000

Smithsonian Environmental Research Center

REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
General Repairs	General	60,000
Old Dominion Building Lower Level Repair, Design	General	40,000
Water Tower Repairs	General	30,000
Master Plan Update	AdvPlan	150,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$280,000

Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory

REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Road Repairs and Improvements	General	325,000
General Repairs - Whipple	General	50,000
General Repairs - Oak Ridge	General	60,000
General Repairs - Cambridge	General	15,000
MMT Uninterruptable Power Source Enclosure-Whipple	Utility	20,000
TOTAL FOR FACILITY		$470,000

Miscellaneous Locations

REPAIR, RESTORATION, AND CODE COMPLIANCE		
Grounds, Sidewalk, and Parking Lot Repairs	General	100,000
Emergency Repairs	General	200,000
General Facade Renovations	Facade	200,000
Asbestos Abatement	Access	1,000,000
Emergency Power Study Implementation	Access	100,000
Security Lighting - Mall Buildings	Access	350,000
Lightning Protection at Various Sites, Phase 2	Fire	205,000
HVAC Controls Upgrade	Utility	200,000
Mall Master Raceway System	Utility	121,000
Advanced Planning and Design	AdvPlan	500,000
Combined Master Plan for All Facilities	AdvPlan	250,000
Institution-wide Accessibility Master Plan	AdvPlan	300,000
TOTAL MISCELLANEOUS		$3,526,000

TOTAL REQUEST, REPAIR AND RESTORATION OF BUILDINGS	$28,656,000

CONSTRUCTION

1989 Appropriation..........................	$ 8,655,000
1990 Appropriation..........................	$ 8,320,000
PL 99-177 & PL 100-119 (Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 and 1987 Amendments..................	$ 8,320,000
1991 Estimate..............................	$16,189,000

The FY 1991 request for funding in the Construction account represents a significant investment in the Institution's long-range program goals. The Institution has a growing backlog of infrastructure requirements for physical plant expansion and modification to support program requirements. The Smithsonian staff has assembled these needs into a comprehensive long-range capital improvement program for the next decade. The FY 1991 Construction request will address the most urgent components of this program. Funding of these projects is essential to maintain vitality in the Institution's far-reaching programs of research, collections management, public exhibitions and education, and other services.

This year's Construction request is as follows:

MAJOR CONSTRUCTION	
National Museum of the American Indian	8,130,000
Natural History East Court Building	1,500,000
Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute Floating Laboratory	1,550,000
Subtotal	$11,180,000
CONSTRUCTION PLANNING	1,000,000
MINOR CONSTRUCTION, ALTERATIONS, AND MODIFICATIONS	4,009,000
TOTAL	$16,189,000

National Museum of the American Indian ($8,130,000) - On November 28, 1989, President Bush signed Public Law 101-185 establishing the National Museum of the American Indian. The basis of this new museum is the Heye Foundation collection, which includes one million Indian artifacts from all parts of the Western hemisphere. Shortly, the New York State courts will rule on the transfer of the Foundation's collection to the care and custody of the Smithsonian. The agreement between the Smithsonian Institution and the Museum of the American Indian, Heye Foundation, signed in May 1989 also provides for transfer of the Foundation's endowment and most of its property, including a 40,000-volume library and an 86,000-item archives.

The creation of this new national museum is the culmination of almost a decade of negotiations between the Foundation, the City and the State of New York, and, more recently, the Smithsonian Institution. When the new museum is completed in the late 1990s, it will stand as a tribute to the many and varied contributions of American Indians, Eskimos, Aleuts, and other native-American cultures. In Congressional testimony describing the potential of the museum, Secretary Robert McC. Adams has said, "It is likely to alter beyond all expectation public understanding of American Indian people."

Congress is considering legislation to provide facilities for the Museum to be housed in three locations:

-- a major museum building to be constructed on the Mall in Washington, D.C., on land reserved for Smithsonian use by Congress in 1975;

-- a satellite exhibition and education center to be located in a portion of the Old United States Custom House at the tip of lower Manhattan in New York City;

-- a collections storage and research facility on Smithsonian land in Suitland, Maryland.

The Institution anticipates four major sources of funding for construction of these facilities: New York City; the State of New York; Federal appropriations; and private donations. The Institution received an appropriation in FY 1990 for programming and planning all three facilities and the design of the Custom House conversion. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $8,130,000 to prepare the Custom House space, to begin design of the Suitland building, to continue planning for the Mall museum and to complete overall planning and programming for the new Museum. The details of this request are as follows:

The Old United States Custom House, New York City: The Institution will convert space in the Old United States Custom House in lower Manhattan, New York City, to house an extension of the National Museum of the American Indian. The New York facility, to be renamed in memory of George Gustav Heye, will contain space for exhibitions, education, a library and other public service programs. The Institution projects the cost of preparing the U.S. Custom House for museum use to be approximately $25 million. The State of New York and New York City have each pledged to contribute one-third of the cost, or up to $8 million apiece, toward construction of the George Gustav Heye Center. The Institution received $600,000 in FY 1990 for planning and design of the Custom House facility. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $6,700,000 for construction. This assumes the application of the 2:1 match of funds provided by New York City and the State to those obtained by the Institution for each stage of the design and construction process. The Institution will request funding to furnish and equip the Center in FY 1992. The current schedule calls for opening the facility to the public in FY 1994.

The Suitland Building: The Institution plans to construct a facility adjacent to the Museum Support Center to provide proper housing for the Heye Foundation collection. This building will collocate this extensive collection of Indian artifacts with Indian artifacts from the National Museum of Natural History, providing a central location for conservation, preservation, and collections-related research activities. The Institution currently expects the storage facility to cost approximately $44 million to design, build, and equip, based on a construction start in 1992. The Smithsonian will use $300,000 appropriated in FY 1990 for preliminary planning purposes. This planning will identify a specific site and building configuration, provide details such as geotechnical data, and help refine construction cost estimates and schedules. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $1,000,000 to begin design of the building. The Smithsonian will request funding for design completion, construction, and equipping in subsequent years. Upon completion of the building in FY 1995, the Institution will relocate the Heye Foundation collection from its New York storage site.

The Museum on the Mall: The Institution will construct a new building on the National Mall near the foot of Capitol Hill, adjacent to the most frequently visited museums in the world. Congress reserved the last remaining construction site on the

Mall for the Smithsonian in 1975. The location will provide excellent exposure for this significant collection of native-American artifacts. The Institution expects that this facility will house permanent and changing exhibitions, reference and collection areas, an auditorium and theater, museum shops, public education facilities, and space for research and other museum programs. The Institution projects the total cost of construction of the Mall building to be in the range of $106 million and expects that approximately $35 million will be provided from a national fund-raising campaign.

This estimate assumes a construction start in 1994 and includes the cost of equipping the building. Initial planning efforts will define the program requirements and refine the construction and equipment estimate as well as relevant logistical and operating requirements and costs. With $720,000 received in FY 1990, the Institution will begin overall programming and planning for the new Museum as well as detailed planning for the Mall museum building. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $430,000 to complete overall programming and to continue preliminary planning of the Mall building. The current schedule calls for completion of the building in FY 1997 and public opening in 1998.

Natural History East Court Building ($1,500,000) - The Natural History Building on the Mall houses more than 1,200 employees of the Smithsonian Institution and related agencies, including 230 scientists and associated staff. Each year these individuals, along with over 3,000 visiting scientists, conduct basic collections-related research in a broad range of subjects critically important in advancing scientific knowledge and understanding of natural phenomena. In addition to the large force of scientific staff and other personnel, the building also houses huge collections, numbering well over 100 million specimens, and 30 public exhibition halls with major associated educational and outreach activities.

The National Museum of Natural History (NMNH) faces two enormous challenges regarding space for the immediate future: accommodating a total building renovation of the heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning (HVAC) system, and relieving tremendous overcrowding. The Museum proposes to meet these two challenges by constructing a building inside the Natural History Building's East Courtyard.

In the immediate years ahead, the Museum must deal with a complete renovation of the Natural History Building's aging HVAC system. This project, funded from the Repair and Restoration of Buildings account, also will include asbestos removal, window replacement throughout the building, and some work on fire protection and security systems. During the 7-10 years it will take to complete this project, the life of the Museum will be totally disrupted. Large blocks of collections will be moved back and forth. Entire exhibition spaces will be closed to the public and reopened. Most staff members and virtually every activity will have to relocate temporarily. In fact, the Museum has not faced a renovation project of this magnitude since the Natural History Building first opened in 1910. Given the extent and duration of the HVAC renovation, everything possible must be done to minimize disruption, particularly of the Museum's scientific productivity.

The second major challenge is severe overcrowding of staff and activities. During the last 25 years the Museum has responded to major challenges facing the scientific enterprise at large, such as the rapid destruction of the diversity of life in the tropics. To meet these challenges, the Museum has increased its efforts and enlarged both its programs and staff. As a consequence, offices, laboratories, and collection spaces have been divided and subdivided; four large exhibit halls have been closed indefinitely to accommodate staff space needs. Two halls are being used as staging areas to prepare collections for transfer to the Museum Support Center (MSC) in Suitland. Even when the collections transfer is completed there will not be enough space available to accommodate all the staff functions in the Natural History Building or to house under adequate conditions the Museum's diverse programs.

To meet its challenges regarding space, the Museum considered several alternatives. To accommodate temporary relocations for the HVAC renovation, the Museum must find substantial temporary space, either off-site or on-site. Off-site leased space would not provide adequate conditions and facilities without being prohibitively expensive in direct costs and in the toll the move would take on the academic and public life of the Museum. On-site relocation, requiring 125,000 square feet of staging space under the optimum 7-year plan for renovating the HVAC system, would close down a major portion of the public exhibition space and have a strongly negative impact on the visiting public.

After weighing its options, the Museum settled on the East Court Building proposal to resolve both space problems. The new East Court in-fill building will interconnect directly with the existing building and ultimately be an integral part of the Natural History Building.

During the HVAC renovation project, the East Court Building will provide approximately 80,000 net square feet of relocation-staging space for offices, laboratories, and collections. Although this falls short of the estimated need, the Museum can manage the necessary relocations by temporarily compressing some of the activities and collections within the Natural History Building and using a limited amount of exhibition space for the duration. At the end of the HVAC construction period, the Museum will have 80,000 square feet of permanent space to accommodate the currently overcrowded research laboratories, offices, collection areas, and public exhibit, education, and other outreach and Institution support activities.

The preliminary cost estimate for the East Court Building is $25 million. This estimate includes the cost of relocating the greenhouse, osteology preparation laboratory, and building trades shops now located in buildings presently in the East Courtyard. It does not include furnishing and equipping costs.

The Institution will complete the necessary planning for the new building during FY 1990, using Construction Planning funds. The planning process will identify the program elements to be included, develop specific space and configuration requirements, and provide a more precise cost estimate and construction schedule. The Institution requests $1.5 million in FY 1991 to design the new building. This funding will allow the Smithsonian to proceed with its plans to renovate the Natural History Building and will also provide valuable permanent space for the Museum's programs.

Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute ($1,550,000) - The Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI) is the world's premier center for basic research in tropical biology. However, many STRI facilities are old, converted buildings, some dating from the turn of the century. Not constructed for research purposes, the buildings are inefficient and in some instances unsafe. The upgrading of these facilities is a prerequisite for STRI to fulfill its responsibilities to the Nation.

Research at STRI is unique because of the two-ocean capability of its marine program. STRI can easily undertake comparative studies between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, where biologically related flora and fauna exist in quite different physical regimens. The separation of these populations began three to five million years ago, when the Isthmus of Panama rose from the ocean. In addition to dating the separation, STRI can also examine long-term environmental impacts on animal and plant populations.

Through consistent support for the STRI Facilities Master Plan, Congress has recognized the importance of STRI's programs and the need for improvement in its facilities. In 1986, the Smithsonian received under Public Law 99-423 Congressional authorization to plan and construct additional research and dormitory facilities at various STRI sites in Panama. Subsequent appropriations have allowed the Institution to begin construction of several of these new facilities. The Earl S. Tupper Laboratory and Conference Center is now complete.

The Facilities Master Plan originally outlined improvements to existing research facilities at the Galeta Island Laboratory and the San Blas Field Station on the Atlantic coast. As a result of a 1986 oil spill near the Galeta Island Laboratory, however, the site is no longer appropriate for the central Atlantic Laboratory. In fact, STRI will not be able to use the Galeta site for normal research for many years. The area will be affected well into the future by chronic levels of oil and it will be vulnerable to additional spills as long as the Texaco refinery, where the spill occurred, is in operation.

Consequently, STRI has had to modify its Master Plan and select an alternative to Galeta. A comprehensive reassessment of the Atlantic coastal environment did not identify a site for a major laboratory. Possible locations either were too remote for adequate support or were subject to severe environmental degradation. However, the Atlantic survey did indicate substantial diversity in trends in populational, agricultural, and industrial development in the region. This diversity provides an opportunity to examine the effects of various levels of development on coastal marine resources and habitats. To take maximum advantage of this opportunity, STRI will require a mobile, floating laboratory facility (a vessel).

The Institution has therefore altered its construction program for the Atlantic segment of the Facilities Master Plan. Construction plans for the new San Blas facilities remain unchanged, but Galeta construction will include only the near-term segment. STRI has now determined to construct the Atlantic Laboratory as a floating research facility that can support research at sites extending from the Atlantic Coast of Colombia to the coast of Costa Rica. Congress appropriated $1,930,000 in FY 1990 for improvements at the two existing facilities and to plan for acquisition of a mobile, floating laboratory vessel.

For FY 1991, the Institution requests $1,550,000 to construct a research vessel for mobile research on marine systems. Currently STRI relies on the R/V Benjamin, a 65-foot, 26-year-old converted motor yacht donated to STRI ten years ago. While, the Benjamin is adequate as a small floating residence, it has no laboratory or marine sampling gear and lacks adequate space for small boats, SCUBA diving, and provisions. It is also slow, making cruise time long and work time short. Heavy field use has taken its toll, and the boat will have to be scrapped in a few years. In 1988 days at sea increased from 90 (1983-88 average) to at least 170 for a total of 13 cruises. A similar schedule was planned for FY 1989, but several longer cruises had to be cancelled because the vessel was no longer considered seaworthy enough to go into rougher sea conditions. The same restrictions will hamper the 1990 schedule.

Despite its limitations, the Benjamin has served as a base for now-famous studies of eastern Pacific reefs, including the devastating effects of 1983 of the periodic climatological phenomenon known as El Nino, the behavior and diving physiology of sea snakes, the ecology of island birds, and paleontological exploration. Yet STRI's experience has shown that the right combination of properly designed working space and accommodations cannot be obtained by reconditioning and refitting donated or other "zero cost" vessels.

The new research vessel will serve as a mobile near-shore laboratory, allowing research in a wide variety of otherwise inaccessible sites. These include many coastal areas in Panama and neighboring countries as well as important and diverse island groups such as the Perlas Islands in the Bay of Panama and the eastern part of the San Blas Archipelago. The vessel will greatly improve the ability of STRI scientists to perform marine research across national boundaries into Costa Rica, Venezuela, Colombia, and Ecuador.

The oceanographic, marine sampling, and laboratory capabilities of the vessel will enhance STRI's research capacity for investigating major environmental phenomena. These phenomena include the El Nino, the effects of natural disasters such as storms and earthquakes (which often occur in areas inaccessible except by sea), and the feasibility and potential ecological impact of alternative sites for a new transisthmian canal. The vessel will be capable of transiting the Panama Canal and will therefore be available for research in both oceans.

The characteristics of this vessel will be:

-- a length of 90 feet, 25 abeam, and an 8-foot draft;

-- twin diesel engines;

-- redundant generators for electricity, desalinators for fresh water, and central air conditioning;

-- accommodations, wet and dry laboratories, bottom and mid-water sampling equipment, diving facilities and work space for 4 crew and up to 12 scientific staff for cruises of up to 3 months;

-- a range of 2,500 miles and cruising speed of 12-15 knots;

-- autopilot, satellite navigation, radar, and radio communications.

Construction of this new research vessel will allow STRI's Facilities Master Plan and its unique tropical biology research to proceed.

CONSTRUCTION PLANNING

An essential part of an effective facilities development program is the ability to assess requirements and make detailed long-range plans. A comprehensive long-range planning program identifies major issues affecting each expansion project, including program needs, spatial ideas, operating logistics and costs, and preliminary construction cost estimates. The Institution initiated an improved long-range planning capability with funds received in FY 1989. Staff will continue planning future projects with Construction Planning funds received in FY 1990.

For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $1,000,000 to continue development of a comprehensive long-range capital improvement program. This planning process will result in better defined plans for future year construction projects prior to authorization and budget requests. The Institution is currently considering a facilities expansion or improvement program that may total $600,000,000 over the next ten years. Some of the most significant projects that will require additional planning are the renovation of the General Post Office Building, the Air and Space Museum Extension, and the Collections Management Center at Suitland. Annual resources of $1.0 to $1.5 million will ensure continued feasibility studies, planning, and concepts upon which to base precise designs and cost estimates for construction of these and other projects. With these resources the Institution will also establish operating and logistical support requirements and make required environmental assessments for critical capital improvement projects. This information will assist Smithsonian management decision making and provide the basis for review commission and Congressional approval.

The absence of planning resources results in rough approximations of project requirements, such as space and configuration, construction and operational costs, and environmental and logistical factors. Such absence also results in capital improvement planning without coherence and unified direction. To avoid these problems, the Institution requests continued support for its long-range planning program.

MINOR CONSTRUCTION, ALTERATIONS, AND MODIFICATIONS

Projects in this category include:

-- minor new construction (under $1,000,000 in estimated cost);

-- alterations and modifications to buildings to meet programmatic objectives in the areas of research, collections management, exhibitions, and public services.

For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $4,009,000 for the projects described below.

Air and Space Building ($200,000) - For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $200,000 to finish renovating the vacated public cafeteria on the third floor. The opening of the new National Air and Space Museum restaurant on the east terrace in August 1988 freed this space for other activities. The Museum plans to move the Center for Earth and Planetary Studies into this space. The Center's research programs have grown significantly in recent years in response to increased interest in space related activities as well as in global warming. The Museum will also use the space to consolidate public affairs, curatorial, and registrarial functions now scattered throughout the building. The Institution will use $215,000 received in FY 1989 and $320,000 received in FY 1990 for design and construction required to provide more efficient workspace for the Center for Earth and Planetary Studies and to relocate the employee cafeteria. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $200,000 to alter the remainder of the space to house the other consolidated functions.

American Art and Portrait Gallery Building ($150,000) - For FY 1991, the Institution requests $150,000 to complete installation of permanent storage racks in the attic of the Museum of American Art as part of a renovation begun in FY 1988. The space was formerly unusable for collections storage purposes because it lacked environmental controls, and ductwork on the floor hampered access. Construction completed with previous funding rerouted the ducts across the ceiling, allowing more effective utilization of the space. The amount appropriated in FY 1990 will fund the framing required for installation of storage racks. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $150,000 to complete this work.

American History Building ($500,000) - For FY 1991, the Institution requests funds to continue two projects in the American History Building: mezzanine installation in exhibit halls, and the renovation of the conservation laboratory.

The long-range exhibit reorganization plan for the National Museum of American History (NMAH) calls for construction of a mezzanine system in various galleries on the first, second, and third floors of the building. The mezzanines will create space for study galleries in key exhibits, where visitors may view museum artifacts not normally on exhibit because of inadequate space. On the east side of the third floor, with $103,000 received in FY 1987, the Museum constructed a mezzanine for the exhibit commemorating the Bicentennial of the Constitution. The Research Center in the present Dibner Library and Physical Science exhibit on the first floor is under construction with funds appropriated in FY 1988 ($300,000) and FY 1989 ($370,000). The Museum will use $400,000 received in FY 1990 to design and construct a mezzanine for the new first-floor "Information Age" exhibit. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $300,000 to begin design and construction of a mezzanine in the third-floor Photography, News Reporting, and Printing halls. The work will include fabrication and construction of basic steel and concrete galleries over a portion of the exhibit halls, along with necessary stairs, handicapped lifts, and railings.

For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $200,000 to complete renovation of NMAH's conservation laboratory. The Smithsonian received $300,000 in FY 1990 to begin the conversion. The funds requested for FY 1991 will complete the project. Completion of the renovation will expand the laboratory for the conservation of costumes, textiles, and fragile organic materials. A laboratory meeting the requirements of these materials does not currently exist within the building. Space for it will be acquired by converting areas now used for collections storage and offices. The renovation work will include installing sinks, cabinets, counters, fume hoods, and other equipment needed for conservation of these sensitive artifacts.

Arts and Industries Building ($275,000) - The Arts and Industries Building (A&I) houses four major exhibition halls. It also houses essential program and administrative activities on the Mall, including those that require public access, such as Public Affairs, Museum Programs, Elementary and Secondary Education, and the National Science Resources Center. Other central support organizations located in this building include Protection Services, Information Resource Management, Equal Opportunity, and Planning and Budget. There is an immediate and continuing need to renovate space to offer more functional work areas for current administrative and program requirements. The Institution will use funds provided in FY 1988, FY 1989, and FY 1990 to begin renovation of space and acquisition of modular furniture to increase future flexibility. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $275,000 to modify an additional 5,000 square feet. Funding for this ongoing project will support the Institution's efforts to use the space in the Arts and Industries Building efficiently.

Conservation Analytical Laboratory ($350,000) - The staff of the Conservation Analytical Laboratory (CAL) has grown in the past few years, and CAL plans to add additional professional staff, fellows, and interns. The present space at the Museum

Support Center is inadequate for additional personnel. Conversion of the current seminar room and a portion of the auditorium area will provide the laboratory and office space needed for the new staff. The Institution received $20,000 in FY 1990 to design these alterations. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $350,000 for construction. The funds will install fume and exhaust hoods and laboratory sinks and cabinetry. The laboratory space will include specialized facilities for biogeochemistry and photo research. The project will also modify building ventilating, electrical, and plumbing systems serving the area. The funding of these changes will enable valuable research and conservation projects to proceed.

Cooper-Hewitt Museum ($335,000) - For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests funds for renovation of the McAlpin-Miller House and the newly acquired Fox House at the Cooper-Hewitt Museum in New York City.

The McAlpin-Miller House is a five-story brownstone townhouse adjacent to the Carnegie Mansion, which houses the exhibits of the Cooper-Hewitt Museum. The Museum uses the building for offices and collections storage. The building is inefficiently laid out, and access to the collections stored there is difficult. Climate controls do not meet museum standards for storage of artifacts. The Museum will prepare a space study of the building with $35,000 appropriated in FY 1990. This plan will integrate the renovation with mechanical, electrical, and plumbing repairs funded under the Repair and Restoration of Buildings account. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $75,000 for architectural changes to the building. This work will allow more efficient use of the space for the Museum's activities. Staff will have better access to the collections. Modifications will also help preserve the artifacts by improving the environmental control and other storage conditions.

In 1989, the Cooper-Hewitt purchased the Fox House, next door to the McAlpin-Miller House. This important acquisition will provide much-needed expansion space for the Museum. The Fox House was built in 1905 as a single-family residence and converted to apartments and professional offices in 1945. A number of residential tenants will remain in the building for the next few years. When the current leases expire, the Institution will renovate the entire building for full museum use. Meanwhile, the Museum must make a number of short-term changes to the unoccupied portions of the building. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $260,000 for this immediate work. The Museum will install appropriate security and fire protection systems and make minor architectural alterations. Without this funding, the Cooper-Hewitt cannot use the building to solve its most urgent space problems.

Freer Gallery Building ($140,000) - The Institution requests funding for two projects at the Freer Gallery Building: design of site work and landscaping modifications, and installation of a telephone system.

The Institution is currently renovating the Freer Gallery Building with funds received between FY 1986 and FY 1990. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $40,000 to design modifications to pedestrian circulation in the area between the Freer and the Smithsonian Institution Building that will accommodate the increased pedestrian traffic resulting from the opening of the Kiosk entrance to the S. Dillon Ripley Center in the Quadrangle Complex. Changes will include redirecting or upgrading the driveway and the walkways around the building and installing better signage for pedestrians. Landscaping improvements will provide better visual interplay between the Freer and the Castle. The Institution will request funding in FY 1992 for construction.

The Freer telephone system was completely removed during the early demolition phase of the renovation project. The Institution requests $100,000 for design and installation of a new telephone system in the Freer Gallery Building. The new system will directly connect the interrelated staff of the Freer and the Sackler Galleries. The work will involve new conduit and wiring and new telephone equipment. The Institution will coordinate the installation of the new phone system with the ongoing renovation project.

Museum Support Center ($570,000) - For FY 1991, the Institution requests funds for three projects at the Museum Support Center: completion of a weather enclosure at the loading dock, completion of the Laboratory for Molecular Systematics, and initiation of greenhouse design and construction.

The loading dock at the Museum Support Center (MSC) opens directly outdoors. This entrance is the sole access for most collections transferred from other locations for storage. Many of the artifacts shipped to MSC for storage are very delicate. Temperature and humidity changes contribute to rapid deterioration of these objects. To maintain the carefully monitored conditions under which they have been stored, the curatorial staff ships these artifacts in special environmentally controlled vehicles. The weakest link in the chain of environmental control is the MSC loading dock, where lack of a buffer zone exposes the artifacts to weather extremes and truck fumes and compromises the continuity of pest control. The Institution will use $285,000 appropriated in FY 1990 to design and begin construction of an airlock enclosure around the loading dock area and the entrance to Pod 4. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $70,000 to complete the work. This enclosure will protect artifacts delivered to or loaded from MSC from exposure to weather conditions. The controlled environment within the enclosure will also reduce the chance for fluctuations in temperature and humidity within Pod 4, thereby also conserving energy.

Congress provided funding in FY 1988 to establish a new program focusing on DNA molecular analysis. The Institution allocated space for this program at the Museum Support Center and will begin renovation of the space with $150,000 appropriated in FY 1990. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $100,000 to complete the work. The project will include installation of fume hoods, darkrooms, and workbenches and modification of the electrical system. The new space will meet the standards normally associated with a biomedical facility and ensure safe working conditions for laboratory staff. The requested funding will permit this important research program to proceed.

The Institution also requests $400,000 to design and begin construction of a 10,000-square-foot freestanding greenhouse at the Museum Support Center. The greenhouse will house living plant collections for anatomic, cytologic, taxonomic, and molecular systematics research for the Laboratory for Molecular Systematics and the National Museum of Natural History's Department of Botany. Growing space in close proximity to the laboratories is vital to ongoing research programs. The greenhouse's heating and cooling system will provide full climate control and limit insect and pest intrusion. A system of walkways and entries will minimize the impact of staff movement on the controlled atmosphere. The greenhouse will enable a number of important research programs to continue. The Institution will request additional funding in FY 1992 to complete the greenhouse.

Natural History Building ($385,000) - For FY 1991, the Institution requests funding for two projects in the Natural History Building: completion of space suitable for the operations of a new national board and for receiving other advisors and dignitaries, and continuing modifications to spaces freed by the move of objects to the Museum Support Center.

In 1987, the National Museum of Natural History (NMNH) conducted an outside management study to assess its strengths and weaknesses and to identify ways to ensure its preeminence and success in the future. As a result, the Museum has begun to integrate and strengthen its exhibitions and public programming in relationship to its acknowledged strengths in scholarship. The Museum is in the process of hiring staff to initiate and complete the planning, funding, and construction of modernized exhibitions. The new exhibitions will replace decades-old ones in the Museum and will include related interactive educational activities.

The new director has established this emphasis on exhibitions and integrated programming as the highest priority for the Museum. A keystone to this emphasis is the establishment of a new national advisory board to provide guidance for this effort. The Museum must have appropriate space for board-related activities. Unlike other major Smithsonian museums, NMNH has never had a conference suite to accommodate national and international advisors, consultants, other distinguished visitors and scholars, and public and staff gatherings. The Smithsonian will use $700,000 received in FY 1990 to design and begin renovation of space for the expanded outreach activities of the new advisory body. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $285,000 to complete the work. The project includes the construction of a conference room, kitchen, dining room, rest rooms, projection room, and reception area. The suite will occupy about 5,000 square feet of space. If the space cannot be completed quickly, the Museum's efforts to improve exhibition offerings and outreach activities will suffer.

The continuing transfer to the Museum Support Center (MSC) of NMNH's collections presents a much-needed opportunity to reorganize and renovate the space within the Natural History Building to address the needs of growing programs. A major space problem in the building can be relieved only by relocating various functions after first reconfiguring the newly vacated space to optimize its use. Unless funding is made available to the Museum to continue the reconfigurations of space and relocations of functions in the Natural History Building as space is freed by the transfer of objects to MSC, severe crowding as well as inappropriate and inefficient use of space will continue to be a major problem. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $100,000 to continue this work.

Photographic Services ($50,000) - The Office of Printing and Photographic Services houses its collection of photographic negatives in the basement of the American History Building. Long-term preservation of the collection requires controlled temperature and humidity conditions. The present film vault is no longer large enough to accommodate the growing collection of negatives. With $200,000 appropriated in FY 1990, the Institution will install a prefabricated environmental chamber and expand the vault into the adjoining corridor. The work will include electrical, mechanical, and plumbing modifications. The project will also remodel adjacent studio and laboratory space for greater working efficiency. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $50,000 to complete the project. The Institution will use the funds to purchase and install special built-in equipment to make the new space fully functional. The request will eliminate substandard storage conditions.

Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory ($100,000) - For FY 1991, the Institution requests $100,000 for expansion of space at the Fred Lawrence Whipple Observatory in Arizona.

A basement level was not included during original construction of the Observatory's Commons Building in 1980. Now, with the acute need for additional space in the summit area, enclosure of the basement is a cost-effective solution. The requested funds will enclose the space beneath the building to provide workrooms for staging of the Multiple Mirror Telescope conversion and a remote control room for the new Infrared Optical Telescope Array. These new workspaces are crucial to the operations of these important astrophysical research programs.

Smithsonian Environmental Research Center ($350,000) - The Smithsonian Environmental Research Center (SERC) at Edgewater, Maryland, performs basic scientific research on coastal land and water systems. Its 42,000 square feet of laboratory, office, educational, and support space occupies several buildings on 2,600 acres of tidal river system land. SERC also rents space in Silver Spring, Maryland, for its solar radiation laboratory. The owner of this building plans to sell it in the near future. As a consequence, SERC must construct additional laboratory space at the Edgewater facility to accommodate this important program. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $350,000 to add laboratory "modules" to SERC's newly completed Mathias Laboratory building. Construction of laboratory space will avoid disruption of this valuable research program. Consolidation of the laboratory with the rest of SERC activities will also save operating costs and benefit administrative and research communications.

Smithsonian Institution Building ($100,000) - The Smithsonian Institution Building houses the Office of the Secretary and other senior management of the Institution. Recent changes in the use of the building require minor modifications to the building to provide the necessary support facilities for staff activities. For FY 1991, the Institution requests $100,000 for this work to ensure the efficient operation of these key organizations.

Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute ($400,000) - The 1986 Facilities Master Plan for the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI) in Panama calls for construction of additional housing for scientists and staff supporting research programs on Barro Colorado Island (BCI). The Institution is using $895,000 appropriated in FY 1985 to construct 20 staff units in five buildings and a laundry/lounge building. These facilities are currently under construction. For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $400,000 to begin building additional facilities to house the full complement of staff living on the Island. The funds will construct two additional residences. These residences will house two scientists who must live on the Island to conduct their research and provide overall administrative coordination to scholars working there, as well as house eight support staff who provide important operational support to research activities. The new residences will provide safe, efficient, and comfortable accommodations to those working on the Island.

Alterations and Modifications Planning ($104,000) - For FY 1991, the Smithsonian requests $104,000 to plan future Minor Construction, Alterations, and Modifications projects. As in other categories of construction activities, such as Major Construction and Repair and Restoration of Buildings, planning is essential for an effective facilities management program. These resources will allow the Institution to assess future requirements for minor changes to existing facilities to accommodate programmatic growth and changes in program direction. Planning studies will evaluate space requirements, make engineering analyses, prepare concept designs for buildings and sites, and estimate total project costs. Careful research into these future needs will result in more accurate cost estimates in advance of budget requests.

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION
Annual Visitation
FY 1985 - FY 1989

MALL	FY 1985	FY 1986	FY 1987	FY 1988	FY 1989
SI Building[1]	1,046,151	1,035,653	1,160,655	228,409	0
Arts & Industries Building	1,048,089	1,047,397	1,228,911	1,458,532	1,324,126
National Museum of- Natural History	5,691,681	5,962,073	7,886,520	7,365,665	6,453,481
National Air and Space Museum	9,160,371	7,752,544	7,750,323	9,237,847	8,397,694
Freer Gallery of Art[2]	291,376	308,236	303,613	309,367	0
Sackler Gallery[3]	-	-	7,095	547,874	445,087
National Museum of African Art[3]	-	-	14,555	643,460	418,022
Ripley Center[3]	-	-	4,674	518,763	378,480
National Musem of American History	4,858,483	5,143,334	5,626,565	6,359,369	5,527,747
Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden	1,059,050	1,057,753	1,033,629	1,278,052	1,048,103
OFF-THE-MALL					
American Art & Portrait Gallery	373,105	346,057	344,358	349,255	408,684
Renwick Gallery	124,684	124,850	218,047	143,020	123,393
National Museum of African Art[4]	43,661	32,915	-	-	-
Anacostia Museum[5]	21,603	36,314	12,668	37,682	28,814
Cooper-Hewitt Museum	112,442	190,751	152,618	140,839	128,474
Natl. Zoological Park[6]	3,100,000	3,300,000	3,500,000	3,100,000	3,200,000
GRAND TOTAL	26,930,696	26,337,877	29,244,231	31,718,134	27,882,105

---

[1] Closed to the public January 1988. Reopened to the public November 1989.
[2] Closed to the public September 1988.
[3] Opened to the public September 28, 1987.
[4] Off-Mall location closed to the public June 1986.
[5] Closed to the public January to April 1987 and reopened in May at new location.
[6] Number of visitors is an estimate based on a sampling system.

COLUMBUS QUINCENTENARY PROGRAMS

The Smithsonian Institution's Columbus Quincentenary programs commemorate Christopher Columbus' landfall in the Americas. The programs focus on the encounter between cultures rather than on the historical events and personalities. The occasion offers an opportunity for the Smithsonian to examine the cultural, historical, and scientific repercussions of the hemispheric encounter. The Smithsonian's Quincentenary commemoration will serve as the basis for a permanent program emphasizing the history and cultures of the Americas.

The centrally-coordinated, pan-Institutional Quincentenary commemoration reflects the diversity of the Smithsonian research interests and provides the general public with a broader perspective on the significance of Columbus' voyages. Twenty bureaus and offices will present programs including exhibitions, conferences, publications, sound and video recordings, and a television series in collaboration with scholars from the Smithsonian and other institutions in the United States and Latin America. This international and interdisciplinary dimension will highlight the experiences and contributions of all the peoples who were affected by Columbus' voyage of exploration.

National Museum of Natural History: The National Museum of Natural History is planning a major exhibition organized around the concept "Seeds of Change." The exhibition, opening in October 1991, will examine plant, animal, and disease exchanges that occurred between the Old and New Worlds transforming the cultural and ecological landscape of the Americas. In addition, the Museum is sponsoring a wide range of symposia, educational programs and publications associated with the exhibition. The Museum presented the second of its Quincentenary symposia in November 1989. The symposium "Disease and Demography in the Americas: Changing Patterns Before and After 1492" examined issues concerning native population estimates, and controversies among scholars regarding native-American demographic decline.

National Air and Space Museum: By October 1992, the National Air and Space Museum will produce a world atlas based on new satellite images and publish a user's guide to the atlas. In addition, an exhibition titled "Where Next, Columbus?" will examine space exploration in the next 500 years, the solar system, the search for extraterrestrial life, and the social and scientific problems that are a part of extensive exploration.

National Museum of American History: The National Museum of American History is developing a major exhibition titled "American Encounters." The exhibition focuses on encounters between indigenous, Spanish and Anglo-American cultures in New Mexico and the subsequent adaption of Indian and Hispanic cultures. An annual series of small case exhibitions and public symposia has already begun leading up to the opening of "American Encounters" in October, 1992. A second exhibition, "Contrasts: 40 Years of Continuity and Change in Puerto Rico," based on the photography of Works Project Administration (WPA) artist Jack Delano, will be on display in August and September, 1990.

National Museum of American Art: The National Museum of American Art (NMAA) will present an exhibition titled "The West as America: 1820-1920" to open in March, 1991. Through major paintings of the mid and late 19th century, the exhibition will examine the myths that formed a national bias for expansion. In the spring, 1992, NMAA will display a major exhibition of works by Mexican-American artists titled "Chicano Art: Resistance and Affirmation." The Museum is also collaborating with the National Portrait Gallery on an exhibition titled "American Painting and Sculpture at the World's Columbian Exposition." Scheduled for 1993, this exhibition is based on the American paintings and sculptures originally shown at the 1893 World's Columbian Exposition in Chicago.

National Portrait Gallery: The National Portrait Gallery (NPG), in collaboration with the Kimbell Museum in Fort Worth, Texas, and the Museo de Prado in Madrid, is developing an exhibition of portrait treasures of Spain. Scheduled for 1992, the exhibition will present more than 50 works by artists during the 16th-century reign of Philip II. In FY 1993, NPG will present, in collaboration with NMAA, an American paintings and sculpture exhibition based upon the 1893 World's Columbian Exposition in Chicago.

Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden: The Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden will feature an exhibition titled "Four Latin American Pioneers of Modernism" that will contain works by Diego Rivera, Joaquin Torres-Garcia, Wifredo Lam and Roberto Matta--20th-century Latin American artists who have explored new frontiers of expression. The exhibition will open in June, 1992.

Cooper-Hewitt Museum: The Cooper-Hewitt Museum will present an exhibition on maps to look at how they document changing views of the world through the ages, and how their designs reflect changing technologies. The exhibition will open in the spring of 1992.

Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service: The Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service will design and distribute traveling versions of Smithsonian exhibitions. Among them are versions of the International Gallery's "Tropical Rainforests: A Disappearing Treasure," the National Museum of Natural History's exhibition "Seeds of Change," the National Air and space Museum's "Where Next, Columbus?", and the National Museum of American History's "Contrasts: 40 Years of Continuity and Change in Puerto Rico." In addition, "Paintbrush Diplomacy: Children's Art from the Americas," which includes 65 paintings by children from Argentina, Brazil, Ecuador, Haiti, Mexico, Panama, Canada and the U.S., will be presented in May, 1990.

Office of Public Affairs: The Office of Public Affairs will promote Smithsonian Quincentenary activities through print, media publications, television, public service announcements, and radio advertisements.

Smithsonian Institution Press: The Smithsonian Institution Press is publishing scholarly and popular books related to Smithsonian programs and other topics. Three books have already been published: Artifacts of the Spanish Colonies of Florida and the Caribbean, 1500--1800 (Vol. 1) by Kathleen Deagan; Monte Verde: A Late Pleistocene Settlement in Chile (Vol. I, Palaeoenvironment and Site Context) by Tom D. Dillehay; and Archeological and Historical Perspectives on the Spanish Borderlands West edited by David Hurst Thomas, the first book in the three-volume series of Columbian Consequences. Forthcoming is the bilingual publication, My Puerto Rico/Puerto Rico Mio, a photo essay by Jack Delano, a WPA photographer.

Office of Folklife Programs: The Office of Folklife Programs will present "living exhibitions" on the National Mall; a series of three symposia dealing with cultural expressions from agricultural, commercial and industrial societies in the Americas; a scholarly program of folklore, ethnographic and ethnomusical research; and associated publications. The first exhibition entitled "The Caribbean: Cultural Encounters in the New World" was presented at the annual 1989 Festival of American Folklife in June-July. In 1991 and 1992, the Festival will feature indigenous cultures of the Americas. Smithsonian radio programs, teacher training workshops and exhibition program books will augment the exhibitions. The symposia "Seeds of the Past" and "Seeds of Commerce" were presented in September, 1988, and February, 1989, respectively. A third symposium "Seeds of Industrialization" is being planned for 1990. In addition, Folkways Records will present a Quincentenary collection of music recordings in 1992.

Office of Elementary and Secondary Education: The Office of Elementary and Secondary Education (OESE) will develop a series of multi-cultural education packets written in English, Spanish, and Portuguese to introduce pre-school age children to the cultural and animal life of the Americas. During 1991, the Office will present a symposium on the effects of cultural transplantation on Latin American and U.S. folk art traditions--story telling, textile arts and music; produce a video recording of the symposium; and distribute a special issue of Art to Zoo that will show teachers how to use multi-cultural resources in their communities for teaching about Latin America.

Office of Quincentenary Programs: The Office of Quincentenary Programs (OQP) coordinates the Smithsonian's Quincentenary commemoration. The Office also publishes "The New World" a quarterly newsletter with English, Spanish and Portuguese editions to highlight the Smithsonian's Quincentenary programs. In addition, the Office sponsors a related symposium each year; "Ice Age Origins: Americans Before Columbus," "Musical Repercussions of 1492," and "Violence and Resistance in the Americas: The Legacy of Conquest" were held in 1987-1989. A symposium titled "The Image of Women in the Americas: Myth & Reality" will be presented in the fall of 1990. In 1991, the Office will organize a symposium on the Americas in cooperation with cultural attaches from several Ibero-American countries. Also in 1991, a teleconference on cultural and biological diversity of the Andean region will be broadcast throughout the hemisphere. The Office also supports the American Indian Outreach Project which will develop an exhibition based on the theme of ethnobotany. The exhibition which can be adapted for local communities will tour native-American educational and tribal centers in the United States.

Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute: In 1992, the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute (STRI) will co-sponsor the Fourth World Congress on National Parks in Panama to address the conservation of natural resources in the Americas. In addition, STRI will present an international symposium, "Non-Imperial Polities" which will allow experts in the fields of archeology, paleo-environmental studies, and ethnohistory to share their research.

National Zoological Park: In 1992, The National Zoological Park will highlight the unique tropical ecosystem in an exhibition titled "Amazonia." The exhibition will provide closeup views of the complex webs of partnerships and competition that exist among plants and animals of the rainforest and discuss the global impact of the rainforests' destruction. Also in 1992, the Zoological Park will create "A Heritage Garden, Plant Pioneers: Algonquian Indians' Food and Medicines." This "living garden" will be installed and cared for by volunteers from local American Indian groups.

Other Quincentenary Activities: Other events include a public symposium "Exploring the Unknown," sponsored by the Office of Interdisciplinary Studies, and the Office of Museum Programs will conduct training sessions for museum professionals from Latin America and the Caribbean. Museum Programs has produced taped, bilingual presentations on the preservation of cultural property. In addition, several Smithsonian bureaus are collaborating on a six-part television series, "The Buried Mirror," written and narrated by Mexican author Carlos Fuentes, which will examine Spanish and indigenous contributions to the Americas and the emergence of "new cultures" in both historical and contemporary contexts. The Resident Associates' Program will work with museum curators to develop complementary programs such as: lectures, seminars, workshops and performances with a focus on Quincentenary-related exhibitions and programs.

The accompanying table identifies Federal funding appropriated in FY 1989 (see table), estimated in FY 1990 and requested for FY 1991 to support Columbus Quincentenary programs:

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION
FEDERAL FUNDING FOR COLUMBUS QUINCENTENARY PROGRAMS
FY 1989 - FY 1991

	FY 1989 Approp. $000s	FY 1990 Estimate $000s	FY 1991 Request $000s
National Museum of Natural History	130	455	462
National Air and Space Museum	41	41	41
National Museum of American History	125	350	459
National Museum of American Art	25	45	60
National Portrait Gallery	15	15	40
Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden	20	20	50
Cooper-Hewitt Museum	24	24	24
Smithsonian Institution Traveling Exhibition Service	55	55	55
Office of Public Affairs	0	0	15
Smithsonian Institution Press	0	0	15
Office of Folklife Programs	90	105	160
Office of Elementary and Secondary Education	38	38	15
Office of Quincentenary Programs	50	86	126
Total Smithsonian Institution	613	1,234	1,522

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION
MUSEUM PROGRAMS AND RELATED RESEARCH
(SPECIAL FOREIGN CURRENCY PROGRAM)

1989 Appropriation......	-0-	
1990 Appropriation......	-0-	-- Equivalent in Excess
1991 Estimate...........	-0-	Foreign Currencies

PROGRAM OF GRANTS FOR RESEARCH

The Smithsonian Institution, through its Special Foreign Currency Program, makes grants to United States universities, museums, and other institutions of higher learning, including the Smithsonian itself, primarily for research and advanced professional training in fields of traditional Smithsonian competence.

Excess currencies appropriations directly funded the Program through FY 1986. Outlays from the budget authority appropriated through FY 1986, including the Forward-Funded Reserve for the American Institute of Indian Studies, will continue into the mid-1990s. In addition, since FY 1986, the Smithsonian has received allocations of U.S.-owned Indian rupees from the funds appropriated to the Department of State in FY 1985 for the establishment of the U.S.-India Fund for Educational, Cultural, and Scientific Cooperation. (OMB Bulletin 90-04, issued on December 28, 1989, indicates that the Secretary of the Treasury has designated Burma as an excess currency country for FY 1990 and FY 1991.)

For more than 20 years, the Special Foreign Currency Program has been a major source of support for research carried out by United States institutions in those countries for which excess foreign currencies are available. The full responsibility for the design, execution, and publication of research results rests with a scholar working within the program of a United States institution. Smithsonian foreign currency grants strengthen the research and training activities of collaborating institutions abroad, since most projects directly involve host country institutions and scholars. Enduring professional ties, which result from joint efforts and scholarly exchange, contribute to the strongest form of United States cultural relations with other nations. These ties also contribute to the integration of the worldwide advancement of science. Accordingly, they narrow the gap between the industrial and the developing nations. Moreover, research sponsored by the Program, aims, in part, at improving understanding of the environment and the management and conservation of scarce natural and cultural resources that are threatened by the rapid growth of world population and technological development.

In FY 1989, ongoing research supported by these grants included the following projects of special interest:

- -- archeological and geomorphic studies at Harappa in Pakistan that provide new information on the prehistoric settlements of the Lower Indus valley;
- -- an ongoing exchange between Indian and United States astronomers that answers questions in the application of nuclear, elementary, and relativistic physics to astrophysics;
- -- comparative studies of dance orientation and vision in Asian honey bees that offer new perspectives on how bees and other insects process visual information in orienting their movements;

- an exchange between United States and Pakistani folklorists, anthropologists, and linguists that gives Pakistani researchers access to current Western research techniques in music, foodways, language, and art;
- examination of archeological sites in Burma that clarifies the importance of Burma in the early formation of regional styles of art and architecture in Southeast Asia.

Further, with emphasis on the exchange of information through small workshops, symposia, and field conferences, the Program encourages international research in specialized areas. In FY 1989, for example, United States scholars received support for participation in exchanges on the subjects of astronomy, environmental education, sociology, soil zoology, Rajasthani studies, visual anthropology, and zoo management.

FORWARD-FUNDED RESERVE FOR THE AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF INDIAN STUDIES

Since 1967, the Smithsonian has provided annual funding through the Special Foreign Currency Program to the American Institute of Indian Studies (AIIS) for its fellowships, research, symposia, and publications programs, as well as its administrative costs. The Smithsonian has helped sustain this Institute and other American research centers abroad for the last 20 years because of their significant contributions to scholarship and science without regard for national boundaries and because of their special service to American scholars.

With Special Foreign Currency Program funding received from FY 1980 through FY 1985, the Smithsonian established a forward-funded reserve of $7,170,000 equivalent in rupees. This reserve enabled the AIIS to sustain its programs after the removal of India from the excess currency list in 1985. Since FY 1986, AIIS, with oversight from the Smithsonian, has drawn upon the funds from this reserve for its fellowship program and administration costs in India. The Institution continues to examine annual proposals through its peer review system before releasing funds from the reserve account to AIIS. The reserve should support AIIS programs through the 1990s in conjunction with continued support from the U.S.-India Fund.

U.S. - INDIA FUND FOR EDUCATIONAL, CULTURAL, AND SCIENTIFIC COOPERATION

In FY 1985, Congress appropriated $110 million equivalent in U.S.-owned Indian rupees to the Department of State to establish the U.S.-India Fund for Educational, Cultural, and Scientific Cooperation. Since FY 1986, the Smithsonian has received allocations from this fund to continue programs in India similar to those administered under the Special Foreign Currency Program, which would otherwise have ended when India lost excess currency status in 1985. The Institution received an amount of $1.4 million in FY 1986, $1.5 million in FY 1987, $1.8 million in FY 1988, $1.75 million in FY 1989, and $2.5 million for FY 1990.

January 17, 1990

Federal Expenditures for Consulting Services
(All Charged to S&E Funds)

In accordance with 31 U.S.C. 1114(A) and OMB Circular A-120 the following consulting services are identified for FY 1989. Similar services for FY 1990 are those that have been identified tentatively in the Institution's advance procurement plans. Services for FY 1991 have not yet been identified.

	Amount	Project
FY 1989		
Personnel Appointments		None reportable
Contracts	27,000	Advisory services for the Hirshhorn Museum.
	16,885	Assessment of library operations at the Tropical Research Institute.
	18,500	Analysis of administration, maintenance and operation at the National Zoological Park.
	24,000	Museum of American Indian Development.
Advisory Committees	5,000	Quincentenary Advisory Council for the Office of Folklife Programs.
FY 1990		
Personnel Appointments		None reportable.
Contracts	20,000- 50,000	Exhibit design services for American Encounters in the Museum of American History.
Advisory Committees	6,000	Quincentenary Advisory Council for the Office of Folklife Programs.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION - FINANCIAL SUMMARY
Fiscal Years 1989 - 1991

($1,000s) SI OPERATING FUNDS	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Projected	FY 1991 Budget
FUNDS PROVIDED:			
FEDERAL S&E APPROPRIATION	211,240	225,479	256,174
GOVERNMENT GRANTS & CONTRACTS	20,977	29,970	31,576
NON-APPROPRIATED TRUST FUNDS			
Investment Income			
-Unrestr. General & Special Purpose	8,949	6,900	7,000
-Restricted	7,998	6,616	6,826
Gifts & Grants (Excl. Gifts to Endow)			
-Unrestr. General & Special Purpose	1,455	1,550	1,550
-Restricted	17,778	14,309	14,975
Self-Generated Revenues			
Institutional (Gen. Unrest.)			
-Gross Revenues	187,111	203,555	206,012
-Less Related Expenses	(161,911)	(175,935)	(177,377)
-Net Income	25,200	27,620	28,635
Bureau (Special Purpose)			
-Gross Revenues	8,675	11,966	11,958
-Less Related Expenses	(7,231)	(10,590)	(10,140)
-Net Income	1,444	1,376	1,818
Other Misc. - Unrestricted	3,367	2,360	4,004
- Restricted	4,636	1,000	1,000
Total Non-Approp. Trust Funds - Gross	239,969	248,256	253,325
-Net of Expenses of Self-Gen. Revenues	70,827	61,731	65,808
TOTAL ALL OPERATING FUNDS PROVIDED:			
-GROSS	472,186	503,705	541,075
-NET	303,044	317,180	353,558
FUNDS APPLIED:			
Research	67,419	77,329	98,284
Less: SAO Overhead Recovery	(3,807)	(3,850)	(5,332)
Museums	111,020	114,429	134,898
Public Service	7,104	5,658	13,382
International Activities	2,094	1,861	1,788
Special Programs	12,908	24,673	0
External Affairs	2,877	2,981	2,901
			302
Administration			
-Federal Appropriation	17,332	19,945	23,611
-Trust Funds	12,444	15,600	16,871
Less: SI Overhead Recovery	(10,825)	(12,120)	(13,200)
Facilities Services	63,228	65,598	72,333
TOTAL OPERATING FUNDS APPLIED	281,794	312,104	345,838
TRANSFERS (Non-Approp. Trust Funds)			
Plant Funds	-	-	4,038
Unrestricted Purpose Endowments	6,189	3,000	3,423
Restricted Purpose Endowments	6,641	470	(461)
TOTAL TRANSFERS	12,830	3,470	7,000
CHANGE IN FUND BALANCES			
-Unrestr. General & Special Purpose	3,679	1,045	2,194
Restricted (Incl. Gov't Grants & Contr.)	4,371	931	(1,474)
Federal (Major Scientific Instrument.)	370	(370)	0
TOTAL CHANGE IN FUND BALANCES	8,420	1,606	720
FUND BALANCES - END OF YEAR			
Unrestricted & Special Purpose	47,109	48,154	50,348
Restricted (Incl. Gov't Grants & Contr.)	20,947	21,878	20,404
Federal (Major Scientific Instrument.)	370	0	0
TOTAL OPERATING FUND BALANCES	68,426	70,032	70,752
FEDERAL CONSTRUCTION APPROPRIATIONS	34,695	41,211	51,516
TOTAL FEDERAL APPROPRIATIONS	245,935	266,690	307,690

January 1990

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses

Appropriation language and citations:

20 U.S.C. 41 provides for the establishment and operation of the Smithsonian Institution "...for the increase and diffusion of knowledge among men..." This section delineates the full scope of Smithsonian authority. Examples of secondary authorities within this primary authority may be cited as follows:

1. For necessary expenses of the Smithsonian Institution, as authorized by law, including research in the fields of art, science, and history;

20 U.S.C. 50, 53a, 69, 75b, 76bb, 77a, 78, 80a, 80m provide that (1) "...all objects of art and of foreign and curious research, and all objects of natural history, plants, and geological and mineralogical specimens...shall be so arranged and classified...as best to facilitate the examination and study of them..." (2) "Appropriations are authorized for...the making of solar observations at high altitudes..." (3) "The Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution is hereby authorized...to continue independently or in cooperation anthropological researches among the American Indians and the natives of lands under the jurisdiction or protection of the United States..." (4) "The Gallery shall function as a free public museum for the exhibition and study of portraiture and statuary depicting men and women who have made significant contributions to the history, development, and culture of the people of the United States and of the artists who created such portraiture and statuary." (5) "The Joseph H. Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden...shall be used for the storage, exhibition, and study of works of art..." (6) "The national air and space museum shall...provide educational material for the historical study of aviation and space flight." (7) "The Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution is authorized to cooperate with any State, educational institution, or scientific organization in the United States for continuing paleontological investigations..." (8) "It shall be equipped with a study center for scholarly research into the meaning of war, its effect on civilization, and the role of the Armed Forces..." (9) "...the Board may...conduct programs of research and education (in the Museum of African Art)..."

2. development, preservation, and documentation of the National Collections;

20 U.S.C. 50, 50a, 59, 69, 75e, 76c, 76cc(a), 77a, 80a, 80m, 81 provide that (1) "...all objects of art and of foreign and curious research, and all objects of natural history, plants, and geological and mineralogical specimens...shall be delivered to such persons as may be authorized by the Board of Regents to receive them, and shall be so arranged and classified...as best to facilitate the examination and study of them..." (2) "The Smithsonian Institution is authorized to include in its estimates of appropriations such sums as may be needful for the preservation and maintenance of the John Gellatly art collection." (3) "All collections of rocks, minerals, soils, fossils, and objects of natural history, archaeology, and ethnology...when no longer needed for investigations in progress shall be deposited in the National Museum." (4) "The Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution is hereby authorized...to continue independently or in cooperation...the excavation and preservation of archaeological remains." (5) "...the Board may - (1) purchase, accept, borrow, or otherwise acquire portraiture, statuary, and other items for preservation, exhibition, or study." (6) "...the Regents are authorized...to acquire (by purchase or otherwise) and

sell contemporary works of art or copies thereof..." (7) "There is established in the Smithsonian Institution a Board of Trustees...which shall have the sole authority (1) to purchase or otherwise acquire...works of art for the Joseph H. Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden..." (8) "The national air and space museum shall...collect, preserve, and display aeronautical and space flight equipment of historical interest and significance..." (9) "...the Smithsonian Institution shall collect, preserve, and exhibit military objects of historical interest and significance." (10) "The National Zoological Park is placed under the direction of the Regents of the Smithsonian Institution, who are authorized to transfer to it any living specimens, whether of animals or plants, in their charge, to accept gifts for the park...to make exchanges of specimens..." (11) "...the Board may purchase, accept, borrow or otherwise acquire additional works of art or any other real or personal property for the Museum (of African Art); preserve, maintain, restore...or otherwise hold any property of whatsoever nature acquired..."

3. presentation of public exhibits and performances;

   20 U.S.C. 75b, 76c, 76bb, 77a, 80a, 80m provide that (1) "The Gallery shall function as a free public museum for the exhibition and study of portraiture and statuary..." (2) "In order to encourage the development of contemporary art and to effect the widest distribution and cultivation in matters of such art, the Regents are authorized to...conduct exhibitions..." (3) "The Joseph H. Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden...shall be used for the storage, exhibition, and study of works of art..." (4) "The national air and space museum shall...collect, preserve, and display aeronautical and space flight equipment of historical interest and significance..." (5) "...the Smithsonian Institution shall collect, preserve and exhibit military objects of historical interest and significance. (6) "...the Board may...display...any property of whatsoever nature acquired (for the Museum of African Art)..."

4. collection, preparation, dissemination, and exchange of information and publications;

   20 U.S.C. 53a provides that "Appropriations are authorized for the... preparation of manuscripts, drawings, and illustrations for publication."

   44 U.S.C. 1719 provides that "For the purpose of more fully carrying into effect the convention concluded at Brussels on March 15, 1886, and proclaimed by the President of the United States on January 15, 1889, there shall be supplied to the Library of Congress not to exceed one hundred and twenty-five copies each of all Government publications, including the daily and bound copies of the Congressional Record, for distribution, through the Smithsonian Institution, to foreign governments which agree to send to the United States similar publications of their governments for delivery to the Library of Congress."

5. conduct of education, training, and museum assistance programs;

   20 U.S.C. 65a provides "The Director of the National Museum under the direction of the Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution shall - (1) cooperate with museums and their professional organizations in a continuing study of museum problems and opportunities, both in the United States and abroad; (2) prepare and carry out programs by grant, contract, or direqtly for training career employees in museum practices...(3) prepare and distribute significant museum publications;

(4) perform research on, and otherwise contribute to, the development of museum techniques..."

20 U.S.C. 77a provides that "The national air and space museum shall...provide educational material for the historical study of aviation and space flight."

20 U.S.C. 79a provides that "The purpose of setting aside such an area [Barro Colorado Island] is to preserve and conserve its natural features...thus providing a place where duly qualified students can make observations and scientific investigations for increase of knowledge, under such conditions and regulations as may be prescribed by the Smithsonian Institution."

20 U.S.C. 79e as amended by P.L. 96-89 and P.L. 98-57 provides that "There are authorized to be appropriated annually... such sums as are necessary for the administration of sections 79-79e of this title and for the maintenance of laboratory or other facilities..."

The Panama Canal Treaty and ancillary agreements vest in the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute responsibility to serve as custodian of the Barro Colorado Nature Monument. The Panama Canal Act of 1979, P.L. 96-70, implements the provisions of the Panama Canal Treaty.

20 U.S.C. 80m provides that "...the Board may...conduct programs of research and education (in the Museum of African Art)..."

6. maintenance, alteration, operation, lease (for terms not to exceed ten years), and protection of buildings, facilities, and approaches;

20 U.S.C. 53a, 76g, 76ee, 79b, 80m, 81 provide that (1) "Appropriations are authorized for the maintenance of the Astrophysical Observatory and...for repairs and alterations of buildings and grounds occupied by the Smithsonian Institution in the District of Columbia and elsewhere..." (2) "There are authorized to be appropriated annually such sums as may be necessary to maintain and administer the Gallery..." (3) "There is authorized to be appropriated...such additional sums as may be necessary for the maintenance and operation of such museum and sculpture garden." (4) "The Smithsonian Institution shall...be responsible for the construction and maintenance of laboratory and other facilities on the area provided for the use of students authorized to carry on studies within the confines of the area..." (5) "...the Board may...preserve, maintain...any property of whatsoever nature acquired (for the Museum of African Art)..." (6) "The National Zoological Park is placed under the direction of the Regents of the Smithsonian Institution, who are authorized...to administer and improve the said Zoological Park for the advancement of science and the instruction and recreation of the people."

7. not to exceed $____________for services as authorized by 5 U.S.C. 3109;

5 U.S.C. 3109 provides that "When authorized by an appropriation or other statute, the head of an agency may procure by contract the temporary (not in excess of 1 year) or intermittent services of experts or consultants or an organization thereof, including stenographic reporting services."

8. up to 5 replacement passenger vehicles;

   31 U.S.C. 638a provides that "Unless specifically authorized by the appropriation concerned or other law, no appropriation shall be expended to purchase or hire passenger motor vehicles for any branch of the Government other than those for..."

9. purchase, rental, repair, and cleaning of uniforms for employees;

   5 U.S.C. 5901 provides that "There is authorized to be appropriated annually to each agency of the Government of the United States...on a showing of necessity or desirability, an amount not to exceed $125 multiplied by the number of employees of the agency who are required by regulation or statute to wear a prescribed uniform in the performance of official duties and who are not being furnished with the uniform."

   40 U.S.C. 193t provides that "The special police provided for in section 193n of this title [Smithsonian Institution]...may be furnished, without charge, with uniforms and such other equipment as may be necessary for the proper performance of their duties..."

10. of which not to exceed $__________ for the instrumentation program shall remain available until expended

    Wording added by the Congress in Public Law 100-446 making appropriations for the Department of the Interior and related agencies for the fiscal year 1989 to permit the Institution to establish a no-year sub-account within the Salaries and Expenses account for the development of major scientific instrumentation.

    31 U.S.C. 718 provides "No specific or indefinite appropriation made subsequent to August 24, 1912, in any regular annual appropriation Act shall be construed to be permanent or available continuously without reference to a fiscal year unless it belongs to one of the following...or unless it is made in terms expressly providing that it shall continue available beyond the fiscal year for which the appropriation Act in which it is contained makes provision."

11. and, including such funds as may be necessary to support American overseas research centers and a total of $__________ for the Council of American Overseas Research Centers:

    Wording added by the Congress in Public Law 99-190 making appropriations for Department of Interior and Related Agencies in 1986. Public Law 100-446 making appropriations for the Department of the Interior and Related Agencies for the fiscal year 1989 modified reference to add specific dollar sum to be provided to the Council of American Overseas Research Centers.

12. Provided, That funds appropriated herein are available for advance payments to independent contractors performing research services or participating in official Smithsonian presentations.

    31 U.S.C. 529 provides that "No advance of public money shall be made in any case unless authorized by the appropriation concerned or other law."

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

Appropriation: Construction and Improvements, National Zoological Park

Appropriation language and citations:

1. For necessary expenses of planning, construction, remodeling, and equipping of buildings and facilities at the National Zoological Park,

   20 U.S.C. 81 provides that "The National Zoological Park is placed under the direction of the Regents of the Smithsonian Institution, who are authorized...to administer and improve the said Zoological Park for the advancement of science and the instruction and recreation of the people."

2. by contract or otherwise,

   Wording for clarification only.

3. to remain available until expended.

   31 U.S.C. 718 provides "No specific or indefinite appropriation made subsequent to August 24, 1912, in any regular annual appropriation Act shall be construed to be permanent or available continuously without reference to a fiscal year unless it belongs to one of the following...or unless it is made in terms expressly providing that it shall continue available beyond the fiscal year for which the appropriation Act in which it is contained makes provision."

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

Appropriation: Repair and Restoration of Buildings

Appropriation language and citations:

1. For necessary expenses of repair and restoration of buildings owned or occupied by the Smithsonian Institution, by contract or otherwise, as authorized by section 2 of the Act of August 22, 1949 (63 Stat. 623),

   20 U.S.C. 53a provides that "Appropriations are authorized...for repairs and alterations of buildings and grounds occupied by the Smithsonian Institution in the District of Columbia and elsewhere..."

2. including not to exceed $__________for services as authorized by 5 U.S.C. 3109,

   5 U.S.C. 3109 provides that "When authorized by an appropriation or other statute, the head of an agency may procure by contract the temporary (not in excess of 1 year) or intermittent services of experts or consultants or an organization thereof, including stenographic reporting services."

3. to remain available until expended:

   31 U.S.C. 718 provides "No specific or indefinite appropriation made subsequent to August 24, 1912, in any regular annual appropriation Act shall be construed to be permanent or available continuously without reference to a fiscal year unless it belongs to one of the following...or unless it is made in terms expressly providing that it shall continue available beyond the fiscal year for which the appropriation Act in which it is contained makes provision."

4. Provided, That contracts awarded for environmental systems, protection systems, and exterior repair or restoration of buildings of the Smithsonian Institution may be negotiated with selected contractors and awarded on the basis of contractor qualifications as well as price.

   Wording added to allow for negotiations with the most competent firms for restoration and renovation work where it can be certified that such work must be performed to meet the special needs of historic structures, the protection of collections, or public safety.

5. Provided further, That unexpended balances of amounts previously appropriated for this purpose under the heading "Restoration and renovation of buildings, Smithsonian Institution" may be transferred to and merged with this appropriation and accounted for as one appropriation for the same time period as originally enacted.

   Wording added by Congress in Public Law 101-121 making appropriations for Department of Interior and Related Agencies for fiscal year 1990 to implement the change of the name of the appropriation account from "Restoration and Renovation of Buildings" to "Repair and Restoration of Buildings."

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION

Appropriation: Construction

Appropriation language and citations:

1. For necessary expenses for construction,

   20 U.S.C. 53a provides that "Appropriations are authorized...for repairs and alterations of buildings and grounds occupied by the Smithsonian Institution in the District of Columbia and elsewhere..."

2. to remain available until expended:

   31 U.S.C. 718 provides "No specific or indefinite appropriation made subsequent to August 24, 1912, in any regular annual appropriation Act shall be construed to be permanent or available continuously without reference to a fiscal year unless it belongs to one of the following...or unless it is made in terms expressly providing that it shall continue available beyond the fiscal year for which the appropriation Act in which it is contained makes provision."

3. Provided, That notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Institution is authorized to transfer to the State of Arizona, the counties of Santa Cruz and/or Pima, a sum not to exceed $_________ for the purpose of assisting in the construction or maintenance of an access to the Whipple Observatory.

   Wording added to allow the Institution to transfer funds from within this account to assist in providing access to the Whipple Observatory in Arizona.

FY 1990 APPROPRIATION

(Dollars in Thousands)

UNIT	FY 1990 CONGRESSIONAL APPROPRIATION	RECOVERY OF FERS \1	REORGANIZATIONS AND PERMANENT REPROGRAMMINGS	GRAMM-RUDMAN-HOLLINGS SEQUESTRATION	REVISED FY 1990 APPROPRIATION
RESEARCH					
Assistant Secretary for Research	1,780	0	(165) \2	(29)	1,586
Astrophysical Observatory	11,141	0	0	(150)	10,991
Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute	6,026	(39)	0	(77)	5,910
Smithsonian Environmental Research Center	1,632	0	229 \3	(24)	1,837
National Zoological Park	14,808	(42)	0	(197)	14,569
Smithsonian Institution Archives	621	0	0	(8)	613
Smithsonian Institution Libraries	5,451	(35)	34 \4	(73)	5,377
International Environmental Science Program	781	0	0	(11)	770
Major Scientific Instrumentation	2,176	0	0	(29)	2,147
Subtotal	44,416	(116)	98	(598)	43,800
MUSEUMS					
Assistant Secretary for Museums	1,248	0	0	(17)	1,231
National Museum of Natural History	28,058	(147)	(30) \5	(376)	27,505
National Air and Space Museum	9,989	0	313 \6	(137)	10,165
National Museum of American History	15,891	(35)	(430) \7	(208)	15,218
National Museum of the American Indian	4,000	0	0	(54)	3,946
National Museum of American Art	5,734	(77)	0	(76)	5,581
National Portrait Gallery	4,304	(35)	0	(57)	4,212
Hirshhorn Museum and Sculpture Garden	3,556	0	0	(48)	3,508
Arthur M. Sackler Gallery/Freer Gallery	4,390	0	0	(59)	4,331
Archives of American Art	1,141	0	0	(15)	1,126
Cooper-Hewitt Museum	1,482	0	0	(20)	1,462
National Museum of African Art	3,659	0	0	(49)	3,610
Anacostia Museum	1,050	0	(34) \8	(14)	1,002
Conservation Analytical Laboratory	2,628	(42)	0	(35)	2,551
Office of Exhibits Central	1,963	0	0	(26)	1,937
Smithsonian Traveling Exhibition Service	878	0	(74) \9	(11)	793
Museum Support Center	4,321	0	0	(58)	4,263
Subtotal	94,292	(336)	(255)	(1,260)	92,441

(Dollars in Thousands) UNIT	FY 1990 CONGRESSIONAL APPROPRIATION	RECOVERY OF FERS	REORGANIZATIONS AND PERMANENT REPROGRAMMINGS	GRAMM-RUDMAN-HOLLINGS SEQUESTRATION	REVISED FY 1990 APPROPRIATION
PUBLIC SERVICE					
Assistant Secretary for Public Service	1,471	0	0	(19)	1,452
SI Press	1,286	0	0	(17)	1,269
Office of Folklife Programs	1,041	0	0	(14)	1,027
Academic and Educational Programs	897	(44)	0	(12)	841
Subtotal	4,695	(44)	0	(62)	4,589
INTERNATIONAL ACTIVITIES	889	(35)	74 \10	(12)	916
ADMINISTRATION	20,257	531	(570) \11	(273)	19,945
FACILITIES SERVICES					
Office of Design & Construction	2,795	0	0	(38)	2,757
Office of Protection Services	23,534	0	123 \12	(318)	23,339
Office of Plant Services	37,675	0	530 \13	(513)	37,692
Subtotal	64,004	0	653	(869)	63,788
GRAND TOTAL	228,553	0	0	(3,074)	225,479

\1 REFLECTS RECOVERY OF FERS FUNDS TEMPORARILY ALLOCATED TO FUND SPECIAL EMPLOYMENT INITIATIVE COSTS IN FY 1989.

\2 PERMANENT TRANSFERS OF: ONE POSITION FROM THE NATIONAL MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY, FUNDS TO THE JOSEPH HENRY PAPERS, AND FOUR POSITIONS TO THE SMITHSONIAN ENVIRONMENTAL RESEARCH CENTER.

\3 PERMANENT TRANSFERS OF: FOUR POSITIONS FROM THE OFFICE OF THE ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR RESEARCH AND ONE POSITION FROM THE OFFICE OF PLANT SERVICES.

\4 PERMANENT TRANSFER OF ONE POSITION FROM THE ANACOSTIA MUSEUM LIBRARY.

\5 PERMANENT TRANSFER OF ONE POSITION TO THE OFFICE OF THE ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR RESEARCH.

\6 PERMANENT TRANSFER OF NINE POSITIONS FROM THE OFFICE OF PLANT SERVICES.

\7 PERMANENT TRANSFER OF FUNDS RELATED TO RENTAL SPACE AT FULLERTON TO THE OFFICE OF PLANT SERVICES FOR UTILITIES AND RENT AND TO PROTECTION SERVICES FOR SECURITY.

\8 PERMANENT TRANSFER OF ONE POSITION TO THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION LIBRARIES.

\9 PERMANENT TRANSFER OF TWO POSITIONS TO THE INTERNATIONAL GALLERY.

\10 PERMANENT TRANSFER OF TWO POSITIONS FROM THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION TRAVELING EXHIBITION SERVICE.

\11 PERMANENT TRANSFERS OF: ONE POSITION TO THE OFFICE OF THE ASSISTANT SECRETARY OF EXTERNAL AFFAIRS AND FUNDS TO THE OPLANTS RENTAL ACCOUNT FOR ADDITIONAL ADMINSTRATIVE SPACE.

\12 PERMANENT TRANSFER OF FUNDS FROM THE NATIONAL MUSEUM OF AMERICAN HISTORY FOR SECURITY AT FULLERTON.

\13 PERMANENT TRANSFERS OF: ONE POSITION TO THE SMITHSONIAN ENVIRONMENTAL RESEARCH CENTER, NINE POSITIONS TO THE AIR AND SPACE MUSEUM, AND FUNDS FROM THE MUSEUM OF AMERICAN HISTORY FOR UTILITIES AND RENT AT FULLERTON.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
FEDERAL BUDGET ESTIMATES FOR FISCAL YEAR 1991
CONGRESSIONAL

INDEX

TAB DESCRIPTION PAGE

1. Overview:

Historical Summary.......................... 1-1
1989 General Statement....................... 1-5
Visitor Attendance.......................... 1-18
1990 Appropriation and 1991 Request.......... 1-19
Federal Budget Highlights.................... 1-26
Summary of Increases and Decreases........... 1-27

2. Appropriation Language and Authorizing Legislation:

Appropriation Language....................... 2-1
Authorization Legislation.................... 2-3

3. Summary of Federal Funding and Staffing:

Five Year (1987-1991) Federal Funding and Staffing Summary 3-1
Six Year (1986-1991) FTE Workyears Summary... 3-2
Fiscal Year 1989 - Federal Funding and Staffing.................................. 3-3
Fiscal Year 1990 - Federal Funding and Staffing.................................. 3-4
Fiscal Year 1991 - Federal Funding and Staffing.................................. 3-5
Three Year Employment Summary (1989, 1990 and 1991)............................ 3-6

Narrative Justification by Function:

4. Function A - Care and Display of Art.............. 4-1
4A. Function A - Special Exhibitions.................. 4-17
5. Function B - Building Operations and Maintenance.. 5-1
5A. Function B - Repair, Restoration, and Renovation of Buildings.............................. 5-8
6. Function C - Security and Protection.............. 6-1
7. Function D - General Administration............... 7-1
7A. Function D - Electronic Data Processing........... 7-9

TAB	DESCRIPTION	PAGE
8.	Other Schedules:	
	Program and Performance (1989-1991)..........	8-1
	Object Classification (1989-1991)............	8-2
	Object Classification Renovation (1989-1991).	8-3
	Personnel Summary............................	8-4
	Program and Financing (1989-1991)............	8-5
	Program and Financing Renovation (1989-1991).	8-6
9.	Consolidated Summary of Federal and Non-Federal Funding:	
	Fiscal Year 1989 - Statement of Operations...	9-1
	Fiscal Year 1989 - Statement of Changes in Fund Balances..............................	9-2
	Fiscal Years 1990 and 1991 - Federal Budget Comparative Statement of Income and Expense	9-3

HISTORICAL SUMMARY

The National Gallery of Art is an institution established for the display of works of fine art of the highest quality for the benefit of the nation's citizenry and visitors from other nations. Attendance in the last two years has reached a level of seven to eight million. Visitors come from all of the United States and from 50 or more foreign countries. From its inception to this day, the National Gallery of Art has been supported both by the Federal government and private individuals and institutions.

The National Gallery of Art had its beginnings almost 50 years ago, when Andrew W. Mellon first proposed to President Franklin D. Roosevelt that Mr. Mellon donate the necessary sums to build such an institution and that his private collection form the nucleus of its collections. As conceived, this gallery would develop an art collection from private donations; for its part, the Federal government would designate a site for the Gallery and appropriate funds annually for the care of the art collection, upkeep of the physical premises of the Gallery and administrative expenses.

This concept of mutual public and private support for a future National Gallery is contained in early correspondence between Andrew Mellon and President Roosevelt. In his letter of December 22, 1936 to the President, Mr. Mellon states...

> "...In addition to the gift of the art collection and a building in which it and similar collections may be housed and displayed, I plan also to establish an endowment fund for the proposed gallery, the income from which shall be used to pay the annual salaries of a director, assistant director, secretary and curators* of the gallery, and for possible art acquisitions. The upkeep of the building and other administrative expenses and cost of operation would be provided in appropriations made by Congress..."

Acceptance of this premise is contained in Section 4(a) of the Joint Resolution of Congress of March 24, 1937 (20 U.S.C. 71-75), which established the National Gallery and states in part:

> "The faith of the United States is pledged that...the United States will provide such funds as may be necessary for the upkeep of the National Gallery of Art and the administrative expenses and costs of operation thereof, including the protection and care of works of art acquired by the Board, so that the National Gallery of Art shall be at all times properly maintained and the works of art contained therein shall be exhibited regularly

---

* In the subsequent agreement with Congress, codified in Title 20 U.S.C. 74c, the compensation of 'curators' was changed to 'a chief curator.'

> to the general public free of charge. For these purposes there are hereby authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary."

The West Building of the National Gallery of Art, designed by John Russell Pope, with 530,000 square feet of interior space, was opened to the general public on March 17, 1941. President Roosevelt and Paul Mellon, representing the founder after the death of Andrew Mellon, presided at the building's dedication.

On this occasion President Roosevelt said,

> "In accepting this building and the paintings it contains, the people of the United States accept a part in that inheritance for themselves. They accept it for themselves not because this Gallery is given to them - though they are thankful for the gift. They accept it for themselves because in the past few years, they have come to understand that the inheritance is theirs and that, like other inheritors of things of value, they have a duty toward it. It signifies a relation - a new relation here made visible in paint and in stone - between the whole people of this country, and the old inherited tradition of the arts."

Beginning in 1971, the construction of the East Building and the connecting link between the two buildings was commenced on an adjoining site previously reserved by the 1937 Joint Resolution of Congress for expansion of the National Gallery Art. The building footage provided the Gallery an additional 591,000 square feet of interior space. The entire funding for the construction of the East Building and the connecting link to the West Building, was provided by generous donations from Paul Mellon, the late Ailsa Mellon Bruce, and The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation.

The East Building was accepted on behalf of the people of the United States on June 1, 1978, at a ceremony presided over by President Carter and Paul Mellon, President of the Gallery. On this occasion, President Carter spoke again of the joint public and private support upon which the continued quality of the National Gallery of Art depends:

> "Because we are committed to an open and flexible relationship, support for the arts and humanities flows through many different kinds of channels, leaving room for art and scholarship to develop naturally.
>
> This gallery, for example, is maintained at public expense, but it owes its existence to acts of private philanthropy. Moreover, its

> acquisition of works of art is financed entirely from private donations. It is equally significant that this building will serve both as a museum and as a center for art scholarship.
>
> We have before us here, in concrete, marble, and glass, a tangible demonstration that excellence and access to a wide public are far from being contradictory. They are complementary. This building stands as a metaphor for what, at its best, the relationship between government and the arts can be."

Relocation of the administrative functions of the Gallery to the East Building permitted repair, renovation and restoration of the West Building. This undertaking not only provided for a refurbishing of the electrical and mechanical services of the West Building (which were almost 40 years old), but gave the Gallery enlarged space for exhibition of art, for sales activities and also made possible the efficient arrangement of other functions. For the first time, art arriving at the shipping dock was convenient to the art conservation activities which were now grouped in one area. With photography, conservation, receiving and registry located adjacent to each other, paintings and objects are now handled more safely and efficiently.

"Operation Breakthrough" opened 40,000 square feet of new gallery space on the ground floor of the West Building. This made possible the exhibition of some 2,000 works of art from the Gallery's collections which had been off public view. It also provided direct passage from 4th Street to 7th Street on the ground floor of the West Building and opened the 7th Street entrance to the public for the first time. In addition, it provided space for simultaneous series of temporary exhibitions of graphic arts, and greater flexibility in exhibition planning.

The new galleries were accepted for the nation by President Reagan on January 27, 1983. On this occasion President Reagan said,

> "I am pleased to be here to honor Andrew Mellon and to celebrate another milestone in the realization of his vision of a National Gallery of Art - an American gallery created for the enrichment of all the people of the United States, and second to none in its commitment to excellence. Tonight we inaugurate some 40,000 square feet of new gallery space. It is a great privilege for me to share in this. President Roosevelt accepted the original gifts of the West Building and Mr. Mellon's collection in 1941, and President Carter accepted the East Building in 1978."

The National Gallery of Art has earned a reputation for maintaining collections of a quality that place it among the great national galleries of the world. The art collection, which is irreplaceable and could never be duplicated today, is generally regarded as priceless. The Gallery's collections have been and continue to be, assembled completely from private donations.

Since the Gallery's opening in 1941, its collections have grown to date as follows:

	1941	1989
Paintings	506	2,827
Sculptures	35	1,956
Works of Art on Paper	400	64,416
Decorative Arts Objects	-	556*
Research Support Collections:		
Books and Documents	502	367,013
Photographic Images	3,000	5,506,353

Public interest in, and appreciation of, the National Gallery's permanent collections of art and special exhibitions of art from other collections around the world has increased dramatically in recent years. In a similar manner, the expansion of the Gallery's educational programs is in response to greater appreciation of art by the general public. The Gallery's programs, distributed free by its Department of Extension Services, were seen by an estimated 80,135,173 persons in FY 89. So too has the Center for Advanced Study in the Visual Arts (CASVA) fulfilled a need for the nurturing of scholarship in art and art history, and the consequent enrichment of education across the country.

It is within this framework of continued expansion of the Gallery's program of carrying visual and educational appreciation of art to the public that we are pleased to submit our fiscal year 1991 request.

---

* The quantity of decorative art objects decreased slightly from last year's total of 558 due to the reclassification of some items to works of art on paper.

GENERAL STATEMENT

Art Acquisitions: A total of 377 works of art were acquired to date during fiscal year 1989. These acquisitions include 353 prints and drawings.

Special Exhibitions: The following special exhibitions were held at the National Gallery of Art during fiscal year 1989.

Special Exhibitions

Loan Exhibitions: Fiscal Year 1989

Michelangelo: Draftsman/Architect [Part I and II]
9 October 1988 - 11 December 1988

Raphaelle Peale Still Lifes
16 October 1988 - 29 January 1989

Japan: The Shaping of Daimyo Culture 1185-1868
30 October 1988 - 23 January 1989

The Art of the Tea Ceremony
30 October 1988 - 23 January 1989

The Pastoral Landscape: The Legacy of Venice
6 November 1988 - 22 January 1989

Nineteenth-Century Drawings from the Armand Hammer Collection
6 November 1988 - 23 April 1988

The Art of Paolo Veronese 1528-1588
13 November 1988 - 20 February 1989

Twentieth-Century Art: Selections for the Tenth Anniversary of the East Building
4 December 1988 - 31 December 1990

Cezanne: The Early Years 1859-1872
29 January 1989 - 30 April 1989

Master Drawings from the National Gallery of Canada
5 March 1989 - 21 May 1989

Treasures from the Fitzwilliam Museum: The Increase of Learning and Other Great Objects
19 March 1989 - 18 June 1989

On the Art of Fixing a Shadow: 150 Years of Photography
7 May 1989 - 30 July 1989

Still Lifes of the Golden Age: Northern European Paintings from the Heinz Family Collection
• 14 May 1989 - 4 September 1989

Drawings of Landscape and Architecture from the Armand Hammer Collection
28 May 1989 - 26 November 1989

American Paintings from the Manoogian Collection
4 June 1989 - 4 September 1989

Mary Cassatt: The Color Prints
18 June 1989 - 27 August 1989

Italian Etchers of the Renaissance and Baroque: Parmigianino to Giordano
24 September 1989 - 26 November 1989

EDUCATION DIVISION

This division, consisting of several interdependent departments, produces interpretive programs and provides information to Gallery visitors of all ages and for national and international audiences.

Department of Public Programs: This department consists of two broad sections: an information unit and an interpretive unit.

Art Information Service: This branch consists of six professionals who train and supervise over one hundred volunteers. The volunteers staff four information desks in the East and West Buildings during normal Gallery hours throughout the year. With the support and oversight of the professional staff, the volunteers answer questions on art related matters, assist visitors in planning their stay at the Gallery, and distribute free material such as maps and brochures. Using the reference materials located at each desk and the computerized art information system, the volunteers provide information on the Gallery's permanent collections and on current special exhibitions. In addition, the professional staff responds to a broad array of telephone and written inquiries encompassing the whole range of western art history. In FY'89 a total of 1,611 special inquiries were answered; 593 by phone and 1,018 by mail (931 domestic, 87 foreign).

Interpretive Unit: This branch includes the sections of Tours and Lectures, Teacher and School Programs, Exhibition Programs, Academic Programs, Radio Programs, Summer Graduate Internship Program, and Interactive Educational Technology. A key goal of the Interpretive Unit is to make effective, innovative use of the National Gallery's own collections and special exhibitions, both to deepen the public's understanding and pleasure in art, and to remain in the forefront of museum education. The Interpretive Unit's programs strengthen cooperation between the Education Division and other educators in the area and nationwide.

1. Tours and Lectures: The main responsibility of this unit is to prepare a wide range of daily tours and Gallery lectures free of charge to the general public. This section also assists in producing audio-visual presentations, guides to the collections, brochures, wall texts, labels and other educational materials on the National Gallery's collections and special exhibitions. In FY'89 there were five regularly scheduled tours offered daily to the public, including separate introductory tours of the Gallery's West and East Buildings, introductory foreign language tours in French, German, Italian, and Spanish, one thematic tour, and a twenty-minute Gallery talk on a particular work of art. In addition, the department presented a fourteen-session history of art slide lecture course. The interpretive staff also prepares Gallery lectures and tours on request for groups of adults and school-age children from around the nation and abroad. A recent program, offered by one of the volunteer docent groups, is a series of highlight tours tailored especially for senior adults. Indirect programs related to the permanent collections, such as an audiovisual orientation of the East Building and a series of recorded introductory tours, were produced during FY'89.

2. Teacher and School Programs: This section prepares tours and develops materials and programs for children from pre-school through high school. It also coordinates foreign language tours of the museum. More than 240 volunteer docents, trained by the professional staff, guide school children or visitors from abroad and advanced language students. In addition to offering a series of basic art appreciation tours for children grades K-6, several special topic tours and programs relating to classroom curriculum are offered. These include "Renaissance Art," "American Art", "The Elements of Design," "Viva La France!, Viva Espana," and "Castles," a very popular program based on medieval art and life. The unit also produced a children's self-guided tour on the Church exhibition. In response to the growing interest within the nation's schools for art in the curriculum, staff continues to develop workshop series and materials for teachers: during FY'89, the unit offered a series of six Saturday teacher workshops accompanied by written material. Most significantly in FY'89 the department initiated a summer institute on American Art for teachers from across the nation. Three week-long sessions, including slide lectures, gallery talks, and visits to other local galleries and historic sites, were held during July.

National Gallery docents continued extensive preparation to host the fifth National Docent Symposium in November, 1989.

3. Exhibition Programs: This section is responsible for providing the public with interpretive materials to enhance understanding and appreciation of special exhibitions. To reach as broad a public as possible, a variety of materials are produced, including recorded tours, exhibition brochures, didactic labels, wall texts, and audio-visual programs, which present an overview of the exhibition and the original context of the works of art exhibited. The staff also assists in planning other exhibition-related programs, such as documentary film series, teachers' packets, and special events, including lectures, performances, and demonstrations. In FY'89, the section supplied educational materials for sixteen special exhibitions, concentrating in particular on programming for the Japan exhibition to help elucidate daimyo culture, the tea ceremony, and the No drama. In addition, audio-visual programs for Twentieth-Century Art/Tenth Anniversary and 150 Years of Photography served large segments of the audience for these exhibitions.

4. Academic Programs: This section devises programs both for the general public, and for college and university undergraduate and graduate students. Under Academic Programs umbrella falls the administration of the Sunday Lecture program, the Mellon Lectures, and other special lectures, courses and seminars. In FY'89 three special four-part courses were offered in the auditorium by guest lecturers to complement the Michelangelo Drawings, Daimyo, and 150 Years of Photography exhibitions. Also in conjunction with Daimyo, a special two-day weekend program with eleven guest speakers was offered to the public. A seminar for graduate students and scholars was held in the galleries in conjunction with the Heinz Still-Lifes exhibition. The two graduate lecturing fellows each gave twenty-four gallery talks in the first year of this program. Owing to the success of this program with the public and the fellows, the fellowship has been renewed for FY'90 and the two new candidates begin in September. Academic Programs has also arranged to begin offering occasional gallery talks by staff curators and conservators beginning in September. As a member of the Consortium of Washington-Area Universities, Subcommittee on Internships, the Coordinator of Academic Programs drafted a prospectus for a new Graduate Consortium Internship; the proposal will be recommended for adoption by the Washington area museum directors.

5. Radio Program: This section within the Department of Public Programs prepared 37 talks and interviews during FY'89 to accompany the Sunday broadcasts of the National Gallery concerts on radio station WGMS. Presented during the concert intermission, these weekly transmissions were heard by approximately 22,900 people weekly, and by approximately 847,300

listeners during the entire concert season from October 2 to June 25. These programs included talks with various Gallery staff members and guest curators on a wide range of topics including special exhibitions at the Gallery as well as more general talks on the arts.

6. Summer Graduate Internship Program: This program matches about twenty graduate students with various departments of the Gallery, providing potential museum professionals an opportunity to gain practical working experience and to study a major collection of paintings and sculpture at first hand. The interns are also introduced to the workings of the museum by curatorial, conservation, and administrative staff in a series of fifty or sixty bi-weekly sessions over the course of the summer.

7. Interactive Educational Technology: This unit monitors new developments in the field of interactive technology, coordinates the development of art-related hypermedia applications, and serves as a liaison between museum professionals, educators, broadcasters, publishers, computer specialists, and corporations dedicated to educational development. Working in collaboration with representatives from these areas, the department plans to produce innovative interdisciplinary learning tools that will have a significant impact on American education in the 1990s. It is hoped that the strong links forged between the academic community, government, and industry will foster a shared commitment to higher education through the use of innovative technology.

Department of Audio-Visual Coordination: This department consists of two units, Auditorium Program and Audio-Visual Services.

Auditorium Programs coordinates the activities in the Gallery's two East Building auditoria and West Building lecture hall and organizes the public film programs. All lectures by staff, and by guest speakers when they permit, are recorded and available to the public or to interested scholars on request. A complete listing is maintained in the office. Throughout the year, documentary films on art are shown to the public in the East Building auditorium on a daily schedule. Films/lecture series on special topics take place on Saturday afternoons and Sunday evenings. Program notes by distinguished film scholars are available at most of the presentations. During the past year these special series, which often focus on the ways in which film interacts with other art forms, attracted more than 85,000 viewers.

Audio-Visual Production works with the Exhibition Programs unit, the Department of Extension Programs, and other departments in the museum producing multi-image programs for exhibitions, documenting installations and special events on videotape, producing television public service announcements and offering technical and creative expertise on audio-visual matters.

Slide Library: This department oversees a collection of more than 177,500 slides which are being used increasingly by curators, education department staff for new art history courses, fellows of the Center for the Advanced Study in the Visual Arts, by outside educators, and the general public. As the department looks to increase its work with teachers, demands on its resources will become more acute. Computerization is helping to maintain the collection, increase access, and ensure consistency and accuracy of information.

Statistical Summary of Interpretive Programs for Fiscal 89:

Direct Programs to the Public	No. of Events	Estimated Audience
Tours Announced in the Calendar of Events;		
(Collection Highlights	307	8,083
Special Tours of the Week	255	10,263
General Tours	723	15,299
Gallery Talks by Lecturing Fellows)	46	1,293
Special Appointment Tours		
(Adults)	865	20,530
(School Children)	3,118	48,948
Foreign Language Tours	194	3,445
Family Programs	68	2,253
Teacher Programs	16	519
Teacher Workshops	7	350
Teacher Institutes	18	900
Special Auditorium Programs	51	11,511
Sunday Lectures	50	16,820
Sub-total	5,718	140,214
Indirect Programs		
Films	324	85,292
Recorded Tours Available	6	142,536
Audio Visual Programs	2	103,220
Radio Programs Produced	37	847,300
Sub-total	369	1,318,562
Printed Materials		
Exhibition Brochures	6	515,100
Teacher Packets	5	635
Family/Children's Guides	2	50,150
Sub-total	13	565,885
GRAND TOTAL	6,100	1,884,447

Department of Extension Programs:

This department develops, produces, and circulates color slide programs, films, and videotapes based upon the Gallery's collections and exhibitions to nationwide audiences. Extension Programs are used in schools, libraries, other civic organizations, and by public and educational television stations and networks throughout the country. All Extension Programs are loaned free of charge, with return postage representing the only cost to the borrower.

Borrower reports indicate that in FY 1989, Extension Programs' viewing audience was 80,135,173. Within this number, the public and educational television audience is reported as over sixty-four million in communities in every state. The department's ability to maintain such dimensions of service remains contingent upon consistent support for program production, distribution and audience development activities, and for staffing. Coherence in producing new program resources for borrowers, particularly those organizations that use Extension Programs for television presentation, is essential. Films continue to be much in demand; meeting audience needs for existing film and videocassette titles as well as for new programs for broadcast is of primary importance.

Ongoing efforts to promote programs to educational and cultural organizations, to offer a wider range of distribution options to them, and to reach untapped public and educational television systems made it possible in FY 1989 to maintain a high level of showings of Extension Programs. Again this year, videocassette distribution was an important segment of total program utilization. The total of program presentations was 167,621; approximately half of these showings were television broadcast by individual public and educational stations, while the other half represents direct use of program materials through the regular and Affiliate loan systems. A series of nineteen Extension Program titles was broadcast through PBS Adult Learning Service to college and university campuses and local PBS stations in 189 cities across the United States. ACSN, "The Learning Channel," continues frequent presentation of Extension Programs through satellite broadcast to over 1100 stations throughout the country.

Within the large overall audience, the number of borrowers across the country using Extension Programs through the Affiliate, or long term Loan System continued to grow. These borrowers--in school systems, instructional media centers, libraries, and other educational settings--as well as those borrowers using materials on short-term direct loans report showing each program title many times on a single order.

The department continues to provide Extension Programs--mainly films and videocassettes--to U.S. embassies abroad through USIA; during the current year, Extension Programs were presented by embassies in such diverse cities as The Hague, Wellington, Bern, Helsinki, Manila, Beijing, Rangoon, and Dakar. The entire range of program offerings was used by DOD schools abroad and by military installations within the United States, Europe, and in Asia. Gallery films such as John James Audubon: The Birds of America, Winslow Homer: The Nature of the Artist, and William Merritt Chase at Shinnecock represented the United States in film festivals in Italy, France, and Great Britain.

During FY 1989, program development and production activities of department staff revolved around research, writing, and production of a film on the landscape paintings of the 19th century American painter, Frederic Edwin Church. Produced in connection with a major exhibition of Church's work scheduled to open at the Gallery in October, 1989, the film traces Church's development from his days as a student of Thomas Cole, who introduced him to landscape as a subject, through his successful career as the preeminent painter of the American landscape. The film shows his monumental paintings, Niagara, Heart of the Andes, and The Icebergs and describes the effects of the Civil War on Church's art, his life, and on the American landscape. Narrated by the Gallery's curator of American painting, Nicolai Cikovsky, Jr., the film contains a blend of Church's pictures and live motion photography of "Olana," the Persian castle Church built as his home overlooking the Hudson River, and of sites in the Catskill mountains, favored by artists and writers in the 19th century. Production was completed this year on a color slide program derived from the Gallery's exhibition "The Human Figure in Early Greek Art," and that program has been added to the Extension Programs catalogue offerings. Also newly available for circulation during FY 1989 are two recently produced videocassette titles, Paul Gauguin: The Savage Dream and Daimyo; both programs were made for the Gallery in conjunction with major exhibitions.

Summary Statistics

In FY 1989, Extension Programs were shown 167,621 times to a total estimated audience of 80,135,173 persons throughout the nation and in over fifty foreign countries.

A summary of Extension Programs' use for fiscal 1989 is shown in the following table:

Summary of Extension Programs' Audience and Showings by Month

FY 1989 October 1988 - September 1989

		Showings	Estimated Audiences
October	1988	8,650	806,911
November	1988	14,671	4,116,311
December	1988	15,790	5,656,770
January	1989	16,298	4,801,039
February	1989	9,260	1,390,191
March	1989	16,827	16,326,163
April	1989	11,387	2,974,896
May	1989	22,199	9,197,792
June	1989	10,772	4,462,427
July	1989	12,240	5,122,165
August	1989	13,564	3,377,365
September	1989	15,963	21,903,693
TOTAL FY 1989		167,621	80,135,723

Average Monthly Use of Extension Programs by Program Type

	Showings	Estimated Audiences
Color slide programs	1,347	65,285
Films	1,456	77,243
Videocassettes	707	27,274
Affiliate Loans	3,106	84,329
Public/Educ. Television	7,355	6,423,848
MONTHLY AVERAGE	13,971	6,677,979

LIBRARY

Library Acquisitions and Services: For fiscal year 1989, additions to the collection consisted of 4,320 titles in 4,941 volumes, 47 titles in microformat (microfilm or microfiche), 9,130 pieces of vertical file material and 1,999 pieces of unprocessed ephemera. The additions to the Library's holdings bring the size of the collection of catalogued and uncatalogued books, pamphlets, bound volumes of periodicals, microforms, auction sale catalogs, and dealer catalogs, to 367,013 volumes. The Library has served 2,952 visitors, responded to 15,097 reference inquiries, and conducted 33 tours of the library spaces. NGA staff and CASVA fellows have received 2,333 books supplied through interlibrary loan service.

Photographic Archives: In FY 1989, 18,867 photographs and 131,617 microform images were acquired for the photographic archives. (The collection now contains 1,255,338 photographs and 4,393,773 images on fiche.)

Photographic Laboratory: The FY 89 production output for the Photographic Laboratory is as follows:

Black and white negatives	6,412
Black and white prints	42,771
35 mm. slides	20,242
Color transparencies	3,702
Color negatives	3,905
Rolls of Ektachrome processed for other departments	343

CONSERVATION DIVISION

Conservation

The care and treatment of the works of art in the National Gallery's collections are of paramount importance in fulfilling our role as the nation's art museum. The long-term conservation needs of the collections are established by careful and systematic examination of the art objects, which determines treatment priorities and work schedules. In order to project the long-term demands and understand deterioration patterns within the collections, the survey process is being computerized. Since the works of art treated in each department are unique, the computerization of the survey will be designed for the precise needs of each department. Computerization of the condition survey records will allow the Conservation Division to track the exhibition history of works of art and relate the environmental conditions to observed deterioration. The system will also ensure that all works in the collections are routinely examined and their condition properly assessed and documented. Progressive deterioration can be noted and treatment undertaken before the conditions result in damage to a work. The collection monitoring process is critical to the development of a systematic conservation program. Many of the works in the Gallery's collections were treated immediately prior to the 1941 opening of the West Building. Therefore, it is likely that many of the same paintings will be due for treatment at one time.

In addition to providing optimum care for the collections, the Conservation Division engages in research to develop new treatment processes and techniques. Much of the responsibility for research falls on the Science Department, whose primary role is to provide analytical services in support of technical examinations and conservation treatments of the collections.

Hiring a new head of science has facilitated the expansion of scientific research on artists' materials and techniques. Equipment is sought to support the research facility and requests for new personnel for the expanded research projects will be initiated.

The Loans and Exhibitions Department is continuing their study of the problems of works of art in transit. The result of research will be a series of training sessions that will instruct museum registrars and conservators worldwide in the proper techniques of packing and shipping works of art to ensure their safe transit to exhibition venues.

Examination of the important collection of works by the American painter, Mark Rothko, is continuing. The survey of the collection indicates that a number of pieces will require major or minor treatment in preparation for exhibition in the National Lending Service. Work is continuing on the examination and treatment of works of art in the modern collections.

Contract funding has been an important source of resources that allows the division to use outside specialists to work on highly complex projects. These talented specialists have assisted the regular staff in continuing to service the collections and meet the ever increasing demands of the exhibition program. Continued support for contractual services is vital to the preservation of the collection.

Summary of Conservation Division Treatments
FY 1989 Annual Report Figures

During fiscal year 1989, the following numbers of works of art were treated and/or examined by the National Gallery's Conservation Division:

Paintings: 23 paintings received major treatment; 140 received minor treatment; 240 paintings were given major examinations and 725 were given minor examinations for conditions.

Objects: 19 sculpture and decorative art objects were given major treatments; 97 received minor treatments; 88 were given major examinations; 59 received minor exams; and 764 exhibition and loan objects were examined for condition; and 212 systematic catalogue examinations were performed.

Paper: 71 works of art on paper received major treatment and 375 received minor treatment; 1,568 condition examinations for exhibition were completed; 218 condition examinations for loan were performed.

Frames: (Matting/Framing) In preparation for exhibitions: 845 frames were assembled; 550 frames were built; 23 books were prepared; 944 works were matted. Routine maintenance included

1,000 mats cut for works in the collection and 350 frames were assembled. (Frames) Ir frames, 4 frames were given major treatment; 14 new frames were made; 47 frames were constructed for exhibition; 116 were handled for minor treatments; and 778 loan inspections were processed; 254 treatments were completed on frames for loans; and 125 minor treatments and 345 examinations were conducted for exhibitions.

Textiles: 14 major treatments, 22 minor treatments, 156 examinations and 128 pieces were handled for exhibitions by the textile workshop.

Science: The Science Department conducted scientific investigations on the composition of samples from more than 200 works of art and products used in conservation. Approximately 800 analyses and tests were conducted on samples provided to the laboratory. The Science Laboratory has continued its study of pigments, varnishes, resins and waxes. Further, work progressed on binding media studies and characterizations of metal alloys and corrosion products. Work progressed on binding media identification. Among other projects were investigations on the removability of aged synthetic varnishes, the painting techniques of several artists, and the identification of wooden panels especially those used by American painters. The quantification of surface alloy of about five hundred metals completed. This information will be added to the systematic catalogue.

SUMMARY:

	All Treatments
Paintings	163
Objects	116
Paper	446
Frames	499
Textiles	36
Major Examinations	540
Condition Examinations	4,457
Total	6,257

MUSIC PROGRAM

Concerts: The Sunday evening concerts in the East Garden Court were continued throughout the fiscal year. These concerts are free to the public and October 2, 1989 marked the beginning of their forty-eighth year. As a long-standing service to a wide audience in-house and over weekly Sunday evening radio broadcasts on station WGMS, we believe this program to be worthy of full Federal funding.

ATTENDANCE

Attendance and Maintenance: Total attendance for both buildings for fiscal year 1989 was 6,221,682 visitors.

This high level of attendance again provided a major challenge to the building operation and maintenance staff to insure that the Gallery continues to be maintained in the highest standards commensurate with the superb quality of its art collections.

National Gallery of Art
Annual Visitor Attendance
Fiscal Year 1954 - 1991

Fiscal Year	Visitor Attendance
1954	783,000
1955	861,000
1956	1,043,000
1957	935,000
1958	922,000
1959	957,000
1960	989,000
1961	1,275,000
1962	1,200,000
1963	1,777,000
1964	1,269,000
1965	1,377,000
1966	1,583,000
1967	1,493,000
1968	1,165,000
1969	1,630,000
1970	1,825,000
1971	1,481,000
1972	1,357,000
1973	1,609,000
1974	1,398,000
1975	1,899,000
1976	2,181,000
1977	3,100,000
1978	4,600,000
1979	5,529,000
1980	5,997,000
1981	6,735,000
1982	6,036,000
1983	4,894,000
1984	4,859,000
1985	5,080,000
1986	8,703,000
1987	6,986,000
1988	7,174,000
1989	6,222,000
1990 (Est.)	6,900,000
1991 (Est.)	6,900,000

1990 Appropriation and 1991 Request

1990 Appropriation

The National Gallery of Art's current year appropriation totals $42,517,000, and provides funding for 885 full-time permanent positions, with a full-time equivalent (FTE) employment ceiling of 854. The Gallery's fiscal year 1990 federal funds requirement reflects the continuation of the Gallery's construction and renovation program and continuation of the Gallery's expanding art display and education programs. In addition, certain normal increases in personnel, utilities and program expenses have been included.

1991 Request

The appropriation requested for fiscal year 1991 totals $48,903,000, and provides for 905 full-time permanent positions with a full-time equivalent employment ceiling of 874. (An analysis of the budget increases/decreases is set forth on the following page.)

The Gallery's fiscal year 1991 federal funds budget request reflects the following objectives:

1. To continue to broaden the capabilities of the Gallery's existing programs of art exhibition, care, and education;
2. To continue the Gallery's program of repair, renovation and restoration of the East and West Buildings, and continued construction of the National Sculpture Garden.
3. To continue with the Gallery's electronic data processing plan--the computerization of art inventory and art education systems and improvement of the management information systems.

The fiscal year 1991 budget request is compared to the fiscal year 1990 budget as shown in the table on the following page.

National Gallery of Art
Comparative Budget Requests
Fiscal Years 1990 & 1991

OBJECT CLASS	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Over (Under) 1990
One Year Funds:			
Personnel Compensation	$22,911,000	$24,807,000	$ 1,896,000
Personnel Benefits	4,189,000	4,950,000	761,000
Subtotal Compensation & Benefits	27,100,000	29,757,000	2,657,000
Travel of Persons	240,000	304,000	64,000
Transportation of Things	631,000	838,000	207,000
Rents, Communications, Utilities	5,185,000	5,512,000	327,000
Printing & Reproduction	208,000	248,000	40,000
Other Services	4,045,000	5,354,000	1,309,000
Supplies & Materials	2,233,000	2,697,000	464,000
Equipment	1,070,000	1,388,000	318,000
Lands & Structures	-	-	-
Subtotal--			
Salaries & Expenses	40,712,000	46,098,000	5,386,000
Repair and Renovation	1,805,000	2,805,000	1,000,000
TOTAL FEDERAL FUNDS	$42,517,000	$48,903,000	$ 6,386,000
Budget After Sequestering	$41,956,000		

Note: Included in both of the above budgets is no-year funding for special exhibitions.

Personnel Compensation and Benefits--Increase of $2,657,000. This increase will be applied as follows:

Item	Amount
Mandatory within-grade promotions, wage-board step increases, and merit pay	$ 275,000
Annualized costs of health benefits increase effective January, 1990	138,000
Annualization of current year pay raise	1,001,000
Increased costs of Federal Employees Retirement System (FERS)	220,000
One more compensable day	93,000
Annualized costs of 2 FTE approved in FY 1990	15,000
Increase of 20 Full-time permanent positions (3/4 year funding)	487,000
Increased costs of Worker's Compensation	21,000
Adjust cost of guard pay associated with special pay rates for upgrading approximately 86 positions for the GS-5 Level	29,000
3/4 year funding of 50% of a projected 3.5% pay raise in January, 1991	378,000
Totals	$2,657,000

Travel of Persons--Increase of $64,000. A total increase of $64,000 is requested for fiscal 1991. $14,000 is for overall general purpose travel such as for training, scholarly conferences, conservation study, systematic catalogue research, and verifying and escorting possible acquisitions. $50,000 reflects an increase in special exhibitions travel, which is part of the special additional funding being requested for the Circa 1492 Columbus exhibition which opens in October of FY 1992. Please refer to Tab 4A for a full discussion of this program.

Transportation of Things--Increase of $207,000. A total increase of $207,000 is requested for fiscal 1991. $7,000 is for the transporting of works of art to and from the Gallery for consideration for possible purchase. The remaining $200,000 is requested for special exhibition transportation as part of the additional funding for the Circa 1492 Columbus exhibition.

Rents, Communications and Utilities--Increase of $327,000. This increase is detailed as follows:

Description	FY 1990	FY 1991	Increase/ (Decrease)
Utilities--steam and electricity..............	$3,945,000	$3,753,000	($192,000)
Water and Sewer..........	-0-	435,000	435,000
Communications--telephone and postage..............	730,000	790,000	60,000
Warehouse			
Rent--structural.........	309,000	318,000	9,000
Utilities	83,000	92,000	9,000
Subtotal Warehouse......	392,000	410,000	18,000
Rents--terminals, word processors, copiers, etc.	118,000	124,000	6,000
Totals......	$5,185,000	$5,512,000	$327,000

It is estimated that $192,000 less is required to cover the costs of steam and electricity for all structures. This reflects an overall estimated decrease of quantities used. (Please refer to summaries of steam and electricity usage on pages 5-6 and 5-7.) An increase of $40,000 is needed for the telephone system as a result of usage and/or rate increases. In addition, some obsolete equipment will be replaced by leasing modern equipment. A $20,000 increase is needed in postage due to increased mailing of calendar of events and increased usage of all classes of mail. An increase of $18,000 is requested to cover the increased costs of rental and utilities of our offsite warehouse facility. Water and sewer costs are estimated to be $435,000 based on projected rates supplied by the District of Columbia's Bureau of Water and Measurement. Finally, $6,000 is requested to cover increased costs of photocopiers.

Printing and Reproduction--Increase of $40,000. A total increase of $40,000 is requested for FY 1991. This increase will be applied toward larger quantities of calendar of events and audiovisual film program brochures as well as new school, tour, family programs and senior citizen brochures, family self guides and special program publications. Part of this increase is based on a GPO projection of a 7% increase in printing costs in FY 1991.

Other Services--Increase of $1,309,000. A summary of this increase follows:

Description	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Increase Over FY 1990
Special Exhibitions......	$1,460,000	$2,360,000	$ 900,000
Art Restoration..........	250,000	270,000	20,000
Extension Services.......	130,000	130,000	-
Data Processing..........	588,000	611,000	23,000
Cataloging Services......	10,000	10,000	-
Photo Processing.........	8,000	8,000	-
Personal Property Repair (Equipment)............	57,000	69,000	12,000
All Other................	217,000	241,000	24,000
Subtotal Art Care......	2,720,000	3,699,000	979,000
Personal Property Repair, Alterations, and Maintenance............	23,000	40,000	17,000
Real Property Repair, Alterations, and Maintenance............	350,000	449,000	99,000
All Other................	50,000	50,000	-
Subtotal Operations and Maintenance........	423,000	539,000	116,000
Subtotal Protection....	56,000	127,000	71,000
Payroll Processing.......	156,000	176,000	20,000
Data Processing..........	450,000	500,000	50,000
Employee Training........	40,000	45,000	5,000
Maintenance and repair of word processors and personal computers.....	85,000	115,000	30,000
Other Services General Admin..................	115,000	153,000	38,000
Subtotal General Admin.	846,000	989,000	143,000
TOTAL SERVICES	$4,045,000	$5,354,000	$1,309,000

Supplies and Materials--Increase of $464,000. This is summarized as follows:

Description	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Increase Over FY 1990
Special Exhibitions.....	$ 530,000	$ 880,000	$ 350,000
Office..................	52,000	52,000	-
Conservation............	53,500	61,500	8,000
Library.................	10,000	10,000	-
Photo Archives..........	10,000	10,000	-
Photo Lab...............	31,000	31,000	-
Extension Service.......	96,000	96,000	-
Newspapers, periodicals, pamphlets & documents.	129,000	134,000	5,000
Audio Visual............	38,000	38,000	-
National Lending Service...............	15,000	15,000	-
Other supplies..........	94,500	103,500	9,000
Subtotal Art Care	1,059,000	1,431,000	372,000
Building Operating......	253,000	253,000	-
Grounds Maintenance.....	46,000	46,000	-
Repair of Buildings and Fixed equipment.......	445,000	445,000	-
All Others..............	27,000	35,000	8,000
Subtotal Operations and Maintenance.......	771,000	779,000	8,000
Subtotal Protection	134,000	146,000	12,000
Data Processing.........	30,000	40,000	10,000
Office Supplies.........	187,000	237,000	50,000
General Admin. Supplies.	52,000	64,000	12,000
Subtotal General Admin.	269,000	341,000	72,000
TOTAL SUPPLIES AND MATERIALS.............	$2,233,000	$2,697,000	$ 464,000

Equipment--Increase of $318,000. Capital equipment for basic operations reflects an increase of $318,000. This net increase will be distributed as follows:

Item	Increase/ (Decrease)
Library Computer Hardware Expansion..............	$ 20,000
Security equipment............................	25,000
Audio Visual Equipment........................	45,000
Slide Storage Cabinets........................	10,000
Library Books.................................	10,000
Microfilm Archives............................	10,000
Sculpture Lift Equipment......................	15,000
Graphics Computer.............................	85,000
Networking equipment..........................	40,000
Personal Computers (replace word processors)......	20,000
Building Operations and Maintenance Equipment.....	27,000
Other basic operations equipment.................	11,000
Total................	$318,000

Repair and Renovation--Increase of $1,000,000. A total of $2,805,000 is requested in FY 1991 for the Repair, Restoration and Renovation of Buildings program as compared to $1,805,000 approved in FY 1990. This is for renovation projects which include such multi-year projects as: asbestos abatement, replacement of the West Building skylights, improved shop ventilation, elevator renovation, and installation of a computerized energy management system. Please refer to tab 5A for a full discussion of this program.

Special Exhibitions--Increase of $1,500,000. Total federal funds requested in fiscal year 1991 in support of special exhibitions held at the Gallery amount to $4,370,000--an increase of $1,500,000 over the fiscal year 1990 budget. This is summarized as follows:

Description	FY 1990	FY 1991	1991 Over (Under) 1990
Personnel Compensation..	$ 202,000	$ 202,000	$ -
Personnel Benefits......	18,000	18,000	-
Travel..................	100,000	150,000	50,000
Transportation..........	560,000	760,000	200,000
Services................	1,460,000	2,360,000	900,000
Supplies & Materials....	530,000	880,000	350,000
Total	$2,870,000	$4,370,000	$1,500,000

The $1,500,000 increase consists of special additional funding being requested for the Circa 1492 Columbus exhibition which opens in October of FY 1992. Vigorous fundraising efforts in the private sector are being undertaken to raise private support for this major exhibition. The costs of this exhibition may amount to $7.1 million.

Please refer to Tab 4A - Special Exhibitions section for the analysis of estimated costs and funding sources of special exhibitions, including the Circa 1492 Columbus exhibition, scheduled for fiscal year 1991.

A summary of the Gallery's budget increases by function is set forth on the following page.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
FEDERAL BUDGET HIGHLIGHTS
FISCAL 1991

					DISTRIBUTION OF 1991 INCREASES BY FUNCTION			
		Page No.	1-20		4-3	5-2	6-1	7-2
	OBJECT CLASS	FY 1990	FY 1991	TOTAL INCREASES FY 1991 OVER/(UNDER) FY 1990	FUNCTION A CARE & UTILIZATION OF ART	FUNCTION B OPERATIONS & MAINTENANCE	FUNCTION C PROTECTION	FUNCTION D GENERAL ADMINISTRATION
1100	PERSONNEL COMPENSATION	$22,911,000	$24,807,000	$1,896,000	$ 811,000	$ 316,000	$471,000	$298,000
1200	PERSONNEL BENEFITS	4,189,000	4,950,000	761,000	356,000	100,000	173,000	132,000
	SUBTOTAL COMPENSATION & BENEFITS	27,100,000	29,757,000	2,657,000	1,167,000	416,000	644,000	430,000
2100	TRAVEL OF PERSONS	240,000	304,000	64,000	64,000	-	-	-
2200	TRANSPORTATION OF THINGS	631,000	838,000	207,000	207,000	-	-	-
2300	RENTS, COMMUNICATIONS & UTILITIES	5,185,000	5,512,000	327,000	-	243,000	-	84,000
2400	PRINTING & REPRODUCTION	208,000	248,000	40,000	40,000	-	-	-
2500	OTHER SERVICES	4,045,000	5,354,000	1,309,000	979,000	116,000	71,000	143,000
2600	SUPPLIES & MATERIALS	2,233,000	2,697,000	464,000	372,000	8,000	12,000	72,000
3100	EQUIPMENT	1,070,000	1,388,000	318,000	180,000	27,000	50,000	61,000
3200	LANDS & STRUCTURES	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	SALARIES & EXPENSES	40,712,000	46,098,000	5,386,000	3,009,000	810,000	777,000	790,000
	REPAIR, RESTORATION & RENOVATION	1,805,000	2,805,000	1,000,000	-	1,000,000	-	-
	TOTAL NGA	$42,517,000	$48,903,000	$6,386,000	$3,009,000	$ 1,810,000	$ 777,000	$790,000

01/04/90

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET
SUMMARY OF INCREASES AND DECREASES

(By Function)
(In Thousands of Dollars)

	Function (A) Art Care	Function (B) Ops. & Maint.	Function (C) Security	Function (D) Gen. Adm.	Subtotal Salaries and Expenses	Renovation	NGA Totals
1990 Appropriation	$14,967	$11,356	$8,805	$5,584	$40,712	$ 1,805	$42,517
Sequestered Amount	(204)	(155)	(119)	(75)	(553)	(11)	(564)
1990 Budget after Sequestering	14,763	11,201	8,686	5,509	40,159	1,794	41,953
1. Within grade promotions and wageboard step increases	142	39	45	30	275	-	275
2. Increased costs of Health Benefits	46	37	40	15	138	-	138
3. Increased costs of Federal Employees' Retirement System (FERS)	136	13	55	16	220	-	220
4. Annualization of current year pay raise	361	221	300	119	1,001	-	1,001
5. One more compensable day	34	22	27	10	93	-	93
6. Annualized costs of 2 new FTE approved in FY 90	9	-	-	6	15	-	15
7. 20 Full-time permanent positions 3/4 year funding	304	-	35	147	487	-	487
8 Increased costs of workers compensation	-	-	-	21	21	-	21
9. Adjust costs of guard pay associated with special pay rates	-	-	29	-	29	-	29
10. 3/4 funding of 50% of a projected 3.5% pay raise 1/91	135	84	113	46	378	-	378
11. Increased costs of rents, communications and utilities	-	243	-	84	327	-	327
12. Payroll processing costs	-	-	-	20	20	-	20
13. EDP services, supplies & equip	43	-	-	150	193	-	193
14. Travel	14	-	-	-	14	-	14
15. Transportation	7	-	-	-	7	-	7
16. Printing & Binding	20	-	-	-	20	-	20
17. Special Exhibitions	1,500	-	-	-	1,500	-	1,500
18. Increase in services and supplies for basic operations	98	124	83	105	410	-	410
19. Increase in equipment for basic operations	160	27	50	1	238	-	238
20. Renovation Program	-	-	-	-	-	1,000	1,000
21. Restore Sequestered Amount	204	155	119	75	553	11	564
1991 Budget Estimate	$17,976	$12,166	$9,582	$6,374	$46,098	$2,805	$48,903
Net Increase/(Decrease) (1991 Estimates Over 1990 Appropriation)	$ 3,009	$ 810	$ 777	$ 790	$ 5,386	$1,000	$ 6,386

National Gallery of Art
Uncontrollable and program Increases/(Decreases)
Fiscal Year 1991

Description	Uncontrollable Increase/(Decrease)
Within grade promotions and wageborad step increase.....	$ 275,000
Increased costs of health benefits......................	138,000
Annualization of the current year pay raise.............	1,001,000
One more compensable day................................	93,000
Increased costs of Federal Employees' Retirement Systems (FERS)...................................	220,000
Annualized costs of 2 new FTE approved in FY 1990.......	15,000
Increased costs of workers compensation.................	21,000
Increased costs of upgrading 86 guard positions to GS-5.	29,000
3/4 year funding of 50% of a projected 3.5% pay raise in January, 1991..................................	378,000
Subtotal Payroll Costs	2,170,000
Increased cost of rents, communications and utilities...	327,000
Increased cost of payroll processing....................	20,000
Increased cost of travel - art care/curatorial/ conservation..	14,000
Increased cost of transporting materials, supplies and equipment..	7,000
OSHA required asbestos medical testing..................	15,000
Services for repairs and maintenance of word processors, and personal computers............................	30,000
EDP services and supplies	
Art care function..................................	23,000
Administration and fiscal..........................	43,000
Printing - 7% GPO inflator..............................	15,000
Supplies and services for repairs and maintenance of buildings and fixed equipment......................	107,000
Personal property repairs (equipment)	
Arts care function................................	12,000
Operations and Maintenance function................	17,000
Protection/ Security function......................	34,000
Administration function............................	18,000
Annual security guard pay survey........................	5,000
Total Uncontrollable Increase	$ 2,857,000

Description	Program Increase/(Decrease)
Increase of 20 FTE employment workyears for full-time permanent positions	$ 487,000
Security services - National Crime Center access and guard recruitment agreement with Smithsonian Institution	32,000
Printing - Book binding, calendar of events and education brochures	25,000
Educational Programs	9,000
Employee training	10,000
Conservation services and supplies - Art restoration	28,000
EDP services, supplies and equipment	
Art care function - Library computer expansion	20,000
Administration - Networking, PC replacement, & Westlaw research	77,000
Office supplies	50,000
Other services and supplies	
Art care - Archival Storage boxes, plexiglass labels, and serials and subscriptions	24,000
Security - audio-visual supplies	12,000
Administration - recruitment ads, legal periodicals and archival conservation supplies	17,000
Other equipment increases	
Art care function	160,000
Operation and Maintenance function	27,000
Protection/Security function	50,000
Administration function	1,000
Subtotal - One- year Program Funds	1,029,000
Special Exhibitions - Circa 1492 Columbus	1,500,000
Renovation Program	1,000,000
Total Program Increase	$ 3,529,000
TOTAL NGA FY 91 INCREASE	$ 6,386,000

Appropriation Language

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART SALARIES AND EXPENSES

For the upkeep and operations of the National Gallery of Art, the protection and care of the works of art therein, and administrative expenses incident thereto, as authorized by the Act of March 24, 1937 (50 Stat. 51), as amended by the public resolution of April 13, 1939 (Public Resolution 9, Seventy-sixth Congress), including services as authorized by 5 U.S.C. 3109; payment in advance when authorized by the treasurer of the Gallery for membership in library, museum, and art associations or societies whose publications or services are available to members only, or to members at a price lower than to the general public; purchase, repair, and cleaning of uniforms for guards, and uniforms, or allowances therefor, for other employees as authorized by law (5 U.S.C. 5901-5902); purchase, or rental of devices and services for protecting buildings and contents thereof, and maintenance, alteration, improvement, and repair of buildings, approaches, and grounds; and purchase of services for restoration and repair of works of art for the National Gallery of Art by contracts made, without advertising, with individuals, firms, or organizations at such rates or prices and under such terms and conditions as the Gallery may deem proper, [$40,712,000] $46,098,000, of which not to exceed [$2,370,000] $4,370,000 for the special exhibition program shall remain available until expended.

(20 U.S.C. 71-75; Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1990.)

Appropriation Language

REPAIR, RESTORATION AND RENOVATION OF BUILDINGS

For necessary expenses of repair, restoration and renovation of buildings, grounds, and facilities owned or occupied by the National Gallery of Art, by contract or otherwise, as authorized, [$1,805,000] $2,805,000, to remain available until expended: Provided, that contracts awarded for environmental systems, protection systems, and exterior repair or renovation of buildings of the National Gallery of Art may be negotiated with selected contractors and awarded on the basis of contractor qualifications as well as price.

(20 U.S.C. 71-75; Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1989.)

Authorizing Legislation

This request for an appropriation is based on the premises contained in section 4(a) of the Joint Resolution of Congress, March 24, 1937, (20 U.S.C. 71-75) in which:

> "The faith of the United States is pledged that...the United States will provide such funds as may be necessary for the upkeep of the National Gallery of Art and the administrative expenses and costs of operation thereof, including the protection and care of works of art acquired by the Board, so that the National Gallery of Art shall be at all times properly maintained and the works of art contained therein shall be exhibited regularly to the general public free of charge. For these purposes there are hereby authorized to be appropriated such sums as may be necessary."

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
Summary of Federal Budget by Function
For the Fiscal Years 1987 through 1991 Inclusive

Function	1987 (actual)	1988 (actual)	1989 (actual)	1990 (estimate)	1991 (estimate)
A. Care and utilization of art collections......	$12,164	$13,813	$14,042	$14,967	$17,976
B. Operation and maintenance of buildings and grounds............	11,856	11,329	10,437	11,356	12,166
C. Protection of buildings, grounds, and contents...	6,608	7,480	7,925	8,805	9,582
D. General Administration..	4,384	4,965	5,480	5,584	6,374
Salaries and Expenses...	35,012	37,587	37,884	40,712	46,098
Repair, restoration and renovation of buildings	905	2,294	$ 1,630	1,805	2,805
BUDGET AUTHORITY TOTALS	$35,917	$39,881	$39,514	$42,517	$48,903
TOTAL NGA OUTLAYS	$33,928	$38,777	$40,741	$42,965	$48,110

	1987 (actual)		1988 (actual)		1989 (estimate)		1990 (estimate)		1991 (estimate)	
Function	No. of Pos.	End of Yr.	No. of Pos.	End of Yr.	No. of Pos.	End of Yr.	No. of Pos.	End of Yr.	No. of Pos.	End of Yr.
A. Care and utilization of art collections...	235	195	240	216	245	222	246	222	259	235
B. Operation and maintenance of buildings and grounds.............	209	183	209	168	209	182	209	182	209	182
C. Protection of buildings, grounds, and contents...	341	220	341	215	341	298	341	298	343	300
D. General Administration..	87	69	88	68	88	78	89	78	94	83
TOTALS	872	667	878	667	883	780	885	780	905	800

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SUMMARY OF FEDERAL FULL-TIME EQUIVALENT WORKYEARS BY FUNCTION
FOR THE FISCAL YEARS 1986 THROUGH 1991 INCLUSIVE

FUNCTION	1986 FTE (Actual)			1987 FTE (Actual)			1988 FTE (Actual)			1989 FTE (Actual)			1990 FTE (Budget)			1991 FTE (Budget)		
	FTP	OTHER	TOTAL	FTP	OTHER	TOTAL	FTP	OTHER	TOTAL	FTP	OTHER	TOTAL	FTP	OTHER	TOTAL	FTP	OTHER	TOTAL
A. Care and Utilization of Art Collection (Tab 4).........	192	38	230	195	53	248	208	58	266	221	49	270	237	32	269	250	32	282
B. Operation and Maintenance of Buildings and Grounds (Tab 5).	171	6	177	177	3	180	168	22	190	166	28	194	185	2	187	185	2	187
C. Protection of Buildings, Grounds and Contents (Tab 6)..	231	54	285	220	64	284	204	89	293	213	78	291	300	17	317	302	17	319
D. General Administration (Tab 7).........................	68	8	76	55	21	76	70	9	79	68	12	80	77	4	81	82	4	86
TOTALS........................	662	106	768	647	141	788	650	178	828	668	167	835	799	55	854	819	55	874

NOTE: The above figures represent full-time equivalent workyears during the year and, therefore differ somewhat from the actual number of positions filled at the end of the year.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
1991 Fiscal Year Budget
Summary of Decision Centers and Functions
By Object Classification and Type of Employment

1989

FISCAL YEAR 1989 - FEDERAL FUNDS BUDGET

		DECISION CENTERS					TOTALS	FUNCTIONS			
Object Class	Description	Director (1000)	Deputy Director (2000)	Adminis-trator (3000)	Secretary - Gen. Coun. (4000)	Treasurer (5000)	NGA BUDGET TOTALS	Art Care (A)	Oper. & Maint. (B)	Protection (C)	Gen. Admin. (D)
1100	Personnel Compensation..........	$1,107,112	$ 6,803,354	$13,271,933	$334,168	$ 448,824	$21,965,391	$ 7,910,466	$ 5,023,499	$6,695,108	$2,336,318
1200	Personnel Benefits..............	212,535	1,202,894	2,240,635	43,751	68,278	3,768,093	1,415,429	784,342	931,329	636,993
2100	Travel of Persons...............	17,931	125,062	16,351	382	19,200	178,926	142,993	7,170	1,456	27,307
2200	Transportation of Things........	-	100,214	91,796	-	-	192,010	100,214	4,825	-	86,971
2300	Rents, Communications, Utilities	-	175	4,327,271	1,544	-	4,328,990	175	3,294,613	4,532	1,029,670
2400	Printing & Reproduction.........	80,115	118,772	7,007	-	1,639	207,533	198,887	-	-	8,646
2500	Other Services..................	63,912	2,450,899	727,328	732	778,716	4,021,587	2,514,811	500,515	107,615	898,646
2600	Supplies & Materials............	43,543	935,837	1,118,993	25,677	13,246	2,137,296	979,380	734,135	90,068	333,713
3100	Equipment.......................	35,410	744,066	262,942	1,643	39,570	1,083,631	779,476	87,907	94,602	121,646
3200	Lands & Structures..............	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Salaries & Expenses	1,560,558	12,481,273	22,064,256	407,897	1,369,473	37,883,457	14,041,831	10,437,006	7,924,710	5,479,910
	Repair, Restoration & Renovation	-	-	1,626,752	-	-	1,626,752	-	1,626,752	-	-
	Total NGA......................	$1,560,558	$12,481,273	$23,691,008	$407,897	$1,369,473	$39,510,209	$14,041,831	$12,063,758	$7,924,710	$5,479,910
	Full-time Equivalent Employment (FTE - Workyears)										
	FTP............................	31	190	427	7	13	668	221	166	213	68
	Other..........................	3	46	115	2	1	167	49	28	78	12
	Total..........................	34	236	542	9	14	835	270	194	291	80

01/11/90

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
1991 Fiscal Year Budget
Summary of Decision Centers and Functions
By Object Classification and Type of Employment

1990

FISCAL YEAR 1990 - FEDERAL FUNDS BUDGET

		DECISION CENTERS					TOTALS	FUNCTIONS			
Object Class	Description	Director (1000)	Deputy Director (2000)	Adminis-trator (3000)	Secretary - Gen. Coun. (4000)	Treasurer (5000)	NGA BUDGET TOTALS	Art Care (A)	Oper. & Maint. (B)	Protection (C)	Gen. Admin. (D)
1100	Personnel Compensation..........	$1,039,000	$ 6,836,000	$14,260,000	$324,000	$ 452,000	$22,911,000	$ 7,875,000	$ 5,259,000	$7,406,000	$2,371,000
1200	Personnel Benefits..............	230,000	1,319,000	2,517,000	51,000	72,000	4,189,000	1,549,000	813,000	1,107,000	720,000
2100	Travel of Persons...............	27,000	200,000	9,000	1,000	3,000	240,000	227,000	-	-	13,000
2200	Transportation of Things.........	-	580,000	51,000	-	-	631,000	580,000	11,000	-	40,000
2300	Rents, Communications, Utilities	3,000	-	5,182,000	-	-	5,185,000	3,000	3,945,000	-	1,237,000
2400	Printing & Reproduction..........	51,000	157,000	-	-	-	208,000	208,000	-	-	-
2500	Other Services..................	70,000	2,650,000	604,000	-	721,000	4,045,000	2,720,000	423,000	56,000	846,000
2600	Supplies & Materials............	28,000	1,031,000	1,114,000	16,000	44,000	2,233,000	1,059,000	771,000	134,000	269,000
3100	Equipment.......................	5,000	741,000	300,000	6,000	18,000	1,070,000	746,000	134,000	102,000	88,000
3200	Lands & Structures..............	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Salaries & Expenses	1,453,000	13,514,000	24,037,000	398,000	1,310,000	40,712,000	14,967,000	11,356,000	8,805,000	5,584,000
	Repair, Restoration & Renovation	-	-	1,805,000	-	-	1,805,000	-	1,805,000	-	-
	Total NGA.......................	$1,453,000	$13,514,000	$26,842,000	$398,000	$1,310,000	$42,517,000	$14,967,000	$13,161,000	$8,805,000	$5,584,000

Full-time Equivalent Employment
(FTE - Workyears)

	Director (1000)	Deputy Director (2000)	Adminis-trator (3000)	Secretary - Gen. Coun. (4000)	Treasurer (5000)	NGA BUDGET TOTALS	Art Care (A)	Oper. & Maint. (B)	Protection (C)	Gen. Admin. (D)
FTP............................	30	207	538	8	16	799	237	185	300	77
Other..........................	3	29	22	1	-	55	32	2	17	4
Total..........................	33	236	560	9	16	854	269	187	317	81

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
1991 Fiscal Year Budget
Summary of Decision Centers and Functions
By Object Classification and Type of Employment

1991

FISCAL YEAR 1991 - FEDERAL FUNDS BUDGET

		DECISION CENTERS					TOTALS	FUNCTIONS			
Object Class	Description	Director (1000)	Deputy Director (2000)	Administrator (3000)	Secretary - Gen. Coun. (4000)	Treasurer (5000)	NGA BUDGET TOTALS	Art Care (A)	Oper. & Maint. (B)	Protection (C)	Gen. Admin. (D)
1100	Personnel Compensation..........	$1,167,000	$ 7,519,000	$15,257,000	$368,000	$ 487,000	$24,807,000	$ 8,686,000	$ 5,575,000	$7,877,000	$2,669,000
1200	Personnel Benefits..............	299,000	1,615,000	2,891,000	64,000	90,000	4,950,000	1,905,000	913,000	1,280,000	852,000
2100	Travel of Persons...............	30,000	261,000	9,000	1,000	3,000	304,000	291,000	-	-	13,000
2200	Transportation of Things........	-	787,000	51,000	-	-	838,000	787,000	11,000	-	40,000
2300	Rents, Communications, Utilities	3,000	-	5,507,000	2,000	-	5,512,000	3,000	4,188,000	-	1,321,000
2400	Printing & Reproduction.........	51,000	197,000	-	-	-	248,000	248,000	-	-	-
2500	Other Services..................	71,000	3,628,000	841,000	-	814,000	5,354,000	3,699,000	539,000	127,000	989,000
2600	Supplies & Materials............	28,000	1,403,000	1,184,000	28,000	54,000	2,697,000	1,431,000	779,000	146,000	341,000
3100	Equipment.......................	5,000	921,000	377,000	7,000	78,000	1,388,000	926,000	161,000	152,000	149,000
3200	Lands & Structures..............	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Salaries & Expenses	1,654,000	16,331,000	26,117,000	470,000	1,526,000	46,098,000	17,976,000	12,166,000	9,582,000	6,374,000
	Repair, Restoration & Renovation	-	-	2,805,000	-	-	2,805,000	-	2,805,000	-	-
	Total NGA......................	$1,654,000	$16,331,000	$28,922,000	$470,000	$1,526,000	$48,903,000	$17,976,000	$14,971,000	$9,582,000	$6,374,000
	Full-time Equivalent Employment (FTE - Workyears)										
	FTP............................	32	218	544	9	16	819	250	185	302	82
	Other..........................	3	29	22	1	-	55	32	2	17	4
	Total..........................	35	247	566	10	16	874	282	187	319	86

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SUMMARY OF FULL-TIME PERMANENT POSITIONS
BY FUNCTION AND DECISION CENTER
FOR THE FISCAL YEARS 1989 TO 1991

Code		Function - Decision Center	FY 1989	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Increase (Decrease) Over FY 1990
		Function A - Art Care				
1100		Office of Director............	5	5	5	0
6111		External Affairs Office.......	1	1	1	0
6211		Information Office............	6	6	7	1
6311		Corporate Relations...........	2	2	2	0
6411		Special Events................	4	4	4	0
6511		Development Office............	2	2	3	1
6611		Music.........................	2	2	3	1
7111		Support Services for CASVA....	6	6	6	0
		1000-Director..............	28	28	31	3
2100		Office of Deputy Director.....	3	3	3	0
2200		Curatorial....................	34	34	36	2
2300		Conservation..................	29	29	32	3
	2411	Editor's Office...............	7	7	7	0
	2420	Photo Lab and Services........	12	12	12	0
2400		Editor's Department...........	19	19	19	0
	2521	Public Programs...............	27	28	29	1
	2530	Extension Programs............	15	15	15	0
	2541	Audiovisual Coordination......	7	7	8	1
	2551	Slide Library.................	4	4	5	1
2500		Educational Programs..........	54	54	57	3
	2611	Office of Chief Librarian.....	2	2	2	0
	2621	Library.......................	33	33	34	1
	2631	Photographic Archives.........	11	11	11	0
2600		Program Support Facilities....	46	46	47	1
2700		Exhibit Programs & Schedule...	4	4	4	0
2800		Records and Loans.............	12	12	13	1
	2900	Installation and Design.......	17	17	17	0
		2000--Deputy Director.......	217	218	228	10
		Total Function A......	245	246	259	13
			===	===	===	===

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SUMMARY OF FULL-TIME PERMANENT POSITIONS BY FUNCTION AND DECISION CENTER FOR THE FISCAL YEARS 1989 TO 1991

Code		Function - Decision Center	FY 1989	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Increase (Decrease) Over FY 1990
		Function B - Operation & Maintenance				
3211		Facilities Manager's Office...	5	5	5	0
3212		Planning Office..............	5	5	5	0
3220		Operating Engineers...........	51	51	51	0
3230		Electrical Shop..............	15	15	15	0
3240		Carpentry Shop................	8	8	8	0
3250		Masonry Shop..................	11	11	11	0
3260		Sheet Metal & Plumbing........	8	8	8	0
3270		Paint Shop....................	9	9	9	0
3280		Horticultural & Grounds Maint.	16	16	16	0
	3291	Day Laborers..................	29	29	29	0
	3292	Night Laborers................	52	52	52	0
3290		Laborers......................	81	81	81	0
		3200--Total Function B......	209	209	209	0
		Function C - Protection				
		3300--Total Function C......	341	341	343	2
		Function D - General Administration				
3111		Office of Administrator.......	5	5	5	0
	3411	Procurement Office............	4	4	6	2
	3421	Supply Office.................	12	12	12	0
3400		Procurement & Supply..........	16	16	18	2
	3521	Checkroom Services............	14	14	14	0
	3531	Mail, File, Record & Duplicating.................	8	8	8	0
	3551	Telephone.....................	4	4	4	0
3500		Administrative Services.......	26	26	26	0
	3611	Personnel Office..............	13	13	15	2
	3621	First Aid.....................	2	2	2	0
3600		Personnel.....................	15	15	17	2
		Subtotal from 3000..........	62	62	66	4

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SUMMARY OF FULL-TIME PERMANENT POSITIONS BY FUNCTION AND DECISION CENTER FOR THE FISCAL YEARS 1989 TO 1991

Code	Function - Decision Center	FY 1989	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Increase (Decrease) Over FY 1990
4111	Secretary & General Counsel..	4	5	5	0
4211	Archives.....................	3	3	3	0
	Subtotal from 4000.........	7	8	8	0
5000	Treasurer's Office...........	19	19	20	1
	Combined Total Function D..	88	89	94	5

Summary of Functions

Function	FY 1989	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Increase (Decrease) Over FY 1990
Function A -- Art Care.......	245	246	259	13
Function B -- Ops. & Maint...	209	209	209	0
Function C -- Protection.....	341	341	343	2
Function D -- General Admin..	88	89	94	5
Total -- National Gallery of Art..................	883	885	905	20

FUNCTION A
CARE AND UTILIZATION OF ART COLLECTIONS

Introduction

This function combines the art-oriented activities of the Director, the Deputy Director, and the curatorial staff. The Director is the Gallery's chief non-trustee executive officer and is responsible for overall management with further responsibility for long-range planning for art, music, research and publications, and education. The Director is also responsible for all special events and all support activities and services.

The Deputy Director is responsible for initiating art acquisitions, and for the maintenance, display and elucidation of the works of art belonging to or on loan to the Gallery. Acquisition of art is accomplished through private gifts or purchases from non-federal resources, while the care, display, and elucidation of the Gallery collection are financed primarily from federal funds. Through curatorial, conservation and restoration programs, under the general supervision of the senior curators, the Deputy Director carries out his responsibility for acquiring and maintaining original works of art. The display of art to the general public, and the publication of information on it is the duty of a staff responsible for loans, scheduling, registration, the movement of art objects, installation and design of exhibitions, photography, editing and catalogue production. The objective of the educational programs staff is to ensure dissemination of knowledge of art and make the art accessible to as many people as possible throughout the nation. This is accomplished by in-house lectures and tours, as well as through the outreach programs of the Gallery's extension service, and through reproductions, tapes, films, and books. The extension service distributes information primarily to schools and other institutions and groups throughout the 50 states. Distinguished international loan exhibitions are developed through the efforts of many of the departments of the Gallery, coordinated by the Department of Exhibition Programs, and often are the results of the Gallery's collaboration with other major art museums and scholars throughout the world.

As detailed in our overview (pp. 1-14 to 1-16), the Conservation Division is responsible for the preservation of the collections and technical research as a support function for scholarly studies and as basic investigations in art materials and the history of technology.

All of the above programs rely on the resources of an extensive art reference library and photo archives and art information data bank which are used as research and educational resources for studying the collections, potential acquisitions, and exhibitions as well as disseminating the knowledge of art to the general public.

The magnitude of the art collections in the National Gallery's care and the general public's interest in them can be suggested by summary statistics. The National Gallery has sizeable collections: 2,827 paintings; 1,956 sculptures; 62,609 works of graphic art; 367,013 books and documents and 5,506,353 photographic images in its Research Library; and 1,807 photographic works of art (Stieglitz, Adams, and Evans Collections). These collections, augmented by the temporary exhibitions held during FY 1989 (see Special Exhibition discussion in Tab 4A), will attract almost 6.2 million visitors to the National Gallery.

The audience served by the National Gallery was broadened by several services offered within the Education Department. Extension services, which develops, produces and circulates films, color slide programs, and videotapes based on the Gallery's collections and exhibitions, presented 167,621 showings of these materials in FY 1989, which reached 80,135,173 persons in communities throughout the United States. The slide library lent a total of 21,674 slides to 818 non-staff borrowers throughout the nation. Educational programs, both direct and indirect, that took place in the Gallery in FY 1989 served an audience of 471,262 persons, and 565,885 Handouts were distributed.

A total of 259 full-time permanent positions have been established to provide proper support for the direct and supporting activities associated with the care and utilization of art. For FY 91 the overall ceiling limitation requested of OMB results in an estimated 282 full-time equivalent (FTE) employment for this function.

FY 1991 Request

Funding of $17,976,000 is requested in FY 1991 for the activities comprising the care and utilization of art. This represents an increase of $3,009,000 above the FY 1990 funding level for this function. The comparative budget levels for FY 1990 and FY 1991 are displayed in the following table:

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET
SUMMARY OF INCREASES AND (DECREASES)
CARE AND UTILIZATION OF ART COLLECTIONS
FUNCTION A

OBJECT CLASS	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Over/(Under) FY 1990
Personnel Compensation	$ 7,875,000	$ 8,686,000	$ 811,000
Personnel Benefits	1,549,000	1,905,000	356,000
Subtotal--Compensation and Benefits	9,424,000	10,591,000	1,167,000
Travel of Persons	227,000	291,000	64,000
Transportation of Things	580,000	787,000	207,000
Rent, Communications & Utilities	3,000	3,000	-
Printing & Reproduction	208,000	248,000	40,000
Other Services	2,720,000	3,699,000	979,000
Supplies & Materials	1,059,000	1,431,000	372,000
Equipment	746,000	926,000	180,000
Land & Structures	-	-	-
TOTAL	$14,967,000	$17,976,000	$3,009,000

NOTE: Included in the FY 1991 budget above is $4,370,000 of no-year funding for special exhibitions.

Budget After Sequestering:	
Operating Funds	$11,933,000
Special Exhibitions	2,830,000
TOTAL	$14,763,000

1. Personnel Compensation and Benefits--Increase of $1,167,000.

This increase will be applied as follows:

Item	Amount
Mandatory within-grade promotions, wage-board step increases and merit pay..................	$ 142,000
Annualized costs of Health Benefits increase effective January, 1990........................	46,000
Increased costs of Federal Employees Retirement System (FERS)................................	136,000
Annualization of current year pay raise........	361,000
One more compensable day......................	34,000
Annualized costs of 1 new FTE approved in FY 1990..	9,000
Increase of 13 FTE employment workyears for full-time permanent positions (3/4 year funding) as noted below..............................	304,000
3/4 year funding of 50% of a projected 3.5% pay raise in January, 1991........................	135,000
Total.................	$1,167,000

a. Positions for Graphic Arts Department ($57,000).

Positions	Grade	Annual Salary
Curator of Photography................	GS-13	$41,000
Secretary............................	GS-6	19,000
Basic Salary....................................		60,000
Personnel Benefits..............................		16,000
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)..........		76,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment..............		(19,000)
Cost in FY 1991............................		$57,000

The Gallery has had a collection of photography as art since 1949. In the past few years, with rising public interest in and demand for works of art on paper in various photographic media, the photography collection in the Department of Graphic Arts has grown significantly as have the number of exhibitions of photographs organized by the Gallery. In 1980, Georgia O'Keeffe donated 329 portraits of herself by Alfred Stieglitz, adding to the 1300 Stieglitz photographs she had previously given in 1949. In 1985 Mrs. Virginia Adams donated 75 Ansel Adams photographs and in 1988 Kent and Marcia Minichiello donated 65 Walker Evans photographs and promised to give an additional 15 photographs at the time of the exhibition of this collection in 1991. The Graphic Studio bequest in 1986 included 63 photographs including 15 by Lee Friedlander and 29 by Robert Rauschenberg. Finally, the Gallery has been promised a major collection of 61 photographs by Paul Strand to be given before 1994 and we have every expectation that there will be many more donations and acquisitions of photographs in the future, including a recent offer of a collection valued at over $10 Million. The photography collection is currently valued at over $100 million.

Currently there is no one on the staff of the Department of Graphic Arts who has an expertise in photography. In order to ensure that these objects receive the proper care and preservation, that the photography collection itself continues to grow in a carefully considered and appropriate direction, and that the exhibitions drawn from this collection are endowed with the same scholarship and connoisseurship as other Gallery shows, we believe it is imperative to hire a curator of photography.

Our request for a secretary for the East Building Prints and Drawings Department is imperative now since we transferred the existing secretary position to the West Building Prints and Drawings Department. This is the position we have had since we first moved to the East Building in 1978. This is the core position for the Department. This person is the receptionist for the Department, monitoring telephone calls and visitors to the Department, maintaining the security needed at the entrance to the floor. The secretary's duties will include secretarial help for the curators and assistant curators in the Department; reception and coordination of phone; inquiries and visits from donors, scholars, and the general public; typing duties, in the form of curatorial drafts, letters, memos, and so forth; exhibition matters; curatorial travel; maintenance of files; interdepartmental interactions of all sorts, such as assistance with photo lab requests, supply requisitions, and so forth, allowing for the smooth running of the department.

b. Positions for Conservation Department ($68,500).

Positions	Grade	Annual Salary
Painting Conservator - Contemporary Art	GS-12	$34,500
Objects Conservation Technician........	GS-7	19,500
Secretary............................	GS-5	17,500
Basic Salary..................................		71,500
Personnel Benefits............................		19,500
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)..........		91,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment.............		(22,500)
Cost in FY 1991..........................		$68,500

Twentieth century paintings often present considerable problems for the conservator. The materials used in their construction and frequent large size can make them highly vulnerable. In contrast to earlier apprentice-system craft training in the technical aspects of painting that characterized earlier periods, modern approaches of direct and spontaneous creativity, and the use of experimental and diverse materials, often makes the preservation of twentieth-century art highly problematic. For care and treatment of this part of the NGA collection, there is a need for a painting conservator with experience in this area.

The need for a permanent technician in the object lab will serve to make the work of the conservators smooth and efficient. With the appointment of a head of objects in 1987 and the recruitment of two conservator positions during the spring of 1987, the need for support personnel in the objects lab is critical. The technician's function is to prepare conservation materials, organize paperwork, maintain laboratory equipment and inventory and stock supplies. These tasks, now performed by a conservator, shorten the time available in a day to perform actual treatments.

The volume of work for documenting the treatment of the collection, maintenance of the files, and administrative support is expanding. The increase in staff levels, especially for the systematic catalogue, has brought about a commensurate increase in clerical responsibilities. Support in this area is vital to the work of the division, and therefore, we are requesting an additional secretary for the conservation department.

c. Position for Development Office ($23,000).

Position	Grade	Annual Salary
Researcher and Writer..................	GS-9	$24,000

Basic Salary....................................	24,000
Personnel Benefits..............................	6,500
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)..........	30,500
Savings due to 3/4 year employment............	(7,500)
Cost in FY 1991...........................	$23,000

The Gallery's fundraising needs have continued to mature. Emphasis is not only sustaining the momentum of giving for acquisitions, but also for other areas of need, such as the Systematic Catalogue, conservation programs, the Center for Advanced Study, etc. Gifts of works of art, plus planning for the Gallery's 50th anniversary, are also concerns of the

Development Office. The Development Office continues to identify and cultivate prospective individual, foundation and corporate donors for these many purposes. In addition, the Development Office is responsible for all aspects of the Gallery's membership programs, including The Circle of the National Gallery of Art and the 50th Anniversary Gift Committee.

The researcher and writer will prepare biographic information, financial data, and undertake prospect research and the identification of potential prospects.

d. Position for Public Programs Department ($19,000)

Position	Grade	Annual Salary
Administrative Assistant..............	GS-7	$19,500

Basic Salary..................................	19,500
Personnel Benefits............................	5,500
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)..........	25,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment............	(6,000)
Cost in FY 1991..........................	$19,000

A public programs administrative assistant is requested to assist the Curator of Public Programs in all administrative responsibilities of the department, including personnel actions, preparation and tracking of budgets, program logistics and timelines, collection of program statistics, space and resource management, and production of monthly and annual reports. The position would permit the Curator in Charge of Public Programs to concentrate on the issues of educational policy, direction, assessment, and evaluation.

e. Position for Audiovisual Coordination ($23,000).

Position	Grade	Annual Salary
Program Production Asst. T.V. Studio...	GS-9	$24,000

Basic Salary..................................	24,000
Personnel Benefits............................	6,500
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)..........	30,500
Savings due to 3/4 year employment............	(7,500)
Cost in FY 1991..........................	$23,000

There is an immediate need for programming, production, and office assistance in the television studio of the Department of Audiovisual Coordination. The office undertakes significant productions for various Gallery departments in addition to Education and has a responsibility to provide service, such as multi-image programs for exhibitions, video documentation, training films, as well as routine activities such as editing news coverage about the Gallery. The limit of audiovisual programs the department can provide has been reached, however, and the increasing need and expectation for programming cannot be met with the existing staff of one individual. A significant amount of the department's work could be performed by a knowledgeable lower level assistant, permitting vital programs to proceed.

Quality productions, especially of video, require at least two people working at the same time. The Programming/Production Assistant would participate in all activities. Increasingly the Gallery's in-house capability in this area should produce long-term savings in the amount hitherto required for outside contracting.

f. Position for Slide Library ($19,000).

Position	Grade	Annual Salary
Slide Technician........................	GS-7	$19,000

Basic Salary....................................	19,000
Personnel Benefits..............................	5,000
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)..........	24,500
Savings due to 3/4 year employment.............	(5,500)
Cost in FY 1991............................	$19,000

The value nation-wide of the investment, of both public and private funds, in the Gallery's special exhibitions program is multiplied many times over by the provision on loan of slides generated by these exhibitions for educational use in classrooms across America. The Slide Library needs a permanent employee at the GS-7 level to process slides specifically related to temporary exhibitions held at the National Gallery. The growing backlog contains approximately 2,230 slides of objects from current and past exhibitions.

g. Position for the Library ($13,500).

Position	Grade	Annual Salary
Library Clerk............................	GS-4	$14,000

Basic Salary....................................	14,000
Personnel Benefits..............................	4,000
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)..........	18,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment.............	(4,500)
Cost in FY 1991............................	$13,500

The library is requesting a library clerk at the GS-4 level, for the acquisitions section and the circulation desk. For many years we have relied upon the services of student aides to perform routine tasks such as shelving books, opening the many packages which are received, filing in our various files (including vertical files), entering data into our computers, and performing many other duties. For the past two years, we have had only one or two of these positions filled on a regular basis; more often than not, only one position is filled at any given moment. The reason for this is an extraordinary lack of candidates.

h. Position for Records and Loans Office ($23,000).

Position	Grade	Annual Salary
Assistant Registrar....................	GS-9	$24,000

Basic Salary....................................	24,000
Personnel Benefits..............................	6,500
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)..........	30,500
Savings due to 3/4 year employment.............	(7,500)
Cost in FY 1991............................	$23,000

The National Lending Service (NLS) program multiplies the work of the registrar's office, which is already severely taxed with the demands of our growing collections and special exhibitions. Making arrangements for the safe transit of sixteen additional NLS exhibitions, each of which may have several venues, represents a quantum addition to the burdens of this small office. Since many of the borrowing institutions located across the country will be small and not widely experienced with loan exhibitions, the burden on our staff to make certain that the objects are safely packed, transported, and installed will be great. The plan is for a new Assistant Registrar to have NLS exhibitions as a primary responsibility. In addition, the Assistant Registrar will assist the NLS office in processing requests from borrowers and in making loan arrangements in an office that at present frequently works through weekends and holidays to keep abreast of the complex art shipments and movements that occur in the Gallery on a daily basis.

i. Position for Music Program ($25,000).

Positions	Grade	Annual Salary
Concert Supervisor	GS-10	$26,000

Basic Salary	26,000
Personnel Benefits	7,000
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)	33,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment	(8,000)
Cost in FY 1991	$25,000

The concert supervisor would manage and identify the needs of the orchestra, the sound engineer and visiting artists to insure rehearsals and concerts are maintained on schedule; coordinate arrangements for rehearsals and concerts with security, visitors services, labor, electricians, radio engineer and the Education office to maintain and improve upon the level of administration and logistical support provided to visiting performers; supervise preparation of the garden court; and assist with arrival of artists, backstage amenities, and preparation of broadcast set-up.

The concert supervisor is also necessary to provide specialized information required by the recording studio, radio station, Education department, Information offices and members of the public requiring such information.

j. Positions for Information Office ($33,000)

Positions	Grade	Annual Salary
Public Information Specialist	GS-12	$34,500

Basic Salary	34,500
Personnel Benefits	9,500
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)	44,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment	(11,000)
Cost in FY 1991	$33,000

For the past fifteen years the number of information department staff has remained virtually the same despite the more than four-fold increase in exhibitions per year. The

Information Office produces and distributes all manner of press information for the National Gallery and all its activities locally, nationally, and internationally. The staff works evenings and weekends on a regular basis. With the acceleration of activity for the fiftieth anniversary in 1991, the situation is becoming increasingly difficult.

The current workload therefore exceeds the capabilities of the number of information specialists and therefore we would like to request the addition of one Public Information Specialist GS-12.

2. Travel--Increase of $64,000.

a. Professional travel.

We expect the needs for travel in various categories to remain relatively constant in the current year. An increase of $14,000, or about 10%, is requested to keep up with the general rise in travel costs, and to fulfill incremental requirements, particularly those of cultivation of donors of works of art and funds, and the screening of works of art and books offered for sale or gift.

Professional travel (by conservators, curators, librarians, etc.) continues also to be essential for research in relation to our increasing pace of work in publishing the systematic catalogues of all the Gallery's collections.

b. Special Exhibitions travel.

Travel for the Special Exhibitions program will increase $50,000 FY 1991. This increase is part of the special additional funding being requested for the Circa 1492 Columbus exhibition which opens in October of FY 1992. Please refer to Tab 4A for a full discussion of this program.

3. Transportation--Increase of $207,000.

A total increase of $207,000 is requested for transportation in FY 1991. $7,000 of the increase is for our one-year operating funds. This increase is necessary to catch up with inflation since this amount has not changed in the last several years. These funds are mainly for the transporting of works of art to and from the Gallery for consideration for possible purchase.

The remaining $200,000 is requested for Special Exhibition transportation as part of the additional funding for the Circa 1492 Columbus exhibition. Please refer to Tab 4A for a full discussion of this program.

4. Printing and Reproduction--Increase of $40,000

A total of $248,000 is requested in FY 1991 for printing and reproduction, an increase of $40,000 above FY 1990. $5,000 is for the binding costs of magazines and unbound paperback books. The increase is for additional quantities to be bound as well as the increasing costs of binding. $15,000 of this increase is due to a GPO projection of a 7% increase in printing costs in FY 1991. The remaining $20,000 will be applied toward meeting the demand for larger quantities of the calendar of events and audiovisual film program brochures as well as new school, tour, family program and senior citizen brochures, family self-guides and special program publications.

5. Other Services--Increase of $979,000.

Other services will require $3,699,000, an increase of $979,000 above FY 1990. A summary of specific services needed under the care and utilization of art are as follows:

Description	1990 Budget	1991 Request	FY 1991 Over/ (Under) FY 1990
Special Exhibitions...	$1,460,000	$2,360,000	$ 900,000
Art Restoration.......	250,000	270,000	20,000
Extension Services....	130,000	130,000	-
Data Processing.......	588,000	611,000	23,000
Cataloging Services...	10,000	10,000	-
Personal Property Repair (Equipment)..	57,000	69,000	12,000
All Other.............	225,000	249,000	24,000
	$2,720,000	$3,699,000	$ 979,000

The special exhibitions program will require an increase of $900,000 in services in FY 1991 as part of the additional funding for the Circa 1492 Columbus exhibition. Please refer to Tab 4A for a full discussion of the special exhibition program.

Art restoration cost will increase by $20,000. This budget line permits the Gallery to contract these specialists to survey and treat those objects where we do not have in-house expertise. The furniture and decorative arts collections are segments of the collection, as in the twentieth century, which have been neglected due to lack of incumbent expertise therefore requiring an expansion of our contract conservators. For many years we have contracted conservators to treat the outdoor sculptures.

Data processing services costs will increase by $23,000 above the FY 1990 level. This represents an increase of $4,000 in on-site EDP services for the Art Care function, an increase of $15,000 for estimated increased costs of the library's VTLS automation system and increased usage of the RLIN cataloging system, and an increase of $4,000 for the off-site EDP information retrieval and storage system of the Photo Archives office because of increased usage and storage. The on-site EDP increase is the result of an increase in costs associated with that system.

$12,000 is requested for equipment repairs. With the continued addition of specialized technical equipment in the conservation department as well as increased wear and tear on older equipment in the photo lab, this increase is necessary to properly maintain this equipment.

An increase of $9,000 is requested as part of the 'all other' line for the Education Division. This will enable the Public Programs department to increase its offerings of effective, innovative, up-to-date and professional adult interpretive programs.

An increase of $10,000 will enable us to have printed and assembled plexi labels for paintings that hang in the West Building, providing dates and augmented, legible information for the public, supplanting the antiquated and inadequate system begun in the early 1940's of miniature label tags on the frames.

The remaining $5,000 increase is requested as part of the 'all other' line for increases in training. Specialized training in PC usage as well as Dbase, Dataease and MSA is increasing as more PCs and additional software is purchased.

6. Supplies and Materials--Increase of $372,000.

A total of $1,431,000 is requested in FY 1991 for supplies and materials related to the care and utilization of art. This amount represents an increase of $372,000 above the FY 1990 level.

$14,000 of the increase is for solander boxes, permalife folders, and board for large storage boxes for the Prints and Drawings department. These are needed for the many oversize items currently not in proper storage and which need to be stored in custom made containers for the safety of works of art in our care.

Conservation supplies are produced in small quantities by a very limited number of manufacturers, often repackaged by the retailer for distribution. Quality control is critical for quality conservation resulting in high overhead for the manufacturer which is passed on to the consumer. Since it is impossible to buy in bulk quantities due to small consumption, the cost of supplies continues to increase. Given the priceless collection and the need to use materials that are effective and safe for the staff and works of art, an increase of $8,000 is necessary to accommodate the rising cost of supplies.

With the very welcome recent budget increase in newspapers, periodicals, pamphlets and documents in the library, only a modest increase of $5,000 is necessary to cover the costs for current subscriptions and to acquire new journals as they begin publication.

A total increase in FY 1991 of $350,000 is requested for special exhibitions supplies and materials as part of the additional funding for the Circa 1492 Columbus exhibition. Please refer to tab 4A for a discussion of the special exhibition program.

Offsetting the above increases is a decrease of $5,000 in our one-year supplies and materials funding.

7. Equipment--Increase of $180,000

A total of $926,000 is requested for equipment purchases in FY 1991, an increase of $180,000 over FY 1990. The component increases are as follows:

Description	1990 Budget	1991 Request	1991 Over/(Under) 1990
Library Books.......	$150,000	$ 160,000	$ 10,000
Photographs.........	131,000	131,000	-
Slides..............	20,000	20,000	-
Microfilm Archives..	23,000	33,000	10,000
Conservation Equipment.........	213,000	213,000	-
Frames..............	25,000	25,000	-
Extension Program Equipment.........	13,000	13,000	-
Audio Visual Equip..	11,000	31,000	20,000
Other Equipment.....	160,000	300,000	140,000
	$746,000	$ 926,000	$ 180,000

An increase of $10,000 is requested for library book purchases. The increase will cover the normal inflationary rise in cost of books and will be sufficient to purchase current materials.

An increase of $10,000 is requested for microfilm archives purchases. The library cannot hope to acquire all the necessary tools for authentication and research in original form; far more cost-efficient (though more difficult to use) is the supplementation of our holdings with microfilm and microform materials we may never be able to acquire. This budget line is shared between the library and photo archives and has proved inadequate to cover our needs. Serveral very expensive microform sets are in production. For example, the Cicognara Library from the Vatican is $10,000 and the project to publish on microfilm all auction catalogues before 1900 is expected to cost between $10,000 to $15,000 annually for the next five years. These major sets are in addition to the normal costs for acquiring dissertations on microfilm and collection catalogues produced by various museums around the world. Every year new and important resources are produced on microfilm.

An increase of $20,000 is requested for FY 1991 for audio visual equipment. This includes estimates for the purchase of a new professional 16mm portable motion picture projector for use in the small auditorium and the West Building lecture hall, new carousel slide projectors, and other new or replacement equipment to insure that audiovisual presentations in the auditoria meet current industry standards.

An increase of $95,000 is requested as part of the 'other equipment' line for the Installation and Design office.

By FY 1991 the office will need $5,000 to purchase a new blue print machine as the one presently in use is very old, is not producing quality blue prints and is beyond much further repair. Blue print machines are absolutely necessary for the reproduction of full scale drawings, especially for images such as molding profiles, since the reproduction is of a photographic nature and copies at 100% of the original image. Other types of copiers (photocopiers, for example) distort images and are unusable for full-scale reproductions.

For greater efficiency and cost reduction we are requesting $85,000 to purchase a graphics computer for use by the Design Office and Silkscreen Shop. The Design Office would use the computer to create basic building floor plans which are used repeatedly for temporary exhibitions. Each exhibition requires the drawing of at least three repetitions of floor plans - one demolition, one construction, and one reflected ceiling plan. When there are pedestals or cases involved, another drawing specifying their placement is required. The construction drawings take at least five working days and the demolition, reflected ceiling and pedestal placement drawings take at least two working days each to complete. Throughout the year, the department produces drawings packages for an average of 22 exhibitions. This can represent packages for 15 pod spaces, two north bridge spaces, four central gallery spaces, eight tier (east and west) spaces, three Inner Tier spaces as well as other spaces utilized on an "as needed" basis such as the Northeast Gallery in the West Building, or the Mezzanine Terrace.

We would also put all of our molding profiles (approximately 50) on the computer which would enable us to pull them up in any number of combinations for exhibitions as necessary. Presently we must draw each molding profile in the necessary combinations as needed for each exhibition.

An automated drafting system would facilitate the movement of walls and baffles, the increase or decrease of dimensions of doors and ceiling heights, and the placement of pedestals and cases. The features of a plan could be altered in a minimum of time allowing the designers a greater opportunity to view proposed ideas and changes.

An increase of $5,000 to purchase a plexi-edge finisher would allow our Exhibits Shop to finish the edge of cut plexiglass to a clear clean edge. This would enable the in-house fabrication of vitrines and cases which are now purchased from outside vendors since the hand finishing of plexiglass edges is quite time consuming and costly. At present, the time necessary to finish only the sheets used in wall cases consumes a major portion of the time of our plexiglass preparer.

An increase of $10,000 is requested for the slide library for additional slide cabinets. While the slide library has recently acquired some new cabinets for the expanding slide holdings, future expansion will soon be necessary as well as replacement of old unrepairable cabinets.

An increase of $20,000 is requested for the Library's computer hardware expansion. It covers the hardware costs for installing additional pieces to the Library computer to accommodate the increased number of terminals serving the library as well as Gallery Archives and Curatorial Records.

The remaining increase of $15,000 is requested for the Registrar's office. The funds are needed for the purchase of sculpture lift equipment required to move heavy Twentieth Century art work within the buildings of the Gallery.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
FUNCTION A OVERVIEW - SPECIAL EXHIBITIONS

1989 was one of the most diverse and successful years of fine arts exhibitions and cultural exchanges in the history of the National Gallery, with 6,500,000 visitors having had an opportunity to enjoy the exhibition programs.

The year began with Japan: The Shaping of Daimyo Culture 1185-1868, an exhibition which brought together the most important survey of historic Japanese artworks ever assembled. Through more than 500 Japanese works of art, the exhibition sought to highlight the values that helped shape the aesthetic ideals and social character of that nation from its medieval to early modern period. Reaching beyond the scope of the usual fine arts presentation, the Japanese exhibition conveyed a broad cultural context by including full-scale examples of traditional architecture (a tea-house, landscape garden, a Noh performance stage) as well as performing arts (Noh theater and koto music), and continuous demonstrations of the tea ceremony. This large-scale, integrated approach to the explanation of Japanese culture was a timely response to America's desire to understand better one of our strongest political allies and trading partners. The exhibition was supported by the U.S. and Japanese governments with primary funding coming from a large number of private sector contributors in both countries.

Of all the celebrated Renaissance artists, none has a greater reputation than Michelangelo. The National Gallery, which has the foremost collection of Renaissance painting and sculpture in the Western hemisphere, organized a two-part loan exhibition of master drawings by the artist. The first part was a presentation of his architectural drawings, accompanied by two magnificent models of the dome of St. Peter's basilica in Rome and the facade of the church of San Lorenzo in Florence. This exhibition was co-organized with the museum devoted to Michelangelo in Florence, the Casa Buonarotti. The second part of the homage to Michelangelo consisted of his famous figure drawings, and this exhibition thereafter served as the inaugural exhibition of the expanded and renovated Louvre Museum in Paris.

An illustrious contemporary of Michelangelo in Venice was Paolo Veronese, and the National Gallery organized the most comprehensive presentation of his paintings and drawings in celebration of the 400th anniversary of his death. This exhibition also allowed the National Gallery to highlight the recent purchase of an important late work by the master, The Martyrdom of St. Lucy. At the same time, the National Gallery shared an innovative two-part exhibition, The Pastoral Tradition, with The Phillips Collection across town, presenting the early sources and masterpieces of the pastoral landscape tradition here, and the modern examples at the Phillips. This collaboration between two of Washington's premiere fine arts museums allowed for a cross-fertilization of scholarship and a development of new audiences.

One of the most popular exhibitions in 1989, The Art of Fixing a Shadow: 150 Years of Photography, provided scholars an opportunity to assess how this medium has evolved and to demonstrate that photography is indeed one of the fine arts. The exhibition followed the development of photography as an art form up to the current day, tracing photography from the twin invention in 1839 of Daguerre in France and Fox-Talbot in England. The photography show appropriately obtained funding in the private sector from Kodak.

In honor of the inauguration of the new National Gallery of Canada as well as the completion of the new Canadian embassy in Washington, the National Gallery presented a survey of rare master drawings from the fifteenth to nineteenth century from the collection of our sister institution in Ottawa. The ninety master drawings lent from Ottawa brilliantly represented the little-known collecting of the Canadian National Gallery since its founding in 1880.

Honoring another venerable institution, the Fitzwilliam Museum of Cambridge University, the oldest and one of the finest university museums in the world, the National Gallery borrowed for a special exhibition 162 examples of its treasures dating from 12,000 B.C. to this century. Serving as a national organizer for this cultural exchange, the National Gallery has arranged for the Fitzwilliam Treasures exhibition to be viewed subsequently in Fort Worth, New York, Atlanta, and Los Angeles.

C'ezanne: The Early Years 1859-1872, shared with London and Paris, was the first exhibition of the formative years of the artist who was a key figure in the impressionist and post-impressionist movements, and in whose work is found the undisputed origins of modern art. The Cezanne loan exhibition was installed adjacent to the National Gallery's own superlative holdings of the master, thus illuminating and complementing the nation's own collections of the artist.

Twentieth-Century Art: Selections for the Tenth Anniversary of the East Building highlighted the nation's young but significant collection of twentieth-century art, beginning with Cezanne's great successor Picasso. This survey, occupying two levels of the East Building, documented the National Gallery's growth in the past decade into one of the most active collectors and exhibitors of art of our century.

The National Gallery has tried to maintain a balance in its exhibition programs between the ambitious comprehensive surveys and smaller, highly focused examinations of aspects of our visual heritage. The success of this strategy was amply demonstrated by the frequent lines of visitors waiting to study Mary Cassatt: The Color Prints. This textbook presentation of the innovative graphic art of the only American admitted to the ranks of the French impressionists simultaneously delighted and educated the public about the process of color printmaking.

Mary Cassatt was also one of fifty-four nineteenth-century artists included in the splendid survey of American Paintings from the Manoogian Collection, regarded as the preeminent private collection of its type in this country. The visitors were also privileged to share the scholarship and beauty of another focused collection of work stature, Still Lifes of the Golden Age: Northern European Painting from the Heinz Family Collection.

1990 promises to sustain the high level of interest, quality, and educational content of the National Gallery's educational programs. The Sculpture of Indonesia will bring to this country in unprecedented scope the artistic achievements of the world's fifth most populous nation, and inaugurate the year-long "Festival of Indonesia" in more than fifty cities in the United States. Other exhibitions at the National Gallery will examine the art of one of the greatest portraitists of all time, Rembrandt's 17th-century Dutch contemporary, Frans Hals; the masterpieces of America's preeminent landscape painter, Frederic Edwin Church; early twentieth-century expressionist art from the collection of Baron Thyssen-Bornemisza; the painting of the avant-garde Russian modernist, Kasimir Malevich; master drawings from the National Gallery of Scotland; genre painting of Mississippi-Missouri river life by the highly prized American master, George Caleb Bingham; some of the most important work, based on Moroccan paintings, of the major French artist Henri Matisse, to be shared with New York, Moscow and Leningrad; major impressionist and post-impressionist masterpieces from two great private collections, one American and one Swiss; and many others.

Planning is far advanced for one of the largest and most important exhibitions ever organized by the National Gallery, Circa 1492: Art in the Age of Exploration, to celebrate the 500th anniversary of Columbus' voyage to America. The show will present an image of the world as it existed in the later fifteenth century, as seen in the form of great works of art. The exhibition will be global in scope, documenting the art of the Mediterranean world and of the contemporary civilizations of the Americas, Africa and Asia.

The period coincides with the European golden age of the Renaissance, and parallels will be drawn between the achievements in geography, navigation, and discovery and the larger intellectual and cultural context of the exploration of the role of the individual, the new depiction of space, and the portrayal of landscape and the human form. Special sections will highlight the work of Columbus' contemporaries, especially Leonardo da Vinci and Albrecht Durer. Beyond this, the theme of the show will dramatize the modern relevance of the age around 1492 as a watershed in human history and the appreciation of global interdependence. Other sections on the arts in China, Japan, India, and the Afro-European experience will climax in the display of those cultures that had already achieved a vibrant, if totally different, and unexpected civilization on our own shores.

The exhibition is being prepared by an international team of scholars. A fully-illustrated catalogue, with major scholarly essays on the art history and history of the period, will accompany the show.

Major loan exhibitions have been directly responsible not only for the significant rise in the number of visitors to the National Gallery of Art, but also, through our Extension Service, for making educational materials based on the exhibitions available at no charge to classrooms throughout the nation. In a recent survey of 1,500 visitors to the National Gallery, all fifty states and fifty-five foreign countries were represented. When attracted by the magnetism of special exhibition programs, visitors to the National Gallery also take advantage of the opportunity to enjoy and study the Gallery's permanent collections.

In the long term, we believe that it would be fully justifiable for the Gallery to have its exhibition program completely supported by federal appropriation, as are its other day-to-day public educational and art-care undertakings. While we have been successful in generating corporate support for our larger and more visible exhibitions, we note that fund raising for smaller exhibitions is becoming more difficult as corporations merge and, in some cases, shift funds to meet local service demands, and even for larger shows, amounts available from corporations are not meeting their increased costs.

Federal contributions to the National Gallery's special exhibition program have a multiplier effect, because other museums in this country often look to the Gallery in the first instance to organize major travelling exhibitions. Thus, the federal contribution is leveraged when monies are developed locally by subsequent exhibitors. The high standards of the National Gallery's exhibition organization and design have become a benchmark for other museums in this country and abroad, and museum professionals use the Gallery's staff as a resource in such diverse areas as installation design, automated financial reporting, publications, and contracts. This national resource, a spin-off of our exhibition programs, makes special demands of the Gallery's staff and limited budget.

Major exhibitions that do not travel, like The Treasure Houses of Britain, draw audiences to the capital city in large numbers from across the country.

The National Gallery frequently plans its exhibitions, and makes budget estimates, more than four or five years in advance. Because of the long lead time the estimates are based on many factors which are subject to change. The Gallery may add an exhibition in order to take advantage of a diplomatic initiative or new scholarship; values of works of art (and thus insurance costs) have increased in recent years as the result of widely reported sales or auctions of related works; values of art for insurance purposes may change with international currency fluctuations; international or U.S. museums may share an exhibition organized by the National Gallery, affecting pro-rating of costs; and transportation costs have been highly variable over the past decade and will undoubtedly continue to react to market and regulatory conditions. In summary, while a great effort is made to create and predict budgets for the twenty or more exhibitions held at the National Gallery each year, those budgets are subject to continuous change and adjustment.

Four schedules are included on subsequent pages as follows:

	Page
1. Summary of Special Exhibitions 1981 - 1991	4-22
2. Special Exhibitions - Fiscal Year 1991	4-23
3. Special Exhibitions - Fiscal Year 1990	4-24
4. Special Exhibitions - Fiscal Year 1989	4-25

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SUMMARY OF SPECIAL EXHIBITION FUNDING SOURCES
FOR THE FISCAL YEARS 1981 THROUGH 1991
($ in 000's)

	FUNDING			PERCENT OF FUNDING	
	FEDERAL	NON-FEDERAL	TOTAL	FEDERAL	NON-FEDERAL
1981 Actual	$1,699	$ 792	$2,491	68%	32%
1982 Actual	1,818	469	2,287	79	21
1983 Actual	1,355	1,703	3,058	44	56
1984 Actual	1,323	937	2,260	59	41
1985 Actual	1,177	1,034	2,211	53	47
1986 Actual	3,373	4,817	8,190	41	59
1987 Actual	2,108	3,517	5,625	37	63
1988 Actual	1,597	4,313	5,910	37	63
1989 Actual	3,241	5,877	9,118	36	64
1990 Estimate	3,101	5,060	8,161	38	62
1991 Estimate	5,097*	7,645	12,742	40	60

Note: Percentages of federal and non-federal funding in 1990 and 1991 are dependent upon the amount of funds the Gallery is able to raise from the private sector.

* Federal appropriation requested for FY 1991 is $4,370,000, an increase of $1,500,000 over FY 1990 as noted below:

	FY 1990	FY 1991	1991 Over (Under) 1990
Special Exhibition Funding			
Normal exhibition program	$2,370,000	$2,370,000	$ -
Circa 1492 Columbus	$ 500,000	$2,000,000	$1,500.000

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SPECIAL EXHIBITION SCHEDULE
PRELIMINARY ESTIMATES FOR EXHIBITIONS OPENING IN FISCAL YEAR 1991

DATE	SPECIAL EXHIBITION	LOCATION	TOTAL
10/90-12/90	Titian	WB	$ 1,210,000
11/90-02/91	Anthony Van Dyck	WB	987,000
11/90-01/91	Paul Strand	WB	239,000
12/90-03/91	Corning Glass	EB	355,000
01/91-04/91	Sargent's *El Jaleo*	WB	346,000
01/91-06/91	Rauschenberg	EB	700,000
03/91-06/91	Fiftieth-Anniversary	EB	860,000
03/91-08/91	Pope	WB	103,000
09/91-12/91	Graphicstudio	WB	207,000
10/91-02/92	Circa 1492	EB	7,100,000
	Garbisch Collection Rotation	-	30,000
	Small French Paintings Rotation	-	30,000
	Special Exhibition Department Costs	-	225,000
	All Other	-	350,000
	TOTAL		$12,742,000

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SPECIAL EXHIBITION SCHEDULE
PRELIMINARY ESTIMATES FOR EXHIBITIONS OPENING IN FISCAL YEAR 1990

DATE	SPECIAL EXHIBITION	LOCATION	TOTAL
10/89-12/89	Frans Hals	WB	$ 522,000
10/89-03/90	Frederic Edwin Church	EB	467,000
10/89-01/90	Twachtman: Connecticut Landscapes	EB	217,000
11/89-01/90	Thyssen 20th Century German	EB	232,000
12/89-04/90	1980s Prints (Smith Collection)	WB	163,000
01/90-04/90	Bellini Feast Of the Gods	WB	353,000
01/90-04/90	John Marin	WB	223,000
03/90-05/90	Rembrandt Landscapes	EB	383,000
03/90-06/90	Matisse (Morocco)	EB	929,000
04/90-07/90	Gardens on Paper	WB	89,000
05/90-07/90	Buhrle Collection	EB	765,000
05/90-08/90	Annenberg Collection	WB	676,000
05/90-07/90	Jasper Johns Drawings	EB	374,000
05/90-09/90	Munch Prints (Epstein Coll.)	WB	101,000
06/90-09/90	Nat. Gallery of Scotland Dwgs	EB	96,000
07/90-11/90	Art of Indonesia	EB	688,000
07/90-09/90	George Caleb Bingham	EB	214,000
09/90-02/91	Woman in Renaissance Prints	WB	81,000
09/90-11/90	Malevich	EB	969,000
	Garbisch Collection rotation	-	22,000
	Small French Paintings rotation	-	22,000
	Special Exhibition Department Costs	-	225,000
	All Other	-	350,000
	TOTAL		$8,161,000

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SPECIAL EXHIBITION SCHEDULE
FISCAL YEAR 1989 SPECIAL EXHIBITION OBLIGATIONS

SPECIAL EXHIBITION	TOTAL
Japan	$ 3,344,654
Michelangelo Drawings	351,488
Pastoral Landscape	183,642
Raphaelle Peale	160,090
Veronese	703,151
East Building-10th Anniversary	990,411
Early Cezanne	316,813
Fitzwilliam	505,023
National Gallery of Canada Drawings	109,673
History of Photography	417,885
Heinz Dutch Still Lifes	127,410
Cassatt (Color Prints)	63,406
Manoogian Collection	211,908
Italian Etchers	55,144
Small French Paintings rotation	38,885
20th Century rotation	27,129
Armand Hammer Collection	31,920
Garbisch Collection Rotation	23,131
Egypt (Cancelled)	72,312
Special Exhibition Department Costs	215,293
All Others	394,773
SUBTOTAL FY 89 OPENING	$ 8,344,141
Continuing Obligations of Pre 1989 Exhibitions:	
Folk Art From Shelburne Museum	73,460
Art of Paul Gauguin	221,776
Sweden: Arts of the Crown	205,763
Early Greek Art	33,285
Fitz Hugh Lane	21,001
Georgia Okeefe	144,406
Munich	53,221
All Other	20,917
SUBTOTAL OPENING PRIOR TO FY 1989	773,829
TOTAL	$ 9,117,970

FUNCTION B
OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF BUILDINGS AND GROUNDS

Introduction

This function comprises the responsibility for the operation and maintenance of all Gallery structures and surrounding grounds. The staff operates and maintains: approximately 1,121,000 square feet of floor space; approximately 355,000 sq. ft. of landscaped grounds; 70,902 sq. ft. of glass rails and window walls; 1,102 electrical motors; 5,225 light fixtures; 61 restrooms with 369 toilet fixtures; 61 air handling systems; and the various electrical systems within the building. In addition, this staff maintains all outside grounds and all horticultural and planting arrangements in both buildings. All operating systems are covered 24 hours a day every calendar day of the year. All building spaces are cleaned and maintained daily throughout the year, and the grounds are maintained throughout the year. Preventive maintenance is given to all equipment. Daily maintenance and care of the buildings and grounds is essential to ensure public safety.

Included in this function is the program for repair, renovation, and restoration of the Gallery's buildings. Please refer to Tab 5A--Repair, Restoration and Renovation of Buildings--for a discussion of this program.

A total of 209 full-time permanent positions have been established for the operation and maintenance of the buildings and grounds. For FY 1991 the overall ceiling limitation requested of OMB results in an estimated 187 full-time equivalent (FTE) employment for this function.

FY 1991 Request

A total of $14,971,000 is requested in FY 1991 for the operation and maintenance of the National Gallery of Art. This request represents an increase of $1,810,000 above the FY 1990 budget for this function. The largest portion of this increase is $1,000,000 for the Renovation Program. The comparative budgets for FY 1990 and FY 1991 are displayed in the following table:

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET
SUMMARY OF INCREASES AND (DECREASES)
OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE
FUNCTION B

OBJECT CLASS	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Over/(Under) FY 1990
Personnel Compensation	$ 5,259,000	$ 5,575,000	$ 316,000
Personnel Benefits	813,000	913,000	100,000
Subtotal Compensation and Benefits	6,072,000	6,488,000	416,000
Travel of Persons	-	-	-
Transportation of Things	11,000	11,000	-
Rent, Communications & Utilities	3,945,000	4,188,000	243,000
Printing & Reproduction	-	-	-
Other Services	423,000	539,000	116,000
Supplies & Materials	771,000	779,000	8,000
Equipment	134,000	161,000	27,000
Land & Structures	-	-	-
Salaries and Expenses	11,356,000	12,166,000	810,000
Repairs, Restoration and Renovation	1,805,000	2,805,000	1,000,000
Total	$13,161,000	$14,971,000	$1,810,000

Budget after sequestering:	
Salaries and Expenses	$11,201,000
Renovations	$ 1,795,000
Total	$12,996,000

1. Personnel Compensation and Benefits--Increase of $416,000.

This increase will be applied as follows:

Item	Amount
Mandatory within-grade promotions, wage-board step increases and merit pay..................	$ 39,000
Annualized costs of health benifits increase effective January, 1990........................	37,000

Increased costs of Federal Employee's Retirement System (FERS)......................	13,000
Annualization of current year pay raise........	221,000
One more compensable day......................	22,000
3/4 year funding of 50% of a project 3.5% pay raise in January, 1991....................	84,000
Totals.................	$416,000

2. Rent, Communications, and Utilities--Increase of $243,000.

A total of $4,188,000 is requested in FY 1991 for steam, electricity, water and sewer costs for the Gallery buildings. This amount represents an increase of $243,000 above the FY 1990 budgeted level. A decrease of $192,000 in steam and electricity costs for the FY 1984-1991 period is displayed on pages 5-6 and 5-7. Water and sewer costs are estimated to be $435,000 based on projected rates supplied by the District of Columbia's Bureau of Water and Measurement.

3. Other Services--Increase of $116,000.

A total of $539,000 is requested for other services in FY 1991, an increase of $116,000 over the FY 1990 budget level.

Description	1990 Budget	1991 Request	FY 1991 Increase Over FY 1990
Personal Property Repair, Alterations, and Maintenance..	$ 23,000	$ 40,000	$ 17,000
Real Property Repair, Alterations and Maintenance.......	350,000	449,000	99,000
All Other....................	50,000	50,000	-
	$423,000	$539,000	$116,000

An increase of $99,000 is requested for repair, alterations and maintenance of real property (buildings and fixed equipment). During the past few years the Gallery has not significantly increased the services line item for preventive maintenance and repair of building fixed equipment, yet the cost to contract for these services continues to increase each year with inflation and as our facilities grow older. Some of our larger service contracts include elevator maintenance, chiller maintenance, and trash removal. All have increased.

An increase of $17,000 is requested for repair, alterations and maintenance of personal property (equipment). We have added new maintenance contracts for major pieces of building maintenance equipment, such as the Novell file server that supports the automated maintenance management system local area network (LAN) and service contracts for uniforms for our day housekeeping staff, and other housekeeping related activities.

4. Supplies and Materials--Increase of $8,000.

A total of $779,000 is requested for supplies and materials in FY 1991, an increase of $8,000 above the FY 1990 budget level. The component increases are as follows:

Description	1990 Budget	1991 Request	FY 1991 Increase Over FY 1990
Building Operation...........	$253,000	$253,000	$ -
Grounds Maintenance..........	46,000	46,000	-
Repair of Building and Fixed Equipment.............	445,000	445,000	-
All Other....................	27,000	35,000	8,000
	$771,000	$779,000	$ 8,000

An increase of $8,000 is requested for supplies and materials all other. During the past two years the Facilities Management Office has organized and implemented a Work Control Center primarily using existing positions. The Center is the main control area for all of Facilities Management and the services it provides to support the Gallery. We have purchased copiers and computers to support the Center's automated system for issuing and tracking work orders, and these supplies are needed to support this system.

5. Equipment--Increase of $27,000.

An increase of $27,000 is requested for equipment in FY 1991. During the past few years we have not significantly increased our building operations and maintenance equipment budget. As our facilities age, critical equipment, such as fans and pumps, are wearing out and need to be rebuilt or replaced. We also are replacing worn out housekeeping equipment including floor scrubbing machines, buffers and vacuums which are used 363 days each year.

6. Lands and Structures--Increase of $1,000,000.

A total of $2,805,000 is requested in FY 1991 for the Gallery's Repair, Restoration, and Renovation of Buildings account compared to $1,805,000 approved in FY 1990, an increase of $1,000,000.

This is for renovation projects which include such multi-year projects as: asbestos abatement, replace West Building skylights, improved shop ventilation, elevator removation, and installation of a computerized energy management system. Please refer to Tab 5A for full discussion of the program.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SUMMARY OF ELECTRICITY USAGE
FOR THE FISCAL YEARS 1984-1991

Description	1984 Actual	1985 Actual	1986 Actual	1987 Actual	1988 Actual	1989 Actual	1990 Budget	1991 Estimate	Estimated 1991 Decrease
Total Cost ($000's).....	$ 2,272	$ 2,682	$ 2,557	$ 2,336	$ 2,174	$ 1,870	$ 2,260	$ 2,177	($83)
Annual rate of increase over prior year.......	-	18.0%	(4.7%)	(8.6%)	(6.9%)	(14.0%)	20.9%	(3.7%)	
Cumulative annual rate of increase over FY 1984...............	-	18.0%	12.5%	2.8%	(4.3%)	(17.7%)	(0.5%)	(4.2%)	
Usage (in 1,000 Kilowatt Hrs.)	41,608	43,455	44,177	42,150	39,343	37,068	41,000	38,792	
Annual rate of increase over prior year.......	-	4.4%	1.7%	(4.6%)	(6.7%)	(5.8%)	10.6%	(5.4%)	
Cumulative annual rate of increase over FY 1984...............	-	4.4%	6.2%	1.3%	(5.4%)	(10.9%)	(1.5%)	(6.8%)	
Rate (Cost per K.W.H.)	$ .05460	$ .06172	$ .05788	$ .05542	$ .05526	$ .05045	$ .05512	$ .05612	
Annual rate of increase over prior year.......	-	13.0%	(6.2%)	(4.3%)	(.3%)	(8.7%)	9.3%	1.8%	
Cumulative annual rate of increase over FY 1984...............	-	13.0%	6.0%	1.5%	1.2%	(7.6%)	1.0%	2.8%	

01/11/89

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SUMMARY OF STEAM USAGE
FOR THE FISCAL YEARS 1984-1991

Description	1984 Actual	1985 Actual	1986 Actual	1987 Actual	1988 Actual	1989 Actual	1990 Budget	1991 Estimate	Estimated 1991 Decrease
Total Cost ($000's).......	$1,618	$1,733	$2,023	$1,759	$1,657	$1,450	$1,685	$1,576	($109)
Annual rate of increase over prior year.........	-	7.1%	16.7%	(13.0%)	(5.8%)	(12.5%)	16.2%	(6.5%)	
Cumulative annual rate of increase over FY 1984.................	-	7.1%	25.0%	8.7%	2.4%	(10.4%)	4.1%	(2.5%)	
Usage (in 1,000 Lbs.).....	100,592	108,887	130,853	113,483	104,941	93,547	106,731	99,810	
Annual rate of increase over prior year.........	-	8.2%	20.2%	(13.3%)	(7.5%)	(10.9%)	14.1%	(6.5%)	
Cumulative annual rate of increase over FY 1984.................	-	8.2%	30.1%	12.8%	4.3%	(7.0%)	6.1%	(0.8%)	
Rate (Cost per 1,000 Lbs.)	$16.09	$15.91	$15.46	$15.50	$15.79	$15.79	$15.79	$15.79	
Annual rate of increase over prior year.........	-	(1.1%)	(2.8%)	0.3%	1.9%	-	-	-	
Cumulative annual rate of increase over FY 1984.................	-	(1.1%)	(3.9%)	(3.7%)	(1.9%)	(1.9%)	(1.9%)	(1.9%)	

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART

Repair, Restoration and Renovation of Buildings

Background

The growth of the Gallery's art collections and the broadening of its overall program over the years have necessitated both new construction and improvements to existing facilities. The eventuality of the need for future expansion was anticipated in the 1937 Joint Resolution of Congress establishing the National Gallery, as evidenced by the setting aside by Congress of a plot of land for this purpose. This land was utilized for the construction of the East Building and the Connecting Link, completed in 1978.

Continued Renovation Funding Needs: FY 1990 - FY 1991

The Gallery's buildings themselves are important national monument-quality structures. The John Russell Pope design of the West Building is generally regarded as one of the most beautiful examples of the Beaux Arts style and a superb setting for our national heritage of old master art. I.M. Pei's design of the East Building is widely acclaimed for both its beauty and function and has provided inspiration for other museums, most recently the National Gallery of Canada and the Louvre in Paris. With the West Building's 50th anniversary in 1991, and the East Building's 10th anniversary in 1988 the Gallery is facing a steady, ongoing program of repairs and renovations to keep these buildings functioning efficiently, securely, and safely, and to ensure that they continue to serve as examples of the high aesthetic standard that is so fundamental to the National Gallery of Art's mission.

Several forces make such a program necessary. The aging of these buildings--most particularly the West Building but to an increasing degree the East Building as well--will necessitate the replacement of some of the basic building systems, purchase of new operating equipment when spare parts are no longer available, and updating of facilities as they become worn or impractical for serving the large number of visitors the Gallery now attracts. With the growth in the collection, the need for additional art storage must be accommodated, preferably on site as long as possible. In addition, the increased depth and reach of the Gallery's programs naturally will continue to require adjustments in the way the Gallery uses its space.

The Gallery's Renovation Program for FY 1990 and FY 1991 has five basic components:

A. Remodeling: Continued remodeling for the better accommodation of departmental functional requirements and better utilization of existing space.

B. Environmental Work: Improvement of the work environment for NGA employees by continued removal and/or encapsulation of asbestos.

C. Repairs: General repairs as well as unscheduled emergency repairs and replacement of major capital equipment.

D. Energy Management: Implementation of a comprehensive energy management program to reduce energy usage and costs.

E. Lighting: Continued installation of new lighting systems.

In addition, over the next several years the Gallery will be undertaking a major construction effort to create the National Sculpture Garden on the parcel of land across 7th Street from the Gallery's West Building. Until its completion, this major project will continue to appear as a large component of the Gallery's Repair and Renovation account. In FY 1986 a total of $3 million was designated for construction of the Sculpture Garden. However, since the Gallery is still in the early stages of its design work for the National Sculpture Garden, no new funds have been included in the FY 1991 budget for this project. We expect to include a request for construction funding in our FY 1992 or FY 1993 budget.

The authority for Federal funding of the National Sculpture Garden and the other aspects of the Gallery's renovation program is contained in the Joint Resolution of Congress of March 24, 1937 (U.S.C. 71-75) and also included in the annual appropriation language dealing with the "maintenance, alteration, improvement and repair of buildings, approaches, and grounds..." Congressional support of the National Sculpture Garden is discussed further on page 5-13.

The estimated funding breakdown for the Gallery's renovation efforts for the fiscal years 1989, 1990, and 1991 is as follows:

	1989	1990	1991
Carried Forward	$3,044,000	$2,167,000	$1,996,000
Budget (Approved/Pending)			
I. Renovation	750,000	1,794,000	2,805,000
II. National Sculpture Garden	-	-	-
Subtotal Budget Approved/Pending	750,000	1,794,000	2,805,000
Funds Available	$3,794,000	$3,961,000	$4,801,000

Obligations (Actual/Est.)	1989	1990	1991
I. Renovation:			
A. Remodeling	$ 872,000	$ 884,000	$1,464,000
B. Environmental Work	112,000	325,000	350,000
C. General Repairs	490,000	371,000	445,000
D. Energy Management	33,000	1,000	460,000
E. Lighting	45,000	84,000	86,000
Subtotal	1,552,000	1,665,000	2,805,000
II. National Sculpture Garden and Galleries	75,000	300,000	300,000
Total	$1,627,000	$1,965,000	$3,105,000
Balance, End of Year	$2,167,000	$1,996,000	$1,696,000

The major accomplishments of the Gallery's FY 1989 Renovation Program are summarized in the following pages. Also summarized are the proposed FY 1990 and 1991 Renovation Programs, which include a number of remodeling projects that our initial master planning has already shown are necessary.

Details of the Fiscal Year 1989 Renovation Program

Major efforts within each category of the renovation budget are summarized below. Only projects costing over $10,000 each have been listed.

A. Remodeling

1. Photography Lab: Construction of a new photography laboratory in the Connecting Link to accommodate additional equipment to help meet expanding public demand and in-house needs for photography services.

2. Graphics Arts Department Offices and Storage: Completion of office remodeling and fabrication of specialized storage and shelving for works of art.

3. Conservation Offices: Completion of Phases II and III of the Conservation Laboratory office/corridor development.

4. Education Offices: Modifications to convert conference space into offices.

5. East Building Small Auditorium: Improvements in acoustics and projection screen.

6. East Building 6th Floor: Addition of built-in casework to convert one-person offices to two-person offices.

7. East Building 5th Floor: Conversion of library stack areas to create combined stack/workstation areas

8. Warehouse: Installation of shelving and security system.

9. X-Ray Room: Design of an X-Ray room for use by the conservation scientists.

10. Art Storage Halon Systems: Design of systems for 7 additional art storage locations.

11. Benefactors' Inscriptions: Stone carving of benefactors' names.

12. Greenhouse Electrical System: Installation of a new electrical system in the greenhouses.

B. Environmental Work

1. Asbestos Abatement: Asbestos abatement activity continued in areas in which construction work revealed an immediate need for action. In addition, the asbestos survey of our entire facility was completed and a management plan for dealing with the remaining asbestos was put in place. The Gallery was found to have approximately $1,200 of asbestos work to be done that was categorized at the most hazardous level, i.e., "imminent hazard", and this work was done immediately. However, additional, substantial asbestos abatement work will be required over the next 8 to 10 years and these requirements are discussed in the section following that describes our FY 90 and FY 91 renovation program.

2. Shop Ventilation: Work was begun on a design to improve the ventilation in the paint and carpentry shops area to better handle fumes from glue and paint products. Work on the construction for this effort will be done in FY 90 and FY 91.

C. General Repairs - Major Repairs Undertaken

1. Emergency repairs were made to the West Building skylight system and ceilings to avoid leaks. Beginning with a pilot project in FY 90, replacement of the West Building skylight system should begin to minimize the extent to which such emergency repairs are necessary in future years.

2. Repairs to walls, woodwork and laylights in permanent collection galleries are being completed as needed.

3. Several cracked windows in the East Building were replaced and a protective film installed on these and several other windows on which the film had deteriorated.

4. The elevators in both buildings required significant repair efforts in FY 89, with the result that an elevator specialist was hired to recommend to what degree the various elevators should be rebuilt.

5. Worn wallcovering in the main cafeteria was replaced.

6. Two air washers were replaced.

7. The West Building roof was resurfaced.

8. Design work was done for replacement of vacuum pumps.

9. Air conditioning compressors were repaired.

D. Energy Management - Major Efforts

1. The East Building Concourse air conditioning system was reworked to provide better distribution of air to the 20th Century galleries.

2. Design work was done for Phase III of the variable speed drive project.

E. Lighting - Major Efforts

1. Improvements were made in the East Building space frame lighting and in the West Garden Court lighting.

Details of the Fiscal Year 1990 and 1991 Renovation Program

In addition to its other ongoing renovation activities, in Fiscal 1990 and 1991 the Gallery will be working actively on a number of especially large and important renovation projects, including:

-- National Sculpture Garden Design

-- Replacement of the West Building Skylight System

-- Installation of a Computer-Driven Energy Management system

-- Asbestos Abatement

-- Replacement of the Cobblestones in the 4th Street Plaza

-- Installation of Fire Protection Systems in Additional Art Storerooms

-- Improvement of Ventilation in Trades Shops

-- Elevator Renovation and Rebuilding

Detailed descriptions of each of these projects are provided below.

National Sculpture Garden

The Gallery is moving ahead expeditiously on design of the National Sculpture Garden in 1990. Drawings are not yet complete enough, however, to allow a more exact estimate of the costs of this project. In FY 1990 we expect the new designs will be completed and we will then be able to proceed with construction drawings and updated construction costs estimates. The paragraphs below review the history of this project.

National Sculpture Garden and Galleries

The National Gallery of Art has a longstanding signed agreement with the Department of the Interior to develop jointly and construct a garden for outdoor display of sculpture in the area immediately adjoining the Gallery's West Building across from the National Archives, designated the National Sculpture Garden. In a January 21, 1966 letter to John Walker, the Gallery's director, Secretary of the Interior Udall set the objective of "developing a setting and collection of sculpture second to none in the contemporary international art field, the National Gallery acting as the actual procuring agency." With that goal in mind, the Gallery's president, Paul Mellon, Secretary Udall worked out the initial agreement to divide responsibilities between the National Gallery of Art and the National Park Service. Plans were approved by all the requisite reviewing agencies, including the National Capital Planning

Commission and the Commission of Fine Arts, and throughout hearings in the 1970's establishing the Pennsylvania Avenue Development Commission this vision for the use of the space adjacent to the Gallery between 7th and 9th Streets was preserved.

In recent years, the Gallery and the National Park Service have revised their agreement regarding the sharing of duties for the National Sculpture Garden, with the Gallery taking responsibility for the design, construction and operation of the Garden. In 1989 the Gallery selected an architect to prepare a design for the National Sculpture Garden, and work on the design is actively underway.

From the beginning, the Gallery and the National Park Service's understanding with OMB and Congress was that the infrastructure costs for the Garden would be paid by the Federal Government. In the appropriation bill for fiscal 1985, while recommending a reduction of $1,000,000 in the Gallery's requested renovation funds due to a substantial carryover of Sculpture Garden funds, the Committee report stated that "The Committee will restore these funds in future years as required." In a later Conference Report (H.R. 100-862) the Committee pointed out that the adjustment made to the Gallery's renovation budget "is not intended in any way to slow down the program, but is based solely on the fact that the expected obligation rate during fiscal 1988 will result in a larger than estimated carryover of unobligated balances into fiscal year 1989. The managers intend to continue to fund the repair and renovation program at required and justified levels."

Such explicit, ongoing support of the Congress has been, and will continue to be, crucial to the Gallery's ability to motivate major gifts of art to the National Sculpture Garden from the private sector and from private individuals. This partnership between the U.S. Government and private donors, from Andrew Mellon onwards, has lain at the heart of the achievement of a nation gallery worthy of the nation it represents.

West Building Skylights

In FY 1990, we will begin the work on the replacement of the West Building skylight system with a limited sample installation to ensure that the system offers the proper light level, color and ultra-violet protection. While our initial estimates had been that the skylight replacement could be done for approximately $2.5 million, detailed investigation into current skylight options has revealed that the cost of those that offer the built-in ultra-violet protection needed to preserve the paintings and double paned glass for energy conservation will be substantially higher at approximately $6 million. The Gallery is planning to spend $100,000 on the sample installation in 1990 and study the performance of the sample installation before beginning the work in earnest with a $350,000 expenditure in FY 91. In FY 92 and FY 93, we expect to be requesting approximately $3 million and $2.5 million respectively for completion of this project.

Energy Management Systems

Design work for the computer-driven energy management system is still underway, so actual installation is planned to begin in FY 91. This system will make our HVAC controls more responsive to changes in climate conditions and allow us to better control the lighting during non-public hours, thereby reducing the exposure of the art to unnecessary light and helping us maintain an even better environment for the works of art. The total cost of this system is still anticipated to be $1.5 million, with the FY 91 expenditure planned at $450,000. We hope to complete the installation in FY 92 through FY 93 with expenditures of $500,000 and $550,000 in each of those two years.

Asbestos Abatement

Substantial asbestos abatement work (at the rate of approximately $200,000 per year) must be done within the next three years (FY 1990 - 1992) to deal properly with the most hazardous asbestos remaining in our buildings. The asbestos in our buildings today was found through an engineering survey to be in the second and third most serious categories of hazard, those categories known as "high potential for releasing fibers, bordering on imminent hazard" and "high potential for releasing fibers." The Gallery had not expected the survey to identify so much abatement work that needs urgent attention as early as FY 1990. Nevertheless, in FY 1990 the Gallery expects to spend $200,000 to begin this necessary abatement work, despite the fact that no funds were budgeted for this purpose in FY 90. This FY 91 budget submission contains a request for $200,000 in funding for necessary FY 91 abatement work and we expect to request approximately the same amount in FY 92. After that, a total of approximately $1.1 million of abatement work will be necessary over the course of the following ten years (FY 1993 - 2003) to remove the asbestos that is of less immediate concern.

Cobblestones Renovation

The cobblestones on the plaza area between the East and West Buildings serve not only as a driving surface for vehicular traffic but also as the outermost roofing surface for the underground facilities beneath them. Over the years the stones and their grouting have become worn and have been patched and replaced in some areas. We are now concerned, however, that further patching will not suffice and that we may have to more fully renovate or replace the cobblestones themselves, and possibly some of the protective membrane under them, in order to prevent the leaks that would occur should there be damage to the membrane layer. I. M. Pei's office is being consulted as to the best approach to take in attacking this problem. We are proposing a test installation be done in FY 91 costing an estimated $50,000. Unfortunately, we have no reliable estimate today on the cost of the more extensive renovation that will be needed, nor any knowledge of whether the work could be done in a phased approach over several years. However, our initial estimate is that the cost of the total project will be $950,000.

Art Storeroom Fire Protection

The Gallery would like to upgrade the fire protection systems in seven of our art storage areas. As mentioned above, design work on these systems was begun in FY 89 and we would like to begin installion in FY 91 with a $50,000 expenditure. The total cost of this project for the seven rooms is estimated at $300,000.

Improvement of Ventilation in Trades Shops

For safety and health reasons the ventilation and room configuration in the trades shops area is being redesigned. Glues, paints and dust from painting and carpentry activities are known hazards, and our current ventilation mechanisms are out of date and insufficient to handle the level of activity we would like to have of in-house fabrication and spray painting for support of our exhibition, maintenance and renovation programs. In FY 91 we expect to spend $100,000 on this effort, the total cost of which is estimated to reach $400,000.

Elevator Renovation

The elevators in both the East and West Buildings have been breaking down with ever-increasing frequency. The public and staff rely on these elevators to function properly. An out of service elevator can be a major inconvenience to a handicapped or elderly individual or one visiting with small children, and can bring exhibition construction and art movement activity to a halt. Therefore, we are planning a phased rebuilding of the elevators that break down most frequently. We expect to spend $150,000 in FY 91 and similar amounts through FY 96.

Remodeling Projects Planned for FY 90 and FY 91

Since the largest component of the Gallery's FY 90 and FY 91 renovation funding is planned for remodeling projects, a detailed listing of the remodeling work currently planned for these years is provided below. Only those projects costing over $10,000 each are listed separately.

		Estimated Timing And Cost	
		FY 90	FY 91
1.	Silkscreen studios relocation and consolidation	$150,000	
2.	Connecting link modifications	80,000	$ 230,000
3.	West Building skylights replacement	100,000	350,000

4.	Enlargement of Internal Auditor offices	40,000	
5.	Modifications to improve art access routes in the West Building and Connecting Link	45,000	
6.	Installation of conservation X-Ray room	25,000	
7.	Renovation of gallery M-6 (Ginevra de' Benci)	30,000	
8.	Replacement of West Building outdoor signs	19,000	
9.	Rebuilding of rolling screens/ baffles	60,000	
10.	Remodeling of British galleries (M57-63)	100,000	
11.	Fabrication and installation of brass rings for West Building doorways	50,000	
12.	Education office reconfiguration	40,000	210,000
13.	Guard locker room renovations		110,000
14.	Remodeling of Information Room to create a focus gallery		258,000
15.	West Building couch recovering		106,000
16.	Contingency for other office modifications	25,000	75,000
	TOTALS	$764,000	$1,339,000

Estimated Costs of Major Projects in FY 1990 - FY 1994

The Gallery's renovation plans through FY 1994 include a number of major and important projects. The table on the next page includes projects expected to cost over $300,000. Naturally, some of these projects may be subject to change as we investigate options for dealing with various technical problems, analyze further the impact of one change upon another, consider new needs, and reevaluate priorities in light of budget availability and ongoing workload. Nevertheless, our preliminary estimates of the cost for these major projects in FY 90 through FY 94 and future years are presented on the next page.

PRELIMINARY ESTIMATES OF MAJOR PROJECTS* FY90 - FY94 AND FUTURE YEARS
($000)

	PROJECT	1990	1991	1992	1993	1994	FUTURE YEARS	TOTAL PROJECT COST**
1.	National Sculpture Garden ***	$ 300	$ 300	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	- ***
2.	West Building Skylights	100	350	3,000	2,550	-	-	6,000
3.	Energy Management System	-	450	550	500	-	-	1,500
4.	Asbestos Abatement	200	200	200	200	200	1,000	2,000
5.	Cobblestone Replacement	-	50	100	100	100	600	950
6.	Art Storeroom Fire Protection	-	50	50	50	50	100	300
7.	Redesign and Reconstruction of North Ground Floor Galleries	-	-	-	700	700	600	2,000
8.	Improve Shop Ventilation	125	100	125	50	-	-	400
9.	Elevator Renovation	150	150	150	150	150	300	1,050
10.	Variable Speed Drives Phase III	-	-	170	150	150	160	630
TOTALS		$875	$1,650	$4,345	$4,450	$1,350	$2,760	$15,430***

* Projects costing over $300,000. Priorities for smaller projects in FY 1990 and 1991 are included in the overall renovation budgets for those years. Priorities for small projects beyond FY 1991 have not yet been completely established.

** Total project cost in FY 1990 and beyond.

*** Estimates for the National Sculpture Garden costs beyond FY 91 are not yet available and not included in the figures, as design work is still underway.

FUNCTION C
PROTECTION OF BUILDINGS, GROUNDS AND CONTENTS

Introduction

This function involves protecting the Gallery's buildings, grounds and contents from vandalism and theft. To provide adequate protection it is necessary that a guard and/or appropriate electronic surveillance be located so that all visitors and works of art in the exhibition areas be within their view at all times. All other positions are determined by the number of entrances to the buildings, reliefs, special requirements, necessary patrols and manning requirements for the electronic security console.

A total of 343 full-time permanent positions have been established to provide for proper security for the buildings, grounds and contents. For FY 1991 the overall ceiling limitation requested of OMB, which includes summer evening hours part-time employment, results in an estimated 319 full-time equivalent (FTE) employment for this function.

FY 1991 Request

A total of $9,582,000 is requested in FY 1991 for the protection of the Gallery's buildings, grounds and contents. This request represents an increase of $777,000 above the budgeted FY 1990 level of funding. The comparative budget levels for FY 1990 and FY 1991 are displayed in the following table:

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET
SUMMARY OF INCREASES AND (DECREASES)
PROTECTION OF BUILDINGS GROUNDS & CONTENTS
FUNCTION C

OBJECT CLASS	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Over/(Under) FY 1990
Personnel Compensation	$7,406,000	$7,877,000	$ 471,000
Personnel Benefits	1,107,000	1,280,000	173,000
Subtotal Compensation & Benefits	8,513,000	9,157,000	644,000
Travel of Persons	-	-	-
Transportation of Things	-	-	-
Rent Communications & Utilities	-	-	-
Printing & Reproduction	-	-	-
Other Services	56,000	127,000	71,000
Supplies & Materials	134,000	146,000	12,000
Equipment	102,000	152,000	50,000
Land & Structures	-	-	-
Total	$8,805,000	$9,582,000	$777,000
Budget after Sequestering	$8,686,000		

1. Personnel Compensation and Benefits--Increase of $644,000.

This increase will be applied as follows:

Item	Amount
Mandatory within-grade promotions, wage-board step increases and merit pay	$ 45,000
Annualized costs of health benefits increase effective January, 1990	40,000
Increased costs of Federal Employees' Retirement System (FERS)	55,000
Annualization of current year pay raise	300,000
One more compensable day	27,000
Increase of 2 FTE employment workyears for full-time permanent position (3/4 year funding) as noted below	35,000
Adjust costs of guard pay associated with special pay rates for guards for upgarding approximately 86 position to the GS-5 level	29,000
3/4 year funding of 50% of a projected 3.5% pay raise in January, 1991	113,000
Total	$644,000

a. Positions for Security/Audio Visual Services ($35,000)

Position	Grade	Annual Salary
Projectionist	WG-7	$21,000
Audio-visual Services Assistant	GS-5	16,000
Basic Salary		$37,000
Personnel Benefits		10,000
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)		47,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment		(12,000)
Cost in FY 1991		$35,000

The AV services section is required to staff and maintain the large auditorium, small auditorium, West Building lecture hall and recording studio, and support a variety of programming in each of these facilities. In addition, it provides for sound systems for Gallery Special Events and Press Conferences. This office also provides technical support for training sessions, meetings, etc., which require film and slide projection, video and sound, overhead projection, and recording as needed.

The projectionist operates and assists in maintaining the various projection and other AV equipment for the Gallery departments, particularly the Education Department's Auditorium Programs and Public Programs sections.

A temporary person is currently scheduled to cover the projection requirements on Monday and Tuesday when the full-time projectionist is off, and to assist with the heavy Sunday schedule.

As the film and lecture schedule continues to increase, it is necessary to have another full-time permanent position to cover their many demands.

The AV services assistant is needed to serve as the principal assistant to the head of the AV services section in support of the above mentioned functions. This includes assisting the head of the section in coordinating and scheduling all requests for services, organizing and maintaining administrative records and inventory, and performing a variety of clerical functions, such as typing and word processing, preparing monthly reports, and keeping time and attendance records.

The assistant is also required to assist in transporting, setting-up, and operating audio-visual equipment, and to communicate and maintain liaison with outside experts and vendors in the media field.

For the galleries, it is necessary that a guard be so located that all visitors and works of art in the exhibition areas be within their view at all times. All other positions are determined on the basis of entrances to the buildings, reliefs, specialized duties, manning of the security console and patrols.

In accordance with the above requirement, guard positions are determined as follows:

Required days of duty per year per guard..............		260
Less: Number of days off -- Annual leave	21	
Sick leave	9	
Average number of excused holidays	3	33
Average number of days of duty per guard..............		227

$$\frac{\text{Days Gallery open to public during year}}{\text{Average number of days of duty per guard}} = \frac{363}{227} = \underline{\underline{1.60}}\ \text{Staff - year required per guard post}$$

2. Other Services--Increase of $71,000.

Other services will require an estimated $127,000 in FY 1991, an increase of $71,000 above FY 1990.

An increase of $13,000 is requested for the maintenance of the Gallery's security console system. $5,000 is required to provide for a maintenance contract to service the computer hardware in the Security Console Room. Annual maintenance of the software programs for this same system will total an additional $8,000.

An increase of $29,000 is requested for security guard recruitment. The Smithsonian Institution has delegated examining authority from the Office of Personnel Management to qualify individuals seeking permanent positions as security guards. The Gallery has agreed to pay the Smithsonian a fee of $29,000 to cover some of their salary costs in exchange for their support in qualifying individuals applying to be security guards at the Gallery. The Gallery is aggressively trying to improve its ability to attract talented and qualified individuals to its security ranks, yet working through OPM we have been limited to those candidates who had already established themselves on the register. Some of those candidates have been on the register for a very long time yet because of personal or other problems have not been hired by any agency. The arrangement with the Smithsonian allows the Gallery to both attract a wider range of applicants, since we can now offer them permanent positions not just temporary ones, and enables us to make some of our temporary guards permanent employees thereby increasing their incentive to stay at the Gallery.

In 1989, OPM approved a special salary rate for security guards based on research sponsored by the Gallery. OPM has required us to conduct an annual review of the pay in the commercial sector for comparable security jobs to confirm that the basis for the special salary rate still exists. The cost of such a review is approximately $5,000.

It is our intent to take full advantage of our telecommuncations access to the National Crime Information Center's files when screening prospective new employees prior to employment with the Gallery. While this Network charge will entail a cost of $3,000 for the year, it will be a substantial benefit to the Gallery's security operation and should reduce our administrative costs for employee turnover considerably since applicants with criminal records will be picked-up immediately before the expense and effort of processing them has begun.

The remaining $21,000 increase is requested for equipment repairs and maintenance in the audio-visual services office. Audio-visual services is required to maintain the large auditorium, small auditorium, West Building lecture hall, recording studio, and support a variety of programming in each of these facilities. Some of these contain big-ticket technical items such as the large auditorium video and film projectors. The large auditorium alone contains close to one million dollars in equipment and is used almost constantly for the public.

Regular maintenance is, therefore, critical in order to minimize downtime of equipment, reduce the frequency of more costly repairs, and maintain the overall quality of our presentations. The repair and maintenance budget estimate is a conservative one, since much of the work is done by the audio-visual office, and it is necessary to avoid premature replacement costs and unnecessary cancellations of programming for the public and special events.

3. Supplies and Materials--Increase of $12,000.

Supplies and materials will require an estimated $146,000 in FY 1991, a $12,000 increase above the budgeted level for FY 1990. The component change is for audio-visual supplies.

Audio-visual supplies covers a broad range of supplies necessary for recording lectures in the three auditoria for the Gallery's education division, recording and duplication of press briefings and television broadcasts, recording and duplication of speeches at special events, and recording a weekly radio program. It covers supplies required to record educational, multi-media programs and recorded tours, and it includes supplies for film and slide projection Gallery-wide. Included in this figure are supplies for the audio-visual services office which was not created until recently.

4. Equipment--Increase of $50,000.

A total of $152,000 is requested for security equipment in FY 1991, an increase of $50,000 above FY 1990.

An increase of $25,000 is requested to continue our program of upgrading gallery surveillance and alarm capabilities as improvements in this technology are developed. Recent experience with improved technology in surveillance equipment has resulted in a much greater potential for reducing the instances of vandalism to works of art and Gallery property in the future.

An increase of $25,000 is requested for FY 1991 for audio visual equipment. This request is to bring the recording studio facilities up to minimum standards and to permit the current demands on the studio to be met. This includes the following items: a digital audio tape recorder, audio mixers and recorders, video reproduction equipment, a refectory sound system and replacement projectors and tools. As some of the equipment is twenty-years old, maintenance costs have risen dramatically. It has become increasingly difficult to rely on this equipment and maintain a high level of quality in our productions. The newer models available would improve the quality of our productions, and contain features that are more cost effective.

FUNCTION D
GENERAL ADMINISTRATION

Introduction

This function consolidates the activities of the Administrator, Treasurer, and Secretary-General Counsel. The Administrator is responsible for the operations, maintenance and security of the Gallery's buildings and grounds and the accountability for procurement of all supplies, materials, and equipment needed for the operations of the Gallery; recruitment and enhancement of the Gallery's staff; centralized mail, file, and duplicating operations; first aid and telephone services; public checkroom services and the Publications sales facilities. The Secretary-General Counsel provides legal support and competent professional advice to the Gallery management as well as direct support for the Board of Trustees and its committees. The office is also charged with general overview of the Archives Department. The Treasurer is responsible for the proper control of all of the Gallery's financial resources in accordance with applicable legislation, by-laws and regulations, as well as the maintenance of proper books, records, and financial reports in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

A total of 94 full-time permanent positions have been established to provide proper staffing for the general administration functions. For FY 1991 the overall ceiling limitation requested of OMB results in an estimated 86 full-time equivalent (FTE) employment for this function.

FY 1991 Request

Funding of $6,374,000 is requested in FY 1991 to provide for necessary expenses of the offices of the Administrator, the Secretary-General Counsel, and the Treasurer. This request represents an increase of $790,000 above the budgeted amount of FY 1990. The comparative budgets for FY 1990 and FY 1991 are displayed by object class in the following table:

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET
SUMMARY OF INCREASES AND (DECREASES)
GENERAL ADMINISTRATION
FUNCTION D

OBJECT CLASS	FY 1990	FY 1991	FY 1991 Over (Under) FY 1990
Personnel Compensation	$2,371,000	$2,669,000	$ 298,000
Personnel Benefits	720,000	852,000	132,000
Subtotal Compensation and Benefits	3,091,000	3,521,000	430,000
Travel of Persons	13,000	13,000	-
Transportation of Things	40,000	40,000	-
Rent Communications and Utilities	1,237,000	1,321,000	84,000
Printing and Reproduction	-	-	-
Other Services	846,000	989,000	143,000
Supplies and Materials	269,000	341,000	72,000
Equipment	88,000	149,000	61,000
Land and Structures	-	-	-
TOTAL	$5,584,000	$6,374,000	$ 790,000

Budget after Sequestering $5,509,000

1. Personnel Compensation and Benefits--Increase of $430,000.

This increase will be applied as follows:

Item	Amount
Mandatory within-grade promotions, wage-board step increases and merit pay.................	$ 50,000
Annualized costs of Health Benefits increase effective January, 1990......................	15,000
Increased costs of Federal Employees' Retirement System (FERS)....................	16,000
Annualization of current year pay raise......	119,000
One more compensable day.....................	10,000
Annualized Costs of 1 new FTE approved in FY 1990....................................	6,000

Increase of 5 FTE employment workyears for full-time permanent positions (3/4 year funding) as noted below..............................	147,000
Increased costs of Workers Compensation......	21,000
3/4 year funding of 50% of a projected 3.5% pay raise in January, 1991...................	46,000
Totals...............	$430,000

a. Position for Treasurer's Office ($28,000)

Position	Grade	Annual Salary
Budget/Management Analyst...	GS-11	$29,000

Basic Salary..............................	$29,000
Personnel Benefits.......................	8,000
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)......	37,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment........	(9,000)
Cost in FY 1991......................	$28,000

With the growing demand on the Treasurer's Office for budget information, review and reports there is need of a budget analyst to assist the budget officer (currently the only budget staff) with all aspects of planning, coordinating, analyzing, formulating, justifying, presenting, executing and reviewing the Gallery's annual budget. The Gallery currently has no one to back up the budget officer or fill-in during his absence, and OMB strongly urged that one of the new FTE's passed back for FY 1991 be used as a second budget staff person.

The budget analyst will assist in organizing and preparing the Gallery's budget documents including language sheets, narrative justifications, highlight summaries supporting exhibits, multi-year plans, and backup materials on all appropriations for internal review and approval of the Gallery's Board of Trustees as well as submission to OMB and the Congress.

b. Positions for Supply Office ($52,000)

Positions	Grade	Annual Salary
Contract Specialist.........	GS-12	$34,500
Small Purchasing Agent......	GS-7	19,500

Basic Salary............................	$54,000
Personnel Benefits......................	15,000
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)......	69,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment........	(17,000)
Cost in FY 1991......................	$52,000

Due to the ever increasing work load, this office is falling further and further behind. With the additional requirements imposed by the Competition in Contracting Act, and the in depth scope of work being required for support of exhibitions and related construction contracts, one additional Contract Specialist GS-12 is required in support of the Gallery's mission. The number of such contracts have increased more than 50% over the last two years. The grade GS-12 is required to gain the expertise needed for the position. The Gallery's Contracting Office is a diversified office, requiring a specialist to be aware of all the different types of contracts and not just specialized in one or two. We are not able to train lower grade personnel while accomplishing the required task.

With the increase of contracting, we are also showing an increase of purchase requests. We are currently averaging 825 purchase requests a month. An additional small purchasing agent is required to handle this increase. With the various types of small purchases we transact (credit card, imprest fund, delivery orders, purchase orders, blanket purchase agreements) we require an experienced small purchasing agent. This position would also help free a contract specialist to assist in performing additional contracting work such as solicitations, and other means of formal advertising.

c. Positions for Personnel Office ($67,000)

Positions	Grade	Annual Salary
Assistant Personnel Officer..	GS-14	$48,500
Secretary (Secretary Pool)...	GS-8	$21,500

Basic Salary............................	$70,000
Personnel Benefits......................	19,000
Total Salary & Benefits (Annual)......	89,000
Savings due to 3/4 year employment........	(22,000)
Cost in FY 1991......................	$67,000

The position of Assistant Personnel Officer (which also serves as Chief, Labor and Employee Relations) is crucial to the Personnel Office because of the enormous increase in labor and employee relations activity. Although the number of disciplinary actions has increased only moderately, AFGE, Local 1831 has evolved into a very aggressive bargaining unit which grieves 99% of these actions. In addition, the number of disciplinary cases that the Union takes before third parties has increased by 300% as have their filing of management data requests, unfair labor practice charges, time off requests, etc. Due to the nature of the labor relations activity, this position requires coordination among the functional areas within the Personnel operation.

The secretary position is needed to fill positions where necessary because of absence or unavailability of permanent secretarial personnel. There are approximately thirty secretarial positions at the Gallery. When an incumbent leaves a position by resignation or reassignment, there are gaps of approximately forty days before the position is filled. Because of the salaries offered, lack of career potential for secretaries, and scarce availability of applicants, turnover is high and the length of time a position is open is usually extended. With a secretarial position available to fill in, the impact of a vacant position is decreased. The salary of GS-8 is believed to be commensurate because of the variety of skill necessary to fill a variety of positions. Should there be any gaps in which no vacant position needs to be filled, work is always available for the secretary on special projects that need to be completed.

2. Rent, Communications, and Utilities--Increase of $84,000.

A total of $1,321,000 is estimated to be needed in FY 1991 for rentals and communications, an increase of $84,000 over the FY 1990 budgeted level. This is required to cover the increased cost of the Gallery's storage space, postage, copier rental and the telephone system.

An increase of $40,000 is needed for the telephone system as a result of usage and/or rate increases. In addition, some obsolete equipment will be replaced by leasing modern equipment.

Warehouse rental and utilities cost will increase a net $18,000. This is based on a 3% inflation factor in our five-year lease agreement with the warehouse facility and increased costs of warehouse utilities.

A $20,000 increase is needed in postage due to increased mailing of calendar of events and increased usage of all classes of mail. Finally $6,000 is requested to cover increased costs of photocopiers.

3. Other Services--Increase of $143,000.

A total of $989,000 is required for other services costs in FY 1991, an increase of $143,000 above the FY 1990 budget. Data processing services costs will increase by $50,000.

This represents an increase of $43,000 in the on-site EDP services for the General Administration function and an increase of $7,000 for new off-site EDP information retrieval system (Westlaw) for the personnel office.

The on-site EDP service increase is the result of an increase in costs associated with that system. This increase is comprised of a 2% increase in personnel benefits and a 4% increase in the personnel salaries line. These increases are based on fiscal year 1989 actuals for benefits and increases anticipated in the salaries line.

The off-site EDP information retrieval system (Westlaw) is a computer assisted legal research service. This service will significantly improve the effectiveness of our preparation of MSPB, EEOC, unemployment compensation and workers compensation cases and claims.

See Tab 7A for a full discussion of the National Gallery's EDP program.

Fiscal year 1991 sees a $15,000 decrease in Displaywriter maintenance. As personal computers replace aging Displaywriters, this equipment is retired to storage and then used as replacements for malfunctioning Displaywriters. This practice has realized a savings for the Gallery, and also alleviates the need to wait for a service technician to repair the malfunctioning components. Due to the age of the Displaywriters, a malfunction usually is terminal and could cost up to $2,000 to replace the component.

An increase of $40,000 has been included for Personal Computer maintenance. This increase is accounted for by the growing number of PCs which need to be covered by a maintenance agreement and that the cost for PC maintenance is increasing by approximately 10% annually. The Gallery must keep up with these increases to obtain quality PC maintenance service to protect the Gallery's investment in personal computers.

Additionally, there is a $5,000 increase to cover the increased maintenance cost of laser printers, deskjet printers, scanners and the various printer sharing devices the Gallery employs.

The cost of the National Finance Center, NFC, payroll processing system will increase by $20,000. This is the result primarily of the increased cost of line transmission associated by the NFC system.

$5,000 of the services increase is for training. The use of Personal Computers has increased dramatically over the last year. Specialized training in PC usage as well as Dbase, Dataease and MSA is increasingly sought by all levels of Gallery employees. Interest in supervisory training and the increased costs of both private and OPM course work are other factors contributing to our request.

An increase of $18,000 is requested for repairs and maintenance of equipment in our print shop to extended the useful life of our machinery. This is a well justified expenditure since our print shop saves the Gallery approximately $150,000 per year over contracting out to outside printers.

$5,000 is for the use of newspaper advertisements in recruiting new employees. Increased use of newspaper ads to attract potential employees and the anticipated increase in the classified and display ad rates necessitates additional funding.

The remaining $15,000 is requested for the OSHA requirements found in 29 CFR 1926 and 1910.

New OSHA requirements encourage agencies to test their employees for asbestos related illnesses on a periodic basis. We project that approximately 75 to 125 employees may need this type of testing.

4. Supplies and Materials--Increase of $72,000

A total of $341,000 is requested for supplies and materials in FY 1991, an increase of $72,000 above the FY 1990 budget.

Of this increase $50,000 is for overall Gallery office supplies. The increase reflected in the budget can be attributed to the fact that the Gallery is undergoing becoming automated. This technology has created an increased demand for items such as: computer paper, toner, dispersant, fuser oil, cassette ribbons, proprinter ribbons, head cleaning diskettes, platten cleaners, diskettes, developers, dry inks, etc.

An increase of $8,000 is requested for the Gallery archives office for archival conservation supplies such as storage boxes, acid-free folders and papers, encapsulation materials and photograph envelopes, jackets and sleeves, and for Dbase software to develop an effective subject access to extensive banks of informations concerning the Gallery's history and architecture.

An increase of $10,000 is requested for the development and/or purchase of a local area network system to allow communication among various departments via their PCs.

The remaining $4,000 increase is for legal periodicals. This increase is to cover publishers' additional costs--increases from 10%-20%--expecially in subscriptions to our continuation series of law books, including pocket parts, which must be kept up-to-date.

4. Equipment--Increase of $61,000.

Equipment will require an increase of $61,000 in FY 1991.

An increase of $40,000 is requested for an array of networking communications equipment. There are several projects that the data processing department is involved in which evolve around the IBM mainframe and how will personal computer users access the information contained therein. After adequate research and analysis, several communication implementation plans will be designed. The monies requested will be for the procurement of the hardware and software to actually implement the final design.

An increase of $20,000 is requested for PCs to replace Displaywriter word processors as they become unrepairable. Please see Tab 7A for a discussion of our EDP requirements and plans.

The remaining $1,000 is requested for increased costs and quantities of law books required by our Secretary-General Counsel office.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART INFORMATION SYSTEMS PROGRAM

INTRODUCTION

Although considered a small independent agency by Government standards, the National Gallery of Art has taken full advantage of the latest computer technology. Today the Gallery has the following major computer applications in place:

- A centralized off-the-shelf accounting system marketed by Management Science America Inc. (MSA). The MSA system is comprised of budgetary control, general ledger, accounts payable and online security modules operating on an IBM mainframe computer. This system is available to authorized users through 35 communication lines connected to online terminals and PCs. The system provides financial management and reporting capabilities for federal, renovation, special exhibitions, trust and publications funds.

- The Gallery's art collection has been catalogued on the IBM mainframe computer and is served by 45 online terminals and PCs located throughout the East and West Buildings. This database contains records for 53,000 art objects, 10,000 artists and 15,000 names of donors and benefactors. This system was designed and developed by our inhouse data processing staff and has been in operation since 1983.

- The Library has recently installed an off-the-shelf library system developed by the Virginia Technical Institute. The VTLS system runs on an HP 3000 minicomputer and is accessed by 50 terminals and PCs. This system contains catalogue entries for some 72,000 serial and monograph titles.

- The Security Office has installed a new computerized security system developed by Litton Poly-Scientific Corporation. The system gives NGA the capability to monitor smoke alarms, fire alarms, and security alarms, to control closed-circuit television cameras and to provide card access control to critical or sensitive areas.

- Our Publications Sales Shop has a new retail point-of-sale system using a DEC minicomputer, Fujitsu cash registers and an off-the-shelf retail sales and inventory control software package.

- The Development Office uses the Art Museum Information System (ARTIS) Membership and Development System. This system is designed and marketed in conjunction with the Art Museum Association of America. The ARTIS system runs on an Altos microcomputer. This system is used to assist in our fund raising and membership activities.

- Payroll and personnel processing is currently handled by a cross servicing agreement with the Department of Agriculture's payroll and personnel system at the National Finance Center in New Orleans.
- The Editor's Office is now using a desktop publishing system that includes a Apple IIE PC, a high resolution laser typesetter and a plain paper laser printer. This new system enables the Editor's staff to set type ten times faster than previous methods.
- By the end of fiscal year 1989, we will have approximately 300 PCs installed throughout the Gallery. Obvious uses include word processing, spreadsheets, videodiscs, graphics and communications. Less obvious uses are communication links to mainframes, library services, legal opinions and newswire information. PCs also play an important role as an integral part of our Conservation Department's scientific equipment.

As shown by this brief overview, computerization has had a major effect on all of the Gallery's operating programs. In the upcoming years, the direction of the information sytems program is to further improve the existing computer systems by installing new releases of off-the-shelf software packages all ready in operation at the Gallery. Additionally, we will continue to replace outdated computer applications and manual procedures with more efficient automated systems.

The following narrative highlights the accomplishments of the Information Systems Department during the current fiscal year and lays out in detail what can be expected over the next two fiscal years. These plans and accomplishments are broken out by major function.

I Function A - The Care and Utilization of Art Collection

Over the past fiscal year (FY 89), the data processing department has been working on the development of a prototype for a new art information system. This prototype is being developed on PCs utilizing a relational database software package (DBMS) comparable to the one that will eventually be installed on the IBM mainframe. The prototype effort includes the development of input screens and editing requirements, standard and ad hoc queries, database structures and report generation. These tasks will be complete by the end of the fiscal year and will be used as a basis for the development of the final mainframe system.

The next phase of this project will be to identify the relational database software package to be used for the installation of the new art system. This step will be completed early in fiscal year 1990. From here we will begin to implement the prototype using the newly acquired DBMS. A benefit to the prototype approach is that a lot of the work done on that project can be directly transferred to the new DBMS since the standard query language (SQL) was used throughout the prototype. The actual implementation of the DBMS will take the remainder of fiscal 1990.

Objectives for fiscal year 1991 are to accomplish the following:

- A major effort will be to convert the existing data from our current art information system over to the new DBMS application. This task will begin immediately after the installation of the DBMS.
- While the data conversion is underway, we will begin to train the users on the new system. This will involve writing new training manuals and user guides, developing training aides and then performing the actual training sessions. This too will be a significant task, since today there are 40 to 50 users of the art system.
- After the users are trained and onboard, we will begin to develop additional applications to be included in the art database system.

A Long Range Art Systems Implementation Task Plan appears on page 7-18 which shows the development efforts to be undertaken over the next five years.

II. Function D - General Administration

In September 1988, the Gallery formed a project team to implement the new MSA Government Expert Series Accounting System more commonly know as "FRED". This team is comprised of members from the Accounting Department, Procurement, Budget, Data Processing and other members of the Treasurers' office. The FRED system is an upgrade to the existing MSA accounting system which has been in operation here at the Gallery since 1984.

At this writing, the new software has been installed and is being tested by the various user departments. The new FRED system will become operational with the beginning of calendar year 1990. The implementation will be in stages in that all users will not come onboard simultaneously. The Treasurers' Department and the Accounting Department will be using the system from the beginning, followed by Procurement later. After the Procurement has become proficient in the use of the system, we will then begin to phase in other Gallery departments. At that time, these departments will be able to submit their requisitions to Procurement by entering the purchase request into the FRED system from their own PCs. The system will check for funds availability and if approved, automatically pass the requisition on to Procurement. Procurement will then convert the requisition into a purchase order. This effort will begin around February 1990 and continue until all the departments are trained and using the FRED system for requisition submission.

During the later part of fiscal year 1990 and into 1991, we will begin to investigate automating the interfaces between the FRED system and other financial applications. First we will look to working with the USDA's National Finance Center to provide us with a computer tape containing federal payroll data which can be processed by the FRED system. This procedure will eliminate the need for accounting to manually enter this payroll data as they do today. Next we hope to be able to develop an interface from our publications retail system into the MSA accounts payable system. Here again we now manually enter invoices into the FRED accounts payable system for payment of publications related expenses.

We will also be enhancing the financial reporting at the departmental level. This is a follow-up to the MSA system upgrade. It is envisioned that with new, more responsive accounting tools and the migration of financial control closer to the department managers, there will be a demand for revised and more informative reporting.

A Long Range Financial Systems Implementation Plan appears on page 7-19 which show these and other development efforts to be undertaken over the next five years.

III. Office Systems Supporting Multiple Functions

For serveral years the Office Systems long range plan has included connectivity of the Gallery's automated equipment. Connectivity would provide such services as electronic mail and messaging, document sharing, and peripheral (printer) sharing. Although some tools have been available to achieve this goal, the transition from stand alone to centralized computing has not been without major flaws, or great expense. Today, with the development of sophisticated tools for both mainframe and micro computers the connectivity task has been simplified.

Providing connectivity and related software services to the Gallery's office systems users has taken on a new definition with the introduction of these tools. The following explains the office systems strategic plan to be implemented beginning in the next fiscal year and on into fiscal year 1991.

First, in keeping with the PC hardware platform already established, continue to purchase micro-channel, 386 PCs with higher processing power, extended memory, and large storage capacity. These machines will be placed on the desk of those users who require power and storage for developing and maintaining large applications, and for accessing the offerings of the mainframes.

Older equipment, such as PC-XT's will be relocated to two distinct user groups of the Gallery. The first group are the IBM Displaywriter users. The Gallery continues to employ approximately forty (40) Displaywriters used for such tasks as correspondence, manuscript writing, and file creation and maintenance. Repair of this outdated equipment is becoming increasingly more difficult with maintenance services being discontinued by many vendors. The Gallery must consciously begin replacing Displaywriters with older model personal computer's in order that we are not faced with the dilemma of not having working equipment for these fifty users.

The second group of user's are those that perform similar work tasks as the Displaywriter users, however, they don't have any type of equipment on or near their work areas. They schedule time to use equipment elsewhere. To assist this group, older model PCs will be placed in a more accessible area for their use.

The Gallery is already in the practice of upgrading & relocating printers. Selected printers have been replaced with laser printers that are shared by several personal computers. The printers that are replaced are given to users who originally had inexpensive dot matrix printers incapable of providing quality print. This practice will continue.

Additionally, it will be necessary to increase the memory capacity (from 2-3Mb to 8-12Mb) on select machines. This increase is needed for accessing the software products described later.

With the hardware platform in place the next phase of concentration will be the purchase and installation of software.

The Gallery will begin phasing in IBM's Operating System/2 Extended Edition (OS/2 EE) in mid to late 1990. By this time, OS/2 EE will be in its third release, offering communications support across all installed systems (machines and operating systems), and data base support (whether that data base be located on a mainframe or local area network server). The data base support is vital to the continuing development of the Gallery's Art Information System.

Along with the enhancements of OS/2 EE come the third-party application programs. By mid 1990 these programs, many of which are used at the Gallery, will have been fully tested and proven to work successfully with OS/2 EE. It is important to note that until such applications can work in conjunction with OS/2 EE the Gallery will not begin the operating system transition. Until that time the Gallery will continue to operate under the original Disk Operating System (DOS).

The Graphical User Interface available with OS/2 EE is the foundation for IBM's new office services software, Office Vision. Office Vision provides electronic mail and messaging and document exchange across micro computers, in a local area network (LAN) environment, and the mainframe. This software is the first, fully developed tool based on IBM's System Application Architecture, the basis for cross system communication.

Office Vision will provide the tools for user communication within the Gallery that has been sought after and in demand for several years. Additionally, Office Vision is a complete software package. Economically it won't be necessary to purchase several packages to have the software work properly, unlike earlier electronic mail tools.

Installing IBM's Operating System/2 Extended Edition, purchasing and installing the specific vendor software packages to work with OS/2 EE, and purchasing and installing IBM's Office Vision software for the systems that will be involved will set the future software platform for the Gallery's PC environment.

Finally, a program to adequately train the personal computers users in the hardware and software will be implemented with the assistance of the Gallery training officer. This program will involve computer based training packages and outside vendor training. Even though training is currently available, a program of this nature will aid in better utilization of the tools available to the users.

A long range Office Systems Implementation Plan appears on page 7-20 which shows the development efforts to be undertaken over the next five years.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
INFORMATION SYSTEMS PROGRAM
COMPARATIVE COST SUMMARY

The Gallery's information systems costs for fiscal years 1990 and 1991 are summarized below showing costs for services performed on-site and those performed off-site by contractors for the benefit of the Gallery.

	1990	1991	1991 OVER (UNDER) 1990
ON-SITE EDP SERVICES:			
In-house Computer (Art)	$ 405,000	$ 409,000	$ 4,000
In-house Computer (Admin.)	450,000	493,000	43,000
Supplies/Software Packages	20,000	20,000	-
SUBTOTAL	875,000	922,000	47,000
Word Processing and P.C. Equipment	85,000	185,000	100,000
SUBTOTAL ON-SITE EDP COSTS	960,000	1,107,000	147,000
OFF-SITE EDP SERVICES:			
Library Contract EDP Services	110,000	125,000	15,000
Development Contract EDP Services	28,000	29,000	1,000
Photo Archives Contract EDP Services	35,000	38,000	3,000
Corporate Relations EDP Services	10,000	10,000	-
Personnel Contract EDP Services	-	7,000	7,000
SUBTOTAL	183,000	209,000	26,000
USDA/NFC Payroll	156,000	176,000	20,000
SUBTOTAL OFF-SITE EDP COSTS	339,000	385,000	46,000
TOTAL EDP BUDGET	$1,299,000	$1,492,000	$193,000

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
INFORMATION SYSTEMS PROGRAM
COMPARATIVE COST SUMMARY

The standard functional presentation of the EDP budget request is presented below.

DESCRIPTION	1990	1991	1991 OVER (UNDER) 1990
Function A			
Services - In-House	$ 405,000	$ 409,000	$ 4,000
Services - Off-Site	183,000	202,000	19,000
Subtotal - Services	588,000	611,000	23,000
Supplies	-	-	-
Subtotal Function A	588,000	611,000	23,000
Function D			
Services - In-House	450,000	493,000	43,000
Services - Off-Site	-	7,000	7,000
Services - USDA/NFC Processing	156,000	176,000	20,000
Subtotal Services	606,000	676,000	70,000
Supplies	20,000	20,000	-
Subtotal Function D	626,000	696,000	70,000
Word Processing and P.C. Equipment	85,000	185,000	100,000
TOTAL EDP BUDGET	$1,299,000	$1,492,000	$193,000

On-site Services

In fiscal year 1991 the in-house computer services line for both Functions A and D shows a total increase of $47,000 over fiscal year 1990. This increase is comprised of a 2% increase in personnel benefits and a 4% increase in the personnel salaries line. These increases are based on fiscal year 1989 actuals for benefits and increases anticipated in the salaries line.

Office Systems Equipment

The line for Office Systems Equipment includes the cost for word processing equipment maintenance, the purchase of new and replacement equipment and the purchase of supplies and software. In fiscal year 1991 the Gallery expects the cost for word processing equipment purchase and maintenance to be $185,000.

Fiscal year 1991 sees a $15,000 decrease in Displaywriter maintenance. As Personal Computers replace aging Displaywriters, this equipment is retired to storage and then used as replacements for malfunctioning Displaywriters. This practice has realized a savings for the Gallery, and also alleviates the need to wait for a service technician to repair the malfunctioning component. Due to the age of the Displaywriters, a malfunction usually is terminal and could cost up to $2,000 to replace the component.

An increase of $40,000 has been included for Personal Computer maintenance. This increase is accounted for by the growing number of PCs which need to be covered by a maintenance agreement and that the cost for PC maintenance is increasing by approximately 10% annually. The Gallery must keep up with these increases to obtain quality PC maintenance service to protect the Gallery's investment in personal computers.

Additionally, there is a $5,000 increase to cover the increased maintenance cost of laser printers, deskjet printers, scanners and the various printer sharing devices the Gallery employs.

An increase of $50,000 is included for an array of communications equipment and software. As stated earlier in the Office Systems section, there are several projects that the data processing department is involved in which evolve around the IBM mainframe and how will personal computer users access that information. After adequate research and analysis, several communication implementation plans will be designed. The monies requested will be for the procurement of the hardware and software to actually implement the final design.

Finally, an increase of $20,000 is requested for PCs to replace Displaywriters as they become unrepairable.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
LONG RANGE ART SYSTEMS IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

FISCAL YEAR 1990	FISCAL YEAR 1991	FISCAL YEAR 1992	FISCAL YEAR 1993	FISCAL YEAR 1994
° Evaluate and Select Art Data Base Management System ° Purchase/Lease Art Data Base Management Systems ° Install Data Base Management System Software package ° Implement table definitions and relational indices on new Art Data Base Management Systems ° Maintain current Art Information System Software as required ° Begin training users in the new Art Data Base Management System	° Implement table definitions and relational indices on new Data Base ° Load Art Data Bases from previous Art Information System files ° Install personal computers as required for users of the new Art Data Base Management System ° Continue training users in the new Art Data Base Management System ° Maintain Art Data Base Management Software and data bases	° Develop and establish additional Art related data bases ° Install personal computers as required for users of the Art Data Base Management System ° Train users as required in the Art Data Base Management System ° Maintain Art Data Base Management System Software and data bases	° Continue to develop new features and data bases utilizing Data Base Management Software package ° Continue installing personal computers as required for users of the Art Data Base Management System ° Train users as required in the Art Data Base Management System ° Maintain Art Data Base Management System Software and data bases	° Continue to develop new features and data bases utilizing Art Data Base Management System software ° Continue installing personal computers as required for Art Data Base Management System Users ° Continue training users as required in the Art Data Base Management System ° Maintain Art Data Base Management System Software and data bases

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
LONG RANGE FINANCIAL SYSTEMS IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

FISCAL YEAR 1990	FISCAL YEAR 1991	FISCAL YEAR 1992	FISCAL YEAR 1993	FISCAL YEAR 1994
° Implement requisition/purchase order processing through "FRED" ° Convert to the new Federal Chart of Accounts ° Maintain and install MSA system upgrades as they are released ° Assist users in fulfilling financial reporting needs	° Select and install Budget Forecasting package on MSA system ° Implement the Request for Quote (RFQ) capability of the MSA Purchasing System ° Maintain and install MSA system upgrades as they are released ° Assist users in fulfilling financial reporting needs ° Determine the value of automating the interface between the MSA system and the Point-of-Sale System ° Evaluate EDI/vendor express processing	° Maintain and install MSA system upgrades as they are released ° Assist users in fulfilling financial reporting needs	° Maintain and install MSA system upgrades as they are released ° Assist users in fulfilling financial reporting needs	° Maintain and in stall MSA system upgrades as they are released ° Assist users in fulfilling financial reporting needs

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
LONG RANGE OFFICE SYSTEMS IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

FISCAL YEAR 1990	FISCAL YEAR 1991	FISCAL YEAR 1992	FISCAL YEAR 1993	FISCAL YEAR 1994
° Continue phasing out IBM Displaywriter equipment ° Continue purchasing high end Personal Computer equipment ° Upgrade PC hardware and software as users needs change ° Begin DOS (Disk Operating System) phase out in lieu of OS/2 EE (IBM's Operating System/2 Extended Edition) ° Begin research and analysis into the benefits of IBM's OfficeVision ° Establish a training program/center within the Gallery	° Continue phasing out Displaywriter equipment ° Continue purchasing high end Personal Computer equipment ° Upgrade PC hardware and software as users needs change ° Continue DOS phase out and implementation of OS/2 EE ° Begin installation of OfficeVision on either IBM Mainframe or Local Area Network ° Continue enhancing the PC training program of the Gallery	° Continue purchasing high end Personal Computer equipment to upgrade older model machines ° Upgrade PC hardware and software as users needs change ° Continue efforts in the implementation of Office-Vision ° Continue efforts in the implementation of the Art Information Data Base System and MSA ° Continue enhancing the training program of the Gallery	° Continue purchasing hardware and software that will meet the demands of the user community ° Continue upgrading hardware and software to meet the needs of users ° Continue to assist in the implementation Mainframe or Local Area Networked based systems ° Continue to develop hardware and software strategies to better aide the user community ° Continue enhancing the training effort of the personal computer users	° Continue purchas-hardware and software that will meet the demands of the community user ° Continue upgrading hardware and software to meet the needs of users ° Continue to assist in the implementation of Mainframe or Local Area Networked based sytems ° Continue to develop hardware and software strategies to better aid the user community ° Continue enhancing the training effort of the personal computer users

PROGRAM AND PERFORMANCE

1. Management and Operation. -- The National Gallery of Art receives, holds, and administers works of art acquired for the Nation by the Gallery's board of trustees; maintains and administers the Gallery's buildings to provide maximum care and protection to art treasures and permit these works of art to be exhibited regularly to the public without charge. Number of visitors:

1989 actual - 6,221,682
1990 estimate - 6,900,000
1991 estimate - 6,900,000

STANDARD FORM 304
May 1969, Bureau of the Budget
Circular No. A-11, Revised.
304-103

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SALARIES AND EXPENSES

OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code	33-0200-0-1-503	19 89 actual	19 90 estimate	19 91 estimate
	Personnel compensation:			
11.1	Permanent positions	17,146	18,728	20,397
11.3	Positions other than permanent	2,831	2,400	2,520
11.5	Other personnel compensation	1,988	1,783	1,890
11.8	Special personal services payments			
	Total personnel compensation	21,965	22,911	24,807
	Personnel benefits:			
12.1	Civilian	3,768	4,189	4,950
13.0	Benefits for former personnel			
21.0	Travel and transportation of persons	179	240	254
22.0	Transportation of things	193	271	778
23.0	Rent, communications, and utilities	4,329	5,185	5,512
24.0	Printing and reproduction	208	208	248
25.0	Other services	4,021	4,533	6,274
26.0	Supplies and materials	2,137	2,233	2,517
31.0	Equipment	1,084	1,070	1,388
32.0	Lands and structures	-	-	-
33.0	Investments and loans			
41.0	Grants, subsidies, and contributions			
42.0	Insurance claims and indemnities			
43.0	Interest and dividends			
44.0	Refunds			
99.0	Total obligations	37,884	40,840	46,728
				8-2

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
Repair, Restoration and Renovation of Buildings
OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 33-0201-0-1-503		1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
	Personnel compensation:			
11.3	Positions other than permanent	53	92	95
	Total personnel compensation	53	92	95
	Personnel benefits:			
12.1	Civilian	4	28	29
25.0	Other services	609	950	1,100
26.0	Supplies and Materials	8	50	100
31.0	Equipment	184	120	130
32.0	Lands and structures	772	725	1,651
99.0	Total obligations	1,630	1,965	3,105

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SALARIES AND EXPENSES
PERSONNEL SUMMARY

	1989 Estimate	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Total number of full-time permanent positions..........	883	885	905
Total compensable workyears			
Full-time equivalent employment.................	835	854	874
Full-time equivalent of overtime and holiday hours.....	63	65	65

Type size:
8 point 23 picas
Case 180.
Red underscore
Case 310

STANDARD FORM 300
July 1954, Bureau of the Budget
Circular No. A-11, Revised.
300-101

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
SALARIES AND EXPENSES
Program and Financing
(in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 33-0200-0-1-503	19 89 actual	19 90 estimate	19 91 estimate
Program by activities:			
10.00 Total obligations.....	37,884	40,840	46,728
Financing:			
17.00 Recovery of prior year obligations............	-	-	-
21.40 Unobligated balance available, start of year...................	-1,850	-1,932	-1,251
24.40 Unobligated balance available, end of year.	1,932	1,251	621
25.00 Unobligated balance lapsing................	15	-	-
39.00 Budget authority.......	37,981	40,159	46,098
Budget authority:			
40.00 Appropriation..........	37,981	40,712	46,098
40.00 Reduction Pursuant to P.L. 99-177............	-	-553	-
43.00 Appropriation (adjusted)	37,981	40,159	46,098
Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.00 Obligations incurred, net....................	37,884	40,840	46,728
72.40 Obligated balance, start of year..........	5,040	4,163	4,238
74.40 Obligated balance, end of year................	-4,163	-4,238	-5,724
77.00 Adjustments in expired accounts..............	-296	-	-
78.00 Adjustments in unexpired accounts.....	-	-	-
90.00 Outlays, excluding pay raise supplemental.....	38,464	40,765	45,242
(Memo cast: 21.5)	(Memo cast: 8)	(Memo cast: 8)	(Memo cast: 4.9)

Type size: [illegible] Case 180. Red underscore Case 330

STANDARD FORM 300
July 1964, Bureau of the Budget
Circular No. A-11, Revised.
300-101

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
Repair, Restoration and Renovation of Buildings
Program and Financing
(in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 33-0201-0-1-503	19 89 actual	19 90 estimate	19 91 estimate
Program by activities:			
10.00 Total obligations......	1,630	1,965	3,105
Financing:			
17.00 Recovery of prior year obligations............	-3	-	-
21.40 Unobligated balance available, start of year...................	-3,044	-2,167	-1,996
24.40 Unobligated balance available, end of year.	2,167	1,996	1,696
39.00 Budget authority.......	750	1,794	2,805
Budget authority:			
40.00 Appropriation..........	750	1,805	2,805
40,00 Reduction pursuant to P.L. 99-177............	-	-11	-
43,00 Appropriation (Adjusted)	750	1,794	2,805
Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.00 Obligations incurred, net....................	1,630	1,965	3,105
72.40 Obligated balance, start of year..........	1,458	808	576
74.40 Obligated balance, end of year................	-808	-576	-813
78.00 Adjustment in unexpired accounts.....	-3	-	-
90.00 Outlays, excluding pay raise supplemental.....	2,277	2,197	2,868
(Memo cast: 11.5)	(Memo cast: 5)	(Memo cast: 5)	8-6 (Memo cast: 4.9)

GPO 1981-O-[illegible]

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITY OF THE FUNDS FOR OPERATIONS
for the year ended September 30, 1989
(with comparative totals for the year ended September 30, 1988)

	1989			1988
	Non-Federal	Federal	Total	Total
Support and revenues:				
U.S. Government appropriation utilized (Note 1)	$ -	$40,463,638	$40,463,638	$38,815,230
Return from endowment funds, less $1,651,879 and $1,398,632 respectively for 1989 and 1988, returned to principal (Note 1)	3,017,000	-	3,017,000	2,902,974
Grants for special exhibitions	6,897,808	-	6,897,808	4,492,293
Income from special purpose funds utilized	1,177,009	-	1,177,009	864,006
Interest income	314,843	-	314,843	167,329
Income from cafeteria, recorded tours and reimbursements	105,673	-	105,673	493,344
Total support and revenues	11,512,333	40,463,638	51,975,971	47,735,176
Operating expenses:				
Programs:				
Curatorial	980,463	4,305,856	5,286,319	5,304,319
Conservation	228,998	1,362,751	1,591,749	1,376,427
Special exhibitions	5,877,393	3,240,576	9,117,969	5,910,256
Editorial and photography	-	868,987	868,987	842,585
Research services	477,217	1,808,037	2,285,254	1,998,112
Educational services	560,569	2,706,434	3,267,003	3,045,964
Fellowships	423,353	-	423,353	397,892
Music	237,493	137,487	374,980	317,456
Total program expenses	8,785,486	14,430,128	23,215,614	19,193,011
Operations, security and administration:				
Operations and maintenance	106,375	10,382,895	10,489,270	11,222,264
Security	-	7,834,958	7,834,958	7,353,203
Administration, fiscal and legal	680,254	5,359,981	6,040,235	5,400,043
Development (Note 1)	405,779	72,235	478,014	334,157
Total operations, security and administration	1,192,408	23,650,069	24,842,477	24,309,667
Renovation expenditures	-	1,626,752	1,626,752	2,290,495
Equipment expenditures	-	756,689	756,689	979,594
Total expenses	9,977,894	40,463,638	50,441,532	46,772,767
Excess of support and revenues over expenses	$ 1,534,439	$ -	$ 1,534,439	$ 962,409

The accompanying notes are an integral part
of these financial statements.

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART

STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES

for the year ended September 30, 1989

(with comparative totals for the year ended September 30, 1988)

	1989							1988
	Non-Federal			Federal			Total	Total
	Funds for Operations	Funds for Special Purposes	Endowment Funds	One-year Funds	No-Year Renovation Funds	No-Year Special Exhibitions Funds		
Balances, beginning of year	$ 2,192,396	$33,839,173	$138,721,939	$ -	$3,043,783	$ 1,849,563	$179,646,854	$179,562,792
Additions:								
U.S. Government appropriation received	-	-	-	35,661,000	750,000	2,320,000	38,731,000	37,352,000
Return from endowment funds restricted to special purposes	-	4,186,375	-	-	-	-	4,186,375	3,545,820
Endowment fund income returned to principal (Note 1)	1,651,879	-	-	-	-	-	1,651,879	1,398,632
Investment income	-	2,387,985	-	-	-	-	2,387,985	1,599,536
Change in investment appreciation (Note 2)	25,869	2,238,568	19,406,214	-	-	-	21,670,651	(11,509,696)
Gifts and bequests	-	5,015,648	1,972,995	-	-	-	6,988,643	6,746,853
Excess of support and revenues over expenses	1,534,439	-	-	-	-	-	1,534,439	962,409
Publications revenue	-	9,300,684	-	-	-	-	9,300,684	12,275,635
Total additions	3,212,187	23,129,260	21,379,209	35,661,000	750,000	2,320,000	86,451,656	52,371,189
Deductions:								
Art purchases	-	6,722,841	-	-	-	-	6,722,841	1,842,201
Publications expenses	-	8,841,984	-	-	-	-	8,841,984	9,260,702
Fixed asset expenditures	-	1,050,919	-	-	-	-	1,050,919	471,102
Fellowships, projects and other	-	1,177,008	-	-	-	-	1,177,008	864,006
Federal operating expenses obligated	-	-	-	35,646,211	1,626,752	2,237,527	39,510,490	39,844,717
Returned to U.S. Treasury	-	-	-	14,789	-	-	14,789	4,399
Total deductions	-	17,792,752	-	35,661,000	1,626,752	2,237,527	57,318,031	52,287,127
Transfers - In(out):								
Endowment fund income returned to principal (Note 1)	(1,651,879)	-	1,651,879	-	-	-	-	-
Other	(103,845)	(32,031)	135,876	-	-	-	-	-
Balances, end of year	$ 3,648,859	$39,143,648	$161,888,903	$ -	$2,167,031	$ 1,932,036	$208,780,477	$179,646,854

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the financial statements

NATIONAL GALLERY OF ART 1/19/90
FEDERAL BUDGET
STATEMENT OF INCOME AND EXPENSES

	FY 1990 APPROPRIATION	FY 1991 REQUEST	% Change FY91 over FY90
SUPPORT AND REVENUES:			
U.S. Government Appropriation:			
One-Year Funds	$37,842,000	$41,728,000	10.3%
Special Exhibitions	2,370,000	2,370,000	0.0%
Renovation	1,805,000	2,805,000	55.4%
Subtotal	42,017,000	46,903,000	11.6%
"Circa 1492 Exhibition"	500,000	2,000,000	300.0%
Total support and revenues	42,517,000	48,903,000	15.0%
OPERATING EXPENSES:			
Programs:			
Curatorial	4,488,000	4,936,000	10.0%
Conservation	1,381,000	1,585,000	14.8%
Special exhibitions	2,370,000	2,370,000	0.0%
Editorial and photography	820,000	925,000	12.8%
Research services	1,931,000	2,119,000	9.7%
Educational services	2,929,000	3,287,000	12.2%
Music	114,000	149,000	30.7%
Total program expenses	14,033,000	15,371,000	9.5%
Operations, Security and Administration:			
Operations and maintenance	11,254,000	12,157,000	8.0%
Security	8,710,000	9,437,000	8.3%
Administration, fiscal and legal	5,502,000	6,102,000	10.9%
Total operations, security and administration	25,466,000	27,696,000	8.8%
Renovation expenditures	1,805,000	2,805,000	55.4%
Equipment expenditures	713,000	1,031,000	44.6%
Subtotal	42,017,000	46,903,000	11.6%
"Circa 1492 Exhibition"	500,000	2,000,000	300.0%
Total expenses	$42,517,000	$48,903,000	15.0%
FTE'S	854	874	

NOTE: For purpose of comparison of Federal budgets only, no carry forward is estimated.

BUDGET JUSTIFICATIONS FOR THE FISCAL YEAR 1991

SUBMITTED TO THE COMMITTEES ON APPROPRIATIONS
CONGRESS OF THE UNITED STATES

JANUARY 1990

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION
General Statement 1
FY 1991 Budget Priorities 2
Management Improvements During FY 1989 2

SUMMARY
Funding Estimates and FY 1991 Appropriation Request 4
FY 1991 Requested Adjustments 5

I FELLOWSHIP PROGRAM 6

II SCHOLAR SUPPORT
A. Library 7
B. Research Assistants 8

III PUBLIC SERVICE 9

IV GENERAL ADMINISTRATION 10

V SMITHSONIAN FEE 12

VI CONFERENCES AND OTHER OUTREACH
A. Conference Development 13
B. Publishing 14
C. Radio Dialogue 15

VII SPACE 16

ENDOWMENT CHALLENGE FUND 17

APPENDICES
Consolidated Statements of Income and Expenditures FY 1989, FY 1990 and FY 1991 (estimates) 18

Endowment Principal FY 1989, FY 1990 and FY 1991 (estimates) 22

INTRODUCTION

General Statement

Founded on October 24, 1968, with the signing into law of Public Law 90-637, the Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars is a "living memorial" to a former President designed by its charter to symbolize and strengthen the links between the world of learning and the world of public affairs. The Woodrow Wilson Center is (along with the National Gallery of Art and the Kennedy Center) one of the three institutions created by a special statute to perform a national mission in Washington, D.C. within the Smithsonian Institution. Like the other two institutions, it is governed by its own Board of Trustees. The Center sponsors basic, original scholarship and dialogue in the humanities and social sciences. The results are disseminated through the Center's weekly radio program, Radio Dialogue, its journal, The Wilson Quarterly, its book publishing, and multi-day conferences and smaller meetings, such as evening dialogues and congressional breakfasts.

At the heart of the Woodrow Wilson Center are the Fellows, who are selected through an annual international competition. Fellows come from all over the world to carry out scholarly work at the Center. They are chosen on the basis of the distinction in their fields they represent and on the potential of their research proposals as judged by prominent outside reviewers.

Source of Funding

The Woodrow Wilson Center receives annual operating funds from a federal appropriation and from a variety of other sources. The gross amounts of appropriated and non-appropriated funds are almost identical.

Essentially, federal funding supports most of the central administration, the program director and program assistant of each program (except East Europe which receives an annual grant from the State Department under Title VIII), nearly all fellowship awards, partial conference requirements, Radio Dialogue, and most of the other daily operating requirements of the Center, such as rental of commercial office space, office equipment, supplies, postage, and telephones.

The sources of non-appropriated funds are outside gifts and grants, endowment income, and The Wilson Quarterly's subscription sales and advertising. The Wilson Quarterly is sustained totally with non-appropriated monies (with the exception of payment for its office space). Non-appropriated monies also are used to pay the salaries of 25 people, consisting of certain administrative personnel, and research associates in several programs. Both appropriated and non-appropriated monies support conferences, publishing, research assistants and a limited number of fellowships.

FY 1991 Budget Priorities

The overall goals of the Woodrow Wilson Center's FY 1991 budget request are: (1) to keep pace with inflation; and (2) to promote outreach activities that will bring the results of the scholarly work done in Washington to broader segments of the public.

The Center is promoting outreach in this budget request by increasing the editorial capacity for its successful publishing program. To keep pace with inflation, increases are sought for: mandated pay; the Fellowship program; research assistants; library books and journals; and space rental costs.

Management Improvements During FY 1989

Replacing the previous organizational structure of eight Programs, six of which were geographically defined, the Center has established three major Divisions. The first is concerned with the United States and is essentially a continuation of the previous American Society and Politics Program. The second is a Division of Regional and Comparative Studies, which consists of all of the other geographically defined programs: Asia, Eastern and Western Europe (now combined in a single program), Latin America and the Soviet Union (the Kennan Institute). The third is called International Studies and represents a significant broadening of the previous International Security Studies program to enable it to address such other concerns of global scope as the environment, communications, economics, and culture. The former program on History, Culture and Society has been eliminated, its subject matter incorporated into the other programs. Aside from administrative simplification, the new structure is designed to encourage attention to topics that cut across geographic boundaries and to comparative studies that involve necessarily more than one part of the world.

An ad hoc committee was established to examine all aspects of our fellowship program. Concerned about: 1) attracting to the Center the best possible applicants, pursuing the most significant scholarly projects; 2) ensuring that these applicants were judged by uniform standards; and 3) creating at the Center each year a community of scholars and practitioners, the Committee recommended certain changes to the fellowship application and selection process. These have now been implemented. It is now no longer necessary to apply to the Center through one of its programs, a requirement that may have cost the Center a number of good applications from those who do not perceive themselves as fitting within any of those programs. Under the new procedures, each application we receive will be sent to three readers of the Center's choice and expert in its field. On the basis of these readers' responses and in some cases the views of staff, the best and most competitive applications will be sent to a single Center-wide Committee which will recommend Fellows and alternates to the Fellowship Committee of the Board of Trustees. This replaces the previous system under which advisory councils for each program reviewed and recommended applicants. Finally, in order to promote the idea of a community of scholars, the Board has established the U.S. academic year as the norm for a fellowship at the Center, while allowing flexibility for short term appointments and special opportunities as the need arises.

Following through on an FY 1989 budget initiative, the Center has developed a new format for its monthly calendar and research reports.

The new Trust fund accounting system is now in operation. With the exception of payroll functions which remain with the Smithsonian, the Center is solely responsible for its own Trust fund accounting and banking. The new system has been designed to foster timeliness of reporting, accuracy, and flexibility for management reporting.

The staff of The Wilson Quarterly has been markedly reduced, its production costs have been cut, its format has been changed somewhat, and it has returned once again to publication four times a year. As a result of these economies, the devastating and insupportable $800,000 deficit in FY 1988 was reduced to $212,000 in FY 1989, and current projections indicate that it will be eliminated entirely in FY 1990 and in FY 1991.

SUMMARY

Summary of FY 1991 Appropriations Request

For FY 1991, the Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars requests a Salaries and Expenses appropriation of $5,074,000, an increase of $374,000 compared with the FY 1990 appropriation. No new positions are sought. Of the increase sought, $286,000, or 76 percent, is the result of inflation: $146,000 in mandated pay increases; and $150,000 in fellowship, research assistant, book and journal, and office space, offset by a reduction of $10,000 in office equipment costs. The balance of $88,000, or 24 percent, is designated for one of the Center's main forms of outreach, its publications program, which has greatly increased its scope since it was first established in 1987.

The Center is not seeking an additional increment for the Endowment Challenge Fund in FY 1991.

The following tables display funding estimates and appropriation requests for FY 1991.

SALARIES AND EXPENSES
Funding Estimates and Appropriation Request
(dollars in thousands)

	FY 1989 Appropriation		FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1991 Proposed		FY 1991 over FY 1990		
	Work Years	Amount	Work Years	Amount	Work Years	Amount	Program Work Years	Amount	Mandated Pay Amount
Fellowship Program	—	$1,382	—	$1,549	—	$1,620	—	71	--
Scholar Support	8	295	8	300	8	373	—	60	13
Public Service	21	1,059	21	1,109	21	1,197	—	--	88
General Administration	9	741	9	762	9	791	—	<10>	39
Smithsonian Fee	—	75	—	75	—	75	—	—	--
Conf. Planning/ Outreach	2	568	2	573	2	667	—	88	6
Space	—	120	—	332	—	351	—	19	--
TOTAL	40	$4,240	40	$4,700*	40	$5,074	—	$228	$146

* An amount of $62,000, representing the FY 1990 sequestration, was deducted from the FY 1990 appropriation. This budget request assumes full restoration of the $62,000 in FY 1991.

ENDOWMENT CHALLENGE FUND
(dollars in thousands)

FY 1986 Approp.	FY 1987 Approp.	FY 1988 Approp.	FY 1989 Approp.	FY 1990 Approp.	FY 1991 Proposed
$994	—	—	$300	—	—

FY 1991 Requested Adjustments

For FY 1991, the Center requests the following increases, compared with the FY 1990 appropriation:

Mandated Pay (+$146,000): to fund pay increases mandated by law, consisting of annualization of the balance of the January, 1989 pay raise not covered in the Center's FY 1990 appropriation ($26,000); annualization of the January 1990 pay raise ($60,000); mandated within-grade increases and career ladder promotions ($26,000); and one-half of the cost of the 3.5 percent pay raise (estimated by the Office of Management and Budget) in January, 1991 ($34,000).

Fellowships (+$71,000): to increase the average annual stipend from $44,260 to $46,290, providing for a cost of living raise and for higher travel and health benefits costs.

Research Assistants (+$30,000): to increase by one-quarter (from $2.00 to $2.50) the hourly rate paid to research assistants for scholars.

Library (+$30,000): to meet the cumulative inflation in the cost of books and journal subscriptions ($25,000), and to permit bibliographic searches using commercially available data bases to enable Fellows to obtain lists of recent articles in their fields ($5,000).

Administration (-$10,000): to recognize the lower costs associated with the computer replacement program. (We are proposing to reprogram these funds to the Fellowship Program to pay increased travel and health benefits expenses.)

Publishing Program (+$88,000): to provide for additional contractual services and other support for the Center's expanding book publishing program.

Space (+$19,000): to meet the automatic rent adjustment keyed to the Consumer Price Index, as specified in the Center's commercial office space lease at 370 L'Enfant Promenade.

I FELLOWSHIP PROGRAM

FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Proposed	Proposed Increase
$1,382,000	$1,549,000	$1,620,000	$ 71,000

Fellows and Guest Scholars form the nucleus of scholarly life at the Center. Their publications and ideas serve as the foundation for numerous conferences and meetings and broader forms of scholarly dissemination through Radio Dialogue, Wilson Center Press Books, and The Wilson Quarterly.

The Center's 35 fellowship years are funded in FY 1990 at an average annual stipend of $44,260, with the proviso that the maximum annual stipend would not exceed the GS-14 step-1 level, currently $50,341. (The average stipend amount includes the Center's share of health benefits and Fellows' travel to and from the Center.)

For FY 1991, we are seeking an additional $71,000 for the Fellowship program of which $56,000 would provide for a cost of living increase of 3.6 percent in accordance with the federal salary increase. The balance of $15,000 would offset recent increases in health benefits and travel costs. With the proposed addition of $71,000 the average annual stipend would be $46,290 in FY 1991.

II SCHOLAR SUPPORT

	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Proposed	Proposed Increase Program	Proposed Increase Mandated Pay
Personnel Costs	$241,000	$246,000	$259,000	-0-	$13,000
Library	30,000	30,000	60,000	30,000	-0-
Research Assistants	24,000	24,000	54,000	30,000	-0-
TOTAL	$295,000	$300,000	$373,000	$60,000	$13,000

This category consists of personnel associated with the Center's Library; the receptionist; the coordinator and staff of secretarial services; the books and serials acquisition budget; and the cost of the research assistants.

For FY 1991, an increase of $60,000 is requested for: (A) the Woodrow Wilson Center's Library ($30,000); and (B) Research Assistants ($30,000). A further amount of $13,000 is requested to fund mandated pay increases.

A. Library

The proposed addition of $30,000 would meet two requirements: (1) compensation for severe inflation in the prices of books and journals; and (2) the ability to cover the costs of on-line data-base searches.

Presently, the Center's Library has a total of $30,000 annually for book acquisitions and for journal subscriptions. That amount is only $4,000 more than was available in FY 1974, despite the fact that the cost of books and journal subscriptions have more than doubled in the past 15 years. Nearly all of the base funds are now used for journal subscriptions, making it virtually impossible to acquire monographic and reference materials. More significantly, since the early 1980s the Library has been compelled to gradually reduce its serial and major daily newspaper subscriptions. Examples of cancelled subscription and newspapers are the "National Journal," "Cumulative Book Journal," "Historical Abstracts," and important European newspapers, Frankfurter Allgemeine Zeitung, Neue Zuricher Zeitung, and Corriere de la Sera. To compensate, in part, for the continuing book and journal inflation, an additional amount of $25,000 is requested. Although Fellows and staff are fortunate to have access to the Library of Congress, it is essential to the scholarship being accomplished at the Center (and to avoid overloading the Library of Congress with routine demands) to maintain a basic library of approximately 22,000 volumes and to have current periodicals readily accessible. The Center's Library will continue to evaluate all subscription purchases with a view toward eliminating those that receive limited use.

A further sum of $5,000 is requested to fund the cost of on-line bibliographic searches on commercially available computer networks, such as DIALOG. The service would be available to all Fellows who would thus have the opportunity to obtain bibliographic access to recent articles in their fields. The projected $5,000 is calculated on the assumption of two searches per week, averaging $50.00 each. We believe that on-line searches would contribute enormously to the efficiency and effectiveness of the Fellows' research.

B. Research Assistants

The Woodrow Wilson Center believes strongly in providing research assistance to Fellows during their tenure at the Center. This is done through the internship and work study programs under which research assistants ("interns") are assigned to Fellows and Guest Scholars on a one-to-one basis for approximately 16 hours per week. Scholars benefit enormously from the assistance given by college and graduate students. The relationship with students drawn both from local institutions and from colleges and universities across the country also helps to make the Woodrow Wilson Center known to a young group of potential scholars and teachers.

The internship and work study programs have been severely underfunded for years. Until FY 1987, only $14,000 was provided through the federal appropriation. Since then, an annual amount of $24,000 has been appropriated. Each intern is paid only $2.00 per hour--about half of the minimum wage. Unfortunately, most directly as a result of the small amount that we are able to pay, there has been a noticeable decline in the quality of interns in recent years.

For FY 1991, we are proposing the addition of $30,000 for the internship and work study programs. This amount would enable the Center to pay all interns in federally-funded programs with federal monies ($19,000) and to increase the hourly stipend from $2.00 to $2.50 per hour ($11,000). The Center uses approximately 80 interns each year (25-35 at any one time) for 17 weeks at an average cost of $540 per intern.

III PUBLIC SERVICE

	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Proposed	Proposed Changes Program	Mandated Pay
Personnel Costs	$1,047,000	$1,097,000	$1,185,000	-0-	$88,000
Travel	6,000	6,000	6,000	-0-	-0-
Consultants	6,000	6,000	6,000	-0-	-0-
	$1,059,000	$1,109,000	$1,197,000	-0-	$88,000

This category consists of the personnel costs of: the heads (Directors) of the Center's programs and their principal administrative assistants (except for the East European Program which is funded with Title VIII monies), the staff of the Fellowship Office, and special assistant to the Director.

For FY 1991, an additional sum of $88,000 is requested to fund mandated pay increases.

IV GENERAL ADMINISTRATION

	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Proposed	Proposed Increase Program	Proposed Increase Mandated Pay
Personnel Costs	$410,000	$431,000	$470,000	-0-	$39,000
Travel	10,000	10,000	10,000	-0-	-0-
Other	321,000	321,000	311,000	<10>	-0-
TOTAL	$741,000	$762,000	$791,000	$<10>	$39,000

The General Administration program category consists of the offices of the Director, Deputy Director and the Associate Director for Management and also contains most of the federal non-salary support funds (other than stipends) available to the Center.

For FY 1991, an amount of $39,000 is requested to fund mandated pay increases, and a net reduction of $10,000 is proposed related to lower costs of office equipment.

A total amount of $20,000 can be relinquished in the equipment line, reflecting the fact that computer replacement and upgrading is proceeding at a less costly level than budgeted. Of the $20,000 decrease proposed, a sum of $10,000 has been requested for reprogramming to the Fellowship Program to accommodate higher travel and health benefits costs. The remaining $10,000 is requested to establish a base for an employee training fund within administration.

The Center never has had a base amount for training. In the past, small amounts have been reprogrammed to pay for courses for employees to upgrade their skills. Recognizing the fact that professional growth and development is vital to the Center's efficient administration, especially considering that no staffing growth is requested in this budget, we are proposing to establish an employee training fund of $10,000 in FY 1991 (representing an average cost of $250 per employee). Typical examples of courses in which employees enroll are: advanced word processing; desk top publishing; accounting systems; personnel management; data base management; and electronic spreadsheet preparation.

The following table displays administrative costs by object class for FY 1990 and FY 1991.

	FY 1990 Appropriated	FY 1991 Proposed	Proposed Increase
	(dollars in thousands)		
Personnel	$431	$470	$39
Training	0	10	10
Travel	10	10	0
Rental & Maintenance of Office Machines	29	29	0
Duplicating	15	15	0
Printing	3	3	0
Office Automation	38	38	0
Communications	69	69	0
Shipping	2	2	0
Miscellaneous Services	54	54	0
Supplies	30	30	0
Equipment	81	61	-20
TOTAL	$762	$791	$29

V SMITHSONIAN FEE

	FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Proposed	Proposed Increase
Smithsonian Payment	$75,000	$75,000	$75,000	-0-

This amount is used to reimburse the Smithsonian for various services provided to the Woodrow Wilson Center, including legal, audit, risk management, security, and building management. For FY 1991, an amount of $75,000 is requested for the Smithsonian reimbursement, the same amount appropriated in FY 1990.

VI CONFERENCES AND OTHER OUTREACH

FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Proposed	Proposed Increase Program	Proposed Increase Mandated Pay
$568,000	$573,000	$667,000	$88,000	$6,000

The Woodrow Wilson Center's conference and other outreach activities are designed to benefit large national and international audiences with the results of Center research and scholarship. Three distinct, yet interrelated activities comprise the Center's outreach efforts under this category. These are: (1) major, multi-day conferences; (2) dissemination of ideas through multi-faceted publishing efforts; and (3) dissemination of ideas through radio.

For FY 1991, a sum of $667,000 is requested for the "Conferences and Other Outreach" category, an increase of $94,000 compared with the FY 1990 appropriation. Of the proposed increase, $88,000 is requested to meet the requirements of the Center's publication program, and $6,000 is sought to fund mandated pay costs. The following briefly describes recent accomplishments and plans for major conferences, publications, and radio.

A. Conference Development

The federal appropriations for conference development, beginning in FY 1986, have greatly enhanced the Center's ability to plan and develop significant conferences. It should be noted that all conferences that receive federal monies are also supported with significant amounts of non-appropriated funds.

FY 1989 - FY 1991 Conferences

Approximately 15 major conferences dependent, in part, on the federal conference appropriation are scheduled each year. These conferences span a wide variety of subject matter and touch upon virtually all regions of the world. For example, FY 1989 conferences addressed such subjects as: "Criticisms of American Culture," "East European Peasant Legacy," "The Atlantic Alliance After Forty Years," and "The Future of Privatization in Latin America."

Conferences tentatively scheduled for FY 1990 span an equally broad range. Representative topics are: "Knowledge and Belief in America," "China's Continuing Revolution," "Reform in Russian and Soviet History: Its Meaning and Function," "Economic Development in Latin America," "Anglo-Irish Relations," and "Ethnicity."

Representative conference subjects planned for FY 1991 with the federal conference appropriation are: "The State and Culture," "Sino-Japanese Relations: The 1980s and Beyond," "Islamic Fundamentalism in South Asia," "U.S.-Soviet Security Issues," and "Late Russian Imperial Foreign Policy."

B. Publishing

For FY 1991, a total sum of $304,000 is sought for publishing, an increase of $88,000 compared with the FY 1990 appropriation. The Woodrow Wilson Center's publishing program was established in FY 1987 to fulfill the Center's obligation to disseminate as broadly as possible the results of research being carried out at the Center. The basic thrust of the publishing program is to reach students, scholars, policymakers, statesmen, journalists, professionals, and interested citizens with the uniquely valuable work of the Center.

The Center's book publishing efforts are made through: a) the Woodrow Wilson Center Press, the Center's independent book publishing operation, financed in cooperation with the University Press of America; and b) through an agreement with Cambridge University Press, under which Cambridge publishes up to six Center conference volumes annually on a cost sharing basis.

Works that were published in FY 1989 are:

Religion and Twentieth-Century American Life
The Truman Presidency
American Media: The Wilson Quarterly Reader
Scholars' Guide to Southwest Europe

Among the works scheduled for publication in FY 1990 are:

Origins of Terrorism: Behaviors, World Views, States of Mind
Between the Blocs: Europe's Neutral and Nonaligned States
Portugal: Ancient Country, Young Democracy
Liberty of Expression: The United States and France
Problems of Balkan Security: Southeastern Europe in the 1990s
Reshaping Russian Architecture
The Soviet Union and Marxist Revolutions
The State and Economic Knowledge

In FY 1990, the federal appropriation provided a total sum of $216,000 for the Center's publishing program. Of that amount, $130,000 is being used to support the salaries of the Director of Publications, a secretary, and an editor; $50,000 pays the cost of the new Woodrow Wilson Center Report (a newsletter published five times a year), and $25,000 covers the cost of producing the Center's Annual Report. This leaves a balance of only $11,000 for the remainder of the Program's needs. These needs consist of contractual editing of manuscripts and preparation of manuscripts for press, publications costs of a new volume in the Scholars' Guide Series, and miscellaneous editorial and production costs.

Contractual editing funds totalling $65,000 are needed most urgently. The total cost of producing a volume, for example, with Cambridge University Press (CUP) is approximately $33,000. According to our agreement, CUP defrays $27,000 of this $33,000 for such items as typesetting, plate making, paper, printing, and binding, while the Center provides the remaining $6,000 for covering editorial and manuscript preparation costs. With six titles planned per year, an annual amount of $36,000 for editing, word processing, proofreading, and indexing is needed for the CUP series alone. An additional amount of $29,000 is needed for similar editorial costs to produce titles published under the Center's arrangement with University Press of America (a minimum of six titles are planned for FY 1991). Both Cambridge University Press and University Press of America are responsible for advertising and distribution of books at no cost to the Center. There are a total of 12 volumes currently in the Woodrow Wilson Center Press' production schedule for FY 1990.

Beginning in FY 1989, the Publishing Program took over the Smithsonian Institution's responsibility for publishing the Scholars' Guides, a series of 13 volumes to date. The Scholars' Guides identify, describe, and evaluate resources in the D.C. area that are pertinent to the in-depth study of various regions of the world and other scholarly topics. To cover the cost of publishing one new or revised Scholars' Guide per year, a sum of $18,000 will be required.

A further amount of $16,000 would be used to cover other essential expenses consisting of: fellowship application and publicity materials ($6,000); honoraria for external scholarly reviews of prospective manuscripts ($5,000); and miscellaneous editorial and design costs, including preparation of graphic materials such as maps, line illustrations, and photo duplication ($5,000).

C. Radio Dialogue

Radio Dialogue is a weekly one-half hour radio program that is produced at the Center. Its goals are: (1) to acquaint a national audience with the Center's scholars and with scholarship being done at the Center; (2) to provide a substantive context for the discussion of critical issues; and (3) to serve as an intellectual resource for educational institutions nationwide. Radio Dialogue currently is distributed by the Longhorn Radio Network to its more than 150 member stations. Alternative means of distribution currently are under review. No increase is sought in FY 1991 for Radio Dialogue.

VII SPACE

FY 1989 Appropriation	FY 1990 Appropriation	FY 1991 Proposed	Proposed Increase
$120,000	$332,000	$351,000	$19,000

The Woodrow Wilson Center's lease for 12,650 square feet of office space at 370 L'Enfant Promenade has a base price of $348,000. Occupants of the space are: the Kennan Institute for Advanced Russian Studies; the East European Program; The Wilson Quarterly, the publications program, and the accounting and personnel divisions.

According to the terms of the lease, a prescribed escalation is allowed to offset anticipated higher operating and taxation expenses. We assume that such an increase will be tied to the Consumer Price Increase and that this will total 5.7 percent per year. Thus, for FY 1991, we request an additional sum of $19,000 to cover this unavoidable expense.

ENDOWMENT CHALLENGE FUND

FY 1986 Approp.	FY 1987 Approp.	FY 1988 Approp.	FY 1989 Approp.	FY 1990 Approp.	FY 1991 Proposed
$994,000	-0-	-0-	$300,000	-0-	-0-

To support and encourage the Center's endowment drive, the Congress appropriated sums of $994,000 in FY 1986 and $300,000 in FY 1989. The appropriations make federal endowment funds available when matched on a three-to-one basis by private contributions. The federal impetus is a spur to private contributors, placing the primary burden on private fund-raising, but continuing to emphasize the historic public/private nature of the Center's support.

The FY 1986 Endowment Challenge Fund appropriation has in fact proven to be a crucial incentive to private sector donations and to the success of the Center's endowment drive. The Center succeeded in meeting the FY 1986 challenge, having raised more than $3 million in outside contributions in advance of the September 30, 1988 deadline given in the initial appropriation. The FY 1989 appropriation of an additional $300 thousand allows a two year time frame (until the end of FY 1990) for the match; approximately one-half of the required $900,000 has been raised to date. No federal increment is sought in FY 1991.

WOODROW WILSON INTERNATIONAL CENTER FOR SCHOLARS

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS, FY 1989, FY 1990, AND FY 1991*
(Dollars in Thousands)

	NON-APPROPRIATED FUNDS		APPROPRIATED FUNDS
General Center	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 728	$ 979	$ 2,256
FY 1990 (estimate)	1,243	1,174	2,480
FY 1991 (estimate)	1,348	1,243	2,846
	$ 3,319	$ 3,396	$ 7,582

General Center funds derive from foundation grants, endowment income, and overhead recovery on grants. Expenses consist of: the salaries of six administrative personnel; reimbursement to the Smithsonian Institution for certain administrative services; staff and related expenses of the development office; and conferences and meetings funded from grants.

Kennan Institute	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 679	$ 679	$ 291
FY 1990 (estimate)	550	550	318
FY 1991 (estimate)	480	480	328
	$ 1,709	$ 1,709	$ 937

The major portion of the Kennan Institute's non-appropriated funds derive from an annual State Department Grant under the Soviet and East European Training Act (Title VIII). Title VIII monies pay the salaries of four staff members, stipends for 7 research scholars and 20 short-term scholars, help defray office expenses, and cover, in part, the cost of conference travel. A grant from the Smith Richardson Foundation assists with publications support. Income also is derived from interest on the Kennan Institute's $1.7 million endowment.

*In contrast to prior years when income from grants was shown in the year it was received, income from grants is shown in this presentation in the year it was expended.

Latin American Program	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 97	$ 97	$ 298
FY 1990 (estimate)	133	133	327
FY 1991 (estimate)	102	102	337
	$ 332	332	962

Income is derived from foundation grants and from a working reserve, quasi-endowment fund. The income is used to supplement core federal staff with a program associate and secretary; and to cover a portion of the cost of conferences and other meetings held at the Center. The program's activities center around the themes of international relations, higher education and democracy, public-private sector relations in development policy, and social welfare under an impoverished state.

International Security Studies	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 61	$ 61	$ 305
FY 1990 (estimate)	148	148	332
FY 1991 (estimate)	131	131	342
	$ 340	$ 340	979

Non-appropriated funds are derived from foundation grants. These are used to pay the salaries of a research assistant; and cover, in part, the costs of conferences such as "America's Asian Allies," "Asian Quadrangle" (with the Asia Program), "U.S.-Soviet Security Issues," "North American-South American Security," and "Ethnic Conflict."

Asia Program	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 78	$ 78	$ 309
FY 1990 (estimate)	64	64	336
FY 1991 (estimate)	65	65	346
	$ 207	207	991

Non-appropriated monies derive from two dedicated endowments—one from Japan-related activities and the other from Korean-related activities. Foundation grants are used to support, in part, the costs of conferences and related publications. Examples of conferences that will be supported, in part, with non-appropriated funds support are: "China's Continuing Revolution," "Sino-Japanese Relations," "Comparative Socialism" (joint with the Kennan Institute and the East European Program), and "Islamic Fundamentalism in South Asia."

American Society and Politics	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 16	$ 16	$ 425
FY 1990 (estimate)	74	74	468
FY 1991 (estimate)	23	23	478
	$ 113	$ 113	$ 1,371

Funds are derived from the Exxon Education and Shell Foundations and are used to contribute, in part, to the cost of conferences. These consist of: "Bicentennial of the Bill of Rights," "Knowledge and Belief in America," and "State and Culture."

East European Program	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 311	$ 311	$ 61
FY 1990 (estimate)	334	334	66
FY 1991 (estimate)	346	346	76
	$ 991	$ 991	$ 203

Non-appropriated funds are derived mainly from the Soviet and East European Training Act (Title VIII) from the State Department, and from foundation grants. Examples of scheduled conferences are: "Public Health and the Environmental Crisis," "Ethnic Stereotypes and Self Image in Eastern Europe," and "Arms Reduction and East European Foreign Policies." The Title VIII grant supports stipends for senior and junior scholars; covers the salaries of the program's staff; funds, in part, the cost of conferences and related publications; and provides for office expenses.

West European Program	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 35	$ 35	$ 295
FY 1990 (estimate)	121	121	311
FY 1991 (estimate)	65	65	321
	$ 221	221	927

Funds are derived from several foundation grants. Chief among these are the Ford, Tinker, Exxon, and Mellon Foundations and the Bank of Ireland. Grant monies are used mainly to cover the costs of conferences, such as: "The Global Ramifications of the French Revolution;" "Anglo-Irish Relations and Northern Ireland;" "Ethnicity and Nationalism;" and "Portugal, The U.S. and European Economic Integration;" and seminars and colloquia. Grant monies are used also to pay the salary of a program associate.

Media Studies Project	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 380	$ 380	$ 0
FY 1990 (estimate)	512	512	0
FY 1991 (estimate)	518	518	0
	$ 1,410	$ 1,410	$ 0

The Media Studies Project is funded entirely with non-appropriated foundation grants. Major grants have been received from the following foundations: Bradley, Donner, Ford, Goldsmith, Greentree, J.M., Olin, Scaife, Schumann, Earheart and Smith Richardson. Grant monies are used to pay the salaries of the project's coordinator and program assistant; to fund Media Studies' scholars; provide for all office expenses; and to support a number of conferences. Examples of conferences held in FY 1989 were: "Media Coverage of Black Americans;" and "The Future of News."

Wilson Quarterly	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 1,466	$ 1,678	$ 0
FY 1990 (estimate)	1,476	1,476	0
FY 1991 (estimate)	1,794	1,794	0
	$ 4,736	$ 4,948	$ 0

TOTALS - ALL PROGRAMS	Income	Expenses	Appropriation
FY 1989 (actual)	$ 3,851	$ 4,314	$ 4,240
FY 1990 (estimate)	4,655	4,586	4,638
FY 1991 (estimate)	4,872	4,767	5,074
	$ 13,378	$ 13,667	$ 13,952

ENDOWMENT PRINCIPAL FY 1989
(Dollars in Thousands)

GENERAL CENTER

Carried Forward From FY 1988	$ 4,769
Actual Received During FY 1989	$ 240
Actual Balance End of FY 1989	$ 5,009

KENNAN INSTITUTE

Carried Forward From FY 1988	$ 1,595
Actual Received During FY 1989	$ 144
Actual Balance End of FY 1989	$ 1,739

LATIN AMERICAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1988	$ 364
Actual Received During FY 1989	$ 30
Actual Balance End of FY 1989	$ 394

ASIA PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1988	$ 1,210
Actual Received During FY 1989	$ 11
Actual Balance End of FY 1989	$ 1,221

EAST EUROPEAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1988	$ 13
Actual Received During FY 1989	$ 0
Actual Balance End of FY 1989	$ 13

WEST EUROPEAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1988	$ 4
Actual Received During FY 1989	$ 8
Actual Balance End of FY 1989	$ 12

ENDOWMENT PRINCIPAL FY 1990
(Dollars in Thousands)

GENERAL CENTER

Carried Forward From FY 1989	$ 5,009
Estimated to be Received During FY 1990	$ 960
Estimated Balance End of FY 1990	$ 5,969

KENNAN INSTITUTE

Carried Forward From FY 1989	$ 1,739
Estimated to be Received During FY 1990	$ 250
Estimated Balance End of FY 1990	$ 1,989

LATIN AMERICAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1989	$ 394
Estimated to be Received During FY 1990	$ 0
Estimated Balance End of FY 1990	$ 394

ASIA PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1989	$ 1,221
Estimated to be Received During FY 1990	$ 0
Estimated Balance End of FY 1990	$ 1,221

EAST EUROPEAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1989	$ 13
Estimated to be Received During FY 1990	$ 0
Estimated Balance End of FY 1990	$ 13

WEST EUROPEAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1989	$ 12
Estimated to be Received During FY 1990	$ 3
Estimated Balance End of FY 1990	$ 15

ENDOWMENT PRINCIPAL FY 1991
(Dollars in Thousands)

GENERAL CENTER

Carried Forward From FY 1990	$ 5,969
Estimated to be Received During FY 1991	$ 500*
Estimated Balance End of FY 1991	$ 6,469

KENNAN INSTITUTE

Carried Forward From FY 1990	$ 1,989
Estimated to be Received During FY 1991	$ 250
Estimated Balance End of FY 1991	$ 2,239

LATIN AMERICAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1990	$ 394
Estimated to be Received During FY 1991	$ 0
Estimated Balance End of FY 1991	$ 394

ASIA PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1990	$ 1,221
Estimated to be Received During FY 1991	$ 0
Estimated Balance End of FY 1991	$ 1,221

EAST EUROPEAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1990	$ 13
Estimated to be Received During FY 1991	$ 0
Estimated Balance End of FY 1991	$ 13

WEST EUROPEAN PROGRAM

Carried Forward From FY 1990	$ 15
Estimated to be Received During FY 1991	$ 0
Estimated Balance End of FY 1991	$ 15

* Fundraising for endowment is very difficult to predict. The $500,000 represents an estimate that the Center, its Board of Trustees, and the Board's Endowment Committee might be able to raise in FY 1991.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
APPROPRIATIONS REQUEST
FISCAL YEAR 1991

Submitted to the Congress
January 1990

TABLE OF CONTENTS

I. INTRODUCTION

Support to Cultural Institutions and Artists 1

Arts Education 1

Rural and Multicultural Arts Participation 2

Overview of the Fiscal Year 1991 Budget 3

Grants and Administration 3

Matching Grants 5

Chart: Application/Grant Relationship and Distribution of Funds by Fund Type (Federal Appropriations) 6

II. PROGRAM HIGHLIGHTS

Selected Highlights in the Fields 9

III. ARTS PROGRAMS

Dance 15

Design Arts 21

Expansion Arts 27

Folk Arts 33

Inter-Arts 39

Literature 45

Media Arts 51

Museums 59

Music 67

Opera-Musical Theater 75

Theater 81

Visual Arts 87

Advancement 93

Challenge 97

IV. PARTNERSHIP

Arts In Education 101

Locals 107

States 113

V. POLICY, PLANNING AND RESEARCH 119

VI. ADMINISTRATION

Introduction 125

Analysis of FY 91 Administrative Budget by Cost Categories 129

President's Committee on the Arts and the Humanities 138

Chart: Administrative Budget: Detail of Object Classification 139

Appendix A: Justifiction for Increase in Full-Time Equivalent Staffing 141

VII. MISCELLANEOUS

Breakdown by Funding Category of FY 89 Chairman's Actions 147

Organization Chart 151

Chart: Listing of Permanent Positions 153

Authorized FTE Personnel Summary 155

Chart: Administrative Expenses by Office 157

INTRODUCTION

The National Endowment for the Arts requests $175 million for its Fiscal Year 1991 appropriation: $147 million in Grants and Administration and $28 million in Challenge and Treasury Funds. This budget request assumes no major legislative changes affecting the budget in FY 1990. The request represents a $4.9 million (2.9 percent) increase over the President's FY 90 budget request and a $3.745 million increase (2.2 percent) over the level the appropriation made by Congress in FY 90. Our FY 90 appropriation was below the post-Gramm-Rudman-Hollings target and was therefore not subject to a sequester.

An appropriation at the proposed level will allow us to preserve and promote America's heirtage through advancing several goals. Artistic excellence will be fostered through our grants to organizations, artists, and arts professionals. Increased emphasis will be placed on providing Americans with access to the arts, along with the knowledge and skills needed to participate in and enjoy them. The Endowment will continue to encourage private support and increased funding at the state and local levels through the match required for every grant. This public private partnership in the arts continues to serve as a successful example of how the government and the private sector can work together to bring significant benefits to our society. The leadership reflected in this FY 91 request will ensure that the Endowment remains both responsive to the Nation's art groups and artists, and fulfills its role as a catalyst for even greater creative achievement.

Our FY 91 budget request emphasizes three areas: continued support to our arts institutions and artists, promotion of arts education, and increased multicultural and rural arts services.

Support to Cultural Institutions and Artists

Support to our great cultural institutions and American artists continues to be a priority. In the face of rising costs and an unpredictable philanthropic climate, we must maintain the integrity of these institutions. They play a critical role in allowing us to know our past and to discover our future. We cannot afford to mortgage that future by assuming that these institutions, which we count among our national treasures, can exist without the continued support and encouragement Federal funding provides. Likewise, we must continue to support our nation's individual artists who are at the forefront of our continued progress in the arts.

Arts Education

The nation is concerned, and rightly so, about the quality of our young people's education and whether they will be prepared for the challenges of the future. Many of these challenges will be scientific and technological and we must give our children the tools to deal with them. But we must also teach our children to think, both creatively and sequentially. The arts teach these skills.

In the past, education reforms have focused primarily on math and science, deeming the arts and humanities as frills or as niceties which, while benign, are expendable. The result is likely to produce tradesmen, not thinkers; techicians, not innovators. We believe that America must develop well rounded citizens who possess both skills and creativity.

The arts teach creativity. They challenge the student to think broadly, to attempt the new, and to risk failure. They teach young people to see and hear as well as read and write. The artist's skill is to make order out of chaos, to view the world, in both its challenges and problems, through many perspectives. The arts help children to understand civilization so that they can benefit from our past history, and dare new expression, try various approaches to problem-solving, use intuition as well as reason, and develop the discipline required for serious creative activity, which then can be applied to other areas of study. In short, arts education engages both hemispheres of the brain toward solving the problem at hand. Additionally, in a culturally diverse society such as ours, the arts can generate an understanding of both the core and multiplicity of America's culture.

As a national dialogue on education takes center stage, the Endowment has an important and timely opportunity to influence the course of arts education. We believe that it is essential to pursue modest initia- tives in this area, not just for the cultural literacy of coming generations, but to assure future audiences, artists and thinkers.

Orchestras, opera companies, dance companies and museums often have eliminated or reduced educational programs to use scarce resources for their primary mission. In addition to our regular programs of project and ongoing support, we plan to encourage arts institutions to expand their efforts in providing educational opportunities thereby fostering learning in the arts and improving the daily lives of the people in their communities. These educational efforts, which flow naturally from all arts endeavors, will broaden the appeal of these groups and will "demystify" the arts, making them increasingly accessible to all people.

Rural and Multicultural Arts Participation

In all of its activities, the Endowment is aware that it pursues its mission in a multicultural, ever-changing society. This constitutes a tremendous opportunity for the arts to grow, to interact and to benefit by the richness of our nation's diverse cultures and populations. On the one hand, we must preserve and enlarge the core of our artistic heritage, and on the other hand, we must make Americans more aware of the rich variety of arts in this country. In addition to providing access through our regular program categories, the Endowment will continue to explore special programs and initiatives designed to make Endowment programs more available to rural and multicultural populations.

OVERVIEW OF THE FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET

A. GRANTS AND ADMINISTRATION

1. Grants

Of the requested $147 million for Grants and Administration in FY 91, $125.8 million supports outstanding artistic projects and organizations, fellowships to individual artists, grants to state, local and regional arts organizations and arts education activities. The remaining $21.2 million supports necessary administrative activities as well as our policy, planning and research functions ($0.9 million for the Office of Policy, Planning and Research and $20.3 million for operating accounts).

Specifically, the FY 91 grants budget provides:

a. Continued support for artists and arts organizations of excellence. Funding for the twelve disciplinary programs is slightly above the FY 90 enacted level. Funding at this level will enable these programs to continue to encourage artists and arts organizations of merit, increase access to the arts, preserve the art of the past, and create the art of the future.

b. For the Development and continuation of projects and initiatives which make artistic expression of all kinds accessible. Allocations for large funding categories such as Presenting Organizations (Inter-Arts), Programming in the Arts (Media Arts), Expansion Arts Organizations, Special Exhibitions (Museum), and Presenters/Festivals (Music) remains at or above FY 90 enacted levels. In addition, the Endowment will: continue existing outreach initiatives such as Dance On Tour (supported by Dance, Inter-Arts and States) and the Syndicated Fiction Project (Literature); resume Orchestra Touring to underserved areas (Music); and develop new initiatives such as a major national tour of folk artists (Folk Arts and Inter-Arts); a project to provide funds to small and rural communities to help them address complex design issues (Design Arts); and tours of art exhibitions at low rental rates to small and rural communities (Museum Program).

c. Increased support for arts education. The research undertaken in Toward Civilization, a study done in 1988 in response to a Congressional mandate, suggests a more aggressive role for the Endowment in assisting arts education. An increase of $2.0 million over the FY 90 appropriated level would enable the Endowment to enhance its leadership role in arts education by:

1. Establishing a new category to fund the educational activities of arts organizations already eligible for support under existing Endowment program areas.

2. Increasing funds for State Arts in Education Grants, which support artist residencies and other related activities.

3. Continued assistance to state arts agencies for collaboration with their departments of education to promote the arts as a basic element of education. (Arts in Schools Basic Education Grants).

4. Providing funds to not-for-profit organizations such as arts institutions, educational institutions, and local, state and regional arts agencies for quality projects of national and regional significance which advance arts education.

d. Provide increased support for Advancement grants. The Advancement Program operates on a two-year funding cycle in which organizations may enter the Program only in the year that applications from their respective discipline are being accepted. The first cycle (or group) consisted of organizations from less institutionalized fields (e.g., expansion arts, folk arts and literature). Thirty-six organizations in the first group successfully completed the process leading to an Advancement grant. The second group consists of organizations from more institutionalized fields (e.g., museum, music and theater) and we expect 50 organizations to be awarded Advancement grants. The higher expected completion rate in the second group will create a funding disparity between the cycles unless an adjustment is made. To maintain parity between grantees (and among disciplines) we propose allocating $2.35 million of Treasury funds to the Advancement Program in FY 91, an increase of $350,000 from the FY 90 enacted amount.

2. Administration

Cover increased costs associated with Administration. The Endowment requests $20.3 million in operating administrative funds for FY 91. An increase of $1.7 million, 9.1 percent over our FY 90 appropriation for operating Administrative accounts, is requested as the minimum necessary to manage the agency effectively . This request allows us to: cover increases in personnel compensation, rentals and contractual services over which we have no control; continue to support the integrity of the peer panel process by broadening the representation and duration of panels where appropriate; restore activities such as procurement of ADP and other equipment and staff travel deferred in FY 90; and, increase our authorized level of full-time equivalents to 267.

B. MATCHING GRANTS

The Endowment requests $28.0 million in Matching Grants (Treasury and Challenge funds) to maintain as well as generate new and increased non-federal contributions to the arts.

1. Treasury Funds

The Endowment requests $13.0 million in Treasury funds. Treasury funds are generally matched three to one and usually support larger-scale (and costlier) projects undertaken by organizations and/or institutions; it should be noted that recipients of Treasury funds are also eligible for funding under most of the Endowment's discipline programs. Additionally, Treasury money is used to fund Advancement Grants for groups successfully completing the technical assistance program.

2. Challenge Funds

The Endowment requests $15.0 million to support Challenge III applications. These grants, which are matched on at least a 3-to-1 basis, will be used to support innovative projects to encourage change and growth which is beneficial to the arts and their audiences. A budget at this level will enable us to continue making an estimated 40 grants in FY 91. This request is consistent with our past two years experience with the Challenge III program.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
Fiscal Years 1989-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)	FY 1989					FY 1990					FY 1991				
	APPL	GRANTS	DEFINITE	INDEF	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	DEFINITE	INDEF	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	DEFINITE	INDEF	AMOUNT
Arts in Education	286	111	5,654 a/	0	5,654	181	96	5,600	0	5,600	444	161	7,600	0	7,600
Dance	1,136	358	9,014	500	9,514	1,072	354	8,850	600	9,450	1,035	315	8,750	700	9,450
Design Arts	541	128	4,014	0	4,014	863	131	4,150	0	4,150	1,006	158	4,150	0	4,150
Expansion Arts	442	354	6,389	0 b/	6,389	464	339	6,500	0	6,500	456	340	6,500	0	6,500
Folk Arts	475	183	3,135 c/	0	3,135	541	191	3,300 c/	0	3,300	531	189	3,300	0	3,300
Inter-Arts	703	258	4,340	200	4,540	772	237	4,000	400	4,400	813	262	4,000	450	4,450
Literature	2,243	283	5,061	0	5,061	2,555	284	5,000	0	5,000	2,500	280	5,000	0	5,000
Locals	76	45	2,607	0	2,607	63	33	2,600	0	2,600	91	33	2,600	0	2,600
Media Arts	884	261	11,814	1,200 d/	13,014	929	252	12,000	1,400 e/	13,400	918	247	11,900	1,500 f/	13,400
Museum	1,144	554	11,199	1,200 f/	12,399	1,157	522	11,400	1,400 g/	12,800	1,162	536	11,300	1,500	12,800
Music	1,766	757	12,124	3,500 i/	15,624	1,899	778	12,200	3,700 j/	15,900	1,973	778	12,000	3,900 k/	15,900
Opera-Musical Theater	341	206	4,119	2,400 l/	6,519	322	198	4,200	2,500 m/	6,700	332	298	4,100	2,600 n/	6,700
Theater	779	288	10,732	0	10,732	983	309	10,800	0	10,800	1,016	319	10,800	0	10,800
Visual Arts	6,149	501	6,110	0	6,110	5,882	473	6,100	0	6,100	6,136	380	6,100	0	6,100
Advancement	180	53	1,320 o/	0 p/	1,320	138	88	1,300	2,000 q/	3,300	155	102	1,300	2,350 r/	3,650
Challenge	286	93	270	18,200 s/	18,470	89	39	300	15,150 t/	15,450	131	40	300	15,000 u/	15,300
Subtotal, Program Grants	17,429	4,431	97,903	27,200	125,103	17,890	4,326	98,300	27,150	125,450	18,787	4,328	99,700	28,000	127,700
States	116	101	25,547	0	25,547	112	102	26,000	0	26,000	98	85	26,100	0	26,100
Subtotal, Grants	17,543	4,532	123,450	27,200	150,650	18,002	4,426	124,300	27,150	151,450	18,885	4,413	125,800	28,000	153,800
Policy, Planning & Research	254	72	1,000 v/	0	1,000	313	79	1,000	0	1,000	348	89	900	0	900
Administration	...	...	17,440 w/	0	17,440	...	...	18,850	0	18,850	...	...	20,300	0	20,300
Subtotal, Administration	254	72	18,440	0	18,440	313	79	19,850	0	19,850	348	89	21,200	0	21,200
Total - Applications/Grants	17,797	4,604				18,315	4,505				19,233	4,502			
Unspecified reduction (FY 90)								(45)	n/a	(45)					
Total - Grants and Administration			141,890					144,105					147,000		
Total - Matching Grants				27,200					27,150					28,000	
Grand Total					169,090					171,295					175,000

FOOTNOTES ON FOLLOWING PAGE.

FOOTNOTES TO CHART ON PAGE 6 ($ in thousands)

a/ Excludes $250 of interagency funds (Department of Education).
b/ Excludes $12 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds.
c/ Excludes $1 of gift funds.
d/ Excludes $490 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $765 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
e/ Excludes $765 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds; includes $500 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds carried into FY 91.
f/ Excludes $500 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds; includes $500 of FY 91/92 Treasury funds carried into FY 92.
g/ Excludes $323 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $70 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
h/ Excludes $70 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds.
i/ Excludes $394 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $693 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
j/ Excludes $693 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds; includes $500 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds carried into FY 91.
k/ Excludes $500 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds; includes $500 of FY 91/92 Treasury funds carried into FY 92.
l/ Excludes $84 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $416 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
m/ Excludes $416 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds; includes $250 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds carried into FY 91.
n/ Excludes $250 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds; includes $250 of FY 91/92 Treasury funds carried into FY 92.
o/ Excludes $54 of gift funds.
p/ Excludes $124 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds.
q/ Includes $250 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds carried into FY 91.
r/ Excludes $250 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds; includes $250 of FY 91/92 Treasury funds carried into FY 92.
s/ Excludes $13,403 of FY 88/89 Challenge funds; includes $16,440 of FY 89/90 Challenge funds carried into FY 90.
t/ Excludes $16,440 of FY 89/90 Challenge funds; includes $2,500 of FY 90/91 Challenge funds carried into FY 91.
u/ Excludes $2,500 of FY 90/91 Challenge funds; includes $2,500 of FY 91/92 Challenge funds carried into FY 92.
v/ Includes $35 of lapsed OPPR Administrative funds.

SELECTED HIGHLIGHTS IN THE FIELDS

In FY 89, the Endowment awarded more than 3,700 grants to arts organizations and agencies and more than 880 fellowships and individual grants to artists and arts professionals. In addition, many artists and arts organizations benefited from the Endowment's vital and continuing partnership with the state arts agencies and regional arts organizations. In FY 89 the state and regional agencies supported arts programming in communities throughout the country with the help of $26 million provided through the States Program and more than $4.3 million in project support from other Endowment Programs.

Recent grant examples illustrating activity undertaken in each funding category are included in this budget submission in the Program, Partnership and Policy and Planning tabs. In addition, in order to give a sense of arts activities the Endowment was involved in over the last year, highlights for our various program areas are described below.

Dance

One of the country's most individual and original art forms, tap dancing, is experiencing a surge of artistic renewal and public awareness shedding new appreciation on this great dance idiom. A number of extraordinary tap events in the past year, many of them supported by the Endowment, brought together veteran artists, students, and the general public nationwide. Festivals in Colorado, California, Oregon, Massachusetts, and Texas featured performances, master classes and symposia with major artists and brought to light dancers all across the United States whom are living repositories of tap history and lore. The premiere of the motion picture, Tap; the Dance in America program, Gregory Hine's Tap Dance in America, on public television, and the long-running Broadway musical, Black and Blue, have provided broad public exposure both to many of our leading veteran tap artists and to a younger generation coming up. Recognition by the Congress and the President in designating May 25, 1990 National Tap Dance Day, signifies serious and sustained attention to this under-appreciated original American art. Today, veteran performers such as Charles "Honi" Coles and Eddie Brown are choreographing anew for younger generations of dancers and passing along this unique American dance idiom through their incomparable artistry and teaching.

Design Arts

Through two important exhibitions that began touring the United States in 1989, the corporate world and general public gained a new awareness of the importance of product design. Both of these exhibitions were funded by the Endowment's Design Arts Program. The first, "Design Excellence", initiated by The Science Place in Dallas, travels to Charlotte, Chicago, San Francisco, Tampa and other locations, reaching over a million children and their parents. The second, the "Triad Process of Design" exhibition based on 15 successful product design case studies, explains the importance of design to business school students and corporate executives; it traveled to Boston, Chicago, New York and other cities. These are the first state-of-the-art design shows to travel the nation since the 1950s.

Expansion Arts

Endowment support assisted the first National Black Theatre Festival (NBTF) which was held in August 1989 in Winston-Salem, NC. The NBTF brought together a brilliant panoply of African-American playwrights, directors, actors, and scholars who presented before audiences from all over the country. The roster of participants included representatives of the for-profit and non-profit theater, which such established names as Cicely Tyson, Roscoe Lee Browne and August Wilson in dialogue with rising forces such as Marsha Jackson and Rick Khan. Seventeen companies performed work describing a broad range of theater styles including children's theater, musical theater, and performance art as well as narrative drama. The performances were supplemented by scholarly papers, and the audiences joined in lively discussion. As a by-product of the conference, many companies received bookings and playwrights were able to find producers. Participants came from all parts of the country and consistently played to full houses.

Folk Arts

During 1989, the National Council for the Traditional Arts extended the range of Folk Arts touring by taking its highly successful "Masters of the Folk Violin" to a series of university and community auditoriums in California, Oregon and Washington state. The folk arts have historically toured in small towns and rural areas. The folk violin tour, however, was an attempt to interest the mainline presenters network in art forms less familiar to them, while at the same time providing folk artists with upscale fees and touring options that have not generally been available to them. The tour was highly successful, mounting 15 concerts in three weeks, 13 of which were sell- outs. Press and audience reaction was unfailingly enthusiastic. The hoped- for interest of west-coast presenters was stimulated and a California presenters' consortium has already been in touch with the Folk Arts Program to discuss ideas for expanded folk arts touring under their sponsorship.

Inter-Arts

In December 1989, the National Task Force on Presenting and Touring, convened by the Rockefeller Foundation, the Pew Charitable Trusts, and the National Endowment for the Arts issued their final report entitled, "An American Dialogue." The Task Force was created in 1987, in response to the significant growth and evolution which has occurred in the presenting field over the last fifteen years. This growth has occurred without adequate discussion and coordination and as a result, there has been too little understanding of the contributions presenters can make in advancing the arts in their communities and across the nation. The work of the Task Force represented the largest, most comprehensive, and diverse national forum of its kind. More than 125 presenters, artists, managers, funders, and representatives of state and local arts agencies and regional organizations assembled in small groups for eight meetings in various locations around the country. Their work created, for the first time, a network of communication among people and organizations who represent diverse artforms and a range of cultural, racial and aesthetic perspectives. Because of the varied nature of the Task Force, many people - both within and outside of the group - became newly aware of one another. Many of the bonds that were formed during this process promise opportunities for additional discussions, collaborations, projects, programs and works of art.

Literature

With the publication of the Return of the River of No Return, the town of Salmon, ID, experienced the satisfaction of authorship. The book contains hundreds of poems written by the students of Salmon, from first-graders to high school seniors. The book and the poems were the result of a year-long Endowment residency by two gifted poet-teachers, Jack Collom and Sheryl Noethe (who also received a 1990 Fellowship in Creative Writing). The project was undertaken by the Teachers and Writers Collaborative in New York City which has long been one of the most dynamic organizations devoted to the teaching of literature. In addition to managing Poets-in-the-Schools programs in New York, the Teachers and Writers Collaborative has conducted an extensive publishing program to keep educators and writers across the country informed of new approaches and techniques for engaging young people in literary activity. In the small town of Salmon, the whole town of 3,000 was engaged in the project; at the year-end poetry recitation, the school auditorium was filled to overflowing, and hundreds of parents stood in the corridors and halls to listen to the children read their work. An eighth-grader, Jason Adams, made this contribution to Return of the River of No Return

P eople coming
O ver
E very little mountain pass
T rying to
S lip past the border.

Media

In April 1989, the third volume of the Endowment supported AFI Catalog of Feature Films listing all feature films (decade-by-decade) made between 1911 and 1920 was published after six years in preparation. The "Teens" volume covers an era in which film underwent radical changes in production, financing, and public response. Feature length films became common, cinematic language was invented and clarified, the star system began, Griffith and de Mille become household names, and the studio system was put firmly in place. Film production shifted from the East Coast to a small southern California town, Hollywood. Films of the decade reflect the social, political, and economic convulsions of the period, particularly those wrought by World War I. The invaluable data of the "Teens" volume can be studied from several points of view: the growth of the studio system, the development of stars, directors, and producers, the taxonomy of subjects and film genres, the effects of social change, the evolution of the mythologies of popular culture, the translation of the literary heritage into the moving image. The two previous volumes cover the twenties (published 1971) and sixties (published 1976). Research is well along on the thirties and on the pre-teen era. These volumes will eventually catalogue every feature, short and newsreel produced by the American film industry since 1893.

Museums

In mid-November 1989, the Newark Museum in Newark, New Jersey, celebrated the opening of its renovated galleries, completing a four-year, $20,000,000 renovation and expansion project. The distinguished architect Michael Graves took four discrete buildings comprising the Museum's physical plant and integrated them into a coherent whole, notable not only for the beauty of the new interior detailing but the effectiveness with which the Museum's multi-facted activities are now served. The exhibition space was doubled and new storage facilities and an Education Wing created. The new galleries featured the Museum's outstanding collection of Tibetan and Asian material and allowed for the reinstallation of its important collections of American paintings, sculpture, and decorative arts and the arts of Africa, the Americas and the ancient world. The Museum attracts some 350,000 visitors a year as a result of its active programming and educational activities and is a key component in the revitalization of downtown Newark.

Music

Chamber Music is perhaps one of the fastest growing areas in the music field. Contributing to this growth is Early Music America, Inc. (EMA), a service organization founded in 1985. Described as the "historically informed performance field", membership in 1988 had grown to 1,313 individuals and organizations. In the same year, EMA received grants from the Josephine Bay and C. Michael Park Foundation, the Robert Sterling Clark Foundation, as well as the Arts Endowment. Approaching the end of the century, "The Early Music Movement" has brought about a revival of music from the Middle Ages, Renaissance, and early baroque in living performances for today's audience, as well as a rethinking of approaches to performance of music from the past and historically informed performance of standard repertory by professional musicians. In 1989, EMA, Inc. received a grant to support a technical assistance program and the publications of _Historical Performance: Journal of Early Music America_, _Register of Early Music in America_, and _Practical Guide to Historical Performance -- The Renaissance_.

Opera

In August 1989, Opera Delaware began testing a new textbook series, _Adventures in Music and Words_ with selected public schools in Wilmington. As a first step, Opera Delaware sponsored a training program for teachers in the application of the textbooks in their own classrooms. The series, created by Opera America, a national association of professional opera companies, with the support of the Endowment, is written for students from kindergarten through senior high school grades. It includes training in writing, producing and performing original opera. The textbook series, which has been developed over a period of five years by prominent educators, provides material for students to improve their creative and analytical powers in a variety of subjects associated with opera: literature, creative writing, music, dance, set and costume design/building and administration. The approach is two-fold: Listen and Discover, which emphasizes musical and literary analysis, and Create and Produce, which focuses on artistic skills development.

Theater

In 1989, three of Broadway's most acclaimed productions were works that had been developed at the Seattle Repertory Theatre (Seattle, WA): Largely New York by Bill Irwin, Eastern Standard by Richard Greenberg and the most acclaimed new American play of 1989, Wendy Wasserstein's The Heidi Chronicles, which garnered the Pulitzer Prize, Drama Desk and Antoinette Perry (Tony) awards, among others. In this play, Ms. Wasserstein, who received an Endowment fellowship in 1983, examines a contemporary woman's coming of age, as she copes with shifting social and personal dilemmas. The inaugural production of the play was directed in Seattle by the Rep's Artistic Director, Dan Sullivan. This collaboration of director and playwright continued off-Broadway at Playwrights Horizons in New York, NY, and in the current Broadway production. Seattle Rep productions are all notable examples of the value of long-term collaborations between playwrights and directors in sustained workshop/production settings, which are assisted through Endowment grants.

Visual Arts

The 150th Anniversary of the invention of photography was celebrated during 1989. To acknowledge this major landmark in the history of the visual arts, museums and photography organizations worldwide presented special exhibitions, publications, and symposia. Examples of events include "The Art of Photography: 1839-1989" at the Museum of Fine Arts in Houston, "The Photography of Invention" at the National Museum of American Art Washington, and "Picturing California: A Century of Photographic Genius" at the Oakland Museum. A number of exhibitions traveled nationally and internationally and were accompanied by scholarly catalogues and lecture series. In addition, many artist-run spaces and university galleries funded by the Visual Arts Program participated in the nationwide effort to increase public awareness and understanding of a method of image-making which has had a profound impact not only on the arts but on society worldwide.

Arts in Education

In 1989, the state of South Carolina enacted "Target 2000", a general education reform act which includes a section on arts education. This legislation, the first of its kind, supports the development of discipline-based curricula in the visual arts, music, dance, and drama and mandates pilot testing of these curricula, as well as in-service training for arts specialists and classroom teachers. It also instructs the state's department of education to work with the South Carolina Arts Commission in these efforts; instructs the General Assembly to phase in funding for the program; and instructs the Joint Legislative Committee on Formula Funding to study and recommend by the end of 1990 whether or not arts education should be given a weighting in the Education Finance Act, which would provide a specific dollar allocation per pupil for arts education. Awareness about the need for substantive arts education has been increased in South Carolina since 1987 as a result of the Endowment's support to the South Carolina State Arts Commission through the Arts In schools Basic Education Grant category.

Locals

In FY 1989 the Locals Program and the Office for Special Constituencies developed a special, one-time initiative for model demonstration projects which encourage greater access to arts activities for older and disabled and/or older people in arts programming. Local arts agencies were encouraged to demonstrate leadership by generating incentives and supporting programs to implement change. They were especially encouraged to identify and seek partnerships with existing community organizations representing disabled and/or older people. Twenty-two applications were received from 18 states. Seven projects in six states were funded with $90,000 of Locals Program and $10,000 of Special Constituencies funds. These projects will serve as models for other local arts agencies, and the Office for Special Constituencies will disseminate project results to arts groups nationwide.

States Program

Fiscal Year 1989 marked the first round of a new undertaking for the States Program: a Rural Special Projects Initiative that provides competitive support for the development and implementation of innovative delivery systems of the arts to rural populations.

State and regional arts agencies responded enthusiastically to the initiative. With only a three-month lead time, 19 applications totaling $373,000 were submitted, underscoring that they share with the Endowment a strong commitment to addressing this important issue. The States Program advisory panel was able to fund seven of the proposals for a total of $145,900.

The funded projects address rural arts support through a wide variety of activities, including community residencies in Vermont, a planning process for rural arts in South Carolina, workshops in New York on the design, development and maintenance of rural cultural facilities, a rural arts circuit rider in Kansas, consultancies and advancement support in Minnesota, touring arts teams in South Dakota, and a tribal museum assessment program in Arizona.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

DANCE PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
CHOREOGRAPHERS' FELLOWSHIPS	632	85	814	572	91	800	500	55	900
DANCE COMPANY GRANTS	216	120	6,035	216	125	6,200	225	120	6,100
DANCE/FILM/VIDEO	81	16	200	69	10	200	80	10	200
GENERAL SERVICES TO THE FIELD	86	48	631	90	53	550	95	50	600
GRANTS TO DANCE PRESENTERS	108	76	1,049	115	65	1,100	120	65	1,050
SPECIAL PROJECTS a/	13	13	785	10	10	600	15	15	600
PROGRAM TOTAL	1,136	358	9,514	1,072	354	9,450	1,035	315	9,450

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 88-90
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
CHOREOGRAPHERS' FELLOWSHIPS	814	0	814	800	0	800	900	0	900
DANCE COMPANY GRANTS	5,535	500	6,035	5,600	600	6,200	5,400	700	6,100
DANCE/FILM/VIDEO	200	0	200	200	0	200	200	0	200
GENERAL SERVICES TO THE FIELD	631	0	631	550	0	550	600	0	600
GRANTS TO DANCE PRESENTERS	1,049	0	1,049	1,100	0	1,100	1,050	0	1,050
SPECIAL PROJECTS a/	785	0	785	600	0	600	600	0	600
PROGRAM TOTAL	9,014	500	9,514	8,850	600	9,450	8,750	700	9,450

a/ Includes support for a cooperative effort among Dance, Inter-Arts, and State Programs to address presenting/touring needs.

DANCE

Purpose

The Dance Program supports the highest quality and creativity in dance. It helps make a broad range of exemplary dance available nationwide through grants to dance companies, choreographers, the presentation and touring of dance companies and artists, documentation and film/video projects, service organizations, and special projects.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

The dance field continues to push the boundaries of artistic expression even as it struggles to safeguard its vanishing heritage. While master choreographers of uncommon brilliance continue to blaze the path-breaking progression of 20th-century American dance, the art continues to be enriched by younger choreographers probing dance's possibilities. Landmark restorations of masterworks and retrospectives reveal context and history for new generations of audiences and artists. Contemporary revitalizations of the myriad dance forms and traditions harbored in America are contributing depth, dimension and cultural understanding with a rapidity and diversity unique to this country. Dedication to new work, and the difficulty and expense of successfully documenting past work, means that much dance exists only in the mind and memory of its creator. The death in the past few years of seminal figures such as George Balanchine, Antony Tudor, and most recently Alvin Ailey, heighten the urgency to enhance appreciation of the art and to document and preserve our dance heritage as a legacy for future generations.

The dance world is small and labor intensive, and the development of artists is a long-term, costly process. Continuity, succession, replenishment and repertory enrichment have become issues of increased concern as major originating artists pass from the scene and repertory companies throughout the country experience unprecedented growth, creating an ever expanding need for substantial new repertory.

Dance is made by individual artists with brief career prospects, and except for a handful of major companies, the field has not fostered stable institutions. The "traditional" modern dance model is a company built around a single choreographer, whose financial state is invariably precarious.

The need to nurture, sustain and replenish our choreographic resources remains a high priority. Choreographers, the creative core of the art form, face mounting obstacles to developing their artistry. Freedom to risk and perhaps fail has become increasingly costly, and the time required to learn, rehearse and polish performances is often prohibitively expensive. Rehearsal time has been shrinking in relation to the total weeks of performance in a season.

Time to make dances, money to produce them, and places and opportunities to work remain pressing needs. The attrition of affordable spaces in which dancers can train, create, rehearse, perform and live is imperiling the future of dance in our urban centers, which have provided needed resources and inspiration for America's dance artists. Performance opportunities at home and on tour are critical to the field and need to be enhanced. Dance company budgets rose 23 percent in real terms between FY 84 and FY 86 while the number of performances increased by only 9 percent. Rising production costs, the pressure to fill seats and satisfy sponsors can jeopardize artistic integrity. Companies and presenters are seeking new ways of enriching repertories, stretching dancers' artistry, stimulating choreographic invention, and building audiences. New work for media and extended residencies can develop further performance outlets and enrich public understanding of the art.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

In responding to the key field issues in the field, the Dance Program's primary commitment continues to be the direct support of professional artists and artistic entities, the field's lifeblood.

1. Choreographers' Fellowships

This category provides fellowship support to help buy creative time for choreographers at many different stages and levels, working in a full range of dance idioms. Beginning in FY 91, most fellowships will be for two years ($20,000), a few will be for three years ($45,000), and the remainder for one year ($7,000). Some of these fellowships effectively support artists who have not institutionalized as dance companies to engage dancers to perform their choreography. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 55 grants out of 500 applications aggregating $900,000 vs. 91 grants out of 572 applications aggregating $800,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, Raoul Trujillo of New York City was awarded a $7,000 fellowship. Mr. Trujillo, a native American from New Mexico, performed with the Nikolais Dance Theatre for several years before leaving to pursue his own choreography based on traditional dances of the Indian people. He was a co-artistic director of the American Indian Dance Theatre, a major new performing ensemble which has been touring throughout the United States and overseas. Mr. Trujillo is researching the Ghost Dance (still practiced on rare occasions by the Cree and Mandan-Hidatsa) and will choreograph a work based on it.

2. Dance Company Grants

This category assists companies of widely differing styles, sizes, stages of evolution, longevity, and budgets. Endowment grants support dance companies' seasons including creative work, rehearsal time, commissions, home seasons, touring, administrative projects and educational/outreach activities. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 120 grants out of 225 applications aggregating $6,100,000 vs. 125 grants out of 216 applications aggregating $6,200,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, the Trisha Brown Company of New York City received a grant of $132,200 to support domestic touring, rehearsal time, and the development of a new work, "Astral Convertible." This new work was a collaborative effort with Robert Rauschenberg and Richard Landry; it was shown as a work-in-progress when the company performed in Moscow in February 1989 in conjunction with Rauschenberg's Overseas Cultural Interchange Exhibition. It received its U.S. premiere at New York's City Center in March 1989 and has subsequently been performed at the Montpellier Festival in France, Spoleto/USA in Charleston, SC, Virginia Museum of Contemporary Art, Festival de Italica, Festival de la Ville Medicis, and the Festival Cagliari.

3. Dance/Film/Video

This category supports creative explorations in dance and media, creative documentation and significant preservation of dance for future generations. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 10 grants out of 80 applications aggregating $200,000 vs. 10 grants out of 69 applications aggregating $200,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, the Margaret Jenkins Dance Company of San Francisco, CA, received a grant of $18,000 to support "Rollback," a dance/video collaboration between choreographer Margaret Jenkins and videographer/visual artist Bruce Nauman. The choreography for this project had its premiere in April 1988 at the Kimo Theater in Albuquerque, NM. A film created from this work was featured in a 30-minute broadcast, "Two by Margaret Jenkins," that was broadcast nationally in 1989.

4. General Services to the Field

Grants provided in this category assist organizations and individuals providing services to the dance field, including provision of performance and rehearsal space, assistance with financial and management matters, communication within the dance world and public awareness of dance, and notation, archival and research services. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 50 grants out of 95 applications aggregating $600,000 vs. 53 grants out of 90 applications aggregating $550,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 90, the New Dance Theatre in Denver, CO, received a grant of $4,600 to support the Third International Conference on Black Dance Companies in January 1990. Designed to build a network to help companies reach their artistic and administrative goals, increase the visibility of black dance companies and ensure the continued vitality of black dance in America, the conference will look at the history of black dance and develop agendas for the 1990s and beyond. Funds will help support the transportation, lodging and honorariums for 32 key dance artists, panelists, administrators and educators.

5. Grants to Dance Presenters

This category is designed to assist dance presenters nationwide with fee support for artists and associated costs. The growing creative leadership of presenters and the increasing communication between the dance and presenting fields are having a beneficial effect on the depth and breadth of dance programming throughout the country. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 65 grants out of 120 applications aggregating $1,050,000 vs. 65 grants out of 115 applications aggregating $1,100,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, the Kansas City Friends of Alvin Ailey in Kansas City, MO, received a grant of $4,800 to support one season of a unique long-term collaborative venture with the Alvin Ailey American Dance Theater. The project entailed a lengthy company residency, including performances and extensive community activities, and the commissioning of a new work, Opus McShann, inspired by the great Kansas City jazz artist, Jay McShann. Residency activities, including lecture-demonstrations in schools, community centers, housing projects, prisons, and workshops for the elderly and disabled, as well as master classes and open rehearsals, complemented the public performances in engaging diverse new audiences for dance, promoting intercultural understanding through dance, and integrating one of America's foremost dance companies into an important and supportive home-away-from-home.

6. Special Projects

This category supports special initiatives such as the exciting new Dance On Tour effort, jointly funded with the Inter-Arts and States Programs, as well as other unique projects which could serve as prototypes for the dance field. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 15 grants out of 15 applications aggregating $600,000 vs. 10 grants out of 10 applications aggregating $600,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a $50,000 grant was awarded to the the Cunningham Dance Foundation in New York City to support the preservation of Merce Cunningham's art for the future through a "living archive." This grant allows the Foundation to start cataloging materials in its possession including: film and videotapes, Mr. Cunningham's choreographic notes, programs of performances, press clippings, archival photographs, slides, sound recordings, original designs for decor and costumes, etc. The Foundation will also regularize the current documentation of Cunningham work and undertake a planning process that will lay the groundwork for a long-range and unified preservation agenda. A guide will be produced at the end of the grant that will assist other companies in developing similar projects and map the road to achieving a coherent archive that will both preserve work and serve artists.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

DESIGN ARTS PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
DESIGN ADVANCEMENT	459	95	2,634	740	100	2,350	880	117	2,600
DESIGN FELLOWSHIPS	60	15	334	66	11	280	60	9	150
DESIGN INITIATIVES	13	13	924	25	14	1,370	34	24	1,250
GRANTS TO STATE, LOCAL & REGIONAL ARTS AGENCIES a/	9	5	122	12	6	150	30	8	150
PROGRAM TOTAL	541	128	4,014	843	131	4,150	1,004	158	4,150

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
DESIGN ADVANCEMENT	2,634	0	2,634	2,350	0	2,350	2,600	0	2,600
DESIGN FELLOWSHIPS	334	0	334	280	0	280	150	0	150
DESIGN INITIATIVES	924	0	924	1,370	0	1,370	1,250	0	1,250
GRANTS TO STATE, LOCAL & REGIONAL ARTS AGENCIES a/	122	0	122	150	0	150	150	0	150
PROGRAM TOTAL	4,014	0	4,014	4,150	0	4,150	4,150	0	4,150

a/ Formerly Grants to State and Regional Arts Agencies.

DESIGN ARTS

Purpose

The Design Arts Program supports excellence in the design of cities and towns, buildings and landscapes, and in graphics, interiors and products. It funds projects that create design awareness, produce new designs, develop design talent, and otherwise improve the practices and techniques that create quality in American design.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

In the last decade the public has become increasingly aware of design and its effect on our nation. The benefits of good design are more appreciated, and the costs of poor design -- aesthetic, social, and economic -- are better understood. Americans seek quality and vitality in cities, products that work, buildings that inspire, graphic design that informs, landscapes that preserve our heritage, and workplace interiors that promote satisfaction and efficiency. The challenge is to translate rising enthusiasm for design into better understanding and support for design excellence.

It is usually the lack of design quality that draws public criticism; suburban sprawl, ruined landscapes and poor product design get the most attention. Design excellence -- either in the private or public realm -- seldom receives recognition. Since the need to improve design in both urban and rural settings is so great, it is clear that attention to design is vital, not only in making our towns and cities better places to live and work, but in preserving the best that has come before us as well.

High quality design is a critical resource. Unlike other art forms, it is one that we have no choice but to live with; our cities, our roads, our vistas, even the products we buy and the packages in which they are sold, are all the result of a design process. Yet many decision makers who control design in the public and private sectors are unaware of the benefits of working closely with design professionals. Federal, state, and local governments -- the largest producers and clients of design -- often fail to pay sufficient attention to design quality and the importance of designed amenities.

In the field of industrial design, the trade deficit is evidence enough of the economic repercussions of American design's failure to compete in the international marketplace. To restore our competitive edge, we must capitalize on our native design talent and improve the efficiency, production, and aesthetics of products manufactured in this country.

Design is a widely dispersed, noninstitutional field served by few nonprofit organizations and a weak support system. Designers require assistance to address public demand for more considerate, user-friendly environments and products. The education of U.S. designers is often below standards of Asia and Europe; both undergraduate and graduate design curricula must be improved. Finally, the users of design services -- public officials and corporate executives -- need to have a better understanding of design, and learn to employ America's resource of talented designers in more productive ways.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

The Design Arts Program promotes excellence in the various disciplines that constitute the design arts: architecture; landscape architecture; urban design and planning; historic preservation; graphic design; interior design; and industrial design. The Program fulfills its mandate in two ways: by supporting projects in the field through grants and fellowships, and by funding issues of concern through leadership initiatives.

The Program awards grants and fellowships in these categories:

1. Design Advancement

This is the core funding category through which the Program supports project grants that advance design through planning, practice, research, theory, and media. Design Advancement grants also fund projects that expand and educate audiences for design and users of design services. Organizations and individuals within the design fields are eligible for funding within this category. In response to activity in the field, two new subcategories within Design Advancement have been created:

- To help small and rural towns solve local design problems, Project Grants for Rural and Small Communities support design projects in towns outside Standard Metropolitan Statistical Areas and with populations of less than 50,000.
- To support work that seeks to resolve current design problems by challenging the status quo, Individual Grants for Design Innovation are available for projects seeking new solutions for design problems.

In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 117 grants out of 880 applications aggregating $2,600,000 vs. 100 grants out of 740 applications aggregating $2,350,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Design Advancement/Organizations: In FY 89, a grant of $19,200 was awarded to the City of Kokomo, IN (population 88,000), to produce a master plan for the design of the Wildcat Creek Reservoir Park. The grant enabled the city to hire a design team composed of engineers, landscape architects, and environmental planners; they designed a park with community access for hiking, boating, fishing, and educational programs retaining as much of the natural landscape as possible. Planning produced drawings and site specifications for boat launches, trails, and fishing piers accessible to the handicapped that were sensitive to the wilderness areas. The design process supported by this grant enhanced the city's ability to obtain a grant for implementation from the Indiana Waters Program.

Example - Design Advancement/Individuals: In FY 88, a grant of $10,000 was awarded to Charlene Browne of Blacksburg, VA, to evaluate outdoor environments designed for the elderly. As the fastest growing segment of the United States, the elderly population is becoming an increasingly influential one in shaping the dialogue of design policy. Retirement communities designed to meet their specialized needs have proliferated; evaluation has concentrated on interior living spaces, but outdoor environments have been neglected. A landscape architect and anthropologist, Ms. Browne is investigating the relationship between social and environmental design factors to determine how to design outdoor environments that contribute to the elderly's health and happiness. Information developed as a result of this grant will enable designers to create whole communities for the aging that provide exterior as well as interior environments sympathetic to their needs.

2. Design Fellowships

The Design Arts Program has recently reassessed its fellowship support subcategories and plans to restructure them for FY 91. USA Fellowships will expand to include promising designers as well as those in mid-career. Organizations awarding design fellowships will be eligible under Design Advancement/Organizations, and the Distinguished Designers subcategory will be eliminated. Fellowships are offered to design professionals who have either made outstanding contributions to their field or demonstrated potential to do so in the future. Fellowships support independent study and travel within the United States. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 9 grants out of 60 applications aggregating $150,000 vs. 11 grants out of 66 applications aggregating $280,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, Sara Little Turnbull of Takoma, WA, was awarded a $20,000 fellowship. Under the auspices of this fellowship Ms. Turnbull, a renowned educator and industrial designer, organized her life-long collection of information on design and its influences on our culture. This collection illustrates the importance of industrial design to management, marketing, finance, engineering, and manufacturing. Now housed at Stanford University, it is being used to introduce an interdisciplinary approach to teaching design, business, and engineering, and to bring together academia and industry. Ms. Turnbull's work has provided an essential resource to a broad professional and academic community that fosters innovation and insight by connecting the too often isolated fields of design and management.

3. Grants to State, Local and Regional Arts Agencies

Funds assist state, local and regional arts organizations to strengthen existing design programs or establish new ones. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 8 grants out of 30 applications aggregating $150,000 vs. 6 grants out of 12 applications aggregating $150,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a grant of $100,000 was awarded to a consortium of state arts agencies -- the North Carolina Arts Council, the Tennessee Arts Commission, and the South Carolina Arts Commission -- to support a regional technical assistance program for small towns. The program, "Pride in Place: Small Town Image-Building," concentrated on design issues, cultural planning, and economic revitalization using resource teams and follow-up consultancies in a citizen participation process. Through 61 competitive applications, 15 communities were selected to receive guidance from 80 experts in architecture, landscape architecture, urban planning, graphic design, cultural planning, historic preservation, and economic and community development. As a result of the program, permanent partnerships between the state arts agencies, local officials, and the architecture departments at the University of North Carolina, Clemson University, the University of Tennessee, and North Carolina State University have been formed. A videotape of each session was made for distribution, enhancing the program's potential for use as a model in other regions of the country.

4. Design Initiatives

Because the design field has few institutions and since the commercial nature of design sometimes overshadows its artistic basis and limits scholarship, the Design Arts Program undertakes leadership initiatives apart from the grant process. Initiatives are conceived and implemented by the Endowment in direct response to needs in the field; they support communications, education, technical assistance, research and scholarship. They are divided into the following areas:

Public Realm: In rural and urban settings, the goal is to improve the appearance, context, and civility of the built environment. This includes the Mayors' Institute for City Design and the new "Your Town" rural design program.

Corporate Realm: The state of U.S. product design is a national concern. By supporting education, exhibitions and workshops, the goal is to improve its quality. This includes introducing design-based curricula into the nation's business schools.

Federal Realm: Since the federal government spends billions of dollars on construction, publications, and design services, the goal is to improve the quality of its landscapes, interiors, and graphics. This subcategory includes the Presidential Design Awards.

Access and Professional Development: The Design Arts Program maintains a data base on grants to provide access for applicants through an inquiry service and publications. It advocates development of design programs at the state and local levels and provides regional technical assistance.

In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 24 grants out of 34 applications aggregating $1,250,000 vs. 14 grants out of 25 applications aggregating $1,370,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88 and FY 89, a total of $82,000 was awarded to the Design Management Institute in Boston, MA, to mount an exhibit which relates directly to the issue of U.S. trade competitiveness. Titled the Triad Design Project, this grant was matched with an additional $350,000. It was created from 15 design-based examples of successful products and targeted the nation's business schools and corporate executives. The exhibit opened in Boston and then traveled to Chicago, New York, London, Munich, and Amsterdam. An extension of the Triad Project has generated case studies so that design management will be taught at the Harvard Graduate School of Business for the first time in its history. The Financial Times of London called Triad "the best international exhibition ever staged on the process by which products are designed, for it demonstrates that industrial design plays a strategic role far more frequently than is realized by most executives."

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

EXPANSION ARTS PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
EXPANSION ARTS ORGANIZATIONS a/	379	300	4,347	400	300	4,850	400	295	4,800
Additional Forward Funding	...	...	400	...	...	400	...	...	300
SERVICES TO THE FIELD	26	21	400	25	19	400	27	18	350
SPECIAL PROJECTS	37	33	1,242	39	20	850	29	27	1,050
PROGRAM TOTAL	442	354	6,389	464	339	6,500	456	340	6,500

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
EXPANSION ARTS ORGANIZATIONS a/	4,347	0	4,347	4,850	0	4,850	4,800	0	4,800
Additional Forward Funding	400	0	400	400	0	400	300	0	300
SERVICES TO THE FIELD	400	0	400	400	0	400	350	0	350
SPECIAL PROJECTS	1,242	0	1,242	850	0	850	1,050	0	1,050
PROGRAM TOTAL	6,389	0	6,389	6,500	0	6,500	6,500	0	6,500

a/ In FY 89, excludes $12 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds.

EXPANSION ARTS

Purpose

The Expansion Arts Program supports organizations deeply rooted in and reflective of culturally diverse, inner-city, rural or tribal communities. The purpose of the Program is to assist the arts of those communities and assure access by the residents of those communities to art of high quality. The Program supports a variety of projects which help sustain the organizations' artistic and administrative personnel and help them serve audiences and attract support from other public and private sources. The Program also encourages administrative and funding support for the field through grants to service organizations, community foundations and a special regranting program for rural arts organizations through state arts agencies.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Art produced in Hispanic-American, Asian-American, African-American, native American, inner-city and rural communities enriches not only the community in which it is created, but also our national aesthetic. There is a palpable change in American culture itself, as forms of creative expression, traditional and new, which heretofore were esoteric now are becoming commonplace. Within the expansion arts field, this rise in new (to America) culture integrates quite comfortably with the organized expressions that have been established across the country during earlier decades. There are trends in Asian-American and native American art linking ancient classical traditions with new expressions that significantly enlarge the American arts vocabulary.

The changing demography of the United States indicates that there are growing numbers of practitioners of and audiences for such traditional Hispanic forms as conjunto music, flamenco and folklorico dance, and zarzuela operettas, as well as an increase in dance and music based on a variety of African and Asian traditional forms. Houston's Asian-American Festival Association is an excellent illustration of this; in addition to offering a full range of arts activities, it houses several dance companies including the Korean Folk Dance Company and Nusantara Indonesian Dance Group.

The primary base for financial support to expansion arts organizations remains the public sector. Local public support in particular extends beyond mere budgetary subsidy, for it often includes the provision and sometimes maintenance of facilities, as well as the considerable technical assistance that local arts agencies offer. Many state arts agencies have also contributed more to multicultural and rural arts organizations in recent years.

Private funds at significant levels are much more difficult to acquire. Analysis of the FY 88 budgets of Expansion Arts grantees reveals that only six percent of their total operating budgets was contributed by corporations and 11 percent by foundations.

The complexity of grant-seeking and administration in recent years is such that the full-time attention of some of an organization's staff must be devoted to it; this is quite a burden on small and mid-sized organizations. As a result, expansion arts organizations recently have been obliged to spend more money on administration, often at the expense of artistic activities. Funds for administration are difficult to obtain because most funders would prefer their funds to be used toward the artistic product. Management and leadership development are of great concern to the field because multicultural communities
have not produced large numbers of administrators who are devoted to the arts.

Despite these difficult financial conditions, the artists of the expansion arts field continue to create new and exciting work. Organizations within the field are producing, presenting and exhibiting these new works, while maintaining a commitment to the historically important works of the field.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

The Program's guidelines allow flexibility in the way grantees may use the funds awarded. Eligible organizations can apply, through a single application, for support of various artistic and administrative projects that address their needs. Consequently, many expansion arts organizations receive multipurpose grants.

The training of gifted individuals, particularly youth, for careers in the arts is also an important area of program support. This funding is vital because such educational opportunities are meager in culturally diverse, inner-city and rural communities.

Expansion Arts funding is available through three categories: Expansion Arts Organizations, Services to the Field and Special Projects.

1. Expansion Arts Organizations

Funds are provided to support arts organizations deeply rooted in and reflective of a culturally diverse, inner-city, rural or tribal community for performances, exhibitions and professional training. This is the Program's central category, and it accounted for nearly 80 percent of total grants awarded in FY 89. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 295 grants out of 400 applications aggregating $5,100,000 vs. 300 grants out of 400 applications aggregating $5,250,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $17,000 was awarded to the Chicago Children's Choir in Chicago, IL, to support an advanced musical training and performance program which enhances the development of professional choral skills. Since 1956 the Choir has united young people from diverse racial, cultural, and ethnic backgrounds in the pursuit of excellence in music through training and performance programs. Approximately 700 youths, ages 8 to 18, are participants at various levels of the Choir's programming. The Choir has performed with the Chicago Symphony Orchestra and at a meeting of the American Choral Directors Association. Graduates of the Choir have gone on to further voice study at various universities and conservatories.

2. Services to the Field

Funds in this category are awarded to organizations of regional or national importance whose primary purpose is to provide the artists and organizations of the expansion arts field with technical assistance. Services include bookkeeping, management training, shared equipment, and informational and administrative assistance. This category offers vital resources to expansion arts organizations with small administrative budgets. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 18 grants out of 27 applications aggregating $350,000 vs. 19 grants out of 25 applications aggregating $400,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a $7,000 grant was awarded to the Maine Arts Sponsors Association (MASA) in Augusta, ME, to support a technical assistance program for arts organizations and artists in the state and region. Particular emphasis was placed on those in isolated, rural areas. MASA, founded in 1981, acts as a vital network for its 150 member artists and arts organizations, representing a primarily rural constituency. It publishes a quarterly newsletter, facilitates booking of performances and disseminates information about concerns and events in the region and the nation. Technical assistance workshops are held at regular intervals; however, because of the distance and isolation of some of the participants, an effective phone and mail program was also developed.

3. Special Projects

The Special Projects category supports initiatives of benefit to the expansion arts field and community arts generally. The category now includes three initiatives: the Community Foundation Initiative, the Organizational Development Pilot and the Rural Arts Initiative.

The Community Foundation Initiative (CFI) was developed to improve access to private funders for expansion arts and other emerging organizations and artists. Through the CFI, funds are awarded that must be matched on a two-to-one basis by the recipient foundation and regranted to emerging arts organizations and artists. The match must be used to establish or augment a fund restricted to the support of emerging arts organizations and artists. A four-year funding commitment allows the endowments to grow so that eventually regrant funds will be replenished by endowment income.

To respond to numerous rural arts organizations that have considerable potential to develop artistically and administratively, Expansion Arts began to implement a pilot Rural Arts Initiative during FY 89. Matching grants of up to $40,000 per year for not more than three years were awarded to six state arts agencies for regranting to rural arts organizations within their areas.

In partnership with the Inter-Arts Program, the Expansion Arts Program entered into its second Organizational Development Pilot (ODP). Following the success of the first ODP, which in FY 87 and 88 awarded five grants to small dance companies, this new initiative is designed to assist up to four ethnic multidisciplinary arts presenters to improve their organizational stability. Grants up to $30,000 per year for three years will begin in FY 90.

In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 27 grants out of 29 applications aggregating $1,050,000 vs. 20 grants out of 39 applications aggregating $850,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a $40,000 grant was awarded to H.T. Dance Company (HTDC) in New York City to support the second year of an Organizational Development Pilot. Founded in 1976, the company performs modern works rooted in Asian themes and legends and is strongly influenced by the stylization of traditional Chinese dance. In addition to performances, the organization also offers professional training in dance and music and operates the Mulberry Theater. Through the grant, the Company hired a marketing director and augmented the salaries of other staff and company members, enabling the Artistic Director to concentrate on choreography. HTDC's marketing efforts were enhanced, and earned and contributed income have increased. For example, touring income increased from $20,000 in 1986-87 to $32,000 in 1988-89. During the same period contributed income from corporations, foundations and individuals increased from $10,720 to $35,880. This improved financial ability has helped the company to flourish artistically.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

FOLK ARTS PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
FOLK ARTS ORGANIZATIONS a/	262	146	2,534	300	150	2,675	300	145	2,600
NATIONAL HERITAGE FELLOWSHIPS	188	13	65	213	15	75	200	15	75
STATE APPRENTICESHIP PROGRAMS	25	24	536	28	26	550	31	29	625
PROGRAM TOTAL	475	183	3,135	541	191	3,300	531	189	3,300

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
FOLK ARTS ORGANIZATIONS a/	2,534	0	2,534	2,675	0	2,675	2,600	0	2,600
NATIONAL HERITAGE FELLOWSHIPS	65	0	65	75	0	75	75	0	75
STATE APPRENTICESHIP PROGRAMS	536	0	536	550	0	550	625	0	625
PROGRAM TOTAL	3,135	0	3,135	3,300	0	3,300	3,300	0	3,300

a/ In FY's 89 and 90, excludes $1 of gift funds.

FOLK ARTS

Purpose

The Folk Arts Program works to preserve and encourage the best among America's rich and varied traditional art forms and to make them more widely available to local and national audiences. The Program: 1) assists in the public presentation of folk arts and artists in festivals, concerts, exhibits, demonstration and teaching workshops, residencies and tours; 2) preserves and exposes the traditional art forms through media documentation and radio/video/film projects; 3) encourages mid-level artists to apprentice themselves to senior traditional master artists and artisans; 4) supports the development of professional staffed state, region and community based folk arts programs as well as independent folk arts institutions; and 5) brings to wide public attention distinguished individual folk artists and artisans who can be acclaimed as masters in their particular fields.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

All signs indicate that the field has embarked on an upward curve both in terms of artistic developments and of public interest. A recent survey of folk arts activity nationwide resulted in a conservative estimate of $18 - 20 million spent in FY 87 on folk arts programming nationwide from federal, state and local sources; this amount is greater today.

The network of state/regional/local folk art support programs continues to grow at a slow but steady rate; there are 49 state programs, 32 of which are now funded entirely on a state level, leaving only 17 still needing federal assistance. Together with an additional 14 regional and local programs, this public support network staffed by trained folk arts professionals provides the growing folk arts movement with the needed aesthetic and administrative advice and assistance that is provided in other fields by private institutions.

Increased activity is evident in all areas of folk arts programming. The states of Oklahoma, Louisiana, Michigan, North Dakota and South Dakota all mounted statewide folk arts festivals during FY 89, several celebrating their centennial years; Wyoming and Minnesota are planning similar statewide events in 1990. Three Folk Arts tours are on the road and selling out their halls on both coasts. Attention to media documentation of the folk arts is also increasing in terms of film, and radio projects in particular.

The production of recordings of music has been complicated somewhat in recent years by the advent of the compact disc. Most folk musics take expression in relatively short forms; the increased capacity of the compact disc requires a totally different programming approach from that appropriate to vinyl records or audiotapes. Since many record stores now carry compact discs almost exclusively, producers of folk music recordings in increasing numbers have resorted to mail order sales; their entire marketing procedures are therefore in need of reconsideration.

The passing on of artistic skills and values by master artists to the next generation is critical to the field. Another 10 states have developed apprenticeship programs during FY 89, bringing the total of such programs to 33; these provide one-on-one experiences for younger artists and artisans with senior practitioners. Finally, the Endowment's National Heritage Fellowship program which brings public recognition to exemplary folk artists and artisans has achieved exceptional public interest and response during the last year.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

The Folk Arts Program has recently seen direct evidence of the increased activity in the field -- applications for Folk Arts Organizations grants are being received at a growth rate of 15 percent over the FY 89 level, Advancement Program applications from folk arts organizations have risen from one or two per year to seven in FY 90; National Heritage Fellowship nominations now number 213, an increase of nearly 100 over FY 87's 118 nominations. The constituency served by the Folk Arts Program is potentially enormous. It is characterized by great endurance, tenacity and independence. The Folk Arts Program's primary stratagem in supporting its field is to fund well-crafted projects with limited, carefully defined objectives. This approach generally provides one-time project grants and limits funding for the same activity to four years. There is only one major category -- Folk Arts Organizations -- through which all projects involving the presentation, the documentation or the general support of folk arts are funded.

1. Folk Arts Organizations

Under this category the Program supports projects designed to present folk arts and artists through concerts, festivals exhibits, residencies and tours; projects that document and present folk arts and artists through the media (film, television programs, radio series, phonograph recordings, slide/tape programs); and projects to set up support programs for folk arts and folk artists in state and local public agencies. Approximately 80 percent of the total Program funds are expended in this category, although within the category emphases may vary from year to year. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 145 grants out of 300 applications aggregating $2,600,000 vs. 150 grants out of 300 applications aggregating $2,675,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a grant of $26,000 was awarded the State Arts Council of Oklahoma in Oklahoma City for the purpose of establishing a state folk arts coordinator position. Five years prior to the hiring of the coordinator, there had been very little state or federally-supported folk arts activity in Oklahoma: only one exhibition and two National Heritage Fellowship recipients, both nominated from out of state. In the initial year of the coordinator's activities, more than 1,000 folk artists and resource people were identified; an archive of source materials and products of documentation was established; a statewide conference on Oklahoma's folklife resources was held, and numerous in-state publications featured articles on folk arts activities. During the coordinator's second year, major programs featured Oklahoma's native American and black musical traditions. The Native American Music Project included an exhibition of traditional instruments at the Center of the American Indian, a concert presentation, and the release of a cassette recording and booklet. A major celebration of Oklahoma's black music heritage was held in Tulsa on "Juneteenth" (the traditional yearly June 19th celebration of the day the news of the Emancipation Proclamation reached the state of

Texas) featuring eleven musical groups and attracting an audience of 5,000. Traditions '89, held the following year in Oklahoma City, was billed as the nation's largest state folklife festival, presenting more than 200 Oklahoma musicians and crafts people over the course of three days to an estimated crowd of over 100,000 people. More than $250,000 was raised locally for the support of this event.

Example: In FY 87, a grant of $35,000, later amended by $17,500, was awarded to the New York Foundation for the Arts in New York City for the support of a film documenting the development through time of the song "We Shall Overcome" from its roots as old-time spiritual widely known in traditional African-American culture. Folk Arts' funds were limited to scenes of the song being sung in its earliest settings, such as a praise house in Johns Island, SC; the Media Arts Program also contributed general funding. The 70-minute film narrated by Harry Belafonte featured National Heritage Fellow Janie Hunter of the Sea Islands of South Carolina, as well as many other artists prominent during the Civil Rights movement. In 1989, the 25th anniversary of the March on Washington, We Shall Overcome aired over 125 public television stations nationwide to an audience of one million. That same year the film was presented the prestigious Emmy award.

2. National Heritage Fellowships

This category brings to the attention of the national public the contributions of important traditional artists from across the nation. The criteria for their selection include authenticity, excellence, and an exceptional contribution to the particular art form. This category is loosely based upon the Japanese concept of "national living treasure" and serves to make widely visible the extraordinary artistic merit of our nation's best folk artists and artisans as well as the extraordinary range of arts and crafts they practice. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 15 grants out of 200 nominations aggregating $75,000 vs. 15 grants out of 213 nominations aggregating $75,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a $5,000 National Heritage Fellowship was awarded to Jose Gutierrez of Norwalk, CA. Mr. Gutierrez is a master musician and instrument maker originally from the coastal plain of southern Veracruz. People of this region, known as jarochos, developed a distinctive style of music and dance. Gutierrez both makes and plays the three major instruments found in the jarocho ensemble -- the jarana (small rhythm guitar), the requinto (four-string melody guitar) and the harp. Known as the premiere all-around jarocho musician residing in the United States, he has participated as an artist-in-residence at the University of Washington and has served as a master artist in numerous apprenticeship grants from the National Endowment for the Arts. Gutierrez has also been featured at numerous national and regional festivals around the United States and was a participant in the "Raices Musicales" (Musical Roots) tour sponsored twice by the National Council for the Traditional Arts. In conjunction with his trip to Washington, DC, for the National Heritage Fellowship ceremonies, he recorded an album which will be distributed nationally.

Example: In FY 89, a $5,000 National Heritage Fellowship was awarded to John Cephas of Woodford, VA. A carpenter by trade, Mr. Cephas learned his distinctive Piedmont style of blues guitar playing and singing from family and friends in the Washington, DC, area. In 1986 Mr. Cephas and his young harmonica-playing partner, Phil Wiggins, were awarded the W.C. Handy Blues Entertainers of the Year award. A community-based scholar and co-founder of the DC Blues Society, Mr. Cephas serves as a tireless ambassador for the blues, having served as both an emcee and performer in a major tour of African-American music of the South entitled "Saturday Night, Sunday Morning." Recently he went to the Soviet Union to represent the United States at an international festival. Mr. Cephas continues to share with local musicians his deep knowledge and understanding of the blues tradition.

3! State Apprenticeship Programs

Under this category, state-based agencies and private statewide organizations can apply for matching funds to set up and manage apprenticeships between senior traditional artists/artisans and talented mid-career learners. This is one of the most reliable methods yet devised to get small amounts of money directly into the hands of traditional artists; it also brings the contributions of these artists to local attention and visibly demonstrates to younger artists the viability and popularity of traditional skills. This program has been so popular and had such an impact that we now project allowing annual applications up to $10,000 for the indefinite future, unlike our limited funding policies in the Folk Arts Organizations category. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 29 grants out of 31 applications aggregating $625,000 vs. 26 grants out of 28 applications aggregating $550,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a grant of $28,300 was awarded the State Foundation on Culture and the Arts in Honolulu, HI, for the purpose of supporting a statewide apprenticeship program. Fifteen apprenticeships funded with those monies supported the teaching by master artists of hula chanting, the making of hula dress and implements, wood and stone carving, Laotian ceremonial flower arranging, Okinawan dance, slack key and steel guitar playing and storytelling. Several participants in the apprenticeship program were also featured in a major traveling exhibition on Hawaiian cowboy traditions "Na Paniolo o Hawai'i," which toured the Islands and also was featured at the Cowboy Poetry Gathering in Elko, NV. In the summer of 1989 the state of Hawaii was featured at the Smithsonian Festival of American Folklife held on the National Mall in Washington, DC, and a number of apprenticeship participants were included in the program.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $26,800 was awarded the Augusta Heritage Center of Davis and Elkins College in Elkins, WV, for the purpose of establishing a pilot statewide apprenticeship program. In the initial phase of the project the coordinator conducted extensive field work and visited each applying master artist. Six apprenticeships were funded during the first cycle to support the study of banjo and fiddle playing, shape note hymn and old-time singing, white oak basketmaking, and musical instrument repair. A second funding cycle of the apprenticeship project has demonstrated a further broadening of traditions supported to include blues guitar, Hungarian cimbalom, stonecutting, and textile weaving. Davis and Elkins College has devised an apprenticeship program uniquely suited to West Virginia, drawing on a variety of funding sources, including the West Virginia Arts and Humanities Division as well as earned income from record and tape sales and a series of benefit concerts. It is anticipated that in the second year of the program 15 master-apprenticeship partnerships will be supported.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

INTER-ARTS PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
ARTIST COMMUNITIES	18	14	200	16	12	200	18	12	200
ARTISTS' PROJECTS: NEW FORMS	391	73	950	450	70	900	480	70	900
PRESENTING ORGANIZATIONS a/	234	136	2,936	268	130	2,950	275	135	3,000
SERVICES TO THE ARTS	60	35	454	38	25	350	40	25	350
PROGRAM TOTAL	703	258	4,540	772	237	4,400	813	242	4,450

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
ARTIST COMMUNITIES	200	0	200	200	0	200	200	0	200
ARTISTS' PROJECTS: NEW FORMS	950	0	950	900	0	900	900	0	900
PRESENTING ORGANIZATIONS a/	2,736	200	2,936	2,550	400	2,950	2,550	450	3,000
SERVICES TO THE ARTS	454	0	454	350	0	350	350	0	350
PROGRAM TOTAL	4,340	200	4,540	4,000	400	4,400	4,000	450	4,450

a/ Includes support for a cooperative effort among Dance, Inter-Arts and State Programs to address presenting/touring needs.

INTER-ARTS

Purpose

The purpose of the Inter-Arts Program is to encourage the creation and the presentation of the highest quality arts through support for: 1) presenting organizations which offer high quality multidisciplinary performing arts events to broad audiences, 2) artists experimenting in new forms, 3) service organizations which help artists and arts organizations strengthen their own growth and development, and 4) artist communities which provide creative work time for professional artists.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Artist Communities. Artist communities provide artists with space, time, and materials to create their work. The demand is overwhelming -- in 1988, a group of 13 communities received more than 6,700 requests but were able to accommodate fewer than 1,200 artists. The need to provide more advanced technology to sustain contemporary artists' endeavors often exacerbates the already tenuous funding situation for these communities.

Artists' Projects: New Forms. Nontraditional collaboration, or the mixing of artistic disciplines in a work, has been referred to for some time as "interdisciplinary art." In the last several years it has become clear that the importance of experimentation within (and between) art forms represents more a method of working than a genre of art. New forms which emerge out of collaboration and experimentation among artists increasingly reflect the presence and interaction of diverse cultures within the United States.

Needs facing artists experimenting in all forms are daunting. Collaboration is expensive; technology is expensive. Support for their work generally is difficult to secure because of the intrinsic risk involved, and the faith required of funders and audiences.

Presenting Organizations. Presenting organizations act as performing arts curators, selecting and engaging artists and companies to perform or exhibit and bringing them together with audiences. Nonprofit festivals, performing arts centers, colleges and universities, museums, local arts agencies, and artists' spaces are examples of organizations that present the arts. They provide performance and exhibition opportunities for broad audiences in their communities and are necessary to the existence of many artists. Presenters can construct programs appealing to the known preferences of their audiences, and can also help educate them to artists and art forms that may be unfamiliar. Outstanding presenters demonstrate creative leadership by planning programs that serve and enhance the artistic growth of the community.

Performing arts presentation has most recently been characterized by unparalleled experimentation on stage and discourse within the field. Trends of particular import, both artistic and structural, include: a diversification of work being presented, especially of a contemporary and/or ethnic nature; a new degree of cooperation between artists and presenters; the emergence of a healthy spectrum of artistic partnerships between presenters; and the development of alternative structures for touring the arts.

The presenting field is being drawn in two directions: managerial responsibilities lead some organizations to be more conservative in programming, while the tremendous opportunities for this young field to advance the arts lead many others to explore innovative approaches to arts presentation.

Services to the Arts. Individual artists and a majority of arts organizations have limited access to necessary services. Their needs range from fundamentals such as health care and work space to technical support, forums for thought, advocacy on key issues, management services and access to diverse information. A support system of arts service organizations strives to fill these needs.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

The National Task Force on Presenting and Touring the Performing Arts, supported by the Arts Endowment, the Rockefeller Foundation, and Pew Charitable Trusts, and coordinated by the Association of Performing Arts Presenters (formerly the Association of College, University, and Community Arts Administrators), has as its goal the achievement of a better understanding of the role of presenting and touring and objectives and strategies for the field to fulfill that role. The Task Force final report, issued in December 1989, illustrates a more pluralistic conception of presenting, one that acknowledges the role of the arts presenter as that of full partner with artists and community members in the dynamic process of arts creation and access.

With the assistance of the FY 88 grants awarded to presenting organizations, numerous artists were supported and more than 9,000 events nationwide were seen by an estimated audience of more than 3.5 million people in 1988-89. Further highlighting the artistic emphasis of this category, support for commissioning and touring of new single discipline work and central coordination of tours is available for a second year under a redesigned subcategory, Partnerships in Commissioning and Touring. In addition, Inter-Arts seeks to complement other Endowment Programs' efforts in presenting and touring. For example, Dance On Tour, a collaborative effort with the Dance and States Programs, may provide a model for touring support of other performing arts. Another example is an Organizational Development Pilot collaboration with the Expansion Arts Program to address the needs of emerging multicultural presenting organizations.

In direct response to thinking in the field on the nature of experimentation in the arts, the Program restructured and renamed its category of support for such activities in FY 89. Guidelines for "Artists' Projects: New Forms" (formerly Interdisciplinary Arts Projects) focus on innovation in the arts, in single or interdisciplinary formats, and increased access for emerging and multicultural artists. From FY 88 to FY 89, this category experienced a 71 percent increase in the number of applications. The regionally based subcategory in this area, the New Forms Regional Initiative (formerly the Initiative for Interdisciplinary Artists), now reflects parallel changes with a doubling of funds available from FY 88 to FY 89, matched by the Rockefeller Foundation. This Initiative now reaches artists in 49 states, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico.

1. Artist Communities

This category supports artist communities which provide facilities where professional artists can work without interruption. The communities select artists from all regions of the nation; the criterion for selection is artistic excellence as judged by the communities' selection committees. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 12 grants out of 18 applications aggregating $200,000 vs. 12 grants out of 16 applications aggregating $200,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a $25,000 grant was awarded to the Fine Arts Work Center (FAWC) in Provincetown, MA, to support the live-in studios and stipends for the 10 writers and 10 visual artists chosen for seven-month winter residencies. The Fine Arts Work Center was founded in 1968 by a group of prominent artists, writers, and business people and has in its 20 years of operation achieved renown for nurturing literary and artistic talent. Representative of the strength of this exemplary program is Shankpainter, the Center's annual literary magazine/visual arts catalogue featuring the work of the Fellows in residence each year. Many of the FAWC Fellows go on to significant achievement and recognition in their fields: Robert Lundy, 1988 writing Fellow, was awarded a two-year Wallace Stegner Fellowship at Stanford; 1988 writing Fellow Betty Waring Lipton won the 1989 Grolier Poetry Prize; and 1988 visual arts Fellow Irene Lipton was chosen to show her work in "The Cutting Edge" exhibit at the Fine Arts Museum of Long Island.

2. Artists' Projects: New Forms

This category supports the creation and production of work that extends or explores artistic form(s). Experimental, innovative projects that challenge the traditional art forms are encouraged. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 70 grants out of 480 applications aggregating $900,000 vs. 70 grants out of 450 applications aggregating $900,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a $12,000 grant was awarded to Maryland Art Place in Baltimore, MD, to support "Diverseworks," a three-week residency/workshop/performance program which invites three Visiting Directors -- all nationally-known artists -- to work with regional artists on the development and presentation of new work. Visiting directors Danny Mydlak (Boston, MA), Nancy O. Reilly (New York City), and George Lewis (New York City) worked with 35 regional artists from a wide variety of disciplines and interests to create five new works averaging 15 minutes in length. These five works-in-progress were performed for two evenings at Center Stage in Baltimore in early August 1988.

3. Presenting Organizations

This category assists the seasons of presenting organizations that provide performance opportunities for artists and audiences on a regular, long-term basis. Presenters may also request support to commission and tour new work; state arts agencies, regional arts organizations, or presenter membership organizations (including consortia) may seek support for projects such as the Dance On Tour initiative or for services that help presenters improve their professional skills, and that assist presenters in engaging professional art ensembles. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 135 grants out of 275 applications aggregating $3,000,000 vs. 130 grants out of 268 applications aggregating $2,950,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Presenting Organizations: In FY 89, a grant of $5,000 was awarded to Artswatch, Inc. in Louisville, KY, to support expanded programming and to continue residencies for artists during the 1989-90 season. Artswatch was founded in 1985 to support, present, and commission contemporary performance works by local, regional, and national artists of the highest artistic level. It is the leading presenter in Kentucky and the surrounding area of culturally diverse artists creating new performance works. Projects often include pairing Kentucky artists with national artists to encourage new collaborative pieces. For example, Harry Sheppard, a local dancer, recently joined New York's Yoshiko Chuma and the School of Hard Knocks, for a five-day series of workshops and performances at the Kentucky Center for the Arts. Students from the Youth Performing Arts School and professional artists from the community attended special performances and open rehearsals and participated in discussions with the artists. In February, two Kentucky dancers will be in residence in Washington, DC, with choreographer Liz Lerman who has a company, Dancers of the Third Age, which she describes as "intergenerational" because it is composed of dancers whose ages span several generations. The dancers from Kentucky will work with Ms. Lerman for one week and return to Kentucky to do workshops in senior citizen and community centers. In June, Ms. Lerman and the Dancers of the Third Age will be in residence in Louisville and participate in the Elder Arts Festival.

Example - Partnerships in Commissioning and Touring: In FY 89, a $50,000 grant was awarded to Cal Performances at the University of California/Berkeley for the co-commissioning and co-presentation of a new work by Merce Cunningham. Partner presenters included: the University of Massachusetts (Amherst, MA), the Madison Civic Center (Madison, WI), Dartmouth College (Hanover, NH), the University of Nebraska (Lincoln, NE), and UCLA (Los Angeles, CA). "Celebrating Merce Cunningham: A Festival and Colloquium on the Contemporary Arts" involved the creation of work for performances in the above listed locations and included various educational activities such as residencies, master classes, video workshops, open rehearsals, and lectures. These activities examined the choreography and aesthetics of Mr. Cunningham and the impact his work has had on 20th-century culture. The residency at Berkeley occurred in September 1989, included participation by a number of university departments and community organizations, and was successfully concluded with three performances that emphasized a retrospective view of Mr. Cunningham's influence on contemporary art.

Example - Services to Presenting Organizations: In FY 88, a $47,640 grant was awarded to the Association of College, University, and Community Arts Administrators (ACUCAA -- now renamed the Association of Performing Arts Presenters) in Washington, DC, to support presenter development and training projects. Workshops were held around the country providing professional artistic and managerial training in presenting the performing arts, including sessions in Spokane, WA, at the Midwest Booking Conference (Minneapolis, MN), and at the Northeastern Booking Conference (Stamford, CT). The December 1988 annual conference, attended by participants from nearly every state in the country, included workshops entitled "Understanding Performance Art (or at least knowing more about it)" and "The Black Tradition in American Modern Dance."

Example - Dance On Tour Initiative: In FY 88, a $38,000 grant was awarded to the New England Foundation for the Arts in Cambridge, MA, for support of special tours by Liz Lerman's Dance Exchange and the Stephen Petronio Dance Company. This award coupled with $108,020 in funding from other sources enabled the Foundation to provide significant support toward artists' fees totaling more than $930,000 during the 1988-89 season. This represents a sharp increase (146 percent) in the volume of dance touring activity supported by the Initiative compared to the 1987-88 season when a total of $378,040 in artists' fees was supported with $63,194 in grant monies. Additionally, Stephen Petronio and his company conducted nine half-week residencies featuring a new work entitled "AnAmnesia," with music by Peter Gordon. Similarly, Liz Lerman and her company of young and senior citizen dancers were featured in five one-week residencies around New England as well as one two-week residency in Boston. The focus of these residencies, which offer an array of workshops and performances was community participation in dance with an emphasis on senior adults.

4. Services to the Arts

This category supports projects which provide artists and arts organizations with access to managerial skills and other resources they need if they are to grow and develop. To qualify, these service projects must be aimed at constituents in more than one art discipline. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 25 grants out of 40 applications aggregating $350,000 vs. 25 grants out of 38 applications aggregating $350,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a $15,000 grant was awarded to ATLATL, a native American arts service organization in Phoenix, AZ, to support the Second Circle Native Arts Network Conference held at the University of Wisconsin in Madison, WI. The conference was attended by 90 arts representatives from tribal museums and cultural centers, universities, native art studies programs, national as well as state and local arts agencies, and tribal councils across the United States. Topics included the need for greater awareness and appreciation of contemporary native arts, access to support networks, presentations and discussions with representatives from local, state and national arts agencies, and recommendations for unifying regional issues into a national agenda for the support of native American arts activities.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

LITERATURE PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
AUDIENCE DEVELOPMENT	90	56	628	90	50	550	90	50	600
FELLOWSHIPS	1,942	111	2,292	2,250	111	2,300	2,280	107	2,250
LITERARY PUBLISHING	183	91	1,350	190	105	1,400	190	104	1,300
PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT	13	10	520	18	14	550	18	13	650
SPECIAL PROJECTS	15	15	271	7	4	200	12	6	200
PROGRAM TOTAL	2,243	283	5,061	2,555	284	5,000	2,590	280	5,000

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
AUDIENCE DEVELOPMENT	628	0	628	550	0	550	600	0	600
FELLOWSHIPS	2,292	0	2,292	2,300	0	2,300	2,250	0	2,250
LITERARY PUBLISHING	1,350	0	1,350	1,400	0	1,400	1,300	0	1,300
PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT	520	0	520	550	0	550	650	0	650
SPECIAL PROJECTS	271	0	271	200	0	200	200	0	200
PROGRAM TOTAL	5,061	0	5,061	5,000	0	5,000	5,000	0	5,000

LITERATURE

Purpose

The purpose of the Literature Program is twofold: to encourage the creation of literature of the highest quality through support of exceptionally talented individual artists, and to make the work of outstanding contemporary writers available to a broad public. Grants are provided for direct fellowship assistance to individual writers, support for production and distribution of small press publications and literary magazines, support for literary centers and service organizations, and encouragement of wider audiences for fine contemporary literature.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

The literary profession in the United States is in a period of change. At a time when a record number of books is being published, and the number of writers has increased dramatically, there are disturbing questions about the importance of literature in our culture and profound misgivings about the future of the literary arts. This prevailing uncertainty about American letters is partly a response to the remarkable profusion of new voices that have demanded to be heard. Our literature -- with the volume of important work being done by women and writers of many different cultural backgrounds -- surely reflects more accurately and inclusively than ever before the immense variety of American experience.

Much important new work appears first in "little magazines," which continue to be the proving grounds of American letters. Their role has become more vital as most general interest magazines have stopped publishing poetry and fiction. Small, independent presses have grown in number and importance as trade publishers have retreated from their former commitment to publish literary work. Corporate mergers have altered the practice of all but a few mainstays of the publishing industry; the small presses have occupied territory vacated by the larger publishers, steadily expanding their editorial scope and, at the same time, becoming more sophisticated as businesses. The most prominent of the small presses now publish lists of literary titles that rival those of commercial houses, but they are still stymied by a distribution system that gives pride of place to the "blockbuster."

Contemporary writers are frequently their own best representatives, seeking to reach audiences through readings and residencies. A network of university writing programs, libraries, literary centers, writers' conferences, bookstores, and other meeting places provides a kind of literary circuit, giving writers an opportunity to read their work, build new audiences, and increase their income.

The median income in 1986 of published writers from their work was $7,900 according to the Author's Guild. Even the most established writers must subsidize their creative work by taking other jobs; an estimated 2,000 writers teach creative writing courses in colleges and universities, but many more must work in unrelated fields. It takes both stamina and ingenuity for a writer to continue doing creative work in conditions of financial uncertainty.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

The Literature Program responds to issues of importance in the field by fostering the creation and dissemination of excellent contemporary writing. Support is provided through five categories:

1. Audience Development

Grants in this category are designed to develop and reach audiences for contemporary creative writing of the highest quality. Three types of grants are awarded: Assistance to Literary Centers, Audience Development Projects, and Residencies for Writers and Reading Series grants. In addition to putting writers into direct contact with audiences, grants in this category have provided support for radio programs, potentially reaching an audience that numbers in the millions. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 50 grants out of 90 applications aggregating $600,000 vs. 50 grants out of 90 applications aggregating $550,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Assistance to Literary Centers: In FY 88, a grant of $7,000 was awarded to the Big River Association in St. Louis, MO, to support expanded services to the literary community. These services included a reading series consisting of four programs -- presented in conjunction with allied art forms such as dance and music -- which drew a combined audience of approximately 900 people. Big River also presented a poetry series to promote a variety of emerging writers. In addition, support assisted publication of a newsletter to publicize both Big River's programming and that of other St. Louis literary organizations, as well as operations of a small press/magazine library, which provides St. Louis writers and the public with access to more than 300 titles.

Example - Audience Development Projects: In FY 88, a grant of $4,000 was awarded to the Maine Writers and Publishers Alliance (MWPA) in Brunswick, ME, to support a series of audience development projects, including a book distribution and promotion service. MWPA maintains a collection of 1,300 books, magazines, literary journals and video cassettes, which are marketed and sold to 700 school, university and public libraries, 200 bookstores and also to individuals. A monthly newsletter, This Month in Maine Literature, covers literary events throughout the state, lists manuscript submissions opportunities, and features articles of interest to writers and readers of literature. In July 1988, MWPA sponsored the Summer Institute in Maine Literature at Bates College in Lewiston, which offered 64 teachers and librarians an opportunity to study Maine writing of the past and present. In addition, the Maine Literature Project began work on the recently published anthology of Maine literature titled Maine Speaks, developed to serve as a source book for middle to high school students.

Example - Residencies for Writers and Reading Series: In FY 88, a grant of $10,000 was awarded to the Wyoming Council on the Arts in Cheyenne to support writers' fees for a statewide residency series. During 1988 and 1989, ten writers gave public readings and workshops during one-week visits at different locations throughout the state. The cosponsorship of the Visiting Writers Program with a number of local libraries, public schools, and community colleges took writers into culturally isolated communities. The program presented a diverse group of writers, including Larry McMurtry, President of PEN American Center, Asian-American poet Lawson Fusao Inada, and essayist Carol Bly.

2. Fellowships for Creative Writers

This category enables exceptionally talented writers and translators of poetry, fiction, and creative nonfiction to set aside time for writing and research or translation. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 107 grants out of 2,280 applications aggregating $2,250,000 vs. 111 grants out of 2,250 applications aggregating $2,300,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Poetry: In FY 87, a grant of $20,000 was awarded to Jimmy Santiago Baca of Albuquerque, NM. Mr. Baca reports that his grant was of indispensable value in allowing him to support his family while he wrote and completed his book, Martin and Meditations on the South Valley, published in 1988 by New Directions. Within a year of publication the book was in its fourth printing, and is still selling well. It went on to win the Before Columbus Foundation's American Book Award as well as the Vogelstein Award. Mr. Baca was awarded the Hispanic Heritage Award at the White House in the summer of 1989.

Example - Prose: In FY 88, a grant of $20,000 was awarded to Blanche McCrary Boyd of New London, CT. Because of the grant, Ms. Boyd was able to set aside her work as a free-lance journalist for an entire year and devote herself fully to completing her book of short stories. One of the stories she wrote during this period, "The Black Hand Girl," was chosen for inclusion in the anthology Best American Short Stores of 1989, edited by Margaret Atwood. Her own volume of stories is expected to be published by the fall of 1990. Ms. Boyd has been a frequent participant in reading series and residencies, including "Carolina Connections" in Charleston, SC, and the PEN/Faulkner reading series in Washington, DC. She states that, though the financial support she received was indispensable, the recognition and legitimacy conferred by the Arts Endowment fellowship were perhaps even greater rewards, giving her the courage and determination to continue writing.

Example - Translation: In FY 89, a grant of $10,000 was awarded to Carolyn H. Hejinian of Berkeley, CA, to support the translation from Russian of a book-length collection of poems by Arkadii Dragomoshchenko. The translation will be published as a 200-page volume by Sun & Moon Press. The activity generated by Ms. Hejinian's interest, as well as that of other American poets, has brought Mr. Dragomoshchenko into a more influential position within the Soviet Union, to the extent that he has been asked to work with the new Soviet Cultural Fund to organize colloquia and translation projects. Ms. Hejinian and Mr. Dragomoshchenko have organized a translation-collaboration project between five American poets and five Soviet poets which is currently under way, and which will take the five Americans to the Soviet Union to translate, travel, give readings, and conduct seminars. Meanwhile, Mr. Dragomoshchenko has translated Ms. Hejinian's poetry, and it has been published in several prominent Soviet literary magazines.

3. Literary Publishing

This category assists noncommercial presses and literary magazines which publish contemporary creative writing of high quality, as well as projects for the distribution of that writing. Small press grants typically support editions of 1,500 to 7,500 copies, smaller press runs than most commercial publishers are willing to undertake but which represent average sales figures for serious fiction and collections of fine poetry. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 104 grants out of 190 applications aggregating $1,300,000 vs. 105 grants out of 190 applications aggregating $1,400,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Assistance to Literary Magazines: In FY 88, a grant of $2,500 was awarded to the University of Alabama for the Black Warrior Review of Tuscaloosa, AL, to support writers' fees and production and promotion costs for a special section on "The Contemporary Art of the American Literary Anecdote," updating -- and alluding to -- the 18th-century tradition of writing about writers. In this 24-page section, leading contemporary authors, including Rick Bass and George Garrett, discussed themselves and their encounters with colleagues both famous -- Eudora Welty and Thomas Pynchon -- and undiscovered. Founded at the University of Alabama, Black Warrior Review celebrated its fifteenth anniversary with the issue containing "The Contemporary Art of the American Literary Anecdote."

Example - Distribution Projects: In FY 88, COMPAS, Inc., of St. Paul, MN, was awarded a grant of $50,000 to support Bookslinger, a national distributor of small press books. Beginning in 1976 as Truck Distribution Service and serving the Minneapolis/St. Paul area, Bookslinger is now the country's largest distributor of literary works produced by noncommercial small presses, carrying 4,300 titles from 180 presses in 1988. Bookslinger's activities during the grant period included the development of an innovative new targeted monthly newsletter, Bibliofile, with each issue highlighting a specific book category such as women's books, and listing Bookslinger's titles in that genre along with short annotations.

Example - Small Press Assistance: In FY 88, the Centrum Foundation received a grant of $25,000 for Copper Canyon Press of Port Townsend, WA, to support publication costs for six books. Among the works published under the grant are the first English translation of Nobel laureate Pablo Neruda's poetry volume The Sea and the Bells, translated by William O'Daly; the poetry collection Elements, by James Galvin, winner of the 1977 Nation/Discovery Award; and Carrying Over, a collection of translations and versions of poems, from languages including Chinese, Urdu, and Hebrew, by 1985 Pulitzer Prize winning poet Carolyn Kizer.

4. Professional Development

This category assists organizations which provide assistance to writers and literary publishers. These organizations serve a vital function in a dispersed field, allowing the exchange of ideas and information so necessary to individuals who work alone. Literature Program grants have provided support for information services and for publications listing residencies, teaching positions, competitions, publishing possibilities, conferences, and workshops. Support has gone to organizations both community-based and national in scope. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 13 grants out of 18 applications aggregating $650,000 vs. 14 grants out of 18 applications aggregating $550,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a grant of $30,000 was awarded to the San Francisco State University Foundation, Inc., in San Francisco, CA, to support the Poetry Center. The Poetry Center, home of the American Poetry Archives, used the grant funds to videotape live poetry performances and to distribute copies of the recordings to audiences across the country. At the time of the grant, the Poetry Center held a collection of 658 videotapes, the largest collection of taped poetry readings in the country. Approximately 250 of those tapes are distributed to libraries, schools, and literary organizations each year, with the featured writer receiving a royalty for each rental or sale. In addition to increasing its holdings through Endowment support, the Poetry Center undertook an exhaustive cataloguing of its video collection and explored new systems of distribution to broaden its reach as the primary resource center for poetry audiovisual materials in the United States.

5. Special Projects

These grants assist unique projects that address specific needs in an especially innovative manner. In FY 89 Special Projects grants supported several radio programs which broadcast fine contemporary literature to wide audiences. FY 90 grants will focus on new model projects for the distribution of small press books and literary magazines. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 6 grants out of 12 applications aggregating $200,000 vs. 4 grants out of 7 applications aggregating $200,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a grant of $10,550 was awarded to the National Black Arts Festival in Atlanta, GA, to present and record eight black writers and poets in a program entitled, "A Nation of Poets." The writers -- including Amiri Baraka, Wanda Coleman, Sonia Sanchez, and Haki Madhubuti -- gave two performances at Spelman College, both to capacity audiences of 750. The performances were literary jam sessions; the first lasted more than two hours, the second more than four. Tapes of these live recordings will be for sale during the National Black Arts Festival in July 1990, as will the books of these writers. The writers themselves will perform again during the Festival, which will be attended by an estimated 750,000 people. Other programs, including broadcasts on National Public Radio and PBS, are expected to stem from "A Nation of Poets." This Special Projects grant has made it possible for the National Black Arts Festival to give literary artists a place of prominence.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

MEDIA ARTS PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
AMERICAN FILM INSTITUTE	5	4	2,425	4	4	2,700	4	4	2,700
FILM/VIDEO ART	678	169	3,484	693	162	3,400	672	157	3,350
PROGRAMMING IN THE ARTS a/	85	44	6,470	93	42	6,750	93	42	6,800
RADIO PROJECTS	110	38	450	135	40	450	145	40	450
SPECIAL PROJECTS	6	6	185	4	4	100	4	4	100
PROGRAM TOTAL	884	261	13,014	929	252	13,400	918	247	13,400

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
AMERICAN FILM INSTITUTE	2,425	0	2,425	2,700	0	2,700	2,700	0	2,700
FILM/VIDEO ART	3,484	0	3,484	3,400	0	3,400	3,350	0	3,350
PROGRAMMING IN THE ARTS a/	5,270	1,200	6,470	5,350	1,400	6,750	5,300	1,500	6,800
RADIO PROJECTS	450	0	450	450	0	450	450	0	450
SPECIAL PROJECTS	185	0	185	100	0	100	100	0	100
PROGRAM TOTAL	11,814	1,200	13,014	12,000	1,400	13,400	11,900	1,500	13,400

a/ In FY 89, excludes $490 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $765 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
In FY 90, excludes $765 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds; includes $500 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds carried into FY 91.
In FY 91, excludes $500 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds; includes $500 of FY 91/92 Treasury funds carried into FY 92.

MEDIA ARTS

Purpose

The purpose of the Media Arts Program is to: 1) help produce high quality artworks in media (film, radio, video); 2) assist their distribution through broadcast, cable, exhibition, and cassette, furthering the appreciation and understanding of the media arts; and, 3) in keeping with the President's desire to preserve and promote our cultural heritage, preserve and interpret the best media works of the past and present, thereby sustaining our cultural memory, much of which is embodied in media artworks.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

The arts must compete for public television broadcast time with public affairs, science and nature programs. The difficulties of preparing and distributing major series have increased as private support has decreased. Leadership in developing arts series and improving their distribution is needed. As the millenium ends, there is a marvelous opportunity to rehearse the past century in each of the arts, a century of unprecedented change, thereby educating the audience to appreciate and understand how the arts -- and thus ourselves -- arrived at our present moment, and preparing the audience for the energetic discourse that each art will engender in the 21st century.

The high production cost of media works limits their number. Outside the commercial film and television industry, individual works in every genre (narrative, documentary, experimental, etc.) and series for broadcast are supported by a diminishing pool of foundation and corporate funders. The search for new sources of support is an ongoing priority.

Media arts centers (MACs), through quality exhibition programs, bring diversified media works to regional and national audiences and provide information and technical assistance to artists and organizations in the media field. Though still young as institutions, they have demonstrated impressive growth. In the eighties, they have clarified their mission, and several identified the overriding need in the media field -- the development of the ability to read and interpret the images and sounds in which we are surrounded from childhood on. The need to teach media literacy at the school and adult education level is, for several MACs, the highest priority in the field. Major MACs are increasing the number of services they provide to their local, regional and national communities; their continued growth is of great benefit to the field. However, all media arts organizations must expand their fund-raising efforts to insure continued growth.

The National Center for Film and Video Preservation, established in 1984, leads the national effort to preserve our film and video heritage. The Center's priorities are the implementation of a national moving image data base of all American film and television productions, completion of the American Film Institute's Catalog of American Feature Films, establishment of guidelines for television preservation, and actual physical preservation of film and video works. The Center urgently needs to establish a broader base of private support to carry out its mission.

The development of a strong arts programming capacity in radio has opened up a new spectrum of major series which have advanced the art of radio. The high level of production skills and sophisticated distribution mechanisms which now exist in radio provide the support systems necessary to launch major long-term projects. The revival of radio drama, and the maturing of talented producers provides an opportunity to add to radio's achievements in this classic genre.

Independent filmmakers are making high quality films often at very reasonable costs, but fund-raising difficulties often extend production time and limit distribution. This pool of talent is not being cultivated to the extent that it should.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

Programming in the Arts brings to the widest public the best in the arts, past and contemporary. It continues support for nine television series: Great Performances (including Dance in America), American Playhouse, Alive From Off Center, Metropolitan Opera Presents, Live From Lincoln Center, WonderWorks, Point of View (POV), The Independents (a cable series), and American Masters. The first grant to initiate a series designed to interpret the course of the arts during this century has been made. A series on the arts is in development for eight- to ten-year-old children. A series on the history of film is also being developed. The distribution of Endowment-funded programs is being facilitated by assisting the preparation of cassettes from Dance in America, American Masters, and independent media productions. In radio, several ongoing series are supported, e.g., music (classical, jazz, new music), literature (poetry, fiction), and drama. The Program is encouraging further development of a new series: dramatizations of contemporary classic works of American literature.

The growth of the best media arts centers and national service organizations has been steadily supported, and the Program has been working with the National Alliance of Media Arts Centers and state arts agencies to provide assistance to new and developing media arts centers. Several media arts centers are developing media literacy programs. In the nationally competitive Film/Video Production area, grants have been made at higher levels to both organizations and individuals, and the Regional Fellowships subcategory assists media artists with small grants.

Through the National Center for Film and Video Preservation at the American Film Institute, the Endowment contributes significantly to the conversion of nitrate into stable acetate film. The Center also facilitates the preservation of our television heritage.

In the Radio Projects category (which supports the production of single radio programs, series, and services to radio artists and organizations) recent radio production applicants have exhibited a high level of skill and more ambitious distribution plans, resulting in fewer but larger grants with greater quality and impact.

1. The American Film Institute

Funds in this category support:

a) A variety of projects initiated by the American Film Institute (AFI) including exhibition, television and video services, training of students at the Center for Advanced Film and Television Studies, and scholarly and library services.

b) The National Center for Film and Video Preservation, which houses the AFI/Arts Endowment Film Preservation Program of grants to archives, the AFI Catalog of Feature Films, and a national data base system of information on archival film and video holdings. It also works to increase public awareness of the importance of moving image preservation.

c) The AFI Independent Filmmaker Program, a grantmaking program administered by AFI for the Endowment. It supports media artists working in animated, documentary, experimental and narrative film and video.

Endowment support currently provides approximately 25 percent of the Institute's annual budget, with additional support provided by private contributions and membership fees. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding $2,700,000, the same amount that was awarded in FY 90.

Example - AFI Directing Workshop for Women: In FY 88, the AFI received a grant of $1,500,000 to support several ongoing activities. Among them is the Directing Workshop for Women (DWW). Created in 1974, the program is designed for women with considerable professional experience in television, film, video, or the dramatic arts (e.g., screenwriting, acting, producing, documentary filmmaking, etc.), but who have not had the opportunity to direct dramatic films or television programs. Workshop participants have access to production funds, professional actors from the Screen Actors Guild, seminars with leading film and television industry personnel, and other resources to complete a dramatic project. By developing and demonstrating their directing skills, women increase their career opportunities in film and television and influence the perception of women by the industry and the public. In the fall of 1988, seven films by DWW alumnae were aired nationally on the Arts and Entertainment Cable Network's "Shortstories" series: Point of Departure, directed by and starring Jennifer Warren; The Stronger, directed by Lee Grant; Circle, directed by Brianne Murphy; The Haircut, directed by Tamar Hoffs; The Doctor, directed by Jan Eliasberg; Bankrupt, directed by Katherine Helmond; and Very Good Girls, directed by Naomi Foner. The series was hosted by DWW alumna Marsha Mason. In 1989, Workshop member Matia Karrell's film project Cadillac Dreams was nominated for an Academy Award for Best Live Action Short Film. Private contributors to this program have included: the Ford Foundation, the McMurray Foundation, the Corporation for Public Broadcasting, the Sony Corporation of America, the Bohen Foundation, the Mary Pickford Foundation, as well as donations from Workshop alumna.

Example - Preservation: In FY 87, $110,000 was awarded to the Museum of Modern Art (MOMA) in New York City to support its ongoing film preservation program. With these funds, MOMA preserved 134 film titles ranging from

American slapstick comedy films recovered from European archives to Pathe hand-colored films to a recently discovered 1906 George Melies film. This grant also helped the Film Department complete the restoration of the 1916 film classic, Intolerance, starring Lillian Gish (recently selected as one of 25 significant films for protection by the National Film Registry). The film, painstakingly restored to 209 minutes (almost its original length) premiered in 1916 at the Liberty Theater in New York City. This reconstructed version, complete with orchestral accompaniment, was shown at the 1989 New York Film Festival, and received a 5-minute standing ovation. Gillian Anderson, musicologist at the Library of Congress, conducted the Brooklyn Philharmonic and Chorus in Joseph Carl Breil's original score for the film. The eight-year reconstruction process was assisted through the cooperation of several American archives (the Library of Congress, UCLA Film Archive, Eastman House) and the Dansk Filmmuseum in Copenhagen, Denmark, which provided a master print of an 11,500-foot version dating from 1917. The restored version of Intolerance will be presented at the Pacific Film Archive in Berkeley, CA, and other sites around the United States, and at the 1990 Pordenone Silent Film Festival in Italy.

Example - Independent Filmmaker Program: In FY 88, a grant of $15,000 was awarded to Paul Glabicki of Pittsburgh, PA, for an experimental animated film. While animation is generally connected in the public's mind with cartoons, many serious artists are attracted to the possibilities it presents for combining drawing with movement and music. Paul Glabicki wanted to create a film based on a complex vocabulary of geometric forms and images. After four years of exhaustive effort, he completed Under the Sea, a 28-minute animated work. The film premiered in 1989 at the Carnegie Museum of Art, and later was included in the prestigious New York Film Festival. Each frame of the film was handcrafted by the artist, who teaches drawing and design at the University of Pittsburgh. The film's soundtrack uses spoken passages from Jules Verne's Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea, the book which gave the film its title and suggests the kind of imaginative journey it invites.

2. Film and Video Art

Grants are awarded in four subcategories:

a) Film/Video Production supports individual artists (and nonprofit organizations that assist them) in creating film and video works.

b) Media Arts Centers supports nonprofit organizations which exhibit film/video art, provide artists with access to production and post-production facilities, conduct workshops and seminars, and publish catalogues, program notes, and learned journals.

c) National Services assists organizations that contribute to a national system of support for media arts centers and artists.

d) Regional Fellowships assists seven media arts centers to administer grants to media artists at the regional level. These fellowships are jointly supported by the Endowment, the American Film Institute, state arts agencies, and private foundations.

In response to production applications for feature film projects, a Narrative Film Development subcategory was initiated in FY 88 to assist the development of independent narrative film. After three years as a pilot effort this subcategory will not be offered in FY 91 while results of the previous grants are evaluated.

In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 157 grants out of 672 applications aggregating $3,350,000 vs. 162 grants out of 693 applications aggregating $3,400,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Film/Video Production: In FY 87, a grant of $25,000 was awarded to Trinh T. Minh-ha of Berkeley, CA, for the production of Surname Viet Given Name Nam, a film about the history and people of Vietnam as seen through the eyes of Vietnamese women. Completed in 1989, this feature-length film employs traditional folk poetry and music as well as dramatic reenactments and archival footage to portray the repression faced by Vietnamese women in their society. While addressing problems these women face, the film also honors their role in preserving their nation's cultural heritage. Ms. Minh-ha was born in Vietnam and immigrated to the United States in 1970. She is a professor in the department of cinema at San Francisco State University. Surname Viet Given Name Nam has been widely shown (Museum of Modern Art, Asian American Film Festival, London Film Festival) and highly praised ("a sorrowful, lyrical, and skillfully constructed filmed essay..." Variety).

Example - Media Arts Centers: In FY 88, a grant of $16,000 was awarded to the Oregon Art Institute's Northwest Film and Video Center (NWFVC) in Portland, OR, to support film/video exhibition activities, education programs, publications, and touring and library programs. The Northwest Film and Video Center is the most comprehensive media arts center in the Pacific Northwest. During 1988 the NWFVC presented 353 programs to a total audience of more than 36,000 people. The NWFVC's video/filmmaker-in-schools program is among the most active in the country; 80 weeks of residencies involved more than 50 schools throughout the state. The Animator, the NWFVC's newsletter with a circulation of 2,500, provides articles and resource information for artists and institutions regionally and nationally. The Center provides broad distribution for its film/video class schedules on a bimonthly basis, and provides regional circulation for Northwest Film and Video Festival and International Film Festival programs. The Center also organizes tours of outstanding work by regional media artists.

Example - National Services: In FY 88, a grant of $6,300 was awarded to the U.S. Film-National Film Forum of Salt Lake City, UT, to support the 10th annual United States Film Festival. Sponsored by the Sundance Institute, which was founded by actor/director Robert Redford, the festival is widely regarded as the premiere showcase for new American cinema, bringing together independent filmmakers with leading figures of the Hollywood studios, film critics, and commercial distributors. The 1988 event, held January 15-24 in Park City, UT, attracted nearly 29,000 people. The program featured a competition for new dramatic and documentary films, a special screening of the restored 1925 silent film classic Ben-Hur, technical seminars on cinematography and the use of music in films, and a retrospective tribute to Sam Fuller, the American film director whose dark, tough, loaded-with-action films are particular favorites of European cineastes. Additional support for the festival was provided by the Utah Film Development Commission, corporate sponsors (AT&T, American Express), and local businesses.

Example - Regional Fellowships: In FY 89, a grant of $50,000 was awarded to the Center for New Television in Chicago, IL, to support media artists' fellowships in the Great Lakes region (Illinois, Ohio, Michigan and Indiana). A panel of nationally recognized media artists made the selections. 168 applications were received; 26 film and video artists received grants ranging from $1,000 to $5,000. A total of $66,280 was given to projects such as More Than A Game, a video documentary on the dynamics of inner city playground basketball, and an experimental film, City, exploring light, architecture, space, people and the everyday activity of Chicago. The Center for New Television raised an additional $26,780 from state arts councils in Illinois, Indiana and Ohio to support these fellowships. In addition to the financial benefits, these recipients became more closely involved with the Center, gaining access to production and post-production facilities, to works-in-progress screenings, and exhibitions. They also received assistance in the distribution of their work. Many regional fellows have received national attention because of this initial boost to their careers.

3. Programming in the Arts

The Programming in the Arts category fulfills the Endowment's charge to bring the best of the arts to the widest possible public by supporting major television and radio broadcast series on the arts. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 42 grants out of 93 applications aggregating $6,800,000 vs. 42 grants out of 93 applications aggregating $6,750,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Television Programming in the Arts: In FY 89, a grant of $1,200,000 was awarded to Educational Broadcasting Corporation (New York City) to support the continuation of Great Performances, the only regular prime-time performing arts series on national television. Each year, during its 26-week season, the series presents outstanding performances in dance, theater, opera and music to millions of television viewers. This season is the fifteenth anniversary of Dance in America as part of the Great Performances series. These dance programs form an important archive documenting a vital era of creativity in the art form. An important addition will be made to that archive with the February 2, 1990, broadcast of Dance in America: a program of native American dances performed by the American Indian Dance Theater. This program will include a range of sacred, seasonal and celebratory Indian dances performed by members of more than a dozen tribes. Company members will discuss their art and its crucial role in Indian life in segments taped in Oklahoma and at the Zuni Pueblo in New Mexico. Other Great Performances this season include a performance documentary on some of the nation's best young musicians who make up Miami, Florida's recently-formed New World Symphony, Kern and Hammerstein's classic musical Show Boat from the Paper Mill Playhouse in New Jersey, and Lincoln Center's Tony-winning production of Thornton Wilder's Our Town.

Example - Radio Programming in the Arts: In FY 89, a grant of $35,000 was awarded to WHYY, Philadelphia, PA, for the production of Fresh Air, an hour-long daily program interviewing artists and commenting on the arts. Critics and commentators for the program include Newsday columnist John Leonard, film reviewer Stephen Schieff, music critic Lloyd Schwartz, and jazz writer Kevin Whitehead. The host and producer of Fresh Air is Terry Gross, whose interviews have been called the best arts features on the airwaves. Her guests have included John Updike, James Baldwin, Arthur Miller, Joyce Carol Oates, Toni Morrison, Mario Vargas Llosa, Gregory Hines, Max Roach, Louis Malle, John Sayles, Robert Altman, John Schlesinger, and Sidney Lumet. Fresh Air has received an Ohio State Award for excellence, the "Best Regularly Scheduled Talk Show" award of the New York International Radio Festival, and the CPB award for "Best Live Radio Program;" it is distributed by National Public Radio to 148 public radio stations.

4. Radio Projects

Grants in this category support outstanding single productions and series, radio workshops and residencies, provision of facilities to independent radio producers, conferences, and other services which foster the creative use of the medium. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 40 grants out of 145 applications aggregating $450,000 vs. 40 grants out of 135 applications aggregating $450,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Radio Production: In FY 89, a grant of $20,000 was awarded to Joe Frank of Venice, CA, for Joe Frank: Work in Progress, a weekly series of innovative radio programs using a nonlinear format which moves from intensely personal monologues to sketches performed by a cast as diverse as the subject matter. Such actors as F. Murray Abraham (Oscar winner for Amadeus) and Tim Jerome (Tony nominee for Me and My Girl) share the air with nonprofessional performers from everyday life. Joe Frank: Work in Progress, produced in the studios of KCRW, Santa Monica, CA, is distributed nationally by National Public Radio. The series was this year's winner of the CPB/Performance and the Armstrong awards. Audience response is summed up by a listener from Los Angeles who wrote, "I just caught your show on my car radio. It had such an extraordinary effect on me I had to pull off the freeway and sat in awe and recognition until the end .... Thank you for your courage, sensitivity, concern, and talent." Arts Endowment funding is very important to the field of independent radio production as it is one of the very few sources available to even the most innovative of producers such as Joe Frank.

4. Special Projects

In order to meet the special needs of the rapidly developing media art forms and their markets, special projects are occasionally initiated by the Media Arts Program. These projects are used to lever special funding, encourage participation in previously unexplored areas of media art, or to assist in its distribution or preservation. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 4 grants out of 4 applications aggregating $100,000 vs. 4 grants out of 4 applications aggregating $100,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a grant of $50,000 was awarded to the National Alliance of Media Arts Centers (NAMAC) in New York City to support the NAMAC State and Regional Media Arts Initiative, a national program of grants encouraging state and regional arts organizations to develop programs supporting media artists and media arts organizations. The first year of this pilot program, which elicited proposals from 32 states, supported 10 projects. They included a tour throughout the Southeast of works by eleven southeastern film and video artists sponsored by the Southern Arts Federation (Atlanta, GA) and the South Carolina Arts Commission (Columbia, SC); a conference sponsored by the Oregon Arts Commission and the Northwest Film and Video Center (Portland, OR) bringing together representatives from five state arts agencies (Oregon, Washington, Idaho, Montana, and Alaska), media centers, public broadcasting stations, universities, and libraries. Plans were developed for a Northwest Film Directory, the creation of a touring program, and a public television producers workshop for regional media artists.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

MUSEUM PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
CARE OF COLLECTIONS a/	203	126	2,160	219	106	2,200	210	120	2,200
MUSEUM PURCHASE PLAN	100	60	700	106	63	750	110	60	750
PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT	100	43	540	100	41	500	100	41	500
SPECIAL EXHIBITIONS b/	495	209	5,634	475	195	5,750	480	195	5,750
SPECIAL PROJECTS	2	2	72	8	4	100	7	2	75
UTILIZATION OF MUSEUM RESOURCES c/	244	114	3,293	249	113	3,500	255	118	3,525
PROGRAM TOTAL	1,144	554	12,399	1,157	522	12,800	1,162	536	12,800

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
CARE OF COLLECTIONS a/	1,960	200	2,160	1,700	500	2,200	1,700	500	2,200
MUSEUM PURCHASE PLAN	700	0	700	750	0	750	750	0	750
PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT	540	0	540	500	0	500	500	0	500
SPECIAL EXHIBITIONS b/	4,889	745	5,634	5,050	700	5,750	5,000	750	5,750
SPECIAL PROJECTS	72	0	72	100	0	100	75	0	75
UTILIZATION OF MUSEUM RESOURCES c/	3,038	255	3,293	3,300	200	3,500	3,275	250	3,525
PROGRAM TOTAL	11,199	1,200	12,399	11,400	1,400	12,800	11,300	1,500	12,800

a/ In FY 89, excludes $100 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds.
b/ In FY 89, excludes $73 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $70 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
In FY 90, excludes $70 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds.
c/ In FY 89, excludes $150 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds.

MUSEUM

Purpose

The Museum Program supports projects of the highest artistic quality that: 1) present works of art to the public; 2) preserve works of art; 3) encourage scholarly art documentation, and the development of educational programs that make materials accessible to the public and preserve America's cultural heritage; 4) assist museums in acquiring the work of living American artists; and 5) strengthen skills of professionals serving the field. General operating support is not provided.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Special exhibitions continue to be one of the principal ways that museums present art to the public. Such exhibitions include educational programs, lecture series, and publications, both scholarly and informal, that contribute to the public's understanding of art. Exhibitions are becoming more expensive to organize, in part owing to increased insurance premiums brought about by the rising dollar value of art. Support is needed for the touring of exhibitions with low rental fees in an effort to provide smaller institutions and rural audiences with more diverse quality programming.

Education in museums is widely perceived as lacking strong leadership. Collaboration between curators and educators is essential. Consistency rather than innovation is also seen as a key to effective educational programming. Collaborative efforts with schools to use museum collections to develop programs that enhance teaching of other disciplines should be encouraged. Encouraging visits at an early age through schools and with the family may be the most effective way to develop an appreciation of art. Museums would benefit from involving multicultural communities in a more active way.

Permanent collections of museums need to be displayed and interpreted with the same degree of imagination as that brought to special exhibitions, and documentation of permanent collections remains a priority. Care of collections is likewise of concern to museums, which must continue to improve the conditions in which works of art are exhibited or stored. Controlled environment remains a serious problem and many art storage facilities are inadequate; however, support for these unglamorous necessities is hard to find. Treatment of works of art by conservators is equally important, as are internships and master-apprenticeships to train conservators.

Museums are seeking to make information readily retrievable and distributable, both to scholars and the public. Leadership is needed to consolidate approaches to computerization of information on museum collections.

Tax issues continue to be discussed in the museum field. Museums have been associated with nonprofit entities such as universities and hospitals whose earned income ventures have been accused by small business interests as unfair competition which should be regulated through the Unrelated Business Income Tax (UBIT). Museums vigorously oppose UBIT; they have not been the specific target of challenge, yet so far they have been unsuccessful in dissociating themselves from the other nonprofits. In addition, statistics compiled for

1988 by the Association of Art Museum Directors show that the number of works of art donated to art museums is down substantially from the period prior to the Tax Reform Act of 1986. This comes at a time when high prices make it difficult for most museums to continue collecting by purchase. Whatever the outcome of discussions on tax issues, museums need to increase their endowments and thereby preserve programmatic activities most susceptible to cutbacks in times of financial adversity.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

In addressing the field issues, the Museum Program recognizes that two other federal agencies make grants to museums: the National Endowment for the Humanities and the Institute of Museum Services. The Program regularly consults with staffs of these two agencies to ensure no overlap in funding.

Special Exhibitions of art from all historical periods remain a Program priority. Funding is also provided for publications and educational programs related to special exhibitions. Exhibitions that tour beyond the organizing institution are encouraged. In FY 91, the Program will implement an initiative to support touring of exhibitions to small and rural communities at low rental fees.

The Program will continue to provide grants for museums to research, interpret and present permanent collections, and to create interpretive programs relating their own collections to special exhibitions. It will continue to encourage collection sharing and long-term loans of objects and/or collections to other institutions as a means of making art more readily available to communities lacking major collections of art. Support of educational programs, especially those which involve the collaboration of curators with educators, and those which can be properly evaluated, remain a priority. Programs that provide a higher level of training for docents are also encouraged.

Through the Special Artistic Initiative the Program encourages museums to undertake significant long-term planning by supporting a series of coordinated programs linked together by a unifying thematic framework.

The Program continues to provide support for the conservation of works of art and for the enhancement of spaces where works of art are exhibited or stored through improved storage, security and climate control. Additional support is offered for master-apprenticeships in conservation and for student stipends at graduate training centers in conservation.

The Museum Purchase Plan assists museums to acquire the works of living American artists. This support gives curators and directors the discretion to exercise their professional judgment in buying art without having to rely on random donations and bequests. It also provides support for contemporary American visual artists.

Professional Development will be assisted through support of museum internships and fellowships for full-time museum professionals, enabling them to improve their professional qualifications and keep current with trends in the field.

The Art and Artifacts Indemnity Program, administered by the Museum Program, provides insurance indemnity for works of art borrowed from abroad for special exhibitions and for certain U.S. exhibitions traveling abroad. Over the years this program has saved American museums millions of dollars in insurance premiums, thereby facilitating the continuation of exhibition programs.

1. Care of Collections

This category supports the permanent art collections of museums through a) conservation (e.g., surveys of collection needs, actual conservation, purchase of conservation equipment, internships, master-apprenticeships, workshops, and support for major conservation training centers); and b) collection maintenance (e.g., surveys of collection maintenance needs; and updating or installation of climate control equipment, security systems and storage facilities). In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 120 grants out of 210 applications aggregating $2,200,000 vs. 106 grants out of 219 applications aggregating $2,200,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Collection Maintenance: In FY 87, a grant of $181,700 was awarded to the Virginia Museum of Fine Arts in Richmond, VA, to support the installation of air handling units as part of the Museum's effort to improve the climate control in its 1955 and 1976 wings as well as in a portion of its original 1934 building. Housed in these sections are the Museum's important collections of ancient art (bronzes, bone carvings, and limestone sculpture), African art (wood, ivory, and fiber materials), and a collection of Indian and South Asian art (wood, paper, cloth, crystal, and metal) which is among the finest in the United States.

Example - Conservation: In FY 37, a grant of $15,000 was awarded to the Seattle Art Museum to support the conservation treatment of a collection of ten Chinese stone sculptures. Dating from the Song (A.D. 976 - 1279) to the Qing dynasty (A.D. 1648 - 1911) and representing some of the finest examples in the Western Hemisphere, these large scale funerary sculptures have stood outside the Museum in Volunteer Park since they were brought from China in the 1930s. Treatment included an experimental method of subjecting the stone to high intensity flashes from a ruby filament flash lamp. Biological growth loosened and killed by this process could then be removed with soft brushes, thereby eliminating the use of toxic chemicals and highly concentrated bleaching solutions. The contribution to the science of conservation made through this project is soon to reported in major conservation publications.

2. Museum Purchase Plan

This category is designed to encourage museums to build and expand their permanent collections through the purchase of works by living American artists. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 60 grants out of 110 applications aggregating $750,000 vs. 63 grants out of 106 applications aggregating $750,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $15,000 was awarded to the Arkansas Arts Center in Little Rock to purchase drawings by contemporary American artists. The Center acquired eleven drawings by such artists as William T. Wiley, Al Held, Gregory Amenoff, Diane Oliver, and Raymond Saunders, all but one of which was created within the last eight years. The addition of these monumental and for the most part nonfigurative drawings allowed the Center to present imagery unfamiliar to the Center's public and significantly strengthen its important collection of 20th-century American drawings.

3. Professional Development

The Program assists Professional Development through a) Fellowships for Museum Professionals, and b) Museum Training (formal training, internships and apprenticeships). In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 41 grants out of 100 applications aggregating $500,000 vs. 41 grants out of 100 applications aggregating $500,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Fellowships for Museum Professionals: In FY 87, a grant of $17,300 was awarded to Leslie M. Swartz of Boston, MA, to travel to the city of Hangzhou in the People's Republic of China. As Senior Developer of Chinese Resources and Director of Teacher Services at the Children's Museum in Boston, Ms. Swartz has been involved in a large-scale comparative study of arts education in China. This trip allowed her to study the changes in form and content of the arts and of arts education in China as well as learn about current trends in Chinese art. Ms. Swartz' experience in Hangzhou has contributed significantly to her expertise in the field and has allowed her to write with greater authority on the complex art scene in China.

Example - Museum Training: In FY 87, the Program awarded a grant of $15,000 to the Detroit Institute of Arts, Detroit, MI, to support an internship in the Department of Graphic Arts. Working with an internationally recognized collection of prints and drawings, the intern, Susanna Patrick, developed an understanding of the role and responsibilities of a curator of graphic arts and also increased her practical knowledge of prints, drawings, and photographs. She participated in the preparation of three exhibitions, one a major international loan exhibition, "Sixteenth Century Tuscan Drawings from the Uffizi." Using the travel stipend awarded, Ms. Patrick studied graphic arts collections in California at the J. Paul Getty Museum in Santa Monica, the Huntington Art Collection in San Marino, the Los Angeles County Museum of Art, and the Norton Simon Museum in Pasadena. Ms. Patrick is currently working in the Print Department at the Toledo Museum of Art, Toledo, OH.

4. Special Exhibitions

This category assists museums and other organizations to develop, tour or participate in exhibitions of borrowed works. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 195 grants out of 480 applications aggregating $5,750,000 vs. 195 grants out of 475 applications aggregating $5,750,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a grant of $45,000 was awarded to the Museum of Fine Arts, Houston, TX, to organize an exhibition of contemporary art by American artists of Hispanic descent. This exhibition, the first to be organized by a museum to survey in depth the range of expression to be found in contemporary Hispanic art, featured 180 works by 30 artists. The exhibition opened in Houston in May 1987 and then toured nationally to the Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington, DC; the Lowe Art Museum, Miami, FL; the Museum of New Mexico, Santa Fe, NM; the Los Angeles County Museum of Art, Los Angeles, CA; and the Brooklyn Museum, Brooklyn, NY. While the exhibition was on view in Houston, the staff scheduled a number of related programs, among them lectures, symposia, a music festival, as well as complementary exhibitions featuring the work of Houston area Hispanic artists. The exhibition received wide coverage in the press and involved significant participation of multicultural communities at each of its venues. A 236-page catalogue will serve as a lasting record of the project.

5. Special Projects

This category supports innovative projects of national or regional significance not eligible under other funding categories. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 2 grants out of 7 applications aggregating $75,000 vs. 4 grants out of 8 applications aggregating $100,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a grant of $21,500 was awarded to the Association of Art Museum Directors in New York City to support a conference on the education programs of art museums at the Association's biannual meeting in Providence, RI. Participants explored a variety of strategies enabling museums to augment their commitment to education and address their increasingly diversified audiences. Attended by more than 100 museum directors, as well as a group of art museum educators, the conference began with an address by Neil Harris, professor of history at the University of Chicago, and was followed by three simultaneous breakout sessions on "New Technologies for Interpretation," "Administrative Strategies for Planning," and "Audience Research and Evaluation." The afternoon session included a presentation by artist Robert Irwin. Follow-up indicates that many of the directors intend to implement in their own museums one or several of the approaches discussed during the conference.

6. Utilization of Museum Resources

This category supports the permanent art collections of museums through grants to assist a) Presentation and Education (e.g., reinstallation, temporary exhibitions, collection sharing and education projects); b) Catalogue (e.g., documentation, research, and publication of museums' art collections); and c) Special Artistic Initiatives (to encourage museums to undertake long-term programming efforts to highlight aspects of their permanent collections and artistic resources). In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 118 grants out of 255 applications aggregating $3,525,000 vs. 113 grants out of 249 applications aggregating $3,500,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Catalogue: In FY 87, a grant of $35,000 was awarded to the Museum of Art, the Rhode Island School of Design, Providence, RI, to produce an illustrated catalogue of the Museum's collection of costumes and textiles. The catalogue, "A World of Costumes and Textiles," published in the fall of 1988, contains informative entries and photographs of more than 100 pieces covering Africa, Asia, Europe, and the Americas, as well as an introductory essay on the history of the collection. This exemplary catalogue takes its place among half a dozen earlier catalogues devoted to other aspects of the Museum's collection; together they form a long-lasting record of a comprehensive collection of painting, sculpture and decorative arts.

Example - Presentation: In FY 89, a grant of $70,500 was awarded to the Yellowstone Art Center, Billings, MT, to support a collection sharing project in which the Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington, DC, lent a major portion of its William A. Clark Collection to the Yellowstone Art Center and the Montana Historical Society in Helena. Clark, an early Montana senator who made his fortune in the local copper mines, used his wealth to build an art collection now at the Corcoran. The exhibition represented the cornerstone of Montana's 1989 Centennial year. It was the first time any of the collection was seen in the state, and the exhibition provided an opportunity through the two venues for a large number of the people of Montana to see important European and American paintings and drawings as well as a selection of antiquities and ceramic pieces, particularly Italian Renaissance majolica.

Example - Special Artistic Initiative: In FY 87, a grant of $100,000 was awarded to the McKissick Museum, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, to support an initiative by the Museum to strengthen its programming in the area of southern folk art. The Museum is developing a series of programs focusing on the aesthetic concepts and social settings that relate to southern artistic production and the history and current trends of southern folk art. The project includes exhibitions, conferences, lectures, multidisciplinary performances, publications, educational materials for children and adults, and a survey of folk art holdings in other museums and private collections in the Southeast.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

MUSIC PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

CATEGORY	FY 89 APPL	FY 89 GRANTS	FY 89 AMOUNT	FY 90 APPL	FY 90 GRANTS	FY 90 AMOUNT	FY 91 APPL	FY 91 GRANTS	FY 91 AMOUNT
ENSEMBLES a/	493	318	10,727	480	315	11,000	510	315	11,000
FELLOWSHIPS	701	106	875	820	103	875	840	107	875
PRESENTERS/FESTIVALS b/	378	215	2,353	367	233	2,275	385	228	2,300
TRAINING/RECORDING/CENTERS c/	194	118	1,668	232	127	1,750	238	128	1,725
PROGRAM TOTAL	1,766	757	15,624	1,899	778	15,900	1,973	778	15,900

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

CATEGORY	FY 89 DEF/ PROGRAM	FY 89 INDEF/ TREAS	FY 89 TOTAL	FY 90 DEF/ PROGRAM	FY 90 INDEF/ TREAS	FY 90 TOTAL	FY 91 DEF/ PROGRAM	FY 91 INDEF/ TREAS	FY 91 TOTAL
ENSEMBLES a/	7,473	3,254	10,727	7,500	3,500	11,000	7,350	3,650	11,000
FELLOWSHIPS	875	0	875	875	0	875	875	0	875
PRESENTERS/FESTIVALS b/	2,253	100	2,353	2,175	100	2,275	2,200	100	2,300
TRAINING/RECORDING/CENTERS c/	1,522	146	1,668	1,650	100	1,750	1,575	150	1,725
PROGRAM TOTAL	12,124	3,500	15,624	12,200	3,700	15,900	12,000	3,900	15,900

a/ In FY 89, excludes $362 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $640 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
In FY 90, excludes $640 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds, includes $500 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds carried into FY 91.
In FY 91, excludes $500 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds; includes $500 of FY 91/92 Treasury funds carried into FY 92.

b/ In FY 89, includes $46 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90. In FY 90, excludes $46 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds.

c/ In FY 89, excludes $32 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $7 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
In FY 90, excludes $7 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds.

MUSIC

Purpose

The Music Program supports excellence, diversity, and vitality in music and access to it by assisting individuals and organizations that create, perform and present music of the highest quality. The development of diverse and new audiences is encouraged, as well as the performance of American music. Support is available through four major funding areas: Ensembles; Fellowships; Presenters/Festivals; and Training/Recording/Centers for New Music Resources and Services to Composers/Special Projects.

Needs and Opportunity in the Field

The music field is perhaps the largest and most diverse of the arts disciplines. Its needs and opportunities are as different as its forms and practitioners and are thus extremely varied. A summary would include at least the following:

Ensembles: Orchestras and choruses benefit from devoting more time to activities that assist their artistic development, such as expansion of repertoire or increased rehearsal time. Smaller ensembles (chamber music, new music, jazz) need more local exposure as well as increased touring opportunities. The financial stability of both the nation's major musical organizations and its smaller ensembles is of continuing concern.

Individuals: Emerging and lesser known solo recitalists need additional exposure and management assistance. Gifted American conductors merit increased performance opportunities. Jazz artists deserve greater recognition, more consistent bookings, and wider exposure; jazz apprentices need continued study opportunities with jazz professionals. Since it is the composer who makes possible the music as well as its performers, producers, presenters, educators, audiences, and critics, monetary assistance must persist.

Presentation: Nonprofit presenters need assistance in developing their knowledge of the range of music available today, as well as sounder bases of support and larger audiences. Their presentation of emerging and lesser known American artists to broad segments of the American public and their willingness to take artistic risks must be encouraged. Audiences could benefit by increased performances of works by American composers, both premiere and subsequent performances.

Professional Training: Our leading training institutions need help in their efforts to provide greater breadth of education to young professionals and in addressing the gap between formal training and career entry.

Recording: Nonprofit companies that record American musicians performing American music need assistance, especially with distribution and marketing.

Centers for New Music Resources/Services to Composers: Contemporary musical needs, such as equipping innovative facilities and securing specialized technological service, must be met. The necessary equipment is too large and too expensive for individuals to develop and maintain. The Program continues to recognize the vitality of those organizations that provide support services to composers on a national and regional basis, in the form of workshops, newsletters, seminars, and technical assistance.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

Through its 22 funding categories and subcategories the Program encourages artists who create music through fellowships, and encourages the highest artistic and administrative standards through support of symphony and chamber orchestras, choruses, and smaller vocal and instrumental ensembles in various genres. Grants provide incentives for the engagement of young conductors; the commissioning and performance of new works; assistance to emerging solo recitalists; performance and study opportunities for jazz artists; recognition of jazz masters; opportunities to record American music for solo, duo, and ensemble performers; the presentation of talented emerging artists and ensembles; the presentation of minority artists and the performance of works by minority composers; and opportunities for diverse American audiences to experience a wide range of musical styles and traditions.

1. Ensembles

This category supports seasons of symphony and chamber orchestras, chamber music/new music and jazz ensembles, and choruses. Support is designed to raise performance standards and to broaden the repertoire; encourage the employment of emerging American artists, including conductors; assist outreach and education programs; and support consortia of presenter organizations in commissioning and performing new works. Composers' residencies are also supported. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 315 grants out of 510 applications aggregating $11,000,000 vs. 315 grants out of 480 applications aggregating $11,000,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Orchestras: In FY 88, an $80,000 grant was awarded to the Fort Worth Symphony Orchestra in Fort Worth, TX, to support touring and educational performances. During the 1988-89 season, six new sponsoring cities were added to the Symphony's touring schedule. The Symphony collaborated with local arts groups and artists, providing quality symphonic performances while establishing strong local ties to the communities it visited. Local guest artist Vladimir Viardo appeared with the orchestra in Georgetown, TX; in Denton, TX, the orchestra performed Mozart's Requiem with the University of Northern Texas Choir; and in Palestine, TX, a local 200-voice choir performed Handel's Messiah with the orchestra. Several newly instituted educational concerts included 11 in-school programs in seven different schools, reaching 5,800 children of all ethnic and economic backgrounds; a three-concert Saturday morning series was offered at a low price, targeted for elementary children and their parents; and the Symphony performed in rehearsal with the Texas Christian University Orchestra, enabling students to work on 20th-century music with professional musicians.

Example - Choruses: In FY 88, a grant of $8,500 was awarded to the San Francisco Girls Chorus to support master teachers' fees and an increase in salary for the assistant music director. The assistant music director was able to assume full-time administration of the training program, freeing the artistic director to supervise the Master Teacher Program, plan and research repertoire, and work with chorus alumnae. During the period of this grant, the San Francisco Girls Chorus expanded its activities to include outreach activities for low-income, racial/ethnic minority females in the East Bay communities. Auxiliary choruses were established in Oakland. Performances reached audiences of more than 100,000 in 1988-89.

Example - Chamber Music/New Music Ensembles: In FY 88, a $2,500 grant was awarded to the Milwaukee Music Ensemble in Milwaukee, WI, to support musicians' fees and related costs for performances of new American music during the summer of 1988. The Ensemble is known for innovative programming at nontraditional sites and collaboration with artists of various disciplines (dancers from the Independent Artists Alliance of Wisconsin, the Great Lakes Poem Band, Roseweed Percussion Group, local poet/performers Mark Anderson, and singer/songwriter Claudia Schmidt). For the first time, the ensemble was able to sell a season subscription series. Milwaukee Music Ensemble is now included in the local performing arts fund drive.

Example - Jazz Ensembles: In FY 88, an $11,000 grant was awarded to Rebirth, Inc. in Detroit, MI, to support Wendell Harrison and Friends' concert-workshop series for the Detroit public schools. The 1988-89 presentations were made in one middle school, three elementary schools, and nine high schools. Youth and faculty audiences totaled 5,100. Students were involved in promoting the series as well as in the technical staging of each concert. One-hour improvisation workshops were conducted for non-music students. Rebirth is working with the Detroit Board of Education on establishing a possible permanent jazz program for the Detroit public schools.

Example - Composers in Residence: In FY 87, a $15,000 grant was awarded to the Fairbanks Symphony Association in Fairbanks, AK, to support composer John L. Adams's residency with the Fairbanks Symphony Association and the Arctic Chamber Orchestra. The residency included two commissions performed on each orchestra's subscription series, a recital featuring Adams's works, composer and performers discussing the works following the concerts, and radio programs and lectures at the University of Alaska on the composer's compositions. All concerts were broadcast statewide on radio.

2. Fellowships

Under this category, support is provided to both composers and performers. Composers are supported to create new works, complete works in progress, and collaborate with other creative artists such as librettists and choreographers. The category also supports individual jazz performers and composers, provides opportunities for emerging jazz musicians to study with master artists, recognizes jazz masters, and assists solo recitalists. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 107 grants out of 840 applications aggregating $875,000 vs. 103 grants out of 820 applications aggregating $875,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Composers Fellowships: In FY 86, a $10,000 grant was awarded to Jonathan Kramer of Cincinnati, OH, to support the composition of a work for chamber orchestra. The completed work, Musica Pro Musica for the Pro Musica Chamber Orchestra in Columbus, OH, was premiered under the direction of Music Director Timothy Russell in November 1987. It has also been performed by many other chamber orchestras including the College-Conservatory of Music Philharmonic Orchestra in Cincinnati, conducted by Gerhard Samuel; the Cleveland Chamber Symphony, conducted by Edwin London; and the San Salvador Symphony, conducted by German Caceres. Plans are under way to record the piece on compact disk.

Example - Jazz Fellowships: In FY 88, a $10,000 grant was awarded to Richard Lawn in Austin, TX, to support the composition of a jazz ballet entitled "Mirrors" and subtitled "Four Reflections in Jazz and Dance." The work was premiered at the Grant Concert Hall of the University of Texas Performing Arts Complex. During a two-month period, the University of Texas Jazz Orchestra under Mr. Lawn's direction rehearsed six hours per week to prepare the composition (and others) for the College of Fine Arts' 50th Anniversary Celebration performance which was attended by 2,200 people and broadcast in Austin and San Antonio, TX. The grant also allowed for the professional copying of "Mirrors." The entire ballet (score and parts) will be available from Fault Line Publications in Arlington, TX.

Example - Solo Recitalists Fellowships: In FY 86, an $11,250 grant was awarded to Robert A. Black in Hartford, CT, to support the costs of solo double bass recitals throughout the United States during 1987-88. With the assistance of this grant, Mr. Black was able to perform 39 individual events: 15 university performances; nine performances at museums, libraries, and on community concert series; six elementary and preparatory school performances; and nine master classes, workshops, and lectures. His tour covered 15 states in New England, the Mid-Atlantic, South, Southwest, Midwest, and West. Programmed for the tour were compositions by 23 composers, most of whom were American, including the world premiere of five new works.

3. Presenters/Festivals

This category is designed to bring high quality music performances to the widest possible public. It encourages the presentation of a variety of musical genres and styles, including American music. Grants assist presenting organizations in providing performances of chamber music/new music ensembles, jazz ensembles, solo recitalists, choruses, and orchestras. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 228 grants out of 385 applications aggregating $2,300,000 vs. 233 grants out of 367 applications aggregating $2,275,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Chamber Music/New Music Presenters: In FY 88, a $22,000 grant was awarded to the Santa Fe Chamber Music Festival in Santa Fe, NM, to support the 1988-89 season of the Festival. In its sixteenth season, the Festival included 38 concerts in the New Mexico Museum of Fine Arts, six youth concerts in northern New Mexico locations, five special outreach concerts to disabled and elderly audiences, six open rehearsals, and six "Musical Conversation" lectures by Festival artists. In addition to the programming of music from the baroque, all-Beethoven, and "Music of the Masters" concerts, the Festival distinguished itself in the presentation of contemporary music. The American Society for Composers, Authors, and Publishers (ASCAP) awarded First Prize to the Festival in 1988 as a presenter which demonstrated a commitment to programming music composed since 1945. The Festival's 1988 Composer in Residence was Morton Subotnick, a pioneer in the field of electronic music, who composed a new work for the Festival which received its world premiere in July 1988. Total attendance at the evening concerts was 14,066. The season was broadcast over National Public Radio, reaching an additional estimated 375,000 people.

Example - Jazz Presenters: In FY 88, a $3,400 grant was awarded to Cityfolk in Dayton, OH, for its third annual Jazz Tradition series. Concert presentations featured the Art Farmer Quintet with Clifford Jordan, solo pianist Shirley Horn, and Ellis Marsalis-Alvin Batiste-Ed Blackwell. Audiences for the three concerts totaled more than 1,200 with an overflow audience for the trio performance. An educational forum, "Keeping the Legacy Alive," was also presented at Central State University. Guest speakers included jazz educators Ellis Marsalis, Alvin Batiste, and Dr. Kumla Amoaku. Cityfolk garnered a number of individual contributions and new volunteers from audience members in response to the concerts. In addition to providing an alternative to jazz club performances, Cityfolk activities have increased opportunities for jazz artists who wish to extend their touring to the Midwest.

Example - Multi-Music Presenters: In FY 89, a $3,000 grant was awarded to the Orcas Theatre and Community Center on Orcas Island in Eastsound, WA. The grant was used for the Centennial Celebration Concert Series, designed to meet multiple goals appropriate to a small center seeking to establish a regional presence in the northwest arts community. As a celebration of the state of Washington's 100th birthday, the series was built around the centennial theme "Promise of the Future." The primary artistic goal was to provide a venue for emerging Washington artists to share the platform in varied concert and workshop events with major national solo and chamber musicians such as the Kodaly Duo: James Buswell, violinist, and Edgar Meyer, double bassist. With stellar artists performing at the Center, a new and broader audience was reached. Though the events were targeted for a local audience which is geographically isolated, they attracted persons from the equally remote communities of San Juan and Lopez Islands.

Example - Music Festivals: In FY 88, a $3,000 grant was awarded to Appalachian State University in Boone, NC, to support the music portion of the festival, "An Appalachian Summer." Funds were used for artists' fees for the North Carolina Symphony and the Broyhill Chamber Ensemble, guest artist mezzo-soprano Katherine Ciesinski, and a portion of the Artistic Director's salary. More than 28,000 people enjoyed live music concerts. The North Carolina Symphony performed six major concerts on Appalachian State University's campus, as well as six runout concerts in rural communities. The resident eight-member Broyhill Chamber Ensemble performed six chamber concerts at the Broyhill Music Center. One of the Ensemble's performances was aired on the University of North Carolina's public television station, reaching an additional 150,000 persons.

4. Training/Recording/Centers/Services/Special Projects

Professional training and career development for talented emerging musicians are supported under this category. Assistance is also provided for the recording and distribution of American music; to centers for new music, enabling composers to have ready access to new technological equipment; and to organizations providing services to composers collectively. In addition, the category responds to innovative and exemplary projects that will have a broad impact on the music field but are not eligible under other categories described in the Music Program's guidelines. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 128 grants out of 238 applications aggregating $1,725,000 vs. 127 grants out of 232 applications aggregating $1,750,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Music Professional Training: In FY 88, a $23,000 grant was awarded to the Orchestral Association in Chicago, IL, to support the scholarship aid program of the Civic Orchestra of Chicago, the training orchestra of the Chicago Symphony. The program included private lessons, sectional rehearsals, full orchestra rehearsals, concerts, sight-reading lessons, chamber music programs, solo performance opportunities, and audition preparation seminars.

Example - Career Development: In FY 88, a $4,000 grant was awarded to the Great Lakes Performing Artist Associates in Ann Arbor, MI, to support management services for regional solo recitalists in Michigan, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Minnesota, Wisconsin, western New York, and western Pennsylvania. Funds were used for professional management and to develop a network of Great Lakes states regional presenters in an effort to increase engagements for their artists. Between 1987 and 1988, the number of artists for whom recitals were booked increased from 18 to 22; the number of recitals booked for these artists increased from 131 to 150.

Example - Music Recording: In FY 88, a $4,700 grant was awarded to pianist J. Cary Lewis of Decatur, GA, for a duo recording with cellist Dorothy Lewis. The recording features repertoire by southern composers Edwin Robertson, Robert Boury, William Presser, Edwin Gerschefski, and Curtis Bryant. Released in 1989 by Gasparo Records of Nashville, TN, the repertoire focuses on specific regional developments in contemporary American music.

Example - Services to Composers: In FY 88, a $3,000 grant was awarded to the Sundance Institute for Film and Television in Salt Lake City, UT, to support the Film Composers Laboratory which provides assistance to talented composers, costs for preserving and reconstructing film music, and workshops for film composers. A panel of experienced film composers selected Composing Fellows to take part in an intensive three-week program of composing, arranging, conducting, and recording (with the Utah Symphony) music for motion pictures. The workshops provide film composers with the opportunity to hear their works performed.

Example - Centers for New Music Resources: In FY 88, a $9,500 grant was awarded to Stanford University's Center for Computer Research in Music and Acoustics (CCRMA) in Stanford, CA, to support the maintenance of a digital synthesizer, mainframe computer, and disk drives. The grant enabled the Center to maintain the equipment needed for resident and visiting composers. Stanford University's CCRMA, one of the finest electronic music studios in the country, provides a resource for composers all over the nation to create new musical works.

Example - Special Projects: In FY 87, an $8,000 grant was awarded to the American Dance Festival (ADF) in Durham, NC, to support a composers/choreographers residency program. The 1987 Young Choreographers and Composers in Residence (YCC) brought together three composers and three choreographers who were paired to create three new works. The participating artists were in residence at the American Dance Festival for four weeks, culminating in performances at the Reynolds Industries Theater. During the first week of the project, workshop sessions were designed to create an atmosphere of openness and communication which is essential to the collaborative process. The integration of music and dance in three new works produced successful and exciting performances. The YCC program continues to be unique, offering the participants invaluable creative time and the unusual opportunity for uninterrupted daily work with musicians and dancers for an extended period of time.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

OPERA-MUSICAL THEATER PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
NEW AMERICAN WORKS/INDIV	33	5	95	25	6	125	30	6	125
NEW AMERICAN WORKS/ORGS	97	37	768	90	34	825	95	40	825
PROFESSIONAL COMPANIES a/	139	114	4,621	143	110	4,775	140	110	4,775
REGIONAL TOURING	28	23	393	25	21	400	28	24	400
SERVICES TO THE ART	20	14	469	17	17	475	19	16	475
SPECIAL PROJECTS	24	11	172	22	10	100	20	12	100
PROGRAM TOTAL	341	204	6,519	322	198	6,700	332	208	6,700

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
NEW AMERICAN WORKS/INDIV	95	0	95	125	0	125	125	0	125
NEW AMERICAN WORKS/ORGS	768	0	768	825	0	825	825	0	825
PROFESSIONAL COMPANIES a/	2,221	2,400	4,621	2,275	2,500	4,775	2,175	2,600	4,775
REGIONAL TOURING	393	0	393	400	0	400	400	0	400
SERVICES TO THE ART	469	0	469	475	0	475	475	0	475
SPECIAL PROJECTS	172	0	172	100	0	100	100	0	100
PROGRAM TOTAL	4,119	2,400	6,519	4,200	2,500	6,700	4,100	2,600	6,700

a/ In FY 89, excludes $84 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds; includes $416 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds carried into FY 90.
In FY 90, excludes $416 of FY 89/90 Treasury funds; includes $250 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds carried into FY 91.
In FY 91, excludes $250 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds; includes $250 of FY 91/92 Treasury funds carried into FY 92.

OPERA-MUSICAL THEATER

Purpose

The purpose of the Opera-Musical Theater Program is to encourage the highest artistic quality in all forms of opera and musical theater, to encourage the creation and production of original work in various genres, and to reach and enlarge audiences. The Program provides support to the field in the following ways: grants to professional opera, musical theater and theater companies; grants to companies and individuals to stimulate the composition, development and performance of new and rarely performed American works; assistance for regional touring of opera-musical theater; funding for service organizations, professional training programs, and other support systems; and grants for projects of exemplary significance to the opera and musical theater fields.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

The changes taking place in the opera and musical theater field today are at least partly reflected in the growth in size and number of producing organizations. In 1984 there were 89 professional American opera companies; in 1989 there were 118. The shift of musical theater production from the commercial to the nonprofit sector continues. These changes are resulting in the cultivation of new audiences and artists, and in less distinction in the lines between opera, musical theater, and experimental music theater. New systems of creating and developing musical theater works, nontraditional approaches to staging the standard repertory, new awareness of culturally diverse artists and forms, and new venues for production indicate lively activity and creativity in the field.

Productions, such as Peter Sellars' unconventional staging of Wagner's Tannhaeuser for the Lyric Opera of Chicago are attracting new and younger audiences, and are helping to expand audiences' understanding of the art form. Resident theater companies are becoming an increasingly popular venue for innovative work, and are also contributing to the cultivation of more diverse audiences. These theaters are beginning to give musicals all-important second and third productions without the Broadway cachet.

The production of opera and musical theater, however, remains the costliest of all "live" art forms. Even "small" works with minimal casts require musicians, orchestral arrangements, directors, choreographers, lights, sets, costumes, etc., whose costs generally increase at a rate greater than that of inflation and are almost never fully covered by box office income. There is a danger that fiscal considerations will become a greater determining factor than artistic vision in programming, that innovation will prove too risky financially, and that educational and outreach activities will suffer. Stronger organizational, educational and financial support can help companies not only to maintain the highest standards of opera and musical theater as cultural heritage, but also to venture beyond core repertory, traditional audiences, and conventional production modes.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

In addressing the needs of the field, the Opera-Musical Theater Program supports a broad spectrum of opera, musical theater, and experimental music theater of high artistic quality through direct support of producing organizations, assistance for creation and performance of new works, support for touring activities, and aid to service organizations and projects which contribute to the development and future of the art form. The Program's areas of support are divided into the following categories:

1. New American Works/Individuals

This category supports independent producers and artist producers to commission and/or develop new opera or musical theater works. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 6 grants out of 30 applications aggregating $125,000 vs. 6 grants out of 25 applications aggregating $125,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a grant of $25,000 was awarded to Paulette Haupt of New York City to support a workshop process to identify, initiate, and develop new works. The purpose of this workshop process was to initiate new musical theater works from conception, with seed commissions and development support to creative artists of special merit. An additional goal was to form new collaborations between composers, lyricists and playwrights who had not previously worked together. Four new works with seven composers and writers were conceived including The E & O Line, based on the Orpheus myth, the story of Christina Alberta, an adaptation of The Return of Martin Guerre, and an adaptation of the Hans Christian Anderson story The Red Shoes.

2. New American Works/Organizations

This category supports organizations to create, develop, rehearse and produce new American opera and musical theater works, as well as produce deserving rarely-performed American works. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 40 grants out of 95 applications aggregating $800,000 vs. 34 grants out of 90 applications aggregating $825,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $35,000 was awarded to the Dallas Opera in Dallas, TX, to support rehearsal and pre-production costs for the world premiere of The Aspern Papers, a new opera by composer Dominick Argento. Based on Henry James' novella of the same name, the opera was part of the 1988 fall season of the Dallas Opera. The artists included Frederica von Stade and Elisabeth Soderstrom, in roles written especially for them. Many of the world's leading Henry James authorities were in attendance. The Aspern Papers was taped in a coproduction between the Dallas Opera, KERA-TV, and PBS's Great Performances, and reached an audience of millions through a national telecast.

3. Professional Companies

This category is designed to assist the seasons of professional, not-for-profit organizations which are original producers of opera and/or musical theater. Priority is given to companies which sustain high artistic standards, present a varied repertory, and employ qualified American artists.

In FY 90, 110 companies from 36 states, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico received grants for their producing seasons. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 110 grants out of 140 applications aggregating $4,775,000 vs. 110 grants out of 143 applications aggregating $4,775,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, the Opera Theatre of Saint Louis was awarded a grant of $105,000 to support artistic, production and promotional expenses for the 1988-89 season, which included its spring (main) season of four productions. Double Moon by African-American composer Anthony Davis received its world premiere. The company viewed this production as an opportunity to expose a large audience to the work of a gifted artist whose theatrical music had not been widely heard in the Midwest. The multiracial casting also offered many local minority artists the opportunity to perform. More than 21,000 people paid to attend the mainstage performances -- amounting to 92 percent capacity attendance.

4. Regional Touring

This category aims to widen audience awareness and to serve areas where opera-musical theater performances do not generally take place. The category assists companies principally engaged in touring, resident companies in their touring programs, consortia of presenters, regional arts organizations, and state arts agencies. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 24 grants out of 28 applications aggregating $400,000 vs. 21 grants out of 25 applications aggregating $400,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $6,000 was awarded to the Michigan Opera Theatre in Detroit, MI, to support its 1988-89 touring season of the Opera-in-Residence Program. This grant assisted the company in undertaking its annual statewide tour which provided communities in both the upper and lower peninsulas an opportunity to participate in depth with a professional opera company. Opera-in-Residence provided K-12 and adult audiences in fifteen communities with a full week of arts services, including in-school performances, lecture-demonstrations, master classes, and workshops. The company toured for ten weeks performing such works as Die Fledermaus, Fair Means or Foul, and Fractured Fairy Tale.

5. Services to the Art

This category assists projects that provide professional training or essential services to the opera-musical theater field. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 16 grants out of 19 applications aggregating $475,000 vs. 17 grants out of 17 applications aggregating $475,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: IN FY 88, a grant of $12,000 was awarded to the Theatre Under the Stars in Houston, TX, to support programs and services of the National Alliance of Musical Theatre Producers. The Alliance is the national service organization for the professional musical theatre community. Alliance services include workshops and meetings for members' trustees, guilds, and staffs; conferences for the full membership; and publication of a newsletter. Currently there are 63 participating member companies including theater, light opera and opera companies from 27 states and the District of Columbia.

6. Special Projects

Through this category a limited number of grants are available for outstanding, exemplary projects that will advance the opera and musical theater art forms. Concert opera organizations may apply for programs of rarely performed or unique repertoire. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 12 grants out of 20 applications aggregating $125,000 vs. 10 grants out of 22 applications aggregating $100,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a grant of $19,000 was awarded to Russell L. Warner of Seattle, WA, to support the restoration and orchestration of the 1930 musical Fine and Dandy by composer Kay Swift. Dissemination of the project will be through public performances and recordings. The materials resulting from this project will make rehearsal and performances a reality by providing a piano vocal score, a full orchestral score, and orchestra parts for performances to organizations and conductors. The full orchestral score will be deposited with the Library of Congress and other libraries throughout the country.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

THEATER PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
ARTISTIC ADVANCEMENT	45	15	812	43	12	575	48	13	550
NATIONAL RESOURCES	56	37	1,420	73	43	1,425	73	43	1,425
PROFESSIONAL THEATER COMPANIES	379	199	7,729	417	210	7,975	425	210	7,975
SUPPORT TO INDIVIDUALS	299	37	771	450	44	825	470	53	850
PROGRAM TOTAL	779	288	10,732	983	309	10,800	1,016	319	10,800

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
ARTISTIC ADVANCEMENT	812	0	812	575	0	575	550	0	550
NATIONAL RESOURCES	1,420	0	1,420	1,425	0	1,425	1,425	0	1,425
PROFESSIONAL THEATER COMPANIES	7,729	0	7,729	7,975	0	7,975	7,975	0	7,975
SUPPORT TO INDIVIDUALS	771	0	771	825	0	825	850	0	850
PROGRAM TOTAL	10,732	0	10,732	10,800	0	10,800	10,800	0	10,800

THEATER

Purpose

The Theater Program's purpose is to encourage excellence in the art form and provide audiences across the country with performances of quality and distinction. The Program assists professional artists -- primarily through support for theater companies -- and facilitates the career development of many of this nation's most talented individuals. It also promotes professional training in the theater, activities aimed at reaching new audiences, and innovative artistic projects.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Since 1965, when the Endowment began, the growth in not for profit professional theater nationwide has been phenomenal; from some 35 companies, mostly East Coast based, to more than 300 all over the country. And since 1986, America's not-for-profit theaters have been the arena of principal employment for theater professionals. Until then, employment in theater was identified more intensively with commercial Broadway and its various offshoots (road tours, dinner theater, etc.). As a result of this change, a prominent issue in the field today is the financial and creative relationship between not-for-profit producing organizations and individual artists. In this transitional stage in the movement away from commercial domination, theater must still compete with the economic opportunities for artists presented by film and television. Individual artists go where work can be matched by the best salaries. Increasingly, this has meant a commitment to film and television to the exclusion of theater. Broadway pays comparatively high wages, but there are few opportunities to perform. The not-for-profit theaters offer artistic opportunity, but lower and often sporadic wages.

The tension between artistry and economics is a very real one for individual artists. Free-lance actors, directors and designers are forced to work on an excessive number of productions each year, or work outside the theater, in order to earn a basic livelihood. Students emerging from professional theater conservatories receive their early on-the-job training in regional companies under extreme financial pressure because they graduate with $20 - 30,000 in educational debts. Ironically, young actors must find work in television commercials and soap operas to pay back the tuition bills for classical training. All these serious economic problems have a direct effect upon the artistic scope and achievement of American theater.

Theatre Facts 88, published in April 1989 by Theatre Communications Group, revealed that while some real progress did occur in 1988, the economic profile was somewhat erratic. The 189 theaters surveyed, whose budgets ranged from $50,000 to nearly $9,000,000, reported a five-year high in attendance and an increase in both earned and contributed income; expenses, however, had risen even more rapidly.

In response to these challenging times, both large and small theater companies are exploring new ways to produce work and some exciting results are being seen, particularly in the new collaborations being undertaken between companies and with individual artists. Coproductions among resident theaters have continued to prove beneficial, both artistically and economically. In an effort to provide better support for their particular way of creating work, some of the smaller companies are investigating new forms of governance and management structures. There are firm commitments being made to cultural diversity in casting, through audience development efforts, and in the make-up of staffs and boards. And, there is a continued interest in international exchange among both theaters and individual artists, providing a stimulating environment for both artists and audiences.

Individual theater artists are taking risks in collaborations outside the institutional framework of resident theaters -- collaborations that result in a new vitality. These artists are also more likely to tour than the large theater companies as the costs to presenters can remain lower. One difficulty caused by this shift is that the experimental nature of the material presented is not as easy to market to a widespread audience as the more expensive mainstream work of the larger resident companies. Too many Americans are still without access to live professional theater.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

In addressing field issues, the Theater Program encourages artistry and innovation. Support is designed to help theaters and individual artists sustain past achievements and plan future artistic growth. The Program's categories of support are divided into four main areas:

1. Artistic Advancement

A broad range of Special Projects are funded here, representing activities that exist outside the normal work of any individual company. This category also includes grants for Ongoing Ensembles -- a special initiative for the support of resident acting companies over a five-year period. Since its inception in 1984, funding for Ongoing Ensembles has assisted 11 theaters in establishing or maintaining stable relationships with a group of resident artists. It will be phased out in its present form while alternate ways to serve the artistic concerns of ensemble work are being explored. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 13 grants out of 48 applications aggregating $550,000 vs. 12 grants out of 43 applications aggregating $575,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $46,700 was awarded to the Children's Theatre Company in Minneapolis, MN, to support the commission and production of Rembrandt Takes a Walk, with a script developed from the book by its author, Mark Strand, and sets and costumes designed by the book's illustrator, Red Grooms. This production marked a unique synthesis of the talents of a premier American poet (Mr. Strand), a renowned American visual artist (Mr. Grooms), and a major American regional theater that is devoted to producing new works for young people and families. The production played in Minneapolis for 31 public performances and 13 school matinees with attendance totaling 31,350. Immediately following the Minneapolis run, the entire production traveled to the Central Children's Theatre of Moscow where it received a warm reception and standing ovations for 7 performances.

2. National Resources

This funding category encourages activities that have a broad impact on professional theater training, the presentation of touring productions to a broad range of American people, and the development of national services to the field. Among these efforts are grants for the engagement of master artists in professional training programs, support for the Theater on Film and Tape Library at the New York Public Library (providing a primary resource for documentation of contemporary theater performance and interviews with notable theater personalities), and direct grants to regional sponsors in different parts of the country for the presentation of touring productions. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 43 grants out of 73 applications aggregating $1,425,000 vs. 43 grants out of 73 applications aggregating $1,425,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a grant of $75,000 was awarded to Western States Arts Federation (WESTAF), Santa Fe, NM, to support the fees paid to professional theater companies by presenters in the West. In all, 57 presenters from 44 communities received fee support for 90 public performances and 19 workshops, master classes, coaching sessions, and lecture-demonstrations in communities -- more than half of which had populations of under 50,000. In the 1988-89 season, the theater companies participating were The Acting Company (New York City), the Children's Theatre Company (Minneapolis, MN), Pan Asian Repertory Theatre, Inc. (New York City), Roadside Theatre (Whitesburg, KY), San Francisco Mime Troupe, Seattle Repertory Theatre, and Theatre X (Milwaukee, WI). Of particular note is the diversity of work: among the productions toured were Pan Asian Theatre's Yellow Fever and Children's Theatre Company's Two African Tales: Rumplestiltskin and Kalulu and His Money Farm. Grant funds supported performances and residency activities in nine western states: Arizona, Colorado, California, Montana, Nevada, New Mexico, Oregon, Wyoming, and Washington.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $5,000 was awarded to the Iowa Playwrights' Workshop at the University of Iowa in Iowa City, to support fees for master teachers and production costs related to the playwrights' workshop. Grant funds assisted the compensation for four visiting playwrights of national significance: Maria Irene Fornes (The Conduct of Life), Ellen McLaughlin (The Narrow Bed), Eric Overmyer (On the Verge), and Charles Smith (Tales of South Africa and Fast Break to Glory). Support also helped defray production costs of the annual Iowa Playwrights' Festival, an event where students have the opportunity to see their work in production and then have it discussed in a forum by visiting theater professionals. The Iowa Playwrights' Workshop has earned a reputation as one of the premiere dramatic writing programs in the country.

3. Professional Theater Companies

This category assists not-for-profit theater companies of national or regional significance that produce work at the highest artistic levels. Support is directed at the collaborations, performances, and productions of artists, and is not designed for administrative needs. It is the Theater Program's primary means of encouraging artistic excellence among companies of high achievement in performance standards, production history, and artistic opportunity. In FY 89, 199 theaters received grants for their producing seasons. These groups are located in 39 states in all regions of the country. Endowment funds provided an average of 1.64 percent of the total operating costs of these grantees. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 210 grants out of 425 applications aggregating $7,975,000 vs. 210 grants out of 417 applications aggregating $7,975,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $25,000 was awarded to the National Theatre of the Deaf (NTD) in Chester, CT, to support the expenses of the 1988-89 season. The singular mission of this theater has been and continues to be the creation and development of a distinctive theatrical form that combines the spoken word with the image-rich sign language of the deaf. This form is capable of infinite growth, extension and application and has been NTD's contribution to the advancement of professional theater. The 1988-89 season featured Philippe deBroca's King of Hearts, NTD's first adaptation from a film. For the production, actor-painter Chuck Baird created sets on huge paper flats that were rearranged or reversed as the action warranted and were actually painted on stage during the performance. The 1988-89 season included the most extensive company tour to date, with appearances in 73 cities in 16 states, reaching a collective audience of 150,000. In addition, NTD traveled to Japan to represent the United States at Tokyo's First International Theatre Festival and performed there with the Japan Theatre of the Deaf.

4. Support to Individuals

This category assists the career development of outstanding playwrights, mimes and solo performance theater artists, and stage directors. Beginning in FY 89, the category was expanded to include fellowships for stage designers and for distinguished theater artists whose work has had a profound influence on American theater. In most respects these new efforts are unique. For example, the fellowships for early-career stage directors and stage designers have no counterpart in private sector philanthropy and represent the only source of funds for the long-term placement of such artists in professional theaters. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 53 grants out of 470 applications aggregating $850,000 vs. 44 grants out of 450 applications aggregating $825,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 87, a fellowship grant of $20,000 was awarded to playwright Mary Gallagher of Kerhonkson, NY, to give her time for a period of research, writing, and study. Since part of the fellowship grant was restricted for use in a residency at a professional theater company, Ms. Gallagher chose a seven-week residency at the Alley Theatre in Houston, TX. During that period, she wrote the first draft of a new play, De Donde. A workshop of the play followed with a cast drawn from the Alley's resident company and actors from the local Hispanic community. Ms. Gallagher has stressed that the creation of this play, which deals with the illegal immigration of Central American refugees to the United States through Mexico, could not have been accomplished without the environment provided by the contact with the local Hispanic community and the accessibility to immigration officials and proceedings in Texas. This pattern of extensive research before writing and of constant rewriting through the workshop process, afforded by the fellowship grant and residency funds, were new experiences for Ms. Gallagher. She has since described the experience as a breakthrough in her artistic development. De Donde has been produced at several other theaters and is currently in negotiation for future productions.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

VISUAL ARTS PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

CATEGORY	FY 89 APPL	FY 89 GRANTS	FY 89 AMOUNT	FY 90 APPL	FY 90 GRANTS	FY 90 AMOUNT	FY 91 APPL	FY 91 GRANTS	FY 91 AMOUNT
ART IN PUBLIC PLACES	77	17	400	86	19	350	85	18	350
SPECIAL PROJECTS	30	8	200	20	6	150	20	4	100
VISUAL ARTISTS FELLOWSHIPS	5,757	304	3,290	5,506	281	3,400	5,756	190	3,450
National	5,751	298	2,660	5,500	275	2,700	5,750	184	2,750
Regional	6	6	630	6	6	700	6	6	700
VISUAL ARTISTS FORUMS	95	51	375	95	48	350	95	48	350
VISUAL ARTISTS ORGANIZATIONS	190	121	1,845	175	119	1,850	180	120	1,850
PROGRAM TOTAL	6,149	501	6,110	5,882	473	6,100	6,136	380	6,100

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

CATEGORY	FY 89 DEF/ PROGRAM	FY 89 INDEF/ TREAS	FY 89 TOTAL	FY 90 DEF/ PROGRAM	FY 90 INDEF/ TREAS	FY 90 TOTAL	FY 91 DEF/ PROGRAM	FY 91 INDEF/ TREAS	FY 91 TOTAL
ART IN PUBLIC PLACES	400	0	400	350	0	350	350	0	350
SPECIAL PROJECTS	200	0	200	150	0	150	100	0	100
VISUAL ARTISTS FELLOWSHIPS	3,290	0	3,290	3,400	0	3,400	3,450	0	3,450
National	2,660	0	2,660	2,700	0	2,700	2,750	0	2,750
Regional	630	0	630	700	0	700	700	0	700
VISUAL ARTISTS FORUMS	375	0	375	350	0	350	350	0	350
VISUAL ARTISTS ORGANIZATIONS	1,845	0	1,845	1,850	0	1,850	1,850	0	1,850
PROGRAM TOTAL	6,110	0	6,110	6,100	0	6,100	6,100	0	6,100

VISUAL ARTS

Purpose

The Visual Arts Program's principal purpose is twofold: to encourage the creation of the highest quality art through support for exceptionally talented individual artists, and to make the work of contemporary visual artists available to a broad public. Fellowships are awarded to painters, sculptors, printmakers, photographers, craftspersons, and artists working in new genres such as video, performance, and installation art. Artists' organizations which provide spaces to create and exhibit artwork and exchange ideas are assisted. The Program also provides support for the commissioning of public art projects and for public forums on contemporary art.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Unencumbered time to concentrate on the development of their work is the primary need of visual artists. Such time is limited since most artists rely on other employment for their livelihood. Population surveys indicate that an increasing number of artists live outside the traditional cultural centers, although New York, Los Angeles, and Chicago retain the largest artist populations. Interest in the purchase of contemporary visual art by collectors is growing; however, commercial opportunities remain limited and are mainly accessible to artists working in more marketable art forms and living in the major art centers.

Visual artists also need more opportunities to exhibit their work and reach new audiences. The traditional museum, university, and commercial gallery support systems continue to be important venues for artists, but these groups may not adequately address the needs of the nation's best emerging talent. Support for experimental work and adequate working facilities and technical assistance is often difficult to find. In virtually every state, artists have responded by forming their own support groups, often designated as "artists' organizations." These organizations have functions different from museums or galleries -- they involve artists in their policy and program decisions, pay artists for participation in activities, and provide artists and audiences with opportunities to create and experience new work in the contemporary visual arts. They are often the primary organizations for support of contemporary artists in smaller communities.

Informed critical evaluation and dialogue about contemporary visual art stimulates a more vigorous environment both for artists to expand their ideas and for the public to increase its understanding of artists' work. Publications, short-term artist residencies, lectures, and symposia offer opportunities for such exchange. In the last decade, possibilities for visual artists to create art for public spaces have increased. These projects allow artists to communicate with public audiences, collaborate with other artists and design professionals, and create more meaningful public places.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

In an effort to serve additional visual artists of exceptional talent and to ensure that emerging artists outside the major cultural centers continue to be reached, in FY 91 the Endowment's regional fellowship program will be maintained at the current level, while the established national fellowship program will expand slightly. Since 1983 national fellowships were at two levels, $5,000 and $15,000; plans are to award all fellowships in the amount of $15,000 beginning in FY 91. Visual artists organizations, which provide artists with opportunities for exhibition and experimentation, and forums that enable visual artists and the public to engage in dialogue about contemporary art, will continue to be assisted. Support of public art projects initiated by local government, educational institutions, and artists organizations will also continue.

1. Art in Public Places

Grants in this category support projects of the highest quality which provide Americans from all walks of life the opportunity to experience contemporary art and American visual artists the opportunity to create new work for public places. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 18 grants out of 85 applications aggregating $350,000 vs. 19 grants out of 86 applications aggregating $350,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a grant of $60,000 was awarded to the Lowell Plan, Inc. of Lowell, MA, to support commissions for artists Robert Cumming, David Ireland, Jock Reynolds and Suzanne Hellmuth in the historic mill district, a 19th-century textile manufacturing community on the Merrimack River. The grantee has worked in partnership with the city government, the historical commission, and private building owners to create a public art master plan for permanent artworks within the district. Rather than just preserve the city's past, the restoration and art plan for the district acknowledges Lowell's history amidst the contemporary city, increasingly a home for high technology industries. The Lowell Plan's intent is to include public art which grows out of the artists' investigations into the community, its canal system, its public places, and its residents. Artist David Ireland is creating an environment within the 1840 Boot Mills Complex, a former textile mill slated for development as offices and engineers' work spaces; Suzanne Hellmuth and Jock Reynolds are working at the 1846 Kirk Street Agents' House, planned by the National Park Service to become a multipurpose center; and artist Robert Cumming is creating a work at Boarding House Park which is being developed by the city's Historic Preservation Commission. This $300,000 public art project will draw its matching funds from the state and the Historic Preservation Commission, and will serve a city population of more than 100,000 as well as the 800,000 annual visitors to the Lowell National Historic Park.

2. Special Projects

This category is designed to respond to new and creative ideas that will have a broad impact on the visual arts field but are generally ineligible under other Visual Arts categories. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 4 grants out of 20 applications aggregating $100,000 vs. 6 grants out of 20 applications aggregating $150,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $20,000 was made to the North Carolina Arts Council to support a regional conference on public art. The four-day meeting, which took place in Durham, NC, in June 1989, focused on public art issues and used selected public art models from various locations throughout the country of particular relevance to the Southeast, its urban centers, rural environments, and small communities. More than 70 professionals spoke at the meeting including Molly Blankenship, a native American storyteller from Cherokee, NC; Patricia Marx, an Education Coordinator for Florida's Miami-Dade County Public Art Program; Richard Andrews, Director of the Henry Art Gallery, Seattle, WA; Norman Care, author from Oberlin College in Oberlin, OH; Judith Baca, muralist, Los Angeles, CA; Richard Kahan, developer, New York City; and Jo Carson, poet and educator, Johnson City, TN. More than 350 artists, arts administrators, public officials, designers, developers, educators, and members of the public attended the conference. Total costs were more than $150,000; matching funds came from corporate and foundation sources. A summary of the proceedings, including commissioned papers, will be mailed to all attendees and available for sale to all interested.

3. Visual Artists Fellowships

This category is designed to encourage the creative development of practicing professional visual artists of exceptional talent by assisting them to pursue their work. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 190 grants out of 5,756 applications (including 6 for regional fellowship programs) aggregating $3,450,000 vs. 281 grants out of 5,506 applications (including 6 for regional fellowship programs) aggregating $3,400,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - National Fellowships: In FY 87, Dozier Bell, a painter from Brunswick, ME, received a $5,000 Visual Artists Fellowship. She reported that the grant made a decisive difference in the course of her career. The funds allowed her to move from a three-room apartment to a house, where she now has adequate studio space for the first time. At the time she received the grant, she was preparing for her first one-person show in New York. Without the grant, it would have been necessary for her to sell some of the work intended for the show in order to finance the preparation. She indicated that receipt of the fellowship, in addition to helping her buy supplies and pay bills, changed her attitude from one of tentativeness to one of confidence.

Example - Regional Fellowships: In FY 88, the Southern Arts Federation in Atlanta, GA, received $100,000 to administer a program of regional fellowships to emerging and mid-career artists who were residents of Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Kentucky, Louisiana, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, or Tennessee. The Federation awarded $5,000 fellowships in 1989 to 20 artists working in crafts or sculpture (fellowship areas not offered by the Endowment that year), ten in each medium. The Federation's commitment to the artists and the community extended beyond the fellowship awards. Once chosen, a fellow was included in an exhibition of work by all grant recipients which traveled to various museums and galleries in the region. This show was accompanied by a catalogue and slide notebooks which provided greater exposure of the artists' work. In addition, fellowship artists were invited to participate in a residency program which allowed them to travel to various locations in the region to give workshops, lecture, and work collaboratively with other artists.

4. Visual Artists Forums

Grants in this category support projects that promote the exchange of ideas about visual art. Funding enables visual artists, critics, and curators to communicate with their peers and the public about ideas in their art form or allows them to create and present new work in a context which stimulates discussion about contemporary art. Support is also available for noncommercial publications that contribute to the national dialogue on contemporary art. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 48 grants out of 95 applications aggregating $350,000 vs. 48 grants out of 95 applications aggregating $350,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, the Atlanta College of Art, in Georgia, received $7,000 to support "Issues in Representation: The Visibility of the Minority Artist," a series of lectures about concerns of minority visual artists and those who represent or exhibit their work. The series consisted of four one-day programs with public slide lectures and critique sessions for students. Cosponsored by Atlanta's High Museum of Art, the lecturers included New York photographer Roy DeCarava; Bernice Steinbaum, a commercial gallery dealer from New York City who represents women and minority artists; Corrine Jennings, the director of an artist-run exhibition space in Manhattan which focuses on presenting third world artists; and Luis Cruz Azaceta, a painter whose lecture coincided with his participation in the College's exhibition of contemporary Cuban-American artists. Issues addressed included use of imagery based on cultural heritage, avenues of opportunities for minority artists, and future issues facing artists of varied ethnic backgrounds.

5. Visual Artists Organizations

Grants in this category support organizations which encourage individual artistic development, experimentation, and dialogue between visual artists and the public. Funds are directed to organizations that assure visual artists an integral role in policy development and programming. Support is available for programs which present contemporary visual art to the public, which enable visual artists to produce new work, and which provide visual artists with services. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 120 grants out of 180 applications aggregating $1,850,000 vs. 119 grants out of 175 applications aggregating $1,850,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, a grant of $30,000 was awarded to the Photographic Resource Center (PRC) in Boston, MA, to support exhibitions, visual art performances, publications, and educational programs. During the grant period, six major exhibitions occurred, including installations of newly commissioned work and two performance works in conjunction with the exhibition "Photography and Performance." Collaborating with another visual artists organization on the West Coast, PRC launched its largest project to date, "Cross Currents/Cross Country," featuring 42 artists from the San Francisco Bay area and New England. During the grant period, lectures and symposia complemented the exhibition programming, as did publication of the quarterly Views, a critical journal on photography. PRC also continued distribution of the Center's monthly newsletter to more than 3,400 members and patrons. Workshops and open portfolio sessions were offered to provide forums for addressing issues in the medium, and the Youth Photography Program was developed to encourage and communicate with young photographers.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

ADVANCEMENT PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
ADVANCEMENT a/	180	53	1,320	138	88	3,300	155	102	3,650
PROGRAM TOTAL	180	53	1,320	138	88	3,300	155	102	3,650

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
ADVANCEMENT a/	1,320	0	1,320	1,300	2,000	3,300	1,300	2,350	3,650
PROGRAM TOTAL	1,320	0	1,320	1,300	2,000	3,300	1,300	2,350	3,650

a/ In FY 89, excludes $124 of FY 88/89 Treasury funds and $54 of gift funds.
In FY 90, includes $250 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds carried into FY 91.
In FY 91, excludes $250 of FY 90/91 Treasury funds; includes $250 of FY 91/92 Treasury funds carried into FY 92.

b/ Awards were amendments to grants made in prior years, therefore no new applications or grants are shown.

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

ADVANCEMENT

Purpose

The Advancement Program assists emerging arts organizations of high artistic quality to develop specific strategies to eliminate deficiencies in organizational management practices, and to take carefully planned steps toward the achievement of long-range goals.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Many smaller arts organizations of artistic significance are in a critical stage of development. Typically, these organizations have gained recognition through their commitment to a unique artistic vision. They are an important source of new creative directions, as a training ground for artists, and in some instances, as a seedbed from which new institutions may grow to serve changing needs.

Most small historic preservation organizations, education programs, and organizations presenting experimental work -- or newer, smaller organizations in a variety of disciplines -- fit the characterization of emerging organizations and face common obstacles.

In order to support their continued development, such organizations often need to strengthen basic planning skills for both their artistic vision and organizational goals, develop improved governance systems, adopt more sophisticated approaches to fund raising, and/or secure adequate facilities and working capital.

Program Response

The Advancement Program consists of two distinct phases:

Technical Assistance Phase. For a fifteen-month period, management consultants retained by the Arts Endowment assist organizations to develop a comprehensive artistic and management plan, and to eliminate deficiencies in management practices.

Advancement Grant Phase. Upon completion of the first phase (technical assistance), participating organizations may apply for an Advancement grant in an amount up to $75,000. The Advancement grant and the funds used to match it may be used to support any one or a combination of specific programmatic and/or organizational strategies developed during the technical assistance phase. These may include initiatives such as program/artistic development, facilities planning, renovation or purchase of a building, financial systems management, marketing programs, notes payable and/or cash reserves. Construction expenditures are not an allowable use of Advancement funds. Grant funds must be matched on at least a three-to-one basis.

In FY 90, approximately 50 new organizations are expected to be accepted into the technical assistance phase, and the 50 organizations which received technical assistance in FY 89 are expected to apply for Phase II Advancement grants. In FY 91, we request $3.65 million for Advancement: $2.35 million in Indefinite (Treasury) funds for grants to organizations which complete technical assistance in FY 90 and are accepted for the grant phase; and $1.3 million in Definite (Program) funds so new organizations can begin the technical assistance phase. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 102 grants out of 155 applications aggregating $3,650,000 vs. 88 grants out of 138 applications aggregating $3,300,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Technical Assistance Phase: The Wustum Museum of Fine Arts, located in Racine, WI, was accepted into Phase I of Advancement for FY 89. The Museum's collection emphasizes crafts with a regional focus. Its purpose is to encourage public appreciation and enjoyment of the visual arts through its collections and exhibitions, studio art classes and education programs. The Museum hopes to strengthen its board of directors and its strategic and resource planning process during the technical assistance phase.

Example - Advancement Grant Phase: Coffee House Press is a small press dedicated to serving the literary community and the general public by bringing them together through "the majesty of the printed page." Located in Minneapolis, MN, the Press used Phase I of Advancement to strengthen its board of directors and its planning process, and devise a new marketing strategy. In FY 90, Coffee House Press was accepted into Phase II of Advancement and awarded an Advancement grant of $50,000. The purpose of the grant and matching funds is to support the Press' marketing program, eliminate long-term notes, hire an administrative assistant and establish a cash reserve.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

CHALLENGE PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

		FY 89			FY 90			FY 91	
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
CHALLENGE a/	286	93	18,470	89	39	15,450	131	40	15,300
PROGRAM TOTAL	286	93	18,470	89	39	15,450	131	40	15,300

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

		FY 89			FY 90			FY 91	
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ CHALLENGE	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ CHALLENGE	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ CHALLENGE	TOTAL
CHALLENGE a/	270	18,200	18,470	300	15,150	15,450	300	15,000	15,300
PROGRAM TOTAL	270	18,200	18,470	300	15,150	15,450	300	15,000	15,300

b/ In FY 89, excludes $13,403 of FY 88/89 Challenge funds; includes $16,440 of FY 89/90 Challenge funds carried into FY 90. In FY 90, excludes $16,440 of FY 89/90 Challenge funds; includes $2,500 of FY 90/91 Challenge funds carried into FY 91. In FY 91, excludes $2,500 of FY 90/91 Challenge funds; includes $2,500 of FY 91/92 Challenge funds carried into FY 92. Includes $300 of Program funds for Challenge management evaluation activities.

CHALLENGE

Purpose

The Challenge Program was established to strengthen the arts and their audiences over the long term. It complements the work of other Endowment programs by offering major one-time grants for activities which look beyond an organization's current needs and programming -- towards long-term growth and artistic achievement. Challenge grants stimulate public and private investment in such long-term vision by requiring that each federal dollar be matched at least three-to-one with new or increased nonfederal resources.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Because most arts organizations must devote the bulk of available funds to current operations, there has been a growing need for a significant pool of "venture capital" to underwrite bold initiatives as specific needs and opportunities are identified. Successful approaches may require diverse financial and human resources. They may need to involve a variety of nonprofit organizations as well as public agencies and institutions. Some may involve the creation of totally new systems of support.

Examples of such initiatives include: a performance trust fund to underwrite the recording and distribution of the work of America's composers performed by American artists and ensembles; an initiative to encourage museums to develop major television programming in the visual arts; projects to encourage the presentation of unfamiliar or little-known work; and cooperative efforts with the public and private sector to discover new resources for individual artists. The potential for such exciting projects exists in all fields.

Program Response

During most of the twelve-year history of the Program (Challenge I and II), grantmaking focused on augmenting the financial stability, enhancing the artistic quality, and broadening the funding base of the nation's leading arts institutions. This approach primarily assisted more institutionalized fields, but rarely assisted the field of literature, the folk arts and much of the dance field, for example, nor public arts agencies at the state or local level.

In 1986, the Arts Endowment convened a national Advisory Committee to consider the future of the Challenge Program. The deliberations of this body gave shape to Challenge III -- a program which could address issues broader than those affecting single institutions. Challenge III is viewed as a way for federal support to encourage each field served by the Arts Endowment "to take a long-term leap forward." With Challenge III, attention is turned toward projects with the potential to move the nation forward in achieving excellence in the arts, access to the arts, appreciation of the arts, or increased nonfederal funding of the arts.

Applications are reviewed on the basis of the quality and potential long-term impact of the project, as well as the ability of the applicant to carry out the project and raise the required matching funds. Grants range in size from $50,000 to $1 million, allowing the Program to respond to a broad range of initiatives and a broad spectrum of potential applicants.

Because the Program seeks to address field-wide concerns, the funding guidelines also allow the formation of ad hoc consortia or the creation of entirely new entities to effectively implement a new concept.

Challenge III supports four types of projects:

1) Artistry. New or substantially expanded approaches to commissioning, production, presentation/exhibition, conservation/preservation, professional training or development; development of significant new work (including collaborations); exploration of the creative potential of new technology; or other ideas which can enhance excellence in the arts.

2) Access. New or substantially amplified approaches to exhibition or performance touring, recording, distribution, marketing or broadcasting; proposed solutions to special problems of access in underserved areas and minority communities, or other ideas which bring quality arts experiences to larger and broader audiences.

3) Appreciation. New or substantially improved approaches to classroom arts instruction, curriculum development, training or professional development of arts teachers, arts interpretation, educational materials, educational media programs, outreach programs, or educational programs in nonacademic settings.

4) Support Systems. New or substantially expanded approaches to grantmaking, technical assistance, resource sharing, and other programs of regional, state or local arts agencies, arts service organizations or other organizations.

Challenge III retains the matching requirements -- three to one -- which have been a central feature of Challenge grants since the first awards were made in FY 77. Through this proven mechanism, Challenge grantees have used federal support of $265 million to stimulate more than $2 billion in additional contributions from nonfederal sources. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 40 grants out of 131 applications aggregating $15,300,000 vs. 39 grants out of 89 applications aggregating $15,450,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Artistry: In FY 90, a Challenge III grant of $350,000 was awarded to the Des Moines Art Center in Des Moines, IA, to develop a sculpture park of environmental sculpture, extending the permanent collection beyond museum walls. The project includes commissioning site-specific works by internationally recognized American artists Richard Fleischner, Mary Miss, Siah Armajani, Ann Hamilton, and Robert Therrien. These sculptures will encourage active participation on the part of the public in a beautiful municipal park. The sculpture park recognizes the important development of large scale site-specific sculpture and the importance of including such works in a museum collection. The sculptors involved in the project are experienced in realizing major projects and each will develop works for specific sites within the park.

Example - Access: In FY 90, the Mississippi Museum of Art in Jackson, MS, received a $500,000 Challenge III grant to expand and endow a new and innovative statewide network of branch museums. The three current model branches will be established permanently, and plans to expand the system statewide will be developed to reach additional audiences. A permanent operating fund will be established to provide ongoing support for the branch program. The program is the first in the country to establish branches of an art museum statewide and will provide quality programming year-round to underserved audiences while expanding the use of the Museum's permanent collections.

Example - Appreciation: In FY 90, the Music Technology and Resource Center (MTRC) at the University of Northern Colorado (Greeley) received a $600,000 Challenge III grant to explore new technologies and approaches in music recording, composition, and performance in applied music instruction settings. The project will integrate computer technology and interactive multimedia with the teaching of music history, theory, composition, education, and performance. The MTRC will provide personnel and equipment for research and development of new interactive, learner directed courses of study, for application to all levels of music education. The Center will serve not only the University's music and general student population, but will also be a resource for regional music educators.

Example - Support Systems: In FY 90, the Arts and Science Council - Charlotte/Mecklenburg (NC) received a $1,000,000 Challenge III grant to enhance the support environment for the arts and arts education in the greater Charlotte metropolitan area. This will be accomplished by establishing an innovative arts education endowment fund and grant program to stimulate partnerships between arts agencies, artists and public school professionals; and by endowing three established grant programs of support for cultural institutions and individual artists. This project will serve the 50 cultural organizations and individual artists as well as more than 75,000 students and teachers in the 107 public schools in Mecklenburg County.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

ARTS IN EDUCATION PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
ARTS IN SCHOOLS BASIC ED GRANTS	19	13	1,012	29	19	1,300	26	20	1,300
STATE ARTS IN EDUCATION GRANTS	57	56	3,450	56	56	3,400	56	56	3,850
SPECIAL PROJECTS a/	208	42	1,193	96	21	900	362	85	2,450
PROGRAM TOTAL	284	111	5,654	181	96	5,600	444	161	7,600

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
ARTS IN SCHOOLS BASIC ED GRANTS	1,012	0	1,012	1,300	0	1,300	1,300	0	1,300
STATE ARTS IN EDUCATION GRANTS	3,450	0	3,450	3,400	0	3,400	3,850	0	3,850
SPECIAL PROJECTS a/	1,193	0	1,193	900	0	900	2,450	0	2,450
PROGRAM TOTAL	5,654	0	5,654	5,600	0	5,600	7,600	0	7,600

a/ In FY 89, excludes $250 of interagency funds received from the Department of Education.
In FY 91, includes the Arts Organizations' Education Initiative.

Arts in Education

Purpose

The purpose of this program is to contribute to the development of future generations of children who are creative, literate, productive, and humane. This larger purpose is supported by the Endowment's goal of providing national leadership and support for arts education programs throughout the country. Specifically, the AIE program supports the development of educational programs within schools and cultural institutions.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

President Bush has called on the nation to focus on the education of our children. His challenge is based in part on a desire not only to enrich our schools but to support the creative spirit, which is so much a part of our country's history. The National Endowment for the Arts is eager to participate in this national education agenda and to build on programs we have developed with the assistance of arts and education professionals throughout the country.

That the arts are crucial to a sound educational system is a premise now acknowledged by virtually all concerned, and illustrated by the unprecedented way in which parents, teachers, school superintendents and local, state and national government leaders are working together in this area. A Carnegie Foundation study of 22,000 teachers reported that nearly 80% believe that the arts are as essential as reading, writing and arithmetic. New Jersey's then Governor Thomas Kean, in an outstanding report on literacy in the arts, spoke eloquently on this subject when he said:

> "...in this competitive age, people who can communicate through the subtleties of the arts will have the skills and understanding that our twenty-first century economy will require. The thespian will move from the stage to the boardroom with the self-confidence and range of intellect so vital to both. The engineer who has studied painting will grasp the 'utility' of beauty in a world of increasingly sophisticated design. And the talented writer will stand astride the information age." (Literacy in the Arts, A Report by the Literacy in the Arts Task Force, October, 1989, P. 8.)

There are some specific needs and opportunities within arts education which require attention. Students need high quality, exciting and inspirational arts instruction. Teachers need help in learning innovative ways to teach the arts and to integrate the arts throughout their subject areas; history, for example, can be learned through studying paintings. School districts need to identify outstanding arts curricula so that they can learn from the success of others. State and local arts agencies need help in persuading their departments of education and schools boards to make the arts a basic part of the curriculum in in education. Cultural institutions need the resources to develop rich and meaningful opportunities for students within their own facilities as well as within the schools themselves so that students can begin a life-long relationship with the arts.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

Over the past five years, experts in the arts and education fields have developed goals for the Arts Endowment as outlined in Toward Civilization, a blueprint for the future in arts in education, and this area is continually being assessed.

The Endowment has made action on educational goals one of its highest priorities. Two changes in the existing AIE Program are proposed for FY 91 to enhance those goals. The first is to develop a program for cultural institutions within the Arts in Education Special Projects category. The second is to increase the funds allocated to state agencies for their work in arts in education. These and the regular funding categories are described below:

1. Arts in Schools Basic Education Grants

Ernest L. Boyer, President of the Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, makes a reference to the book Frames of Mind when he says "... children not only have verbal intelligence, they also have intuitive intelligence, social intelligence, spatial intelligence, and aesthetic intelligence. These other skills are perhaps even more consequential in real life. And yet I ask you, where in the public schools do we begin to measure these other intelligence in our children?" (A Celebration of the Arts, The Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, p. 6.)

Arts in Schools Basic Education Grants (AISBEG), a category of support for state arts agencies, assists collaborative efforts between state arts agencies and their departments of education to encourage plans and programs which promote the arts as a basic element of education. The program encourages the development and establishment of: a) specific objectives and competencies in the arts; b) curricula and resources aimed at sequential achievement of those objectives and competencies; and c) methods for evaluating student progress toward achieving those objectives and competencies.

A two-phase approach -- offering both planning and project implementation support -- encourages state arts agencies to work closely with state education agencies to develop long-range goals for change, followed by the implementation of state plans over a one- to three-year period.

Over 50 percent of the states have been funded for AISBEG planning grants since the program was initiated three years ago. Thirty-four percent of the states have been funded in the first two rounds of implementation grants. Models for curricular and other changes resulting from these new efforts will be shared with states nationwide. In FY 91 we anticipate 20 grants out of 26 applications aggregating 1,300,000 vs. 19 grants out of 29 applications for FY 90.

Example - Implementation: In FY 89, The Alaska State Council on the Arts (Anchorage, AK), received a one-year Implementation grant of $22,500, to be matched with a projected $22,500, to implement a three-pronged plan formulated by the Council, State Department of Education, and Alaska's affiliate of the

Alliance for Arts Education. First, a series of three informational arts in education meetings with key arts education advocates and organizations will facilitate communication, share and review organizational plans, and develop public awareness strategies. Second, a new Teacher Training Workshop Program will entail the creation of a talent bank to provide technical assistance, including pre-service and in-service teacher-training workshops. Third, the Council will address the need for curriculum materials in traditional and contemporary Native arts education. The first concerted effort to collect material on Native Alaskan arts education will involve Native leaders and educators, the Council's Native Arts staff director and Traditional Native Arts Panel, and the Institute of Alaska Native Arts.

2. State Arts in Education Grants

The New Jersey report again provides the words to describe what the Arts Endowment wants to accomplish in this category:

> "New Jersey is rich, not just in structures, but in people too, and gifted artists should be invited to teach. When students are exposed to working artists, they become inspired, and with the cooperation of the teacher, the artist can bring added creativity and excitement to the classroom. The professional artist can serve as an exciting role model for children, similar to a sports hero. In addition, artists can also share experiences with teachers during in-service workshops. Collaboration among artists, students, and teachers is, we believe, at the very core of creating an exciting environment for learning."

State Arts in Education Grants (SAEG) available to state arts agencies, will continue support for artist residencies in schools and other educational settings. In the 1987-88 school year, approximately 8,400 artists were employed in nearly 11,000 sites in the fifty states and in five special jurisdictions. These artists -- representing fields such as architecture, dance, film/video, folk arts, visual arts, and music -- reached more than 3,900,000 students and worked with 122,000 teachers and administrators. We have expanded this category to allow state arts agencies to build upon existing arts education programs and initiate broader efforts to help make the arts a part of basic education. As the state arts agencies' longstanding residency programs mature in response to the broadening of the Endowment's SAEG goals, an emphasis will be on strengthening artist-in-residency programs by ensuring that quality artists work in school settings, providing direct service to students in ways that supplement what arts specialists teach and helping teachers to learn new ways to integrate arts instruction in their respective academic areas. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 56 grants out of 56 applications aggregating 3,850,000 vs. 56 grants out of 56 applications aggregating 3,400,000 in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, the Maine Arts Commission (Augusta, ME) received $74,690 which it matched with $790,000 to support a program that orchestrated components of a comprehensive approach to arts education. This is evidenced, in part, by the Commission's collaborative efforts with the Maine Alliance for Arts Education, Very Special Arts--Maine, and the Department of Educational and Cultural Services to work with local school districts to develop curriculum

The Commission continues its work with Maine's cultural institutions through funding collaborations between schools and cultural institutions. Community-based residencies will be developed in conjunction with a Governor's initiative which celebrates the strengths of smaller communities in Maine. The Commission received $100,000 of funds earmarked specifically for arts in education programming from the state's Cultural Initiative, and attributes this growth to the Commission's continuing effort to work closely with the arts education community to develop plans and programs that make the arts a basic part of education.

3. Special Projects

This category funds project ideas from the field as well as the Endowment's own initiatives. Cultural and educational organizations may apply, as may state and local arts agencies. (In recent years, nearly 50% of the funds have been awarded to cultural institutions.) The grants are used to support innovative ideas for furthering the arts as a part of basic education. In FY 91 we anticipated awarding 85 grants out of 362 applications aggregating 2,450,000 vs. 21 out of 96 aggregating 900,000 in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a grant of $23,100 was awarded to the Boston Film/Video Foundation in Boston, Massachusetts to support the development and publication of a curriculum which will serve as a national model in media literacy. This curriculum project will encourage artistic expression and the development of cognitive and social skills as a basic part of education through critical viewing of popular media (film and television), and media production. It will be published and made available for distribution on both regional and national levels.

In FY 91 for the first time, the AIE Program plans to work in cooperation with the other Program areas of the Endowment through the Arts Organizations' Education Initiative to develop exemplary education projects within cultural institutions. At present, cultural institutions often see educational programs as a drain on crucial operating funds. At the same time, these institutions recognize their long-term problem of needing to build future audiences and to serve their broad community. This initiative will allow for newly requested AIE funds to be allocated directly to Endowment program areas for educational projects. Some Programs already fund such projects, in which case the new funds will enhance their efforts. Other Programs will be encouraged to develop educational initiatives.

Through the Arts Organizations' Education Initiative the AIE program can be a vital partner in helping to build resources for our institutions, creating a situation whereby both our present and future in the arts is preserved.

The AIE Special Projects category will also support a number of smaller, distinct projects undertaken as recommendations from Towards Civilization. One is to fund the final year of a three-year project to develop high school interdisciplinary arts courses, including the dissemination of the final curricula. Another is to develop and publish a profile of arts in education programs in each state, along with exemplary models of arts in education programs. Additional projects include the support of the Arts Education Advisory Board and the awarding of up to eight arts education teacher fellowships.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

LOCALS PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
LOCAL GOVT INCENTIVE GRANTS	16	10	1,825	27	12	1,925	35	10	1,925
LOCAL ARTS AGENCY DEVELOPMENT	60	35	782	36	21	675	56	23	675
PROGRAM TOTAL	76	45	2,607	63	33	2,600	91	33	2,600

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
LOCAL GOVT INCENTIVE GRANTS	1,825	0	1,825	1,925	0	1,925	1,925	0	1,925
LOCAL ARTS AGENCY DEVELOPMENT	782	0	782	675	0	675	675	0	675
PROGRAM TOTAL	2,607	0	2,607	2,600	0	2,600	2,600	0	2,600

LOCALS

Purpose

The goals of the Locals Program are to: 1) encourage local initiatives which will enhance quality of the arts and broaden audiences for the arts; 2) promote increased and sustained public funding for the arts at the local level; 3) encourage increased involvement in the arts by city and county governments throughout the nation; 4) strengthen the local arts agency as a mechanism for arts planning, financial support, and development within a city, county, or multi-county region; and 5) encourage joint planning for the arts by federal, state, and local arts agencies, community leaders, public officials, arts organizations, and artists.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

The nonprofit arts are an essentially local phenomenon. They are created, produced, presented, and supported in a locality. At a time when competition for funding has increased universally, incentive programs are a useful means to encourage the growth of local public support for the arts. While local government support for the arts in the United States already exceeds that provided by state and federal governments, it is uneven across the country. Many cities with significant arts resources provide little or no public support; many cities which do provide substantial public support often are able to serve only limited segments of their total constituency. The need for financial assistance to artists and arts organizations, coupled with the communities' needs for successful and diverse artistic quality and the need to maximize the impact of limited public financial resources, presents a major opportunity to provide catalytic leadership and financial incentives to local arts agencies.

Other needs include effective planning for the arts with appropriate community participation, advocacy on the part of local arts agencies for sustained and sequential arts education in the schools, development of local leadership, and the improvement of local arts agencies' management and operations.

One of the most important factors affecting the development of local support for the arts is the leadership, planning, and administrative capabilities of local arts agencies themselves. The relative newness of this field, lack of collective experience, and rapid changes in scope and function have combined to produce a crisis in leadership for many local arts agencies. The particular mix of planning, management, arts knowledge, and required intervention skills needed for successful development of local arts agencies is currently not available in all communities.

Many local arts agencies have a tradition of bringing together artists and educators in the classroom. However, much work remains as local arts agencies explore ways to work toward sequential arts education in their communities' schools. Because leadership in a given community is often represented by the same individuals who are school board members and arts advocates, forging progress in arts education will inevitably be a significant role for local arts agencies in the coming years.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

The history of the Locals Program provides overwhelming evidence of the value and importance of federal support, properly applied, in the development of local public and private support for the arts and for local arts agencies. By intervening at strategic points in the development of a local arts agency, Locals Program support can make a significant difference in the future of the agency and in the support, development, and delivery of the arts in the community served by the agency.

The Local Government Incentive category provides a mechanism for infusing substantial amounts of new money into the arts at the local level. The program has generated more than $61.7 million in new public and private dollars since the first grants were given in 1984. This funding category will continue to make available to local and state arts agencies sizable three-year grants. Minimum grants are generally $150,000; however, without substantially changing the basic structure of the Local Government Incentive category, the minimum grant amount has been lowered to $75,000 for a limited number of grantees who qualify as having exceptional circumstances.

The Local Arts Agency Development category will continue to expand in FY 91 in order to stimulate increased activity by service providers and arts agencies in the areas of leadership education and training, and to improve local arts agency planning and administrative capabilities. Grants will be made through two subcategories: 1) Leadership Training and Services Grants, and 2) Planning and Professional Staff Grants. Grants generally range from $15,000 to $30,000. Planning and Professional Staff Grants are required to be matched with public and/or private contributions. Planning grants have been carefully evaluated with emphasis being placed on community cultural plans, total agency plans, and component agency plans. These are two areas that the Endowment's Five-Year Planning Document and other evaluation documents have indicated are lacking in the local arts agency field.

With the implementation in FY 90 of the Locals Program's Arts in Education initiative, the Program will be able to support projects which assist local arts agencies in promoting basic arts education in the local schools. This initiative supports the development of model demonstration projects by local arts agencies, in collaboration with AIE Programs in local school districts, for the purpose of implementing sequential arts education programs.

1. Local Government Incentive Grants

This category makes available to local and state arts agencies sizable three-year grants that must be matched with new city, county, or state appropriations. Local public and private arts agencies acting on behalf of their local government must match federal dollars two-to-one. State arts agencies participating in this program are required to match on a one-to-one basis. The local agencies expend these funds for the support and development of the arts in their communities according to a plan submitted with their application. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 10 grants out of 35 applications aggregating $1,925,000 vs. 12 grants out of 27 applications aggregating $1,925,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Local Grant: In FY 85, the Memphis (TN) Arts Council was awarded a three-year $250,000 Local Government Incentive grant which was matched with $980,000 in local government funds. As a result of this grant, the Memphis Arts Council established Innervisions, a program designed to support art produced by and for minority populations; the artists in schools program grew from serving 13 schools to serving 55; a marketing pool was started to stimulate the development of creative ideas to encourage increased attendance at art events; and an Endowment drive was launched which, by the time the grant ended, had resulted in pledges of $6.2 million. City and county governments pledged $1.0 million each (over and above the existing yearly operating funds), payable over seven years.

Example - State-Local Grant: In FY 88, the South Dakota Arts Council in Sioux Falls received a $150,000 Local Government Incentive grant. This "Centennial Challenge" project occurred in conjunction with South Dakota's Centennial celebration, and involved a consortium of 15 local arts agencies, 12 of which are in areas with populations under 25,000. Approximately 46 percent of the project funds were allocated to renovation of existing arts facilities and planning for new arts complexes. Creating arts opportunities during the Centennial comprised 32 percent of the funds, through regranting, service, arts events, public art, and arts education. Expanding arts administrative and management skills at the local level represented the remaining 22 percent of the budget. At the end of the first year of this three-year grant, 12 local arts agencies which had previously received no local funding had raised $126,000 in new city/county funds, with more than $134,000 raised for the second year. At least one new arts council has resulted from this Incentive Program, and an additional local arts agency will join the program in a year or two.

2. Local Arts Agency Development

Grants in this category stimulate increased activity by service providers and arts agencies in the areas of leadership education and training, and improve local agency planning and administration. Matching grants are available to colleges and universities for publications, conferences, and institutes for LAA staff and trustees. A limited number of matching grants may be made to local arts agencies and to state and regional arts agencies on behalf of local agencies to improve community and strategic planning and to provide additional administrative and planning staff. Grants are for a one-year period and generally range from $15,000 - 50,000, to be matched with public and/or private contributions. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 23 grants out of 56 applications aggregating $675,000 vs. 21 grants out of 36 applications aggregating $675,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example - Leadership Education and Services Grant: In FY 89, Columbia College in Columbia, MO, received $15,000 to support the Middle States Consortium Institute, which was formed in 1987 to create a network of professional and organizational development opportunities for the staff and leadership of its member agencies. The Consortium has developed a "Training of Trainers" concept which provides agency professional staffs with a greater proficiency for providing needed technical assistance to their constituency. The FY 89 curricula of the Institute concentrated on: 1) marketing the arts in the rural and small community setting, 2) board development and arts education in the community setting, and 3) development of a regional Resource Bank, which will allow for the development of a computer network of information available to all Consortium members, providing immediate access to necessary information and expanding the resource-sharing capability of the members.

Example - Planning and Professional Staff Grant: In FY 89, the Louisiana Division of the Arts in Baton Rouge received a planning grant of $25,000 to support the creation of a rural/multicultural arts program. The project includes a statewide assessment of the developmental needs of rural arts agencies, special technical assistance workshops, and the establishment of a statewide multicultural arts network. A rural/multicultural arts coordinator will develop a resource base for rural arts organizations and will assist them in developing programming and administrative skills. The multicultural arts network will identify key representatives from Louisiana's black, Hispanic, Indian, and Asian communities to provide input in program development and will develop a handbook for cooperative programs among local arts agencies, major institutions, and the multicultural community.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

STATES PROGRAM

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
FORMULA (20%) COMPONENTS:	76	76	24,721	75	75	24,851	66	66	25,160
Basic State Grants	62	62	21,498	62	62	21,661	56	56	21,740
Collaborative Initiatives	...	...	...	...	...	...	3	3	230
Regional Arts Programming	14	14	3,222	13	13	3,190	7	7	3,190
SPECIAL PROJECTS a/	34	21	465	35	25	794	30	17	560
STATE SUPPORT SERVICES	4	4	361	2	2	355	2	2	380
PROGRAM TOTAL	114	101	25,547	112	102	26,000	98	85	26,100

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
FORMULA (20%) COMPONENTS:	24,721	0	24,721	24,851	0	24,851	25,160	0	25,160
Basic State Grants	21,498	0	21,498	21,661	0	21,661	21,740	0	21,740
Collaborative Initiatives	...	...	...	...	...	...	230	0	230
Regional Arts Programming	3,222	0	3,222	3,190	0	3,190	3,190	0	3,190
SPECIAL PROJECTS a/	465	0	465	794	0	794	560	0	560
STATE SUPPORT SERVICES	361	0	361	355	0	355	380	0	380
PROGRAM TOTAL	25,547	0	25,547	26,000	0	26,000	26,100	0	26,100

a/ Includes support for a cooperative effort among Dance, Inter-Arts and State Programs to address presenting/touring needs.

STATES

Purpose

The States Program administers those Endowment Program funds (not less than 20 percent) set aside by law for state arts agencies and regional groups of state arts agencies. The goal in administering these funds is to assist state arts agencies and regional groups in supporting projects and activities which address the arts priorities in their states and regions. These arts programs also serve the Endowment's mission of fostering the development of and access to artistic excellence, diversity, and vitality.

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Due to the differences among the states and regions, their needs vary considerably, but they have developed similar goals for addressing them. Goals most commonly cited in state plans are: 1) increased access to arts experiences; 2) encouragement of excellence in the arts; 3) assistance for individual artists; 4) increased funding; 5) promotion of the arts in education; 6) information dissemination; and 7) development of federal/state/local partnerships.

State arts agencies promote access to the arts in a variety of ways, including support for touring and presenting of performances and exhibitions, and local arts agency development. Many are also involved in the planning and implementation of programs that address sequential arts education. Taken in the aggregate, state arts agency programs and services are effective in assisting large numbers of organizations and artists and in reaching communities of all sizes. For example, state arts agency grants reached groups in 4,536 communities in FY 87. Of 21,799 grants for which ZIP Code data is available, 5,760 (or 26 percent) went to groups or individuals located outside metropolitan statistical areas.

The previous growth of state arts agency appropriations has no doubt contributed to the broad impact of these agencies and to the importance of their role in promoting the arts. Aggregate appropriations have increased by 65 percent since FY 85 and stand at $270.6 million for FY 90. It should be noted that this growth has leveled considerably, with an aggregate increase of only 5.3 percent from FY 89 to FY 90.

Seven regional organizations help the state arts agencies address their goals on a multistate basis. Their most common services are in the area of support for the presentation and touring of performances and exhibitions. In FY 87, regional organizations offered subsidy for events by 454 performing groups, and made grants reaching 1,011 communities. These organizations have demonstrated an ability to supplement public funding with private support ($1.86 million in FY 88).

Program Response and Category Descriptions

The funding priorities of the States Program are mainly determined by the Endowment's enabling legislation, which sets aside no less than 20 percent of Program funds for the states and regions and stipulates that at least 75 percent of that amount must go to the states in equal amounts per state. Under Endowment policy, half of those funds not reserved for equal distribution among the states, or up to 12.5 percent of the total, is allocated to regional groups; another 12.5 percent of the total or $2.872 million (whichever is less) is divided among the states on the basis of population size. Any funds remaining from the 20 percent set-aside are available for support of collaborative initiatives developed by the states and Endowment discipline programs.

Partnerships have been formed in recent years between the state and regional agencies and Endowment discipline programs to increase opportunities for touring and presenting of dance through the Dance On Tour initiative; promote good design at the state and community levels; promote folk arts; and administer fellowship programs for visual artists. To encourage such partnerships a new funding category -- for Collaborative Initiatives -- has been identified this year as one of the 20 percent formula components. The demonstrated effectiveness of the state and regional agencies suggests good opportunities for increased cooperation in the future.

Finally, limited funds over and above the 20 percent formula components are made available to support special projects of state and regional arts agencies and costs of information services, arts management assistance, and other services provided at a national level to state arts agencies. Support for the National Assembly of State Arts Agencies comes from these "over and above" funds.

1. Basic State Grants

Formula grants are awarded annually through this category to the 56 state and special jurisdiction arts agencies upon the approval of an application and plan for support of the arts. Funds support the programs and administrative needs of state arts agencies and assist them in realizing the goals they have developed in their respective state plans. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 56 grants out of 56 applications aggregating $21,740,000 vs. 62 grants out of 62 applications aggregating $21,661,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, the South Dakota Arts Council in Sioux Falls received a Basic State Grant of $345,000 which was used in combination with state, local and private funds to support 257 projects in 9 arts disciplines. Basic State Grant dollars helped to fund school and community residencies, artist fellowships, arts festivals, organizational support, and exhibitions. A sampling of awards includes: a grant of $500 to the South Dakota 4-H Society in Brookings for a visual arts exhibition; a grant of $2,700 to the Dance Network of South Dakota in Yankton for a conference; a grant of $500 to the Black Hills Pow-wow Association in Rapid City for a folk arts festival; a grant of $4,000 to South Dakota Public Radio in Vermillion for organizational support; a grant of $340 to the Lawrence County Extension Office in Spearfish for a photography workshop; and a grant of $420 to the Gettysburg High School for a literature residency.

2. Collaborative Initiatives

This category will support initiatives reflecting a high level of collaboration in both development and implementation between state and regional arts agencies and Arts Endowment discipline programs. The Dance On Tour initiative, jointly developed and funded by the States, Dance, and Inter-Arts Programs, is one such activity, and its funding will be augmented as a Collaborative Initiative for FY 91. Dance On Tour is intended to strengthen dance and its audiences by supporting touring of exemplary dance artists and enhancing the presentation of dance. In FY 91, we have allocated $230,000 to this new category; we anticipate awarding 3 grants out of 3 applications.

3. Regional Arts Programming Grants

Grants in this category are awarded to regional groups of state arts agencies for support of arts programs planned and implemented on a multistate basis. The stability of support from the Endowment's States Program is key to their success in carrying our their missions. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 7 grants out of 7 applications aggregating $3,190,000 vs. 13 grants out of 13 applications aggregating $3,190,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, Arts Midwest in Minneapolis, MN, received a Regional Arts Programming Grant of $522,000 which was used in combination with funds from other Endowment Programs and more than $554,000 in state, local and private funds to carry out multistate arts programming in Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Michigan, Minnesota, North Dakota, South Dakota and Wisconsin. Arts Midwest supported 448 projects involving the presentation of dance, theater, opera and musical performances; visual arts fellowships and exhibitions; and professional development for arts administrators. A sampling of the 94 performing arts groups participating in Arts Midwest's programs includes: the Burgundian Consort, a medieval and renaissance music group from Oak Park, IL; Shuffle Creek Dancers from Bloomington, IN, performing traditional folk dance and innovative choreography; the Ko-Thi Dance Company from Wisconsin, presenting traditional and contemporary African-American and Caribbean performing arts; Lakota Performing Arts from South Dakota, traditional Sioux musical and dance traditions; the Dayton Ballet from Ohio; the American Brass Review from Minnesota; and the Detroit Dance Collective from Michigan. Visual arts touring exhibitions include Latent Images: Ten Midwestern Photographers and Tradition/Transition: Ten Midwest Craft Artists, both of which showcase the work of previous fellowship winners.

4. Special Projects

This category provides support for a small number of special projects which respond in particularly innovative or timely ways to the needs and opportunities of the field as a whole, and includes support for rural special projects. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 17 grants out of 30 applications aggregating $560,000 vs. 25 grants out of 35 applications aggregating $794,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a grant of $25,000 was awarded to the Kansas Arts Commission in Topeka to support an intensive rural arts development program. A rural arts coordinator will travel throughout Kansas to assist with the formation, development, planning and programming of rural arts organizations. The program will also include awards of up to $10,000 to underwrite programmatic and administrative costs of a limited number of rural organizations and awards of up to $1,000 for program activities involving local resources.

5. State Support Services

Grants awarded in this category support the costs of services provided at the national level to state arts agencies. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 2 grants out of 2 applications aggregating $380,000 vs. 2 grants out of 2 applications aggregating $355,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 88, the National Assembly of State Arts Agencies (NASAA) in Washington, DC, received a grant of $225,000. NASAA informs state arts agencies on current issues and development in the arts, provides forums for the review and discussion of arts policy issues, provides programs to strengthen the planning and management capability of member agencies and publishes a monthly newsletter which reaches some 750 state arts agency board members. Other activities include the maintenance and refinement of the National Standard for Arts Information Exchange, which consists of common terms, definitions and reporting formats for national reporting of information about state arts agency grantmaking. It has improved information management, increased accountability, and facilitated information exchange among public arts agencies. States Program support to the National Assembly of State Arts Agencies is matched, primarily with member agency dues.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS

OFFICE OF POLICY, PLANNING & RESEARCH

APPLICATION/GRANT RELATIONSHIP & FUNDING IMPACT: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT	APPL	GRANTS	AMOUNT
ARTS ADMINISTRATION FELLOWS	228	46	200	260	44	200	280	40	200
INTERNATIONAL	19	19	259	28	28	275	40	40	325
RESEARCH	2	2	471	25	7	525	25	6	325
SPECIAL CONSTITUENCIES a/	5	5	70	...	...	...	3	3	50
PROGRAM TOTAL	254	72	1,000	313	79	1,000	348	89	900

CATEGORY DISTRIBUTION BY FUND TYPE: FY 89-91
($ in thousands)

(FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY)

	FY 89			FY 90			FY 91		
CATEGORY	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL	DEF/ PROGRAM	INDEF/ TREAS	TOTAL
ARTS ADMINISTRATION FELLOWS	200	0	200	200	0	200	200	0	200
INTERNATIONAL	259	0	259	275	0	275	325	0	325
RESEARCH	471	0	471	525	0	525	325	0	325
SPECIAL CONSTITUENCIES a/	70	0	70	0	0	0	50	0	50
PROGRAM TOTAL	1,000	0	1,000	1,000	0	1,000	900	0	900

---

a/ Formerly Older and Disabled Populations. In FY 90, included in the Admistrative Budget under Deputy Chairman for Management.

POLICY, PLANNING AND RESEARCH

Purpose

The Office of Policy, Planning and Research (OPPR) assists in the development of overall Endowment policies so that the agency may effectively manage its support for excellence in the arts, and promote wide access to that excellence. Research activities which assist both the Endowment and the field are funded in this office. In addition, OPPR provides advocacy and funding for accessibility to the arts for older and disabled people, supports international activities which promote international exchange in the arts (managed by the Deputy Chairman for Partnership), and supports the Fellowship Program for Arts Administrators (managed by the Office of the Deputy Chairman for Management).

Needs and Opportunities in the Field

Arts Administration Fellows. Skilled management of arts organizations is essential. The Endowment is in a unique position to contribute to the training and education of talented arts managers because, as the federal arts agency, it responds to the needs of not-for-profit arts organizations and individual artists around the nation. Fellows at the Endowment gain a valuable national overview of the arts.

International. As a nation we take justifiable pride in our artists and in our art and culture generally, but we seem to care little what outsiders know or think about them. Unlike France, England and many other countries, the United States has never seen any reason to engage meaningfully in "cultural diplomacy," or to employ -- or even consider -- its artists, both commercial and nonprofit, as cultural ambassadors. The fact is, however, that people the world over greet them as such. American artists working and performing abroad continue to be among our country's most visable representatives; moreover, they themselves are enriched by contacts with their foreign colleagues. Foreign audiences benefit from encounters with American artists and arts groups, just as U.S. audiences benefit from exposure to the wealth of extraordinary art and artists of the rest of the world.

Research and Policy Analysis. In October 1988, the Endowment submitted to the President and Congress the state of the arts report requested by Congress in 1985. Entitled The Arts in America, this report included such trend-line data on artists, arts organizations, and audiences as is currently available, in a broad description of the level of artistic diversity and activity in America today. The process of producing this first Congressionally-mandated report underscored the need for consistent, reliable trend data on the arts. In response to this need, and toward the development of the "practical system of national information and data collection on the arts, artists and arts groups, and their audiences" mandated by Congress, the Endowment convened an ad hoc Research Advisory Group to advise the Endowment on development of a research agenda.

Group participants suggested that the Endowment develop a framework of critical issues for research in the arts, a research agenda which could be addressed over time by the Endowment and others. They affirmed the usefulness of examining trends in the arts in the larger context provided by national data bases and of focused special studies providing qualitative as well as quantitative information. Participants urged the Endowment to provide leadership by working with the fields to identify key indicators for assessing the health of individual art forms. The need to look across fields in appropriate areas was also emphasized.

In arts education, another area in which Congress mandated trend reporting, the Endowment has made a strong beginning in research on the availability of arts education. The next challenge will be to update these data and pursue the question of the quality of education provided, measured by the availability and use of key resources such as teachers trained to teach the arts, quality texts and curricular materials, and the evaluation of student assessment. A Federal Advisory Board on Arts Education was convened by the Endowment to address specific recommendations in Toward Civilization relating to arts curriculum development and assessment.

Special Constituencies. A 1986 U.S. Bureau of the Census study concluded that 37 million Americans out of the population of 181 million noninstitutionalized people age 15 or older have disabilities; of this figure, 21.8 million -- or almost two-thirds -- are under the age of 65. There are also 30 million Americans age 65 and older, who form an increasingly large proportion of our population (more than 10 percent in 1980 and, by 2030, more than 20 percent according to the Bureau of the Census forecast). For arts organizations, this trend is important because older adults represent high audience potential given their available leisure time. It is also important for older people to have access to the arts. However, the Endowment's 1985 Survey of Public Participation in the Arts shows older adults are underrepresented in arts audiences.

Arts administrators need to remove architectural, programmatic, logistical and financial barriers that may prevent older and disabled people from participating in their programs, and develop marketing expertise to reach these large segments of our society. At the same time, many older and disabled artists and arts administrators also experience attitudinal, physical and programmatic barriers. Although grantees have made a great deal of progress, many arts organizations (including state arts agencies, which have special responsibilities in managing federal formula grant funds) still do not provide for meaningful access to the arts for disabled and older people.

Program Response and Category Descriptions

1. Arts Administration Fellows

The Endowment's Fellows Program brings early- and mid-career arts administrators to the Endowment to provide a national overview of federal arts support. This experience addresses the need to increase the future effectiveness of fellows in the planning, management, and development of arts organizations. The program introduces fellows to the policies and operations of the Endowment through work in Program offices; fellows also attend seminars, guest speaker sessions, and advisory panel and National Council meetings. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 40 grants out of 280 applications aggregating $200,000 vs. 44 grants out of 260 applications aggregating $200,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, Bill Anschell came to the Endowment from Madison, WI, where he had worked as the membership and marketing coordinator of ACUCAA (the Association of College, University and Community Arts Administrators -- now renamed the Association of Performing Arts Presenters). A musician and writer, Mr. Anschell participated in the spring session as a fellow in the Music Program of the Endowment, where he conducted research project surveying the jazz field. In addition, he had the opportunity to observe several Endowment program panel meetings, including the jazz fellowships category of the Music Program. With this experience, Mr. Anschell went on to be the jazz coordinator for the Southern Arts Federation, a regional organization which promotes the arts in nine southern states.

2. International

The International Office acts as a liaison to government agencies involved in international cultural activities and to cultural representatives of foreign governments. It also briefs those official visitors to the United States who are interested in American art and culture. The Office administers fellowships awarded under the U.S./Japan and U.S./France exchange agreements and provides support to the Fund for U.S. Artists at International Festivals and Exhibitions, a joint initiative of the Rockefeller Foundation, the Pew Charitable Trusts, the United States Information Agency and the National Endowment for the Arts to enable the best American artists and ensembles to be seen at these crowd-pulling events. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 40 grants out of 40 applications aggregating $325,000 vs. 28 grants out of 28 applications aggregating $275,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, the Fund for U.S. Artists at International Festivals and Exhibitions funded the Jamaica (NY) Art Center to organize an exhibition of work by black sculptor Martin Puryear at the 1989 Sao Paulo Bienal in Brazil. Mr. Puryear was awarded first prize by an international jury, the first time a U.S. artist has been so honored.

3. Research and Policy Analysis

The Endowment's research efforts are carried out by means of a combination of staff work and external assistance through grants, contracts, and cooperative agreements. To assist in preparation of the Congressionally-mandated state of the arts report due in October 1990, the Endowment is currently updating the 1987 edition of A Sourcebook of Arts Statistics, a compilation of data in all disciplines. The updated Sourcebook will be available to researchers in the field through the Educational Resources Information Center (ERIC), an information system accessible at colleges and universities throughout the country.

The Research Division has been developing studies responsive to the concerns expressed by the Research Advisory Group, which stressed the need for more information about individual artists, small arts organizations in general and multicultural organizations in particular. Studies in progress include: an examination of the needs and working conditions of choreographers in four American dance centers (New York, Washington, DC, Chicago, and San Francisco); a pilot study of what can be learned about small, managerially developing organizations from materials collected by the Endowment's Advancement Program; and a major study of multicultural arts organizations, described below.

We continue to explore what impact the state of the arts reporting requirements may have on future budget submissions. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 6 grants out of 25 applications aggregating $325,000 vs. 7 grants out of 25 applicants aggregating $525,000 awarded in FY 90.

Example: In FY 89, a contract for $106,750 was awarded to the NSI Research Group of Austin, TX, and Los Angeles, CA, to undertake a study to broaden our knowledge of African-American, Asian-American, Hispanic, and native American arts organizations nationwide. NSI's researchers, with long experience in multicultural research, will conduct a survey to provide information about the number, size, age, location, and characteristics of these organizations: their primary artistic activity, length of season, financial status, organizational goals, and current and/or anticipated problems. The resulting information is expected to be a significant resource as a planning tool for the Endowment and other public and private funders.

4. Special Constituencies

The Endowment addresses the needs in these areas through advocacy, technical assistance, support for model projects, and support for interagency activities. The FY 91 allocation (which has been returned to Policy, Planning and Research from the operating administrative account) will support the interagency and the publication activities of this office. In FY 91 we anticipate awarding 3 grants out of 3 applications aggregating $50,000.

Example: One of a series of access symposia for state arts agencies and other grantees will be convened in Washington, DC, in July 1990, to assist members of the Mid-Atlantic Arts Foundation (representing 9 states) in educating their grantees on how to make their programs more available to older and disabled people, and making their agencies more accessible. Under development since 1988 ($20,000 in FY 89; $30,000 in FY 90) the July 1990 event will include panels and workshops on model efforts by arts organizations and presentations by groups and individuals representing special constituencies. Other workshops will focus on design solutions, access training for grantees, and the Endowment's 504 Regulations. The conference itself will serve as a model, demonstrating ways to conduct a completely accessible meeting.

ADMINISTRATIVE BUDGET

I. INTRODUCTION

The National Endowment for the Arts requests $20.300 million in operating administrative funds for FY 91. This budget will allow the Endowment to continue its leadership role in support of the arts and assure effective program management and control. It will enable us to cover the 3.6 percent pay raise scheduled for January 1, 1990 and half of the 3.5 percent pay raise proposed for January 1, 1991, the remainder being covered by taking money from other administrative accounts (i.e., absorption). It will also provide funds for the Executive and Senior Executive Service pay raises proposed for FY 91. Additionally, this budget will enable us to restore many of the activities deferred in FY 90 in order to absorb the cost of the FY 90 pay raise.

To maintain the integrity of our grantmaking process, we must increase staff as well as funding for panelist activities. We recently received OMB approval to add two staff positions during FY 90 and and three during FY 91. Our FY 91 request includes funding for these positions. This would increase our authorized Full Time Equivalents (FTE) to 267.

The Administrative Budget we are requesting for FY 91 reflects an overall increase of 9.1 percent in the operating accounts over the FY 90 base. The following areas represent the major portions of the total increase:

Personnel Compensation	56 percent
Rentals	14 percent
Contractual Services	26 percent

A. FY 90 Base

In considering our FY 91 request, one must first address the non-controllable cost increases to our FY 90 base upon which our FY 91 budget is built. The FY 90 Administrative Budget request (and eventual appropriation) did not include funds to cover either the proposed 3.6 percent pay raise estimated to cost $300,618 in FY 90, or the Executive and Senior Executive Service pay raises which are estimated to cost $27,455 in FY 90. In addition, we are currently experiencing higher costs for employee benefits due to higher participation in the new Federal Employee Retirement System (FERS) than originally projected and the FY 89 increase in health insurance costs. We estimate that these two requirements will cost an additional $144,523 in FY 90. These increases must be covered.

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

We also have increased panelist activities and compensation, in response to Congressional concerns about the insufficient amount of time panelists' have to effectively meet their responsibilities. During FY 90 we used additional funds provided by Congress to raise panelists' honorarium to $100 per day and increase per diem to the allowable GSA rate for Washington, DC. This is the first time since the early 1970's we have been able to increase honorarium, which is still among the lowest in the federal government. Additionally, with funding provided by Congress, and an increase in FTE approved by OMB, we will add two positions to assist with the new subgranting requirements incorporated in our FY 90 appropriation language.

The following is a summary of the cost increases which must be factored into our FY 90 base:

- Increased cost of Employee Benefits ($69,523 in benefits / $75,000 in Health Insurance)	$144,523
- The 3.6 percent pay raise, effective Jan 1st ($258,687 for salaries / $41,931 in benefits)	300,618
- The Executive/Senior Executive Service pay raise effective Jan 1st ($21,655 for salaries / $5,800 in benefits)	27,455
- Panelist cost increases	100,000
- Two additional FTE for subgranting review	100,000
Total	$672,596

B. FY 91 Base

The proposed administrative budget for FY 91 covers the annualized cost of the FY 90 payroll increases as well as three additional FTE, increased panelist activity and general increases in the cost of rentals, goods and services. It also covers half of the 3.5 percent pay raise proposed for January 1, 1991; the other half will be covered through absorption from non-personnel activities. Additionally, the Executive and Senior Executive Service pay raise is estimated to cost $138,000 in FY 91. The proposed FY 91 budget reflects an increase of 9.1 percent over the FY 90 Congressional appropriation of $18.6 million. If one factors in the $672,596 of cost increases discussed above and considers an adjusted FY 90 base of $19.273 million, then the FY 91 administrative budget represents only a 5.3 percent increase over the adjusted FY 90 base. The major portion of the cost increases are noncontrollable.

The following is a summary of the major increases contained within our FY 91 Administrative Budget request:

- **The annualized cost of the FY 90 pay raise ($344,516 in salaries / $65,351 in benefits)**	**$409,867**
- **Half the cost of the proposed 3.5 percent FY 91 pay raise ($168,102 in salaries / $24,568 in benefits)**	192,670
- **Executive and Senior Executive Service pay raise ($102,480 in salaries / $36,000 in benefits)**	138,480
- Three additional FTE in FY 91 ($76,000 in salaries / $19,760 in benefits)	95,760
- Merit pay increases, within-grade increases and promotions during FY 91	160,000
- FY 91 FERS incremental increase	117,777
- Panelist activity increase	186,600
- Rental costs	103,100

C. Management Improvements

The Endowment continues to implement management improvements to contain and reduce administrative costs. We seek cost reduction opportunities in all facets of our operation. Were it not for ongoing review and improvement of our operating procedures our Administrative Budget request would have been much higher. The following examples highlight some of the significant cost saving measures and management improvements.

For several years we have been working towards development of an integrated financial management system (FMS) which meets the requirements of OMB Circular A-127. After an extensive search we obtained a basic system from the Department of Education at no cost. The estimated value of that system is more than $1 million. During FY 89 we awarded a contract for adapting that system to our operations and plan to execute the implementation and testing phases during FY 91.

In conducting required vulnerability assessments of our computer system facility and the security of data, we were able to obtain technical assistance from the National Security Agency at no cost. We were able to correct weaknesses at minimal cost.

We are one of the small agencies piloting use of the Government On Line Accounting Link System (GOALS) for electronically reporting financial transactions to the U. S. Treasury. Additionally, we are now using Electronic Funds Transfers (EFT) for grantee/vendor payments exceeding $5,000. Prior to the on line operation we had to manually type all reports and payment schedules. The new procedures not only save many hours of typing but expedite payments to grantees and vendors.

The Endowment's FY 91 Administrative Budget request is justified on the following pages by cost categories. We believe that this administrative budget represents the funding necessary to function effectively and meet our responsibilities as a federal agency.

II. ANALYSIS OF FY 91 ADMINISTRATIVE BUDGET BY COST CATEGORIES

A. PERSONNEL COMPENSATION

The sum of $12,865,900 is requested for personnel compensation which covers salaries and benefits for 267 FTE. This represents an increase of three FTE over the FY 90 ceiling. These additional FTE are essential to ensuring the integrity of our grant application review and award processes. The Endowment's authorized FTE was 267 in FY 83, down from a peak of 301 FTE in FY 80. In FY 83 we processed 15,179 applications, and in FY 91 we estimate processing more than 19,000 applications. Refer to Appendix A (at the end of the Administrative narrative) for a more detailed discussion of the need for the additional FTE.

The FY 91 personnel compensation request represents a 7.9 percent increase over the FY 90 base (adjusted for the increase in Employee Benefits). The increase results from: the annualized cost of the 3.6 percent pay raise ($409,867); the addition of three FTE ($95,760); normal merit pay increases, within-grade increases and promotions ($160,000); the FY 91 increment of continued transition to FERS ($117,777); an increase in our Stay-in-School program ($3,000); an increase in Employee Awards ($10,000); an increase in Overtime ($5,000); and an allowance for lump sum leave ($40,000). In addition, the cost of the Executive and Senior Executive Service pay raise is estimated to cost $138,000 in FY 91.

The following is a narrative justification by subobject class for the Endowment's FY 91 personnel compensation request:

1. Full-Time Permanent

The Endowment requests $10,088,900 to cover Full-Time Permanent staff. As outlined above, this object class includes funds to offset the FY 90 and FY 91 pay raises, merit pay, within-grade pay increases, anticipated promotions and three additional FTE over FY 90.

2. Other Than Full-Time Permanent

The Endowment requests $591,000 for support of Part-Time Permanent and Temporary employees. It also covers salaries for Intermittent staff which includes compensation for members of the National Council on the Arts which meets four times a year.

3. Other Personnel Compensation

The total budget for this object class is $120,000. It will cover payment of $40,000 for Overtime, Night Differential, Holiday Pay and Awards. Based upon past experience, we have estimated the cost of employee awards under the Performance Management Recognition System at $80,000 for FY 91.

4. Special Personal Services Payments

The sum of $80,000 is requested for this category which covers the Stay-in-School program. This object class has essentially remained flat for several years.

5. Personnel Benefits

The amount budgeted for benefits is $1,945,600, which represents an increase of $207,130 over FY 90. The composite benefit rate is now running more than 18 percent. This is a dramatic increase over the FY 90 rate reflecting higher participation in FERS than originally estimated and higher costs for employee health insurance. We experienced an increase of approximately 25 percent in health insurance payments in FY 89, and this will carry into both FY 90 and FY 91. It is possible that health insurance will increase again during FY 90 depending upon the outcome of the government-wide health plan negotiations.

Currently approximately 42 percent of our employees are under the FERS compared with our original estimate of 34 percent. By FY 91, we estimate that almost 48 percent of Endowment staff will be covered under FERS.

6. Benefits to Former Personnel

We have budgeted $40,000 to cover severance payments and unemployment compensation claims. Payments for these expenses vary depending on the number and types of claims made. In the past these claims have ranged as high as $70,000. Our liability for such claims is not known until after the start of the fiscal year.

The following is a summary of Personnel Compensation costs:

		($ in thousands)		
		FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
11.1	Full-Time Permanent	8,664	9,387	10,089
11.3	Other than Full-Time Permanent	474	572	591
11.5	Other Personnel Compensation	133	105	120
11.8	Special Personnel Services	55	77	80
11.9	Total Personnel Compensation	9,326	10,141	10,880
12.1	Personnel Benefits	1.577	1,738	1,946
13.1	Benefits to Former Personnel	0	40	40
	Total Compensation & Benefits	10,903	11,919	12,866

B. TRAVEL OF PERSONS

For FY 91 we are requesting $410,000 for travel. This object class enables the Endowment to support all local and out-of-town travel for staff members, the National Council on the Arts, and the President's Committee on the Arts and the Humanities. Council travel permits members of the National Council on the Arts to attend the quarterly Council meetings as well as periodic policy meetings. The increase in travel costs can be attributed to increasing air fares (including government contract fares) and the expressed Congressional concern that we increase our outreach to rural and outlying areas.

Staff travel is also used by certain Endowment offices, such as Inspector General, General Counsel and Civil Rights, which are required to make periodic out-of-town trips to execute their mandatory responsibilities. In addition, funds are needed for Invitational Travel to cover expenses of visiting professionals who are being interviewed for Program Director and other positions.

		($ in thousands)		
		FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
21.1	Staff Travel	275	320	348
21.3	Council Travel	56	60	62
	Total	331	380	410

C. TRANSPORTATION OF THINGS

The sum of $31,000 requested in this object class is used primarily for contracting with a commercial courier for express delivery of time-sensitive materials.

		($ in thousands)		
		FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
22.0	Transportation of Things	34	30	31

D. RENT, COMMUNICATIONS AND UTILITIES

1. Rent

The FY 91 estimate for rent from the General Services Administration is $1,830,100. This estimate is the amount needed to pay for existing office and conference space in our current location at the Old Post Office building. It also includes rent for storage space located in the Northeast section of Washington, DC. The estimated FY 91 rental payment increased by $85,100 or 4.9 percent over the preceding year.

2. Communications, Utilities and Other Rent

a. Equipment Rental

The amount requested for equipment rental is $563,000. The greater part of this budget (96 percent) is for lease of ADP equipment. The Endowment uses a Federal Lease to Ownership Program known as (FLTOP) which enables us to lease with various ADP equipment vendors who have negotiated contracts with GSA. Equipment is usually leased for a three-year period after which time ownership is assumed by the agency. As certain items are bought out, new and replacement items are scheduled for acquisition so there is a "rollover" of costs.

The FY 91 request includes funds for FLTOP items ordered and installed in FY 88 and FY 89 along with FLTOP orders planned for the FY 90 and FY 91 phase. In FY 88, we enhanced our grants management system to manage better the receipt of required final reports from grantees. This system ensures that grantees are notified if they are delinquent in filing the required final report. Implementation of the final reports system resulted in an immediate demand for more terminals to increase access to the system.

In FY 89, we began development of several core modules of the financial management system. We anticipate major upgrades to the Endowment's computer system to support the financial management system's usage as well as other agency computing demands. We will also experience an increased demand for terminals and/or professional computers.

b. Telephone

The sum of $300,000 is requested for FY 91 telephone costs. The major portion of these funds will be for long-distance services. The primary reason for the increase is to implement GSA's "FTS-2000" program. This program will cost the Endowment considerably more for telephone services because we will have to contract for long-distance services through GSA. We reduced telephone costs substantially over the past five years through the purchase of switching equipment and connection to commercial long-distance carriers since moving to the Old Post Office.

c. Postage

The sum of $212,000 is requested for postage in FY 91. This reflects an increase of $52,000 over the FY 90 estimate as a result of having to use postage meters in FY 91.

The following is a summary of Rental, Telephone and Postage costs:

		($ in thousands) FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
23.1	Rent Payments to GSA	1,713	1,745	1,830
23.3	Equipment Rental	579	545	563
23.3	Telephone	191	210	300
23.3	Postage	153	160	212
	Total	2,636	2,660	2,905

E. PRINTING AND REPRODUCTION

We are requesting the sum of $288,000 for this object class, which represents an $7,400 increase over FY 90. Funds in this object class enable the Endowment to print application guidelines, program flyers, the Annual Report, Council books, Guide to National Endowment for the Arts, notices in the Federal Register, and miscellaneous items.

Guideline printing remains the largest single item in this object class. Generally, the number of copies and pages to be printed in FY 91 are consistent with prior year's levels. For FY 91 the Government Printing Office (GPO) has advised us that printing costs will increase 7 percent over the FY 90 costs. To contain costs and effect savings in the printing of guidelines and other materials we are beginning to use desktop publishing programs to produce camera ready copy.

		($ in thousands) FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
24.0	Printing & Reproduction	293 a/	281	288

---

a/ Excludes $11,000 of Office of Policy, Planning, and Research activities which is included under this Object Class in the President's Budget.

F. OTHER SERVICES

1. Training

The amount requested for this line item is $35,000. These funds will be used for both ADP and other types of general training. We can operate at this level in FY 91 because the Endowment conducts various in-house training sessions such as enhancement of supervisory skills, word processing and professional computer use. With the increased use of professional computers, it is necessary to provide additional technical courses for more staff members. Additionally, the newly created Office Of Inspector General (formerly our Audit Office) will require specialized training.

However, the FY 91 training request is still below a level which appropriately addresses the Endowment's needs. This object class has been consistently "raided" to help cover pay increases. In future years we hope to reinstate broader training programs.

2. Miscellaneous Contractual Services

The amount requested for this object class is $545,000. This is a $93,000 increase over the FY 90 estimate. In this object class we pay for a multitude of contracts including: GSA Guard Service, payroll/personnel processing services with the U.S. Department of Agriculture and an employee health care services contract with the Justice Department. The Endowment anticipates an average 4 percent increase for these contractual services. The single largest cost in this account is for ADP-related contracts, including equipment and software maintenance. We expect these contracts to increase from $118,000 in FY 90 to $184,000 in FY 91. The main reason for this increase is expansion of our ADP systems and buy-outs under our FLTOP program; i.e., when we own the equipment, we incur the maintenance costs. In addition, we are continuing to acquire professional computers (in lieu of dumb terminals) which require both service and maintenance. Funds in this account will also be used to: install local computer networking and cabling; general office machinery repair; Equal Employment Opportunity investigations; archiving records; micro-graphing financial records; and administrative costs associated with our four National Council meetings.

3. Panelist Contracts

The FY 91 request for panelist costs is $1,031,000 which represents an $86,000 increase over the FY 90 base. The panel process is one of the most essential mechanisms in the Endowment's grantmaking process. Through this process, applications are judged and grants recommended. Great care is taken to ensure the integrity of this process. Every attempt is made to obtain panelists who possess extensive knowledge and experience in their artistic discipline or field. Consideration is also given to the geographical representation of the various panelists as well as ethnic and gender representatives, and representation from state, local and regional arts agencies.

During FY 90 we increased panelist honorarium from $75 per day to $100 per day; honorarium has not been increased in more than fifteen years so even $100 per day is inadequate. In addition, we increased panelist per diem from $117 to the GSA Washington, DC, allowance of $121 per day. The new rates will carry into FY 91 as well. Additionally, we are experiencing higher air fares (including government contract fares) in FY 90 and expect them to continue to rise during FY 91. The FY 91 panelist request reflects an increase in the number of panels, panelists and panelist days in order to ensure adequate time to complete the grant evaluation/recommendation process and provide programmatic and guideline advice to the Endowment.

4. Consultant Contracts

The amount projected for consultants in FY 91 is $28,000, which represents a $5,000 increase over the FY 90 request. Funds in this object class are used to bring arts experts, usually panel Chairmen, to make presentations or to discuss panel activities at the meetings of the National Council on the Arts. This also covers expenses for consultants who are requested by the Council itself.

5. Administrative Contracts

The amount requested for this object class is $565,000. These funds are used for those contractual services which are more efficiently performed by private sector contractors. The single largest contract is for reprographic services. This contract, estimated at $240,000, includes the lease of all machines, as well as trained operators to run and maintain the machines. The other significant expense in this category is for ADP systems development. We request the sum of $167,000 which will be used for follow-up development of our financial management system.

This object class also includes $56,000 for clerical support staff and consultants employed by the President's Committee on the Arts and the Humanities; half of the cost of this committee is shared by the National Endowment for the Humanities through a reimbursement agreement. In our FY 90 Congressional Budget Request, activities of the Office for Special Constituencies were transferred out of the Office of Policy, Planning and Research and were included under Administrative Contracts. For FY 91, we plan to return Special Constituencies to the Office of Policy, Planning and Research.

6. Intergovernmental Personnel Act Agreements

The FY 91 request for Intergovernmental Personnel Act Agreements (known as IPAs) is $635,800. This represents an increase of $99,800 or 19 percent over the FY 90 level. The IPA arrangement has proven useful in employing people from state and local institutions and universities. An agreement is established in conjunction with their employer so that the individual remains employed by their loaning organization. The individual can then return to his/her institution without interruption in service and benefits. In this way, the Endowment can employ experts in the arts community and they can return to their fields with a national perspective of the arts. This is especially true of those individuals who might not otherwise be able or willing to leave their current positions permanently, but are interested in a two or three year assignment.

7. Regional Representatives

The sum requested for this object class is $760,500, which is a $41,500 or 5.8 percent increase above the level budgeted for FY 90. The additional funds will be used to offset various overhead expenses such as rent, insurance, office supplies, postage and phones. A modest increase has been added for travel to pay for anticipated increases in air fares. The six regional representatives are divided into the following locations: Northeast States and Caribbean; Southern States; Upper Midwest States; Plains States and Texas; Western States; and the Pacific Rim. Their role is crucial to the Endowment's link with the many geographical sections of the country. Regional Representatives provide a physical presence in their region by serving as a liaison between the Endowment and artists, local/state arts organizations, patrons and corporations. Their presence in the field enables them to learn about new trends which may influence development of Endowment policy. Most importantly, they encourage new applicants by informing the arts community of available grant opportunities.

The following is a summary of Training and Contractual costs:

		($ in thousands)		
		FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
25.2	Training	20	25	35
25.4	Miscellaneous Contracts	450	452	545
25.8	Panelist Contracts	788	945	1,031
25.8	Consultant Contracts	36	23	28
25.9	Administrative Contracts	605	450	565
25.4	IPA Agreements	497	536	636
25.9	Regional Representatives	629	719	760
	Total	3,025 a/	3,150 b/	3,600 c/

---

a/ Excludes $537,000 of Office of Policy, Planning and Research activities and $6,260,000 of program activities which are included under this Object Class in the President's Budget.

b/ Excludes $550,000 of Office of Policy, Planning and Research activities and $6,000,000 of program activities which are included under this Object Class in the President's Budget.

c/ Excludes $495,000 of Office of Policy, Planning and Research activities and $6,000,000 of program activities which are included under this Object Class in the President's Budget.

G. SUPPLIES AND MATERIALS

The Endowment requests the sum of $170,000 for supplies and materials in FY 91. This object class provides funds for general office and ADP supplies. The major portion of the increase is needed for ADP supplies. With the continued development of existing automated systems, along with the advent of the financial management system, the need for ADP supplies continues to grow. With increased numbers of personal computers, this object class increases accordingly to accommodate the demand for printer ribbons, local communication boards, diskettes, paper and prepackaged software.

	($ in thousands)		
	FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
26.0 Supplies and Materials	168	160	170

H. EQUIPMENT

We are requesting $30,000 for equipment, which is a $10,000 increase over FY 90. Equipment is another object class where activity has been consistently deferred in order to absorb pay raises; FY 90 is no exception. Funds in this object class are used for planned replacement of worn out items such as typewriters, calculators, chairs and audiovisual equipment needed for our panels. This object class also includes funds for modular workstation components. These workstations, used by the majority of Endowment employees, are periodically reconfigured to accommodate staffing changes.

	($ in thousands)		
	FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
31.0 Equipment	27	20	30

III. PRESIDENT'S COMMITTEE ON THE ARTS AND THE HUMANITIES

The President's Committee on the Arts and the Humanities (PCAH) was established in 1982 by Presidential Executive Order. The current expiration date of the Committee is September 30, 1991. The costs of the PCAH are reflected in the various object classes of the Arts Endowment's administrative budget. The PCAH's logistical and administrative support activities (e.g. personnel, travel, contractual services, reprographic services, etc.) are provided by the Arts Endowment. The National Endowment for the Humanities shares the costs of the PCAH through a reimbursement agreement.

The PCAH's expenses are budgeted at $300,000 for FY 91 as reflected in the object class chart below. This represents a 7 percent increase over FY 90, primarily due to increased need for consulting services, personnel compensation and rent.

		($ in thousands) FY 89 ACT	FY 90 EST	FY 91 REQ
1100	Personnel */	94	81	91
1200	Personnel Benefits */	22	19	22
2100	Travel	18	18	18
2200	Trans. of Things	2	1	1
2300	Postage	2	3	3
2310	Rent	37	38	39
2321	Telephone	6	7	7
2400	Printing	13	3	3
2500	Contractual Svcs	85	107	113
2650	Supplies	2	2	2
3100	Equipment	1	1	1
	Total	282	280	300

---

*/ Includes compensation and benefits for part-time Arts Endowment staff member.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
ADMINISTRATIVE BUDGET: DETAIL OF OBJECT CLASSIFICATION
($ in Thousands)

	OBJECT CLASSES	FY 89 ACTUAL	FY 90 ESTIMATE	FY 91 REQUEST
11.1	Full-Time Permanent	$8,664	$9,387	$10,089
11.3	Other Than Full-Time Permanent	474	572	591
11.5	Other Personnel Compensation	133	105	120
11.8	Special Personal Services	55	77	80
11.9	Total Personnel Compensation	9,326	10,141	10,880
12.1	Civilian Personnel Benefits	1,577	1,738	1,946
13.0	Benefits for Former Personnel	0	40	40
	Total Compensation & Benefits	10,903	11,919	12,866
21.0	Travel & Transportation of Persons	331	380	410
22.0	Transportation of Things	34	30	31
23.1	Rental Payments to GSA	1,713	1,745	1,830
23.3	Comm., Utilities & Misc. Charges	923	915	1,075
24.0	Printing and Reproduction	293 (a)	281	288
25.0	Other Services (b), (c)	3,025 (d)	3,150 (e)	3,600 (f)
26.0	Supplies and Materials	168	160	170
31.0	Equipment	27	20	30
99.0	TOTAL	$17,417 (g)	$18,600	$20,300

(a) Excludes $11 (thousand) of Office of Policy, Planning, and Research (OPPR) activities which is included under this Object Class in the President's Budget.

(b) Excludes NEH reimbursement for one-half of PCAH expenses.

(c) For FY 90, the operating administrative budget includes $50 (thousand) for Special Constituencies activities. For FY 91 we are requesting that Special Constituencies funding be included under the Office of Policy, Planning and Research.

(d) Excludes $537,000 of OPPR activities and $6,260,000 of program activities which are included under this object class in the President's Budget.

(e) Excludes $550,000 of OPPR activities and $6,000,000 of program activities which are included under this object class in the President's Budget.

(f) Excludes $495,000 of OPPR activities and $6,000,000 of program activities which are included under this object class in the President's Budget.

(g) Excludes a lapse of $23,000.

APPENDIX A

JUSTIFICATION FOR INCREASES IN FULL-TIME EQUIVALENT STAFFING

I. INTRODUCTION

Beginning in FY 81 and extending through FY 83, the Endowment's staffing levels were reduced from a peak of 325 positions (equating to 301 FTE) in FY 80 to a level of 277 FTE in FY 83. During that same period of reduction, agency management consolidated some support activities and undertook steps to augment documentation requirements for application and grant processing and internal controls, to initiate and sustain an agency-wide planning process and to implement various additional management improvements. The Endowment was then at a minimum staffing level to meet its workload demands.

Since FY 83, new Congressional mandates have been enacted into law affecting post-award evaluation, new requirements for studies and reports, the biannual state of the arts report, a renewed emphasis on reaching diverse segments of the artist community and the public and Congressional requirements on managing subgrants. Also, the Endowment's basic workload (applications and grants) has continued to grow, with a 27 percent overall increase in grant applications since FY 83 as reflected in Table A-1. This information is also portrayed in a graph (Graph A-2) which shows both the actual/anticipated applications per fiscal year and the FTE staffing levels. Meanwhile, the Arts Endowment's FTE continued to decline reaching a low of 258 in FY 88.

The Endowment attempted to keep pace with the increased application workload and internal management requirements by realignment of personnel resources and introduction of new automated systems, but strains were evident in many parts of the agency. These increasing requirements, together with legislative changes that require collection, review and analysis of a variety of kinds of information, have now forced us beyond the point where automation alone can compensate for increased Endowment activity. In August 1987, as a result of increased workload and Congressional mandates, OMB authorized an additional four (4) FTE which increased our ceiling to 262 FTE for FY 89; this was still below the 277 FTE authorized for FY 83.

With many of the same issues remaining unaddressed since FY 87, coupled with increased Congressional interest in the agency adapting enhanced procedures for review of applications and grants, the Endowment requested an increase of five (5) FTE for FY 91. The Office of Management and Budget allowed us to phase in two FTE during FY 90 to address subgranting issues, and three during FY 91 to meet current workload demands. This would increase our authorized FTE ceiling to 267 in FY 91. Allocation of the five FTE are discussed in Sections II and III, below.

In our FY 90 appropriation, Congress added funds for an independent commission to review the Endowment's grantmaking procedures, including those of its panel system, and to consider whether the standard for publicly funded art should be different from the standard for privately funded art. It is possible that the Commission's findings and recommendations could affect future staffing needs.

II. PROGRAMMATIC INCREASE -- GRANT APPLICATIONS

The Endowment is experiencing an increase in the number of applications from the FY 83 level of 15,159 to the projected figure of 19,261 for FY 91. The FTE level for the Endowment has declined during this same period from 277 FTE to a level of 262 FTE in FY 89. This 27 percent increase in applications, as shown in Table A-1, has had a growing effect on the program areas with several programs experiencing increases well above the overall average; this is compounded with the agency wide need to ensure the integrity of our grant application review and award processes. Additional staff resources are needed to address these additional demands. The three FTE requested for FY 91 would be allocated to the Music, Theater and Arts in Education Programs.

A. Music

The Music Program has the highest funding level among the discipline programs and the greatest number of funding categories and subcategories (22 in FY 91). It anticipates a growth in applications and grants in FY 91, primarily in the Ensembles and Fellowships areas. In Ensembles, the Program will continue to support the strengthening of the artistic and administrative capacities of orchestras, choruses, and ensembles that perform chamber music, new music and jazz. It also plans to reinstitute the Regional Orchestra Touring project, which brings major orchestral performances to areas where excellent presentations of live music are generally low. Further, applications in categories for individual fellowship support -- for composers, jazz musicians and solo recitalists -- will continue to grow.

B. Theater

A major increase in applications will occur in support of professional theater companies and individual artists. A 30 percent projected increase, from 779 to 1,016 applications from FY 89 to FY 91, respectively, is anticipated. The bulk of the workload increase will be for "Support to Individuals," which assists the career development of outstanding playwrights, mimes and other solo performance artists, and stage directors and designers.

C. Arts in Education

The Arts in Education Program in FY 91 will continue to encompass a number of strategies to improve arts education, to include working with other Endowment programs to assure improved audience development for arts and cultural institutions through arts education in schools. Specifically, the Special Projects category will realize a 74 percent increase in applications in FY 91 compared with FY 89. This category permits any not-for-profit organization to apply for grants to make arts a basic in the school curriculum and supports Endowment initiatives targeted to implementing the recommendations found in Toward Civilization or offered by arts education advisory committees, as follows:

- Continuing to develop with representative schools prototype curricula which can be piloted, evaluated and widely disseminated for possible replication nationwide.
- Piloting teacher fellowships in arts education in collaboration with the Council on Basic Education.
- Providing education policymakers with guidance concerning what students, at a minimum, should know about the arts by high school graduation.
- Establishing a new initiative to increase opportunities for arts organizations to implement arts education projects.

III. REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBGRANTING

The House Committee on Appropriations indicated in the report accompanying the Endowment's FY 90 appropriation bill that the Chairmen and Councils of the Arts and Humanities Endowments should be "... as thoroughly informed and responsible for the subgrants as they are for direct grants ... " As a result, "NEA and NEH are directed to amend their procedures and guidelines accordingly." The Senate Appropriations Committee concurred with these requirements when it considered the Endowment's FY 90 appropriation.

The Congressional directive for the Endowment to review subgrant recommendations, under our current assumptions and premises, will require modification of some of the Endowment's current review procedures. It is anticipated that a significant number of subgrants, between 130 and 160, in the Media Arts and Inter-Arts Programs will require review. The two additional FTE approved for FY 90 will be assigned to these two programs.

IV. POST-AWARD EVALUATION

We have been able to address the increased demands of post-award evaluation without seeking an increase in FTE. Should these demands continue to increase, however, we may have to seek additional resources for these activities.

A. Overall Responsibility for Monitoring

Implementation of Endowment and Congressionally mandated post-award evaluation requirements has been extremely labor intensive. The Grants Office assumed the responsibility for overall management and monitoring of this effort, with substantial time and coordination expended working with Program staff and with grantees.

B. Reminder and Delinquent Letters

To ensure that grantees submitted final reports in a timely manner, the Endowment instituted final report reminder letters and, as necessary, delinquency letters. Approximately 4,500 reminder letters and 1,000 delinquency letters are mailed annually. Since these activities are working quite well, and the number of delinquent reports has decreased dramatically, we plan to continue this effort.

C. Rejection of Applications

The Endowment's final report policies require that delinquent reports be submitted by a particular date or new applications recommended for funding may be rejected. As we approach these deadlines, the Grants Office prepares detailed reports identifying the grantees and the applications in jeopardy. This process also involves increased communication between the Grants Office and Program staff and the Grants Office and grantees.

In addition to the post-award evaluation requirements, since FY 89 the Grants Office has been asked to manage a number of other activities that impact the Endowment's grantmaking process. These include: Drug-Free Workplace Act; government-wide suspension and debarment regulations; OMB Circular A-129 to include the review of credit reports; etc. While we recognize these requirements are government-wide, they nonetheless place a large burden on a small agency such as the Endowment, which has very limited resources over which to "spread out" such responsibilities.

TABLE A-1

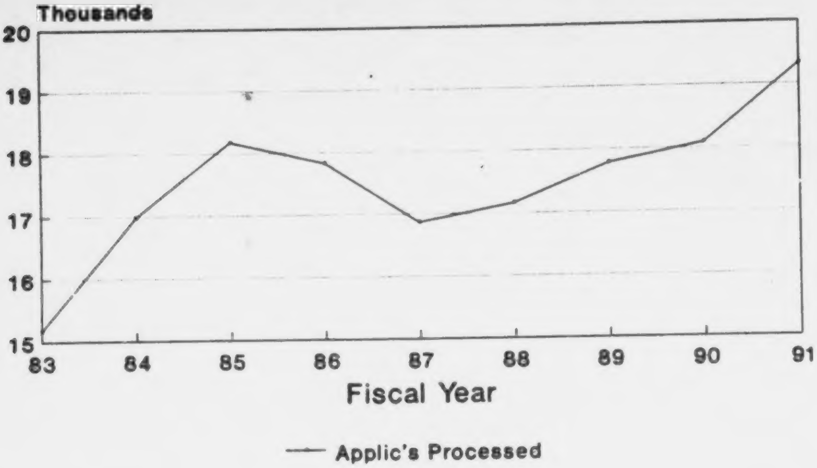
NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
APPLICATION-GRANT RELATIONSHIP AND FUNDING VS. FTE CEILING
FEDERALLY APPROPRIATED FUNDS ONLY
($ IN THOUSANDS)

Fiscal Year	FTE	Applications	Grants	Amount
1983	277	15,179	5,174	$143,875
1984	265	16,989	5,056	162,223
1985	263	18,178	4,801	163,660
1986	261	17,832	4,484	158,537
1987	258	16,871	4,542	165,281
1988	258	17,163	4,628	167,731
1989	262	17,797	4,604	169,090
1990	264	18,315	4,505	171,255
1991 a/	267	19,233	4,505	175,000

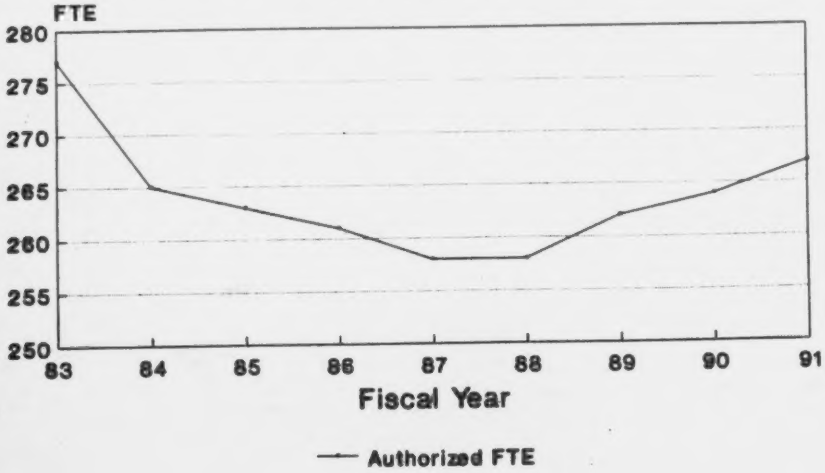
---

a/ 250 of the 946 application increase between FY 90 and FY 91 will be in the Visual Artists Fellowships category.

Applications for Funding
National Endowment for the Arts



Staffing Levels
National Endowment for the Arts



NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
GRANTS AWARDED AS CHAIRMAN'S ACTIONS
FY 89

DESIGN ARTS	1	9,500
EXPANSION ARTS	1	30,000
INTER-ARTS	1	5,000
LITERATURE	1	5,000
MUSIC	2	18,000
THEATER	1	5,000
VISUAL ARTS	1	20,000
ARTS IN EDUCATION	7	63,200
LOCAL PROGRAMS	1	20000
STATE PROGRAMS	1	30,000
POLICY, PLANNING AND RESEARCH	19	83798
	36	$289,498

NOTE: In FY 88, there were 48 Chairman's Actions totaling $621,480.

FY 89 CHAIRMAN'S ACTION GRANTS

PROGRAM/Category Grantee		AMOUNT
DESIGN ARTS/Design Advancement Individuals		
Hedman, Richard		9,500
Design Arts Program Total	1 grant @	9,500
EXPANSION ARTS/Special Projects		
Inner City Cultural Center		30,000
Expansion Arts Program Total	1 grant @	30,000
INTER-ARTS/Artists Projects: New Forms		
Performance Space 122		5,000
Inter-Arts Program Total	1 grant @	5,000
LITERATURE/Special Projects		
DC Commission on the Arts		5,000
Literature Program Total	1 grant @	5,000
MUSIC/Jazz Presenters		
Carnegie Hall Society, Inc.		8,000
MUSIC/Special Projects		
Charles Ives Performing Arts Center, Inc.		10,000
Music Program Total	2 grants @	18,000

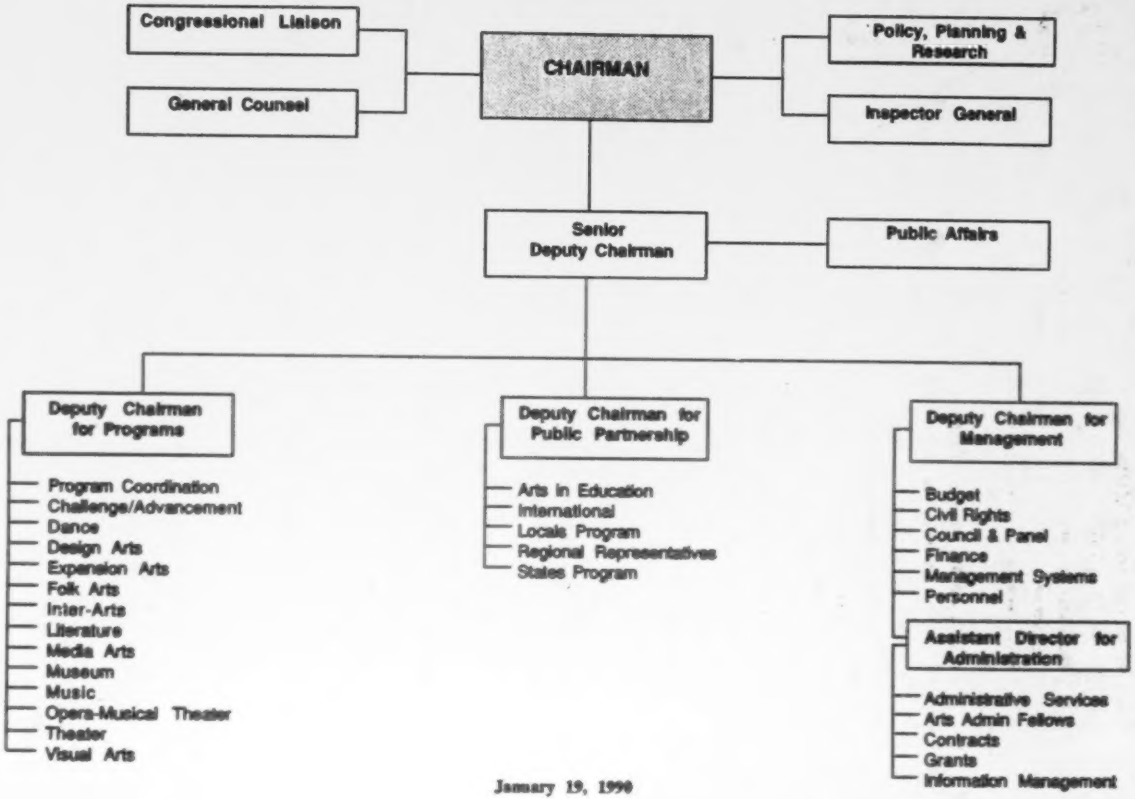
FY 89 CHAIRMAN'S ACTION GRANTS

PROGRAM/Category Grantee		AMOUNT
THEATER/Artistic Advancement		
Ohio Outdoor Historical Drama Association		5,000
Theater Program Total	1 grant @	5,000
VISUAL ARTS/Special Projects		
Diverseworks		20,000
Visual Arts Program Total	1 grant @	20,000
ARTS IN EDUCATION/Special Projects		
American Alliance for Health, Physical		1,200
American Council for the Arts		30,000
Great Valley Community Education Foundation		3,000
International Council of Fine Arts Deans		8,000
Michigan Alliance for Arts Education		15,000
Oregon Coast Council for the Arts		3,000
Sacramento Regional Foundation		3,000
Arts in Education Program Total	7 grants @	63,200
LOCAL PROGRAMS/Local Arts Agency Development		
Alaska State Council on the Arts		20,000
Local Programs Total	1 grant @	20,000
STATE PROGRAMS/Special Projects		
Vermont Council on the Arts		30,000
	1 grant @	30,000

FY 89 CHAIRMAN'S ACTION GRANTS

PROGRAM/Category Grantee		AMOUNT
POLICY, PLANNING AND RESEARCH		
Arts Administration Fellows		
Benson, Vickie		4,350
Dossar, Kenneth		4,100
Etzkorn, Lars		4,400
Fareed, Tammy		4,300
Golden, Marita		4,000
Graves, Donna		4,460
Jetter, Cynthia		4,362
Korn, Jessica		4,250
Langston, Lacy		4,280
Murdock, Jan		4,350
Rich, Jennifer		4,460
Sanders, Bedria		4,376
Schmidt, Karen		4,460
Shaffer, Mariann		4,200
Seibert, Jeff		4,200
Truesdell, Barbara		4,200
Yarbrough, Amy		4,250
POLICY, PLANNING AND RESEARCH/International		
NANA Museum of the Artic		6,600
POLICY, PLANNING AND RESEARCH		
Southern Arts Federation		4,200
Policy, Planning and Research Total	19 grants @	83,798
ARTS ENDOWMENT TOTAL	36 grants @	$289,498

National Endowment for the Arts


Congressional Liaison
General Counsel
CHAIRMAN
Policy, Planning & Research
Inspector General
Senior Deputy Chairman
Public Affairs
Deputy Chairman for Programs
Program Coordination
Challenge/Advancement
Dance
Design Arts
Expansion Arts
Folk Arts
Inter-Arts
Literature
Media Arts
Museum
Music
Opera-Musical Theater
Theater
Visual Arts
Deputy Chairman for Public Partnership
Arts in Education
International
Locals Program
Regional Representatives
States Program
Deputy Chairman for Management
Budget
Civil Rights
Council & Panel
Finance
Management Systems
Personnel
Assistant Director for Administration
Administrative Services
Arts Admin Fellows
Contracts
Grants
Information Management

January 19, 1990

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
LISTING OF PERMANENT POSITIONS

	FY 1989 ACTUAL	FY 1990 ESTIMATE	FY 1991 ESTIMATE
Executive Level III	0	1	1
Subtotal	0	1	1
ES-6	0	0	0
ES-5	1	1	1
ES-4	1	1	1
ES-3	0	0	0
ES-2	2	4	4
ES-1	0	0	0
Subtotal	4	6	6
GS-18	0	0	0
GS-17	1	1	1
GS-16	0	0	0
GS-15	17	17	17
GS-14	8	8	8
GS-13	23	23	23
GS-12	29	29	29
GS-11	36	36	37
GS-10	0	0	0
GS-09	38	40	41
GS-08	6	6	6
GS-07	45	45	46
GS-06	20	20	20
GS-05	20	20	20
GS-04	1	1	1
GS-03	0	0	0
GS-02	1	1	1
GS-01	0	0	0
Subtotal	245	247	250
WG-8	1	1	1
WG-6	0	0	0
Subtotal	1	1	1
Total Permanent Employment, end of year a/	250	255	258

---

a/ Excludes part-time and temporary positions.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
LISTING OF PERMANENT POSITIONS

	FY 1989 ACTUAL	FY 1990 ESTIMATE	FY 1991 ESTIMATE
Executive Level III	0	1	1
Subtotal	0	1	1
ES-6	0	0	0
ES-5	1	1	1
ES-4	1	1	1
ES-3	0	0	0
ES-2	2	4	4
ES-1	0	0	0
Subtotal	4	6	6
GS-18	0	0	0
GS-17	1	1	1
GS-16	0	0	0
GS-15	17	17	17
GS-14	8	8	8
GS-13	23	23	23
GS-12	29	29	29
GS-11	36	36	37
GS-10	0	0	0
GS-09	38	40	41
GS-08	6	6	6
GS-07	45	45	46
GS-06	20	20	20
GS-05	20	20	20
GS-04	1	1	1
GS-03	0	0	0
GS-02	1	1	1
GS-01	0	0	0
Subtotal	245	247	250
WG-8	1	1	1
WG-6	0	0	0
Subtotal	1	1	1
Total Permanent Employment, end of year a/	250	255	258

a/ Excludes part-time and temporary positions.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
Authorized Full Time Employment
Personnel Summary

	FY 1989 ACTUAL	FY 1990 ESTIMATE	FY 1991 REQUEST
Chairman's Office	7.8	8.0	8.0
Policy, Planning & Research a/	8.1	8.0	8.0
General Counsel	4.0	3.5	4.0
Congressional	3.2	4.0	4.0
Public Affairs	7.8	9.0	9.0
Inspector General (Audit)	7.8	7.0	7.0
Subtotal	38.7	39.5	40.0
Deputy Chairman for Programs b/	10.0	6.0	6.0
Dance	7.7	7.4	7.4
Design Arts	9.5	9.5	9.5
Expansion Arts	8.3	8.6	8.6
Folk Arts	6.0	5.8	5.8
Inter-Arts	6.4	7.0	7.0
Literature	4.5	6.0	6.0
Media Arts	8.0	9.0	9.0
Museums	8.1	9.8	9.8
Music	12.1	12.0	13.0
Opera-Musical Theater	4.1	4.0	4.0
Theater	6.7	7.0	8.0
Visual Arts	9.0	10.0	10.0
Challenge & Advancement	8.3	8.0	8.0
Subtotal	108.6	110.1	112.1
Deputy Chairman for Public Partnership c/	1.0	4.0	4.0
State Programs	4.9	5.0	5.0
Local Programs	3.0	4.0	4.0
Arts in Education	4.9	4.9	5.9
Subtotal	13.8	17.9	18.9

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
Authorized Full Time Employment
Personnel Summary
(Continued)

	FY 1989 ACTUAL	FY 1990 ESTIMATE	FY 1991 REQUEST
Deputy Chairman for Management	3.0	4.0	4.0
Budget	6.7	6.0	6.0
Civil Rights	3.0	3.0	3.0
Council & Panel Operations d/	4.6	5.7	5.7
Personnel e/	15.8	13.3	13.3
Contracts & Procurement	3.0	3.0	3.0
Administrative Services	12.4	12.0	11.5
Finance	8.7	9.0	9.0
Grants	18.5	18.0	18.0
Information Management	17.9	17.0	17.0
Management Systems f/	3.5	4.0	4.0
Subtotal	97.1	95.0	94.5
President's Committee on the Arts & the Humanities	1.5	1.5	1.5
TOTAL	259.7	264.0	267.0

Footnotes:

a/ Special Constituencies was under Deputy Chairman for Management in FY 89.
b/ Includes Program Coordination.
c/ Includes International Program and Regional Representatives Coordinator.
d/ Includes the National Council on the Arts.
e/ Includes Temporary Clerical.
f/ Includes the Arts Administration Fellows Program.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE ARTS
ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES BY OFFICE
FY 89 - 91
($ in thousands)

	PERSONNEL EXPENSES ONLY			TOTAL ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES		
	FY 1989 ACTUAL	FY 1990 ESTIMATE	FY 1991 REQUEST	FY 1989 ACTUAL	FY 1990 ESTIMATE	FY 1991 REQUEST
Chairman's Office	431	534	662	1,095	611	716
Inspector General	462	480	511	469	499	550
Policy, Planning & Research a/	393	416	444	1,366	1,475	1,352
General Counsel	204	215	230	211	217	232
Congressional	172	183	197	175	186	200
Public Affairs	367	385	420	426	463	506
Subtotal	2,029	2,213	2,464	3,742	3,451	3,556
Deputy Chairman for Programs b/	539	371	414	552	392	438
Challenge and Advancement	330	345	363	447	453	501
Dance	323	338	356	402	433	453
Design Arts	440	457	478	524	644	656
Expansion Arts	350	366	384	417	437	464
Folk Arts	306	320	338	360	387	400
Inter-Arts	213	254	271	333	449	465
Literature	140	212	227	378	347	329
Media Arts	307	351	370	354	415	435
Museums	366	381	400	428	456	473
Music	483	575	631	632	744	884
Opera-Musical Theater	161	308	325	212	373	548
Theater	277	364	415	344	522	585
Visual Arts	352	368	386	435	470	483
Subtotal	4,587	5,010	5,358	5,818	6,522	7,114
Deputy to the Chairman for Public Partnership c/	29	234	278	157	1,054	1,054
State Programs	206	217	232	233	245	264
Local Programs	147	157	170	244	247	209
Arts in Education	192	203	250	373	381	484
Subtotal	574	811	930	1,007	1,927	2,011

	PERSONNEL EXPENSES ONLY			TOTAL ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES		
	FY 1989 ACTUAL	FY 1990 ESTIMATE	FY 1991 REQUEST	FY 1989 ACTUAL	FY 1990 ESTIMATE	FY 1991 REQUEST
Deputy Chairman for Management	255	270	302	280	292	325
Budget d/	281	294	311	287	330	345
Civil Rights	131	141	153	131	145	159
Council and Panel Operations e/	178	189	212	279	291	317
Personnel	597	618	644	692	715	747
Contracts and Procurement	108	117	129	108	117	129
Administrative Services	407	424	444	3,174	3,198	3,565
Finance	327	341	360	334	347	365
Grants	573	594	619	576	597	619
Information Management	576	597	622	1,625	1,329	1,584
Management Systems	188	199	214	188	199	214
Subtotal	3,621	3,784	4,010	7,674	7,560	8,369
President's Committee on the Arts and the Humanities f/	93	101	104	141	140	150
Panel Study Commission	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	250	0
TOTAL	10,904	11,919	12,866	18,382	19,850	21,200

Footnotes:

a/ Includes OPPR funds of $964,517 in FY 89, $1,000 in FY 90 and $900 in FY 91. Special Constituencies was under Deputy Chairman for Management in FY 89.
b/ Includes Program Coordination and Associate Deputy for Programs.
c/ Includes the Regional Representatives Program in FY 90 and FY 91. Regional Representatives were under the Chairman's Office in FY 89.
d/ Personnel cost includes Unemployment Benefits and Severance payments.
e/ Includes the National Council on the Arts.
f/ Excludes reimbursement from the National Endowment for the Humanities for one-half of the PCAH expenses.

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

FY 1991 BUDGET REQUEST

Submitted to Congress

January 1990

Table of Contents

Page Number

I. SUMMARY STATEMENT.............................. 1

II. SUMMARY TABLES................................. 10

III. PROGRAMS...................................... 14

Definite Funds

Education Programs........................ 14
Fellowships and Seminars.................. 21
General Programs.......................... 35
Research Programs......................... 47
State Programs............................ 66
Office of Preservation.................... 73

Indefinite Funds

Challenge Funds........................... 79
Treasury Funds............................ 84

IV. ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS.......................... 87

SUMMARY STATEMENT

Fiscal Year 1991 Appropriation Request

The National Endowment for the Humanities requests an appropriation of $165 million for FY 1991 to promote national progress in the humanities:

- $119.90 million in definite program funds;
- $12.00 million in indefinite program funds to match third-party private gifts contributed to humanities projects supported by the Endowment;
- $15.15 million in indefinite program funds for Challenge Grants in support of humanities institutions and organizations; and
- $17.95 million in administrative funds.

This budget represents an increase over both the Administration's request for FY 1990 and the amount approved by Congress for FY 1990. It exceeds current funding by $8.1 million, or 5.2 percent. This increase in federal support for the humanities in FY 1991 is needed to allow the Endowment to implement a number of new program emphases, to sustain emphases already in place, and to maintain viable levels of support in other program areas. Some highlights of the Endowment's FY 1991 request include a $2.5 million special opportunity in foreign language education, a significant increase in funding for the Division of Research Programs, an enhancement of support for the preservation of deteriorating books, documents, material culture collections, and other research materials, and new efforts to expand general audience programming in the humanities.

In fashioning this request, the Endowment has been mindful of its legislated mission to advance the humanities throughout the nation, of the needs and capabilities of individuals and institutions in the humanities, and of the constraints imposed by the federal budget deficit.

Overview of Plans and Objectives

The 1965 enabling legislation that established the National Endowment for the Humanities declared that "democracy demands wisdom and vision in its citizens." For almost a quarter of a century, NEH has worked to further this principle through efforts to advance the study and understanding of the humanities throughout the United States. The thousands of projects and programs the Endowment has supported over the years have helped Americans learn more about the important works, ideas, and events that constitute the record of human thought and action. By investing in these efforts to keep our cultural and intellectual heritage alive, the Endowment helps to ensure that this legacy is preserved for future generations of Americans.

America's heritage is a major concern in all of the Endowment's divisions and grant-making programs. In the programs of the Education division, we make available vital funding to elementary and secondary schools, two- and four-year colleges, and universities to improve the quality of teaching and curricula. In the Division of Research programs, we support projects that produce significant, authoritative editions of the papers and writings of such important figures as George Washington, Frederick Douglass, Mark Twain, Jane Addams, and Martin Luther King, Jr.; the division also funds works of original scholarship such as David Donald's major new biography of Abraham Lincoln. In the Humanities Projects in Media program in our Division of General Programs, we are providing major funding to produce an ambitious eleven-hour television documentary series on the American Civil War and a four-hour dramatic series examining the history of Brown v. Board of Education, the 1954 landmark Supreme Court decision. In the Division of Fellowships and Seminars, we provide opportunities to scholars to add to our knowledge and understanding of the past. And in our Office of Preservation, we make grants to preserve endangered books, documents, and artifacts held by the nation's libraries, archives, museums, and other repositories.

One of the chief ways the Endowment acts as a catalyst to preserve and pass on the knowledge of our own and other cultures is by providing financial support for projects to improve humanities education in the nation's schools. It is in the traditional school setting that most people have their first and best opportunity to study history, literature, foreign languages, and the other disciplines of the humanities. Formal education also is a solid foundation upon which students can build a lifetime of learning.

The Endowment's efforts in education, like those of many other organizations involved in the work of reforming our schools, are in part a response to evidence that we have not been doing an adequate job of transmitting knowledge to the next generation. In 1986, NEH funded a survey by the National Assessment of Educational Progress (NAEP) to assess what seventeen-year-olds in the United States know. The results were dismaying, as we reported in 1987 in American Memory: A Report on the Humanities in the Nation's Schools, our congressionally-mandated study of elementary and secondary education. More than two-thirds of the nation's seventeen-year-olds were unable to locate the Civil War within the correct half-century. More than two-thirds could not identify the Reformation or Magna Carta. By vast majorities, students demonstrated unfamiliarity with the works of such writers as Dante, Chaucer, Dostoevsky, Austen, Whitman, Hawthorne, Melville, and Cather.

Subsequently, in connection with our 1988 congressionally-mandated report on the state of the humanities, Humanities in America: A Report to the President, the Congress, and the American People, we funded a survey of college and university requirements that showed it was possible to graduate from almost 80 percent of the nation's four-year colleges and universities without taking a course in the history of western civilization and from more than 80 percent without taking a course in American history. In 1988-89, it was possible to earn a bachelor's degree from:

- 37 percent of the nation's colleges and universities without taking any course in history;
- 45 percent without taking a course in American or English literature;
- 62 percent without taking a course in philosophy; and
- 77 percent without studying a foreign language.

Putting these figures together with the earlier NAEP study that showed how extensive were the gaps in knowledge of seventeen-year-olds, we at NEH began to be concerned about what college graduates know. The picture that the survey research seemed to paint was of many students graduating from high school without knowing as much as they should about the humanities and subsequently going to college where they are often not required to learn much more.

To test this hypothesis, NEH in 1989 asked the Gallup organization to conduct a survey of college seniors' knowledge of history and literature. Twenty-five percent of the college seniors that Gallup tested were unable to locate Columbus's voyage within the correct half-century. About the same percentage could not distinguish Churchill's words from Stalin's, or Karl Marx's thoughts from the ideas of the United States Constitution. More than 40 percent could not identify when the Civil War occurred. Most could not identify Magna Carta, the Missouri Compromise, or Reconstruction. Most could not link major works by Plato, Dante, Shakespeare, and Milton with their authors. To the majority of college seniors, Jane Austen's Pride and Prejudice, Dostoevsky's Crime and Punishment, and Martin Luther King, Jr.'s "Letters from the Birmingham Jail" were clearly unfamiliar.

50 Hours: A Core Curriculum for College Students, the report issued by the National Endowment for the Humanities at the same time as the Gallup survey, recommended a required course of studies--a core of learning--that would ensure that undergraduates have opportunities to explore in broad-ranging, ordered, and coherent ways, the major fields of human inquiry: science, mathematics, and the social sciences, as well as the humanities. The budget request for FY 1991 will enable us to

support efforts by institutions of higher education--two-year colleges as well as four--to increase the rigor and coherence of undergraduate offerings.

To encourage colleges and universities to place greater stress on the teaching of undergraduates, the Endowment's Challenge Grants program is currently sponsoring a special competition for higher education institutions that wish to establish faculty chairs for distinguished teachers of the humanities. These Distinguished Teaching Professorship awards will bring recognition to outstanding teachers and encourage institutions to focus more attention on classroom instruction. The three-to-one match required of these Challenge Grants will also stimulate third-party donors to invest in quality teaching at the higher education level. FY 1991 Challenge funds will help the Endowment pay for the grants to be made under this initiative.

At the elementary and secondary levels, our FY 1991 budget request will allow us to continue such programs as the NEH/Reader's Digest Teacher-Scholar program, which provides opportunities for teachers to increase their knowledge of the subjects they teach by spending up to a year in independent study and research. At a special White House reception for the 1989 awardees, President Bush told the assembled teachers and their families: "Without you, our links to the past and our vision for the future--all that we are, all that we've accomplished, all that we would be--would lay dormant in the minds of our children." These awards, as well as the Endowment's humanities institutes for elementary and secondary school teachers and the summer seminar programs in our Fellowships and Seminars division, are based on the premises that good teaching requires periodic intellectual renewal and that teachers who inspire students to intellectual engagement are themselves also engaged.

NEH has planned a number of other efforts for FY 1991 to improve precollegiate humanities education. The Elementary and Secondary Education in the Humanities program, for example, will continue to encourage schools to develop projects that use works of literature, especially classic children's literature, in reading programs in the early grades. In addition, we plan to fund an additional number of humanities institutes for history teachers. In these institutes teachers of American, Western, and world history will engage in intensive summer and follow-up study of the essential texts and themes of the subjects they teach.

Other means used by the Endowment to promote better teaching and learning in the humanities include support for the History Center at the University of California, Los Angeles. Established in 1988 through a cooperative agreement between the Endowment and UCLA, the History Center has been studying and collecting information on how history is taught and learned in the nation's schools. The centerpiece of the Center's efforts in its first two years is the development of a major report describing essential historical knowledge and understandings that students should acquire before graduation from high school. The History Center is also developing a comprehensive collection of exemplary materials on the teaching of history.

A particular emphasis for NEH in FY 1991 at all levels of education is improving the teaching and learning of foreign languages. Many prominent institutions and organizations, such as the National Governors' Association, recently have emphasized the importance of and the need for our students to become competent in foreign languages; several states also have been concerned about this issue and have programs underway to address it.

In FY 1991, the Endowment requests increased funding for the Division of Education Programs to support a $2.5 million special effort to help schools and colleges strengthen foreign language teaching. We will, for example, invite colleges and universities to establish national and regional humanities institutes for elementary and secondary school teachers. These institutes will help teachers become more proficient speakers of the language they teach and better versed in the history and thought of the target culture. Encouraging teachers to use "authentic texts" in their courses will be an important component of the institutes' approach to teaching languages. We will also encourage colleges and universities to submit proposals to broaden their undergraduate language programs to include the study of history, politics, religion, philosophy, and other humanities disciplines. In addition, institutions will be encouraged to improve their efforts to train future language teachers. Opportunities will also be available for schools and colleges to initiate special projects such as planning foreign language magnet schools.

Research in the humanities is also essential to the nation's cultural life. Our collective knowledge of significant works and subjects in the humanities is enriched by scholars who labor in archives and libraries to enlarge knowledge and understanding of the humanities. The Endowment advances scholarly research in the humanities through grants made by the Division of Research Programs and the Division of Fellowships and Seminars. In the Research Programs division, the Endowment provides support for the production of dictionaries, encyclopedias, catalogues, and scholarly editions of important texts and documents. Many of these projects are large, complex, collaborative research efforts. Often they employ large staffs, make use of computers and other technologies, and take years, even decades, to complete. The Research division is also an important source of funding for conferences on subjects of major significance in the humanities, for scholarship at centers for advanced study, and for research conducted abroad by American scholars.

For FY 1991, the Endowment requests an increase of about $1.8 million in the allocation for the Research division over the appropriation available for FY 1990. This funding will be used primarily to provide enhanced support to major multi-year projects in the Editions, Tools, and Access grant categories such as those involving the papers and writings of the U.S Presidents.

In the Fellowships and Seminars division, the Endowment makes grants to humanities scholars and teachers so they can spend concentrated periods of time on their research, which results in scholarly books and articles and improvements in classroom teaching. The division also offers summer seminars on humanities works or topics. These seminars provide opportunities to read, study, and conduct research in a collegial setting.

In FY 1991, the Fellowships division will adopt several new emphases and program changes. At the urging of the National Council on the Humanities, the division will raise the amounts of the stipends in some of its programs. Reflecting higher faculty salaries, these increases will help provide more adequate financial support for scholars and teachers in the humanities. The division will also increase its efforts to attract applications from humanities faculty at two-year colleges and at historically black colleges and universities, from professionals working in institutions such as museums and libraries, and from independent scholars. In addition, the division will echo foreign language efforts in the Division of Education Programs by encouraging more summer seminars that are concerned with foreign languages.

The ability of current and future American scholars to conduct research in the humanities is threatened by the wholesale deterioration of many primary source materials held by our nation's libraries, archives, museums, and universities. These institutions are the caretakers and guardians of books, documents, and artifacts that constitute a significant part of the historical record of civilization. In February 1989, President Bush stressed the critical nature of the preservation task before us when he observed in a letter to the National Committee to Save America's Cultural Collections: "A society that has lost its cultural heritage is a society without roots. That's why the preservation movement taking hold across the country is so gratifying. . . . Our Nation's past is too great, and its future too promising, for us to do anything less." Preserving the most important endangered resources has been a major interest of the Endowment in recent years, and it will continue to be so in FY 1991, the third year of the Endowment's multi-year preservation plan administered by the Office of Preservation. In accordance with this plan, NEH is providing major national support for brittle book microfilming and other preservation activities. Increased funding will be provided for these efforts in FY 1991.

In addition, the Endowment will continue its support for the new National Heritage Preservation program, also run by our Office of Preservation. This program, in its first year of operation in FY 1990, makes grants to institutions--such as museums, universities, and historical organizations--for needed improvements in the storage and protection of their material culture collections. Many material culture objects, including important ethnographic and archaeological items, are in an active state of decomposition. If this deterioration were permitted to continue unabated, many of the collections would be lost to future generations of Americans. Scholars would not be able to study them as part of their research projects, and institutions would not be able to display them in exhibitions designed to improve public education in the humanities.

While the Endowment is deeply concerned about the physical deterioration of humanities research resources and about humanities education in our nation's schools and colleges, we have been pleased by the vitality of public programming in the humanities. Indeed, as Humanities in America made clear, the country is currently experiencing a great outpouring of public interest in the humanities, and challenging and imaginative projects are meeting this demand. Millions of Americans are learning more about history, literature, and other humanities subjects by viewing exhibitions, participating in reading groups and workshops, attending lectures and discussion groups, listening to radio broadcasts and watching programs on public television.

Through our General Programs and State Programs divisions, the Endowment fosters this out-of-school interest in the humanities. In FY 1991, in addition to their regular program activities, these divisions will undertake a number of special efforts designed to sustain and expand this interest. In the Division of General Programs, the Humanities Projects in Media program will invite filmmakers to create biographical films for television on major figures in American history and letters; we also hope to see more historical and cultural documentaries similar to the film series on the American Civil War that will air this fall on PBS. The allocation for the Humanities Projects in Museums and Historical Organizations program will be increased to support a new program of seminars for museum professionals. These seminars, to be held in museums, will be directed by subject-area specialists from museums, colleges, and universities. The knowledge gained by the seminar participants will help them improve general audience programming in the humanities at their home institutions.

In FY 1991, the State Programs division will increase the number of State and Regional Exemplary Awards--special grants to the state councils for programs of exceptional merit that enable states to share resources and improve programming effectiveness. We will also make special planning awards to each state council to help them develop long-range plans for their programming. One of the aims of these awards is to increase each council's statewide visibility, thus enhancing its potential for stimulating additional third-party funding for worthy projects.

The Endowment is committed to ensuring that Americans of all backgrounds and from all regions of the country have the opportunity to study and learn the humanities. In FY 1991, we will continue our special "Access to Excellence" program, established in November 1986 to serve as a special mechanism for making individuals and groups that may not be familiar with our programs more aware of the opportunities available at NEH. Aimed particularly at rural and inner-city communities and specifically at ethnic and racial minorities, this program promotes the Endowment's work nationally. To date, the Access to Excellence program coordinator has traveled extensively, making over 100 separate trips in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and the U.S. Virgin Islands. Over a thousand meetings or workshops have been held across the country in elementary and secondary schools, two- and four-year colleges, public libraries, historical organizations, and other institutions. The coordinator also has attended numerous national, regional, state, and local conferences bringing people together from the various target groups, has sent out over 30,000 individual packets of material explaining the grant programs of the Endowment, and has provided hundreds of potential applicants with counsel over the phone or through the mail. The coordinator has consulted with many non-profit associations, Congressional staffs, state offices, and state humanities councils in this extensive outreach effort.

The Endowment also makes special efforts to encourage applications for grant support from historically black colleges and universities (HBCUs) and from scholars and teachers associated with these institutions. Through the continuation of special emphases in several of our programs in FY 1991, HBCUs will be invited to submit proposals to strengthen their education, research, and other programming in the humanities. For example: The Fellowships division again will sponsor a special competition for HBCU faculty members for fellowships to work on their Ph.D.'s in the humanities; the Access category in the Research division will encourage applications from HBCUs with collections of primary source materials important for humanities scholarship; and the Challenge Grants program guidelines will highlight the availabilty of support for HBCUs to improve the financial stability and fund-raising capacity of their institutions.

Another NEH initiative being continued in FY 1991 is our interest in projects concerned with the upcoming 500th anniversary of Columbus's first voyage to the New World. Many scholars are now engaged in significant multi-year projects in this area with Endowment support, and museum directors and other professionals concerned with public programs are putting together NEH-funded presentations built around the themes of exploration and encounter between the old world and the new. The fruits of these efforts will become more visible as the anniversary year draws near.

The primary responsibility for advancing knowledge of the humanities will continue to lie with the states, private and public foundations, businesses, and educational and cultural institutions. The federal government's involvement will and must remain only a small portion of total funding for the humanities from all sources. The Endowment plays an important role, however, as a catalyst to encourage others to invest in significant projects. Through our Challenge Grants program and our Treasury funds mechanism, the Endowment will continue in FY 1991 to stimulate third-party contributions to humanities institutions and projects whenever possible.

1951,p.7

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

Summary of Appropriations
(in thousands of dollars)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate 1/	FY 1991 Request
Appropriation-Definite			
Program funds	$108,280	$114,244	$119,900
Administrative funds	16,020	16,339	17,950
Total Definite	124,300	130,583	137,850
Appropriation-Indefinite			
Challenge funds	16,700	14,495	15,150
Treasury funds	12,000	11,832	12,000
Total Indefinite	28,700	26,327	27,150
Total	$153,000	$156,910	$165,000

1/ Post sequester.

2641,p.6

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

Summary of Appropriations and Programs
(in thousands of dollars)

Appropriation/Program	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 1/ Estimate	FY 1991 Congressional Request
I. DEFINITE PROGRAM APPROPRIATION	$108,280	$114,244	$119,900
Education Programs	16,150	15,974	17,900
Elementary and Secondary Education in the Humanities	7,364	7,247	7,025
Higher Education in the Humanities	7,416	7,247	7,025
Foreign Language Education	--	--	2,500
NEH/*Reader's Digest* Teacher-Scholars 2/	909	987	1,000
History Projects	462	493	350
Fellowships and Seminars	15,350	15,343	15,300
NEH Fellowships			
University Teachers	3,302	3,121	3,195
College Teachers and Independent Scholars	3,217	3,185	3,230
Summer Stipends	776	789	800
Travel to Collections	330	325	300
Younger Scholars	317	394	375
Summer Seminars			
College Teachers	3,787	3,856	3,800
School Teachers	3,620	3,673	3,600

Summary of Appropriations and Programs (cont'd.)

Appropriation/Program	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate 1/	FY 1991 Congressional Request
General Programs	$22,840	$23,074	$23,100
Humanities Projects in Media	9,399	9,269	9,200
Humanities Projects in Museums and Historical Organizations	8,640	8,776	9,100
Public Humanities Projects	2,002	2,268	2,200
Humanities Projects in Libraries and Archives	2,799	2,761	2,600
Research Programs	16,610	16,763	18,600
Texts			
Editions	2,700	2,604	3,550
Translations	1,531	1,183	1,275
Publication Subvention	319	345	350
Reference Materials			
Tools	2,886	2,692	3,225
Access	2,456	2,741	3,225
Interpretive Research			
Collaborative Projects	2,660	2,761	2,625
Humanities, Science and Technology	840	868	875
Conferences	402	394	375
Centers for Advanced Study	953	912	925
International	1,603	2,120	2,125
Selected Areas	258	143	50

Summary of Appropriations and Programs (cont'd.)

Appropriation/Program	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate 1/	FY 1991 Congressional Request
State Programs	$ 25,000	$ 25,637	$ 26,000
Office of Preservation	12,330	17,453	19,000
II. INDEFINITE FUNDS	28,700	26,327	27,150
Challenge funds...........................	16,700	14,495	15,150
Treasury funds............................	12,000	11,832	12,000
III. ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS	16,020	16,339	17,950
Total	$153,000	$156,910	$165,000

1/ Post sequester.

2/ Federal funds only; does not include gift from Reader's Digest.

Note: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

1951,p.8

EDUCATION PROGRAMS
(Definite funds in thousands)

Program	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Elementary and Secondary Education in the Humanities........................	$ 7,364	$ 7,247	$ 7,025
Higher Education in the Humanities..........	7,416	7,247	7,025
Foreign Language Education..................	--	--	2,500
NEH/Reader's Digest Teacher-Scholars 1/.....	909	987	1,000
History Projects...........................	462	493	350
	$16,150	$15,974	$17,900

1/ Federal funds only; does not include gift from Reader's Digest.

Note: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

EDUCATION PROGRAMS
($17,900,000)

As our principal means of fulfilling the Endowment's Congressional mandate to strengthen "the teaching potential of the United States in the humanities," the Division of Education Programs assists American educators to bring about fundamental improvements in the rigor, depth, and coherence of humanities instruction in the classroom at all levels. Through the education projects it has funded in recent years, the Endowment has helped to refocus national attention on fundamental texts and themes in the humanities, and it has provided a wide range of opportunities for the nation's humanities teachers to deepen their knowledge of the subjects they teach.

Unlike the Department of Education, the Endowment does not provide general assistance to state and local education agencies, nor does it provide entitlements or specific aid to target groups. Programs sponsored by this division frequently benefit groups targeted by Department of Education, of course, but they always do so in the context of specific projects to improve the teaching of the humanities in particular educational settings.

Because our work is only a small part of the nation's commitment to transmit knowledge in the humanities, the division's grants to support humanities education usually are restricted to projects that are exemplary of approaches that may be widely adopted even without NEH support. By highlighting excellent humanities education programs, NEH grants can also help attract additional support from a variety of nonfederal sources, thus undergirding the essential structures of the institutions of education that receive an NEH award.

In FY 1991, the Endowment plans to expand the support that it offers through the Division of Education Programs for efforts to improve the teaching and learning of foreign languages in our nation's schools and colleges. We will invite universities, state departments of education, and nonprofit organizations to propose collaborative efforts with the schools that will offer precollegiate teachers opportunities for intensive study of language and culture. We will invite colleges and universities to submit proposals for programs to improve foreign language instruction for all their students, especially for future teachers. We will especially encourage efforts, at all levels of education, to improve instructional programs in languages that are not commonly taught in our schools but that are widely spoken in today's world.

In FY 1991, we also plan to offer additional support for museum institutes for elementary and secondary teachers. To be held in museums, these institutes will emphasize ways in which museum collections and exhibitions can be presented to students and incorporated into the curriculum. And, the Division of Education Programs will continue to encourage applications for projects related to the Columbian Quincentenary.

Two other activities of the division arose from the Chairman's study of the teaching of the humanities in America's schools, American Memory. One of these, the NEH/Reader's Digest Teacher-Scholar program, supports year-long independent study opportunities for outstanding school teachers around the nation. This program will be in its third and final year in FY 1991. The second project, the UCLA/NEH History Center, has been conducting a comprehensive assessment of a field vital to our cultural heritage. In FY 1991, we intend to support the dissemination of curricular materials designed to improve history instruction in the elementary and secondary schools and other history-related education projects.

1. Elementary and Secondary Education in the Humanities ($7,025,000)

The Elementary and Secondary Education in the Humanities program promotes the professional development of humanities educators as the most effective means of ensuring a vital humanities curriculum and of serving the program's ultimate beneficiaries, the nation's elementary and secondary school students. The program sponsors summer institutes for teachers that involve intensive study and collegial exchange; masterwork study projects that enable smaller groups of teachers and administrators to study with local scholars during the school year; collaborative projects that promote ongoing partnerships between schools and nearby institutions of higher education; as well as conferences, planning projects, and other activities to improve teaching.

To encourage the movement to supplant basal readers with genuine literature for children, the Endowment in FY 1991 will continue to offer support for projects that help teachers make use of the very best materials that have been written and recorded. The elementary and secondary program will also offer particular encouragement to projects that address how world history can best be taught to precollegiate students.

FY 1989 witnessed the inauguration of the first masterwork study grants, which enable small groups of teachers and administrators to engage in a collaborative study of important texts and topics in the humanities. At Xaverian High School in Brooklyn, for example, teachers joined with faculty members from a nearby college to read and discuss Dante's Inferno. Similarly, Latin instructors in San Francisco investigated Roman comedy, middle school teachers and administrators in St. Louis studied the writers of the Harlem Renaissance, and Albuquerque teachers explored the literature of the American Southwest.

In FY 1991, the program also plans to offer support for several museum institutes for teachers. These projects, to be held in museums, would be designed for elementary and secondary teachers from the surrounding community or region. Through intensive study under the guidance of subject-area specialists, the participating teachers will become better equipped to introduce their students to museum collections and to use the resources of the institutions in their teaching.

In FY 1989, the Elementary and Secondary Education in the Humanities program received 171 applications and awarded 63 grants. In FY 1990, the program expects to receive 175 applications and to award about 65 grants. In FY 1991, the program expects to receive 170 applications and to award about 55 grants for summer institutes, masterwork study grants, collaborative projects, and conferences.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) The University of Alabama received support for a 1990 summer institute for school teachers entitled "The Constitution and the South." The institute focused on legal and constitutional aspects of the tariff, land policy, secession, Reconstruction, segregation, and voting rights--issues central to southern history and culture.

(ii) "Japanese Literature and Culture for Precollegiate Education in the Humanities," a language-immersion project at Ball State University in Indiana, will provide a close examination of Japanese literary masterpieces while tracing the evolution of Japanese society. This state-wide collaborative project will include a five-week institute during the summer of 1990, two weeks of which will be held at the University of Sapporo, Japan, with third-party support.

2. Higher Education in the Humanities ($7,025,000)

The Endowment's Higher Education program supports a wide variety of faculty study and curriculum revision projects on national, regional, and institutional levels. Each year, summer institutes supported through this program enable college university faculty to study a wide range of topics under the guidance of leading scholars. Support is also provided for workshops, conferences, and mentorship programs that address national or regional issues in higher education, such as core curriculum development, foreign language teaching, or humanities instruction in two-year institutions.

The Higher Education program also awards support to colleges and universities for projects specific to a particular institution. The program especially encourages efforts that establish core curriculum programs in which students study, in ordered sequence, materials considered central to a liberal education; projects that develop integrated humanities majors; programs that develop foreign language programs that integrate cultural study from the earliest stages of learning; efforts aimed at expanding the humanities content in the undergraduate preparation of school teachers; and projects that engage all students at two-year institutions, both those in vocational programs and those going on to four-year institutions, with major humanities texts and ideas.

In the past year the Chairman's report, 50 Hours, brought new attention to the importance of providing all undergraduate students with opportunities to explore, in a rigorous and coherent way, the major areas of human inquiry. For some time now, the Higher Education Program has provided funds for the design and implementation of strong, text-based core curriculum or general education programs. In FY 1991, we will continue to welcome proposals to develop or strengthen such programs.

In FY 1991, we will continue to assist two-year colleges to strengthen their humanities programs, both by improving the content of humanities courses and by making these courses more generally available to the students of these institutions. For example, the Higher Education program recently supported a major project that included the establishment of mentor relationships between two-year colleges and peer institutions with successful humanities programs, and a national conference on ways to advance the humanities at two-year colleges. In recent years, efforts to encourage two-year colleges to submit proposals to the Higher Education program have met with a heartening response, and these efforts will continue.

In FY 1991, this program will especially invite proposals to develop teacher preparation programs that require student teachers to become well versed in the content of the humanities.

The Higher Education program received 167 applications and awarded 62 grants in FY 1989. In FY 1990, we expect the program to receive 175 applications and award about 60-65 grants. In FY 1991, we expect to receive 175 applications and to award about 60 grants.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) A project at Essex Community College in Baltimore will develop two core Western Civilization courses focusing on such major works as Oedipus Rex, Pericles' Funeral Oration, Shakespeare's Macbeth, Milton's Areopagitica, Mozart's Don Giovanni, The Declaration of Independence, Goethe's Faust, Beethoven's Ninth Symphony, and Ralph Ellison's Invisible Man. Faculty will study these works with outside scholars in preparation for teaching the new core curriculum sequence.

(ii) A summer institute on Native American history will be held at the Newberry Library in Chicago for twenty-five college faculty members from around the country. They will work with leading scholars in an examination of written and oral sources and of art and artifacts that can be used as a basis for understanding and teaching Native American history. The institute will explore oral traditions, art, concepts of time and space, and sources of identity in order to examine the ways in which Native American history diverges from traditional academic approaches to the past.

3. Foreign Language Education ($2,500,000)

In FY 1991, the Endowment plans to offer a Special Opportunity in Foreign Languages to assist efforts to strengthen language instruction in the nation's schools, colleges, and universities. As in other NEH education programs, the emphasis of this special opportunity would be on the central role of the teacher in the learning process. Support would be offered for summer institutes for school teachers, projects to redesign foreign language programs for undergraduates, and a variety of special programs. Although projects in all languages would be eligible for support, we would especially welcome proposals for programs in languages--such as Russian, Japanese, Chinese, and Arabic--that are not commonly taught in this country.

In the foreign language institutes for school teachers supported under this opportunity, special attention would be given to incorporating authentic texts from the target culture into the curriculum at even the initial levels of language instruction. Insofar as possible, the institutes would be conducted on the basis of immersion in the target language.

Projects to strengthen undergraduate foreign language instruction would involve curriculum redesign, course development, and related faculty development. Support would be offered for efforts to incorporate authentic texts from the target language in beginning language courses and for efforts to broaden the cultural basis of language study to include aspects of history, religion, politics, economics, and other disciplines.

Institutions at all levels of education would be invited to propose special projects, such as developing plans for language magnet schools, implementing collaborative arrangements that permit students to continue a sequenced course of study from one level of education to the next, and designing courses that equip graduate foreign language students to teach that language at an introductory level.

4. NEH/Reader's Digest Teacher-Scholar Program ($1,000,000)

The Teacher-Scholar program--instituted in partnership with a fund established at the New York Community Trust by DeWitt Wallace, founder of Reader's Digest--rewards outstanding teachers with a year of independent study in the humanities. The program is governed by the conviction that students benefit most when their teachers have a mastery of their disciplines and are themselves actively engaged in learning. The program is therefore designed to give recipients an opportunity to spend a year increasing their understanding of texts, topics, and issues central to the subjects they teach. The stipend is based on the recipient's teaching salary, up to a maximum of $27,500, with additional funds provided for school library purchases (up to $500 for books recommended by the teacher-scholar) and for a mentor (a $500 honorarium for a college or university professor) should the recipient wish to work with an expert in his or her field. Reader's Digest is providing one-third of the funds for the program in FY 1991.

Fiscal year 1989 saw the selection of the first round of winners in the Teacher-Scholar program. Fifty-three school teachers representing every state, plus the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands, received support for a year of full-time independent study in the humanities. Among the topics they are pursuing during their Teacher-Scholar sabbatical year are "Philosophy and Children's Literature," "Troubadors, Mystics, and Courts: The Flowering of Love in Medieval Europe," "The African Influence on Latin American Literature," and "Early Nineteenth-Century Common Schools." On March 2, 1989, the Teacher-Scholar recipients traveled to Washington, D.C., for an orientation session. While there, they attended a White House reception held in their honor by President and Mrs. Bush.

In FY 1989, the Endowment received 618 applications under the NEH/Reader's Digest Teacher-Scholar program and expects about 570 applications in FY 1990 and FY 1991.

5. History Projects ($350,000)

Under a cooperative agreement, a Center for History in the Schools has been established at the University of California, Los Angeles. It is charged with the task of determining how to address the findings of recent studies showing that America's young people know little about either their own history or that of other nations. The Center is developing a major statement outlining the essential understandings that all students should acquire in the subject of history. Also being developed are model curriculum units that can be used in classrooms across the nation. NEH funding for the History Center at UCLA will continue through FY 1990, allowing the Center to complete its ongoing projects and to assemble a comprehensive collection of history materials.

In FY 1991, the Endowment will entertain proposals aimed at the dissemination of course materials, curriculum guidelines, textbook critiques, teacher education recommendations, and other information that will be of use to teachers, parents, and policymakers seeking to improve the teaching of history.

This large-scale dissemination effort will be undertaken to enable schools across the nation to take advantage of the work done in recent years by institutions and groups such as the NEH/UCLA History Center and the Bradley Commission on History in Schools.

FELLOWSHIPS AND SEMINARS
(Definite funds in thousands)

Program	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
NEH Fellowships			
University Teachers..................	$ 3,302	$ 3,121	$ 3,195
College Teachers and Independent Scholars...............	3,217	3,185	3,230
Summer Stipends........................	776	789	800
Travel to Collections..................	330	325	300
Younger Scholars.......................	317	394	375
Summer Seminars			
College Teachers.....................	3,787	3,856	3,800
School Teachers......................	3,620	3,673	3,600
	$15,350	$15,343	$15,300

Note: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

FELLOWSHIPS AND SEMINARS
($15,300,000)

The mission of the Division of Fellowships and Seminars is to recognize and support teaching and research of the highest quality in the humanities. The programs in this division fulfill a purpose legislated by Congress in the Endowment's enabling act: "the encouragement and support of national progress and scholarship in the humanities."

Through its five fellowship and two seminar programs, the division encourages research and collegial discourse in the humanities. Fellowships for University Teachers and Fellowships for College Teachers and Independent Scholars help ensure that important scholarly work in the humanities can be undertaken by providing scholars with opportunities to spend up to a year in concentrated study and research on important humanities topics. Summer Stipends support two months of intensive study for teachers and scholars to initiate, continue, or complete major research projects. The Travel to Collections program provides small travel grants to individual researchers whose research requires them to travel to libraries, archives, or museums. The Younger Scholars program aims to increase awareness of the value of the humanities among the nation's high school and college students by encouraging them to engage in summer projects that complement their study in the classroom. The two Summer Seminar programs invite both precollegiate and postsecondary teachers to study important works in the humanities, to conduct research at major institutions, and to test their ideas and insights before a knowledgeable body of colleagues.

In all these programs, the Endowment continues to offer awards in the agency-wide special initiative commemorating the 500th anniversary of Christopher Columbus's first voyage of discovery to the New World in 1492.

At the urging of the National Council on the Humanities, the Endowment will raise the amounts of the stipends in some of its programs in FY 1991. This is being done to reflect increases in faculty salaries in recent years and to provide more adequate financial support for scholars and teachers in the humanities. The division will also increase its efforts to attract applications from humanities faculty at two-year colleges and historically black colleges and universities, from professionals working in institutions such as museums and libraries, and from independent scholars. The Endowment will continue to broaden the seminars programs for school and college teachers by encouraging more seminars that are concerned with foreign languages. Finally, the division will maintain its interest in encouraging excellent scholarship in the humanities by high school and college students through its Younger Scholars program.

Each year brings new evidence of the impact of the division's programs as books written with the help of the Endowment continue to receive national and international recognition. Last year, for example, Eric Foner's *Reconstruction: America's Unfinished Revolution, 1863-1877* (New York: Harper and Row, 1988) won Columbia University's Bancroft Prize as well as an award from the Organization of American Historians. Professor Foner received a 1983 NEH Fellowship to work on this book. Pulitzer Prize-winning historian David Donald, reviewing Foner's book in the *New Republic*, called it "history written on a grand scale, a masterful treatment of one of the most complex periods of American history." When Professsor Jehuda Reinharz of Brandeis University issued the first volume of his biography of *Chaim Weizmann*, (New York: Oxford University Press, 1985), it won five prestigious literary awards, including a prize in history from the Israel Historical Society. James R. Grossman, an assistant professor of history at the University of Chicago, received a 1985 NEH Fellowship to work on *Land of Hope: Chicago, Black Southerners, and the Great Migration* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1989). Reviewing this work in the Chicago *Tribune*, Professor Joe W. Trotter called it a "penetrating analysis of black migration to Chicago during World War I and its aftermath" that "not only is a timely and indispensable addition to our knowledge of the black urban experience, but also . . . a book that has important implications for the 1990s and beyond."

Summer Stipends grants have resulted in equally significant works in the humanities. James E. Davis received a 1985 Summer Stipend of $3,000 to edit and annotate Charles Ross Parke's diary about his overland trek from Illinois to California during the 1849 gold rush. Parke, a medical doctor, recorded insights about Indian societies along the trail and about mining societies in the California gold fields. Professor Davis's edition of Parke's diary was published in 1989 as *Dreams to Dust: A Diary of the California Gold Rush, 1849-1850*, (University of Nebraska Press, 1989). In *Freedom and the End of Reason: On the Moral Foundation of Kant's Critical Philosophy*, (University of Chicago Press, 1989), Richard L. Velkley, a professor of philosophy at Stonehill College in North Easton, Massachusetts, argues that Rousseau was an important influence on Kant's ideas regarding the ends and structure of reason. Professor Velkley held a 1986 summer stipend.

Important research is also accomplished under the Endowment's smaller grants. A recent publication resulting from a Travel to Collections award is Patricia Nassif Acton's *Invasion of Privacy: The Cross Creek Trial of Marjorie Kinnan Rawlings*, (University of Florida Press, 1988). With her 1986 grant, Acton visited the Marjorie Kinnan Rawlings Collection at the University of Florida Library, where she studied the records of a lawsuit brought against Mrs. Rawlings by her former friend and neighbor Zelma Cason, who charged that her portrayal in Rawlings' *Cross Creek* constituted libel and invasion of privacy. A 1985 Travel to Collections grant enabled Professor

Programs of the Division of Fellowships and Seminars

1. National Endowment for the Humanities Fellowships

NEH Fellowships offer opportunities for individuals to undertake study and research that will advance thought, knowledge, and teaching in the humanities. To approximate present average academic salaries in the humanities, the maximum fellowship stipend will be raised in FY 1991 from $27,500 to $30,000, the first increase in six years.

As a result of the support received through this program, fellows publish books and articles; make presentations at conferences, seminars, and lectures; and improve their own and the general public's understanding of subjects in the humanities. The activities of fellows also help encourage further research and improvements of course content among their colleagues at their home institutions. Fellowships are awarded through two programs: Fellowships for University Teachers and Fellowships for College Teachers and Independent Scholars. Both programs support experienced as well as beginning scholars.

The NEH award is used by many recipients to complement sabbatical opportunities, enabling a sabbatical semester to be extended to a full year. The Endowment also encourages institutions to supplement the NEH stipend awarded to faculty members who are not eligible for sabbaticals. The programs thus have become both an incentive and a model for other institutions.

Several other organizations and agencies sponsor fellowship programs that operate nationwide, but they have limitations or differences that distinguish them from NEH fellowships. For example, the fellowship programs of the American Council of Learned Societies are reserved for persons with the Ph.D. or equivalent training; those of the Guggenheim Foundation are available to artists and scientists as well as to those working in the humanities; and the National Humanities Center requires its fellows to reside at the Center. In contrast, the NEH program is concerned with the humanities exclusively, serves all the fields of the humanities, and is not limited to scholars with advanced degrees. Moreover, it is the only program that offers special encouragement to younger scholars and teachers while continuing to support the work of established, senior scholars.

Numerous scholarly articles and books have been published by recipients of NEH fellowships--in fact, more than 1,000 volumes have resulted from awards made in these programs. Many of these books have received prestigious awards and other critical acclaim: NEH fellows have won Pulitzer Prizes, National Book Awards, Bancroft Prizes in history, an American Book Award, and other special awards from various professional associations in the humanities.

Ronald Takaki to undertake research that led to his comprehensive study, *Strangers from a Different Shore: A History of Asian Americans* (Boston: Little, Brown, 1989). Citing it as one of the "Notable Books of 1989," the *New York Times Book Review* commented: "For the general reader, it is the best volume yet published on the subject." Congressman Norman Y. Mineta observed that "It's an invitation and a celebration of the United States which no one should miss."

Results from Younger Scholars awards have also been impressive. Peter Beinart, a 1988 high school Younger Scholar published "The Real American Voting Problem," in the Fall 1989 issue of *Polity: The Journal of the Northeastern Political Science Association.* He is the first high school student to publish in this journal. Another 1988 Younger Scholar, Lorie A. Damon, won the Faulkner Prize at Hood College in Maryland with an excerpt from her NEH research project: "Portraits of American Aristocracies in Lost Generation Literature."

Endowment awards also help faculty members of historically black colleges and universities (HBCUs) work on their Ph. D.'s in the humanities. In 1985, for example, Joan Eldridge--Professor of Spanish at Howard University in Washington, D.C.--received support through the Faculty Graduate Study Program for HBCUs to work toward her Ph.D. in Spanish Literature. Eldridge received her degree from the Catholic University of America in May, 1989.

Thousands of teachers in the nation's schools and colleges have revitalized their teaching of the humanities by attending NEH summer seminars. A 1989 seminar, for example, enabled college teachers from nine states to participate in a seminar at the University of Missouri, Columbia, on "The Oral Tradition in Literature." John M. Foley, a Professor of English and eminent specialist on the ways classic texts grew out of oral story-telling traditions, led seminar participants in study of the Bible, Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, medieval epics such as the *Song of Roland* and *the Cid*, and contemporary oral literature from the Yugoslav, native American, and African traditions. Several seminar participants completed research projects that have been accepted for publication.

During the summer of 1989, Phillip S. Paludan, a noted historian of the American Civil War and award-winning professor at the University of Kansas, directed a four-week Summer Seminar for School Teachers on "Society, Slavery, and Civil War." Fifteen U.S. school teachers and a USIA-sponsored teacher from the Netherlands joined Professor Paludan in close study of four major texts relating to the Civil War era: Harriett Beecher Stowe's *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, Lincoln's writings on slavery, Mary Chesnut's "Diary," and *The Life and Times of Frederick Douglass*. Seminar participants augmented their study by making use of the rich historical past of Lawrence, Kansas.

a. Fellowships for University Teachers ($3,195,000)

Fellowships for University Teachers provide independent study and research opportunities for faculty members of Ph.D.-granting departments and programs in the nation's universities and post-graduate professional schools. These institutions produce the vast majority of scholars, teachers, and writers in the humanities and have traditionally been a great source of humanities scholarship.

Sixteen former recipients of fellowships from this program informed the Endowment in FY 1989 of the publication of books they were able to write as a result of study and research conducted under their NEH grant.

In FY 1989, the program received 736 applications and made 127 awards. For FY 1990, 875 applications were submitted and the program expects to make approximately 120 awards. In FY 1991, the program plans to increase the annual maximum stipend to $30,000 from $27,500; an estimated 950 applications will be received and 110 awards offered.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) Gregory L. Freeze of the Department of History at Brandeis University was awarded a FY 1989 NEH Fellowship to examine the interrelationship between the Orthodox Church and society in Imperial Russia from the mid-eigthteenth century to World War I. The proposed book will offer a new perspective on the dynamics and patterns of de-Christianization, modes of popular piety, and the church's role in mediating social and political conflict during this period.

(ii) Joseph L. Blotner, a Professor of Literature at the University of Michigan, was awarded a FY 1989 NEH Fellowship to write a literary biography of Robert Penn Warren, the first Poet Laureate of the United States and the recipient of three Pulitzer Prizes. The first biography of Warren, the book will trace the relationship between Warren's life and work, analyze his multifaceted achievements, and discuss his role in the development of American literary history and contemporary intellectual history.

b. Fellowships for College Teachers and Independent Scholars ($3,230,000)

This program offers opportunities for study and research to the estimated 75,000 faculty members in the humanities in the nation's two-year, four-year, and five-year colleges and universities; to scholars employed in other institutions with humanities programming such as museums, historical organizations, libraries, and art galleries; and to unaffiliated independent scholars and writers.

College teachers and other humanities scholars generally have limited opportunities for research. College teachers normally have heavy teaching responsibilities in addition to many other institutional duties and, at best, have infrequent sabbatical or other study-leave programs available to them. Scholars working outside colleges and universities often have even less time and fewer materials and resources available for research. While other national fellowship programs support study and research in the humanities, the NEH program is the only one designed specifically for these particular scholars and writers and offers them support for research in recognition of their experience and skills.

In response to the Presidential initiative for historically black colleges and universities (HBCUs), the Endowment will continue in FY 1990 and FY 1991 to support, through the program of Fellowships for College Teachers and Independent Scholars, fellowships for HBCU faculty members to pursue graduate study in fields of the humanities. Since the program began in 1983, 67 teachers have received fellowships for graduate study, and thirteen have completed their degrees.

Fellowships for College Teachers and Independent Scholars, including the HBCU program, received 824 applications and made 127 awards in FY 1989. The program expects to receive 930 applications and to make 120 awards in FY 1990. For FY 1991, about 950 applications and 115 awards are anticipated. During both FY 1991 and FY 1991, special efforts also will be made to attract to the program more scholars who do not hold faculty appointments.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) Ethel Norris, instructor of Music at Saint Paul's College in Lawrenceville, Virginia, was awarded an FY 1989 Graduate Study Fellowship for Faculty at historically black colleges and universities. She will spend the year taking graduate courses in music history at The Ohio State University and preparing for a Ph.D. general examination. This course work and research will contribute to her teaching and scholarship at Saint Paul's College.

(ii) Helen Tanner, an independent scholar in Chicago, Illinois, received a Fellowship for College Teachers and Independent Scholars in FY 1989 to work on the history of the Caddo people on the Red River frontier. For over 1,000 years, until the 1830's, the Caddo Indians occupied parts of Arkansas, Louisiana, Texas, and Oklahoma. As the only constant population in a complex frontier area, the Caddo offer a novel vantage point for surveying the changes that occurred around them. When completed, Tanner's study will be the first published history of the Caddo, one of the most important but least known groups of Indians that still exists within the present United States.

2. Summer Stipends ($800,000)

The Summer Stipends program provides short-term support for university and college faculty, for scholars affiliated with other institutions, and for independent scholars working in the humanities. In line with the higher fellowship stipend, the award amount in this program will be increased in FY 1991 for the first time since FY 1987, rising from $3,500 to $3,750. Each award funds work likely to produce an important contribution to the humanities and to enhance the recipient's own ability to interpret the humanities. Grant recipients devote two consecutive months, full-time, to their projects.

The Endowment's Summer Stipends program is the largest of the three major small-grant programs in the United States that support independent study and research in the humanities. The other two, the American Council of Learned Societies' Grants-in-Aid program and the American Philosophical Society's small grant program, fund only specific research expenses such as travel and microfilming; the NEH Summer Stipends program does not have these restrictions.

The Summer Stipends program guidelines limit to three the number of applications from faculty members at any single institution of higher education in the United States. Consequently, the program supports a large number of teachers at a wide range of academic institutions. In the last three years, for example, Summer Stipends have been awarded to scholars at 319 different institutions of higher education in 47 states, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico.

Nearly 4,600 Summer Stipends have been awarded since the program was established in 1967. Results of Summer Stipends study may appear in the classroom--as teachers incorporate their research into their courses--and in libraries, as results are published in articles and books.

In FY 1989, the Endowment received 1,369 applications for Summer Stipends and made 222 awards. In FY 1990, NEH anticipates receiving about 1,400 applications and making about 225 awards; in FY 1991, we expect to make about 215 awards of $3,750 each from approximately 1,400 applications.

Example of Supported Projects

The Endowment awarded a 1989 Summer Stipend to Robert L. Paquette, professor of history at Hamilton College in Clinton, New York, to continue his research for a book on the largest slave revolt in America, which took place in 1811 in Louisiana. Paquette will be studying some crucial records discovered in Spanish, English, and Louisianan archives that should illuminate this previously little-known event.

3. Travel to Collections ($300,000)

Through the Travel to Collections program, the Endowment offers grants of $750 to scholars who must travel to use the research collections of libraries, museums, archives, and other repositories. These small grants are intended to test the viability of a project at its inception, to advance a research project at a critical stage of its development, and to increase a scholar's ability to attract additional research funds from nonfederal sources.

This program complements the travel grant programs administered by the International Research and Exchanges Board, the Social Sciences Research Council, the American Council of Learned Societies, and the Committee for Scholarly Communication with the People's Republic of China. NEH's Travel to Collections program is the only one that provides small, short-term, research travel grants exclusively in the humanities.

The high number of applications for these grants testifies to the need for humanities scholars to carry out research in collections throughout the United States and the world, as well as to the scholars' need for financial assistance to undertake the travel. For example, at the January 1989 application deadline alone, 956 humanities scholars proposed research travel to collections in 40 states, the District of Columbia, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Puerto Rico, and 52 foreign countries.

The wide range of subject areas represented in the proposals also attests to the success of the program in serving the needs of a diverse scholarly constituency. Some examples of the topics supported in FY 1989 include a study of the records of early English drama in the West Riding of Yorkshire, the final checking of a scholar's translations into English of oral narratives in the Emai language of Africa, an analysis of nineteenth-century Midwestern women's diaries and journals, an exploration of the work done by American artist Adja Yunkers in Sweden during the years 1933-47, a study of the effects of the Black Death on the church in Barcelona, an art historical analysis of the description of the Hellenistic Laocoön sculpture written by Pliny in comparison with the Vatican Laocoön and the Sperlonga sculpture, an elucidation of seventeenth-century urban life in Germany by means of a study of the most widely-read books of domestic and natural advice, and an analysis of guilds and government in Baroque Rome. The collections used by Travel to Collections grantees include the Huntington Library in California, the Archives of American Art in Washington, D.C., the Chicago Historical Society in Chicago, the Biblioteca y Archivo Nacional in Bolivia, the Royal Ontario Museum in Canada, the Bibliothèque de l'Opera in France, the collections of the Hebrew University in Israel, and the Hermitage Museum in the U.S.S.R.

In FY 1989, the Travel to Collections program received 1,231 applications, an increase of 18 percent over the preceding year, and made 438 awards. In FY 1990, the program anticipates receiving at least 1,400 applications and making about 430-435 awards. Approximately 1,400 applications and 400 awards are expected in FY 1991.

Example of Supported Projects

Using an FY 1989 Travel to Collections award, Mikelle S. Omari of the California State University at Long Beach traveled to the library of the National Museum of African Art in Washington, D.C., to continue her compilation of a guide to publications dealing specifically with the art and art historiography of the cultures of the African Diaspora. Her work focuses on art historical publications for such countries as Brazil, Haiti, Jamaica, Cuba, Trinidad, and Honduras. The guide will integrate disparate sources into one manageable handbook and should help scholars discern the influences of African art in a broad and comprehensive way.

4. Younger Scholars ($375,000)

The Younger Scholars program provides high school and college students with an opportunity to carry out independent research and writing projects during a nine-week period in the summer. Under the supervision of a scholar in the humanities, the students pursue their own research within a concentrated period of time not available to them during the school year. By doing research and producing written work on a specific topic in the humanities, the students gain the valuable experience of independent study and significantly advance their intellectual development.

In FY 1989, the Endowment established separate competitions for high school and college student applicants; subsequently, the number of applications submitted by high school students has increased. Younger Scholar applications in FY 1989 came from students in 48 states, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico. During FY 1989, the program received 724 applications and made 156 awards. The program anticipates receiving 900 applications and making up to about 195 awards in FY 1990. Approximately 900 applications and 190 awards are expected in FY 1991.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) In FY 1989, Jennifer K. Sun, a senior at Lawrence High School in Cedarhurst, New York, received an award of $1,800 for her project, "The Re-emergence of Sun Yat-Sen as a National Symbol in the People's Republic of China." She proposed to examine the history of China's foreign and domestic relations in order to explain the recent re-affirmation of Sun Yat-Sen as a symbol of nationalism by the Chinese government. Her paper has been published in the Winter 1989 issue of The Concord Review, a journal devoted to work by high school students.

(ii) In FY 1989, Wynn M. Shuford, a junior at the University of Mississippi, received an award of $2,200 for his project, "The Influence of John Locke on the Opinions of Chief Justice John Marshall." Acknowledging the influence of Locke on the Constitution of the United States, Shuford proposed to explore his additional influence on American Constitutionalism through an analysis of the judicial interpretations of Chief Justice Marshall.

5. National Endowment for the Humanities Summer Seminars

The two programs of NEH Seminars--College Teachers and School Teachers--provide summer opportunities for teachers and other qualified individuals not affiliated with academic institutions to attend seminars to read, study, and undertake research in the various fields of the humanities. Collegial groups of twelve or fifteen pursue their studies under the direction of distinguished scholars and accomplished teachers at sites throughout the country.

In recognition of recent increases in the salaries of precollegiate and college faculty, and to help alleviate higher travel and living expenses, the stipends for participants will be increased in FY 1991--from $3,500 to $3,750 for eight-week seminars, from $2,750 to $2,950 for six-week seminars, and from $2,000 to $2,200 for four-week seminars. Also in FY 1991, both programs will encourage applications for foreign language and literature seminars--particularly those that, in addition to employing the traditional approach of studying language through works of literature in the original language, also engage teacher-participants in the study of other subject areas in the language such as history, political science, and philosophy.

a. Summer Seminars for College Teachers ($3,800,000)

The purpose of Summer Seminars for College Teachers is to provide opportunities for teachers at two-year, four-year, and five-year undergraduate colleges and universities and for qualified archivists, curators, librarians, editors, and independent scholars to study at major research institutions with eminent scholars in their own or related fields. The twelve participants in each seminar meet regularly with the director and make use of the resources of a research library. Participants gain fresh insights into the subjects they teach and study, improve their capacities to convey their understanding to undergraduate students and to the general public, and frequently make important contributions to scholarship in their fields. In FY 1989, results from former participants' work in summer seminars included 48 articles and book reviews, four books, a contract for a new English-language version of a Paul Hindemith opera, and the scholarly research for a public program in the humanities. Participants often continue their collective work as well: For example, at a James Joyce Conference in Philadelphia in June, 1989, former participants of two seminars on modern British literature joined other specialists in a symposium on Joyce; in December, 1989, participants of a past seminar on American Indian Verbal Art and Literature presented papers at two sessions of the Modern Language Association meetings.

Since the beginning of the program in 1973, over 14,500 teachers from more than half the colleges in the United States have attended the 1,160 plus seminars offered by the Endowment. Often these participants are teachers and scholars who are isolated by geography and other circumstances from the mainstream of their disciplines, who work at small institutions with inadequate research libraries, and who have few if any colleagues in their field. Heavy teaching or administrative schedules also frequently limit their time for study and research.

The program offered 63 seminars for 754 participants during the summer of 1989. The participants were drawn from 49 states, plus U.S. territories and foreign countries. In addition, 18 foreign participants nominated by the United States Information Agency participated in seminars at USIA expense. During the summer of 1990, about 610 college teachers will participate in 51 college teacher seminars.

For FY 1991 the program anticipates receiving approximately 160 applications to direct seminars and plans to offer 50 seminars for approximately 600 college teachers.

Example of Supported Projects

In 1989, Professor Donald P. Kommers, of the University of Notre Dame, directed a seminar on "American Constitutionalism in Comparative Perspective." The $75,431 grant brought together twelve college teachers and scholars from eleven states and from a variety of humanities disciplines. They compared the ways American courts and legal theorists have solved constitutional issues with the ways similar problems are resolved in other democracies. The seminar focused on several problem areas such as privacy, free speech, the exercise of religion, equal protection, and economic rights.

b. Summer Seminars for School Teachers ($3,600,000)

Summer Seminars for School Teachers offer opportunities to school teachers, principals, and other educators from kindergarten through twelfth grade to engage in intensive reading and study of basic humanities texts and documents.

Participants broaden their knowledge of significant humanities works and improve their ability to teach the humanities in the schools. The fifteen participants in each seminar work closely with outstanding scholars and dedicated colleagues for four, five, or six weeks at colleges, universities, and other appropriate sites. They meet regularly with the seminar director for a thorough examination and discussion of the humanities texts.

There are other organizations that sponsor workshops and institutes for teachers during the summer, but the NEH Summer Seminars for School Teachers program is one of the few that offers teachers and administrators in the nation's schools an opportunity to pursue intellectual inquiry rather than pedagogical concerns. Now in its eighth year, the Endowment's program has given more than 4,800 participants both recognition for their selection to the program and the opportunity for intellectual and professional renewal. The success of the program has also been recognized by private foundations and other government agencies: The Mellon Foundation provided $1 million to expand seminar offerings in 1984 and 1985, and the USIA began to sponsor foreign participants in 1986. In 1989, 20 teachers participated under USIA auspices, and a similar number is projected for 1990.

In FY 1989, applications from 115 scholars to direct seminars were received, of which 58 were funded; 2,297 school teachers applied to participate, and 874 received awards. In both FY 1990 and FY 1991, 150 applications from potential directors and 55 seminar awards are anticipated; from participants, there will be an estimated 2,500 applications and 825 awards each year, and the program's cooperative arrangement with USIA will be continued.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) Professor Merlin H. Forster, of the Department of Spanish and Portuguese at Brigham Young University, offered a five-week seminar in 1989 on "Fiction of Fictions: Reading Jorge Luis Borges." The $62,003 grant brought together fifteen school teachers from eleven different states and the International School of Brussels to read and study the key essays, short stories, and poetry of the Argentinian librarian and author who has been universally acclaimed as one of the major literary figures of the twentieth century. Through close study, careful analysis, and lively discussion, the seminar participants gained insight into Borges's created world, paying appropriate attention to matters of style and form and at the same time developing a more complete awareness of Borges's adroit manipulation of perception, time, and reality.

(ii) Noel E. Polk, professor of English at Southern Mississippi University, directed a six-week seminar in 1989 on "William Faulkner's Major Fiction." The $67,991 grant allowed fifteen U.S. school teachers from twelve different states and a

USIA-sponsored teacher from New Zealand to join with Professor Polk in close study of Faulkner's major novels and stories and the cultural milieux out of which they arose. During the final week, the seminar moved to Oxford, Mississippi, Faulkner's home and the site of the annual Faulkner and Yoknapatawpha Conference, where seminar participants joined other scholars in an examination of Faulkner and religion.

GENERAL PROGRAMS
(Definite funds in thousands)

Program	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Humanities Projects in Media...........	$ 9,399	$ 9,269	$ 9,200
Humanities Projects in Museums and Historical Organizations.............	8,640	8,776	9,100
Public Humanities Projects.............	2,002	2,268	2,200
Humanities Projects in Libraries and Archives........................	2,799	2,761	2,600
	$22,840	$23,074	$23,100

GENERAL PROGRAMS
($23,100,000)

Knowing that a democratic society, if it is to remain vital, must maintain its common cultural memory and that such a society flourishes best in the midst of a lively civic discourse, the Congress has authorized and encouraged the Endowment to foster public understanding and appreciation of the humanities.

The Endowment's programs for general audiences are based upon twin assumptions: that reflection on the fundamental ideas and perennial questions addressed by the humanities remains important throughout a person's life, not just during the years of formal education, and that the humanities can be presented to the general public in ways that are both stimulating and substantive.

Some grants awarded by the General Programs division broaden public awareness and deepen public understanding of cultural works, including outstanding works of poetry, drama, fiction, and biography. These projects may employ the scholarly approaches of any humanities discipline.

Other projects examine critically major historical ideas, persons, and events. Although NEH does not support projects of merely local or antiquarian interest, it does encourage examination of the broader significance of local topics.

Finally, the division encourages projects that elucidate the character of a particular humanities discipline or set of disciplines. These projects may address questions such as: What approaches does this discipline characteristically use? What are the competing schools of thought?

In short, the General Programs division supports efforts that introduce the world of the scholar to the public at large. Both parties benefit. Radio and television programs, interpretive exhibitions, reading and discussion groups, symposia, conferences, and panel discussions are some of the formats that, with Endowment assistance, are employed by museums, libraries, colleges and universities, historical organizations, and professional associations. Funding is provided through the division's several programs: Humanities Projects in Media, Humanities Projects in Museums and Historical Organizations, Public Humanities Projects, and Humanities Projects in Libraries and Archives. As do all activities that receive NEH support, projects supported through the Division of General Programs must focus on ideas or themes central to the disciplines of the humanities.

Even though the Endowment provides only a small portion of the total support for public humanities programming, it complements the efforts of others by encouraging collaboration between universities and other institutions, and between scholars and persons outside of the academy who are active on behalf of the humanities. Moreover, by awarding grants selectively for projects of exemplary quality, NEH provides models of excellence that other institutions may follow and helps attract private support for their efforts.

Prompted by Congressional interest in the scope and impact of NEH-sponsored activities and by abundant evidence--as documented in the Chairman's report Humanities in America--that American citizens are eager to learn more about history and culture, the Division of General Programs is implementing a variety of measures to ensure that Americans in all communities and regions of the country have the opportunity to study the humanities. In FY 1991, the division will emphasize large-scale projects--such as television series, collaborative projects among museums, traveling exhibitions, and projects conducted by state and regional library systems--that involve the collaboration of multiple institutions and that have the potential to reach large numbers of people, including those in remote areas.

Programs of the Division of General Programs

1. Humanities Projects in Media ($9,200,000)

The Endowment's media program supports the creation of television and radio programs that convey important works and significant ideas to a broad public. Through grants for planning, scripting, and production, NEH encourages collaboration among noted scholars in the humanities, public television and radio stations, and independent producers. The Endowment works with applicants from among the more than 600 public television and radio stations, 10,000 independent television, film, and radio producers, and thousands of distinguished scholars. Since the program's inception in FY 1972, the Endowment has supported more than 1,000 media projects employing all disciplines of the humanities--over 850 hours of television for national broadcast and 600 hours of radio for local and regional broadcasts. Programs funded by the Endowment have received more than 130 national and international awards for distinguished achievement.

Other agencies and organizations, such as the Corporation for Public Broadcasting, the National Endowment for the Arts, the National Science Foundation, and the Department of Education offer support for either narrowly mandated or broadly defined purposes related to media. NEH is the sole federal agency concerned with conveying humanities scholarship and resources to the public through radio and television.

During FY 1989 the program reviewed 263 applications and provided funding for 55 projects, including support for planning, scripting, and production. These grants will result in 62 hours of television and 65 hours of radio programming. In FY 1989, NEH-funded programs for public television attracted approximately 248 million viewers, and several projects received prestigious national and international prizes. In FY 1990, approximately 265 applications are anticipated and approximately 55 will receive awards. In FY 1991, 265 applications are again expected and about 50 will be funded.

In FY 1991, the program will continue to support documentary films and radio programs that elucidate American history and culture and the history and culture of other nations. For example, an NEH-supported documentary film about the Supreme Court aired nationally in the fall of 1989. The Supreme Court's Holy Battles examines the constitutional origins of the separation of church and state, focussing on Thomas Jefferson's Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom. Scholars reconstruct the time in which the religion clauses of the First Amendment were developed and trace subsequent court debates on religion. Passage to India, an NEH supported radio documentary series first broadcast several years ago, explores the evolution of traditional culture and its place in contemporary Indian life. In ten programs, the series analyzes the sub-continent's religion, society, foreign influences, and politics. A recent television documentary about the history and culture of a foreign country, China in Revolution, 1911-49, was produced with Endowment support and aired in the fall of 1989. Through rare original footage and interviews with soldiers, peasants, political leaders, and scholars, the two-hour film examines this enormously complex period in China, including the war with Japan and the relationship between Chiang Kai-shek and Mao Zedong.

The division will also continue to support dramatizations of historical events and literary works. For example, Seize the Day, a ninety-minute adaptation of Saul Bellow's novel, aired on "Great Performances" in 1987 to critical acclaim. Another NEH-sponsored film, Sorceress, a ninety-minute production based upon a treatise written by a Dominican friar in 13th-century France, recreates the daily lives and customs of the peasants and focuses on the role of religion and the church in late medieval France. Now being shown in commercial theaters, the film will be broadcast on public television next season. The Endowment has also supported the PBS series for children, Long Ago and Far Away, which completed its first season of 13 half-hour shows drawn from classical children's literature and began a second season in January 1990.

The Endowment will continue to encourage media projects on the Columbian Quincentenary. A major grant has been made to help produce Columbus and the Age of Discovery, a seven-part examination of the voyages of Columbus and the impact of the European arrival in America. In addition, scripting is underway on 1492: Clash of Visions, a five-part series about Africa, Asia, and Latin America during the Age of Discovery.

Biographical documentaries are a highly effective way for the public to encounter extraordinary lives, significant ideas, and historic events. In FY 1991, the program will continue its special emphasis on the production of television biographies about important American historical figures. One such effort that received NEH support, Harry Hopkins: Lord Root of the Matter, was shown nationally in the fall of 1989. This 90-minute documentary film examines the role that Hopkins played in Franklin Delano Roosevelt's administration, emphasizing his involvement in foreign affairs as Roosevelt's representative and his special relationship with FDR. Another NEH-supported documentary broadcast last fall, Thomas Hart Benton, traces the colorful life and turbulent career of an artist who shunned French modernism and the establishment to paint America for "ordinary" Americans. For children, Booker, a television drama about Booker T. Washington's life from age nine to eleven--years that spanned the last two months of the Civil War and the beginning of Reconstruction--was first broadcast with Endowment support in 1984. Planning and scripting grants have recently been awarded for programs on Dwight Eisenhower, Tennessee Williams, Edgar Allan Poe, Alexander Hamilton, George Marshall, Jay Gould, and Woodrow Wilson. And, production awards have been made for films on Clarence Darrow, James Baldwin, General Joseph Stilwell, Lyndon Johnson, Charles Lindberg, and Duke Ellington.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) Through awards totalling $1,184,000, the Endowment is supporting the production of a five-hour dramatic mini-series examining the lives, thought, and contributions of one of America's preeminent literary families, the James family. The series includes William (1842-1910), Henry (1843-1916), and Alice (1848-1892). Based on the latest biographical, historical, and literary scholarship, the series promises to be a portrait not only of an important family of American letters but also of America from the Civil War through the turn of the century.

(ii) In FY 1989, independent producer Ken Burns received $299,100 to complete the production of a eleven-hour documentary series on the American Civil War. Although the major campaigns will be treated, the focus of the series will be on the ramifications of the war on politics, economics, society, and religion. To date, the Endowment has awarded approximately $1,350,000 to this project.

(iii) In FY 1989, $850,340 was awarded to support production of a two-part dramatic mini-series, The Way of Duty, which will examine the Revolutionary War in Connecticut and New York. The series will focus on the way the war affected communities and families, drawing connections between the local patriots (militia) and the national leadership and examining community strife through the conflicts of Tories and revolutionaries.

2. Humanities Projects in Museums and Historical Organizations ($9,100,000)

Museums and historical organizations are the repositories of the artifactual and documentary record of our historical and cultural tradition. The Endowment promotes the use of the collections housed in these institutions by supporting educational projects that emphasize the philosophical, historical, and aesthetic approaches of the humanities. We also regularly identify model humanities education projects in museums and disseminate information about them in an effort to encourage replication by other institutions. In addition, the Endowment works to enhance the educational mission of museums and historical organizations by supporting their efforts to improve the management of collections, to improve the interpretive skills of professional staff, and to conduct internal evaluations of interpretive programs.

The Institute of Museum Services provides funding for essential and basic operating needs of museums through its general operating support, conservation project, museum assessment, and professional services programs. The National Endowment for the Arts funds the exhibition, conservation, and documentation of collections of artistic significance. NEH support is distinct in that our projects must offer the general public a scholarly examination of material culture from the perspective of one or more of the disciplines of the humanities.

In FY 1989, the Humanities Projects in Museums and Historical Organizations program reviewed 280 applications and awarded 83 grants. Among the major exhibitions mounted with NEH support during the past year was "The First Egyptians," an exploration of the origins of ancient civilization on the Nile as interpreted through modern archaeology. Developed by the McKissick Museum of the University of South Carolina, the exhibition focuses on the culture of early Egyptian society between 4,000 B.C. and 2,700 B.C., when from a number of small chiefdoms it developed into the world's first nation-state. After its opening in South Carolina, the exhibition's two-year national tour includes sites in Wisconsin, Colorado, California, Texas, and Washington, D.C.

Another NEH-supported traveling exhibition that opened during FY 1989, "Lafayette: Hero of Two Worlds," examined the art and pageantry associated with Lafayette's farewell tour of America in 1824-1825. Organized by the Queens Museum in Flushing, New York, the exhibition subsequently traveled to the Historical Society of Pennsylvania and the Museum of Our National Heritage in Lexington, Massachusetts. One of the many long-term exhibitions supported by the Endowment, "Family and Faith: The Hispanic Heritage of New Mexico," opened in July of 1989 at the Museum of International Folk Art in Santa Fe. This exhibition explores the history and culture of Hispanic New Mexico using a major collection of art and historical artifacts.

In FY 1990, the Humanities Projects in Museums and Historical Organizations program expects to award approximately 85 grants out of an estimated 310 applications. In FY 1991, the program will review about 325 applications and make approximately 90 awards.

In FY 1991, we will continue to encourage traveling exhibitions that serve audiences in many locations around the country. For example, "First Encounters: Spanish Exploration in the Caribbean and the United States 1492-1540," is one of the first exhibitions to open (October 1989) in commemoration of the Columbian Quincentenary and builds on new historical and archaeological research in order to examine the little-known history of Spanish efforts to colonize the southeastern United States. Organized by the Florida Museum of Natural History at the University of Florida, the exhibition will travel to eleven sites in Florida, South Carolina, Texas, New Mexico, New York, Ohio, and Minnesota through 1992. Like many exhibitions supported by the Endowment, "First Encounters" is accompanied by a comprehensive exhibition catalogue and extensive curricular materials for elementary school students.

Other recently-supported traveling exhibitions include "The Art of the July Monarchy, France 1830 to 1848," which examines art, politics, and society during the reign of Louis Philippe, the Citizen King. After its showing at the Museum of Art and Archaeology of the University of Missouri, where it served as a centerpiece for the university's sesquecentennial celebration, the exhibition will tour to Rochester, New York and Santa Barbara, California. The Center for African Art in New York City organized "Yoruba: Nine Centuries of African Art and Thought," a major exhibition exploring almost a millennium of artistic achievement in this African culture. The exhibition will travel to the Art Institute of Chicago, the National Museum of African Art, the Cleveland Museum of Art, the New Orleans Museum of Art, and the High Museum in Atlanta, Georgia.

During fiscal year 1991, the Endowment will continue to encourage museums to collaborate with other museums and educational institutions on exhibitions and programming that improve public access to collections and extend the educational impact of funded projects. For example, a recent planning grant on "The History of African-American Family Life and Culture in Greenfield Village" allowed the Edison Institute to work with representatives from local universities and community school systems to develop new interpretive programs and materials on African American history. The Endowment will also continue to encourage museums to develop comprehensive educational programs and materials that complement exhibitions. For example, in conjunction with the NEH-supported exhibition "Selling the World of Tomorrow: The 1939 New York World's Fair," which opened in October 1989, the Museum of the City of New York developed a school outreach program that incorporates teacher training, curriculum kits, and an intergenerational partnership with senior centers; a series of teacher workshops to develop pre- and post-visit materials; and a program of family activities.

In fiscal year 1991, in order to encourage museums to develop more educational opportunities for training staff in humanities subjects, the Endowment will launch a new activity, Humanities Seminars for Museum Professionals. An example of the kind of program we will support is a grant awarded in November 1989 to the Reno County Historical Society in Hutchinson, Kansas that is allowing staff members from seven small historical societies in the state to attend lectures and workshops on the history of World War II given by noted scholars and experts in historical interpretation. As a result of these sessions, each of the museums will prepare an exhibition about the war.

In 1991, support will continue for projects related to collections management and conservation, including the documentation and computerized control of collections, surveys of conservation needs for exhibitions, and the conservation of objects to be used in temporary and permanent exhibitions. Collections management projects underway at the Oakland Museum in California and the Old South Meeting House in Boston, for example, will collect, verify, and record information about major ethnographic and historical collections that will increase the use of these materials in publications, exhibitions, and other educational programs.

Examples of supported projects

(i) The Chicago Historical Society was awarded $300,000 in outright funds and $100,000 in matching monies to support installation of a permanent exhibition entitled "A House Divided: America in the Age of Lincoln." The exhibition draws on the museum's extensive and rich collections of American Civil War artifacts, daguerrotypes, historical paintings, and the personal effects of Lincoln and his family. It will explore the causes and conflicts leading to the Civil War, the war itself, and its aftermath, with a special emphasis on the historical role and symbolic importance of Abraham Lincoln during this era. In addition to the exhibition, the museum will publish a catalogue, develop educational materials for local schools, and sponsor a scholarly symposium.

(ii) The Natural History Museum of Los Angeles County was awarded $250,000 in outright funds and $200,000 in matching monies for a new long-term exhibition, the "Hall of Native American Cultures." The exhibition will interpret American Indian history and culture from the prehistoric past to the present day, exploring the interaction of tradition, cultural diversity, and cultural change. Training programs for teachers will accompany the opening of the hall, and the museum will also arrange outreach programs for senior citizens and other special audiences.

(iii) The Endowment awarded the Illinois State Museum in Springfield, Illinois, $158,679 for a traveling exhibition entitled "Harvesting the River: Life and Work on the Illinois River." The exhibition, mounted on a working towboat, traveled almost six hundred miles along the Illinois Waterway and stopped at seventeen communities. Tracing the 7,000-year history of human activity along the river, the exhibition contained artifacts, historical photographs, and oral histories, and was accompanied at each site by lectures, demonstrations, and performances. Following the tour, portions of the exhibition will be permanently displayed at the two branches of the museum along the river.

3. Public Humanities Projects ($2,200,000)

Through this program, the Endowment supports activities that make an important contribution to public understanding of the humanities, but whose diverse formats cannot be readily accommodated within the guidelines of the more structured programs in the division. The Public Humanities Projects program does not restrict its grants to any one type of project or to any set of institutions. Applicants are encouraged to use imagination and a wide variety of formats--including debates, public forums, symposia, film festivals, or pamphlets, brochures, and books--in order to engage the general public in intellectually substantive and rewarding activities.

During FY 1989, this program received 82 applications and awarded 19 grants. In both FY 1990 and FY 1991, this program anticipates receiving about 90 proposals and making approximately 20-25 awards.

During FY 1991, we expect an increase in proposals for public programs on World War II, as the fiftieth anniversary of the war (1939-1945) prompts civic groups and scholarly organizations to commemorate and examine the conflict and its long-term effects.

The program will also continue to offer support for projects involving theaters, museums, and orchestras that interpret the fine arts for non-specialist audiences. In recent years, NEH has funded a number of well-attended pre- or post-concert lectures, seminars, and publications on the history and theory of the performing arts.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) The Greater Louisville Fund for the Arts received $325,210 to sponsor a series of programs and exhibitions that illuminate the cultural milieu of works presented during a city-wide festival of revolutionary Russian theater, music, ballet, painting, and opera. "Classics in Context: Art and Russia in Revolution" represents a collaborative effort among five arts organizations: The Actors Theater of Louisville, the Kentucky Opera, the Louisville Ballet, the Louisville Orchestra, and the J. B. Speed Museum of Art. Its principal aim is to bring the historical and cultural insights of humanities scholarship to a regional audience and thus enhance public appreciation of classic works in the visual, literary, and performing arts. Works such as Anton Chekhov's The Seagull, Russian Constructivist theater design, Sergei Eisenstein's films, Igor Stravinsky's L'Histoire du Soldat, and Rimsky-Korsakov's and Fokine's Scheherazade are among those being examined.

(ii) With an award of $18,545, the State University of New York, College at Brockport will plan a set of programs on World War II. A lecture series, "Great Decisions in World War II," will explore such topics as the impact of the war on science and technology, FDR and U. S. entry into the war, and social change during and following the war. Films and plays accompanied by scholarly commentary and public discussion will be organized in order to address the theme, "Interpreting the 'Good War.'" A final segment, "Monroe County Goes to War," will use lectures, exhibits, and the presentation of oral history research to convey to public audiences the impact of the war on the Brockport and Rochester region, home to a number of industries that were dramatically affected by the needs of war production.

(iii) The Johns Hopkins University was awarded $150,000 in outright and $150,000 in matching funds in support of a three-year project that, within the setting of a medical school and hospital, will examine the history of ideas. Lectures, symposia, and colloquia will be broadcast on closed-circuit television in the hospital to patients, visitors, students, and faculty and will be complemented by book and film discusssions. Lectures to be offered include "The Religions of Africa" and "Religious Thought and Self-Knowledge." In a symposium entitled "The New History and Its Neighbors," scholars in anthropology, literary criticism, sociology, literary history, and the history of medicine will exchange views on the implications of the new history for their respective fields. Another series of programs entitled, "The New Sciences of the Past," will explore the intersection of the new technology with the disciplines of cultural history, such as archaeology, linguistics, and philology.

4. Humanities Projects in Libraries and Archives ($2,600,000)

Libraries and archives collect, preserve, and maintain the written record of the world's cultural heritage and make it available to the general public. In addition to their intrinsic importance as places of individual study and learning, these institutions offer a natural setting for scholars and the general public to come together for discussion and critical inquiry. The Endowment seeks to use that setting by funding programs that increase public understanding of the humanities through the discovery, interpretation, and greater appreciation of books and special collections in libraries and archives.

No other federal programs are focused specifically on public education projects in the humanities sponsored by libraries or archives. The Department of Education provides some assistance to universities, colleges, and public libraries for various library services. State and local governments primarily provide operational support.

Humanities projects supported recently in this program include reading and discussion programs about significant themes in literature; conferences and lecture series on works by notable writers from Homer to Welty; interpretive exhibitions of rare books, manuscripts, and maps from the fifteenth to the early seventeenth century that illustrate how contemporaries perceived the Columbian encounter; and community forums at libraries to discuss such topics as "The Common Good" as revealed through works by Ralph Waldo Emerson, Alexis de Tocqueville, Wendell Barry, N. Scott Momaday, and John Nichols.

During FY 1989, the Libraries and Archives program reviewed 78 applications and awarded 26 grants for varied projects reaching all parts of the nation. These included 11 planning grants for future projects. Other grants were made for reading and discussion programs in libraries throughout Arizona, California, Colorado, Idaho, Montana, Nevada, and Utah on topics such as "Trails of the West," "Contemporary Japanese Literature," and "Women's Autobiography"; and for programs about The Odyssey in libraries in 90 New York communities.

During FY 1990 and FY 1991, the program expects to award about the same number of grants as in FY 1989 (25) but receive a greater number of applications (85 and 100 respectively). The Endowment will continue to encourage large-scale projects that involve state, regional, and national library associations capable of reaching remote areas, small libraries, and large numbers of people. The program will also emphasize programs that explore the literature and history of particular periods in this country's past--including projects anticipating the Columbian Quincentenary in 1992--and programs that will introduce the literature and history of other nations to the general public.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) The American Library Association received a grant of $269,325 to mount a traveling exhibition and create and disseminate educational materials about the history of the U.S. Congress. The exhibition, "To Make All Laws: The Congress of the United States," began traveling to 30 American cities in the fall of 1989 and will remain on tour for two years. It will examine the history of our Congress and how it works through items in the collections of the Library of Congress, such as texts, photographs, manuscripts, letters, books, and maps. An interpretive catalogue, bibliographies, an inter-active videodisc, and educational brochures accompany the tour and supplement programs including lectures, panel sessions, symposia, and reading groups scheduled by the libraries.

(ii) The Endowment awarded the Southern Connecticut Library Council $193,540 to conduct library reading and discussion programs at 50 sites throughout six New England states. Programs focus on the theme, "American Lives: An Exploration Through Biography and Autobiography." Books to be read and discussed by participants include Russell Baker's Growing Up, Kim Chernin's In My Mother's House, Ivan Diog's This House of Sky, and Mary McCarthy's Memories of a Catholic Girlhood.

(iii) As part of the Endowment's emphasis on projects marking the Columbian Quincentenary in 1992, the Newberry Library in Chicago was awarded $20,527 to plan an exhibition of books, manuscripts, and maps that will illuminate American Indian cultures on the eve of the voyages of Columbus. The major collections at the Newberry are about the history and culture of Europe and the Americas from the Middle Ages to the mid-twentieth century. One of the best of these special collections, known throughout the world, is the Ayer Collection, the focus of which is the history of indigenous American cultures and their encounters with Europeans. It is from this collection that pieces will be drawn and interpreted during planning for the exhibition.

RESEARCH PROGRAMS
(Definite funds in thousands)

Program	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Texts			
Editions	$ 2,700	$ 2,604	$ 3,550
Translations	1,531	1,183	1,275
Publication Subvention	319	345	350
Reference Materials			
Tools	2,886	2,692	3,225
Access	2,456	2,741	3,225
Interpretive Research			
Collaborative Projects	2,660	2,761	2,625
Humanities, Science and Technology	840	868	875
Conferences	402	394	375
Centers for Advanced Study	953	912	925
International	1,603	2,120	2,125
Selected Areas	258	143	50
	$16,610	$16,763	$18,600

Note: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

RESEARCH PROGRAMS
($18,600,000)

One of the missions entrusted to the Endowment by its enabling legislation is the responsibility to advance scholarly research in the humanities. Through the Division of Research Programs, NEH supports authoritative editions of significant texts and documents, translations, encyclopedias, dictionaries, bibliographies, and other resource materials. In addition, the division supports works of original research on topics of major intellectual significance in the humanities that require scholarly coordination or collaboration. The division further facilitates research through support for conferences and through grants to nonfederal grantmaking organizations such as advanced research centers. Finally, the division helps to promote research by American scholars in foreign countries where special arrangements are needed to assure access to libraries, archives, and other repositories. All of the division's programs help make knowledge more readily accessible; moreover, the published works that typically result from division grants are enduring aids to further research and learning.

One measure of the division's impact on humanities research and scholarship is the number of works published each year that result from previous grant support. In 1989, NEH-supported projects produced over 200 new books on a wide variety of humanities subjects, ranging from numerous volumes in the editions of the papers of several Presidents of the United States, to a translation of Hegel's Lectures on the History of Philosophy, and a guided study of Einstein's work on relativity. Books such as these often provide the basis on which the best educational and general audience programs in the humanities are developed and thus have long-term influence beyond the scholarly community.

Grant recipients are urged to obtain third-party gifts, whenever possible, to supplement the Endowment's support of major and long-term scholarly ventures. Indeed, about twenty-five percent of the grantmaking by the Division of Research Programs has been in the form of federal matching funds--more than any other Endowment division. In FY 1991, the division will continue to emphasize third-party donations, especially for large, complex, long-term projects.

The activities of the division are organized into seven programs: Texts, Reference Materials, Interpretive Research, Conferences, Centers for Advanced Study, International Research, and Selected Areas:

-- The Texts program provides support for the preparation of editions of texts and collections of documents, for the translation into English of foreign language materials, and for the publication of scholarly books in all disciplines of the humanities;

- -- The Reference Materials program provides support for projects that facilitate research in the humanities by organizing important resources for scholarship and by preparing finding aids and other reference materials that can improve scholarly access to information and collections;
- -- The Interpretive Research program supports a variety of collaborative scholarly activities in all fields of the humanities leading to books and articles that are broad in scope and both original and interpretive in character, rather than works of reference;
- -- The Conferences program supports meetings that advance the state of research in a field or topic of major importance in the humanities, and acquaints non-specialists with these advances;
- -- The Centers for Advanced Study program provides support for research fellows at independent research libraries and museums, American research centers abroad, and other free-standing centers for advanced research at which significant work in the humanities is being done;
- -- The International Research program makes awards to national organizations and learned societies to enable American scholars to conduct research abroad on foreign cultures; and
- -- The Selected Areas program supports three grant programs of the American Council of Learned Societies that provide support to scholars engaged in humanities research.

Programs of the Division of Research Programs

1. Texts

a. Editions ($3,550,000)

Grants in this category aid scholars in the preparation of authoritative and annotated editions of primary sources. Support is provided for projects that make available (either in print or microfilm editions) important texts and documents that have been either previously unavailable or accessible only in seriously flawed editions. The critical introductions and annotations to these editions provide scholars and students with essential information about the form and intellectual context of the texts and documents.

The National Historical Publications and Records Commission (NHPRC) also supports editions in the humanities, but the Commission's mandate restricts funding to the editing of American historical documents. The Endowment is the only federal agency that supports editions of both American and non-American materials in all fields of the humanities.

The Presidential papers projects funded by the Editions category have made significant strides in the last year. The projects for Presidents Washington, Polk, Johnson, Grant, and Eisenhower are now working on the documents from the presidential terms of their respective subjects. These documents are the most extensive and most important materials to be included in each of the editions and have been eagerly awaited by the scholarly community. In March 1989, the Endowment sponsored a conference held at the University of Tennessee to enable the directors of the nine Presidential papers projects to discuss important issues raised by their work.

A number of volumes were published in 1989 that resulted from previous grants made by the Editions category. In American history, three of the Presidential papers projects (Washington, Polk, and Eisenhower) published volumes, as did the editions of the papers of Robert Morris, Jefferson Davis, and Samuel Gompers. In literature, volumes appeared in the editions of the letters of James Boswell, Robert and Elizabeth Barrett Browning, and Eugene O'Neill. In American philosophy, five paperback volumes were published in the edition of the works of John Dewey, while new volumes appeared in the editions of George Santayana and Charles S. Pierce.

Two major editions published their final volumes in the past year: The Papers of Daniel Webster was completed in fifteen volumes and was honored in ceremonies at Dartmouth College at which Chief Justice William Rehnquist spoke; and The Papers of Henry Adams, which has received acclaim in the scholarly and popular press, published its sixth and final volume.

In FY 1989, the category received 78 applications and made 33 awards. In FY 1990, 70 applications have been received and about 30 grants will be awarded. In FY 1991, the category again expects to make awards to about 30 to 35 projects out of an anticipated 80 proposals. With increased funding for this category in FY 1991, the Endowment will be able to make larger, long-term awards to particularly significant projects. Greater levels of support will be helpful to a number of editions that are nearing completion or that are reaching critical stages in the course of their work. The program will, of course, continue to make extensive use of federal matching funds. The staff also will work closely with the Education and Fellowships divisions to try to expand the use of NEH-supported editions in humanities education institutes and summer seminars. Finally, another focus of the Editions category in FY 1991 will be projects that make greater use of electronic data bases. Humanities projects have made important strides in using computers in recent years; the Endowment will encourage this trend by emphasizing computerized data bases in the category's guidelines.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) In FY 1989, the University of Wisconsin, Madison, received $100,000 in outright funds and an offer of $70,000 in federal matching funds to continue work on an edition of a documentary history of the ratification of the Constitution and the Bill of Rights. The project has collected copies of more than 12,000 manuscripts and 40,000 newspaper items from over 500 libraries and private collections. Much of the material will be published in printed volumes with thorough indexes and annotation. The remaining materials will be made available to scholars in accompanying microfiche supplements. The result will be an invaluable record of the public debate over ratification from 1787 to 1791. Because the edition will provide new insights into the opinions of the framers of the Constitution, it will enjoy a broad audience including historians, political scientists, lawyers, judges, and others with related interests. Nine of a projected twenty-one volumes have been completed to date.

(ii) In FY 1989, Rutgers, the State University of New Jersey, received an offer of $218,760 in federal matching funds to continue work on an edition of the papers of Thomas A. Edison. The project has identified more than three and one-half million documents at the Edison National Historic Site in West Orange, New Jersey, and in archives and private collections throughout the United States. A selective microfilm edition of 400,000 documents will be published in six parts with a printed guide and index for each part. In addition, a fifteen-volume printed edition will be produced. The materials include the correspondence, laboratory notes, and technical and business records of America's most prolific inventor. The ability of the editors to present technical drawings and artifacts in a manner that is accessible to those without a strong scientific background is particularly noteworthy. One part of the microfilm edition and the first volume of the print edition have been published.

b. Translations ($1,275,000)

This category makes important texts more accessible to American scholars, students, and general readers by supporting the translation of significant books and documents in all fields of the humanities from foreign languages into English. Translations are important to researchers both in their own areas of expertise and in related fields. They are also valuable teaching tools, introducing students to the philosophic, religious, literary, and historical traditions of other civilizations. Support is provided for single works, large-scale collaborative projects, anthologies, and retranslations (if existing translations are incomplete or otherwise inadequate). All NEH supported translations are accompanied by critical introductions and annotations.

Although the Literature Program of the National Endowment for the Arts also funds translations, only published translators are eligible to apply. The NEA also generally limits it support to works of fiction or poetry. Moreover, NEA-supported translations are not accompanied by the critical scholarly apparatus that is required of NEH translation projects.

Since the inception of the Translations category in 1976, the Endowment has supported translations from almost 100 languages and in all disciplines and fields of the humanities. Recently, the agency has particularly encouraged the translation of the basic texts of other cultures and civilizations. Projects may deal with central texts from the Western tradition, such as classical plays or basic works in philosophy and political theory, or with works from indigenous or non-Western cultures, such as the poetry of American Indians or Aztec responses to the arrival of European explorers.

The works supported through the Translations category address issues of continuing intellectual concern. In 1989, for example, the category enabled researchers from several institutions to participate in a project based at Indiana University that will render into English the texts that kept the legend of King Arthur alive throughout the Middle Ages. Readers interested in contemporary Christian theology and the Holocaust will benefit from the University of Chicago's project to translate the major works of Dietrich Bonhoeffer. Projects such as these continue to garner critical acclaim. In 1989, for instance, a former grantee, Rebecca Catz, received the Armand G. Erpf Award from Columbia University for her translation, The Travels of Mendes Pinto, which recounts a Portuguese explorer's adventures in medieval Japan.

In FY 1989, the category received 194 proposals and funded 35. In FY 1990, the category received 173 proposals, of which about 30 will be funded. In FY 1991, the category expects to receive about 180 proposals and to fund about 25. The Endowment will continue to support multi-volume comprehensive projects to translate great texts and also works that are useful in the classroom such as anthologies and retranslations of classic works in the humanities.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) In FY 1989, Harvard University received a grant of $200,000 in outright funds and an offer of $50,000 in federal matching funds to translate Mao Zedong's pre-1931 writings. The project will make available the thought of one of the twentieth century's most important historical figures. The writings come from a crucial period in Mao's career during which he developed his own political philosophy and drafted strategies for the coming Chinese revolution. An English translation will significantly enhance our understanding of Chinese history and politics, making it possible for English readers to consult texts that have decisively shaped China's modern political culture. The project is being directed by leading Western scholars on modern China.

(ii) The Amon Carter Museum of Western Art in Fort Worth, Texas, was awarded $50,000 in outright funds to translate the journals of Balduin Mollhausen, a German artist who accompanied the first U.S. government-sponsored expedition along the Colorado River in 1857. The translation will be illustrated by forty-seven of Mollhausen's watercolors, and publication will coincide with a traveling exhibition of the art work. Mollhausen's journals together with his paintings provide a wealth of information on the natural history and native peoples of the Colorado plateau at a time before extensive European settlement. The texts will add much to our knowledge of the history of exploration and regional military affairs.

c. Publication Subvention ($350,000)

Established in 1977 in response to a directive from Congress, this category makes grants to presses to ensure the dissemination of works of scholarly distinction in the humanities. Applicants must demonstrate that the work to be published is of significance to one or more of the disciplines of the humanities and that it will be of enduring value. The category encourages proposals for projects that will be of interest to general readers as well as to scholars--for example, reference works, scholarly regional books, and monographs of broad scope and importance to one or more fields.

In FY 1989, NEH began making awards in this category on the basis of significance of the work, the excellence of the scholarship, and the anticipated impact of the book on the intended audience. In addition, the amount of the award was set at $7,000. These changes have improved the overall quality of the proposals supported in the category, simplified the preparation and review of applications, and allowed publishers greater flexibility in selecting which titles to submit for subvention.

The National Historical Publications and Records Commission (NHPRC) also offers publication subsidies but only to nonprofit publishers of editions of American historical documents that have been supported or endorsed by the Commission. The NEH program is not restricted to American editions, nor to projects that have received previous Endowment support. The J. Paul Getty Trust offers support for publications that make a contribution to research and scholarship in the history of art. (These grants are intended to improve production quality or reduce retail price for wider distribution.) The NEH program is not restricted to art history but assists the publication of works in all of the disciplines of the humanities.

Many books supported by the category have been awarded major prizes. For example, Michael McKeon's The Origins of the English Novel, 1600-1740, published by the Johns Hopkins

University Press, was the recipient of the 1988 Modern Language Association's James Russell Lowell Prize. And, the 1988 Gustavus Myers Center for the Study of Human Rights in the United States award for the best study of human rights was won by David W. Southern's Gunnar Myrdal and Black-White Relations: The Use and Abuse of "An American Dilemma," 1944-1969, for which Louisiana State University Press had received a subvention grant.

In FY 1989, the first year in which the category awarded grants in the fixed amount of $7,000, 111 applications were received and 43 were funded. For FY 1990, 110 applications are anticipated and approximately 45 awards will be made. In FY 1991, 120 applications are expected and about 50 awards will be made.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) In FY 1989, the University of North Carolina Press received a grant of $7,000 in outright funds to assist in the publication of a study of urban development in the American South after the Civil War. Previous studies of the New South have been broad surveys of the region, studies of rural elites, or narrow monographs on single cities. This work contrasts two inland cities--Atlanta and Memphis--with two coastal cities--Charleston and Mobile. The author argues that the old planter aristocracy was able to maintain control in the coastal centers and that they prevented economic innovation. By contrast, a new group of middle class business leaders dominated the inland railroad centers and successfully led Atlanta and Memphis into the national economic mainstream. The author's demonstration of the complexity of Southern life challenges popular myths and provides a solid base upon which other scholars can reexamine important historical controversies.

(ii) In FY 1989, the University of Missouri Press received an award of $7,000 to assist in the publication of an edition of the topical notebooks of Ralph Waldo Emerson. These notebooks show how Emerson researched, organized, and wrote his essays and how his early sense of optimism about American culture was later tempered by the realities of industrial America. The notebooks are presented in a generic text, with all of Emerson's deletions, insertions, alternative readings, and other changes retained. The topical notebooks are cross-referenced to editions of Emerson's journals and poetry notebooks. Although the production in this format will be expensive, the complex presentation is essential to make the materials more useful and accessible to scholars and other readers.

2. Reference Materials

a. Tools ($3,225,000)

The purpose of this category is to support the creation of dictionaries, historical or linguistic atlases, encyclopedias, concordances, reference grammars, linguistic data bases, and other codifications of knowledge into materials for reference by scholars, students, and general readers.

The National Science Foundation (NSF) also provides funding for the preparation of dictionaries or reference grammars. NSF, however, limits its support to works of interest to scientific linguistic research and makes awards for projects in areas, such as the biological foundations of language, which fall outside the scope of the Endowment.

During the past year, several important research tools supported by NEH have been published. The Encyclopedia of Southern Culture, which covers the history, thought, literature, arts and manners of the southern region of the United States, received great acclaim by the popular press when it appeared in 1989. Five fascicles of the Encyclopedia Iranica, which contains scholarly articles on all aspects of Persian culture from prehistory to the present, were also published in 1989. The published articles have been commended by experts in Middle Eastern studies for summarizing existing knowledge as well as for providing keys to new research in hitherto neglected subjects.

In FY 1989, the program supported two national efforts that address the needs of scholars using computing technology in the humanities: the Text Encoding Initiative, which will develop guidelines for the preparation and exchange of electronic texts, and the National Center for Machine-Readable Texts in the Humanities, which will construct an inventory of electronic texts. These projects promise to make machine-readable texts far more widely accessible than is currently possible.

The Tools category received 107 applications in FY 1989 and made 30 grants. The category has received 90 applications in FY 1990 and expects to make approximately 15 awards. In FY 1991, the number of applications is expected to be about 105 and the number of awards about 15 to 20. The program will continue to support reference works and research tools that are essential to scholars in the humanities and that are also of use and interest to students and general readers. In FY 1991, the category also will try to provide additional support to productive long-term projects to help speed them to completion.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) In FY 1989, the University of Colorado at Boulder received an award of $109,470 in outright funds and an offer of $10,000 in federal matching funds to prepare a dictionary of comparative Siouan, a family of native American languages spoken in the Great Plains region. The project staff will compare information on more than twenty languages, many of them now extinct, in order to reconstruct the oldest form of the Siouan language from which the different tribal languages sprung. The project will provide a major resource for the linguistic, cultural, and historical study of the North American Plains, and particularly, the study of the prehistory of the region. It also serves as a model for the presentation of comparative dictionaries for other language families.

(ii) In FY 1989, the University of Notre Dame received an award of $80,000 in outright funds to complete a new edition of the Princeton Encyclopedia of Poetry and Poetics. The Encyclopedia provides surveys of national poetries worldwide and information on every significant topic in criticism, prosody, rhetoric, and genre. The new edition will contain over 100 new entries--an expanded roster of national poetries and new topics reflecting developments in literary studies over the past twenty years--and will provide revised text for virtually all the old entries. The new edition is expected to be a uniquely useful reference tool on poetic practice and theory that will benefit a wide audience of students, teachers, and scholars of literature in many kinds of educational institutions ranging from secondary to graduate schools.

b. Access ($3,225,000)

In the Access category, grants are made for archival inventories and surveys; foreign microfilming; cataloguing projects involving print, graphic, film, sound, and artifact collections; bibliographies; indices; and other guides to humanities documentation. Support is also available for projects that address national problems in the library and archival fields.

The National Historical Publications and Records Commission (NHPRC) funds projects to establish or improve the records management programs of state and local governments and other nonprofit organizations and institutions. In contrast, Endowment grants are awarded on the basis of the significance of a particular collection of resources for advanced scholarship in the humanities.

Highly favorable reviews have greeted several recently published catalogues funded by the Access category, such as the latest volume of the American Film Institute's film catalogue, which annotates and indexes nearly 5,200 American feature films made during the decade 1911-1920; and the first volume of Medieval and Renaissance Manuscripts in the Walters Art Gallery, which is making available information valuable to researchers in such fields as history, literature, art history, manuscript studies, liturgy, and music.

The archives and manuscript collections of the U.S.S.R. are becoming accessible to American researchers through a project based at the Harvard Ukrainian Institute, which has just published a guide to collections in the Ukraine and Moldavia. Another new publication giving researchers access to a vast body of material is the cumulative index that completes the multi-volume Wellesley Index to Victorian Periodicals, which describes the contents of nineteenth-century British, Scottish, and Irish monthlies and quarterlies.

Among the projects currently funded in the Access category are a number undertaken in response to the President's initiative concerning historically black colleges and universities. For example, with funding from the Access category, Tougaloo College has just begun a project to make the documents of the Mississippi Civil Rights Movement accessible and to prepare a guide to the collection. Another new grant, to Florida Atlantic University, supports preparation of a guide to manuscripts in the Aztec language of Nahuatl that are located in United States repositories.

In FY 1989, the Access category received 142 applications and made 32 awards. In FY 1990, the category received 119 applications and will make approximately 30 awards. In FY 1991, about 130 applications and 30 awards are anticipated. As part of the Endowment's Columbian Quincentenary initiative, this category will continue to encourage proposals to provide American scholars with access to materials in Spanish, Portuguese, and Latin American repositories as well as projects to improve access to Hispanic materials in the United States. Proposals for comprehensive guides to materials in broadly conceived subjects or fields are also welcome. Historically black colleges and universities with institutional collections of primary source materials again will be especially encouraged to apply for support in FY 1991.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) In FY 1989, the New York Public Library received an award of $125,000 and an offer of $25,000 in federal matching funds to make available information on the comprehensive, diverse, and unique holdings of the Schomburg Center for Research in Black Culture. Founded in Harlem in 1926, the Center is the foremost repository for research resources documenting the black experience in Africa, the United States, Latin America and the Caribbean, South America, and Europe. Its holdings of more than 5,000,000 items include manuscript collections, archives, photographs, and audio tapes. The award will enable the Library to create 10,000 bibliographic entries that will allow computerized access to its special collections by subject. The entries will conform to national standards and will be contributed to the Research Libraries Information Network (RLIN), a major national data base. The project represents an exemplary method of providing scholars with efficient, effective access to a vast amount of research material.

(ii) The American Historical Association received an award of $150,000 and an offer of $150,000 in federal matching funds to produce the third edition of the Guide to Historical Literature (1931, 1961). Over five hundred historians from throughout the country will assist in preparing this descriptive bibliography of the best historical works in all geographical, chronological, and topical specializations. Its wide audience will include teachers, students, and librarians as well as researchers in all fields of history. In addition to a two-volume publication with extensive indexes, the project will produce a data base that can be readily updated to compile future editions of the guide. The project constitutes a model of expert planning for nationwide scholarly cooperation.

3. Interpretive Research

a. Collaborative Projects ($2,625,000)

This category fosters coordinated or collaborative humanities research conducted by two or more scholars. Grants support original works of interpretation on topics of broad scope or breadth, often involving varied and complex arrangements of staff and schedules. Awards are made in all disciplines of the humanities and for projects at the intersections of several disciplines. Through this category, the Endowment also provides support for archaeology projects that increase scholarly and popular understanding of world history and culture.

Other agencies funding archaeological research are the National Science Foundation (NSF) and the Smithsonian Institution. NEH-funded projects emphasize the interpretive study of history, art history, religion, and other aspects of human culture. In contrast, NSF-funded studies rely on theoretical or quantitative methods of the social sciences and are meant to develop explanatory models of human behavior and the process of change. On the rare occasion when a large project is eligible for support from both NEH and NSF, the staff of both agencies ensure that no overlap or duplication of funding occurs.

NEH supports projects on prehistoric or historic cultures, whether located in the Old World (Europe, the Mediterranean, the Near East, the Far East) or in the New World (North and South America, Central America). Support for archaeology provided by the Smithsonian Institution, on the other hand, is limited to countries for which the U.S. holds excess foreign currency--the source of PL-480 funding. NEH also requires applicants to use PL-480 funding whenever possible.

Grants made in this category in FY 1989 cover a wide range of humanities disciplines and topics including, for example, a multi-volume architectural history of the United States, a comparative study of slavery in Brazil and the United States, a history of music in New York City in the nineteenth century, a new biography of Abraham Lincoln, a study of missionaries and native peoples in western Alaska since 1845, and a history of Islamic art and architecture from 1250 to 1800. Moreover, archaeological excavations and publications are being supported in such diverse areas as Israel, Egypt, Turkey, Crete, the Dominican Republic, Guatemala, Jordan, Syria, Iraq, Honduras, Mississippi, and Connecticut.

In FY 1989, the category received 190 applications and made 42 awards. In FY 1990, it has received 156 applications and expects to make approximately 35 awards.

During FY 1991, the category will continue to encourage important collaborative research projects in the humanities that make the most effective use of scholarly resources, including applications bearing on the Quincentenary of Christopher Columbus's initial voyage of discovery to the New World in 1492. About 170 applications are expected in the category, and about 35 awards again will be made.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) An award of $71,425 in outright funds was awarded to the University of Connecticut for the preparation of a two-volume history of the European exploration of North America. The project is a collaborative effort involving 24 senior scholars in history and geography. Their individual essays will be organized according to a theme: the role of the imagination in geographical discovery. The essays will show how preconceived images of the New World affected the activities of the explorers and prevented them from understanding that North America was not part of the accepted European system of geography. The volumes will be published by the University of Nebraska Press and will provide a major contribution to the understanding of early American history.

(ii) An award of $30,000 in outright funds and an offer of $130,495 in federal matching funds was made to the University of North Carolina at Greensboro, for the excavation of pre-Classical Minoan and Mycenaean sites on the Greek island of Mochlos and the nearby coast of Crete. The sites promise to provide new information about cultural and social changes in the Bronze Age, particularly the relationship of the earlier Minoan culture (c. 3000-1100 B.C.) to its successor and rival, Mycenae (c. 2000-900 B.C.). In the first season of excavation the team discovered that, contrary to previous theories, Late Minoan culture was not destroyed by earthquakes and volcanic action around 1650 B.C. but flourished for another 150 years. The discovery fundamentally alters scholars' assumptions about the decline of Minoan society in the second millenium B.C. and will generate new discussions and research about the precursors to classical Greek civilization.

b. Humanities, Science and Technology ($875,000)

This category supports research that applies the knowledge, methods, and perspectives of the humanities to the subjects of science, technology, and medicine. Support is not provided for empirical social scientific research, specific policy studies, or technical impact assessments.

Awards in FY 1989 supported the preparation of several volumes in the Guided Studies of Great Texts in Science series, a special emphasis announced in 1987 that supports explanatory guides to accompany scientific writings of historical and philosophical importance. The goal is to make these significant texts more accessible to students and general readers. Topics of funded applications have included Aristotle's writings on biology, Isaac Newton's work on optics, and Einstein's theory of relativity.

In FY 1989, the category received 37 applications and made 12 awards. In FY 1990, 47 applications have been received and about 15 awards are anticipated. In FY 1991, 45 applications and 15 awards are expected.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) An award of $70,973 in outright funds to Lawrence University in Wisconsin is supporting the preparation of a guided study of Isaac Newton's *Principia* (1687), the most important book of the Scientific Revolution and one whose difficulty makes it virtually inaccessible to the general reader. The project will result in a newly translated text of extensive selections from the first edition along with a commentary that provides explanation of diagrams, mathematical concepts, and Newton's application of his laws of motion and universal gravitation. The book will make Newton's *Principia* comprehensible to readers with no background in the history of science and promote the reading of an original text influential in the development of science.

(ii) An award of $70,996 in outright funds to Margaret E. DeLacy, an independent scholar in Portland, Oregon, is supporting the research and writing of a book on the development of a contagionist theory of disease in the eighteenth century. The goal of the project is to explain why certain groups of British physicians were receptive to the idea that most diseases were introduced and spread by contact rather than by unusual environmental conditions. The importance of this work to the history of medicine is in its exploration of theoretical and professional divisions in the eighteenth-century medical profession and of the role played by outsiders to the established community of practitioners in the adoption of new theories of disease.

4. Conferences ($375,000)

In the Conferences program, support is provided for meetings that advance research on topics of major significance in the humanities. Conferences bring together scholars working on related topics in one or several disciplines at a time when the open exchange of ideas will most benefit ongoing research. Conferences funded by the program are generally of two types: highly focused meetings about the current state of research on a particular topic, or more broadly based gatherings of scholars for discussion of the issues and problems confronting entire fields and disciplines.

Conferences typically involve a core of about 20-30 presenters and respondents and a wider audience of interested scholars, students, and members of the general public. Proceedings of the conference usually are published; in all cases the participants benefit from contact with the work of other active scholars.

No other funding sources exist that exclusively fund research conferences in the humanities, although private foundations sometimes consider requests for conference support in addition to other types of projects.

In FY 1989, the program received 113 applications and made 19 grants. In FY 1990, the program expects to receive about 120 applications and to make about 15 awards, and in FY 1991 the category expects to receive about 90 applications and again make about 15 awards. The decrease in expected applications in FY 1991 is due to a change from two deadlines a year to one, which may temporarily affect the number of applications received.

In FY 1991, the Endowment will continue the program's emphasis on more broadly based conferences and increase efforts to alert scholars, educators, and interested general audiences about upcoming meetings.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) In FY 1989, an offer of $15,000 in federal matching funds was made to the Friends of Independence National Historical Park to conduct an international conference on Benjamin Franklin's contributions to eighteenth-century literature and culture. The three-day conference, to be held in April of 1990, will take place at various locations in Philadelphia, including the Historical Society of Pennsylvania and the Franklin Institute, and at the University of Delaware, making the program available to a wide audience of scholars, school teachers, students, and members of the general public. Forty-three scholars from the United States, Austria, France, Great Britain, and West Germany will assemble to discuss such topics as Franklin's literary works, his encouragement of scientific research, the basis of his moral values, his role at the Constitutional Convention, and his contributions to the foundations of American journalism. Publication of the conference proceedings, a radio broadcast of the presentations, and outreach programs in the schools will extend the impact of the conference beyond the several hundred participants expected to attend.

(ii) A 1989 award of $16,712 in outright funds to Dartmouth College will support a conference in May of 1990 on the historical, literary, and theological aspects of the study of Hebrew in colonial America. The four-day conference, will bring together sixteen scholars in the fields of Biblical studies, American history and literature, and the history of American higher education to discuss the importance of Hebrew in the Puritan tradition and in the curricula of colonial American colleges. An audience of approximately one hundred other scholars, teachers, students, and members of the public is expected. The conference organizers will publish excerpts of the conference papers in various journals and prepare the full proceedings for publication as a book designed for both scholars and others interested in the Hebrew language and colonial American education.

5. Centers for Advanced Study ($925,000)

Through this program, the Endowment supports research fellows at independent research libraries and museums, American research centers abroad, and other free-standing centers for advanced research at which significant work in the humanities is being done. The centers conduct their own fellowship competitions and select fellows in accordance with NEH guidelines.

There exists no other program, federal or private, for the systematic support of humanities research at independent centers for advanced study. The Rockefeller Foundation's program of fellowship support for centers, for instance, is limited primarily to college- and university-affiliated centers that concentrate on the study of race, ethnicity, or foreign cultures.

In the course of the past decade, a relatively stable group of centers with unique resources in the humanities and with outstanding fellowship programs have received support from the Centers program in order to increase scholarly access to their resources and to promote more broadly conceived research. NEH support is available only to those centers that have established fellowship programs with their own or other private funding. Since FY 1985, four independent research libraries and a museum have been added to the group of those receiving Endowment support.

In FY 1989, the Endowment received 21 applications and made 18 awards. In FY 1990, the Endowment expects to receive 16 applications and to award 14 grants. In FY 1991, approximately 20 applications are expected and about 16 awards will be made.

Example of Supported Projects

In FY 1989, NEH made an outright award of $94,800 and an offer of $35,000 in federal matching funds for the support of scholars in residence at the Newberry Library in Chicago. Evaluators were impressed with the Library's book and manuscript collections in European and American history and literature, the productivity of the Library's fellows, the support facilities and services that the Library makes available, and the opportunities it offers fellows to learn from one another.

6. International Research ($2,125,000)

In the International Research program, the Endowment makes awards to national organizations and learned societies that then subgrant the funds to American scholars through competitive selection procedures. The subgrantees subsequently conduct research in selected areas abroad, participate in international conferences, and engage in collaborative work with foreign colleagues. Awards in this category are available to organizations that have the demonstrated capacity to plan and conduct competitive programs of research on a national level.

Current grants support the following activities: the International Travel Grant Program for American Scholars administered by the American Council of Learned Societies (ACLS); the International Research Awards Program of the Social Science Research Council (SSRC), which sponsors research on Africa, China, the Near and Middle East, Asia, Latin America, and Eastern Europe by American scholars in the humanities; the International Research and Exchanges Board (IREX), which administers scholarly exchanges and collaborative research projects with the Soviet Union and the countries of Eastern Europe; and programs of the Committee on Scholarly Communication with the People's Republic of China (CSCPRC), whose activities are analogous to those of IREX.

Support for the International Travel Grant Program of ACLS will cease after FY 1990. Beginning in FY 1991, ACLS will support this activity with funds from its own endowment raised in part with the help of an NEH Challenge Grant.

There are other federal and private foundation programs that provide scholarly support for international collaborative research and scholarly exchange (for example, Fulbright awards and USIA awards under Title VIII of the Soviet-East European Research and Training Act of 1983), but the Endowment's support focuses exclusively on the humanities.

Through this category in FY 1990 and 1991, NEH will continue to provide American scholars with opportunities to pursue research on foreign cultures overseas and in the United States. Between FY 1989 and FY 1991, the international organizations collectively will receive between 1,600 and 1,850 applications per year for research fellowships. Each year approximately 270 awards will be made.

Example of Supported Projects

In FY 1990, an outright award of $1,200,000 and a matching offer of $1,275,000 were made to the International Research and Exchanges Board (IREX) to support individual and collaborative research exchanges and binational commissions involving American and Soviet or East European scholars during a three-year period. Under the auspices of IREX, individual American scholars have recently studied such topics as the political economy of trade between Germany and Eastern Europe from 1890-1980, Medieval and Renaissance music of East Central Europe, and the relationship between the church and society in Imperial Russia from 1750 to 1914. Other recent results of NEH support of IREX have been an international conference at Washington University in St. Louis on the Czech composer Ernst Janacek and another in Poland on the Dead Sea Scrolls.

7. Selected Areas ($50,000)

In this category, the Endowment has supported three programs administered by the American Council of Learned Societies: ACLS Fellowships, which provide opportunities for fellows to engage in research for periods ranging from six to twelve months; Grants-in-Aid, which provide amounts up to $3,000 to advance specific research projects in progress by defraying essential research expenses; and Research Fellowships for Recent Recipients of the Ph.D. Approximately seventy-five percent of the NEH support for these programs is in the form of federal monies matched by gifts from private foundations, including the Ford and Mellon Foundations and the Carnegie Corporation. The three programs provide valuable and diverse opportunities for scholars while encouraging substantial private financial support for work in the humanities.

With the help of an NEH Challenge grant, since 1986 ACLS has been conducting a fund-raising campaign to build an endowment for these programs. After FY 1990, the two ACLS

Fellowships programs, like the ACLS Travel Grant program, will become self-sufficient and conclude their reliance on NEH support; the Endowment will continue to help support the Grants-in-Aid program in FY 1991 for one additional and final year.

Example of Supported Projects

In FY 1989, NEH support for the ACLS Grants-in-Aid program helped to support about 50 awards at an average of $2,800. Projects supported include a study of ideas of healing in late antiquity and the early medieval West, and a critical edition of the Latin works of the Arabic philosopher Alhazen. NEH funding totaled $50,000 in outright funds and $100,000 in federal matching funds.

STATE PROGRAMS
(Definite funds in thousands)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
State Programs	$25,000	$25,637	$26,000

STATE PROGRAMS
($26,000,000)

State humanities councils are private, volunteer organizations now operating in all fifty states, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and the U.S. Virgin Islands. The first six humanities councils were established in 1971 in response to an amendment to the National Foundation on the Arts and Humanities Act that mandated federal support for humanities programs "in each of the several states." Their primary purpose, and a basic aim of the Endowment itself, is to foster public understanding and appreciation of the humanities. Grants from the Division of State Programs are made annually to the state councils, which then support on a competitive basis locally initiated humanities programs for the people of each state. In addition, state councils develop and conduct their own specific humanities projects as part of their efforts to make fine humanities programs available in all regions of their states. Within the bounds established by statute, each council determines its own program objectives and emphases and designs and conducts its own grant competition. Because state councils may support no more than half the cost of projects, every federal dollar provided by state councils is matched by local contributions of cash, or goods, or services.

Endowment support for the state humanities councils is based on the premise that a democratic society demands an informed populace. By providing opportunities to the people of their states for reflection, reasoned inquiry, and serious discussion with scholars knowledgeable in the humanities, the state councils can contribute to our ability as citizens to apply critical intelligence to the decisions that shape our civic life.

Thomas Jefferson believed that learning is properly the occupation of a lifetime, an occupation that begins with formal education but should not end there. In keeping with this Jeffersonian idea, the Endowment, through its support for the state councils, seeks to make focused and coherent humanities education possible in places and by methods that are appropriate for the general public. State councils support humanities programs in a wide variety of settings: museums, libraries, and college campuses; court houses and state capitols; community centers; Indian reservations; traveling Chautauqua tents; and school auditoriums and church and grange halls. As the Chairman noted in Humanities In America, public programs in the humanities such as these are now so extensive that they constitute a kind of parallel school that has grown up outside established institutions of education.

Although state council projects focus on diverse topics, themes, and disciplines, they typically have the following elements in common:

1. The content of the project is centered in one or more of the humanities disciplines cited in the Endowment's authorizing legislation.

2. Each project is focused on a topic, idea, or text that is analyzed and discussed using the methodology of the humanities.

3. The methods of the humanities--critical thinking and interpretation--are evident throughout the program. Scholars are actively involved in the project, drawing upon their analytical, interpretive, and pedagogical skills.

4. Scholars and the general public are involved in disciplined dialogue of benefit to both.

Each state program is governed by a volunteer council composed of twenty or more citizens--both scholars in the humanities and persons drawn from non-academic segments of the state's population, such as the professions, business, and civic organizations. More than 1,100 individuals serve as volunteer members of the state humanities councils each year.

Each council submits biennially to the Endowment a proposal that analyzes its role within its state, assesses its program for the past two years, and describes its goals and plans for the ensuing two-year period. This application is evaluated by outside reviewers, panelists, and NEH staff and is the basis for recommendations of the National Council on the Humanities to the Chairman regarding further support. When a council is awarded a grant, it uses the funds that it has received from the Endowment to award, through a competitive review process, grants to organizations and groups within its state and, in some cases, to conduct Endowment-approved projects on its own initiative. In addition to its biennial proposal, each council also submits a plan for approval by the NEH Chairman that details its efforts to comply with the public accountability provisions of the Endowment's enabling legislation.

At any time, state governments have the option either of matching a portion of the federal grant and designating the council a state agency, or of appointing up to six members to the existing council. To date, all state governments have chosen the latter option and have appointed members to their state's council. Although only one council may be supported by NEH in any state, the opportunity to constitute a state council and to petition the Endowment for recognition is available to any group of citizens in any state.

In recent years, the Endowment has encouraged the state councils to adopt a more active role within the states. As a result, state councils, while they remain receptive to the local initiatives of community-based groups, organizations, and cultural institutions, are now planning and soliciting applications for specific humanities projects. This active leadership helps ensure that high quality programs reach audiences in communities of every size and description throughout each state.

The Endowment has encouraged these developments by instituting a special grant competition to support outstanding project ideas that have been developed by the state councils and that may serve as models for humanities programming. In addition, NEH convenes meetings of the chairs of the state councils to assist them in providing effective leadership for their councils; and at regular intervals the Endowment holds orientation conferences for new state council members to ensure that they are aware of their new responsibilities. These meetings and conferences enable the Endowment to bring programmatic and policy issues to the attention of the state council members and provide opportunities to discuss examples of excellent projects and programs.

The state councils may apply to NEH for small planning grants to enable them to conduct research and make necessary preparations in advance of undertaking a major statewide or regional project. With support from one such grant in 1989, the Wisconsin Humanities Committee has held three meetings of a nine-member advisory group of scholars, writers, and experts on Indian education that is planning a reading and discussion series for the general public on Native American history and culture. The Mississippi Humanities Council received a grant to plan "Mississippi Mindscape: 1492-1992 and Beyond," a project that will result in the production of a series of essays about Mississippi during the pre-Columbian era and the Spanish colonial period and about the Choctaw, the only remaining Native American tribal group resident in present-day Mississippi.

The state councils have been instrumental in the current blossoming of public interest in library reading and discussion programs. Again in 1989, hundreds of scholar-led reading and discussion programs took place all across the country in small and large public libraries, senior centers, and rural and urban community settings. Typically, from twenty to forty members of the general public participate in reading series of six to eight weeks duration. In conjunction with the centennial of their state, the South Dakota Committee on the Humanities developed a series of programs designed to help South Dakotans read and discuss texts that could give them a better understanding of the state, its people, and their cultural heritage. Scholars led discussions in 30 communities on Edith Kohl's Land of the Burnt Thigh, Willa Cather's Five Stories, and Charles Eastman's Soul of the Indian.

Many state councils have developed very successful reading programs for special audiences. For example, the Vermont Council on the Humanities received an NEH Exemplary award to support a reading and discussion series for recently literate adults that is being offered at ten libraries thoughout the state. The "Family Reading Project" uses children's literature to engage new adult readers in a consideration of the major themes of friendship, United States history, courage, and the home and to encourage them to read these works to their children. And, the New Jersey Committee for the Humanities developed a reading and discussion series for corporate and small business employees that is being offered in the workplace during the lunch hour.

Recognizing that learning requires sustained effort, the state councils are encouraging programs that engage and hold the public's interest by offering humanities activities that build upon and complement one another. For example, an NEH Exemplary award to the Alabama Humanities Foundation provided support to develop a major traveling exhibition entitled "In View of Home: Twentieth Century Visions of the Alabama Landscape." The exhibition and the accompanying symposium challenged the citizens of the state to examine the changes and continuities surrounding them. Reading and discussion programs held in libraries in eight Alabama cities examined the role of the land in shaping southern values and its influence on the imagination of such southern writers as Faulkner, Toomer, Agee, and Percy.

The North Dakota Humanities Council developed programs to complement the North Dakota state centennial celebration in 1989. An exhibit reviewed major world events in the year that North Dakota entered the Union, and a reading and discussion series held in the communities of Grand Forks, Fargo, New Rockford, Minot, Bismarck, Williston, and Dickinson was devoted to such literary products of 1889 as Twain's Connecticut Yankee in King Author's Court, Bellamy's Looking Backward, and Tolstoy's The Kreutzer Sonata and other short works.

During 1989, the state councils have helped build bridges linking institutions of higher learning, secondary schools, cultural institutions, and state departments of education. For example, while continuing to support teacher seminars and institutes that strengthen the teaching of the humanities in the schools, the state councils are also encouraging wide public discussion of the place of the humanities in pre-collegiate education. Recently, many of these council-supported programs about education have focused on the findings of the Chairman's report on the humanities in the nation's public schools, American Memory. The Hawaii Committee for the Humanities supported a series of humanities presentations at teachers' institutes held in 1989 on Oahu and each neighbor island by the Hawaii State Teachers' Association. Approximately one thousand teachers attended the presentation on "History in the Schools" by Charlotte Crabtree, director of the NEH-supported History Center, and the presentation by Michael Kammen, historian from Cornell University and recipient of the Pulitzer and Francis Parkman Prizes, on "The Role of Memory and Tradition in American Culture." Over the past two years, the Connecticut Humanities Council has undertaken an initiative to encourage strong collaborative relationships among schools, museums, universities, and the state department of education. This effort has included support for summer institutes for teachers, symposia and colloquia during the academic year, and statewide conferences for teachers, school administrators, representatives of the state department of education, and museum and historical society staff.

In order to reach rural schools and, especially, students who are potentially first-generation college students, the South Carolina Humanities Council has funded five Scholar-in-Residence in the Schools (SIRS) projects. Each supports a workshop for high school teachers and scholars from a local college or university and a three-week residency by one or more scholars in several local schools. The council has found that these programs provide benefits for students, teachers, parents, and scholars alike in rural counties, with perhaps the most lasting benefit being the fostering of continuing intellectual communication among isolated high school teachers.

A number of state councils are giving special emphasis to the Columbian Quincentenary and the Age of Exploration. As part of its effort to encourage stimulating programs on both sides of the border in observance of the Columbian Quincentenary in 1992, the Texas Committee for the Humanities worked closely with the Universidad Nacional Autonoma de Mexico in San Antonio to create programs that interpret Mexican culture through its literature, art, and music and that examine the significance of the encounter between the cultures of the New World and the Old.

The state councils throughout 1989 supported a wide array of projects on the history, people, and literature of their states. The Maine Humanities Council supported the preparation for the general public, students, and teachers of *Maine Speaks: An Anthology of Maine Literature*. *The Last Best Place*, an anthology of writing about Montana funded by the Montana Humanities Council, is now in its second printing and has been used extensively in Montana reading and discussion programs.

The state councils have supported many excellent films designed for public audiences and for use in the schools. Recent examples include Oklahoma's *Indians, Outlaws, and Angie Debo*, part of the PBS "American Experience" series; the District of Columbia's *Home: The Langston Terrace Dwellings*, *Black Georgetown Remembered*, and *Sherrill's Bakery*, which document social and economic changes in the city's neighborhoods; Ohio's *The Amish: Not to Be Modern*, a sixty-minute documentary that has aired nationally; *Little Towns Like These*, a documentary about the fabric of life in small towns in the Great Plains, produced by Nebraska ETV with funding from the Iowa, Kansas, Minnesota, Nebraska, and North Dakota councils; and Georgia's *Gullah Tides*, which examines the folktales, traditions, and language of these Sea Island people. In 1985, the film, *The Stone Carvers*, supported in part by the District of Columbia Community Humanities Council, received an Academy Award in the short documentary category. Frequently the state councils provide initial funding for large-scale film projects, such as the series on Modern American poetry, *Voices and Visions*, the highly acclaimed *Huey Long*, and *Dawn's Early Light: Ralph McGill and the Segregated South*. The recently aired film, *The Supreme Court's Holy Battles*, was supported by NEH and grew out of a program on the Virginia Statute of Religious Freedom developed by the Virginia Foundation on the Humanities and Public Policy.

In fiscal year 1989, the state humanities councils supported some 5,454 projects. The grant activities in 1989 have been co-sponsored by more than 1,100 colleges and universities, 1,000 libraries and museums, and a wide range of state government agencies, community organizations, and other cultural institutions. In fiscal years 1990 and 1991, it is anticipated that approximately 5,500 grants will be supported by the state councils.

During 1991, as the Endowment emphasizes humanities programs that promote better understanding of our nation's history and culture, the state councils will be encouraged to support programs that help Americans fulfill their proper role as informed, thinking citizens in a democratic society. In recent years, the state councils have mediated a fruitful exchange between scholars and the broad public, demonstrating that the humanities can be a force in the daily lives of Americans everywhere, not just those who happen to live in urban settings. In addition, through the thousands of projects they support, the councils have encouraged fuller educational use of museums, libraries, and other cultural institutions. The state councils have also played an increasingly active role in addressing major issues in education in their states, sponsoring seminars and institutes for teachers and schools administrators, programs in the schools, and conferences and statewide task forces on education themes.

In FY 1991, the Endowment will increase the number of State and Regional Exemplary Awards--special grants to the state councils for model and pilot programs of exceptional merit that enable the states to share resources and improve programming effectiveness--and it will provide special planning awards to help each council develop long-range strategies for programming and fund-raising.

To enable individual councils to benefit from the collective experience of all the state councils, the Endowment will continue in 1991 to publicize, in the division's newsletter and in the newsletters and journals of professional organizations, information on exemplary projects funded in the states. Further, the Endowment will conduct orientation conferences for new state council members and hold regular meetings for the state council chairs. Finally, by focusing attention on humanities programming for the public, the Endowment will seek to strengthen the links between academic and general audiences and contribute to increased public awareness of our nation's historical and cultural heritage.

OFFICE OF PRESERVATION
(Definite funds in thousands)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Office of Preservation	$12,330	$17,453	$19,000

OFFICE OF PRESERVATION
($19,000,000)

The Office of Preservation provides leadership and support to institutions and organizations attempting to address the problems posed by the deterioration of research materials in America's libraries, archives, museums, and other repositories. At risk are resources that constitute a significant part of the nation's cultural legacy and that are crucial for current and future scholarship in the humanities.

Recent estimates suggest that 80 million volumes comprising 25 to 30 percent of the holdings in the country's research libraries are disintegrating, primarily because of the acidic content of their paper. Other materials such as photographs, films, and sound recordings are similarly threatened by factors inherent to their physical structure or by the way they are stored or handled.

FY 1991 is the third year of a multi-year plan to provide gradual increases in the budget for the Office of Preservation. The centerpiece of the plan is enhanced support for projects to microfilm brittle books. The remainder of each year's budget is divided among other activities that undergird increased microfilming (such as education and training of preservation administrators and research and development projects to improve preservation methods and technology); projects that preserve the intellectual content of other threatened humanities resources (such as the U.S. Newspaper Program and the preservation of special collections of unique documents and other materials at humanities institutions); and efforts to develop regional preservation and consultation services and state-wide preservation plans. The Endowment's preservation plan has functioned smoothly since it was implemented and has helped to quicken the pace of the preservation effort throughout the nation.

Since its inception in FY 1986, the Office of Preservation has provided support to salvage the knowledge contained in endangered materials important to a variety of fields in the humanities. As a direct consequence of the increased funding provided in FY 1989, major projects have been launched in seventeen research libraries that when completed will preserve over 167,000 brittle books and serials. Moreover, bibliographic procedures are now in place to ensure that scholars across the country have access to these resources and to guard against costly duplicative preservation efforts.

The Endowment's program for the preservation of United States newspapers makes awards to organizations and institutions in individual states to locate, catalogue, and microfilm their newspaper holdings. A centralized bibliographic record of all newspaper titles published since 1690 eventually will be created, and copies will be made of those newspapers that are the most historically important and significant. Thus far, 38 states plus Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands have been engaged in at least one of the three phases of the program: planning, cataloguing, and microfilming. The state projects continue to unearth scores of little known or forgotten newspaper titles. To date, seven national repositories (with newspaper titles from all over the country), six states, and the Virgin Islands have completed their individual projects. When all currently-funded newspaper projects are completed, over 160,000 records of newspaper titles will be available in a national data base accessible through more than 10,000 terminals in the United States and 31 million newspaper pages will have been microfilmed that otherwise would have been lost to future generations. In FY 1989, a total of $2.2 million was awarded for eleven implementation projects and one planning grant.

The Endowment also is active in the preservation of archival materials significant to scholarship in the humanities. In FY 1989, for example, grants were made to microfilm the Hoover Institution's collection of Soviet government documents and the University of North Carolina's Southern Historical Collection. Awards to the Field Museum of Natural History in Chicago and the University of Rochester's Eastman School of Music made possible the preservation of the former's extensive photographic collection and the latter's recorded sound archive of early twentieth-century American music.

The education of preservation professionals remains a high priority for the Endowment. A grant in FY 1989 of $25,553 to the State University of New York at Buffalo, for example, provided its Art Conservation Department with the opportunity to create a national model for graduate-level preservation training for archivists. The only comprehensive program in the United States that offers graduate instruction to both conservators and preservation administrators is currently being supported by the Endowment at Columbia University's School of Library Service with a three-year matching award of $450,000. At the conclusion of this grant, twenty more librarians will have obtained the training necessary to deal with the complex issues involved in the preservation of large research collections. In FY 1989, the Northeast Document Conservation Center in Andover, Massachusetts received an award of $400,000 in outright and matching funds to continue its regional field service program, which offers preservation surveys as well as workshops and seminars, disaster assistance, and technical and managerial consultations to institutions in New England, New York, and New Jersey. NEH has also supported the training of existing staff of humanities institutions through grants for preservation field services at other regional and national organizations such as the Southeastern Library Network in Atlanta, the Conservation Center for Art and Historic Artifacts in Philadelphia, the Society of American Archivists in Chicago, and the American Association of State and Local History in Nashville. The individual surveys and workshops offered by these organizations on various aspects of preservation practice reach many of the people who must make essential policy decisions affecting the treatment and storage of materials entrusted to their care.

Another important component of NEH's preservation program involves support for research that will establish national standards for the field of preservation. In FY 1989, grants totalling $575,333 in outright and matching funds were made to the Image Permanence Institute at the Rochester Institute of Technology for two projects that will establish new procedures to enhance the longevity of silver image photographic film and determine the most effective means of preventing air pollutant damage to preservation microforms. The Association for Recorded Sound Collections has also received NEH support to complete and publish an extensive study of the appropriate standards and procedures for preserving recorded sound materials.

In FY 1989, the Endowment funded a national conference in Washington, D.C. on the development of statewide preservation programs. Approximately 150 state archivists, state librarians, heads of state historical agencies, and directors of university and public libraries representing forty-seven states, three territories, and the District of Columbia attended the two-day meeting at the Library of Congress to discuss the challenges, programmatic options, and benefits of state preservation planning. At this conference, staff of the Office of Preservation emphasized to participants that the Endowment encourages applications from individual states for projects that would lead to the creation of coordinated plans for the preservation of their humanities resources. The Endowment hopes that such grants will ultimately facilitate the completion of an integrated preservation plan for every state and territory.

In view of the staggering amount of endangered materials and the enormous costs of preserving them, the Endowment is also working to increase public awareness of this crisis and thereby to help generate nonfederal support for preservation activities. With a matching grant from the Endowment, a gift from the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, and additional contributions from the Exxon Educational Foundation, the Council on Library Resources produced a documentary film on preservation, Slow Fires: On the Preservation of the Human Record. Narrated by Robert MacNeil, the film traces the causes and impact of the ever-widening destruction of our intellectual heritage. During 1988 and 1989, millions of Americans viewed the film on public television stations and at special presentations around the country. It will be broadcast nationally on PBS for the third time in January 1990. In addition, over 1,000 copies of Slow Fires on film or cassette have been purchased by universities, schools, libraries, archives, historical societies, book manufacturers, and paper companies. NEH expects this film will lead to a growing understanding within our society that only a concerted effort by many groups and institutions will ensure the survival of the vast portion of our intellectual and cultural heritage now in jeopardy.

Federal matching funds are used as the form of project support whenever possible to stimulate third-party funding for preservation activities. This policy is proving to be quite successful in the preservation program: By the time they are completed, the projects now supported by NEH will have generated over $4.1 million in gifts from private donors and foundations.

Two other federal programs supply support for preservation. The Department of Education (under Title II-C of the Higher Education Act) includes preservation among the activities supported in some of its grants to major research libraries, and the National Historical Publications and Records Commission makes grants for the preservation of local and state records. Neither of these programs, however, focuses on the preservation of materials important to humanities research.

In recognition of the singular importance of the country's material culture collections and the magnitude of the preservation problems facing institutions responsible for them, Congress approved additional funding of $4.2 million within the Office of Preservation in FY 1990 for the first year of a special twenty-year National Heritage Preservation program. Many of these collections were formed during a period when there was a more limited understanding of how best to maintain and conserve objects of material culture. Consequently, they are now, for the most part, inadequately housed and frequently inaccessible to scholars, curators, and the general public. The Endowment's grants in this area will focus on what has been identified as the highest priority of need: helping institutions stabilize material culture collections through support for projects to improve their storage and housing. Funds will also be available to establish several national training programs for conservators of these collections. Because this is a new grantmaking activity for NEH, it is difficult at this time to estimate with precision how many applications will be received and awards made.

The numbers of applications and grants in the Office of Preservation are expected to increase as the multi-year preservation plan continues. In FY 1989, 69 applications for preservation and USNP grants were submitted and 41 awards were made. In FY 1990, we expect to support about 45 projects including an estimated 8-10 material culture grants. Approximately 50 projects would receive funding in FY 1991.

Examples of Supported Projects

(i) In FY 1989, Harvard University received a grant of $1,848,360 to support the preservation through microfilming of 27,554 brittle volumes important for research in the humanities. The materials will be drawn from the Baker Library's American business and economic history collection, the Widener Library's 19th-century Italian history collection, and the Law School Library's pre-Soviet Russian law collection. Each of these collections is among the finest in the country, and their preservation marks a significant contribution to the national preservation effort. In carrying out the project, Harvard will establish a new centralized Preservation Office to coordinate activities for this and future preservation activities at all Harvard libraries.

(ii) In FY 1989, the University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill received a grant of $153,098 in outright funds and an offer of $25,000 in matching funds to preserve the unique manuscripts contained in the Southern Historical Collection. The Southern Historical Collection, established in 1930, is a central resource of primary research materials for the study of the South and of many aspects of national history, such as the textile and railroad industries, religion, and higher education. In the course of this project, over 3,300 separate manuscript collections will be preserved through proper archival storage and the microfilming of approximately 100 cubic feet of the most significant material, and improved descriptions of the preserved collections will be prepared for the benefit of researchers. A long-range preservation plan for the entire Southern Historical Collection will also be developed.

(iii) In FY 1989, the Illinois State Historical Society was awarded $443,812 for the cataloging of the state's newspapers. As part of the U. S. Newspaper Program, catalogers at the Illinois State Historical Library and the Chicago Historical Society will enter descriptions of 5,800 newspaper titles into the national newspaper database. The project builds on an NEH-supported planning and survey project, which resulted in a multi-stage strategic plan for the cataloging and preservation of Illinois' newspapers. This initial implementation stage will result in the cataloging of most of the holdings of the two largest collections in the state.

CHALLENGE FUNDS
(Indefinite funds in thousands)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Challenge funds	$16,700	$14,495	$15,150

CHALLENGE GRANTS
($15,150,000)

The Challenge Grants program uses federal funds to stimulate nonfederal support for the humanities and to help humanities institutions and organizations improve their financial stability and the quality of their programming. Financial support for the humanities is provided--as it should be--primarily by individual contributors, private philanthropy, local and state governments, and users. The Challenge Grants program strengthens this support by encouraging long-range institutional planning and by providing incentive for recipients to develop long-term sources of income.

Challenge grants improve the quality of teaching, learning, and research in the humanities by assisting institutions in developing or expanding their permanent capital base and by encouraging them to cultivate the broadest possible range of public and private interest and financial support. Because grantees are required to raise either three or four dollars for every dollar the Endowment provides, cultural organizations and institutions must make their case for support to a diverse contributing public.

The Challenge Grants program is an important element in the Endowment-wide objective to encourage, whenever possible, new or additional contributions to the humanities. Part of the program's continuing success is attributable to the respect that exists within the philanthropic community for the quality of the Endowment's review process. The national recognition for meritorious work in the humanities afforded by an NEH challenge grant assists recipient institutions in attracting these nonfederal funding sources. Furthermore, donors and contributors are much more receptive to funding appeals when they know that their contributions will be matched. The program was instituted in 1977, and by June of 1989 had generated an investment of over one billion dollars in the humanities nationwide.

The application process itself entails long-range planning and the development of fund-raising resources. Applicants must demonstrate in their proposals that challenge funds will help them sustain or achieve a high level of quality in programs and activities within the humanities. In addition, they must make the case for financial and program needs in light of their experience, objectives, and priorities; and in so doing they must develop effective long-range planning for programs, finances, and management. Finally, applicants must present feasible and promising plans for raising nonfederal matching funds.

Challenge grant recipients may use both federal and nonfederal funds to establish or increase working endowments; undertake renovations, construction, and other capital improvements; acquire materials, collections, and equipment; maintain, preserve, and catalogue collections; improve their management and administration; and provide for personnel development.

Since the creation of the program, the Endowment has offered awards to 979 applicants: 429 colleges and universities, 303 museums and historical societies, 77 research libraries and advanced study centers, 55 public libraries, 16 university presses, 44 public media stations and organizations, and 55 national and local cultural and professional organizations.

Challenge grants have proved to be highly successful catalysts for stimulating giving to humanities institutions. Almost 96 percent of the NEH challenge grantees since 1977 have succeeded in meeting their matching requirements; most of the rest have raised nearly the full amount.

The Endowment encourages applicants to design fund-raising plans that have long-term benefits. Challenge grant recipients report that substantially increased income, continued giving, and broadening of their donor constituencies extend well beyond the close of the federal grant. For example, the Center for the Study of Southern Culture at the University of Mississippi received a $300,000 Challenge Grant in 1980. By 1984 the required $900,000 match was not only met--but surpassed, with gifts totaling $955,608 contributed in support of the project. Contributions, made by 403 individuals and 29 organizations, came from 31 states, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and Japan. These gifts included numerous donations ranging from $5 to $2,000 and two major grants--$20,000 from the Skaggs Foundation of Oakland, California, and $25,000 from the Hardin Foundation of Meridian, Mississippi. Cash gifts and NEH payments were deposited in an endowment established for the project. By April, 1988, this endowment had produced income totalling $219,606. These funds have been used for initial development of a blues music archive, cataloguing a folklore collection, and filling in gaps in the Center's southern studies collections.

Institutions are limited to two awards in this program. The recipient of a first Challenge Grant must raise from nonfederal sources three times the amount of federal funds offered. Recipients of second-time awards are required to raise four times the amount offered. In both instances, the nonfederal funds must be designated as responses to an NEH Challenge Grant.

To provide greater recognition for outstanding college teachers of the humanities, the program in FY 1990 is sponsoring a special competition for colleges and universities to establish endowments for Distinguished Teaching Professorships. These awards will be for a maximum amount of $300,000 in federal funds and will require a 3:1 match. Colleges and universities wishing to emphasize the importance of undergraduate teaching, particularly in general education and introductory courses, will compete for these awards in FY 1990, but the first obligations of funds for this special competition will be in FY 1991. The $500,000 increase proposed for Challenge for FY 1991 will help the program support the grants made under this initiative.

Also in FY 1991, the program will continue its efforts to encourage historically black colleges and universities (HBCU's) to apply for Challenge Grants. As in FY 1990, program guidelines will call special attention to our interest in strengthening the humanities at HBCU's and the willingness of staff to work closely with prospective applicants to develop successful Challenge grant proposals.

The only other federal agency offering awards similar to those provided by the NEH Challenge Grants program is the National Endowment for the Arts. Some institutions--particularly colleges, universities, and museums--have programs in both the arts and the humanities. To prevent an overlap of federal funding, to ensure distinctions between grant purposes, and to prevent the dilution of development efforts at recipient institutions, the two agencies have adopted a policy that precludes any institution or organization from simultaneously receiving challenge funding from both agencies. This restriction may be waived where the institution has a Challenge III award from the Arts Endowment for purposes distinct from those areas eligible for support through an NEH challenge grant. (Unlike the NEH program, the NEA Challenge III program offers support for short-term "project-style" activities.)

The NEH Challenge Grants program received 139 applications in FY 1989 and made 35 awards; it received 166 applications and made 41 awards in FY 1990. The program's first priority for FY 1991 is to honor commitments made in prior years; the second priority is to award new grants to all applicants of exemplary merit who have not previously received an NEH Challenge Grant; and the third and final priority is to make awards to a few of the very best applicants for second grants. In FY 1991, 250 applications are anticipated and approximately 60 awards will be made. The increase in applications and grants reflects the Distinguished Teaching Professorships initiative.

Examples of Supported Projects

(1) In FY 1989, the Middle Oregon Indian Historical Society in Warm Springs, Oregon, received a Challenge Grant of $500,000, which must be matched by $1,500,000 in nonfederal gifts. The purpose of the grant is to contribute to the costs of constructing a museum to house collections that reflect and illustrate the culture of the Confederated Tribes of Warm Springs and to support humanities education programming for tribal members and the general public.

(ii) A Challenge Grant of $750,000 was awarded to Ohio University in Athens, Ohio in FY 1989. This award will require the donation of $3 million in nonfederal gifts for a total budget of $3.75 million. These funds will be used to develop library collections in the humanities through direct expenditures for materials and through an endowment to support future acquisitions, cataloguing, and preservation.

(iii) The Baltimore Museum of Industry in Maryland received a Challenge Grant of $525,000 in FY 1989. The federal and matching gift funds will help to create an endowment for three professional positions at the museum and will support the costs of restoring and expanding the museum building.

TREASURY FUNDS
(Indefinite funds in thousands)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Treasury funds	$12,000	$11,832	$12,000

TREASURY FUNDS
($12,000,000)

The Endowment uses Treasury funds to match contributions given in support of humanities projects by nonfederal sources. Treasury funds and Challenge Grants are the principal means employed by the Endowment to increase the role of businesses, foundations, and individuals in support of the humanities. Encouraging such third-party support is a major policy objective of both the Endowment and the Administration.

Since the agency was established in 1966 through fiscal year 1989, Endowment matching grants have stimulated almost $227 million in third-party donations for the humanities. (An additional $801 million has been generated by Challenge Grants.) Through the matching mechanism, the Endowment has played an important role in the greater than three-fold, constant-dollar growth in total private support for the arts and the humanities in the United States since 1970.

The Endowment makes matching offers to specific projects in most divisions of the agency. The offer may represent the entire Endowment award to the grantee or, as is more often the case, may be part of a "combination" grant--partly an outright award, partly a matching grant. The outright portion often helps get the project underway until gifts can be raised in response to the matching offer.

Although Treasury funds are not awarded for basic institutional support, offers of Treasury funds generally have the effect of improving the long-term health of humanities institutions by helping to establish relationships between donors and grantees. (In this connection, it is important to note that most grantees also contribute their own resources, in the form of cost-sharing, toward NEH-supported projects.)

In FY 1989, Treasury funds of $12.0 million helped stimulate $16.6 million in nonfederal support. The state humanities councils alone were able to raise gifts that released a total of $4.0 million in Treasury matching funds. Examples of other matching grants drawing Treasury funds in FY 1989 include the following:

-- Queens College of the City University of New York received $160,000 in Treasury funds to support a three-year program of seminars that will train faculty members to teach a four-course sequence in world history and culture.

-- The Museum of Fine Arts in Boston raised gifts to match an NEH offer of $200,000 in Treasury funds. The award supported a traveling exhibition, catalogue, and educational programs that examined the Spanish artist Goya and his works within the intellectual, social, and political milieu of the Enlightenment.

-- The University of California, Berkeley received $131,000 in Treasury funds to support preparation of a comprehensive scholarly edition of the works of Mark Twain.

-- The University of New Mexico received $50,000 in Treasury funds to support work on the edition and translation of the journals of Diego de Vargas, a Spanish governor of the American Southwest at the turn of the 17th century.

-- The Brooklyn Academy of Music was awarded $250,000 in Treasury funds to support a six-hour dramatic film for television based on the Indian Sanscrit epic, The Mahabharata.

-- The University of California, Irvine was awarded $118,250 in Treasury funds to help underwrite the expansion of the Thesaurus Linguae Graecae data bank to cover the addition of the Greek and early Byzantine texts.

-- The University of Alaska, Fairbanks raised gifts to match $22,600 in NEH Treasury funds. The award will support an interdisciplinary study of changes in settlement pattern, population size, and social structure on Unalaska Island of the eastern Aleutians prior to contact by Russian explorers and in the early contact period.

-- The Social Science Research Council received $541,700 in Treasury funds to support research in the humanities through the International Postdoctoral Grants Program, which it administers jointly with the American Council of Learned Societies.

-- The State Historical Society of Iowa received $100,000 to support cataloguing and microfilming of newspapers in Iowa as part of the U.S. Newspaper Program.

ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS
(Definite funds in thousands)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Administrative funds	$16,020	$16,339	$17,950

0399, 13

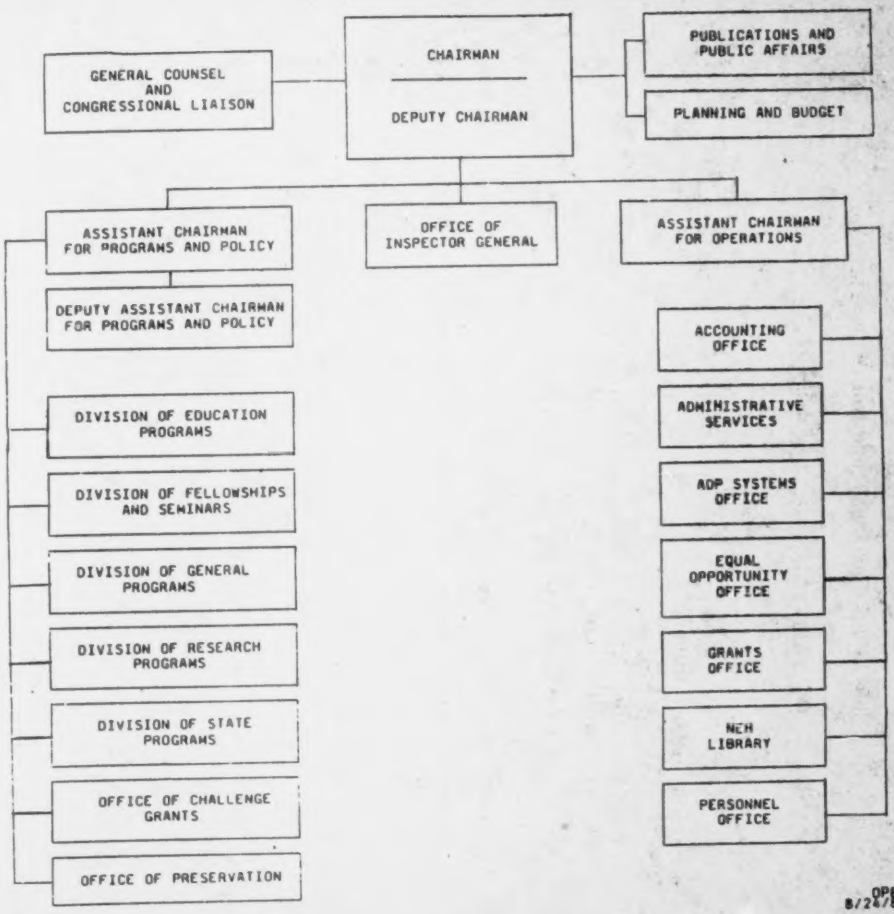
NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS 1/
($000)

	Object Classification	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate2/	FY 1991 Request
11.1	Full-Time Permanent Positions...........	$ 8,281	$ 8,523	$ 9,254
11.3	Other than Full-Time Permanent..........	462	476	517
11.5	Other Personnel Compensation............	161	166	180
11.9	Total Personnel Compensation.......	8,904	9,165	9,951
12.0	Personnel Benefits......................	1,666	1,878	2,187
13.0	Benefits for Former Personnel	34	35	35
	Total Personnel Comp. and Benefits	10,604	11,078	12,173
21.0	Travel and Transportation of Persons....	292	310	350
23.1	Rental Payments to GSA..................	1,490	1,521	1,592
23.3	Comm., Utilities, and Misc. Charges.....	896	910	890
24.0	Printing and Reproduction...............	425	375	400
25.0	Other Services..........................	938	875	950
25.92	Panelist Compensation and Travel........	590	620	710
25.96	Humanities Studies......................	401	400	515
26.0	Supplies and Materials..................	164	150	170
31.0	Equipment, Furniture, and Books..........	220	100	200
	TOTAL ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS	$16,020	$16,3392/	$17,950

1/ Does not include funds for the support work provided to the Institute of Museum Services.

2/ Post sequester.


CHAIRMAN
DEPUTY CHAIRMAN
GENERAL COUNSEL AND CONGRESSIONAL LIAISON
PUBLICATIONS AND PUBLIC AFFAIRS
PLANNING AND BUDGET
ASSISTANT CHAIRMAN FOR PROGRAMS AND POLICY
OFFICE OF INSPECTOR GENERAL
ASSISTANT CHAIRMAN FOR OPERATIONS
DEPUTY ASSISTANT CHAIRMAN FOR PROGRAMS AND POLICY
DIVISION OF EDUCATION PROGRAMS
DIVISION OF FELLOWSHIPS AND SEMINARS
DIVISION OF GENERAL PROGRAMS
DIVISION OF RESEARCH PROGRAMS
DIVISION OF STATE PROGRAMS
OFFICE OF CHALLENGE GRANTS
OFFICE OF PRESERVATION
ACCOUNTING OFFICE
ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
ADP SYSTEMS OFFICE
EQUAL OPPORTUNITY OFFICE
GRANTS OFFICE
NEH LIBRARY
PERSONNEL OFFICE

OPB
8/24/89

0050,52

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

Personnel Summary
Full-Time Equivalencies (FTEs)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Chairman's Office	6.81	5	5
General Counsel 1/	6.35	7	7
Inspector General	5.98	6	6
Planning and Budget	7.15	8	8
Publications and Public Affairs	15.85	16	16
Subtotal................	42.14	42	42
Asst. Chairman for Programs & Policy	1.96	3	3
Division of Education Programs	21.71	22	23
Division of Fellowships & Seminars	32.89	33	33
Division of General Programs	29.43	29.5	29.5
Division of Research Programs	30.25	31	31
Division of State Programs	12.35	13	13
Office of Preservation	3.63	7	7
Office of Challenge Grants	5.53	6	6
Subtotal................	137.75	144.5	145.5
Asst. Chairman for Operations	1.89	3	3
Accounting	10.90	11	11
Administrative Services	12.78	13	13
Data Processing Systems	11.46	12	12
Equal Opportunity Office	1.55	1.5	1.5
Grants Office	14.77	15	15
Library	2.26	2	2
Personnel 2/	17.20	15	15
Subtotal................	72.81	72.5	72.5
TOTAL..................	252.70	259	260

1/ Includes Congressional Liaison and approximately one FTE for members of the National Council on the Humanities.

2/ Includes "floater" clerk-typists who are assigned on an "as needed" basis throughout the Endowment.

D050,63

NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

Administrative Obligations
($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Chairman's Office	$ 462	$ 423	$ 475
General Counsel	494	503	542
Inspector General	342	349	370
Planning and Budget 1/	785	817	971
Publications and Public Affairs	930	900	975
Subtotal................	3,013	2,992	3,333
Asst. Chairman for Programs & Policy	126	155	183
Division of Education Programs	1,174	1,202	1,321
Division of Fellowships & Seminars	1,733	1,774	1,938
Division of General Programs	1,448	1,485	1,626
Division of Research Programs	1,558	1,640	1,797
Division of State Programs	728	769	837
Office of Preservation	208	363	405
Office of Challenge Grants	298	311	349
Subtotal................	7,273	7,699	8,456
Asst. Chairman for Operations	119	122	146
Accounting	379	392	430
Administrative Services 2/	2,764	2,820	2,922
Data Processing Systems	975	795	1,013
Equal Opportunity Office	82	84	89
Grants Office	593	612	664
Library	89	87	99
Personnel 3/	603	598	653
Subtotal................	5,604	5,510	6,016
President's Committee on the 4/ Arts and the Humanities	130	138	145
TOTAL....................	$16,020	$16,339	$17,950

1/ Includes Humanities Studies.

2/ Includes FTS, postage, local telephone service, and building rent for the Old Post Office.

3/ Includes "floater" clerk-typists who are assigned on an "as needed" basis throughout the Endowment.

4/ Transfers to NEA to provide support for the Committee.

ADMINISTRATIVE BUDGET
($17,950,000)

Administrative funds provide the staff, space, services, and supplies needed by the National Endowment for the Humanities to carry out its legislated mission of promoting education, research, and public programs in the humanities. The request for administrative funds in FY 1991 is $17,950,000, an amount that would allow NEH to maintain its current level of services and to meet anticipated workloads.

The Endowment's primary mechanism for carrying out its responsibilities is through the awarding of grants; approximately 70 percent of the NEH staff is directly involved in this process. Grant-making begins with the planning of programs and the development of guidelines. Applications submitted to the Endowment must then be acknowledged, read to insure that they meet the appropriate application criteria, reviewed by outside experts and staff, and, with the advice of the National Council on the Humanities, ultimately acted upon by the Chairman. Successful applications become grants that must be processed and administered. NEH staff members also frequently advise unsuccessful applicants concerning ways their applications might be revised and improved.

In addition to a program staff expert in the humanities, these tasks require highly qualified advisers including reviewers, panelists, site visitors, and the 26 members of the National Council on the Humanities. The program staff and advisers are supplemented by support staff responsible for a wide variety of policy and administrative functions.

FY 1991 Increase over FY 1990

The FY 1991 administrative request is $1.380 million more than the appropriation for FY 1990 and $1.611 million more than the FY 1990 appropriation minus the sequester. The bulk of the increase in FY 1991 is required to pay for price increases largely beyond our control: the January 1990 pay raise of 3.6 percent, which will be in effect for the full year of FY 1991; a projected 3.5 percent pay raise taking effect in January 1991; an average 22 percent pay hike for senior officials to begin in January 1991; a GSA-mandated rise in rent; inflation; plus automatic increases in personnel costs due to within-grade changes, merit pay awards, and higher employee benefits costs. Moreover, FY 1991 has one more workday than FY 1990--261 workdays instead of the 260 in FY 1990. The rest of the increase is needed: (1) to recover from the effects of the FY 1990 sequester, coupled with the requirement in FY 1990 to absorb the full cost of the FY 1990 pay raise, and (2) to administer the program initiatives planned for FY 1991.

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

The administrative request for FY 1991 is in keeping with the Endowment's commitment to be ever mindful of our responsibility to the taxpayer to reduce overhead costs wherever possible. We constantly stress this obligation to all of our program and office heads.

Over the years, we have been able to achieve significant management improvements and savings. Without these improvements, particularly to our automated systems, our administrative budgets would have been considerably higher. We are quite proud that we have been able to reduce staffing at the agency by 12 percent since FY 1980, from 293 FTEs to an estimated 258 in FY 1991 (excluding the two FTEs that provide administrative support services to IMS). The FY 1991 administrative budget anticipates that NEH will continue to improve the efficiency of its operations.

FY 1989 - FY 1991 by OMB Object Classification

The table at the beginning of this section outlines the Endowment's administrative funds by object classification for FY 1989-91. The following material presents these object classes in more detail.

1100-1300 - PERSONNEL COMPENSATION AND PERSONNEL BENEFITS

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Total Compensation and Benefits	$10,604	$11,078	$12,173

These object classes contain support for the salaries and benefits of all employees of the Endowment, including full-time permanent, part-time permanent, temporary, and intermittent appointments (the members of the National Council on the Humanities). The estimates for personnel benefits provide for the Endowment's share of contributions toward employees' retirement, health, and life insurance plans, as well as payments for unemployment benefits and for injuries sustained in the workplace.

NEH is authorized 259 FTEs for FY 1990 and 260 for FY 1991. In FY 1990, however, because of the sequester and the requirement to absorb the full cost of the FY 1990 pay raise, it is doubtful that we will be able to operate at the staffing level authorized. Full staffing of 260 FTEs is essential in FY 1991. Hiring for new positions has already been suspended; an across-the-board hiring freeze may have to be implemented later this year.

Each year, approximately two FTEs are used to provide administrative support to the Institute of Museum Services (IMS). NEH began providing this support to IMS in 1984 when that agency moved to the Old Post Office building. The above estimates do not include the costs of these services because IMS reimburses us for all such expenses.

The FY 1991 estimate includes amounts for three federal pay raises:

-- the full cost of the January 1990 raise of 3.6 percent;

-- a projected 3.5 percent raise to take effect in January 1991; and

-- an average 22 percent raise for senior officials to begin in January 1991.

In addition, the estimates include amounts to cover with-in grade changes and merit pay awards and the cost of the extra workday in FY 1991.

Health insurance costs continue to soar. In January 1989, the charges to NEH for providing this service to our employees increased by 25 percent. In the above estimates we have assumed that future increases will level off to about 15 percent each year in FY 1990 and FY 1991.

NEH's costs for retirement benefits are higher than most federal agencies because such a large percentage of our staff is covered by the more expensive FERS system. In the entire federal system, 30 percent of employees belong to FERS; at NEH 56 percent of current employees are covered by FERS, a figure that will grow in FY 1990 and FY 1991 because of personnel turnover. This is significant when one considers an agency must pay an average of 22 percent of salary for FERS employees as opposed to 7 percent of salary for CSRS employees.

FERS seems to be more attractive to NEH employees because the system has distinct advantages for workers who do not intend to make a career of federal service. Compared to other federal agencies, NEH has a large percentage of such employees, especially individuals who come to NEH intending to return after a few years to positions in colleges and universities. Our experience with the FERS "open season" is illustrative: In 1987 during the time when one could "switch" from CSRS to FERS, NEH had the third highest switch rate in all of government--14 percent versus the government-wide average of 2.8 percent.

2100 - TRAVEL AND TRANSPORTATION OF PERSONS

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Total Travel	$292	$310	$350
Staff Travel	240	255	292
Council Travel	33	35	37
Invitational Travel	19	20	21

Staff travel includes funds for local transportation; site visits to perform grant audits; lectures and presentations on Endowment programs and policies at professional group meetings; and attendance at conferences, symposia, and training courses.

Over the last four years, GSA has issued travel regulations that have increased the maximum per-diem rate from $75 to $141 a day, an increase of 88 percent.

GSA tells us that in 1990 and 1991 per diem and transportation costs (airfares) are expected to increase by 5 percent a year. The above estimates include small amounts for this projected inflation, for the additional travel required to meet the Congressional directive for more oversight of regrant projects, and for travel to implement FY 1991's program initiatives.

The members of the National Council on the Humanities travel to Washington four times a year to discuss Endowment policies, to review applications, and to make recommendations to the Chairman concerning the funding of specific projects. There are 26 members on the Council, plus the Endowment Chairman.

The estimates for invitational travel represent the amounts required to reimburse persons meeting with the Chairman and division officials on policy and program matters.

2310 - RENTAL PAYMENTS TO GSA

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Rental Payments to GSA	$1,490	$1,521	$1,592

The above estimates are the amounts that GSA has told us to budget for office space and storage. The changes from year to year represent GSA price increases; no additional space is involved.

2330 - COMMUNICATIONS, UTILITIES, AND MISCELLANEOUS CHARGES

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Total Comm., Utilities, and Misc. Charges	$896	$910	$890
Equipment Rentals	316	321	345
FTS and Long Distance	207	207	140
Local Telephone Service	102	107	115
Postage	271	275	290

Equipment Rentals - This sum includes the rental costs of reproduction equipment, ADP terminals, and associated ADP equipment. These items have been crucial in increasing productivity at the agency. The above request of $345,000 for equipment rentals would continue the improvement of our ADP system begun in FY 1989.

FTS and Long Distance - This sum includes the cost charged by GSA for the use of the Federal Telecommunications System's on-line network and a small amount for those long distance calls that must be placed on commercial lines. In FY 1991, with full implementation of the new FTS system (FTS 2000), GSA expects our FTS costs to drop as much as 33 percent. The above estimate for FY 1991 reflects this reduction.

Telephones - This sum covers the cost of the Endowment's telephone lines and instruments.

Postage - In the last few years, the Endowment has made significant improvements in the procedures for promoting programs and distributing program materials. As an example, we have increased the use of third-class bulk rates for large mailings of program materials. In FY 1983, when postal rates were much lower, NEH postage costs were $294,000, an amount that is higher than our estimate for FY 1991--with no consideration for inflation.

An increase of $15,000 is requested for the additional mailings that will be necessary for the initiatives planned for FY 1991.

2400 - PRINTING AND REPRODUCTION

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Total Printing and Reproduction	$425	$375	$400

The funds in this object class provide for printing forms and for publications such as the Endowment's bi-monthly periodical Humanities, the Annual Report, program brochures, posters, grant applications, program announcements, guidelines, grant award announcements, letterhead stationery, and envelopes.

In the last few years, printing policies and procedures have been implemented that have reduced publication costs by eliminating volume mailings of many program guidelines. Now a combination of advertisements and small, inexpensive flyers is used whenever possible to announce application deadlines and program eligibility criteria. The above projections anticipate that we will continue to make improvements in these procedures. FY 1989's costs are higher than the estimate for FY 1991 because of the one-time costs associated with the report 50 Hours: A Core Curriculum for College Students. The FY 1990 figure reflects the need to curtail expenses due to the sequester and the absorption of the FY 1990 pay raise.

The United States Government Printing Office has advised us that during FY 1990 and FY 1991, printing costs are expected to increase 7 percent each year.

2500 - OTHER CONTRACTUAL SERVICES

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Total Other Contr. Srvcs.	$938	$875	$950

This object class provides for contractual services required by the Endowment that are not covered in any of the preceding categories. These services include: (1) Intergovernmental Personnel Act assignments (IPAs); (2) NEH's share of support for the President's Committee on the Arts and the Humanities; (3) support, maintenance, and improvement of the Information Management System (the data and word processing facilities); (4) the automated payroll services supplied by the General Services Administration; (5) employee training; (6) employee health unit facilities; (7)

mailing services; (8) fees for site visitors who evaluate selected NEH grants; (9) alterations to office space; (10) security guards at the Old Post Office Building; (11) advertising costs; and (12) maintenance and repair of owned equipment.

In FY 1990 in order to absorb the January 1990 pay raise and the sequester, we will have to scale back on these costs.

The FY 1991 estimate includes small adjustments for inflation and for conducting the expanded Endowment activities associated with operating at a higher program level (program funds would increase by $6.829 million in FY 1991).

2592 - PANELIST CONTRACTS

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Panelists' Contracts	$590	$620	$710

The funds in this sub-object class provide for panelists' travel, subsistence, and honoraria.

Sufficient funding for full panel review merits the highest priority at the Endowment. The panel costs projected for FY 1990 reflect our dedication to recruiting the most competent panelists and to giving them the time needed to perform a thorough evaluation of proposals. Our overriding goal is to ensure that the projects ultimately receiving federal support will be those most likely to make significant contributions to the humanities.

The increase for FY 1991 includes $50,000 so that we can begin paying panelists at the official per diem rate for Washington, DC. On July 1, 1986, GSA raised the per diem rate for Washington, DC. from $75 to $112; effective October 9, 1988, the rate was increased again to $121. But the Endowment's tight administrative budgets have forced us to continue paying panelists at the old $75 per day rate.

We requested funds in our FY 1990 OMB and Congressional budget submissions to permit increasing per diem to the authorized federal rate. OMB and Congress concurred with our request, but in view of the unanticipated sequester and the requirement to absorb the January 1990 pay raise, we will have to delay this action until FY 1991.

The above estimates would allow for the additional panel meetings necessary to administer the higher program levels as well as to provide some funds for inflation. As mentioned earlier, GSA expects airfares and per diem rates to increase by 5 percent annually during 1990 and 1991.

2596 - HUMANITIES STUDIES

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Humanities Studies	$401	$400	$515

Through the Humanities Studies program the Endowment supports research to inform the planning and policy deliberations of the agency and the humanities community. Projects supported include analytical studies that address current policy questions and national surveys that collect basic data on conditions in the humanities. The analytical studies are typically non-recurring research projects invited by means of targeted competitions. National surveys include two studies of humanities doctorates and the Higher Education Surveys, a system of surveys that provides timely data on federal policy issues relating to higher education.

Expenditures on the national surveys are expected to rise at least $85,000 from the amount budgeted in 1990 because of the cyclical funding pattern for these projects. The estimated costs of analytical studies are expected to increase about $30,000 in FY 1991 to cover the added costs of studies to be commissioned for the agency's biennial "State of the Humanities" report.

2600 - SUPPLIES AND MATERIALS

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Total Supplies and Materials	$164	$150	$170

The estimates in this object class provide for the cost of expendable supplies such as paper, pens, writing tablets, and the typewriter and ADP parts required to carry on the daily business of the Endowment and for the agency's subscriptions to newspapers, magazines, and periodicals.

3100 - EQUIPMENT, FURNITURE, AND BOOKS

($000)

	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Request
Total Equipment, Furniture, and Books	$220	$100	$200

Estimates provide for all equipment, furniture, and office machines having a useful life in excess of one year--items such as chairs, desks, file cabinets, ADP equipment, typewriters, calculators, dictaphones, and transcribers. This object classification also includes books purchased for the NEH library.

In 1987 NEH engaged a private management firm to evaluate our ADP needs. It found that our old system, a WANG VS-100, was operating at maximum capacity. The computer memory was exhausted, and no more workstations could be brought on-line. The private management consultant found numerous situations where document production activities included duplication of clerical effort because Endowment staff had limited access to workstations.

In FY 1989, we began making the necessary improvements to our ADP system and planned on continuing these efforts in FY 1990. But, because of the unanticipated sequester and the requirement to absorb the full cost of the FY 1990 pay raise, we have had to scale back on our plans. In FY 1991, we hope to resume the ADP improvement program.

INSTITUTE OF MUSEUM SERVICES

1991 Budget
Congressional Submission

January 29, 1990

I. INTRODUCTION

To help museums improve their operations and better conserve their collections, the Institute of Museum Services requests a budget of $24,000,000 for Fiscal Year 1991. This represents an increase of $1,325,000 over the Fiscal Year 1990 budget enacted by Congress and $1,650,000 over the President's Fiscal Year 1990 request.

Specifically, this increase will allow the agency to slow the rate of decline in the funding ratio for the General Operating Support program, maintain a relatively steady funding ratio for the Conservation Project Support program, and improve museums' access to vital conservation surveys through the Conservation Assessment Program. These additional funds will also be used to increase and improve the agency's communication with the museum community and provide support to continue research initiatives begun in Fiscal Year 1990.

Today's museums are vital, interactive places that are representative of the richness of our culture. Museums organize their collections to be accessible to both the serious scholar and the casual visitor. The array of educational opportunities offered by our museums is astounding. Museums provide programs for all segments of American society including: school children, senior citizens, people with disabilities, minorities and families. In addition to providing education and entertainment, they add economic vitality to a community, providing jobs and attracting tourists.

Museums are also the keepers of the materials that trace our accomplishments in the arts, the sciences and the humanities. We entrust them with the difficult, yet, crucial task of identifying those materials which should be collected and preserved. In truth, the decisions made by museum professionals help to create our cultural memory and plant the seeds that will shape our future.

The variety of the American landscape is reflected in the range of museum disciplines - they include: zoos, aquariums, historic sites, art museums, science and technology museums, botanical gardens and children's museums. All of these types of museums are eligible for Institute of Museum Services' (IMS) programs. Eligible institutions include museums with only part-time employees and budgets of under $10,000, as well as those with more than 2,000 employees and budgets of over $70 million. IMS funds museums in all parts of the country; in urban, suburban and rural areas.

IMS was established in 1976 to increase and improve museum services by providing operating support. While operating support continues to be at the center of its activities, since 1984 IMS has been providing support for conservation activities. A third program, to support professional development activities that will benefit the larger museum community, was begun in 1988.

The impact of the financial resources provided to museums through IMS programs far exceeds their monetary value. The areas of general operating and conservation support are crucial, yet, private contributions for these unglamourous activities are difficult to raise. Many private donors and grant-making agencies prefer to sponsor high visibility areas such as exhibitions and special projects, rather than the "nuts and bolts," "behind-the-scenes" activities funded by IMS. IMS programs are stuctured to encourage institution-wide, comprehensive, long-range planning. This helps to ensure that Federal money is used in the most cost-effective way to improve the level of museum services to the public and to safeguard our Nation's heritage for the education and enjoyment of future generations.

TABLE A: IMS BUDGET BY ACTIVITY
(Appropriations - $ in thousands)

	1989	1990	1991
Support for operations	17,700	18,025	18,670
General Operating Support	17,300	17,625	18,270
Museum Assessment Program	400	400	400
Support for conservation	3,200	3,200	3,690
Conservation Project Sup.	3,200	2,650	3,000
Conservation Assessmant	0	550	690
Services to the profession	250	250	250
subtotal, programs	21,150	21,475	22,610
Research and evaluation	N/A	50	100
Operations	1,120	1,150	1,290
subtotal, administration	1,120	1,200	1,390
TOTAL	$22,270	$22,675	$24,000

TABLE B: APPLICATIONS AND AWARDS BY PROGRAM

	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
General Operating Support			
Number of Applicants	1,355	1,368	1,405
Number of Awards	402	393	393
Average Award	$43,168	$44,820	$46,536
Museum Assessment Program			
Number of Applicants	250	286	286
Number of Awards	250	286	286
Average Award	$1,400	$1,400	$1,400
Conservation Project Support			
Number of Applicants	459	360	361
Number of Awards	243	154	166
Average Award	$13,155	$17,157	$18,031
Conservation Assessment Program			
Number of Applicants	N/A	467	400
Number of Awards	N/A	141	177
Average Award	N/A	$3,900	$3,900
Professional Services Program			
Number of Applicants	22	28	30
Number of Awards	12	12	12
Average Award	$20,833	$20,833	$20,833

II. PROGRAMS

A. SUPPORT FOR MUSEUM OPERATIONS

	1989	1990	1991
Support for operations ($ in thousands)	17,700	18,025	18,670

The Institute of Museum Services supports museum operations through two programs: the General Operating Support Program (GOS) and the Museum Assessment Program (MAP).

1. General Operating Support Program (GOS)

	1989	1990	1991
General Operating Support ($ in thousands)	17,300	17,625	18,270

	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Number of Applicants	1,355	1,368	1,405
Number of Awards	402	393	393
Average Award	$43,168	$44,820	$46,536

Program Overview

The General Operating Support (GOS) program, created in 1976, is the foundation of IMS. It was the catalyst for the creation of the agency and accounts for over 80 percent of IMS grant funds. It provides competitive grants to museums for basic expenses, such as utilities, salaries, and maintenance. The GOS program uses a competitive peer review process that targets Federal funds on those museums that will use the funds most effectively. The review process focuses on the extent to which museums effectively use available resources. Grant amounts are equal to 10 percent of the museum's prior year budget up to $75,000.

The benefit of the GOS program reaches beyond the dollar value of the grant in many ways. Museum professionals report that the GOS award provides important support for undertakings that are less appealing to private initiatives, as noted in this comment from The Exploratorium in San Francisco, California:

> The most difficult area to support, because it lacks the glamour of newness, is General Operating expenses; yet without support in this area, we would not be able to provide the structure that holds our many programs

together. It is for this reason that IMS GOS funds have been invaluable.

The application review process itself provides an important benefit to many museums. Each application is critiqued by four museum professionals who are familiar with the particular museum discipline and budget size. All applicants receive the reviewers' comments and scores. This has been helpful to many museum professionals who report that the results of this evaluation are useful in improving their operations and articulating needs to other funding sources and their boards. The Children's Museum in Boca Raton, Florida comments:

> I am happy to report that many of the areas where the scores were the lowest have been corrected ... (the) suggestions of the reviewers have strengthened my position in relation to the Board.

The GOS award helps the museum's own fund raising efforts. The award is a well-known mark of prestige and often acts as a magnet to enable a museum to leverage support from other sources. The Buffalo Bill Historical Center in Cody, Wyoming reports:

> This welcome financial support further establishes the credibility and stature of the Historical Center and assists us greatly as we approach other donors in support of our western heritage programs.

FY 91 Budget Request

For FY 91, IMS requests $18,270,000 for the GOS program, this represents a $650,000 increase over the FY 90 appropriation. This increase is necessary to avoid more serious deterioration of the funding ratio for GOS. The competition for GOS funding is increasingly keen. The funding ratio has fallen from 35.7% in 1985 to the 1989 level of 29.7%. This decline has caused frustration among many in the museum community. Some museums find that, although they have been recipients of GOS funding in the past and the quality of their operations has not declined, they have not achieved recent success in the program. GOS dollars are depleted before many highly qualified institutions are funded. The increasingly competitive nature of the program is due to a number of factors.

The average grant size has increased 16% since 1985. In order to provide award amounts that are meaningful to the museum, the average award amount is driven by the size of the applicant museum's operating budget (up to a maximum of $75,000). In 1985 the average award amount was $37,154. In 1989 the average award amount was $43,168. This increase is due to the growing size, over time, of the average museum's operating budget - a sign of the vitality of our nation's museums.

The number of applications has increased 8% since 1985. In 1985 there were 1,264 applications for the General Operating Support Program. The total number of applications for the 1990 program is 1,368. The increasing number of American museums is testimony to our widening vision of ourselves and our heritage. As Americans, we are members of a highly diverse and pluralistic society. A variety of outstanding ethnic and minority institutions have recently been established that reflect our appreciation of the many cultures that contribute to our Nation's heritage. New museums have also been developed that focus on our tremendous growth in science and technology.

The level of appropriations for GOS has increased only 5.2% since 1985. Balancing the Institute of Museum Services' mission, to increase and improve museum services, with the critical need to maintain fiscal restraint is a difficult task. With this in mind, the requested increase of $645,000 for 1991, will slow the rate of decline and enable us to continue to support museums as they provide services to the public to preserve and pass on our heritage.

Examples

GOS supports the full breadth of museum costs from utilities, building maintenance and security, to conservation, curatorial activity and exhibition planning. Funds are also used to provide public service and educational activities including: "traveling trunk" programs for school children, health programs for senior citizens, programs designed to be especially accessible to people with disablilities, family activities, projects using art to promote AIDS education and cultural pride events.

Excerpts from FY 88 final reports:

> Funds used for publication of an illustrated brochure on the Museum's goals, programs, exhibitions, and collections proved to have a significant impact on the Museum's ability to solicit increased support. This tool will work effectively for the next several years as a recruiting, public relations, and fund-raising instrument. Nora Eccles Harrison Museum of Art, Utah State University, Logan, Utah
>
> With the help of GOS funds we were able to begin a year-long visitor study and evaluation, coupled with a statistically valid community survey to gather data needed to move forward in long range planning. Horner Museum, Corvallis, Oregon
>
> The museum sponsors programs for older adults, handicapped adults and children, a drug-rehabilitation program, and participates in a program to condition parolees for re-entry into the community. The programs for drug abuse and parolees were initiated last year because of the IMS funding. Reynolda House, Museum of American Art, Winston-Salem, North Carolina

2. Museum Assessment Program

	1989	1990	1991
Museum Assessment Program ($ in thousands)	400	400	400

	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Number of Applicants	250	286	286
Number of Awards	250	286	286
Average Award	$1,400	$1,400	$1,400

Program Overview

The Museum Assessment Program (MAP) was created in 1981 to address the needs of museums for objective, professional assessment of their operations. These small, non-competitive awards fund an assessment of selected aspects of a museum's operations by a trained professional. These grants cover the costs of the surveyor's site visit, technical assistance materials and program administration. Shortly after the visit, the participant museum receives a written report. The program is coordinated by the American Association of Museums for IMS.

There are three components to MAP: MAP I supports a general assessment of the overall operations and services of the museum; MAP II evaluates the museum's approach to caring for its collection. In FY 90, the first pilot-awards will be made under a third component. MAP III focuses on the public dimension of museum operations, including exhibition, education, marketing, and other areas where the museum interacts with the general public.

The non-competitive nature of MAP is especially beneficial to small museums, which may not be ready to compete successfully in other IMS programs. While museums of all sizes benefit from the program, it is of particular value to museums that lack highly trained staff and do not have the resources to hire consultants. In 1989, 60% of the museums that participated in MAP had budgets under $200,000.

FY 91 Budget Request

In 1991, IMS requests $400,000 in total for the MAP program - the same level as in 1990. As the number of museums that have completed the one-time MAP programs increases, the pool of potential applicants decreases. This has allowed the agency to provide enhanced services to the museum community, through the creation of additional MAP components, while maintaining a level amount of appropriations.

Examples

Museum professionals have reported that these programs have helped to improve their operations and ultimately their access to other sources of Federal and non-Federal funding, and their services to the public. This comment from the Historical Museum, Fredonia, New York, describes the impact of a MAP assessment:

> I know that the Museum Committee and Board will begin to think about the museum in new ways, looking to an exciting, planned future rather than accepting the "cabinet of curiosities" approach. Your report carries more weight than my words have, and I expect a new vision from the Board as a result.

B. SUPPORT FOR CONSERVATION

	1989	1990	1991
Support for Conservation ($ in thousands)	3,200	3,200	3,690

The Institute of Museum Services supports conservation with two programs: the Conservation Project Support (CP) program and the Conservation Assessment Program (CAP).

1. Conservation Project Support

	1989	1990	1991
Conservation Project Support ($ in thousands)	3,200	2,650	3,000

	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Number of Applicants	459	360	361
Number of Awards	243	154	166
Average Award	$13,155	$17,157	$18,031

Program Overview

The Conservation Project Support (CP) program, begun in 1984, provides funds for projects to improve the conservation-care and management of museums' collections. Grants are awarded through a competitive peer review process. Museums match the Federal funds one-to-one for projects lasting up to two years.

Through this program, IMS has encouraged the museum community to think more broadly about conservation and to develop long-range conservation plans. The CP program's step-by-step, logical approach to conservation-care has provided national leadership in the area of conservation. Museums are advised to pursue conservation activities that provide long-lasting, "behind the scenes" improvements.

Through the Conservation Project Support program, institutions are strongly encouraged:

- first, to conduct a survey of the conditions of their entire collections and surrounding environment;
- next, to identify conservation needs and priorities;
- and finally, to implement the results of this survey in priority order.

(The only exception to this "survey-first" policy is for collections of live animals, where conservation-related research is the highest priority.)

FY 91 Budget Request

For 1991, IMS requests $3 million for the Conservation Project Support program. This $350,000 increase over the $2,650,000 appropriated for FY 90, will support approximately 12 additional applications. The increase is requested based on the growing size of the average grant. As a result of the IMS programs, many institutions have completed surveys, and are requesting support for implementation of recommended activities. In comparison to surveys, these activities are more costly, therefore, the amount of the average grant request will increase. These projects include: supplies and equipment for improving and monitoring the environment, training in conservation, preparation and implementation of treatment procedures, and research in conservation techniques.

Examples

Some examples of projects funded in FY-89 follow:

> To provide optimum environmental and storage conditions for the collections, by stabilizing temperature and humidity, and eliminating pests. Afro-American Historical and Cultural Museum, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania
>
> To solve storage problems identified in a 1988 IMS-funded survey, through the renovation of an existing storage area, purchase of storage cabinets, and cleaning and rehousing of specimens in the anthropological collections. Denver Museum of Natural History, Denver, Colorado
>
> To improve storage and display conditions by adding UV filter film to windows, remounting objects on display, enclosing a storage area, and adding metal shelving. Cherokee National Museum, Tahlequah, Oklahoma

2. Conservation Assessment Program

	1989	1990	1991
Conservation Assessment Program ($ in thousands)	0	550	690

	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Number of Applicants	N/A	467	400
Number of Awards	N/A	141	177
Average Award	N/A	$ 3,900	$3,900

Program Overview

In FY 90, IMS is making the first awards under the new Conservation Assessment Program (CAP). CAP provides access to a standard professional conservation survey on a first-come, first-served, non-competitive basis. It is similar to the successful MAP program. This program addresses the critical need for surveys of the condition of museum collections, and the surrounding environment, and for establishing priorities for conservation activities. For those museums whose needs are not best met with this standard approach, funding for surveys continues to be available under the Conservation Project Support program.

The CAP grant covers surveyor fees and travel expenses, relevant materials and equipment, and coordination by National Institute for the Conservation of Cultural Property. The first awards will be made in Spring 1990.

FY 91 Budget Request

For FY 91, IMS requests $690,000 for CAP, this is a $140,000 increase over the FY 90 appropriation and would fund approximately 36 additional surveys. IMS expected to receive about 100 applications for the first CAP deadline. However, the demand from the museum community for this program was overwhelming: 467 applications were received. This response highlights the museum community's interest in pursuing this critical first-step to ensure the preservation of America's heritage.

C. SERVICES TO THE PROFESSION

	1989	1990	1991
Services to the profession ($ in thousands)	250	250	250

1. Professional Services Program

	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 actual
Number of Applicants	22	28	30
Number of Awards	12	12	12
Average Award	$20,833	$20,833	$20,833

Program Overview

The Professional Services Program (PSP), created in FY 88, supports projects to increase and improve museum services through cooperative agreements with professional museum organizations. Funds are awarded through a competitive, peer review process. Under this program, the highest demand is for professional development activities. Most applicants request funding either to conduct training, or to create training-related materials. The first year of the program was 1988.

FY 91 Budget Request

For 1991, IMS requests $250,000 for the Professional Services Program - the same level as the FY 90 appropriation.

Examples

Proposals focus on a broad range of areas emphasizing the need for training in: the care and maintenance of collections; governance, policy and planning; fundraising and membership development; and public programming.

Examples of projects funded in FY 89 include agreements to:

- provide scholarship assistance to minority candidates to attend the Museum Management Institute. American Federation of Arts
- organize a workshop where leading conservation biologists will assemble to review current scientific techniques for genetic and demographic management of species in captivity and to formulate new methodology. American Association of Zoological Parks and Aquariums

- produce a reference manual that will help museum exhibit designers apply the findings of ergonomic research to the development of interactive exhibits that are safer, easier to understand, and accessible to a wider range of visitors. Association of Science-Technology Centers

III. Administration

The 1991 request of $1,390,000 for administration includes funding for agency operations and for research and evaluation. Of this total, $100,000 would be for research and evaluation, and $1,290,000 would be for operations.

TABLE C: ADMINISTRATION: OBLIGATIONS BY OBJECT CLASS
($ in thousands)

		1989	1990	1991
Research and Evaluation		N/A	50	100
Operations				
1100	Personnel compensation	498	562	600
1200	Personnel benefits	120	137	146
1300	Benefits for former personnel	3	2	0
2100	Travel and transportation of persons	50	53	63
2200	Transportation of things	6	5	5
2300	Rent, communications, and utilities	134	150	157
2400	Printing and reproduction	37	33	42
2500	Other contractual services	212	199	257
2600	Supplies and materials	8	9	10
3100	Equipment	41	0	10
	Subtotal, Operations	1,120	1,150	1,290
GRAND TOTAL, Administration		1,120	1,200	1,390

A. RESEARCH AND EVALUATION

	1989	1990	1991
Research and Evaluation	N/A	50	100

In 1991, IMS requests $100 thousand for research and evaluation. This increase over the FY 90 level will be used to support the next phase in a detailed analysis of the General Operating Support program.

Data on the General Operating Support program has steadily grown in the past 13 years, but no comprehensive analysis has been done. The data collected through GOS applications, final reports, and reviewer comments contains valuable information about America's museums. Detailed information about the operations of every type and size of museum in every state of the country is available. In-depth analysis will reveal information on trends in museum operations, the impact of receiving general operating support, and the evolution of museum standards. Further research initiatives on the most effective methods to distribute general operating support will provide significant benefits to the museum community and the publics they serve.

The study of the GOS program began in FY 89, when an indepth analysis of the program was completed by IMS staff and the Presidentially-appointed, policy-making National Museum Services Board. This effort resulted in a public document that provides a thorough explanation of the GOS program, an analysis of the process and of frequently suggested alternatives, and 33 recommendations for improvements in the program as well as continuation of successful procedures.

The $50,000 appropriated in FY 90 will be used to develop a research and evaluation agenda. To ensure a sound approach to this project, IMS will contract with independent, professional researchers to help the IMS define the issues to be assessed, identify priorities, and determine the most appropriate research methodologies. IMS expects to assess program design, administration, and impact on museums and the general public. This planning activity will help to identify the specific evaluation activities that will be pursued in the future.

The requested increase includes funds to begin to implement the research and evaluation agenda developed in FY 90.

B. OPERATIONS

For 1991, IMS requests $1,290,000 for operations. This amount represents an increase of $140,000 over the FY 90 appropriation. These funds will cover inflation-driven increases in rent, travel, and printing costs, and will support several small new initiatives recommended by the National Museum Services Board report.

	1989	1990	1991
1100 Personnel Compensation	498	562	600
1200 Personnel Benefits	120	137	146
1300 Benefits for Former Personnel	3	2	0

For 1991, IMS requests $600 thousand for personnel compensation and $146 thousand for personnel benefits. This level includes the costs of with-in grade increases, promotions and performance awards for qualified staff, and an allowance for the effects of turnover. It also includes funding for the 1990 and anticipated 1991 pay raises.

	1989	1990	1991
2100 Travel and Transportation of Persons	50	53	63

This object class covers the costs of travel by IMS staff and Board members. It includes travel to attend Board meetings, make presentations at conferences, conduct site visits, provide workshops on IMS programs and procedures, and train application reviewers. The 1991 request includes an increase to cover rising costs and to increase the number of trips slightly to respond to requests from Congress and the museum community. The increase will be used for travel to more areas of the country, to disseminate information on IMS programs, counsel applicants and train reviewers.

	1989	1990	1991
2200 Transportation of Things	6	5	5

This object class covers the costs of shipping boxes of applications and other materials primarily to reviewers or Board members.

2300 Rent, Communications, and Utilities:

	1989	1990	1991
Rent (space)	97	101	104
Communications, utilities, etc.	47	49	53
Total	134	150	157

The estimate for rent covers current space and was provided by GSA. This object class also includes the Federal lease-to-purchase costs of existing ADP equipment, telephone services and postage. In addition to funding price increases, the 1991 level will allow IMS to repond to requests from the museum community and general public to send out more information on its programs.

	1989	1990	1991
2400 Printing and Reproduction	37	33	42

Most printing costs are attributable to the applications and guidelines for IMS programs. Other publications, such as the annual report and information brochure, provide general information to the Congress, museum professionals and the public. In an effort to further develop the on-going dialogue between IMS and the museum community a newsletter will be mailed to museum directors three times per year.

	1989	1990	1991
2500 Other Contractual Services	212	199	257

This object class includes the costs of equipment maintenance, staff training, compensation for reviewers and panelists, the inter-agency agreement with the National Endowment for the Humanities and other contracted services. In 1991, it also includes funds for the first major evaluation and redesign of our computer system, which has grown and aged to the extent that improvements are necessary.

In 1991, the request includes an increase in the honorarium for reviewers and panelists, from $100 to $125. This honorarium was decreased from $200 to $100 in FY 88. IMS is increasingly concerned about the need to improve the performance of the peer reviewers and to attract well-qualified professionals. The $25 increase will at least signify the importance of the peer reviewers as well as the IMS commitment to ensuring a high quality review process.

	1989	1990	1991
2600 Supplies and Materials	8	9	10

This object class covers the costs of office supplies, subscriptions and other materials.

	1989	1990	1991
3100 Equipment	31	0	10

This object class primarily includes the costs of purchasing ADP equipment and furniture. IMS significantly improved its space configuration and its ADP equipment in 1988 and 1989, lessening future needs. To control costs IMS is not planning to replace or upgrade its furniture or equipment in FY 90. The agency plans modest increases for 1991.

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
BUDGET JUSTIFICATIONS, F.Y. 1991

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS

Budget Justification
Fiscal Year 1991

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Item **Page Number**

General Statement .... CFA- 1

Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses

Appropriation Summary Statement .... CFA- 3
Appropriation Language .... CFA- 4
Summary of Requirements .... CFA- 5
Justification of Adjustments to Base .... CFA- 6
Justification of Program and Performance by Activity:
  Administration .... CFA- 7
Summary of Requirements by Object Class .... CFA- 9
Program and Financing Schedule CFA-10
Object Classification... CFA-11
Personnel Summary... CFA-12
Detail of Permanent Employment...................................... CFA-13

Appropriation: National Capital Arts and Cultural Affairs

Appropriation Summary Statement..................................... CFA-14
Appropriation Language CFA-15
Program and Financing Schedule/Object Classification................ CFA-16

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
General Statement

The Commission of Fine Arts was established in 1910 (40 U.S.C. 104) to fill the need for a permanent advisory agency whose members would be qualified to make available to the Government expert opinions on questions of art arising in the course of administration. As an independent agency, it is intended to serve a twofold purpose; first, to give advice concerning aesthetic standards and matters of civic design involved in the orderly development of the District of Columbia; and second, to furnish expert opinion on questions of art to the President, to the Congress and its Committees, and to the heads of various departments and agencies of the Federal and District Governments. The Commission's primary role is to advise Federal Agencies and the District of Columbia Government on proposed projects which would affect the appearance of the Capital.

The Commission is composed of seven members, appointed by the President, who serve without compensation, receiving only actual travel expenses relative to attending meetings. Since the Commission's inception, nearly 100 distinguished architects, landscape architects, painters, sculptors and laymen in the field of fine arts have given freely to the Government the benefit of their experience and professional skills in advising the President, the Congress and Government agencies on matters involving the fine arts.

The specific functions of the Commission are as follows:

1. To advise generally upon questions of art when requested to do so by the President, heads of executive departments or by any Committee of either House of Congress.

2. To advise specifically on all plans for parks, public buildings, and other structures constructed by executive departments of the Federal or the District of Columbia Governments.

3. To advise upon location of statues, fountains, and monuments in public squares, streets and parks in the District of Columbia, upon the selection of designs for the statues, fountains, and monuments erected under the authority of the United States and upon the selection of artists for execution of the same.

4. To approve the design and location of national monuments and memorials as required by the specific statutes authorizing them.

5. To regulate the height, exterior design and construction of private and semi-public buildings in certain areas of the National Capital. This action requires review and recommendation to the Mayor of the District of Columbia on the merits of designs submitted for building permits.

6. To advise, as necessary, on projects of an important Federal character outside of the District of Columbia, and to render opinions on the merit of designs for medals, insignia, coins, or other art projects created and produced by the executive departments.

The following summary provides a comparison between the FY 1990 appropriation and the FY 1991 request:

	FY 1990 Enacted To Date	FY 1990 Adjusted Approp.	FY 1991 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Inc/Dec From Adjusted Approp.
$	516	509	558	549	+40
FTE	7	7	7	7	0

Highlights of the FY 1991 Request

The Commission of Fine Arts is requesting an appropriation of $549,000 for FY 1991 to finance the expenses of the seven members of the Commission and the salaries and related costs necessary to finance a supporting staff and maintain the present level of operations. The changes between the FY 1990 program and the FY 1991 request are as follows:

* +$33,000 to cover increased salary and benefit costs for pay raises, within grade increases, promotions, etc.;

* +$ 1,000 to cover increased personnel compensation for one more paid day in FY 1991;

* +$ 7,000 to cover benefit costs in line with actual costs in prior years as adjusted by FERS;

* +$ 1,000 to provide for projected increase in communications and related FTS conversion costs;

* +$ 7,000 to adjust for the 1990 effect of the reduction pursuant to P.L. 99-177;

* +$ 2,000 to provide for increased costs of supplies; and

* +$ 2,000 to provide for added costs of automated word processing and for repair or replacement of aging equipment.

These increases are partially offset by a reduction of $13,000 for the costs of administering the National Capital Arts and Cultural Affairs program for which no funds are requested in FY 1991.

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
Salaries and Expenses

Appropriation Summary Statement
(Program and Performance)

The Commission advises the President, Congress and Department heads on matters of architecture, sculpture, painting and other fine arts. The primary function is to preserve and enhance the appearance of the National Capital.

Appropriation Language Sheet

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
Salaries and Expenses

For expenses made necessary by the Act establishing a Commission of Fine Arts (40 U.S.C. 104), [$516,000] $549,000. (Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.)

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
Salaries and Expenses
Summary of requirements
(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses

	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount
Appropriation enacted, 1990			7	516
Reduction Pursuant to P.L. 99-177				-7
Adjusted FY 1990 Appropriation			7	509
ADJUSTMENTS TO BASE:				
Adjustment for 1990 Impact of P.L. 99-177	0	7		
Pay Adjustment	0	28		
Additional Cost in 1991 for the 1991 Pay Raise	0	5		
Adjustment for One Additional Paid Day in FY 1991	0	1		
CSRS/FERS Retirement Costs	0	7		
Federal Telecommunications System	0	1		
Total adjustments to base			0	49
1991 Base Budget			7	558
Program changes (Changes to base budget, detailed below)			0	(9)
TOTAL REQUIREMENTS (1991 Estimate)			7	549

Comparison by activity/ subactivity:	FY 1989 Actual		FY 1990 Enacted to Date		P.L.99-177 Reduction	1990 Adjusted Approp.	FY 1991 Base		FY 1991 Estimate		Inc./(dec.) from FY 1990 Appropriation		Inc./(dec.) from 1990 Adjusted Appropriation	Inc./(dec.) from 1991 Base	
	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount	Amount	Amount	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount	Amount	FTE-T	Amount
Administration. Total Requirements	7	468	7	516	-7	509	7	558	7	549	0	33	40	0	-9

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
Salaries and Expenses

Justification of Base Adjustments
(Dollar amounts in thousands)

	FTE-T	AMOUNT
Adjustment for 1990 Effect of P.L. 99-177	0	+$7
The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Reaffirmation Act (P.L. 99-177) as amended, required a reduction in non-exempt programs in FY 1990. Since the reduction applies to FY 1990 only, this adjustment is made to allow a more comparable basis for showing program changes from FY 1990 to FY 1991.		
Pay Adjustment	0	+$28
The adjustment reflects an increase in salary and benefit costs to account for within grade increases, promotions for General Schedule employees, and awards.		
Additional Cost in 1991 for the 1991 Pay Raise	0	+$5
The adjustment is for the additional amount needed in 1991 to cover 50 percent of the additional three quarters' cost of the estimated 3.5 percent pay raise effective in January 1991. This amount is for general schedule pay. The 1991 cost of the remaining 50 percent will be absorbed in FY 1991.		
One More Paid Day in FY 1991	0	+$1
The increase in personnel compensation results from there being one more paid day in FY 1991 than in FY 1990.		
CSRS/FERS Retirement Costs	0	+$7
The adjustment is for the increase in estimated retirement costs resulting from the continuing growth in the relative proportion of FERS employees in the work force.		
Federal Telecommunications System	0	+$1
The adjustment is for higher costs of the Federal Telecommunications System resulting from increased GSA charges.		
TOTAL, BASE ADJUSTMENTS	0	+$49

Justification of Program and Performance

ACTIVITY: ADMINISTRATION

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

	FY 1990 Enacted To Date	FY 1990 Adjusted Approp.	FY 1991 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase/ (Decrease) from Base
$	516	509	558	549	- 9
(FTE-T)	7	7	7	7	0

Authorization: 40 U.S.C. 104.

Objectives: To ensure that the city and the people of Washington have a small, simple, effective design review agency to monitor aesthetic development and the appearance of the city, with objective overview and to advise the President, Congress, and various agencies of the Federal and District governments on proposed projects and existing conditions in the Capital. This requires a high level of professional expertise provided by seven Presidentially-appointed well-qualified judges of the arts and supported by a small professional staff.

To provide a professional level of advisory service through review and liaison with the District of Columbia and Federal governments; to provide the administrative services that are required to communicate the advice of the Commission; and to keep accurate records of the Commission's activities and advice.

To produce research on buildings, areas, and plans of and in the city of Washington and to make this scholarly historical and architectural information generally available to the public, to other Government agencies and to the Commission. As plans evolve for parts of the city, it is desirable to have specific resources identified in advance and to avoid destruction or impairment of those resources. The specially trained staff architects and historians performing this work are also available to the Commission on a case-by-case basis to provide supporting material on proposed projects, sometimes on very short notice.

The reduction in FY 1990 of $7,000 for the G-R-H sequestration, pursuant to P.L. 99-177, will affect operations during FY 1990. Reductions in contracts, training, and possibly travel will occur.

Base Program: The Commission of Fine Arts, an independent advisory agency, reviews proposals affecting the appearance of the Capital, and advises the President, the Congress, and the agencies of the Federal and District of Columbia governments on architectural designs and other matters of art. It also conducts review, administration, liaison, research, and publication activities.

The Commission views its continuation in terms of remaining small and independent without substantial program changes.

The Commission provides advisory services for the immediate development of the Capital through study, inspection, research and expert consultation. It maintains continual involvement in ongoing projects such as the International Center site, the Federal Triangle, the Pennsylvania Avenue Development Plan, and other special areas of the city. It publishes studies such as the "Special Architecture of Sixteenth Street" to provide factual material for planning and urban design issues. Some of the material assembled is published so as to be permanently available to operating Government agencies as well as the general public.

The Commission's advice on design, planning and historic preservation is sought by the Federal and District of Columbia governments. The designs of memorials and public buildings in Washington and designs affecting all public landmarks in specified areas of the city have been developed with advice from the Commission of Fine Arts. This advice has been at minimal cost to the Government with modest increases reflecting higher overhead cost rather than expanded programs.

(dollars in thousands)

Decrease from 1991 Base:

	FY 1991 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Difference
$	558	549	- 9
(FTE)	7	7	0

This request reflects a net decrease of -$9,000 from the FY 1991 base. In order to maintain the present level of operations in the face of increased activities and their complexity, increases of $2,000 for supplies and $2,000 in equipment are requested. This increase is offset by a reduction of $13,000 for the costs of administering the National Capital Arts and Cultural Affairs program for which there are no funds requested in FY 1991.

Distribution of change by object class:

The object class detail for the proposed decrease of -$9,000 is as follows:

Object Class	FTE-T	Amount
Other Services......................		-13
Supplies...........................		+2
Equipment..........................		+2
Total............................	0	-9

Commission of Fine Arts
Summary of Requirements by Object Class

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses

Object Class		1991 Base FTE	1991 Base Amount	1991 Estimate FTE	1991 Estimate Amount	Inc (+) or Dec (-) FTE	Inc (+) or Dec (-) Amount
11.0	Personnel Compensation:						
11.1	Full-time permanent	7	329	7	329	0	0
11.3	Other than full-time permanent		12		12		0
11.5	Other personnel compensation						0
11.9	Total personnel compensation	7	341	7	341	0	0
	Other Objects						
12.1	Personnel benefits: Civilian		48		48		0
21.0	Travel and transportation of persons		18		18		0
23.1	Rental payments to GSA		66		66		0
23.3	Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges		7		7		0
24.0	Printing and reproduction		10		10		0
25.0	Other services		57		44		-13
26.0	Supplies and materials		5		7		+ 2
31.0	Equipment		6		8		+ 2
	Total requirements		558		549		- 9

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Program and Financing (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 95-2600-0-1-451	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Program by activities:			
10.0001 Administration (Total obligations).	468	509	549
Financing:			
25.0001 Unobligated balance lapsing.........	7	0	0
39.0001 Appropriation.....................	475	509	549
Budget Authority:			
40.0001 Appropriation......................	475	516	549
40.0090 Reduction pursuant to P.L. 99-177...	0	(7)	0
43.0001 Appropriation (adjusted).........	475	509	549
Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.0001 Obligations incurred, net..........	468	509	549
72.4001 Obligated balance, start of year....	90	20	43
74.4001 Obligated balance, end of year......	(20)	(43)	(46)
77.0001 Adjustments in expired accounts.....	(24)	0	0
90.00 Outlays..........................	515	486	546

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Object Classification (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 95-2600-0-1-451		1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
	Personnel compensation:			
111.101	Full-time permanent................	286	300	329
111.301	Other than full-time permanent.....	5	8	12
111.501	Other personnel compensation.......	1	0	0
111.901	Total personnel compensation.....	292	308	341
112.101	Personnel benefits: Civilian.......	46	40	48
121.001	Travel and transportation of persons..........................	7	18	18
123.101	Rental payments to GSA.............	65	66	66
123.301	Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges............	6	6	7
124.001	Printing and reproduction..........	4	10	10
125.001	Other services.....................	42	50	44
126.001	Supplies and materials.............	5	5	7
131.001	Equipment..........................	1	6	8
999.901	Total obligations...............	468	509	549

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Personnel Summary

Identification code 95-2600-0-1-451	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Total number of full-time permanent positions	7	7	7
Total compensable workyears:			
Full-time equivalent employment	7	7	7
Full-time equivalent of overtime and holiday hours	0	0	0
Average ES salary	$80,700	$83,600	$85,695
Average GS grade	10.2	10.3	10.3
Average GS/GM salary	$37,030	$38,430	$39,439

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
SALARIES AND EXPENSES
DETAIL OF PERMANENT EMPLOYMENT

Consolidated schedule of permanent employment, Commission of Fine Arts

Identification code 95-2600-0-1-451	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
ES-6	1	1	1
subtotal	1	1	1
GS/GM-15	1	1	1
GS-13	0	0	2
GS-12	2	2	0
GS-11	0	0	1
GS-9	2	2	1
GS-5	1	1	1
subtotal	6	6	6
Total permanent employment, end of year	7	7	7

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
National Capital Arts and Cultural Affairs

Appropriation Summary Statement
(Program and Performance)

The FY 1988 Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriation Act transferred administrative responsibility for the National Capital Arts and Cultural Affairs program from the National Endowment for the Humanities to the Commission of Fine Arts. This program provides payments for general operating support to Washington, D.C. arts and other cultural organizations.

No appropriation is proposed for FY 1991 because the program earmarks funds for Washington, D.C. organizations that should receive equivalent contributions from non-Federal sources and duplicates existing Federal competitive grants available on a national basis.

Appropriation Language Sheet

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
[National Capital Arts and Cultural Affairs]

[For necessary expenses as authorized by Public Law 99-190 (99 Stat. 1261; 20 U.S.C. 956a), as amended, $5,500,000: Provided, That Public Law 99-190 (99 Stat. 1261; 20 U.S.C. 956a), as amended, is amended further by striking "$5,000,000" and inserting in lieu thereof "$7,500,000".] (Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.)

COMMISSION OF FINE ARTS
NATIONAL CAPITAL ARTS AND CULTURAL AFFAIRS

Program and Financing (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 95-2602-0-1-503	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Program by activities:			
10.0001 Total obligations (object class 41.0)	5,000	5,427	0
Financing:			
39.0001 Budget authority	5,000	5,427	0
Budget Authority:			
40.0001 Appropriation.........................	5,000	5,500	0
40.0090 Reduction pursuant to P.L. 99-177...	0	(73)	0
43.0001 Appropriation (adjusted).........	5,000	5,427	0
Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.0001 Obligations incurred, net...........	5,000	5,427	0
90.0001 Outlays...........................	5,000	5,427	0

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION

BUDGET JUSTIFICATIONS, F.Y. 1991

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION

FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET JUSTIFICATIONS

Table of Contents

Page

Organization chart. ACHP- 1
General statement . . . . ACHP- 2

Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses

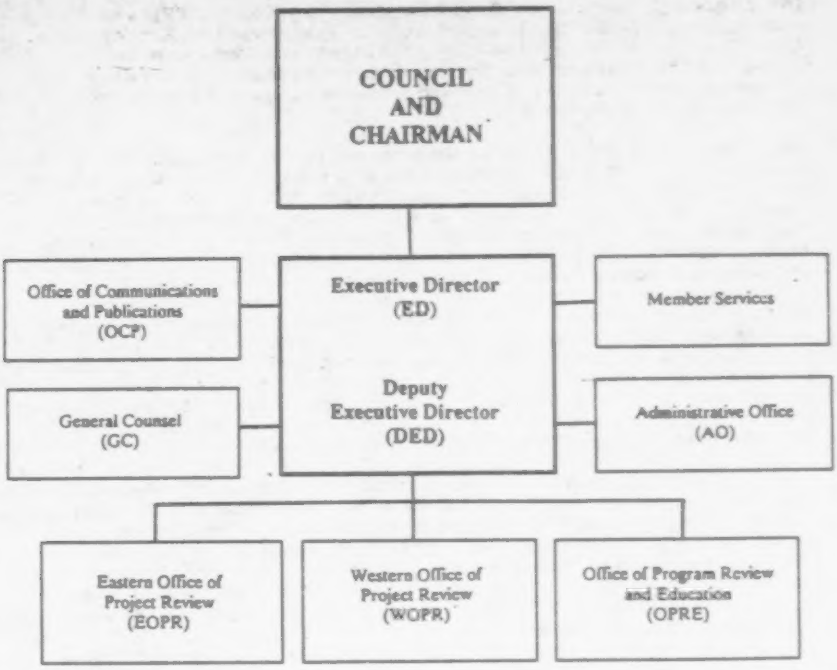
Appropriation language sheet. . . . . ACHP- 5
Summary of requirements . . . . ACHP- 6
Justification of program and performance by subactivity:
  Council Direction ACHP-10
  Cultural Resource Preservation. ACHP-21
Summary of Requirements by object class ACHP-37
Schedules: program and financing ACHP-38
  narrative statement on program and performance ACHP-39
  object classification ACHP-40
  personnel summary ACHP-40

Appropriation: Trust Fund (Donations)

Schedules: program and financing ACHP-41
  narrative statement on program and performance ACHP-42
  object classification ACHP-43

ORGANIZATIONAL CHART

Advisory Council on Historic Preservation


COUNCIL AND CHAIRMAN
Office of Communications and Publications (OCP)
Executive Director (ED)
Member Services
General Counsel (GC)
Deputy Executive Director (DED)
Administrative Office (AO)
Eastern Office of Project Review (EOPR)
Western Office of Project Review (WOPR)
Office of Program Review and Education (OPRE)

General Statement

The Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (ACHP) was established by the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 470) to advise the President and Congress on preservation matters and to comment on Federal, federally assisted and federally licensed undertakings having an effect upon historic properties.

The ACHP has a central role in the national historic preservation program. Its primary mission is to exercise leadership within the government in historic preservation and to ensure that Federal actions are consistent with historic preservation values to the maximum extent possible. Meeting these goals requires that preservation policies be balanced against other national polices and goals, such as reducing the Federal deficit, fostering economic development, and maintaining national security. To achieve this balance, Federal agencies require advice and assistance both in the development of general programs and policies and in the design and review of particular projects. The ACHP's role is to provide such advice and assistance to the President, the Congress, and Federal agencies, and to assist and encourage State and local governments and private parties in preservation activities.

The solution of historic preservation issues at the Federal level has far-reaching impacts since Federal Government activities have a significant effect on the Nation's historic resources. Decisions on Federal projects affect the historic fabric of cities, towns, and rural areas, as major development actions are shaped by Federal assistance or permission. Accommodating preservation values with public policies in that decisionmaking process requires the acknowledgement of many competing forces. Federal agencies with responsibilities for transportation, housing, economic development, national defense, or other missions employ vast resources to accomplish their goals. Simultaneously, concerned citizens often hold preservation of their community as their highest priority, while State and local governments can have priorities that are not always congruent with either Federal historic preservation policy or other national interests.

With all of these divergent views, there exists an independent body at the Federal level to assist in balancing historic preservation against other interests. This occurs through the ACHP's review process under Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. In a broader sense, the accommodation of these values is advanced by the ACHP's efforts to work with and assist Federal agencies in dealing with historic preservation duties.

The immediate objective of the ACHP is to assist each Federal agency in carrying out its activities with proper regard for historic preservation values. The ACHP's longer term goal is to promote sound Federal policies toward preservation throughout the Nation. The ACHP helps Federal agencies meet their statutory historic preservation obligations by institutionalizing preservation expertise and planning systems, eliminating duplicative efforts, improving the consistency of preservation policies, and avoiding unnecessary expenditures of public funds.

Organization

The ACHP consists of 19 members, including the heads of six Federal agencies whose activities have special relationships to historic properties, the Architect of the Capitol, and ex officio representatives of the National Trust for Historic Preservation and the National Conference of State Historic Preservation Officers. The President appoints ten other members including three members from the general public, a governor, a mayor, four experts from preservation related disciplines, and the Chairman of the Council.

The Executive Director reports to the Chairman and is responsible for a staff of 35 Full-time Equivalents (FTE). Offices are located in Washington, DC, and in Denver, Colorado.

The ACHP and its staff are contained in 2 Subactivities:

1. Council Direction consists of the Chairman, Vice Chairman, Council Members, the Executive Directorate, Communications and Publications, and General Administration.

2. Cultural Resource Preservation includes the Office of Program Review and Education and two offices of Project Review, one in Washington, D.C. (Eastern), and one in Denver, Colorado (Western).

The following summary provides a comparison between the 1990 appropriation to date and the 1991 request.

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

	FY 1990 enacted to date	FY 1990 adjusted appn *	FY 1991 Estimate	Inc(+) from adjust
Salaries and Expenses	($)1,920	1,894	2,238	+344
FTE(T)	(35)	(35)	(37)	(+2)

* PL 99-177 GRH deficit reduction (sequester)

General Administration

The total request for General Administration includes rental payments to GSA, communications, utilities, printing, other services (contracting), supplies and equipment. These costs, estimated at $384,000 for FY 1990 and $405,000 for FY 1991, are shown in the Council Direction Unit.

Effect of Sequester

The GRH deficit reduction legislation cut $26,000 from the FY 1990 appropriation. This cut delayed the filling of 2 authorized positions, and restricted the travel budget.

Highlights of the 1991 Request

The FY 1991 budget request reflects the ACHP continued commitment to providing timely and useful comments to Federal agencies on individual projects affecting historic properties and to improving the government's long-term preservation capabilities. Sizable increases in the Council's Section 106 caseload during FY 1988 and FY 1989 have diminished the Council's ability to carry out its primary mission. The FY 1990 appropriation provided for 2 FTEs to handle the increased workload. The FY 1991 request seeks 2 new positions for a total increase of 4 FTEs over 1989 levels. This increase is necessary to meet the caseload demands while allowing the Council to move forward with assisting agencies in improving their historic preservation capabilities.

The FY 1991 request is also adjusted to reflect the higher cost of carrying out the Council's operations. The new Federal Employees Retirement System (FERS) and the increased cost of travel have eroded the budget base. A funding increase in these and certain other categories is requested to meet these increased costs of doing business.

Funds are requested for a historic preservation awards program, involving President's awards and national awards along the lines of the successful 1988 program. These awards will coincide with the 25th anniversary of the enactment of the National Historic Preservation Act in 1991.

Authorization

P.L. 101-70 (16 U.S.C. §470t), authorized $2,500,000 annually through FY 1994.

Appropriation Language Sheet

Salaries and Expenses

For expenses made necessary by the Act establishing an Advisory Council on Historic Preservation, Public Law 89-665, [$1,920,000:] Provided that none of these funds under this head may be used to process comments or undertakings of Federal agencies, as specified in Sections 106 and 110 of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended, on grants or contracts to institutions or facilities whose main activity is the conduct of scientific research and such agencies shall be relieved from the requirement of seeking comments on such undertakings unless requested in writing by the grantee: Provided further, That none of these funds shall be available for the compensation of Executive Level V or higher positions.^$2,238,000.

16 U.S.C. 470; 80 stat. 915

Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990

Summary of Requirements

Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses	FTE/T	Amount	FTE/T	Amount
SUMMARY OF BASE ADJUSTMENTS				
ADJUSTED APPROPRIATION, 1990			35	1,894
Base Adjustments				
Sequester Restoration		+26		26
Rent		+7		7
One extra day in FY 1991		+5		5
Fy 1990 Classified Pay and FY 1991 SES Pay Raise		+85		85
Pay adjustments (promotions/within grades		+73		73
Benefit adjustments to cover FERS		+39		39
Travel Costs		+10		10
1991 Base Budget	35	245	35	2,139

Comparison by subactivities	1989 Actual		1990 Adjusted Appn		1991 Base		1991 Est. Appn		Inc(+)Dec(-) from 1990 Adjusted Appn	
	FTE	Amount	FTE	Amount	FTE	Amount	FTE	Amount	FTE	Amount
Council direction	11	1005	12	989	12	1,097	12	1,106	--	+117
Cultural Resource Preservation	20	752	23	905	23	1,042	25	1,132	+2	+227
(General Administration)	--	(428)	--	(384)	--	(406)	--	(405)	--	(+21)
Total Requirements	31	1,757	35	1,894	35	2,139	37	2,238	+2	+344

Justification of base adjustments

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

	FTE	AMOUNT
Sequester restoration		+26
Total Adjustment for 1990 pay increase in FY 1991 .... (Full absorption of the 1990 pay raise amounted to $37,000 in FY 1990. The adjustment for FY 1991 includes the full year cost, or $41,000		+ 41
FY 1991 SES Pay Raise (9 months)................		+29
One extra day of pay in FY 1991................		+5
Increased Benefits- 1990 pay raise +9;.......... SES pay raise +6; and actual FERS requirements +39		+54
Pay adjustment .... Includes scheduled promotions, within grade increases and performance awards		+73
Travel costs................................... increase cost per trip		+10
Payments to GSA.................................. increased rent		+ 7
Total Base Adjustments		+245

FUNDING BACKGROUND
($000)

Fiscal year	1986	1987	1988	1989	1990	1991
President's budget	$1200	$1417	$1734	$1781	$1795	$2238
Initial Appropriation	1575	1533	1719	1788	1920	
Appn adjustment	-68	--	--	--	-26 *	
Budget Authority	1507	1533	1719	1788	1894	
FTE	(32)	(31)	(33)	(33)	(35)	

The increase from the 1990 adjusted appropriation includes base adjustment as listed above and 2 additional Historic Preservation Specialists.

* PL 99-177 GHA deficit reduction

Expenditures by object classification

($000)

		BASE YEAR FY 1986	FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Adj.Appn.	FY 1991 * Estimate	Inc(+) Over 1990
11	Salaries	$1011	$1,046	$1,210	$1,434	+224
12	Benefits	98	205	225	294	+ 69
21	Travel	45	78	75	105	+ 30
23.1	Rent	185	165	168	175	+ 7
23.2	Comm,util misc charges	25	34	30	32	+ 2
24	Printing	18	52	50	58	+ 8
25	Other Services	109	128	108	108	-
26	Supplies	12	15	14	14	
31	Equipment	4	34	14	18	+ 4
	TOTAL	1,507	1,757	1,894	2,238	+344
	FTE	(31)	(31)	(35)	(37)	(+ 2)

* Object class adjustments to accommodate pay raises results in different distribution, from that shown in OMB Budget Appendix.

Changes from FY 1990 Adjusted Appropriation

Salaries	+ $224,000 -- Pay raises for classified and SES employees +$70,000; Regularly scheduled promotions within-grade increases, and performance awards +$73,000; 2 new Historic Preservation Specialist positions +$59,000; restore sequester cut of $17,000; and extra day of pay in 1991 $5,000.
Benefits	+ $69,000 -- Covers expanded salary base for promotions/within-grades reflecting actual costs of FERS +$54,000; benefits for 2 new FTEs +$11,000; restore sequester of $4,000.
Travel	+ $30,000 -- Travel for 2 new FTEs +$10,000; increased travel for Council meetings +$5,000; adjustment for general increase in per trip travel costs +$10,000; restore sequester cut of $5,000.
Rent	+ $7,000 - GSA estimate

Communications, Utilities and Misc charges	+ $2,000 -- Based on actual usage of phones, communications, and postage with anticipated increased activity in FY 1991.
Printing	+ $8,000 -- Printing requirement for new program activities $8,000.
Equipment	+$4,000 -- Equipment purchases to expand existing network for new FTEs.

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: ACHP OPERATIONS

Program Elements	1990 Adj. Appn	1991 Base	1991 Estimate	Inc(+) from Adj. Appn	Inc(+) From Base
Council Direction ($)	989	1,097	1,106	+117	+ 9
(FTE-T)	(12)	(12)	(12)	-	-
Cultural Resource Preservation	905	1,042	1,132	+227	+ 90
(FTE-T)	(23)	(23)	(25)	(+2)	(+2)
Total Requirements	1,894	2,139	2,238	+344	+ 99
(FTE-T)	(35)	(35)	(37)	(+2)	(+2)

Authorization

16 U.S.C. §470t. P.L. 101-70 authorized $2,500,000 annually for FY 1990 through FY 1994.

COUNCIL DIRECTION

This unit, which contains the Chairman, Vice-Chairman, the ACHP Members, the Executive Directorate, Communications and Publications, and General Administration, directs and supports the work of the ACHP toward meeting its stated objectives. It prepares mandated reports and conducts public information activities.

Rationale for Federal role. The management and support role in implementing ACHP programs, policies and recommendations, and supporting Council member activities could not be accomplished by government at a level below the Federal, nor by private institutions not having the authority of the Federal government. The basic structure to the Council Direction unit is established by statute (16 U.S.C. §470m).

Objectives

The ACHP seeks to achieve the following objectives through the Council Direction unit:

0 Promote the development to programs, policies and recommendations concerning historic preservation by utilizing the expertise of the Council Members;

0 Carry out these activities through the administrative and legislative processes and disseminate advice and guidance to

Federal agencies, State and local governments, private organizations and individuals;

0 Support the ACHP members in carrying out their statutory duties;

0 Provide direction and oversight to the ACHP staff;

0 Provide legal services to the ACHP, members, Executive Director and staff;

0 Gather and organize material necessary for the ACHP to report annually to the President and the Congress on the current status and emerging trends of the national historic preservation program, and make assessments and recommendations concerning the adequacy of Federal, State, local and private sector historic preservation programs;

0 Produce and make available reports to the ACHP on preservation issues;

0 Respond to public information requests and provide editing, design, and production services to the ACHP;

0 Provide financial, administrative and support services to the ACHP and its staff; and

0 Provide word processing support to the entire ACHP operation.

Most of these objectives do not yield readily to quantification.

Program Structure

ACHP members develop policy, design program initiatives, and make recommendations to the President, the Congress and the heads of other Federal agencies. The ACHP normally convenes quarterly. It usually meets in Washington, DC, but often goes to other parts of the country to view emerging preservation issues. The Chairman may convene unassembled meetings to obtain ACHP action on important issues.

Members appointed by the Chairman also participate in a flexible subcommittee structure. The Chairman appoints panels of ACHP members to formulate comments on Section 106 cases several times a year. Task forces and committees of members may be formed to address particular matters. On the average, 3 such subgroups are at work at any given time during the year. Each meets about 5 to 6 times in the course to its existence, is served by 1 to 3 staff members, and produces reports, comments and policy recommendations.

The role of the membership is to set general policy, initiate or approve programs and activities, and oversee the execution of policies, programs and activities. Members participate in specific activities individually, in groups, and as the full membership. The Chairman ensures that the Executive Director carries out approved ACHP policies and conforms to them. The Chairman makes policy decisions on behalf of the membership as needed when the membership is unavailable to act, consulting with the membership as appropriate. In the absence or unavailability of the Chairman, the Vice Chairman exercises these authorities.

The Executive Directorate is comprised of the Executive Director, the Deputy Executive Director, and the office of General Counsel. The Executive Director is responsible for the day to day execution of programs and activities, subject to the policy guidance of the Chairman and the membership. The Executive Director supervises the ACHP to staff ensure that their individual actions and objectives are consistent with policies established by the membership.

The Office of General Counsel provides legal services to the members and staff, handles legislative activities, and coordinates ACHP participation in lawsuits with the Department of Justice. The General Counsel also serves as the Deputy Executive Director.

General Administration, which contains the Administrative Officer and the Information Management Center, provides administrative services to the members and staff. This includes personnel, budget, finance, procurement, and travel, with support from the Department of the Interior on a reimbursable basis as directed by statute. Rent, communications, printing, other services (contracting), supplies, and equipment for the entire ACHP operation are reflected as administrative costs in this unit. The Information Management Center provides word processing, database management, telecommunications, and general computer support for the entire office.

Program Activities and Accomplishments in FY 1989

The Council Direction Unit conducts a variety of program activities, pursuant to the ACHP's general advisory authorities of Section 202(a), that are designed to improve the effectiveness of the national historic preservation program. It also generally oversees the implementation of Section 106. Carrying out these activities involves the members, individually and in groups, working closely with the staff and other agencies and organizations.

The ACHP members met three times in FY 1989. Under the Chairman's leadership, the members assumed a more active role in advising on historic preservation policy matters. At their February meeting, the membership examined urban historic preservation issues, holding an onsite meeting in New Orleans. Firsthand observation and public testimony aided the Council in taking policy positions on preservation tax credits and international recommendations on urban preservation. The following meeting in Washington continued this approach, the focus being the impact of urbanization on rural historic properties. Positions were taken on strengthening Federal laws to protect historic properties, improving the consideration of rural historic properties in the Section 106 process and encouraging more intergovernmental cooperation in preservation planning. The final meeting of the fiscal year examined the preservation implications of the Department of Defense's Base Realignment and Closure program, affecting hundreds of historic military properties. The Council met onsite at the Presidio in San Francisco.

A high point of the year was the presentation of historic preservation awards commemorating twenty years of excellence in the national historic preservation program. President Reagan personally presented the President's Historic Preservation Awards and Chairman Rogers and Secretary of the Interior Hodel presented National Historic Preservation Awards.

The members were actively involved in program through a variety of working groups and task forces. The Section 106 Guidance Task Force completed its work on public participation guidelines for the Section 106 process. The Awards Task Force completed its two-year effort of overseeing the implementation of the awards program. A new member task force was established to oversee a review of the effectiveness of the current Section 106 regulations, which have now been in place for three years. Its report will be forthcoming early in FY 1990.

More frequently than in previous years, the members were actively involved in providing Council comment to Federal agencies where agreement had not been reached through the Section 106 process. The members also reviewed several cases where actions of an agency or applicant for Federal assistance had foreclosed the Council's opportunity to comment.

During FY 1989, a principal concern of the Council Direction unit continued to be the management of the Section 106 process, which accounts for the major portion to the ACHP's program activities. Prior years had witnessed various procedural and legal changes in the regulations, which went into effect on October 1, 1986, resulting in a number of improvements in the review process. During FY 1989, the focus was on staff realignments to more efficiently carry out the Council's Section 106 responsibilities. These changes are discussed in the Cultural Resource Preservation unit.

With the growing familiarity of Federal agencies with the revised Section 106 regulations and the increasing numbers of Federal officials exposed to the Council's training course, the Section 106 caseload continues to grow beyond earlier projections. The Council caseload grew by 40% in FY 1988; for FY 1989 the figures increased by another 33% . Meanwhile, staff resources have remained constant at 33 FTEs.

Internal management improvements helped us to meet this demand and conversion of one support position to Historic Preservation Specialist at the beginning of FY 1989 increased the staff available for casework. However, the major impact has been to cut back on the Council's efforts to work with Federal agencies in order to improve their internal historic preservation systems and their ability to deal independently with historic preservation issues. Accordingly, it will require additional resources to both meet the increased caseload and pursue program improvement goals.

The ACHP Section 106 caseload in FY 1989 was 2903 Federal undertakings that required substantive ACHP review of impacts on historic properties. Of these 1602 required consultation with such agencies, and 602 resulted in Memoranda of Agreement specifying actions to avoid or mitigate harm to historic properties. During FY 1989, the ACHP resolved all but 8 of its closed cases through consultation; these cases were commented upon by panels of Council Members or by Chairman's letters. A detailed analysis of Section 106 activity is found in the Cultural Resource Preservation Unit and Table III.

The Office of General Counsel, which provided principal staff support to the ACHP's efforts to make comprehensive improvements to the Section 106 regulations, continued to play an important part in implementing the new regulations. Interpretative memoranda and general legal advice contributed to the smooth functioning of the process. Substantial time was also spent on assisting the Justice Department in litigation involving Section 106, as FY 1989 witnessed several major lawsuits challenging Federal agency compliance with the National Historic Preservation Act. The office was also responsible for pursuing the Council's reauthorization, which was enacted on August 3, 1989 as P.L. 101-70.

The Office of Communications and Publications (OCP) coordinates the Council's public information activities and produces the publications relating to the Council's activities. While substantial time is spent handling public inquiries about the work of the Council and the Section 106 process, the major thrust of the office is provide written materials reaching a wide audience of government officials and the public to improve their understanding of and participation in the national historic preservation program.

Efforts continued this fiscal year to expand and improve explanatory guidance about Section 106 regulatory improvements that took effect in October 1986. Emphasis this year focused on educating agencies and the public about how various parties can participate in Section 106 review. A major new guidance booklet on public participation was issued, as were guidance booklets on document preparation, an explanation of Federal responsibilities under Section 110 of NHPA, and a technical guide on fire safety retrofitting of historic properties. The last was jointly published with the General Services Administration.

OCP also completed briefer fact sheets that concerned participation in Section 106 by SHPOs; local governments; applicants for and recipients of Federal assistance, permits, and licenses; and compliance with Section 111 of NHPA. Under development during FY 1989 was a revised version of Section 106, Step-by-Step, the basic regulatory explanatory tool of the agency. It is being updated to reflect new guidance.

Also during FY 1989 the two major training manuals used in conjunction with "Introduction to Federal Projects and Historic Preservation Law" were revised and their conversion to electronic production media was begun. These volumes, which total more than 500 pages, are developed and produced by Council staff and printed by the General Services Administration, which cosponsors the training program. Promotional literature about the training program was developed in cooperation with the Office of Program Review and Education and issued to prospective clients.

As every fiscal year, the Council released its legislatively mandated Report to the President and Congress, which this year provided a detailed look at the Council's accomplishments and challenges during 1988. It reviewed trends and issues relative to Section 106 review, special Council activities such as the creation of a historic preservation resource management plan for the U.S. Military Academy at West Point, and the President's and National Historic Preservation Awards program.

Distribution of Council publications is carefully planned to reach the specific portion of the preservation or government community most likely to benefit from the specific piece. During 1988 a nationwide notification of Council publications now available was completed and many requests for publications filled as a result. Because of limited budget, both for printing and mailing, distribution lists are kept very current and mailings carefully targeted.

A complete listing of publications printed during FY 1989 appears as Table I.

OCP provided principal support and coordination for the President's Historic Preservation Awards and National Historic Preservation Awards program, which concluded in November. Considerable public attention was focused on accomplishments during the past 20 years under NHPA through press reports about the awards program. A booklet summarizing the winning programs and projects was published.

Effect of the 1991 Request

The requested funding level for the Council Direction Unit reflects primarily the increased costs for maintaining its current level of operations. Additional funds will allow the ACHP to undertake a historic preservation awards program and provide support (other services, supplies and equipment) for the 2 new Historic Preservation Specialists.

TABLE 1
COUNCIL PUBLICATIONS PRINTED DURING FY 1989

Annual Report

Report to the President and Congress, 1988. Specifically mandated by Section 202(b) of NHPA, this report provides a detailed look at the Council's accomplishments and challenges during 1988. It reviews trends and issues relative to Section 106 review, special Council activities such as the creation of a historic preservation resource management plan for the U.S. Military Academy at West Point, litigation, and legislation.

The report also presents a photographic essay highlighting 28 winners of President's Historic Preservation Awards and National Historic Preservation Awards, a program administered by the Council to recognize 20 years of preservation achievement under NHPA. 94 pages.

"Working with Section 106" series

Note: This series is designed to explain Federal agency historic preservation responsibilities under Federal law and current Council regulation. The materials are prepared in a simple-to-read, lay-oriented manner to make regulatory compliance as understandable and efficient as possible.

Newly issued:
Public Participation in Section 106 Review: A Guide for Agency Officials. This booklet helps agencies meet their regulatory responsibilities for involving the public in the Section 106 review process. It defines public participation principles, criteria for evaluating an agency's existing public participation program (to avoid duplicative efforts in meeting Section 106 requirements), methods of public participation, and how agencies should document their public participation efforts. Special consideration is given to the role of "interested persons," as defined in Council regulations, in Section 106 review. 31 pages.

Preparing Agreement Documents. This extensive compilation of Section 106 "agreement documents" demonstrates to agencies how to write documents that will be acceptable to the Council during Section 106 review. As regulatory revisions in 1986 transferred much of this drafting responsibility directly to agencies, this booklet is valuable in saving agencies time and money, since it shows what is, and is not, acceptable to the Council when it reviews these items under Section 106. The booklet was first distributed to agencies and States in August 1988 in draft form, comments and suggestions about its content and presentation solicited and incorporated into the final issuance. 88 pages.

Technical material

Fire Safety Retrofitting for Historic Buildings. Jointly issued with the General Services Administration, this booklet explains methods and techniques for fire safety retrofitting that do least harm to the historic qualities of older buildings. Following these methodologies not only makes good construction and historic preservation sense, it assists agencies in choosing retrofitting approaches that will be acceptable under Section 106 review. 28 pages; September 1989.

Fact Sheet series

Note: Council fact sheets are a "quick and easy" explanatory method for a number of limited topics. Each fact sheet is written for trouble-free understanding by the Council's Section 106 constituents.

Newly issued:
Fact Sheet: Section 106 Participation by Applicants for and Recipients of Federal Assistance, Permits, and Licenses. Under some circumstances, Section 106 compliance responsibilities are fulfilled in part by Federal "applicants," who may have little understanding of this process. This item defines which individuals are considered recipients and applicants, how Federal agencies may delegate Section 106 responsibilities to them, and how these people may participate in Section 106 review. 8 pages.

Fact Sheet: Section 106 Participation by Local Governments. Amendments to NHPA spelled out ways that Certified Local Governments may share in Section 106 responsibilities. This fact sheet explains how, and also how non-CLG local governments may participate when Section 106 review involves properties or circumstances within their jurisdiction. 8 pages.

Fact Sheet: Section 106 Participation by State Historic Preservation Officers. This fact sheet outlines the duties of the SHPO, explains how s/he participates in Section 106 review, and tells how the SHPO fits into the overall national historic preservation program.

Fact Sheet: Consulting the Council Under Section 111 of NHPA. This item explains how Federal agencies may comply with Section 111, which authorizes agencies to lease and exchange properties following consultation with the Council. 3 pages.

Materials reprinted during FY 1989

The following items were reprinted during the year in order to meet demands:

Section 106, Step-by-Step. 63 pages

Protection of Historic Properties (36 CFR Part 800). 19 pages

Preparing Agreement Documents (draft version). 78 pages

Identification of Historic Properties: A Decisionmaking Guide for Managers. 35 pages

Issues for Discussion: Winter Meeting. 41 pages

Fact Sheet: About the Council
Fact Sheet: Five Minute Look at Section 106 Review.
Fact Sheet: Council Staff
Fact Sheet: Council Members
Fact Sheet: Council Publications
Fact Sheet: 1989 Training Schedule

Press releases
Agency stationery items

FY 1991 Requirements - Council Direction Unit

Object Class Distribution by Activity

1.	Council Members	FTE	Amount ($000)
11	Personnel Compensation Members (10)	-	15.0
12	Personnel Benefits		1.0
21	Travel & Transportation of persons Chairman and members		20.0
23.3	Communications, utilities and misc charges		2.0
25	Other services		3.0
		Total, Council Members	41.0

2.	Executive Directorate	FTE	Amount ($000)
11	Personnel Compensation	(4)	
	Executive Director	1	92.6
	General Counsel	1	88.4
	Attorney Adviser	1	56.8
	Sec/Asst for Member Services	1	32.6
	Merit pay/incentive awards		4.0
		Subtotal	274.4
12	Personnel benefits		52.0
21	Travel		15.0
Total, Executive Directorate			341.4

3. Communications and Publications

11 Personnel compensation	(3)	
- Director	1	37.8
- Publications coordinator	1	31.2
- Editorial Assistant	1	23.0
- Merit pay/incentive awards		2.0
	Subtotal	94.0
12 Personnel Benefits		19.0
21 Travel		3.0
24 Printing		58.0
25 Other Services		16.0
26 Supplies		5.0
Total, Communications & Publications		195.0

Administrative Services

11 Personnel compensation	(5)	
- Administrative Officer	1	64.6
- Administrative Assistant	1	30.5
- Inform Res Mgr	1	32.0
- Data mgt clerks	2	42.0
- Merit pay/incentive awards		2.0
	Subtotal	171.1
12 Personnel Benefits		38.0
21 Travel		2.0
23.1 Rent		175.0
23.2 Communications, utilities and misc charges		30.0
25 Other Services		89.0
26 Supplies		9.0
31 Equipment		18.0
		532.1

Total. Administrative Services

Total, Council Direction		1,109.5
less Personnel lapse		- 3.5
	Grand Total	1,106.0
	FTE	(12)

(dollars in thousands)

Request for 1991	FY 1991 Base	FY 1991 Est.	Difference
$	1,097	1,106	+ 9
(FTE-T)	(12)	(12)	-

Summary Distribution by Object Class

The Object Class detail for the requested $1,116,000 is as follows:

	FTE-T	AMOUNT
11-Personnel Compensation	(12)	551,000
12 Personnel Benefits		110,000
21 Travel		40,000
23.1 Rent		175,000
23.2 Communications, utilities and misc charges		32,000
24 Printing		58,000
25 Other Services		108,000
26 Supplies		14,000
31 Equipment		18,000
	Total	1,106,000

Note: Object Classes 23.1 through 31 represent administrative support costs ($420,000) for the entire Council organization and are carried in this subunit for ease of display and analysis.

Cultural Resource Preservation

Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act requires that Federal agencies take into account the effects of their undertakings on historic properties and afford the ACHP reasonable opportunity to comment on such undertakings. Sections 2 and 110(a), (b), (d), (f), and (g) of the Act set forth general standards by which the adequacy of an agency's efforts to take effects into account may by judged. Other sections of the Act and other statutory authorities give the ACHP related review responsibilities (e.g., Section 110(f), 111, and 202(a)6 of the Act; Section 102(2)(C) of the National Environmental Policy Act; Section 9(a) of the Mining in National Parks Act; and Section 110 of the Housing and Community Development Act). However, Section 106 constitutes the ACHP central authority for the review of Federal agency actions and the overall system of review is referred to as the "Section 106 process".

At the beginning of FY 1987, the ACHP put into operation revised regulations governing the Section 106 process. The basic system of consultation to identify historic properties, assess effects and develop alternatives to protect historic values remained essentially unchanged. However, numerous streamlining elements were introduced, making the process more flexible, reducing ACHP involvement in routine consultations, and imposing time limits for ACHP actions. The revised regulations made it possible for the ACHP to respond effectively to a rapidly increasing caseload over the past two fiscal years, although planned expansion of some program improvement activities has been deferred due to funding limitations.

The FY 1991 request adds resources to meet the increasing Section 106 caseload and to expand necessary program improvement activities.

Objectives

During FY 1989, the ACHP sought to attain the following objectives through the Section 106 process and other means:

1. Review Federal undertakings efficiently and effectively, and ensure that each such review is concluded by an appropriate and timely rendering of ACHP comment;

2. Work with Federal agencies, State Historic Preservation Officers, local governments, Indian tribes, and the private sector to improve the programs by which historic properties are considered in planning Federal undertakings, with the ultimate goal of ensuring such effective planning on the part of all Federal agencies that ACHP participation in project review will become unnecessary.

As part of the latter, the ACHP has begun to look toward the possibility of more active assistance to agencies in early planning activities, as well as targeted guidance and technical assistance to agencies on specific programs and historic preservation problems.

Program structure

Section 106 requires that Federal agencies "take into account" the effects that their actions -- and actions they may assist or license -- may have on historic properties, and give the ACHP a "reasonable opportunity to comment" on such actions.

The ACHP's role in the review of actions under Section 106 is to encourage agencies to consider and, where feasible, adopt measures that will preserve historic properties that would otherwise be damaged or destroyed. The ACHP does not have the authority to alter Federal actions that will affect historic properties; its regulations emphasize consultation among the responsible Federal agency, the State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO), and other interested persons to identify and, if possible, to agree upon how to protect the properties in question.

Section 106 applies to properties that have been listed in the National Register of Historic Places, and, significantly, also to properties that are eligible for listing but have not yet been evaluated. It also applies to a wide range of Federal, federally assisted, and federally licensed actions, for example:

0 Construction of new Federal buildings and management of Federal lands

0 State construction of highways using Federal assistance;

0 Rehabilitation of residential structures by local governments using Community Development Block Grant funds;

0 Private construction or land use projects requiring a permit from a Federal agency.

Briefly, the ACHP regulations set forth a process consisting of five basic steps shown in Table II.

The ACHP's participation in Section 106 review is handled through the Eastern Office of Project Review (EOPR), located in Washington, DC, and the Western Office of Project Review (WOPR), located in Denver. Both offices are staffed largely by Historic Preservation Specialists (GS-9/11/12), who are professionals in such disciplines as history, architecture, architectural history, archeology, and planning. They are assisted by Assistant Historic Preservation Specialists (GS-7), who are often graduate students in preservation-related disciplines. When fully staffed at current levels, EOPR consists of 9 preservation specialists and assistants, and a secretary. WOPR currently consists of 4 specialists and assistants, and a secretary. Each office is supervised by a Director who reports to the Deputy Executive Director.

Program improvement activities, including agency program review and training, are handled by the Office of Program Review and Education (OPRE). This office is presently staffed with the Senior Architect (GS-13), who has primary responsibility for technical assistance and special projects, a Training Coordinator (GS-12), who is responsible for the Council's Section 106 training program and other education activities and one secretary. Staff from EOPR and WOPR participate on special assignments, ranging from part-time involvement in minor projects to longer-term, full-time details. The Director of OPRE reports to the Deputy Executive Director.

PROGRAM ACTIVITIES AND ACCOMPLISHMENTS IN 1989

Section 106 consultation and related work

Agency Project Review. Tables III and IV respectively provide quantitative breakdowns of direct Section 106 work products as well as ancillary activities stemming from technical assistance to agencies, investigation requests from the public and monitoring of performance under concluded agreements . Tables III and IV include the actual number in each category during FY 1988 and FY 1989 as well as projections for FY1990 and FY 1991. Definitions of each category are provided in the explanatory notes accompanying the tables.

Table II

Section 106 Review

How does Section 106 review work? The standard review process is spelled out in Federal regulations issued by the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation. Entitled "Protection of Properties," the regulations appear in the U.S. of Federal Regualtions at 36 CFR Part 800 the process involves five basic steps, as follow.

Step 1: Indentify evaluate historic properties

The Federal agency responsible for an undertaking begins by identifying the historic properties the undertaking may affect. To do this, the agency first reviews background information and consults with the State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO) and others who may know about historic properties in this area. Based on this review the agency determines what additional surveys or other field studies may be needed, and conducts such studies.

If properties, that is, districts, sites, buildings, structures, or objects, are found that may be eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places, but have not yet been included in Register, the agency evaluates them against criteria published by the National Park Service, which maintains the Register. This evaluation is carried out in consultation with the SHPO, and if questions arise about the eligibility of a given property, the agency may seek a formal determination of eligibility from Secretary of the Interior. If a property has already been included in the National Register, of course, further evaluation is not ordinarily necessary. Section 106 review gives equal treatment to properties that have already been included in the Register and those that are eligible for inclusion.

Step 2: Assesses effect

If historic properties that is, properties included in or eligible for inclusion in the National Register, are found, the agency than assesses what effect its undertaking will have on them. Again the agency works with SHPO, and considers the views of others. The agency makes its assessment based on criteria found in the Council's regulations, and can make one of three determinations:

o No effect: the undertaking will not affect historic properties;

o No adverse effect: the undertaking will affect one of more historic properties, but the effect will not be harmful;

o Adverse effect: the undertaking will harm one or more historic properties.

Step 3: Consultation

If an adverse effect will occur, the agency consults with the SHPO and others in an effort to find ways to make the undertaking less harmful. Others who are consulted, under various circumstances, may include local govrenments, Indian tribes, property owners, other members of the public, and the Council. Consultation is designed to result in a Memorandum of Agreement (MOA), which outlines measures agreed upon that the agency will take to reduce, avoid, or mitigate the adverse effect. In some cases the consulting parties may agree that no such measures are available, but that the adverse effect must be accepted in the public interest.

If consultation proves unproductive the agency or the SHPO, or the Council itself, may terminate consultation. The agency must submit appropriate documentation to the Council and request the Council's written comments.

Step 4: Council comment

The Council may comment during step 3 of the process, by participating in the consultation and signing the resulting MOA. Otherwise, the agency obtains Council comment by submitting the MOA to the Council for review and acceptance. The Council can accept the MOA, Request changes, or opt to issue written comments. If consultation was terminated, the Council issues its written comments directly to the agency head, as the agency had requested.

Step 5: Proceed

If an MOA is executed, the agency proceeds with its undertaking under the terms of the MOA. In the absence of an MOA, the agency head must take into account the Council's written comments in deciding whether in and how to proceed.

Alternative approaches

The regulations also spell out three alternative means of complying with Section 106. These are

o Programmatic Agreements among an an agency, the Council, one or more SHPOs, and others;

o Counterpart regulations developed by an agency and approved by the Council;

o An agreement between the Council and a State, which substitutes a State review system for the standard Section 106 review process.

TABLE III

Section 106 Casework

	1988 Actual	1989 Actual	1990 Est.	1991 Est.
Carryover from 1987	422	652	990	1065
New Cases Submitted	1754	2251	2520	2810
Annual Caseload	2176	2903	3510	3875
No Adverse Effect	1195	1301	1630	2020
■ Notice to ACHP	284	898	1080	1360
■ Full Documentation	720	229	300	415
■ Conditional	191	174	250	255
Memo. of Agreement	320	602	785	1230
■ SHPO Agency MOAs	206	411	510	770
■ Three-party MOAs	114	191	275	460
Comments by Members	7	8	20	29
Foreclosures	2	2	10	16
Cases Completed	1524	1913	2445	3295
Carryover	652	990	1065	580

No adverse effect determinations (NAE) involve undertakings determined by the responsible agencies, in consultation with SHPOs, to not adversely affect historic properties. There are two possible means of concluding the Section 106 process through NAE: concurrence of the SHPO in the determination, followed by agency **Notice to the ACHP** with summary documentation; or submission of the determination with **full documentation** to the ACHP without SHPO concurrence. In either case, the Council has 30 days for its review. If objections to the determination are noted, the Council may specify conditions which, if accepted by the agency, would remove the basis for objection to the no adverse effect determination (**Conditional** NAE).

Adverse effect determinations are normally concluded through a **Memorandum of Agreement** which sets forth measures to avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse effects to historic properties resulting from an undertaking. **SHPO-Agency MOAs** are agreement negotiated between agencies, SHPOs, and other parties without formal Council participation. Once executed, these are submitted to the Council for 30-day review; the Council can accept the MOA, advise the agency of changes that will make it acceptable, or advise the agency that it will comment on the undertaking rather than accepting the MOA. **Three-part MOAs** are Memoranda of Agreement concluded with active Council participation in the consultation process, and which the Council executes along with the other parties. In a limited number of cases, consultation leading to agreement breaks down and the Section 106 process is concluded through the provision of **Comments by the membership** of the Council to the agency. The comments are rendered after a review of the undertaking by the Council members, usually within 60 days after consultation is terminated.

Foreclosures occur when the ACHP determines that an agency has foreclosed its opportunity to comment on an undertaking, for example, by demolishing a historic building prior to requesting the Council's comments.

Since the changes to the Council's regulations which went into effect in October, 1986, we have continued to see increases in the overall number of cases submitted for Council review under the regulations (FY 1988 = 1754; FY 1989 = 2,251, a 28% overall increase). All general categories of Section 106 casework, including no adverse effects, memoranda of agreement, and provision of Council comment, have increased in FY 1989 and are estimated to continue to do so. Generally, this appears to be a combined result of several factors:

- the Council's successful training program;
- the general distribution of explanatory guidance materials;
- targeted outreach efforts in helping agencies and communities receiving Federal assistance to understand their Section 106 responsibilities; and
- increasingly aggressive action on the part of SHPOs and the public in encouraging agencies and local governments to comply with Section 106.

Likewise, the number of carryover cases shows a significant increase. Given the emphasis on SHPO-agency agreement stemming from the 1986 regulations, this backlog is projected to increase even further in FY 1990. While the increase is initially surprising, it may be explained by the following factors:

- the Council continues to be notified or more actively involved in cases at earlier stages in their development, so that cases remain technically open for a longer period of time;
- staff resources are being called upon with much greater frequency to provide technical advice to agencies and SHPOs, thus reducing time available to bring cases to closure;
- greater public involvement, though often resulting in case resolutions with broader community support, can sometimes result in more protracted consultation; and
- case volume has increased significantly while staff levels have remained constant.

Hence, the overall increase and earlier involvement in many cases is creating an increase in the number of cases remaining unresolved at the end of the year and carried over from one year to the next (also, see Table IV, Public Requests and Advice to SHPOs and Agencies).

The noteworthy reversal that appears to stem from the 1986 revisions to the regulations is the substantial increase in the number of no adverse effect determinations with SHPO concurrence (Notice to ACHP), and the concomitant decrease in no adverse effects lacking SHPO concurrence and submitted to the Council with Full documentation (from 284 no adverse effect determination with summary documentation submitted in FY 1988 to

898 estimated in FY 1989, and from 720 no adverse effect determinations accompanied by full documentation in FY 1988 to 229 in FY 1989). We regard this as a very positive trend, since it demonstrates the enhanced ability of agencies and SHPOs to resolve issues independent of formal Council involvement. It further suggests the need to continue our efforts to provide early technical advice and assistance to agencies and SHPOs which has helped advance this trend.

Overall, we have seen an 88% increase in Memoranda of Agreement (from 320 in FY 1988, to 602 in FY 1989). SHPO-Agency MOAs have doubled from FY 1988 to FY 1989 (from 206 to 411). This is consistent with our expectations under the revised regulations. As mentioned in previous estimates, we had expected this figure to increase, as more resolution of cases occurred between agencies and State Historic Preservation Officers. However, this has also been accompanied by a similar increase in Three-Party MOAs (from 114 to 191). Comments by members and Foreclosures remained static for the two years.

We are responding to this continuing challenge in several ways. First, at the end of FY 1989 the Eastern Office of Project Review was reorganized so that more staff resources could be devoted to complex case review. Staff members were made responsible for specific agencies so that they could develop an in-depth understanding of agency programs driving projects and better advise SHPOs and agencies on solutions to problems.

Second, toward the end of FY 1989, the Council put into operation a computerized data base system for tracking cases and monitoring the products of Section 106 review as well as related actions. Refinement of this system will occur during FY 1990. By FY 1991 we expect to be able to use the data base to analyze trends and patterns in Section 106 cases and related work to provide a better base for long-range planning, targeting of problems and issues, and overall improvement in agency performance (see below).

Finally, the addition of two new staff members in the area of project review (one in mid FY 1990 and one in FY 1991 as requested in this submission) will reduce the backlog of cases. We estimate a 50% reduction in carryover in FY 1991. It will also provide better, more effective review of cases, as well as improve our ability to do case-related work (see below).

Related work. Table IV shows the principal work products related to Section 106 review. All categories of work appear to be experiencing modest increases, with the exception of a major jump in requests for the provision of Advice to SHPOs and agencies (1225 in FY 1988, compared with an estimated 2,400 in FY 1989). As SHPOs and agencies have attempted to resolve more situations by mutual agreement, technical assistance has been necessary in such areas as the assessment of effects of a given project on historic properties, or the appropriate language for inclusion in draft Memoranda of Agreement. The staff has been hard-pressed to respond to this need, but has attempted to do so at some basic level. Once again, the availability of additional staff will allow us to keep pace with these increases and provide the kind of advice and assistance that agencies, SHPOs, and the public have come to expect.

Program Improvement and Oversight

The preceding discussion of individual project review and related activities emphasizes the importance of our long-term objective to seek overall improvement of agency program effectiveness, coordination, and consistency. We have increased efforts with Federal agencies and their partners to improve their understanding of historic preservation requirements as well as their ability to meet them in their planning and management activities.

Achievement of this goal would have substantial benefits, not only in generally improving Federal response to national historic preservation mandates, but also in the specific ability of the Council to meet the challenge of its own rising workload in case-specific project review. Ultimately, the Council's objective remains the long-term reduction in the need for review of individual projects through Section 106 and related authorities.

At the same time, changes in the regulations have reemphasized the importance of public participation in agency decisions affecting historic properties, and provided the impetus for the ACHP to both involve and educate the public about historic preservation. One form of public participation is in the Section 106 review process itself, either as interested individuals or organizations seeking advice and assistance from the Council in investigating agency actions, or as involved parties in consultation on project proposals (see Table IV and preceding discussion). Another approach is through public availability of educational materials and opportunities, and appropriate public input into guidance documents, proposed regulations, and related materials.

Table V quantifies the Council's principal activities in this general area of program improvement.

TABLE IV

Pre- and Post-Case Activities

	1988 Actual	1989 Actual	1990 Est.	1991 Est.
Post Agreement Review	170	236	250	425
Public Requests	296	308	345	400
■ 800.6(e) Requests	0	50	65	85
■ Other Requests	0	258	280	315
Emergency Undertakings	6	9	16	21
Discovery Situations	0	19	26	37
Advice to SHPOs & Agencies	1225	2400	2500	3030

A number of Council activities involve early coordination with agencies and SHPOs, with provision of technical assistance and advice; investigations of agency actions on projects at the request of members of the public or others; specialized review in the event of an emergency or late discovery of a historic property; or review of detailed plans and other products after an agreement has been concluded.

Advise to SHPOS and agencies includes a wide range of informal technical assistance, review of environmental documents or reports, or early coordination in the preliminary stages of project planning. Such advice is often critical to facilitating early agreement being reached by the agency and the SHPO, thus reducing the amount of time the Council will spend on later review of the case.

Review of public requests includes both specific requests from members of the general public for Council review of agency findings involving its identification, evaluation, or effect determinations (**6(e) requests**), as well as more general requests for the Council to investigate whether an agency should be complying with Section 106 for a given project (**Other requests**). With the added emphasis on public participation and notification contained in the Council's current regulations, such requests have become increasingly common in the context of the Section 106 review process.

Emergency undertakings are agency actions resulting from such situations as natural disasters, a governor's declared state of emergency, or locally determined threats to public safety that can qualify for special expedited review under Section 800.12 of the Council's regulations. **Discovery situations** involve those circumstances where an unexpected historic property is found during project implementation; special procedures are provided in Section 800.11 of the Council's regulations.

Finally, **Post-agreement review** involves reviews of plans and specifications, archeological data recovery plans, and other products of the consultation process following agreement, often with provision of detailed technical comments or recommendations. Such reviews tend to be more prevalent as increasing numbers of agreements establish mechanisms for later resolution of issues as planning and design advances.

TABLE V

Program Review and Improvement

	1988 Actual	1989 Actual	1990 Est.	1991 Est.
State Agreements	0	0	2	4
Programmatic Agreements	160	275	280	350
Counterpart Regulations	0	0	0	3
Major Guidance Materials	1	3	2	4
Training				
▪ Section 106 Courses	21	20	20	20
▪ Other Courses and Workshops	29	22	25	30
202(a)(6) Reviews	0	0	0	4

State agreements are mechanisms to permit a State preservation procedure and system to substitute for the normal Section 106 review process under the Council's regulations, and are provided for under Section 800.7 of the Council's regulations.

Programmatic agreements are agreements covering whole agency programs, long-term management of Federal installations, Community Development Block Grant and related community assistance programs administered by local governments, or very large, complex, and multi-year projects (such as a major new pipeline). They may be used to tailor the "normal" Section 106 process to the special needs of such programs or projects.

Counterpart regulations are agency procedures that, when developed in consultation with and approved by the Council, may substitute for the Council's regulations (36 CFR Part 800).

Major guidance materials includes those principal guideline documents that help explain and interpret the Council's regulations, or address problems surrounding a set of related historic preservation issues, such as treatment of archeological properties, identification of historic properties, or public participation in Section 106 review.

Training includes two subcategories. **Section 106 courses** includes the Council's three-day course entitled "Federal Projects and Historic Preservation Law," and taught by a combination of Council staff, outside contract instructors, and SHPO staff. Both open enrollment and special, by-request course offerings for agencies or States are given during the course of the year. **Other courses and workshops** includes both other Council-sponsored workshops and special short training sessions, as well as Council staff participation in agency workshops and less formal forums.

Finally, **202(a)(6)** review includes the formal Council review of an agency program, with the cooperation and assistance of the agency, resulting in recommendations to the agency to help improve the program's effectiveness, consistency, and coordination with the purposes of the National Historic Preservation Act under that statute's Section 202(a)(6).

Program review. During FY 1989, it has remained difficult to pursue this objective systematically with targeted agencies or agency programs, although much work on programmatic agreements (PAs) and other activities was accomplished during the course of the year. The continued increase in Section 106 cases has forced deferring the development of program-wide agreements with agencies, state agreements with the states, counterpart regulations or procedures with agencies, and 202(a)(6) agency program review. This happens because Council response to individual cases must meet regulation - imposed deadlines, while programmatic work has no such strictures. Unfortunately, it is clear that one of the principal mechanisms to reduce individual project review burdens on Council staff in the future lies in systematic investment in such program review and improvement activities.

Including Community Development Block Grant (CDBG) agreements with local governments, the number of PAs executed during FY 1989 has continued to increase from FY 1988 (160 vs. 275). Many other PAs are either in preparation, involve extremely complex and difficult issues and are awaiting internal Federal agency decisions and action, or are on hold pending the availability of Council staff time to deal with them. Since there are no time limits imposed by the regulations on the development of PAs, they have had to assume lower priority than the review of other, more time-sensitive work.

As a result, few large-scale programmatic agreements that could have program-wide effects were concluded in FY 1989, although many CDBG PAs and PAs dealing with large development projects or management of Federal land units (such as a National Forest or military facility) were completed. A major exception was a PA with NASA for its operation and maintenance of 20 National Historic Landmarks. We expect the following program-wide PAs to be concluded in the first half of FY 1990:

- Small Business Administration--loan program
- Environmental Protection Agency--state delegation of water pollution control programs
- Federal Communications Commission--AT&T fiber optic cable licensing program
- National Park Service - park planning program (revision)
- Army - base realignments and closures program
- Forest Service - statewide management of fire towers and administration structures, California

Consultation on other PAs which consumed substantial Council staff time during FY 1989, but which were unresolved and likely to extend well into FY 1990, includes:

- Farmers Home Administration--housing inventory program
- Navajo Nation--reservation management and historic preservation program
- Forest Service--land exchange program
- Bureau of Land Management--statewide land management program, California et al. (revision)

We expect demands for PA development to continue to increase in FY 1990, and these demands will be met to the extent staff resources allow. Other areas have received some attention, including, the Federal archeology policy for dealing with human skeletal remains of concern to Native Americans. Another area is the rural and coastal preservation programs (through, respectively, cooperation with the Farmers Home Administration in technical review of its Congressionally-mandated rural preservation study, and preliminary examination of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's oversight and assistance program for state coastal zone management). We hope to conclude an agreement with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) for its disaster relief program, a need made evident in the wake of Hurricane Hugo and the Loma Prieta earthquake. The Defense Department's military base realignment and closure program will be the subject of considerable attention in FY 1990 and beyond, as will the Resolution Trust Corporation's administration of savings and loan "bailout" bill.

However, many other areas of program review, which deserve attention, are not being pursued because of lack of staff time. These include such work as state agreements, several of which have halted with preliminary discussions; counterpart regulations; and 202(a)(6) review. Targeted review and assistance to provide agencies with systematic advice to make their fulfillment of historic preservation needs more cost-effective is not possible at current staffing levels, given other demands. The addition of two additional positions in the program review area (one in mid - FY 1990 and one in FY 1991, as requested in this submission) would enhance our ability to pursue these needs.

Guidance, technical assistance, and training.

The Office of Program Review and Education provided much of the drafting work for guidance materials produced through the Office of Communications and Publications during FY 1989 (see Council Direction Unit), including publications on "Fire Safety Retrofitting in Historic Buildings" (with GSA), "Preparing Agreement Documents," and "Public Participation in Section 106 Review." Other guidance materials are in various stages of preparation, including a revision to the Council's handbook on "Treatment of Archeological Properties" expected to be completed during FY 1990. However, any accelerated production in this area, including proposed guidance on window retrofitting and materials conservation, historic property painting and maintenance, and a citizen's guide to the Federal historic preservation program, must await increased staff and other resources in FY 1991.

Technical assistance and cooperation with the National Park Service, the National Conference of State Historic Preservation Officers, and others on historic preservation issues of mutual concern, has continued through FY 1989 and is expected to remain at the same or slightly reduced levels throughout FY 1990. Recent activities include the review of proposed NPS guidelines for evaluating historic archeological sites, and the joint Council-NPS publication of annotated Section 110 guidelines.

In the area of education, which the Council views as a substantial means of program improvement, the Council's popular three-day Section 106 training course, co-sponsored by the General Services Administration will continue to be offered. The highest priority training and educational objectives for FY 1990 are:

o to continue to meet 3-day training course demand at the same level as FY 1989
o to reduce training demands on Council staff
o to continue to improve and tailor training materials and instructor's abilities within staff resources
o to continue to participate in some outside workshops and agency training forums

Use of contract instructors and SHPO personnel to teach the Council's training course, the latter begun in FY 1989, will be continued to meet the first two objectives. GSA provided $46,500 in FY 1989 to cover the basic training course expenses and reimbursement of $41,825 has been sought for FY 1990; however, these funds will only serve to maintain the status quo. The only additional planned workshop that will demand a major commitment of Council staff time and other resources is a proposed three day conference on implementation of Interior Department historic preservation standards, currently planned for June, 1990 with the National Park Service and the National Conference of State Historic Preservation Officers.

Additional funding and staff in FY 1991 will enable the Council to more actively work with other agencies and organizations to develop tailored curricula and training to meet agency needs; to update and produce enhanced audiovisual materials; to develop and offer an "advanced" training course for agency personnel who are experienced in the basic Section 106 review process; and to pursue several educational outreach proposals through such national organizations as the American Institute of Architects, the National Alliance of Preservation Commissions, and the National Trust for Historic Preservation.

Special projects. During FY 1989 Council staff completed development of a computerized Historic Resources Management Plan for the United States Military Academy, West Point, New York. This project, which was undertaken in cooperation with the Academy, the Department of the Army Headquarters, and the Army's Construction Engineering Research Laboratory, was designed to create both a prototype management plan and management planning system that would provide a facility with guidance in the treatment of historic architectural, archeological, and cultural resources, and assist them in complying with mandated historic preservation responsibilities. Funds in the amount of $67,100 for FY 1988, and $92,132 for FY 1989, were transferred to the Council by the Army for this project. The plan incorporated all of the Academy's holdings of 20,000 acres and included 1,442 historic buildings and monuments. The facility was provided with a complete data base and planning that can aid them in project design and development. The system also includes a comprehensive, computerized Section 106 review and compliance process.

The basic program developed for West Point can be applied to other real property holding agencies, and potentially to local communities and historic districts as well. The management planning system has been demonstrated to a number of Federal agencies and State Historic Preservation Officers. Several of these have expressed interest in experimenting with the computerized Section 106 review system that was an adjunct of the historic resources management plan.

Currently, we are discussing further application of the resource management program with the Smithsonian Institution, the U.S. Air Force Academy, the Department of the Army housing office (for use on the Army's 425 General Officers' Quarters nationwide), and the National Park Service. The potential impact of the West Point program is far-reaching and its historic property management and planning applications should be pursued. The effect of additional resources in FY 1991 would be to allow further development and application of this positive historic preservation tool, which could have significant long-term effects on historic preservation planning (and Section 106 compliance) at both the local community and the Federal land management level.

Effect of Requested Budget Level

The FY 1991 budget level, includes the addition of two FTEs are Historic Preservation Specialist in the project review area and one in OPRE. It will allow the ACHP to respond promptly and effectively to caseload increases and to undertake expanded program improvement activities.

(Dollars in thousands)

Request for 1991	FY 1991 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Differences
$	1,042	1,132	+90
(FTE-T)	(23)	(25)	(+2)

1991 Requirements - Cultural Resources Preservation Unit

		FTE-T	Amount
11	Personnel Compensation		
	Director, OPRE	1	50.3
	Senior Architect	1	53.6
	Chief, EOPR	1	53.7
	Historic Preservation Spec	12	397.9
	Training Coordinator	1	37.0
	Secretary	2	40.8
	Chief, WOPR	1	50.3
	Historic Preservation Spec	5	177.4
	Secretary	1	21.7
	Merit pay/Incentive awards		15.0
		Subtotal	897.7
12	Personnel Benefits		184.0
21	Travel		65.0
	Total, Cultural Resource Preservation		1,146.7
	Less Personnel Lapse		-14.7
	Grand Total		1,132.0
	(FTE)		(25)

Summary distribution by Object Class
The Object Class detail for the requested $ 1,132,000 is as follows:

	FTE	Amount
Personnel compensation	(25)	$ 883,000
Personnel benefits		184,000
Travel & Transportation of persons		65,000
Total		1,132,000

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION
Summary of Requirements by Object Class
(Dollar Amounts in thousands)

Appropriations: Salaries and Expenses

Object Class	1990 Adjusted Appropriation FTE	1990 Adjusted Appropriation Amount	1991 Estimate FTE	1991 Estimate Amount	Inc.(+) or Dec.(-) FTE	Inc.(+) or Dec.(-) Amount
11 Personnel compensation:						
11.1 Permanent positions -FTE-P...............	31	1,123	33	1,334	+2	+211
11.3 Positions other than permanent	4	82	4	95	--	+13
11.5 Other personnel compensation	--	5	--	5	--	--
Total compensation	35	1,210	37	1,434	+2	+224
Other Objects						
12.1 Personnel benefits		225		294		+69
21.0 Travel & Transportation of persons		75		105		+30
23.1 Rental payments to GSA		168		175		+7
23.2 Communications, utilities, and misc. charges		30		32		+2
24.0 Printing		50		58		+8
25.0 Other services		108		108		
26.0 Supplies and materials		14		14		-
31.0 Equipment		14		18		+4
Total Requirements		1,894		2,238		+344

ACHP-37

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION
SALARIES AND EXPENSES
PROGRAM AND FINANCING (IN THOUSANDS OF DOLLARS)

Identification code 95-2300-0-1-303	1989 Actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Program by activities			
00.01 Direct program	1,757	1,894	2,238
01.01 Reimbursable program	179	150	150
10.00 Total obligations	1,936	2,044	2,388
Financing:			
11.00 Offsetting collections from Federal funds	-179	-150	-150
25.00 Unobligated balance lapsing	21	--	--
39.00 Budget Authority (appropriation)	1,778	1,894	2,238
Budget authority:			
40.00 Appropriation.........	1,778	1,920	2,238
40.00 Reduction pursuant to PL 99-177	--	-26	--
43.00 Appropriation (adjusted)	1,778	1,894	2,238
Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.00 Obligations incurred, net	1,757	1,894	2,238
72.40 Obligated balance, start of year	186	27	38
74.40 Obligated balance, end of year...............	-27	-38	-45
77.00 Adjustments in expired accounts	-57	--	--
90.00 Outlays, excluding pay raised supplemental...	1,862	1,883	2,231

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION
PROGRAM AND PERFORMANCE

The Council provides independent advice to the President and the Congress relating to the National Historic Preservation Program and protects significant historic properties threatened by Federal undertakings.

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION
SALARIES AND EXPENSES
OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (IN THOUSANDS OF DOLLARS)

Identification Code 95-2300-0-1-303		1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Direct obligations:				
	Personnel compensation			
111.101	Full-time permanent	957	1,123	1,334
111.301	Positions other than full-time permanent	87	82	95
111.501	Other personnel compensation	5	5	5
111.901	Total personnel compensation	1,046	1,210	1,434
	Personnel Benefits			
112.101	Civilian	205	225	294
121.001	Travel and transportation of persons	78	75	105
123.101	Rental payments to GSA	165	168	175
123.301	Communications, utilities and misc. charges	34	30	32
124.001	Printing and Reproduction	52	50	58
125.001	Other services	128	108	108
126.001	Supplies and materials	15	14	14
131.001	Equipment	34	14	18
990.001	Subtotal Direct obligations:	1,757	1,894	2,238
Reimbursable obligations:				
99.0	Reimbursable obligations	179	150	150
99.9	Total obligations	1,936	2,044	2,388

Personnel Summary

	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Direct:			
Total number of full-time permanent positions	33	35	37
Total compensable work years	31	35	37
Reimbursable:			
Total number of full-time permanent positions			
Total compensable work years			

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION
DONATIONS (TRUST FUND)
PROGRAM AND FINANCING (IN THOUSANDS OF DOLLARS)

Identification code 95-8298-0-7-303	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Program by activities			
10.0001 Total obligations	1	5	5
Financing:			
60.0001 Budget authority (appropriation) Permanent, indefinite)	1	5	5
Relation of obligations to outlays			
71.0001 Obligations incurred, net.................	1	5	5
72.4001 Obligated balance, start of year	1	1	0
74.4001 Obligated balance, end of year	-1	0	0
90.001 Outlays	1	6	5

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION
PROGRAM AND PERFORMANCE

The Chairman of the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation accepts and uses donated moneys for purposes of the Council (16 U.S.C. 470). It is estimated that donations of $5,000 will be received annually in FY 1990 and FY 1991.

ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION
DONATIONS (TRUST FUND)
OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (IN THOUSANDS OF DOLLARS)

Identification code

95-8298-0-7-303	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
125.101 Other services	1	5	5

NATIONAL CAPITAL PLANNING COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20576

JUSTIFICATION FOR APPROPRIATION

FISCAL YEAR 1991

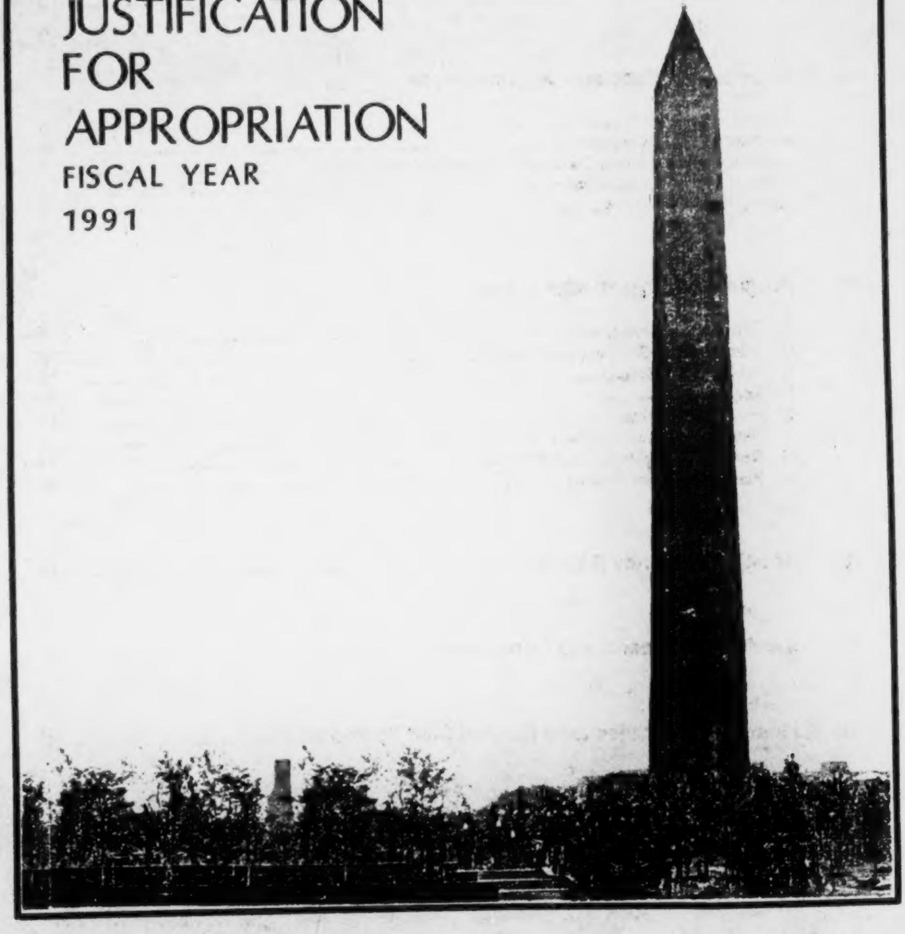


Table of Contents

Page

I. **Organization of Commission and Staff:**

Membership of Commission 1
Functional Organization Chart 2
Staff Organization Chart 3

II. **Salaries and Expenses Appropriation:**

Increase - Decrease Statement 4
Analysis by Object Classification 6
National Capital Planning Commission Responsibilities 7
Status of Pertinent Authorization 8
Appropriation Language 8

III. **Program by Organizational Unit:**

A. Office of the Executive Director 9
B. Administrative Services Section 9
C. Public Affairs Section 9
D. Legal Section 10
E. Secretariat Section 10
F. Planning and Programming Division 11
G. Review and Implementation Division 14
H. Planning Services Division 16

IV. **Additional Agency Request** 19

V. **Services of Experts and Consultants** 21

VI. **Financial Schedules (and Related Staff Positions)** 22

Members of the National Capital Planning Commission

Appointive Members

By the President

Glen T. Urquhart, Chairman
Virginia

William Eugene Baumgaertner
Maryland

W. Don MacGillivray
U.S. At Large

By the Mayor of the District of Columbia

Patricia Elwood
District of Columbia

Robert J. Nash, Vice Chairman
District of Columbia

Ex-Officio Members

Honorable Richard B. Cheney
Secretary of Defense

Honorable Manuel Lujan, Jr.
Secretary of the Interior

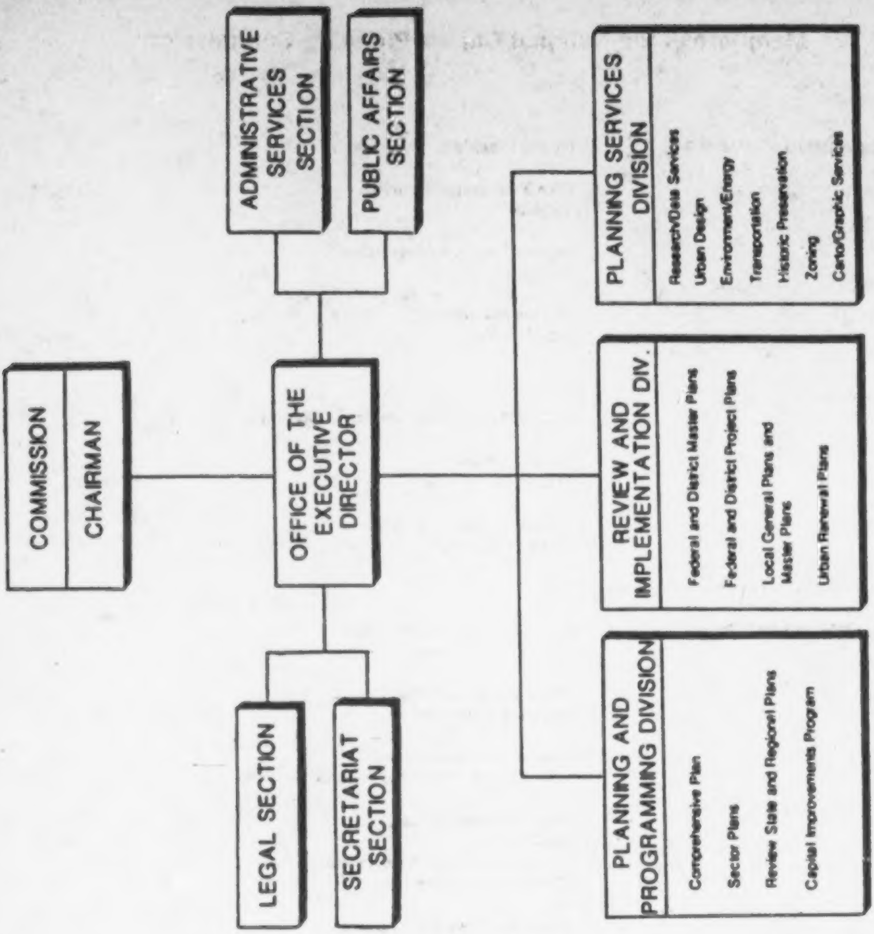
Richard G. Austin (Acting)
Administrator of General Services

Honorable John Glenn
Chairman
Committee on Governmental Affairs
United States Senate

Honorable Ronald V. Dellums
Chairman
Committee on the District of Columbia
United States House of Representatives

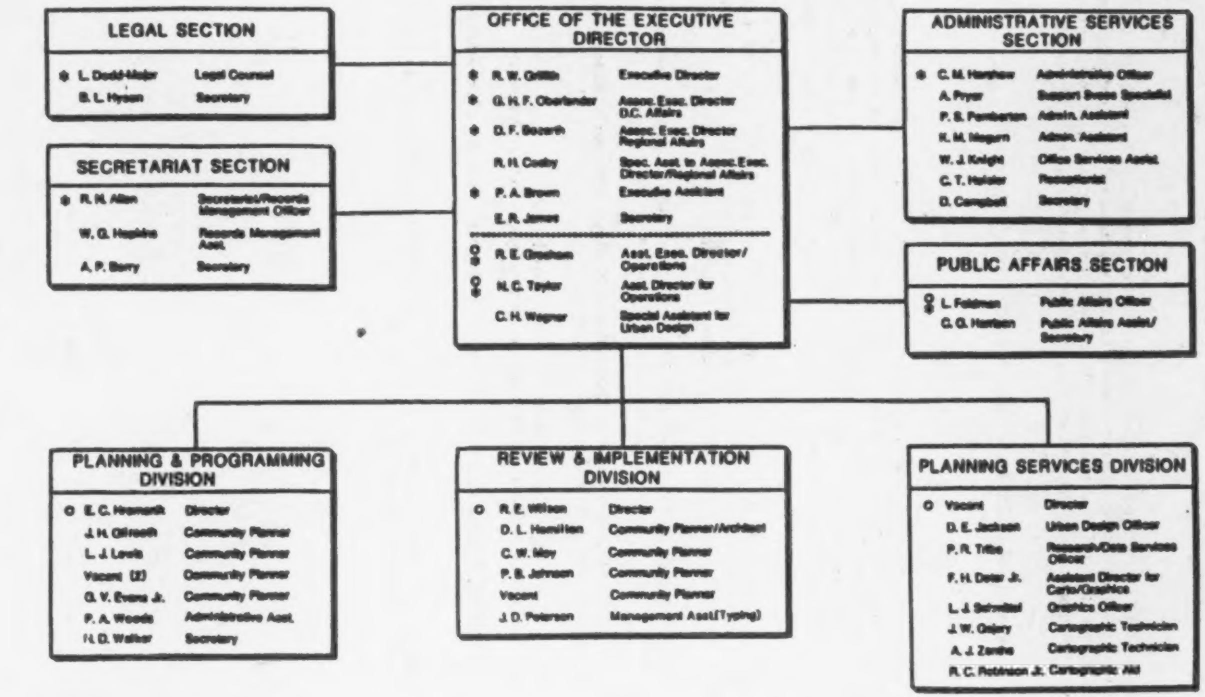
Honorable Marion S. Barry, Jr.
Mayor of the District of Columbia

Honorable David A. Clarke
Chairman
Council of the District of Columbia


COMMISSION
CHAIRMAN
OFFICE OF THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR
ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES SECTION
PUBLIC AFFAIRS SECTION
LEGAL SECTION
SECRETARIAT SECTION
PLANNING SERVICES DIVISION
Research/Data Services
Urban Design
Environment/Energy
Transportation
Historic Preservation
Zoning
Carto/Graphic Services
REVIEW AND IMPLEMENTATION DIV.
Federal and District Master Plans
Federal and District Project Plans
Local General Plans and Master Plans
Urban Renewal Plans
PLANNING AND PROGRAMMING DIVISION
Comprehensive Plan
Sector Plans
Review State and Regional Plans
Capital Improvements Program

NATIONAL CAPITAL PLANNING COMMISSION

STAFF ORGANIZATION



LEGAL SECTION

●	L. Dodd-Major	Legal Counsel
	B. L. Hyson	Secretary

SECRETARIAT SECTION

●	R. H. Allen	Secretariat/Records Management Officer
	W. G. Hopkins	Records Management Asst.
	A. P. Berry	Secretary

OFFICE OF THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

●	R. W. Griffin	Executive Director
●	G. H. F. Oberlander	Assoc. Exec. Director D.C. Affairs
●	D. F. Bocarth	Assoc. Exec. Director Regional Affairs
	R. H. Cooley	Spec. Asst. to Assoc. Exec. Director/Regional Affairs
●	P. A. Brown	Executive Assistant
	E. R. James	Secretary
○ ●	R. E. Gresham	Asst. Exec. Director/ Operations
○ ●	N. C. Taylor	Asst. Director for Operations
	C. H. Wagner	Special Assistant for Urban Design

ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES SECTION

●	C. M. Hershaw	Administrative Officer
	A. Pryor	Support Svcs Specialist
	P. S. Pemberton	Admin. Assistant
	K. M. Magurn	Admin. Assistant
	W. J. Knight	Office Services Asstc.
	C. T. Holder	Receptionist
	D. Campbell	Secretary

PUBLIC AFFAIRS SECTION

○ ●	L. Feldman	Public Affairs Officer
	C. G. Harrison	Public Affairs Asstnt/ Secretary

PLANNING & PROGRAMMING DIVISION

○	E. C. Hromadik	Director
	J. H. Gilreath	Community Planner
	L. J. Lewis	Community Planner
	Vacant (2)	Community Planner
	G. V. Evans Jr.	Community Planner
	P. A. Woods	Administrative Asst.
	H. D. Walker	Secretary

REVIEW & IMPLEMENTATION DIVISION

○	R. E. Wilson	Director
	D. L. Hamilton	Community Planner/Architect
	C. W. Moy	Community Planner
	P. B. Johnson	Community Planner
	Vacant	Community Planner
	J. D. Peterson	Management Asst.(Typing)

PLANNING SERVICES DIVISION

○	Vacant	Director
	D. E. Jackson	Urban Design Officer
	P. R. Tribe	Research/Data Services Officer
	F. H. Dever Jr.	Assistant Director for Carto/Graphics
	L. J. Schwifeld	Graphics Officer
	J. W. Ogary	Cartographic Technician
	A. J. Zanthe	Cartographic Technician
	R. C. Robinson Jr.	Cartographic Aid

● Executive Staff ○ Operations Directors Team ▲ W. F. McIntosh Intermittent Reemployed Annuitant Board of Zoning Adjustments

National Capital Planning Commission

Fiscal Year 1991 Budget Request

Increase-Decrease Statement

The Commission's FY 1991 budget request reflects the same level of personnel staffing as in FY 1989 and FY 1990. Given the variety of skills necessary to perform Commission objectives, and recognizing that in certain technical specialty areas the staff is already limited to only one person (or less, *e.g.*, one person with responsibilities for two or more specialties), we respectfully request no further cuts in staff levels be made at this time.

The dollar amount requested is $3,258,000, an increase of $168,000.

INCREASES

1. Personnel Compensation and benefits (Object Classification 11.0 and 12.0) - Increase to reflect adjustment for anticipated increase to SES salary base effective in 1991, billing by the Employment Standards Administration, Office of Workers Compensation Programs for benefits paid on behalf of NCPC under the Federal Employees' Compensation Act, and costs associated with increased employee participation in the new Federal Employees' Retirement System, Social Security, and the Thrift Savings Fund.

2. Rental Payments to GSA (Object Classification 23.1) - Increase for [illegible] SA made to the FY 1990 rental rates to reflect changes in GSA regional operating costs and th [illegible] r price index. These rental rate estimates apply to the current location of the agency.

3. Communications (Object Classification 23.3) - Increased costs for postage, telepho [illegible] messenger services.

4. Printing and Reproduction (Object Classification 24.0) - Represents a modest increase in costs for printing with no increase in the level of activity.

5. Contracts with Experts and Consultants (Object Classification 25.0) - Includes funding of a 150K initiative for a three dimensional computer assisted design/geographic information system.

6. Supplies and Materials (Object Classification 26.0) - Increase in cost of supplies based on FY 1990 activity level.

7. Equipment (Object Classification 31.0) - Represents increased costs of copy machine rental and costs involved with maintaining agency computer hardware.

In summary, the increase is due to costs resulting from statutory pay changes, the increased participation in the Federal Employees Retirement System (FERS), and higher rent charged by GSA for leased space. This also includes funding of an initiative for a three dimensional computer assisted design/geographic information system, estimated to cost $150,000. A breakdown by object classification appears on the next page, and a three-year spread is shown below:

FY 1989	FY 1990	FY 1991
$2,962,000	$3,090,000[1]	$3,258,000

---

[1] Includes partial sequester of 1.4%, P.L. 99-177 & P.L. 101-239

FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET SALARIES & EXPENSES APPROPRIATION

ANALYSIS BY OBJECT CLASSIFICATION

Classification		FY-1989	FY-1990	FY-1991	DIFFERENCE BETWEEN FY 90 & 91
11.0	Personnel Compensation	$1,771,000	$2,057,000	2,071,000[1]	+ 14,000
12.1	Personnel Benefits	258,000	255,000	278,000	+23,000
21.0	Travel & Transportation of Persons	45,000	20,000	20,000	-
23.1	Rental Payments to GSA (RENT)	416,000	424,000	445,000	+21,000
23.3	Communications, Utilities and Miscellaneous Charges	68,000	74,000	77,000	+3,000
24.0	Printing & Reproduction	62,000	25,000	33,000	+8,000
25.0	Contracts with Experts Consultants	84,000	110,000	197,000[2]	+87,000
25.0	Other Services	57,000	91,000	94,000	+3,000
26.0	Supplies & Materials	45,000	24,000	26,000	+2,000
31.0	Equipment	93,000	10,000	17,000	+7,000
Subtotal		$2,899,000	$3,090,000[3]	$3,258,000	+168,000
	Unobligated balance lapsing	63,000			
Total		$2,962,000	$3,090,000[3]	$3,258,000	+168,000

[1] Per OMB instructions, this does not include anticipated budget year pay increase.

[2] Includes 150K enhancement request for 1991 major initiative.

[3] Reduction due to partial sequester of 1.4%, P.L. 99-177 & P.L. 101-239.

National Capital Planning Commission

Fiscal Year 1991 Budget Request

Responsibilities

The National Capital Planning Commission (NCPC) was established in 1924 as a park planning agency. Two years later its role was expanded to include comprehensive planning. In 1952, under the National Capital Planning Act, it was designated as the central planning agency for the Federal and District of Columbia (D.C.) governments.

In 1973, the National Capital Planning Act was again amended by the D.C. Home Rule act which made the Mayor of D.C. the chief planner for D.C., while the Commission continued to serve as the central planning agency for the Federal government in the Washington area.

NCPC activities cover the National Capital Region, which includes D.C. and the counties of Prince George's and Montgomery in Maryland; Arlington, Fairfax, Prince William, and Loudoun in Virginia; plus the independent cities and towns within the outer boundaries of these counties.

The Commission's three major functions are:

1. Preparation of Plans and Programs.

   A. Preparation and adoption of the Federal elements (i.e., facilities, employment, foreign missions and international organizations, historic preservation, parks, etc.) of the Comprehensive Plan for the National Capital and review of D.C. elements for Federal interest. The plan is a statement of goals, policies, and guidelines for the future development of the National Capital (all land in The District of Columbia and Federal property within the region).

   B. Preparation, adoption, and submission annually to the Office of Management and Budget of a five-year Federal Capital Improvements Program (FCIP) for the region containing land acquisitions and development proposals from all Federal agencies. After the Commission reviews the various proposals they are considered for funding by Congress.

2. Review of Plans and Proposals.

   A. Approval of plans for new Federal buildings in the District of Columbia;

   B. Review of plans for Federal buildings and installations in the region;

   C. Approval of plans for new D.C. government buildings in the central area of D.C., including the Downtown Urban Renewal Area as well as the Shaw Urban Renewal Area just north of downtown;

   D. Review of other proposed D.C. policies, plans, and programs, including master plans, project plans, annual capital improvements programs, and zoning changes; and

   E. Review of plans and programs (including zoning, comprehensive plans, area plans and capital improvements programs) proposed by state, regional, and local agencies for their impact on the Federal interest.

3. Protection and promotion of the Federal interest in planning for the future development of the National Capital Region and coordination of Federal plans with local, state, and regional plans and programs.

National Capital Planning Commission

Status of Pertinent Authorization

The authorization for the present account (31-28-2500-0-1-451) is contained in the National Capital Planning Act of 1952, as amended (40 U.S.C. 71-71i; D.C. Code secs. 1-1001 to 1-1010). There are no estimates herein contained that exceed any limitations placed on the Commission by Committee Reports for the preceding fiscal year.

Appropriation Language

Salaries and Expenses

For necessary expenses, as authorized by the National Capital Planning Act of 1952 (40 U.S.C. 71-71i), including services as authorized by 5 U.S.C. 3109, $3,258,000.

(Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act,1990)

Program by Organizational Unit

A. Office of the Executive Director

The National Capital Planning Commission is managed by the Executive Director who makes policy recommendations and supervises, directs, and reviews the work of the staff.

There are six (6) additional professional staff positions in the Office of the Executive Director: an Associate Executive Director for Regional Affairs (AED-RA); an Associate Executive Director for District of Columbia Affairs (AED-DCA); an Assistant Executive Director for Operations; an Assistant Director for Operations; a Special Assistant for Regional Affairs; and a Special Assistant for Urban Design.

The AED-RA, supported by a Special Assistant, is responsible for the planning and review functions as they relate to the region outside of the District of Columbia. He is also responsible for coordinating Federal planning matters with the Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments (COG).

The responsibilities of the AED-DCA are to manage the planning and review functions within the District of Columbia. He is also responsible for the Commission's reports to the Zoning Commission of the District of Columbia and coordinating planning matters with the Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation.

The Assistant Executive Director for Operations and Assistant Director for Operations supervise the three (3) divisions, the Public Affairs Section and a Special Assistant on a daily basis.

B. Administrative Services Section

The Administrative Officer:

1. acts on the behalf of the Executive Director in matters of financial management and accounting, budget preparation and control, personnel management, procurement and contracting; space and facilities management, property records and accountability, and other general administrative functions;

2. represents the Executive Director in the Commission's external relationships in matters concerning budget, staffing levels, facilities, and equipment;

3. provides advice on major administrative policies and procedures;

4. serves as focal point for the collection and processing of resources/budget data and funding plans for the Commission; and

5. insures that legislative restrictions and similar requirements in fiscal, personnel management and all other administrative matters are fully understood and complied with in carrying out the mission of the agency.

C. Public Affairs Section

The Public Affairs Officer:

1. serves as the Commission's contact with the news media;

2. provides editorial services--writing and editing--for publications and documents;

3. coordinates NCPC's public participation program involving individuals and groups affected by Commission actions and policies;

4. provides information to representatives of other Federal and local governmental agencies;

5. serves as information liaison on non-legislative and non-budgetary matters with the offices of Members of Congress and the appropriate Congressional committees;

6. advises the Commission and the Executive Director on public affairs strategies and counsels them on communication matters;

7. participates in the planning, production, installation and operation of audio-visual products such as exhibits, films, video tapes, film strips and slide presentations; and

8. serves as the principal adviser to the Executive Director on the planning, production, distribution, and cost-effectiveness of publications.

D. Legal Section

The Legal Counsel:

1. advises on the statutory powers, duties, and functions of the Commission and on legal questions in the fields of planning, plan review, urban renewal, environment, transportation, open space, and landmarks preservation; provides legal advice on regulatory matters; and performs functions relative to agency ethics and legal aspects of freedom of information requirements;

2. reviews and prepares reports on proposed and pending legislation; assists in the preparation of Congressional testimony; provides statutory and regulatory drafting services; and provides Congressional and Executive Branch liaison on legislative matters; and

3. reviews and prepares litigation reports, pleadings and briefings for, or together with, the Department of Justice and other parties.

E. Secretariat Section

The Secretariat:

1. prepares or supervises the preparation of notices, agendas, memoranda of actions, and other materials related to Commission meetings; prepares certifications and notifications to Federal, State, and local governmental authorities of Commission actions; and authorizes compensation to Commission members in attendance at meetings;

2. advises the presiding officer at Commission meetings on Commission By-Laws and Standing Rules of Procedure; and prepares proposed amendments to the By-Laws and Standing Rules; and

3. stores and maintains the official records of the Commission, handles activities related to the Privacy Act and Freedom of Information Act, and supervises mailroom and Central File operations.

F. Planning and Programming Division

This division conducts planning and programming activities in order to provide a basis for planning policy decisions and a long-range context for the review of Federal projects.

Specifically, this division:

1. prepares, modifies, and updates the Federal elements of the Comprehensive Plan;

2. performs Federal interest reviews of District of Columbia elements of the Comprehensive Plan and of the long-range plans of other jurisdictions;

3. prepares special planning studies;

4. reviews Federal agency capital budget requests;

5. prepares a Federal Capital Improvements Program; and

6. provides planning guidance and advice to Federal agencies.

FY 1989 Accomplishments

In FY 1989, this division:

1. completed an interim planning report containing plans demonstrating alternative concepts for the future development of the Monumental Core as part of the preparation of a Monumental Core Sector Plan element of the Comprehensive Plan;

2. completed preparation of the eight adopted elements of the Comprehensive Plan for the National Capital for printing, including text, photos, maps and other graphic materials;

3. prepared a study to identify the security concerns of Federal agencies related to the development of areas surrounding Federal installations and local zoning practices leading to additional policies in elements of the Comprehensive Plan;

4. completed studies related to the establishment, in conjunction with GSA, of procedures for Commission review and comment on proposed lease space prospectuses in the National Capital Region;

5. prepared surveys and studies of night lighting in the central Mall area and the Federal Triangle to promote a coordinated approach to this important contributor to the beauty and image of the National Capital;

6. prepared a review and analysis of visitor parking alternatives in the Mall area, including underground parking proposals and satellite fringe parking areas;

7. modified the Federal Facilities element of the Comprehensive Plan to provide for the location of the National Foreign Affairs Training Center in Arlington County, Virginia, and to permit agency principal offices to locate in the Southeast Federal Center in the District of Columbia;

8. modified the Parks, Open Space and National Features element of the Comprehensive Plan to reflect changes in the boundaries of the George Washington Memorial Parkway in Arlington County, Virginia;

9. completed the Federal Capital Improvements Program for Fiscal Years 1990-1994 which includes 233 projects at an estimated cost of $3.3 billion. The Commission also recommended 15 additional projects to be considered by Federal agencies for future incorporation into the program to implement the Comprehensive Plan and related planning objectives;

10. completed the review of FY 1991 capital budget requests of Federal agencies for development in the National Capital Region. This covered the requests of 14 Federal agencies involving a total of 83 individual projects for land acquisition and/or construction in the National Capital Region; and

11. reviewed Federal agency plans for consistency with the Comprehensive Plan, in coordination with the Review and Implementation Division, as a means of implementing the Comprehensive Plan.

FY 1990 Activities

In FY 1990, activities will focus on:

1. completing the preparation of the Monumental Core Sector Plan for Commission adoption after public and agency review and comment on the general development plan proposals;

2. contributing to the crafting of a vision of how the Federal government in the National Capital Region will function in the Year 2050;

3. continuing preparation of studies for a general development plan for the Beltsville Federal Planning Area;

4. reviewing D.C. elements of the Comprehensive Plan or amendments submitted by the D.C. government to ensure that they will not have a negative impact on Federal activities or interests;

5. reviewing comprehensive planning proposals by regional agencies and organizations for impacts on Federal interests;

6. modifying and updating the Federal elements of the Comprehensive Plan to reflect changed conditions or new proposals;

7. preparing the Federal Capital Improvements Program for the National Capital Region for Fiscal Years 1991-1995; and

8. reviewing FY 1992 capital budget requests of Federal agencies.

FY 1991 Objectives

In FY 1991, objectives include:

1. completing the preparation of a general development sector plan for the Beltsville Federal Planning Area for Commission adoption after public and agency review and comment on plan proposals;

2. initiating preparation of a general development sector plan for the Quantico Federal Planning Area, which includes the Marine Corps Development and Education Center, Quantico National Cemetery, Prince William Forest Park, and the Federal Bureau of Investigation Academy;

3. reviewing, modifying, and updating the Federal elements of the Comprehensive Plan to reflect changed conditions which have occurred since the adoption of the elements;

4. continuing to assist in the crafting of a vision of how the Federal government in the National Capital Region will function in the Year 2050;

5. reviewing D.C. elements or amendments of the Comprehensive Plan to ensure that they will not have a negative impact on Federal activities or interests in the National Capital;

6. reviewing comprehensive planning proposals by regional agencies and organizations for impacts on Federal interests;

7. preparing the Federal Capital Improvements Program for Fiscal Years 1992-1996. Incorporated will be long-range proposals to implement the Federal elements of the Comprehensive Plan and agency proposals for the long-range development of Federal facilities; and

8. reviewing FY 1993 capital budget requests of Federal agencies.

G. Review and Implementation Division

This division coordinates development plans and reviews the plans of Federal agencies, the District of Columbia, and other local jurisdictions.

Specifically, this division:

1. reviews master plans and individual project plans for Federal and the District of Columbia installations and facilities;

2. prepares and reviews urban renewal plan modifications for urban renewal areas in the District of Columbia;

3. conducts Federal interest reviews of local master, area and sector plans and capital improvements programs;

4. coordinates development planning between the Federal government and the District of Columbia government and other local jurisdictions; and

5. consults with Federal and the District of Columbia agencies to secure approved master and individual project plans for their installations and facilities.

FY 1989 Accomplishments

In FY 1989, this division:

1. reviewed and made recommendations on 135 Federal, District of Columbia, and local master and development plans, and special projects; and

2. reviewed the capital improvements programs of 10 localities and coordinated projects in those programs with appropriate Federal agencies.

FY 1990 Activities

In FY 1990, activities will focus on:

1. Master and project planning reviews of development plans of Federal and District of Columbia government agencies. Included will be master plans for large tracts of land and/or installations, and park land; site and building plans for Federal and District of Columbia individual projects; plans for the park, parkway and the playground system of the National Capital; proposed land acquisitions; locations and designs for monuments and memorials; excess Federal land surveys and sales of surplus land; and other proposals, such as transfers of jurisdiction and applications for permits from the Corps of Engineers for development in rivers and streams. Based on the current Federal Capital Improvements Program for the National Capital Region, it is anticipated that in FY 1990 Commission reviews will include such plans and projects as the building plans for the new 3.1 million square-foot International Cultural and Trade Center at the Federal Triangle and the 1.7 million square foot Archives II at the University of Maryland; updated master plans for the Southeast Federal Center, the Naval District Washington (Anacostia Tract), the Naval Medical Center, and the Patuxent Wildlife Research Center.

2. Federal interest reviews of local plans and capital improvements programs will continue to focus on identifying capital improvements programs, plans, and proposals that may affect Federal interests; coordinating such plans, programs, and proposals with affected Federal agencies; and providing comments and recommendations to the sponsoring state, regional, and local agencies and governments.

Plans, programs, and proposals which will be given Federal interest reviews include area plans of local governments for portions or all of the lands in their individual jurisdictions and specific development proposals which may affect Federal lands or other interests.

3. Urban renewal planning activities will include the preparation and adoption of modifications for urban renewal areas in the District of Columbia, as required, to facilitate development by the Federal and District Governments.

4. Clearinghouse functions will continue for Federal planning and development activities. In cooperation with other Federal agencies, the Commission will continue to coordinate early consultation for major Federal developments to ensure that state, regional, and local elected officials and planners are fully aware of plans and developments proposed by Federal agencies.

FY 1991 Objectives

In FY 1991, objectives include continuing:

1. to conduct timely reviews of all master plans for major Federal installations and project plans for technical evaluation and coordination;

2. to conduct the Federal interest reviews of local master plans and capital improvements programs to improve coordination with Federal planning and development activities; and

3. to promote and coordinate early consultation on Federal developments and projects with the local jurisdictions and regional and state clearinghouses.

H. Planning Services Division

The Planning Services Division provides professional and technical expertise in urban design, historic preservation, environment/energy, research, carto/graphic, and information services.

Specifically, this division:

1. undertakes studies and participates in project review to promote high quality design for Federal developments and protect the historic character of the L'Enfant City and its environs;

2. advises the Commission about plans and projects that affect properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, and ensures Federal agency compliance with the National Historic Preservation Act prior to Commission review;

3. acts as the central clearinghouse for data and information on the Federal establishment in the National Capital Region and provides research services which support the overall planning and programming activities of the Commission with basic data and technical advice;

4. undertakes special studies to identify and evaluate Federal interests in the overall planning and development of the Region;

5. ensures that proposed Federal land acquisition and development proposals in the National Capital Region do not adversely affect the quality of the human environment;

6. reviews zoning proposals in the District of Columbia to ensure that they are not inconsistent with the Comprehensive Plan and will not adversely affect the Federal establishment or other Federal interests in the Nation's Capital; and

7. provides drafting, mapping, photographic, graphic design, printing and publishing, and graphic reproduction services.

FY 1989 Accomplishments

In FY 1989, this division:

1. reviewed the historic preservation and urban design implications of proposals for the National Archives II project at the University of Maryland, the National Foreign Affairs Training Center and National Guard Headquarters at the old Arlington Station military reservation, the District of Columbia Correctional Detention Facility near D. C. General Hospital, modifications to the Whitehurst Freeway in Georgetown, the U. S. Holocaust Memorial Museum adjacent to West Potomac Park, exterior building lighting for the Federal Triangle, and sites for the Korean War Veterans Memorial in West Potomac Park and Women in Military Service to America Memorial at the Arlington National Cemetery entrance gate;

2. continued to assist in the preparation of the sector plan for the Monumental Core;

3. assisted in the review of 30 zoning proposals in the District of Columbia pertaining to Federal interest concerns and, on behalf of the U. S. Naval Observatory and the U. S. Secret Service, completed a zoning amendment establishing a Naval Observatory Precinct District to protect the Federal interests in the Observatory from adverse surrounding development;

4. updated Federal employment forecasts and continued to coordinate with the Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments in the preparation for Round 5 of the Cooperative Forecasting Program;

5. updated guidelines and submission requirements for microwave antennas on Federal properties in the National Capital Region to expand coverage of the guidelines to all types of antennas;

6. reviewed 105 environmental documents and served as a cooperating agency in the U. S. Army Corps of Engineer's Environmental Impact Statement for the Local Flood Protection Project in the District of Columbia;

7. completed a study of existing street lighting conditions in the Monumental Core area, including the White House, Capitol Hill, Mall, and adjacent areas;

8. prepared page layouts and related diagrams, charts, maps and other and materials for the eight Federal elements of the Comprehensive Plan and coordinated the printing of the document;

9. designed and coordinated the printing of the draft and final Federal Capital Improvements Program the National Capital Region for FY 1990-1994;

10. coordinated the printing of Quarterly Reviews of Commission proceedings;

11. processed approximately 3,500 maps for microfilming and storage; and

12. continued a pilot demonstration study with the U. S. Geological Survey to develop a three dimensional computer assisted design/geographic information system (CAD/GIS) for the Federal establishment in the National Capital Region.

FY 1990 Activities

In FY 1990, activities will focus on:

1. preparing the updated Federal employment change report for 1988-89;

2. providing urban design and traffic studies, research and analysis, and carto/graphic services for the completion of a draft sector plan for the Monumental Core;

3. reviewing all submissions that may affect historic properties and ensuring appropriate Federal agency compliance with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act prior to Commission action;

4. preparing all artwork and related materials and publishing draft and final documents for the Federal Capital Improvements Program, FY 1991-1995;

5. fulfilling agency carto/graphic requirements for base mapping, aerial and ground photography, artwork and graphic reproduction;

6. updating the Commission's Environmental Policies and Procedures;

7. providing staff support services for the crafting of a vision of how the Federal Government in the National Capital Region will function in the Year 2050; and

8. completing the pilot study to establish specifications for a CAD/GIS program for application in the Commission's urban design, project review, and general planning activities.

FY 1991 Objectives

In FY 1991, objectives include:

1. updating Federal employment forecasts

2. publishing the Monumental Core Sector Plan anticipated to be adopted in FY 1990;

3. continuing to advise and assist the Commission in its review of Federal, District of Columbia, and local actions which affect:

    a. historic properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places; and

    b. Federal interests and concerns regarding transportation impacts, the environment, and urban design;

4. meeting agency requirements for all carto/graphic services, including mapping, photography, drafting, and printing; and

5. integrating a fully operational CAD/GIS program in the work of the Commission.

ADDITIONAL AGENCY REQUEST

THREE DIMENSIONAL COMPUTER ASSISTED DESIGN/ GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEM

PROGRAM HIGHLIGHTS AT ENHANCEMENT LEVEL

An operational three dimensional computer assisted design/geographic information system (CAD/GIS) would be established in the Commission to provide readily available resources to assist the Commission in its urban design, urban planning, and socioeconomic and natural resource studies affecting the Federal establishment and other Federal interests in the National Capital Region.

ACTIVITY

In its annual review and long-range planning activities the Commission is required to produce hundreds of drawings and maps. In addition, it annually reviews projects and proposals involving the evaluation and storage of thousands of additional drawings and maps. The three dimensional CAD/GIS capability would be employed to produce selected maps, drawings, and studies more quickly and efficiently, enhancing the Commission's analytical capabilities both in urban design activities and in studies concerning the geographic distribution of Federal space and employees, traffic, and similar factors.

During the past year the Commission and the U. S. Geological Survey have worked jointly on a pilot demonstration project to devise a combined three dimensional CAD/GIS program that can be applied to planning problems in the Nation's Capital. The specifications for the system the Commission proposes to acquire through this initiative are being developed in this pilot project. The Commission has relied in the demonstration effort on computer hardware and software resources of the USGS and others. These resources will not be available to the Commission on a long-term or permanent basis.

OBJECTIVES

The overall objective of the proposal is to provide computer assisted capabilities to assist in a wide range of design, mapping, and analytical problems. Specific design and analysis objectives already identified include:

o generation of a three-dimensional computer model of the current setting for the Monumental Core area of the Nation's Capital for use in ongoing long-range planning work;

o production of a geographic information computer model of the Monumental Core to be integrated with the three dimensional physical model, with the capability of moving attributes, spatial information, and analytical results between the two models, for use in both project review and long-range planning work;

o preparation of analyses of proposals for new buildings, memorials, and other structures throughout the National Capital Region, including the generation of quick perspective plots from various viewing positions for alternative design forms that respond to and resolve identified problems;

o generation of transportation network analysis routines for use in examining Federal development proposals and preparing long-term planning policies and proposals;

o development of GIS files covering Federal property, employment, and related information for the entire National Capital Region in a form that facilitates ready revision and quick reference and incorporation in maps and studies;

o establishment of computerized files for selected maps and drawings, permitting quick access and facilitating more efficient modifications as needed; and

o development of a photography-to-GIS processor routine to permit preparation and updating of digital map data from low-altitude aerial photographs.

ANALYSIS

The proposed three dimensional CAD/GIS would greatly enhance the Commission's urban planning and urban design capacity at a relatively low cost, which would be quickly amortized through savings in map and drawing production and more efficient analytical work. The enhanced capabilities, particularly in the areas of design analysis, environmental analysis, and long-range planning, will enable the Commission to provide improved services to other Federal agencies in resolving area-wide and project planning problems.

Funding in the amount of $150,000 is needed in Fiscal Year 1991 to acquire the system. The funds would cover computer hardware and software, staff training, and the preparation of a core data base, including digitized maps and drawings.

National Capital Planning Commission

Services of Experts and Consultants

Consultant services to support Commission staff in on-going and special projects, including environmental matters, and programs requiring outside expertise

Fiscal Year 1989	Fiscal Year 1990	Fiscal Year 1991
$84,000	$110,000	$197,000*

*FY 1991 Experts and Consultants fees include funding of a 150K initiative for a three dimensional computer assisted design/geographic information system.

NATIONAL CAPITAL PLANNING COMMISSION
Salaries and Expenses

Program and Financing (In thousands of dollars)

Identification Code 95-2500-0-1-451	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Program by Activities:			
0001 Direct program:			
Planning for the development of the National Capital	2,899	3,090	3,258
Total Direct program	2,899	3,090	3,258
0101 Reimbursable program			
10.00 Total obligations	2,899	3,090	3,258
Financing:			
11.00 Offsetting collections:			
Federal funds			
25.00 Unobligated balance lapsing	63		
40.00 Budget authority	2,962	3,133	3,258
Reduction Pursuant to P.L. 99-177 & P.L. 101-239		43	
40.00 Budget authority (appropriation)	2,962	3,090	3,258
Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.00 Obligations incurred, net	2,899	3,090	3,258
72.40 Obligated balance, start of year	451	451	247
74.40 Obligated balance, end of year	(451)	(247)	(260)
77.00 Adjustments in expired accounts			
90.00 Outlays	2,899	3,294	3,245

NATIONAL CAPITAL PLANNING COMMISSION
Salaries and Expenses

Detail of Permanent Positions

Identification Code: 95-2500-0-1-451	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
ES-6	1	1	1
ES-4	3	2	2
Subtotal	4	3	3
GS/GM-15	3	4	6
GS/GM-14	2	3	1
GS/GM-13	9	7	7
GS-12	5	6	6
GS-11	1	5	5
GS-10	1	1	1
GS-09	5	5	4
GS-08	0	2	2
GS-07	4	3	3
GS-06	2	3	4
GS-05	3	2	2
GS-03	1	1	1
Subtotal	36	42	42
Total permanent positions	40	45	45
Unfilled positions, end of year	6	1*	1*
Total permanent employment, end of year	46	46	46

*One SES position vacant - anticipated fill date 1992

NATIONAL CAPITAL PLANNING COMMISSION
Salaries and Expenses

Detail of Permanent Positions

Identification Code: 95-2500-0-1-451	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Total number of full-time permanent positions	46	46	46
Total compensable workyears: Full-time equivalent employment	41	50	50
Average ES salary	78,570	80,300	99,500
Average GS grade	10.42	10.57	10.55
Average GS salary	38,790	40,402	41,857

NATIONAL CAPITAL PLANNING COMMISSION
Salaries and Expenses

Object Classification (in thousands of dollars)

Identification Code: 95-2500-0-1-451	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Personnel compensation			
11.1 Full-time permanent	1,636	1,902	1,916
11.3 Other than full-time permanent	88	103	101
11.5 Other personnel compensation	47	52	54
11.9 Total personnel compensation	1,771	2,057	2,071
12.1 Civilian personnel benefits	258	255	278
21.0 Travel and transportation of persons	45	20	20
23.1 Rental payments to GSA	416	424	445
23.3 Communications, utilities and miscellaneous charges	68	74	77
24.0 Printing and reproduction	62	25	33
25.0 Other Services	141	201	291
26.0 Supplies and materials	45	24	26
31.0 Equipment	93	10	17
99.0 Subtotal, direct obligations	2,899	3,090	3,258
99.0 Reimbursable obligations	0	0	0
99.9 Total obligations	2,899	3,090	3,258

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FRANKLIN DELANO ROOSEVELT MEMORIAL COMMISSION

SALARIES AND EXPENSES

For necessary expenses of the Franklin Delano Roosevelt Memorial Commission, established by the Act of August 11, 1955 (69 Stat. 694), as amended by Public Law 92-332 (86 Stat. 401), $28,000 to remain available until September 30, [1990] 1992. (Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.)

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
NATIONAL PARK SERVICE
FRANKLIN DELANO ROOSEVELT MEMORIAL COMMISSION
Program and Financing (in thousands of dollars)

Identification Code 76-0700-0-1-808		1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Program by activities:				
10.00	Total obligations.......................	26	30	28
Financing:				
21.40	Unobligated balance, start of year......	(10)	(12)	(10)
24.40	Unobligated balance, end of year........	12	10	10
40.00	Budget authority (appropriation).......	28	28	28
Relation of obligations to outlays:				
71.00	Obligations incurred, net...............	26	30	28
72.40	Obligated balance, start of year........	0	2	2
74.40	Obligated balance, end of year..........	(2)	(2)	(2)
90.00	Outlays.................................	24	28	28

Object Classification
(in thousands of dollars)

21.0	Travel and transportation of persons....	0	1	1
23.3	Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges............	0	1	1
24.0	Printing and Reproduction	0	1	0
25.0	Other services	26	26	26
26.0	Supplies and materials	0	1	0
99.9	Total obligations.......................	26	30	28

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FRANKLIN DELANO ROOSEVELT MEMORIAL COMMISSION

Justification for Appropriations, 1991

On July 28, 1982, the President approved P.L. 97-224 which authorizes and directs the Secretary of the Interior, subject to the supervision and approval by the Franklin D. Roosevelt Memorial Commission to proceed with the construction of the memorial. The memorial, designed by landscape architect Lawrence Halprin, will be constructed in West Potomac Park on a site authorized by Public Law 86-214 in 1959.

The memorial will be a landscaped garden which has evolved from the concept of portraying multiple images of Mr. Roosevelt rather than the traditional single figure concept of memorial design. The result will be a series of garden spaces linked by a continuous series of granite walls which will vary in height from 12 to 14 feet. The walls will provide the element upon which the sculpture and the quotations are to be displayed. Since water was an extremely important element in the life of President Roosevelt, it has been included as a major element in the memorial in the form of waterfalls, pools, and runnels.

The estimated cost of construction of the approved memorial is in the range of $46,200,000. Annual operating costs would exceed $1,000,000 for the first full year of operation. That would include personnel, utilities, and maintenance costs.

An appropriation in the amount of $28,000 is requested to continue the necessary administrative work of the Franklin Delano Roosevelt Memorial commission for completion of this project as authorized by P.L. 97-224.

The Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation requests $12,170,000 in budget authority for FY 1991, as it continues its program of revitalizing the Pennsylvania Avenue area. This budget request consists of separate amounts for salaries and administrative expenses, public area improvements, and land acquisition.

The table on the following page details this request, and compares it to amounts appropriated for PADC's program in FY 1990. Except for the salaries and expenses request, sufficient authorization levels for appropriations exist to accommodate the amounts requested. The Office of Management and Budget is expected to forward to the Congress a draft bill which would increase the authorized appropriation ceiling for salaries and expenses for FY 1991 and extend authorization through FY 1994, the time now anticipated for the program's completion.

The land acquisition and development request of $5 million in U.S. Treasury borrowing authority is needed for the same purpose that PADC requested $12 million for FY 1990 -- to be in a position to purchase real estate on Square 406 if private owners or developers are not able, on their own, to cause development to occur in a timely manner. At present, private development on Square 406 is not moving forward, and PADC must have additional borrowing authority if it is to perform its traditional role as a catalyst.

The public development request for FY 1991 is $4,705,000, with all amounts earmarked for public area improvements. With approximately 1,000 residential units under construction or committed in the eastern project area, (east of the FBI Building), it has become apparent that a more comprehensive, quality improvement to the public spaces than was contemplated originally is required. Just as the Corporation provided public space amenities for development projects taking place along Pennsylvania Avenue, and in so doing enhanced the marketability of these projects, there exists a need to contribute to the economic success of the new residential community by enhancing the physical attractiveness of the public areas north of the Avenue. Accordingly, the FY 1991 budget request presents the financial requirements for the first year of an expanded program of improvements in these areas. Specifically, sidewalks along 7th Street and 8th Street and the existing plaza at F Street between 7th and 9th Street would undergo major improvement, as well as a section of the Indiana Avenue sidewalk. Additionally, this request of $4,705,000 includes a total of approximately $1 million for contracts with construction management and civil engineering firms that assist PADC in public improvements work, as well as for necessary landscaping and repair to previous improvements throughout PADC's area.

The salaries and expense request of $2,465,000 provides for a staff of 28 employees, on a full-time equivalent basis, and administrative support equivalent to that of recent, prior years. The staff level for FY 1991 is two positions less than the 30 FTE staff level of FY 1990.

The Corporation (in cooperation with the GSA and ICTC) has been making excellent progress in carrying out its responsibilities for the development of the Federal Triangle site pursuant to the Federal Triangle Development Act of 1987, Public Law 100-113. Funding for studies and additional staff necessary

PENNSYLVANIA AVENUE DEVELOPMENT CORPORATION
FY 1991 Budget and FY 1990 Appropriation

	Appropriated, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990-FY 1991
Land Acquisition and Development	$ 100,000	$ 5,000,000	$+4,900,000
Public Development			
Public Improvements	2,550,000	4,705,000	+ 2,155,000
Historic Preservation	400,000	--	- 400,000
Relocation	200,000	--	- 200,000
Subtotal, Public Development	3,150,000	4,705,000	+ 1,555,000
Salaries & Expenses	2,375,000	2,465,000	+ 90,000
	$5,625,000	$12,170,000	$+6,545,000

to prepare a development proposal stage a national competition, and manage the subsequent design and construction was addressed by a $4.5 million transfer from the General Services Administration, an amount estimated in 1987 at an early stage of the project. However, based on experience with this complex effort, the Corporation expects to utilize these funds by the end of FY 1990, requiring an additional amount in FY 1991 and similar amounts annually until project competion. The last section of this budget justification discusses the status of the Federal Triangle project in more detail.

The approval of the $12,170,000 requested for FY 1991 will enable the Corporation to upgrade the appearance of the physical environment north of Pennsylvania Avenue, act to expedite development on Square 406, and generally advance all aspects of the program to physically and economically revitalize the area between the Capitol and the White House. The Corporation recommends approval of the full amount requested.

SALARIES AND EXPENSES

The Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation requests a budget of $2,465,000 for staff salaries and administrative expenses for FY 1991. This budget will fund the salary and administrative expenses of a staff of 28 positions, as the Corporation continues to implement the development objectives described in the Pennsylvania Avenue Plan.

The authorized ceiling for FY 1991 is $2,400,000 -- $65,000 below the budget now requested. Because of this and since the program's completion date is now expected to be FY 1994, rather than the previously-targeted FY 1992, legislation is expected to be proposed shortly by the Office of Management and Budget which will (1) raise the FY 1991 authorized ceiling to the budget amount requested and, (2) extend authorization for appropriations through fiscal year 1994.

In addition to carrying out the public space and square development objectives of the Plan, the Corporation will be leading, during FY 1991, the management of development of a 3.1 million square foot structure on the last undeveloped site in the Federal Triangle. This project's site, which borders the south side of the original PADC project area, was authorized by the Federal Triangle Development Act (P.L. 100-113) of 1987, and $4.5 million has been made available from the Act to allow the Corporation to hire additional staff and fund studies necessary to permit actual development to commence. None of the $2,465,000 requested for FY 1991 is earmarked for staff salaries and administrative expenses related to the Federal Triangle project. Federal Triangle project administrative expenses incurred during FY 1991 will be paid from residual amounts, if any, of the original $4.5 million amount made available to PADC by this Act and from an additional amount that PADC has requested of the General Services Administration for FY 1991.

The requested $2,465,000 appropriation represents a 3.7% increase above the FY 1990 appropriation of $2,375,000.

		Change, FY 1990-FY 1991	
FY 1990	FY 1991	%	$
2,375,000	2,465,000	3.7	+90,000

Notwithstanding a reduction of full-time-equivalent staffing from 30 positions in FY 1990 to 28 positions in FY 1991, PADC's budget needs will be $90,000 greater than that of the current year because of a more intensive use of part-time staffing, increased overtime pay to compensate for a loss of two positions, and increased office rent and supply costs. The table of the next page details the FY 1991 salaries and administrative expenses budget requested, together with comparative detail for the current and past fiscal year. A more detailed description of the budget request then follows.

PENNSYLVANIA AVENUE DEVELOPMENT CORPORATION
Salaries and Expenses
Object Classification
(in thousands of dollars)

		FY 1989 Actual	FY 1990 Budget	FY 1991 Request
11.1	Full-time permanent positions..	1,215	1,185	1,201
11.3	Positions other than full-time permanent..................	52	40	55
11.5	Other personnel compensation...	44	45	55
11.9	Total personnel compensation...	1,311	1,270	1,311
12.1	Personnel benefits: Civilian...	200	200	220
13.0	Benefits for former personnel..	3	3	10
21.0	Travel and transportation of persons....................	10	15	20
22.0	Transportation of things.......	--	2	2
23.1	Rent (office space)...........	316	320	350
23.2	Communications, utilities, and other rent.................	57	60	65
24.0	Printing and reproduction......	68	70	74
25.0	Other services................	316	365	338
26.0	Supplies and materials.........	35	45	50
31.0	Equipment.....................	12	25	25
	Total obligations.............	2,328	2,375	2,465

11.1 Full-time permanent positions

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990-FY 1991
1,185,000	1,201,000	+ 16,000

The Corporation requests $1,201,000 to fund the FY 1991 salaries of 27 employees filling full-time permanent positions. The amount requested is $16,000 more than the FY 1990 budget for 29 positions because of the effect of the recently-enacted 3.6% General Schedule pay raise on FY 1991 salaries, and planned promotions and scheduled within-grade increases.

The Corporation plans to fully utilize all 27 positions, rapidly filling any vacancies that may occur during the year, in order to avoid slippage in the completion of the square development and public improvements projects.

11.3 Positions other than full-time permanent

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
40,000	55,000	+15,000

The Corporation will continue to need temporary and part-time employees at intervals throughout the budget year.

Employment of these kinds of staff members is expected to account for one position on a full-time equivalent basis. Architects, paralegal aides, assistant real estate project managers, and secretaries are the kinds of temporary employees PADC has hired for short periods in recent years. Also included in this Federal employee category are the members of the Corporation's board of directors, who meet for regular quarterly board meetings and occasional special meetings throughout the year.

11.5 Other personnel compensation

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
45,000	55,000	+ 10,000

A budget of $55,000 is requested to fund staff overtime costs and cash awards to deserving employees. Increasingly, as permanent staff size is reduced, remaining employees will be asked to work overtime so that the Corporation may keep abreast of its square development and public improvements schedule. Additionally, both PMRS (GM-13 through GM-15) and non-PMRS employees are eligible for and entitled to performance-based cash awards, consistant with the Office of Personnel Management's continuing program to motivate Federal workers. Approximately one-third of the $55,000 budget requested is needed for expected overtime costs, while the remaining two-thirds will cover cash awards.

12.1 Civilian personnel benefits

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
200,000	220,000	+ 20,000

The Corporation projects a need for a personnel benefits budget of $220,000 in FY 1991. This amount is needed to pay the Federal Government's share of employee health and life insurance plans, and contribute to both the Civil Service Retirement System (CSRS) and Federal Employees Retirement System (FERS) funds.

13.0 Benefits for former personnel

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
3,000	10,000	+ 7,000

The Corporation requests a $10,000 budget to fund the potential cost of the unemployment of PADC staff members. Locally-paid unemployment benefits are ultimately funded by the Federal Government. A more significant cost is incurred when employees are released through reduction-in-force actions, which entitles the former employee to severance pay. A reduction of 2 FTE positions in FY 1991 may bring about such a cost.

21.0 Travel and transportation of persons

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
15,000	20,000	+ 5,000

The Corporation requests a travel budget of $20,000 to fund out-of-town travel and local transportation costs of staff members and board members. Professional staff members use taxi and Metro transportation to attend meetings with contractors and other Federal officials with whom they interact on a regular basis. Out-of-town travel is occasionally required for staff to meet with developers and contractors concerning square and public improvements projects, and members of the board of directors residing outside the Washington, D.C. area must be reimbursed for their travel expenses when attending board meetings. Additionally, conference and training sessions benefiting staff professional development have associated travel and transportation expenses which must be funded.

22.0 Transportation of things

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
2,000	2,000	-0-

A budget of $2,000 is requested to cover the cost of transporting equipment or other material items whose transportation cost is not covered by contracts with private vendors or governmental agencies.

23.1 Rent (Office Space)

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
320,000	350,000	+30,000

The Corporation requests a budget of $350,000 to pay for office space for its staff. As of this writing, the FY 1991 location of this office space is not certain, since PADC's lease of the space it has occupied in the National Place Building (at 14th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue) since 1985 terminates on March 31, 1990. However, the General Services Administration is currently negotiating on behalf of PADC for a new term of occupancy in this building. The FY 1991 lease cost in the National Place building or an alternative building will exceed the planned FY 1990 cost of $320,000 by an estimated $30,000.

23.2 Communications, utilities, and other rent

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
60,000	65,000	+ 5,000

The Corporation requests $65,000 for telephone service, postage, and incidental rental expenses in FY 1991. Based upon PADC's cost experience in FY 1989, and the projected level of expenses for FY 1990, approximately $45,000 will be needed for telephone service and $15,000 for postage in FY 1991. The remaining $5,000 may be needed for the rental of miscellaneous items, such as furniture and office equipment.

24.0 Printing and reproduction

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
70,000	74,000	+ 4,000

The Corporation requests $74,000 for printing and reproduction needs in fiscal 1991. Printing costs are incurred in producing the annual report; publishing a quarterly newsletter, which summarizes development activities in the project area; publishing brochures for special events; printing letterhead stationary; printing an annual poster/calendar; and photographing events and projects for inclusion in the annual report, press releases, and for archives storage. Additionally, printing funds will be needed for Federal Register announcements and reprints of the Pennsylvania Avenue Plan.

25.0 Other services

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
365,000	338,000	- 27,000

The Corporation requests $338,000 for various services it requires on a continuing basis. These services include: (1) local area messenger and overnight mail delivery services; (2) equipment maintenance agreements; (3) transcribing of the discussion at board of director meetings; (4) employee health services provided under contract; (5) temporary employees provided under contract; (6) contract audits for the review of internal procedures as required by legislation or O.M.B. directive; (7) Corporation memberships in professional organizations; (8) staff training; (9) design and layout of the annual report, brochures and newsletters; (10) the continuing interagency agreement with the General Services Administration to provide personnel, payroll, and selected accounting services; (11) affirmative action consultation; (12) repair of furniture and equipment; and (13) advertising for employees or contractors. In addition to these known services costs, based on previous experience, PADC will need to contract for additional services not forseeable at this time.

The amount requested for FY 1991 is $27,000 below that budgeted for FY 1990, a situation resulting from a savings to be realized from not having to fund a GAO - initiated financial audit in the budget year.

26.0 Supplies and materials

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
45,000	50,000	+ 5,000

The Corporation requests $50,000 for supplies and publications necessary, respectively, for the functioning of the office and professional development. Office supplies include paper, printer ribbons, pens and pencils, envelopes, and other such low-cost but heavily-utilized items found in a typical office setting. Publications include professional reference books, journals, magazines, and studies used by the real estate, architectural, public improvements, and legal staffs to stay abreast of current trends and developments. Approximately two-thirds of the requested $50,000 will be needed for the purchase of supplies, while the balance is projected as the cost of these publications.

31.0 Equipment

Budget, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change, FY 1990 - FY 1991
25,000	25,000	-0-

The Corporation requests $25,000 to pay for equipment and furniture in FY 1991, the same amount as budgeted for the current year. Since staff size will be reduced by two positions in FY 1991, the Corporation will utilize newly-available furniture and equipment to the maximum extent possible in meeting the needs of staff for replacement equipment. Notwithstanding this, purchases of new furniture, word processing, and computer equipment will be necessary as wear-and-tear on existing items of equipment occurs.

Public Development Activities

The Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation's Public Development budget request is $4,705,000 for FY 1991, and is needed entirely for public improvements projects. This contrasts with FY 1990's multi-activity budget request, in which budgets were also requested for historic preservation, business relocation expenses, and public space programing.

Public Development Activity	Appropriated, FY 1990	Requested, FY 1991	Change FY 1990-FY 1991
Public Improvements	$2,550,000*	$4,705,000	+2,155,000
Historic Preservation	400,000	--	- 400,000
Relocation	200,000	--	- 200,000
	$3,150,000	$4,705,000	+1,555,000

*includes $100,000 for public space programming

The $4,705,000 requested for FY 1991 will be utilized solely for the public improvements projects within the original project area of the Corporation, and not for the Federal Triangle development project, whose progress and funding is described in the last section of this budget justification document.

PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS

The Corporation's FY 1991 request of $4,705,000 provides for a continuation of the type and quality of improvements to the public areas that have been underway in the project area for the past ten years.

Status of Public Improvements program

Many of the public improvements envisioned by the original Pennsylvania Avenue Plan are a reality today, a result of annual appropriations of Federal funds commencing in fiscal year 1977.

Pennsylvania Avenue itself has five new parks or plazas. Freedom Plaza (formerly Western Plaza) extends from 14th Street to 13th Street on Pennsylvania Avenue, and is the site of numerous musical performances, artistic and educational events. Adjacent Pershing Park, extending from 14th through 15th Streets, has been constructed so as to insulate the visitor from the noise and activity of its downtown setting, thus serving as a quiet retreat. Musical performances, usually sponsored or co-sponsored by the Corporation, add to the appeal of this park in the warmer months, and an ice rink facility attracts activity in winter months. Further eastward, between 7th and 9th Streets, the U.S. Navy Memorial at Market Square Park offers the visitor enjoyment through its design, which includes several fountains, and the music of regularly-scheduled performances. John Marshall Park, located on the north side of the Avenue across from the National Gallery's East Building and adjacent to the newly-completed Canadian Embassy, is a restful place to stroll and sit amid the adjacent monumental structures. Meade Plaza, rehabilitated by the D.C. Government using Federal funds, is located in front of the U.S. District Court Building near 4th Street.

An area just north of Pennsylvania Avenue, at 7th Street and Indiana Avenue, is the site of the completed Indiana Plaza project. Two refurbished and relocated monuments, expanded open space, and a new Indiana Avenue roadway have significantly upgraded the previously worn appearance of the southern end of the 7th Street corridor, where the project area's residential community begins.

One of the Corporation's last large public open space projects is the refurbishment of Sherman Park, an existing park located at 15th Street and East Executive Avenue just south of the U.S. Treasury Building. This project's design phase has commenced and construction will take place utilizing funds provided by FY 1990 appropriations.

Continuous construction since 1978 has transformed dramatically the roadways and sidewalks of Pennsylvania Avenue. Throughout the length of the Avenue between 3rd and 15th Streets there are now new sidewalks, improved with brick pavers and double or triple rows of trees serviced by a low-maintenance irrigation system; new and clearer pedestrian and traffic signs and signals; a totally reconstructed roadway with new curbs and gutters; benches, drinking fountains and a three-system lighting program consisting of decorative and highmast lighting for vehicular traffic and specially-designed pedestrian lights for walkways. All that remains incomplete on the Avenue at the present time are the sidewalk improvements planned on Squares 322 and 491, which await the substantial completion of the Evening Star Building renovation and the development of the D.C. Department of Employment Security site, respectively; the completion of the perimeter area on the north side of Market Square Park; and the Pennsylvania Avenue sidewalk of the FBI Building.

The sidewalk adjacent to the Evening Star Building, on the north side of Pennsylvania Avenue between 11th and 12th Streets (Square 322), is being completed this fiscal year. With funds provided by the FY 1990 appropriation act, the Corporation will be undertaking the reconstruction of the Pennsylvania Avenue sidewalk of the FBI Building, between 9th and 10th Streets. Construction of the north perimeter of Market Square Park also commences in FY 1990. Reconstruction of the Pennsylvania Avenue sidewalk in front of the Employment Security Building, located between 6th and 7th Streets (Square 491), awaits the future development of this site and an additional, future appropriation.

During FY 1990, planning and implementation of the program for improving the side streets extending northward from Pennsylvania Avenue is continuing. Particular attention will be shown to the 7th Street and 8th Street sidewalks, and the F Street Plaza between 7th and 9th Streets, where the Corporation intends to design and install improvements which will complement the emerging, adjacent residential community. In recent years, the Corporation has approved development projects on Squares 459/460, 408/432, 407, and 431 which include approximately, 1,000 residential units. Additionally, the presence of a variety of art spaces, including galleries, along 7th Street and 8th Street has been reinforced by support from the Corporation and from the D.C. Government.

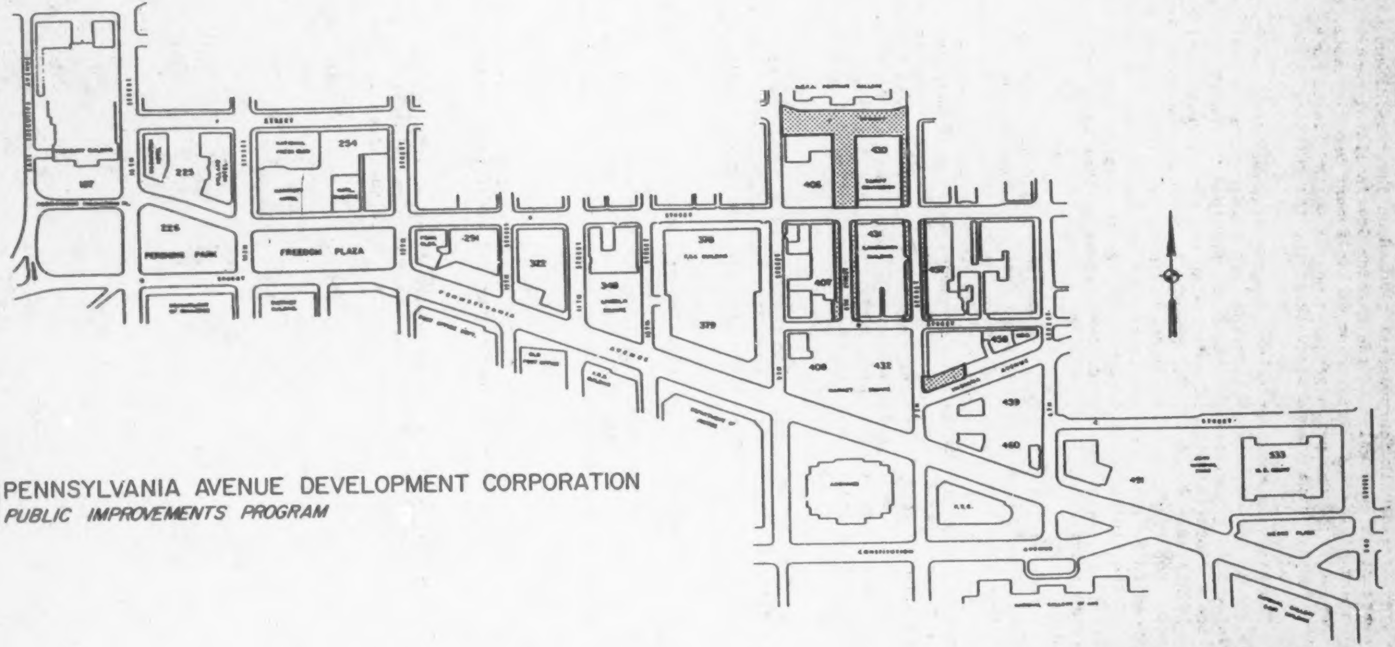
The Corporation's effort to design public improvements unique to the emerging residential and arts community results, in part, from the recent "Arts Walk" study, which examined creative approaches to designing public improvements.

The fabrication and installation of the public improvements ultimately designed for the side streets area will be funded in part by an earlier appropriation. However, the full-range of improvements appropriate for this portion of the project area will require additional funding, a subject addressed in the following discussion of the FY 1991 budget request.

FY 1991 Request

The Corporation requests $4,705,000 for various public improvements needs in FY 1991. The areas to be improved with these funds are shown on the fold-out map on the next page.

The principal use of the requested funds will be the design, fabrication and installation of additional improvements to the side street area, principally between 7th and 9th Streets. More specifically, the design and


225
PERSHING PARK
FREEDOM PLAZA
223
234
254
322
348
378
379
406
407
408
420
431
432
439
456
457
460
491
533
PENNSYLVANIA
AVENUE
CONSTITUTION
AVENUE

PENNSYLVANIA AVENUE DEVELOPMENT CORPORATION
PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS PROGRAM

PROJECTS FOR WHICH FY1991 FUNDS REQUESTED

01.22.90

initial construction phase of improvements (1) to the F Street Plaza (2) to 7th and 8th Streets sidewalks, and (3) to a section of Indiana's Avenue's sidewalk will require $3.4 million. The Corporation did receive approximately $1.8 million in FY 1986 appropriations for this side street area, but amounts still remaining from this appropriation are needed for other side street sidewalk areas, and are not sufficient for desired improvements to the F Street Plaza or to the 7th and 8th Street sidewalks.

Over the last several years, the need to design and install quality public area amenities such as paving, landscaping, benches, fountains, and lighting in the 7th and 8th Street area has become clearer as the residential and arts community has evolved. The Corporation is committed to providing the same quality and scale of public space amenities for development projects off the Avenue as it did for those on the Avenue. The private financial commitment now present in this area--especially in the residential development projects -- requires such a treatment to the adjacent public spaces. The expanded scope of the side street program -- as measured by this proposed $3.4 million supplement to the original appropriation -- provides current and future developers with the assurance that the Federal Government is fully supporting the environmental improvements needed. Indeed, prospective residential and retail occupants need surrounding public space amenities even more than do prospective lessees of office space, a fact underscoring the need for additional side street funding support.

The side street program will require additional appropriations in FY 1992, 1993 and 1994. This program, together with the cost of contracting with consultant firms to assist the staff in overseeing construction, will require an estimated $4 million in FY 1992, $3.5 million in FY 1993, and $2.5 million in FY 1994.

An additional $650,000 is needed in FY 1991 to fund the cost of contracting with consulting firms in the specialties of construction management, engineering, and landscape design. In FY 1991 the Corporation will have construction work underway in the side street area, on the north edge of Market Square Park (the final stage of the park, whose construction relates to the completion of the adjacent development project), and the last construction phase of one or both of the FBI Building sidewalk and Sherman Park projects.

As a result of the recent reprogramming of $255,000 of side street appropriations for required transportation of a Victorian bandstand in PADC's possession, and for public improvements inventory from previous sites to other locations, the Corporation requests a replenishment of this amount in the FY 1991 budget. It is vital that all original side street funding be available.

The Corporation also requests funds for previously completed projects to acccomplish landscaping and the replacement of damaged or deteriorated items such as broken granite and brick in various parks, plazas, crosswalks and sidewalks within the project area. The amount requested for FY 1991 is $400,000, and will supplement the level of maintenance and operation of the project area's public improvements by the National Park Service.

First, since some of PADC's improvements are over ten years old, normal deterioration and wear and tear to the masonry surfaces, sidewalk furniture, and lighting must be addressed. Secondly, the Corporation will need to replace trees, shrubs, plants, and flowers that are lost due to damage.

In summary, the requested $4,705,000 will allow for a continuation of the Corporation's successful public improvements program throughout the side street area, and arrest deterioration through timely repairs and replacements. The Corporation requests the committee's full support of the public improvements budget request for FY 1991.

LAND ACQUISITION AND DEVELOPMENT

The Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation requests $5 million in additional borrowing authority so that it may purchase real estate, if necessary, to advance the development of Square 406.

Background

One of the most important objectives of the Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation program is the revitalization of the squares to the north of Pennsylvania Avenue. It was the deteriorated, worn appearance of the neighborhood north of Pennsylvania Avenue that first stimulated the Federal government's interest in dramatically changing the appearance of the Avenue .

With the approval of the Pennsylvania Avenue Plan by the Congress in 1975, in conjunction with the appropriation of U.S. Treasury borrowing authority for land acquisition beginning in late 1977, the Corporation began a working partnership with the private sector to bring about the completed or committed development of now over $1.4 billion of new or renovated building projects. The Corporation has sponsored many projects in the past decade which are models in their combination of land uses and/or the quality of their development. As examples, the presence of the beautifully-restored Willard Hotel and development of the adjoining office and retail building results directly from the Corporation's land acquisition and historic preservation contributions; the existence of a comprehensive, multi-use project such as National Place between 13th and 14th Streets, which includes office, retail, hotel, and theatre components, results from the assemblage by the Corporation of a 120,000 square foot site and staging of a subsequent development competition; and the creation of a new residential neighborhood in the eastern sector of the project area is a product of the Corporation's commitment to this important objective of the master plan. The Corporation has combined its power of eminent domain with available U.S. Treasury borrowing authority to assemble properties either for (1) nationally-advertised competitions for development, or for (2) negotiation with developers who demonstrate the control over more than 50% of an acceptable development site and meet other requirements. The presence of the Corporation often has led to a resolution of negotiations between prospective developers and owners of properties, and therefore has expedited development.

The Corporation has earned over $160 million in revenues from the sale or lease of real estate it has purchased since 1978. Throughout this period, cash revenues have been used for debt repayment and the purchase of additional real estate, the latter application being the principal reason the Corporation has not requested or needed additional borrowing authority for most of the 1980s. However, since early FY 1989 it become apparent that depletion of both cash and prior borrowing authority for program needs meant that additional borrowing authority was needed for the Corporation to be in a position to purchase real estate on Square 406 in the eastern project area, in order to foster timely development. Although $5 million in additional borrowing authority for PADC's use was included in the FY 1990 Department of Interior Appropriations Act, all but $100,000 was eliminated and transferred to the President's War on Drugs program by Public Law 101-64.

Budget Request for FY 1991

Square 406, the northernmost square in the eastern portion of the project area, is a site for office, retail, or possible residential development. Recently, the two principal land owners approached the Corporation with differing development proposals for the square. While PADC has recommended to the parties that they confer with one another and present a joint development proposal to the Corporation for its review and approval, there is a strong possibility that such a joint venture will not occur. If so, then PADC probably will need to break the stalemate by acquiring some or all of the square. This action will require funds that the Corporation does not now have, nor does it expect to have through the realization of cash revenues in FY 1991.

The Corporation's receipt of $5 million in additional borrowing authority in FY 1991 gives it some capacity to purchase real estate on Square 406, and in so doing expedite development.

In addition to planned land acquisition and development activity on Square 406, the Corporation's development staff will be actively involved in monitoring the development of a number of projects which have received approval in past years or in the current year in the eastern sector of the project area. These activities include working with the developers to reach agreement on design or construction issues that invariably occur during the development process, reviewing plans and development in various stages, and resolving various matters between the Corporation and designated developers. Additionally, the Corporation is preparing a prospectus for and planning to offer a development site on Square 457, where approximately 250 additional housing units are planned. So while land acquisition activity itself in FY 1991 will be restricted to just one square, a variety of development activity require continued and intense staff involvement.

THE FEDERAL TRIANGLE/INTERNATIONAL CULTURAL AND TRADE CENTER PROJECT

In August, 1987, the signing by the President of the Federal Triangle Development Act (Public Law 100-113) assigned additional responsibilities to the Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation. The Corporation was directed to manage the planning for and the development of a combined federal office building (F.O.B.) and international cultural and trade center (ICTC) building on the last remaining undeveloped site in the Federal Triangle area of Washington, D.C.. This eleven acre site, currently utilized as a surface parking lot, is bordered on the west by 14th Street and on the north by Pennsylvania Avenue. The site has remained undeveloped since the 1930s when the national depression halted then-current plans for the construction of a Federal building and public open space. The Federal Triangle Development Act stipulates that a complex of up to 3.1 million gross square feet is to be developed on the site, with an international cultural and trade center (ICTC) containing no more than 500,000 occupiable square feet. The ICTC portion is envisioned to house exhibit, retail, performing arts activities, trade and cultural offices of foreign governments and other uses consistent with the objective of encouraging international exchanges of trade and culture. It is the responsibility of the newly-constituted International and Cultural Trade Center Commission to attract the interest of foreign governments and to operate of this space on a continuing basis.

Major elements of the Act are: (1) the General Services Administration is to transfer title to the site to the Corporation; (2) the Corporation is to prepare a development proposal for the site that meets the needs of both the federal tenants and the International Cultural and Trade Center Commission; (3) the Corporation is to select a developer of the complex, who will develop the site and earn revenue from the Federal Government for the lease of the space for 30 years, at the end of which time the complex will revert to Federal Government ownership; (4) the Corporation and the General Services Administration will jointly monitor and inspect construction of the complex to ensure quality control and compliance with the approved plan for development; (5) the General Services Administration will operate and maintain the entire facility once tenancy begins; and (6) the Corporation is to receive $4.5 million from the General Services Administration to accomplish its responsibilities under the new Act.

Immediately upon passage of the Act, the Corporation began working cooperatively with the General Services Administration and the International Cultural and Trade Center Commission, as well as with many other affected Federal Agencies, to prepare a development plan for the site. With the aid of architectural and engineering firm studies, a proposal was prepared by PADC and subsequently, in September, 1988, approved by Congressional Committees designated by the Federal Triangle Development Act. With this proposal as a basis, a development prospectus was prepared by PADC and, in November, 1988, advertised in an open competition. Seven bids were submitted by the June 1, 1989, deadline and, after an extensive period of analysis by the staff and various consultants, the PADC Board of Directors selected the Delta

Partnership on October 18, 1989. Since that date, the staff and its consultants have been working with the project's developer architect and construction entities, the ICTC staff, and the General Services Administration to furthur define the detailed requirements for the complex, and with the Delta Partnership as a whole in negotiating the Development Agreement, which defines and commits each participant to specified responsibilities. At the same time, PADC has been working with its financial advisor, Kidder-Peabody, to structure an approach to raise construction and permanent financing in the capital markets -- first through the selection, by a competitive procedure, of the lead underwriter. As of this writing, negotation of the Development Agreement is nearing completion, the responses to the competition for the underwriter are due on January 31, and work on the various design refinements is underway. The master lease agreement, one of the key attachments to the Development Agreement, is also under negotation; the master lease must be approved by the General Services Administration before actual financing and construction can proceed.

The $4.5 million authorized by the Federal Triangle Development Act to be transferred to PADC for additional staff and consultants has been received in several installments and is expected to be fully obligated by the end of FY 1990. However, considerable work remains in FY 1991 and for several years thereafter -- through fiscal 1994 -- before PADC's development responsibilities are completed. Therefor, a new budget request was submitted to the General Services Administration detailing the funding needing in FY 1991 (and following years) for staff and consulting contract expenses. The requested amount for FY 1991 provides approximately equal amounts for necessary consultant contracts and staff (eleven positions). The Office of Management and Budget has reviewed this request and has directed the G.S.A. to include an amount in GSA's FY 1991 budget request for transfer to PADC. The Corporation must have this additional funding to carry out its assigned role in this project.

The project is scheduled to commence construction in fall, 1990 and to reach completion in November, 1994.

United States Holocaust Memorial Council

BUDGET JUSTIFICATION

Fiscal Year
1991

1980
United States
Holocaust Memorial Council

2000 L Street NW, Suite 588, Washington, D.C. 20036-4907, (202) 653-9220

UNITED STATES HOLOCAUST MEMORIAL COUNCIL

FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET JUSTIFICATION

Table of Contents

General Statement.................................... 1
Organizational Chart................................. 3
Appropriation Language Sheet......................... 4

Program and Performance

Program Highlights........................... 5
Council Direction............................ 7
Museum Development, Content, Archival, Acquisition, Library and Education.......... 9
National Archives Project.................... 11
Commemorative Observances.................... 13
Budget Considerations........................ 15
Summary of Changes........................... 16
Summary of Program and Performance........... 17

Schedules

Program and Financing........................ 18
Object Classification........................ 19
Relationship of Decision Units............... 20
Salaries and Expenses........................ 21

UNITED STATES HOLOCAUST MEMORIAL COUNCIL

Justification for Appropriation, Fiscal 1991
(in thousands of dollars)

General Statement

The United States Holocaust Memorial Council was created by Public Law 96-388, dated October 7, 1980. The original Public Law provided authorization language through Fiscal Year 1983. Funding in subsequent years, with approval of the administration, has been provided through appropriations acts. Authorization language for Fiscal Year 1991 is being forwarded to both the President of the Senate and the Chairman of the House.

Objectives:

The United States Holocaust Memorial Council was established by Congress (P.L. 96-388) for three principal purposes:

1. To plan, construct and oversee the operation of a permanent living memorial museum to the victims of the Holocaust.

2. To provide for appropriate ways for the Nation to commemorate the Days of Remembrance as an annual national civic commemoration of the Holocaust.

3. To develop a plan for carrying out the recommendations of the President's Commission on the Holocaust in its Report to the President of September 27, 1979.

The issues to be addressed in fulfilling these objectives include the development of expanded national commemorative and educational outreach programs, planning and development of the Museum's programs, and we are pleased to report that these are currently successful on-going programs.

Furthermore, during Fiscal Year 1989, the Council met major milestones in the establishment of a living memorial museum with the award of the $53 million construction contract and the beginning of construction in July. With the commencement of construction and the opening of the Museum scheduled for 1993, the need to engage in full-scale extensive research, planning and development is both immediate and critical.

The Council's projected tasks in 1990, and continuing into 1991, will focus on several critical areas including further research, development and design of the museum's permanent exhibition; continuation and expansion of archival and library cataloguing; acquisition and preservation of authentic documents and artifacts; development of educational and academic programs and materials; as well as the development of policies and procedures for the administration of all the Museum's components.

Prior to the opening of the museum, the Council must conduct extensive worldwide research in order to evaluate the nature, scope and types of materials relevant to the needs of the Museum so that proper planning can be assured for the Museum's exhibitions, academic and educational programs. Furthermore, it is essential that Federally held Holocaust-related documents be examined to determine their preservation requirements and to catalogue them for use by Holocaust educators and researchers.

Consistent with its mandate "To Remember," and the original Commission's recommendations to establish a variety of public educational activities, the Council will continue its on-going programs of national commemoration of the victims of the Holocaust and of educational outreach and public awareness aimed at the broadest possible spectrum of the American public.

To meet these overall objectives, the Council requires Federal funding to carry out its mandated tasks and responsibilities in the following areas:

- Provide support for the development of the Museum's components and programs.

- Oversee, provide appropriate materials for, and implement the national and nationwide local Days of Remembrance Commemoration ceremonies.

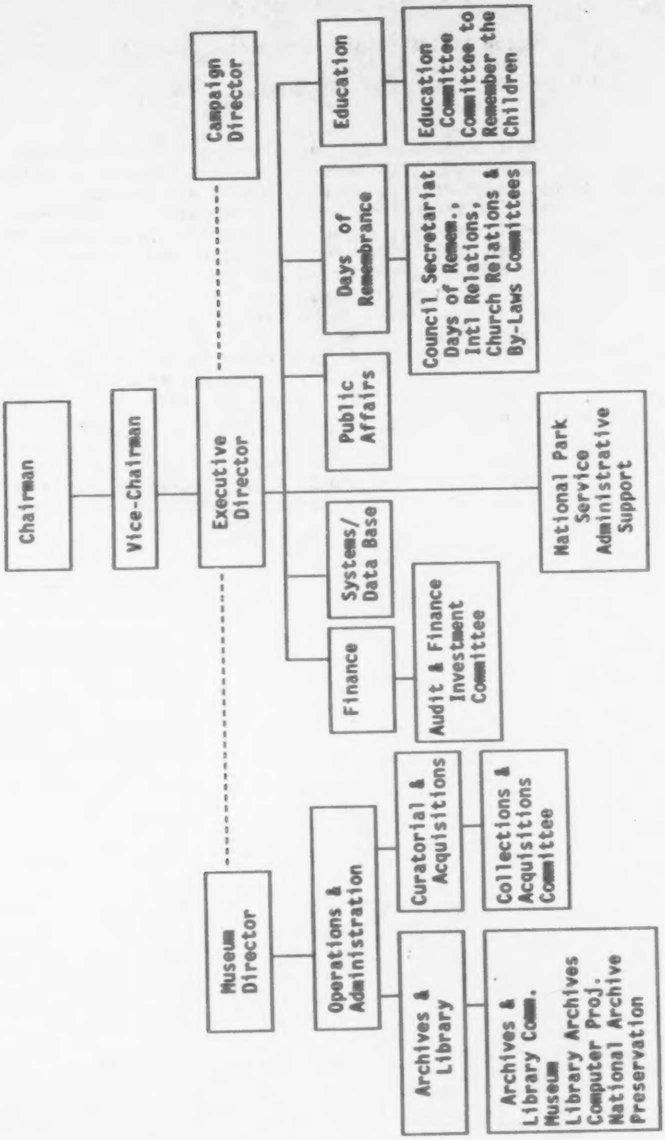
- Develop educational programs for the general public, specialized associations, community entities, ethnic groups and church organizations, and develop a means for establishing a national system for disseminating educational programs and materials on the Holocaust to educators throughout the country.

- Provide required support to the 65-member Council which is responsible for formulating policy to guide the implementation of the mandates in the enabling legislation.

The budget presented is functionally composed of the broad program areas of Museum Development, Commemorative Observances and related activities, Executive Direction and Administrative Services.

Rationale for Federal Role:

By act of Congress, the Council is charged with manifold mandates: to make permanent arrangements, through annual official Days of Remembrance, for ceremonial observances to remember the six million Jews murdered in the Holocaust and the millions of others who perished as a result of Nazi policies of genocide and racial suppression, and to honor the survivors of the Holocaust; to erect a "living" memorial Museum and education center in the Nation's Capital, and to create within that edifice a learning and research environment in which all who enter can learn the bitter lessons of the Holocaust.


Chairman
Vice-Chairman
Executive Director
Campaign Director
Museum Director
Operations & Administration
Archives & Library
Archives & Library Comm.
Museum Library Archives Computer Proj.
National Archive Preservation
Curatorial & Acquisitions
Collections & Acquisitions Committee
Finance
Audit & Finance Investment Committee
Systems/ Data Base
National Park Service Administrative Support
Public Affairs
Days of Remembrance
Council Secretariat Days of Remem., Intl Relations, Church Relations & By-Laws Committees
Education
Education Committee Committee to Remember the Children

Appropriation Language Sheet

United States Holocaust Memorial Council

Salaries and Expenses

For expenses of the Holocaust Memorial Council, as authorized by Public Law 96-388, $3,304,000. Provided, That hereafter persons other than members of the United States Holocaust Memorial Council may be designated as members of committees associated with the United States Holocaust Memorial Council, subject to appointment by the Chairman of the Council: Provided further, That any persons so designated shall serve without cost to the Federal Government. Provided further, That none of these funds shall be available for the compensation of Executive Level V or higher positions: Provided further, That hereafter the Chairman of the Council may waive any Council bylaw when the Chairman determines such waiver will be in the best interest of the Council: Provided further, that hereafter immediately after taking such action the Chairman shall send written notice to every voting member of the Council and such waiver shall become final if 30 days after the Chairman has sent such notice, a majority of Council members do not disagree in writing with the action taken.

(U.S.C. 1401; Department of Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990 as included in Public Law 101-121; additional authorizing legislation to be proposed.)

Program Highlights: Progress in Achieving Objectives and Accomplishments

Fiscal 1989, perhaps the most historic year in the Council's short existence, was highlighted by the commencement of construction of the United States Holocaust Memorial Museum. During 1990 and 1991, while the Council will continue its expanded national commemorative and educational outreach programs, work on the development of the Museum's programs naturally must intensify as the 1993 Museum opening rapidly approaches.

Paralleling the construction activity, the Council continues to make progress in meeting its mandates to create a Museum to tell the full story of the Holocaust and serve as the national center for general education and scholarship. Considerable progress has been made in the acquisition and cataloguing of authentic artifacts, art, documents, photographs and other archival materials and the development of educational exhibitions and programs. Based on a storyline approved by the entire Council in 1988, the basic design of the 40,000 square foot permanent exhibition has been substantially completed. The exhibition, as planned, will use a variety of multi-media presentations including documentary film footage, photographs, authentic documents and artifacts, and eyewitness testimony.

The Museum's curatorial staff continued its full-scale effort to identify and acquire original collections of Holocaust materials. Significant acquisitions include a railroad freight car that was used to transport thousands of Jews from Warsaw to the Treblinka death camp in 1942-1943, as well as thousands of artifacts from the state memorials of Auschwitz and Majdanek including a barracks, prisoners' uniforms, shoes, luggage, prayer shawls and other personal effects. These extraordinary items are just some of the many artifacts which will enable the permanent exhibition to portray this complex story with powerful authenticity.

The archive acquired numerous original documents during this year, including the transfer from the Department of Justice of twenty linear feet of case file claims filed against German assets confiscated by the U.S. Government as well as dozens of personal papers from survivors, liberators, and former war crimes prosecution staff.

Future acquisitions were enhanced with the signing in June 1989 of an agreement with the Soviet Union to organize a project to copy several million Nazi documents, photographs and other records of Nazi atrocities seized by the Red Army in former German occupied territories. The Council also concluded a similar agreement with the German Democratic Republic and is currently in the process of negotiating similar agreements with other Eastern European countries.

The test phase of the automated International Collections and Inventory System (ICIS) began with the establishment of remote test sites at Yad Vashem in Israel, YIVO in New York, the American Jewish Archives in Cincinnati, and the National Archives in Washington. At the conclusion of the test period in 1990, a review panel will evaluate the system design and implementation and prepare recommendations for possible future development and use of the system beyond the prototype stage.

Program Highlights: (cont'd)

While working on the development of the future Museum, the Council is simultaneously very actively involved in sponsoring current educational outreach programs nationwide. In 1988, the Council and the National Learning Center (The Capital Children's Museum) of Washington, D.C. co-sponsored the development of an exhibition about the tragedy of the children of the Holocaust designed specifically for children. As the first major exhibition on the Holocaust for children, the "Remember the Children" exhibition was an overwhelming success and, as a result of an appropriation to the Smithsonian Institution, a travelling version of the exhibition has been designed and will open at the Field Museum in Chicago in January, 1990.

In fulfillment of the Congressional mandate, the National Commemorative Ceremony was held in the Capitol Rotunda on May 2, 1989, and was highlighted by the posthumous award of the Eisenhower Liberation Medal to General of the Army Omar N. Bradley and the lighting of six memorial candles jointly by a leader of Congress and a Holocaust survivor. Similar events or proclamations were evidenced in all 50 states, hundreds of city governments, religious and educational institutions and several federal agencies. As part of this program, the Council has developed educational materials and a program planning guide which are distributed to thousands annually.

In 1989, the Council published 50 Years on the Eve of Destruction, an educational booklet and commemorative program planning guide. This booklet, along with a related poster, was sent to over 7,000 schools, libraries, churches, synagogues, state and local governments, and other interested citizens in order to help them learn about the Holocaust and to encourage them to hold a commemorative observance. The Council also sponsored lectures and the premiere showing of the documentary film, "The Lie," which portrays the little-known story of the Nazi persecution of the Gypsies during World War II.

In view of the unique legislative mandate to construct the Museum using only donated funds, accomplishments include significant progress by the Council's fundraising arm, A Campaign to Remember. In the past year, the Campaign has been expanded into a nationwide fundraising drive with the establishment of four regional campaign offices. As of December 31, 1989 the Campaign surpassed its halfway mark by raising $80.4 million of the $147 million in private funds needed for Museum construction and development in accordance with the Council's mandate from Congress. Continued Federal support is needed in 1991, so that program development can keep pace with the construction schedule.

Council Direction

The Council membership initiates the Council's basic program activities, establishes policies and oversees the conduct of Council actions. The full membership meets at least twice yearly, usually in Washington, D.C. The Council functions through a committee structure ranging from committees that provide policy direction on Days of Remembrance, Museum design and content, to committees which provide oversight to the fundraising activities of the Council. While committees may include members who are not Council members, these individuals serve at no charge to appropriated funds.

Executive leadership of the Council is provided by the Chairman, who works closely with the Executive Director. The Council's day-to-day work is performed by the Executive Director and staff under the Chairman's direction. Almost daily telephone contact with the Executive Director, in addition to weekly meetings, provides the Chairman with constant oversight of the Council's operations.

The Council Direction unit provides administrative services (personnel, budget, finance, procurement, travel, etc.) with support from the Department of the Interior on a reimbursable basis. This program area also includes funds for all technical, administrative and public affairs support for the Museum Development, Educational, Archival, Library, Cultural and Outreach Units, the National Archives Project and Commemorative Observance Unit, as well as for the Campaign and Museum Offices.

Administrative costs for the entire Council operation, including rent, communications, printing, administrative services, supplies, and equipment are budgeted within the Council Direction unit.

Also included in this unit are the staff responsible for the preparation of required annual reports, publications, and the Council's entire public affairs and public information program.

Council Direction
(dollars in thousands)

	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate	Difference
	$1,238	$1,370	$ +132
(FTE-T)	(15)	(15)	+ 0

Distribution by object class

The object class detail for the requested $1,370,000 is as follows:

	FTE-T	Amount
Personnel Compensation	(16)	$ 471,000
Personnel benefits		94,000
Travel & transportation of persons		52,000
Rent, Communications, & utilities		347,000
Printing		79,000
Other Services		291,000
Supplies & Equipment		36,000
	(16)	$1,370,000

Museum Development, Content, Archival, Acquisition, Library and Education

In FY 1989, the fulfillment of the Council's Congressional mandate to build a permanent, living memorial to the victims of the Holocaust came closer to reality as full-scale construction of the Museum began in July. After a competitive bidding process, the Council's Museum Development Committee negotiated a three-year, $53.2 million contract with the low bidder, Blake Construction Company of Washington, D.C. Excavation and the construction of the retention system has been completed, and the pouring of the building's concrete foundation is underway.

Similar progress was made on the development of the permanent exhibition. In addition to the approval of the Museum's basic design, the Museum's permanent collection of objects has increased dramatically within the past year. Now containing thousands of unusual items, the collection serves as a definitive historical record of the Holocaust, in addition to being a vehicle for the interpretation of personal and communal experiences. The objects in the collection also represent the building blocks for planned permanent and special exhibitions, as well as for historical and related research. The Museum has developed a computerized system for cataloguing the collection, and has begun major efforts to conserve these rare objects in this most unique museum collection.

While most objects for the Museum's collection were acquired by donation or long-term loan, on occasion some objects have to be purchased to support the entire exhibition prospectus. This was similarly true of the archives and library, which also increased their holdings during the year. The archives and library will form the basis of the Museum's United States Holocaust Research Institute to serve as the national center for the highest level of scholarly research and other academic and general education programs.

Education is one of the major objectives of the Museum and, in fact, of all Council programming. Therefore, while working on the development of the future Museum, the Council is simultaneously very actively involved in sponsoring a number of educational outreach programs nationwide. These include the "Remember the Children" exhibition presented in association with the National Learning Center at the Capital Children's Museum in Washington, D.C. and at the Field Museum in Chicago.

In a related project, American school children continue to paint ceramic tiles expressing their impressions of the Holocaust, either after visiting the "Remember the Children" exhibition or after a Council-sponsored study unit on the Holocaust. Six thousand of these children's tiles will create the Children's memorial wall in the Museum, giving American school children an opportunity to participate in the creation of this historic, national museum.

The Council continues to cosponsor a teacher-training conference for alumni of a three-week Holocaust and Jewish Resistance summer fellowship program. The program has more than 200 alumni from 32 states who teach over 40,000 students.

The success of the sixth annual national essay writing contest is also a reflection of the growing interest in Holocaust education across the country. The response has become so great that in 1989 two divisions were created, and a record-breaking 3,500 entries were received.

Museum Development, Content, Archival, Acquisition, Library and Education (dollars in thousands)

	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate	Difference
	$ 713	$1,563	$ +850
(FTE-T)	(10)	(11)	+ 1

Distribution by object class

The object class detail for the requested $1,563,000 is as follows:

	FTE-T	Amount
Personnel Compensation	(11)	$ 422,000
Personnel benefits		76,000
Travel & transportation of persons		77,000
Transportation of things		7,000
Rent, Communications, & utilities		85,000
Printing		33,000
Other Services		787,000
Supplies & Equipment		76,000
	(11)	$1,563,000

National Archives Project

In Fiscal Year 1986, to fulfill the recommendation of the President's Commission on the Holocaust to place a special emphasis on the American aspect of our mandated subject, the Council entered into a cooperative agreement with the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). The purpose of this agreement was to identify, catalogue and begin preservation of the Holocaust-related records in NARA collections. This project not only identifies and preserves these records, but also makes information about them available to an increasingly broader spectrum of researchers. In addition, NARA serves as one of the test sites for the Council's program to create a computer-driven network of catalogue data on Holocaust archival materials.

The tasks of researching, locating, cataloguing and preserving are ongoing, and will continue through Fiscal Year 1991. Since the project's inception, we have been able to identify increasing amounts of Holocaust-related materials in NARA collections, and to include important materials on war crimes investigations and trials, documentation on the concentration camps, medical experiments, the liberation of camps in Western Europe by American military units, and the like. These records are currently being described and catalogued in the standard format developed for this project and for the international inventory system.

The project has proven to be of tremendous assistance to Council and Museum staff preparing the permanent exhibition and working with the educational outreach programs. It has also be exceptionally helpful to the NARA staff who respond to research requests on the Holocaust and the Second World War.

As indicated from the outset, this project was envisioned as a multi-year program. The magnitude of the project has increased since FY 1987, as NARA continues to declassify large numbers of records, such as those of the Office of Strategic Services. Funding in FY 1991 will enable us to continue this important work, particularly as we move from military records to the records of civilian agencies such as the Department of State and the Office of War Information. Given the continual declassification of relevant records, and the identification of records hitherto not considered as holding Holocaust-related material, we believe completion of the project will require an additional five years.

National Archives Project
(dollars in thousands)

	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate	Difference
	$ 72	$ 73	$ + 1
(FTE-T)	(1)	(1)	+ 0

Distribution by object class

The object class detail for the requested $73,000 is as follows:

	FTE-T	Amount
Personnel Compensation	(1)	$ 35,000
Personnel benefits		5,000
Other Services		27,000
Supplies & Equipment		6,000
	(1)	$ 73,000

Commemorative Observances

In addition to the creation of the Museum, the other primary Congressional mandate of the Council is "to make permanent arrangements, through annual official Days of Remembrance, for ceremonial observances to remember the six million Jews murdered in the Holocaust and the millions of others who perished as a result of the Nazi policies of genocide and racial suppression, and to honor the survivors of the Holocaust."

As a result of the Council's efforts over the past ten years, Days of Remembrance has not only become an American institution, but also has been greatly expanded so that a remarkable diversity of Americans are now participating in commemoration through a variety of means. Days of Remembrance is now a nationwide educational program culminating in observances in all 50 state capitals, numerous city halls, schools, synagogues, churches and libraries, and of course, the Council's Capitol Rotunda ceremony.

In concert with the Council's national civic ceremony in the Capitol Rotunda, on May 2, 1989, many other Federal agencies also marked this Day of Remembrance. The Department of Defense held commemoration ceremonies at the Pentagon and at U.S. military installations at home and abroad. The Department of Education conducted its own ceremony, and the Secretaries of State, Housing and Urban Development, Treasury and Veterans Affairs, as well as the Director of the National Coast Guard, issued letters to their staffs encouraging commemorative activities.

In addition to these observances, the Council sponsors lectures and/or film series and also annually publishes an educational booklet/program planning guide with a companion poster distributed to thousands nationwide.

Commemorative Observances
(dollars in thousands)

	FY 1990 Estimate	FY 1991 Estimate	Difference
	$ 292	$ 298	$ + 6
(FTE-T)	(3)	(3)	+ 0

Distribution by object class

The object class detail for the requested $299,000 is as follows:

	FTE-T	Amount
Personnel Compensation	(3)	$ 92,000
Personnel benefits		14,000
Travel & transportation of persons		21,000
Transportation of things		4,000
Printing		79,000
Other Services		57,000
Supplies & Equipment		16,000
Postage		15,000
	(3)	$ 298,000

Budget Considerations:

1. Increased funding is needed for preparation of educational exhibits to be displayed in conjunction with the opening of the Museum. These exhibitions also will "travel" to acquaint the rest of the Country with the Holocaust and with the Museum. This proposal includes funds for planning, research, and identification of critically required artifacts........... 200,000

2. Funds are needed for Museum acquisitions to be used for exhibition, research and education. The Museum will be the central repository for original artifacts, artworks, etc., related to the Holocaust. To fulfill this goal, a number of rare and/or important artifacts must be acquired from individuals, institutions, and foreign governments. The Council receives numerous offers to receive individual items and collections as gifts, but many important items must be purchased. All items must be authenticated prior to acceptance..................... 375,000

3. To preserve the collection and to prepare artifacts for installation in the permanent exhibition of the museum, each object must be examined and assessed for proper treatment. The Conservation Program must be overseen by a professional conservator and carried out by that conservator and others under his/her supervision. Funds are requested for one employee to oversee the conservation program and to contract the services of a conservation firm........................... 128,000

4. As the collection of the Museum grows, and until the Museum is opened, secure off-site storage must be utilized to house and conserve the collections. Presently, space has been borrowed from the National Park Service, but the collections' size, and the size of individual items, exceeds its capacity. Funds are requested for rental of the necessary private storage and to provide the necessary equipment and security to ensure that the collections are properly cared for......... 105,000

5. Given the rapid increase in the acquisition of archival documentation, it is necessary to employ an archival cataloguer to accession, arrange and catalolgue archival materials so that the materials can be made available to scholars, curators and other researchers.. 29,700

6. Funds to cover inflationary increases and are also requested in both the personnel and personnel benefit object classes as well as in all other non-personnel object classes......... 132,300

7. Consistent with administration policy, funds are requested to cover the FY 91 pay increase for 50 percent FY 91.......... 19,000

Total.........+989,000

United States Holocaust Memorial Council

Summary of Changes

	Full-time Equivalent Employment	Amount
Summary of Changes:		
Appropriation 1990	29	2,315,000
Appropriation 1991 Request		
Increased Funding for Educational Exhibitions	....	200,000
Increased Funding for Museum Acquisitions	....	375,000
Funding for a professional Conservator and to contract services of a conservation firm	1	128,000
Off-site Storage funding	....	105,000
Funding for an Archival Cataloguer to accession, arrange and catalogue archival materials	1	29,700
Inflationary Increases for personnel an non-personnel object classes		132,300
FY 91 Pay Raise Funded at 50 Percent	....	19,000
Total adjustments to base	2	989,000
Total appropriation requested	31	3,304,000

Summary of Program and Performance

Activity: Council Operations

Program Subactivity	FY 90 est.	FY 91 est.	Inc (+) Dec (-)
Council Direction $	1,238	1,370	+ 132
Museum Development, Content, Archival, Library and Education	713	1,563	+ 850
National Archive Project	72	73	+ 1
Commemorative Observances	292	298	+ 6
	2,315	3,304	+ 989

SF 300
12/12/89

U.S. HOLOCAUST MEMORIAL COUNCIL
Federal Funds
General and Special Funds
Program & Financing
(in thousands of dollars)

IDENTIFICATION CODE 95-3300-0-1-806	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Program by activities:			
10.00 Total obligations	2,243	2,297	3,304
Financing:			
25.00 Unobligated Balance lapsing	1	--	--
40.00 Budget authority (Appropriation)	2,244	2,315	3,304
40.00 Reduction pursuant to P.L. 99-177		-18	
Budget Authority:			
43.00 Appropriation (adjusted)	2,244	2,297	3,304
Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.00 Obligations incurred, net	2,243	2,297	3,304
72.40 Obligations balance, start of year	566	393	480
74.40 Obligated balance, end of year	-393	-480	-691
77.00 Adjustments in expired accounts	-2	--	--
90.00 Total Outlays	2,414	2,210	3,093

SF 300
12/12/89

U.S. HOLOCAUST MEMORIAL COUNCIL
Federal Funds
General and Special Funds
Object Classification
(in thousands)

IDENTIFICATION CODE 95-3300-0-1-806		1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
	Personnel Compensation:			
11.1	Full-time permanent	679	800	900
11.3	Positions other than Full-time Permanent	110	72	106
11.5	Other personnel compensation	17	14	15
11.9	Total Personnel Compensation	806	886	1,021
	Other:			
12.1	Personnel benefits: civilian	134	163	189
21.0	Travel & Transportation of persons	117	142	151
22.0	Travel & Transportation of things	1	11	11
23.2	Communications, utilities, rent	303	332	432
24.0	Printing and reproduction	197	181	190
25.0	Other Services	492	460	1,161
26.0	Supplies and materials	118	63	67
31.0	Equipment	75	59	82
99.9	Total Obligations	2,243	2,297	3,304
Total number of full-time permanent positions		28	29	30

UNITED STATES HOLOCAUST MEMORIAL COUNCIL

Relationship of Decision Units to Account Structure
(in thousands of dollars)

Decision Unit by Account	1991 Estimate	
	BA	Outlays
United States Holocaust Memorial Council General Management	3,304	3,093
Total United States Holocaust Memorial Council	3,304	3,093

United States Holocaust Memorial Council

Salaries and Expenses

Fiscal Year 1991

Congressional Appropriation for FY 1990	$2,315,000
Reduction Pursuant to P.L. 99-177	-18,000
Budget Authority for FY 1990 (adjusted)	2,297,000
Budget Estimate for FY 1991	3,304,000
Increase - FY 90 Appropriation & FY 91 Estimate	+989,000
Increase - FY 90 Budget Authority (adjusted) & FY 91 Estimate	+1,007,000

UNITED STATES
DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
BUDGET JUSTIFICATIONS, F.Y. 1991

March 3, 1849

NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION

NOTICE: These budget justifications are prepared for the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Subcommittees. Approval for release of the justifications prior to their printing in the public record of the Subcommittee hearings may be obtained through the Office of Budget of the Department of the Interior.

NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION

Budget Justification
Fiscal Year 1991

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Item	Page Number
General Statement	NIGC- 1
Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses	
Appropriation Summary Statement	NIGC- 3
Appropriation Language	NIGC- 4
Summary of Requirements	NIGC- 5
Justification of Program and Performance by Activity: Administration	NIGC- 6
Summary of Requirements by Object Class	NIGC- 9
Program and Financing Schedule	NIGC-10
Object Classification	NIGC-11
Personnel Summary	NIGC-12
Schedule of Permanent Employment	NIGC-13

NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION
General Statement

The National Indian Gaming Commission is established as an independent agency within the Department of the Interior by the Indian Gaming Regulatory Act (Public Law 100-497) [the Act]. The purpose of the Commission is to regulate and monitor class II gaming (such as bingo) conducted on Indian lands.

Numerous Indian tribes have become engaged in or have licensed gaming activities on Indian lands as a means of generating tribal governmental revenue. Concerns about these activities have led to the formation of this Commission. The operation of gaming by Indian tribes is considered a means of promoting tribal economic development, self-sufficiency, and strong tribal governments. Existing Federal law does not provide clear standards of regulations for the conduct of gaming on Indian lands. The formation of this Commission by the Act provides a statutory basis for the regulation of gaming by Indian tribes. Regulations are necessary to shield tribes from organized crime and other corrupting influences, to ensure that they are the primary beneficiaries of the gaming operations, and to assure that gaming is conducted fairly and honestly by both the operators and players.

The National Indian Gaming Commission is established as an independent Federal regulatory authority to meet these concerns regarding gaming on Indian lands and to protect such gaming as a means of generating tribal revenue.

The Chairman of the Commission will be appointed by the President with the advice and consent of the Senate. Two associate members will be appointed by the Secretary of the Interior. Each will be a full-time member of the Commission and at least two members of the Commission shall be enrolled members of Indian tribes. Also, the Chairman will appoint a General Counsel to the Commission and appoint and supervise other staff as necessary to fulfill the objectives of the Commission.

The specific functions of the Commission are as follows:

1. To monitor class II gaming conducted on Indian lands on a continuing basis;

2. To inspect and examine all premises located on Indian lands on which class II gaming is conducted;

3. To conduct such background investigations as may be necessary;

4. To promulgate such regulations and guidelines as it deems appropriate to implement the provisions of the Act;

5. To establish a schedule of fees to be paid to the Commission annually by each class II gaming activity that is regulated by the Act; and

6. To conduct such activities as may be necessary to accomplish the objectives of the Commission pursuant to the Act.

Funds were requested in FY 1990 for the operation of the Indian Gaming Commission. The FY 1991 estimate follows:

(dollars in thousands)

	FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase or Decrease
$	750	1,504	754
FTE	5	8	3

Highlights of the FY 1991 Request

The FY 1991 appropriation request of $1,504,000 for the National Indian Gaming Commission will cover start-up costs of the Commission. It will finance the expenses of the three members of the Commission and the salaries and related costs necessary to finance a small supporting staff. This request of $1,504,000 includes:

* $524,000 to cover salary and benefit costs;

* $100,000 to provide for travel to locations throughout the United States where regulated gaming events take place; and

* $50,000 to provide for printing costs, including the publication of proposed regulations.

NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION
Salaries and Expenses

Appropriation Summary Statement
(Program and Performance)

The Indian Gaming Regulatory Act (Public Law 100-497) established the National Indian Gaming Commission as an independent agency within the Department of the Interior. The Commission will have a regulatory role over class II gaming (such as bingo) conducted on Indian lands. Operating costs of the Commission will be financed through annual tribal assessments of gaming activities regulated by the Commission. Federal appropriations are requested in 1991 to cover start-up costs of the Commission.

Appropriation Language Sheet

DEPARTMENTAL OFFICES

NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION

Salaries and Expenses

For necessary expenses of the National Indian Gaming Commission, pursuant to Public Law 100-497, [$750,000] $1,504,000: Provided, That in fiscal year [1990] 1991 and thereafter, fees collected pursuant to and as limited by Section 18 of the Act shall be available to carry out the duties of the Commission, to remain available until expended. (Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 1990.)

NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION
Salaries and Expenses
Summary of requirements
(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses

	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount
Appropriation currently available, 1990			5	750
ADJUSTMENTS TO BASE:				
Additional Cost in 1991 for the 1991 Pay Raise	0	4		
Total adjustments to base			0	4
1991 Base Budget			5	754
Program changes (Changes to base budget, detailed below)			3	750
TOTAL REQUIREMENTS (1991 Estimate)			8	1,504

Comparison by activity/ subactivity:	FY 1989 Actual		FY 1990 Enacted		FY 1991 Base		FY 1991 Estimate		FY 1991 Inc./(dec.) from FY 1990 Appropriation		FY 1990 Inc./(dec.) from FY 1990 Base	
	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount	FTE-T	Amount
Administration, Total Requirements	0	0	5	750	5	754	8	1,504	3	754	3	750

Justification of Program and Performance

ACTIVITY: ADMINISTRATION

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

	FY 1990 Enacted	FY 1991 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Increase/ (Decrease) from 1990	Increase/ (Decrease) from Base
$	750	754	1,504	754	750
(FTE-T)	5	5	8	3	3

Authorization: Public Law 100-497, 102 Stat.2467

Objectives: To regulate and monitor class II gaming (such as bingo) conducted on Indian lands and to protect such gaming as a means of generating tribal revenue.

Base Program: The National Indian Gaming Commission will begin operations in fiscal year 1990. As an independent agency within the Department of the Interior, it will seek to promulgate regulations and commence monitoring class II gaming on Indian lands according to the provisions in the Indian Gaming Regulatory Act.

Class II gaming on Indian lands will continue to be within the jurisdiction of the Indian tribes, but shall be subject to the regulations to be established by the Commission. These regulations will reflect the provisions of the Indian Gaming Regulatory Act which established the Commission.

An Indian tribe may engage in, or license and regulate, class II gaming on Indian lands within such tribe's jurisdiction, if A) such Indian gaming is located within a State that permits such gaming for any purpose by any person, organization or entity and B) the governing body of the Indian tribe adopts an ordinance or resolution which is approved by the Chairman of this Commission. A separate license issued by the Indian tribe shall be required for each place, facility, or location on Indian lands at which class II gaming is conducted.

The Commission, if necessary to carry out its duties, may demand access to and inspect, examine, photocopy, and audit all papers, books, and records concerning gross revenues of class II gaming conducted on Indian lands and any other related matters.

The Commission will establish a schedule of fees to be paid to the Commission annually by each regulated class II gaming activity according to the provisions of the Act. The rate of fees will be adopted each year by a majority vote of the Commission. The total amount of all fees imposed during any fiscal year shall not exceed $1,500,000 according to the Act. These fees will be payable to the Commission on a quarterly basis. These fees, once collected, will be used to offset the expenses of the Commission. If surplus funds are available at the end of a fiscal year, these will be credited to each gaming activity on a pro rata basis against fees imposed for the succeeding year.

In the event fees collected are not expected to be sufficient to cover the costs of operations of the Commission, the Commission may also request an annual appropriation. If necessary, the request would be in an amount equal to or less than the amount of funds derived from assessments for the previous fiscal year.

Increase from 1991 Base

(Dollars in thousands)

	FY 1991 Base	FY 1991 Estimate	Difference
$	754	1,504	750
FTE-T	5	8	3

It is anticipated that the Commission will not be collecting fees in FY 1991 sufficient to cover operating expenses. Consequently, the appropriation request of $1,504,000 will fund the continuing start-up costs of the Commission in 1991. The increase of $750,000 over the 1991 base level reflects the expanded work of the Commission in 1991 to promulgate regulations and audit gaming establishments. Increases are included for three additional staff positions consisting of two auditors and one staff assistant. To support the expanded activity of the Commission, increases are requested for travel, rental payments, communications, printing, other services and supplies. The amount requested for equipment is reduced from the 1991 base level because this item contains some one-time only costs.

Distribution of change by object class:

The object class detail for the proposed increased of $750,000 and three work years is as follows:

Object Class	FTE	Amount
Personnel Compensation	3	$200,000
Personnel Benefits		$27,000
Travel		$50,000
Rental Payments		$17,000
Communications, utilities and miscellaneous charges		$20,000
Printing and reproduction		$25,000
Other services		$421,000
Supplies and materials		$10,000
Equipment		-$20,000
Total	3	$750,000

National Indian Gaming Commission
Summary of Requirements by Object Class

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

		1991 Base		1991 Estimate		Increase/(Decrease)	
		FTE	Amount	FTE	Amount	FTE	Amount
Appropriation: Salaries and Expenses							
Object Class							
11.0	Personnel Compensation:						
11.1	Full-time permanent	5	251	5	446	0	195
11.3	Other than full-time permanent		10		10		0
11.5	Other personnel compensation		0		5		5
11.9	Total personnel compensation	5	261	5	461	0	200
	Other Objects						
12.1	Personnel benefits: Civilian		36		63		27
21.0	Travel and transportation of persons		50		100		50
23.1	Rental payments to GSA		20		37		17
23.3	Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges		20		40		20
24.0	Printing and reproduction		25		50		25
25.0	Other services		277		698		421
26.0	Supplies and materials		15		25		10
31.0	Equipment		50		30		(20)
	Total requirements		754		1,504		750

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION
SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Program and Financing (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 14-0118-0-1-806		1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
	Program by activities:			
10.00	Total obligations....................	0	750	1,514
	Financing:			
14.00	Offsetting collections from: Non-Federal sources	0	0	(10)
40.00	Budget Authority (Appropriation).....	0	750	1,504
	Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.00	Obligations incurred, net...........	0	750	1,504
72.40	Obligated balance, start of year....	0	0	75
74.40	Obligated balance, end of year......	0	(75)	(150)
90.00	Outlays..........................	0	675	1,429

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION
SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Object Classification (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 14-0118-0-1-806		1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
	Personnel compensation:			
111.101	Full-time permanent................		247	446
111.301	Other than full-time permanent.....		10	10
111.501	Other personnel compensation.......			5
111.901	Total personnel compensation.....	0	257	461
112.101	Personnel benefits: Civilian.......		36	63
121.001	Travel and transportation of persons..........................		50	100
123.101	Rental payments to GSA.............		20	37
123.301	Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges............		20	40
124.001	Printing and reproduction..........		25	50
125.001	Other services.....................		277	698
126.001	Supplies and materials.............		15	25
131.001	Equipment..........................		50	30
199.001	Subtotal, direct obligations......	0	750	1,504
299.001	Reimbursable obligations...........	0	0	10
999.901	Total obligations..................	0	750	1,514

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION
SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Personnel Summary

Identification code 14-0118-0-1-806	1989 Estimate	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Total number of full-time permanent positions....................	0	5	8
Total compensable workyears:			
Full-time equivalent employment........	0	5	8
Full-time equivalent of overtime and holiday hours.......................	0	0	0

NATIONAL INDIAN GAMING COMMISSION
SALARIES AND EXPENSES

Consolidated schedule of permanent employment, National Indian Gaming Commission

Identification code 14-0118-0-1-806	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
ES-4	0	1	1
ES-5	0	2	2
subtotal	0	3	3
GS-18	0	1	1
GS-14	0	0	2
GS-7	0	1	1
GS-5	0	0	1
subtotal	0	2	5
Total permanent employment	0	5	8
Unfilled positions, end of year	0	0	0
Total permanent employment, end of year	0	5	8

UNITED STATES
DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
BUDGET JUSTIFICATIONS, F.Y. 1991

STRIP
SEAL

March 3, 1849

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL

NOTICE: These budget justifications are prepared for the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Subcommittees. Approval for release of the justifications prior to their printing in the public record of the Subcommittee hearings may be obtained through the Office of Budget of the Department of the Interior.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL

FISCAL YEAR 1991 BUDGET JUSTIFICATIONS

Table of Contents

	Page Number
GENERAL STATEMENT	ATB-1
APPROPRIATION: AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL	
APPROPRIATION SUMMARY STATEMENT	ATB-9
APPROPRIATION LANGUAGE	ATB-15
SUMMARY OF REQUIREMENTS	ATB-16
Bureau of Land Management	
Resource Protection/Recreation--Operations: Analysis by Subactivity	ATB-19
Renewable Resources Management	
Wildlife Habitat Management	ATB-20
Recreation Resources Management	ATB-24
Resource Protection/Recreation--Construction: Analysis by Subactivity	ATB-30
Construction (Buildings, Recreation Facilities, Transportation)	ATB-31
Land Acquisition: Analysis by Subactivity	ATB-38
Land Acquisition Program	ATB-39
Fish and Wildlife Service	
Resource Protection/Recreation--Operations: Analysis by Subactivity	ATB-58
Endangered Species	
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Endangered Species	ATB-59
Research and Development: Endangered Species Research	ATB-63
Wetlands	
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Ecological Services	ATB-64
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Environmental Contaminants	ATB-66
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; National Wetlands Inventory	ATB-68
Refuges and Wildlife; Refuge Operations and Maintenance	ATB-70
Refuges and Wildlife; Migratory Bird Management	ATB-73
Research and Development; Fish and Wildlife Research Center O&M	ATB-78
Research and Development; Technology Development	ATB-80
North American Wetlands Conservation Fund	ATB-82
Resource Protection/Recreation--Construction: Analysis by Subactivity	ATB-86
Construction and Rehabilitation	ATB-87
Land Acquisition: Analysis by Subactivity	ATB-91
Land Acquisition Program	ATB-92
National Park Service	
Resource Protection/Recreation--Operations: Analysis by Subactivity	ATB-128
Park Resources Management	
Regional Natural Resource (Science) Programs	ATB-129

Natural Resource Preservation Program ATB-130
Geographic Information Systems Program (GIS) ATB-131
Artifact Preservation Collection Management Program ATB-132
Park, Recreation and Wilderness Planning
Water Resources Inventory Program ATB-133
Presidio Planning ATB-136
Resource Protection/Recreation--Construction: Analysis by Subactivity ATB-138
Planning ATB-139
Construction and Rehabilitation ATB-141
Land Acquisition: Analysis by Subactivity ATB-152
Land Acquisition Program ATB-153
State Grants Administration ATB-167
PROGRAM AND FINANCING SCHEDULE ATB-169
SUMMARY OF REQUIREMENTS BY OBJECT CLASS ATB-170
PERSONNEL SUMMARY ATB-171

America the Beautiful

General Statement

> *I have resolved that if I am elected President, I will undertake a program . . . . America the Beautiful: because that's exactly what this country of ours is -- beautiful beyond all comprehension.*
>
> *..........George Bush, October 1988*

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget includes a major initiative called "America the Beautiful." The initiative would be administered by the Agriculture and Interior departments. The purposes of this initiative are to promote reforestation, enhance recreational opportunities and to benefit nationally significant natural and cultural resources.

America the Beautiful includes expanded land acquisition for the national parks, wildlife refuges, forests, and other public lands. It would launch a new national program of reforestation; and it would support enhanced recreation, and protection and restoration of key natural resources under a program called "Legacy '99"--a reflection of the Administration's desire to leave behind a legacy in which these natural resource assets are fully protected for the benefit of future generations.

America the Beautiful

($ in millions)

	Total Program	DOI Portion
Reforestation (Forest Service)	$175.0	0.0
Land Acquisition	250.0	161.1
Legacy '99 Resource Protection/ Recreation	205.1	205.1
Total, America the Beautiful	***630.1***	***366.3***

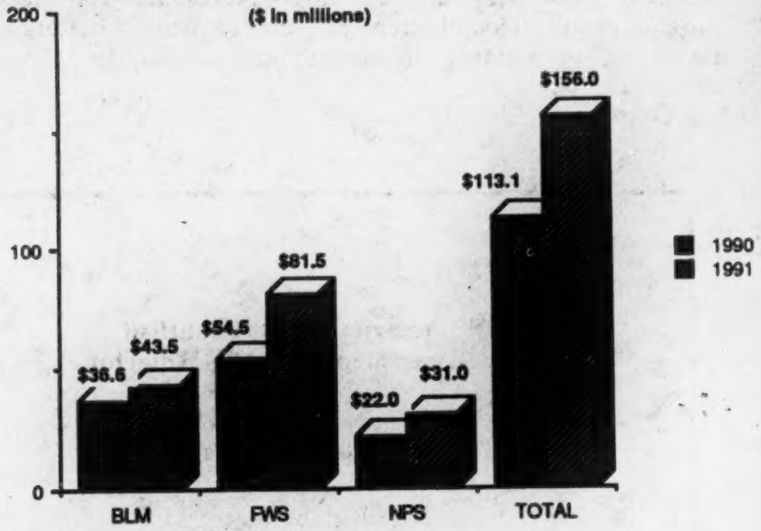
For the Department of the Interior, the America the Beautiful (ATB) program totals $366.3 million, which is nearly $70 million more than the funds available for the same activities in 1990 and over $120 million more than was requested for those activities in the 1990 President's Budget. The $366.3 million would be appropriated to a single, new, ATB account from which funds would be allocated to the Bureau of Land Management, the Fish and Wildlife Service, and the National Park Service. Funding is included for certain operating programs and rehabilitation projects to benefit natural and cultural resources, to enhance recreation, and to acquire Federal lands, as shown below:

America the Beautiful
Department of the Interior

($ in Millions)

	1990	1991	Increase
Legacy '99:			
Resource Protection/ Recreation, Operations	113.1	156.0	42.8
Resource Protection/ Recreation, Construction	32.7	49.2	16.5
Subtotal, ATB - Legacy '99	145.8	205.1	59.3
Land Acquisition:	151.5	161.1	9.6
TOTAL	***297.3***	***366.3***	***68.9***

America the Beautiful: Legacy '99 Resource Protection/Recreation, Operations



America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities. The operating accounts for BLM, FWS and NPS would receive total funding of $156.0 million for resource protection and recreation under this initiative, an increase of $42.8 million over the 1990 level (for similar activities).

Bureau of Land Management: The Bureau of Land Management's portion of the America the Beautiful operation component includes the Wildlife Habitat Management program and the Recreation Resources Management program. The total increase in these two programs for BLM is $6.9 million.

Fish and Wildlife Service: The operations component of the Fish and Wildlife Service is a major beneficiary of the America the Beautiful program. An additional $26.9 million over the 1990 enacted level is proposed for a FWS component of the Department's wetlands initiative, the recently enacted North American Wetlands Conservation Act, and endangered species activities.

National Park Service: Park Service operations will also benefit from the America the Beautiful initiative. The following NPS operating programs will receive $9.0 million in increases over the 1990 level under America the Beautiful: Natural Resource Management -- Servicewide Program, +2.5 million; Natural Resource Management --Regional Program, +$3.8 million; Natural Resource Management -- Geographic Information Systems, +$.09 million; Cultural Resource Management -- Artifact Inventory, +$34,000; Water Resource Inventry, +$0.7 million; and Presidio Planning, +$1.0 million.

America the Beautiful: Legacy '99 Construction

America the Beautiful Construction

($ in Millions)

	1990	1991	Increase
BLM	1.2	1.4	0.2
FWS	2.2	2.3	0.1
NPS	29.3	45.4	16.1
Total, Construction	*$32.7*	*$49.2*	*$16.4*

The construction component of the America the Beautiful program funds rehabilitation projects in the Bureau of Land Management, the Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Park Service which protect resources and provide recreational opportunities. Amounts requested by the Administration and/or provided by the Congress for rehabilitation related to environmental protection or the repair of facilities which provide recreation have been limited in recent years. The 1991 budget proposes an increase of $16.4 million over the amounts appropriated in FY 1990 for repair and rehabilitation projects related to environmental protection and recreation enhancement.

Those portions of the construction budgets of the bureaus which are part of the America the Beautiful program are discussed below:

Bureau of Land Management: America the Beautiful will provide for a Bureau of Land Management construction program of $1.4 million, an increase of $0.2 million above similar types of construction projects provided in the 1990 appropriation. BLM will construct six projects to improve access to the public land, enhance recreation opportunities, and protect resource values and the environment. Typical of these projects is the construction of an access road, boat ramp, parking area, interpretive kiosk, and other amenities for the Loma Boat Launch Site ($30 thousand) in Ruby Canyon on the Colorado River in Mesa County, Colorado. Presently, demand exceeds the capacity of existing facilities, and the proposed development would serve to curtail resource damage resulting from random and indiscriminate uses related to the lack of adequate facilities.

Fish and Wildlife Service: America the Beautiful will provide the Fish and Wildlife Service with construction funds of $2.3 million for the design and repair or replacement of bridges and roads at Okefenokee National Wildlife Refuge, Georgia/Florida; funding to study and design an alternative sewage treatment facility at Crab Orchard National Wildlife Refuge, Illinois; and for the design and construction of a sewage system at Lacassine National Wildlife Refuge, Louisiana, that meets State effluent requirements. All projects will improve access to the public land, enhance recreation opportunities, and protect resource values and the environment.

National Park Service: The National Park Service America the Beautiful construction request is $45.4 million, or roughly half of the total NPS construction request in the 1991 budget. This request includes planning and project funds for work at eight park units.

High priority projects to protect and improve cultural or natural resources are included. For example, the request includes $7.5 million to improve waterflow structures and levies at Everglades National Park. This new resource management initiative is intended to mitigate water quantity problems at the Shark River Slough area of the Florida Everglades. The Park Service is also requesting $8.5 million to protect unique cultural resources at San Juan National Historic Site, Puerto Rico. The El Morro west wall project is intended to prevent erosion damage to what was the largest Spanish fortification in the New World.

America the Beautiful: Land Acquisition

America the Beautiful
Land Acquisition

($ in Millions)

	1990	1991	Change
BLM	12.6	24.3	+11.7
FWS	68.0	56.7	-11.3
NPS	71.0	80.2	+9.2
Subtotal, DOI	151.6	161.1	9.6
U.S. Forest Service	63.4	88.8	25.4
TOTAL, Land Acquisition	***$215.0***	***$250.0***	***+35.0***

Under America the Beautiful, the Federal Government's acquisition of lands to protect natural resources and to provide recreation opportunities would total $250 million, an increase of $35 million over the amount available in 1990 and $43 million more than was requested in the 1990 President's Budget (these amounts do not include funding for Land and Water Conservation Fund State grants for land acquisition).

The funding level for each bureau was determined by an Administration-wide land acquisition criteria ranking system. The ranking criteria were established for 1990 and then refined for 1991. The Department of the Interior worked closely with the Forest Service of the Department of Agriculture to assure agreement over the criteria used. For 1991, increased weight was given to projects which benefit wetlands and riparian areas and to projects which meet the individual missions of the four agencies. Of the total Administration program of $250 million, three-fourths of the funds would go to projects that have at least some wetland or riparian values.

As part of the America the Beautiful program, the Interior Department is requesting $161.1 million for land acquisition. This is an increase of $9.6 million from the 1990 enacted level for Federal acquisitions. (Because of the large backlog of unfunded Federal acquisitions, State grants for land acquisition are not part of the 1991 land acquisition request).

Those portions of the land acquisition budgets of the bureaus which are part of the America the Beautiful program are discussed below:

Bureau of Land Management: The America the Beautiful initiative will increase the BLM land acquisition program by $11.7 million, which will provide for acquisition of lands to improve the manageability of the public lands, enhance public opportunities for recreation, and provide for protection of critical resources. With these funds, 31 project areas in 10 states would be acquired with emphasis on wetland areas, enhancement of public recreational access, and management of specially designated areas.

Fish and Wildlife Service: The 1991 budget includes $56.7 million for Fish and Wildlife Service land acquisition in 1991. Funding will provide for 28 projects, representing 19 States, as well as inholdings and acquisition management. Fully 66 percent of the funding, or $37.6 million, is for biologically important wetland-related areas.

National Park Service: The America the Beautiful land acquisition program for the NPS totals $80.2 million, and would allow

acquisition of lands needed to protect valuable ecosystems, such as Big Cypress ($4.0 million in Florida), Everglades ($7.5 million in Florida), and Channel Islands ($14.5 million in California), and of areas which provide recreational opportunities near urban areas, such as the Santa Monica Mountains National Recreation Area in California ($11.6 million) and the Appalachian Trail ($7.0 million).

Appropriation Summary Statement

America the Beautiful

Appropriation: America the Beautiful

The America the Beautiful authorizing legislation will propose establishing an account in Treasury, which will be subdivided into an Interior account and an Agriculture account. The funds appropriated to the Interior account would be allocated to the Bureau of Land Management, the Fish and Wildlife Service, and the National Park Service for the land acquisition program and the Legacy '99 program, which funds both operations and construction to protect resources and enhance recreation. The activities funded under this appropriation include:

1. Bureau of Land Management: Resource Protection/ Recreation -- Operations. This activity includes Wildlife Habitat Management and Recreation Management.

a. The **Wildlife Habitat Management** program includes three major components: general wildlife habitat management, fisheries and riparian habitat management, and threatened and endangered species management. In 1988 BLM completed *Fish and Wildlife 2000: A Strategic Plan,* which describes the goals and objectives for the BLM's wildlife and fisheries habitat management programs.

General wildlife habitat management programs include initiatives for improved management of habitat for Desert Bighorn Sheep, deer/elk and other big game species, and waterfowl, upland game birds, and raptors. Fish habitat management focuses on improving streams, rivers, springs, lakes and reservoirs on public lands that provide spawning, rearing, and other key habitat components for cold and warm water fish species, including anadromous fish. This program includes riparian area management. The threatened and endangered species program includes measures for the recovery of currently listed species as well as preventive actions to forestall events that could jeopardize a species or destroy its habitat.

In recent years challenge cost-share programs have been used in the wildlife habitat management program to leverage Federal funds by establishing cooperative agreements with various conservation, civic, outdoors, and other organizations including state agencies, which in turn match those dollars with labor and, materials.

b. The **Recreation Resources Management** program focuses on special management areas where recreation use is heavily concentrated, as well as management of extensive recreation use of the Public Lands. In 1988 BLM completed *Recreation 2000: A Strategic Plan,* which describes the goals and objectives for the BLM's recreation-related programs, including recreation resource management, as well as other BLM programs for facilities maintenance, access, land acquisition, and construction, and outlines the direction of the BLM's effort between now and the year 2000. The recreation resources management program focuses on recreational opportunities of great diversity, quantity, and quality on public lands. Many of the recreation resources managed by the BLM are unique or are of national significance. They include 32 Wild and Scenic Rivers, 22 National Recreation, Scenic, and Historic Trails, five National Conservation Areas, and one National Recreation Area. In addition, the BLM manages 423 developed and 1,835 undeveloped recreation sites, hundreds of miles of trails, boat access points, visitor centers, and so on.

Within the recreation resources management program, there are several components, including management of special areas (such as national conservation areas), inventory and evaluation of recreation resources (such as wild and scenic rivers and cave resources), permit management, fee collection, visitor services, resource protection, challenge cost-share partnerships, and use of volunteers.

2. **Bureau of Land Management: Resource Protection/ Recreation -- Construction** This activity includes only those rehabilitation construction programs which protect or restore resources or enhance recreation. The budget proposes $1.4 million for such projects in 1991, an increase of $0.2 million above similar types of construction projects provided in the FY1990 appropriation.

3. **Bureau of Land Management: Land Acquisition** The land acquisition activity provides funding for acquisition of lands or waters, or interests therein, essential to improving the manageability of Public Lands and to purchase or make equalization payments for land exchanges in response to specific acts of Congress. The total program for FY1991 is $24,278,000.

4. **Fish and Wildlife Service: Resource Protection/ Recreation -- Operations.** This activity includes Endangered Species, Wetlands, and North American Wetlands Conservation Act.

a. **Endangered Species:** Under this program the Fish and Wildlife Service identifies and lists species that are endangered or threatened; provides protection from taking, trade, importation and exportation, and adverse alteration of their critical habitat; and implements recovery programs for individual species. This activity also involves research. Included in America the Beautiful is $30.5 million, an increase of $150,000 above the 1990 amount for endangered species activities.

b. **Wetlands:** Wetlands activities occur in several areas: Under Fish and Wildlife Enhancement, Ecological Services, activities relate to permits and the implementation of the "Farm Bill." Environmental Contaminants activities include bay and estuary and bay toxic studies. The National Wetlands Inventory is also a part of this activity. Water rights, private partnerships and implementation of the "Farm Bill" are included under Refuges and Wildlife, Operations and Maintenance of Refuges. Further implementation of the North American Waterfowl Management Plan, as well as data base collection and efforts to undertake wetland restoration programs on and off Service lands, are also included under Migratory Bird Management. Under Research and Development, this activity also includes "Farm Bill" activities, wetlands contaminants, and studies involving the Louisiana coastal wetlands under technical development. America the Beautiful will enhance FWS wetlands activities as the President's goal of "no net loss" of wetlands is implemented. The FWS wetlands initiative totals $35.9 million, an $11.8 million increase over 1990.

c. **North American Wetlands Conservation Act.** America the Beautiful also includes $15 million in current budget authority to fund the recently enacted North American Wetlands Conservation Act (NAWCA) , which encourages partnerships among public agencies and other interests for the protection, enhancement, restoration, and management of wetland ecosystems and other habitats for migratory birds; as well as the maintenance of current or improved populations of migratory birds in accordance with the North American Waterfowl Management Plan and the Tripartite Agreement among the United States, Canada, and Mexico. These goals will be implemented with the help of non-Federal matching of Federal contributions, which will be used to obtain real property, including water rights and the restoration, management, and enhancement of habitat in the United States and Canada.

5. **Fish and Wildlife Service: Resource Protection/ Recreation -- Construction** This activity includes only those rehabilitation construction programs which protect or restore resources or enhance recreation. The budget proposes $2.3 million for such projects in 1991, an increase of $0.2 million above similar types of construction projects provided in the FY1990 appropriation.

6. **Fish and Wildlife Service: Land Acquisition** The land acquisition activity provides funding for acquisition of lands or waters, or interests therein, to protect important fish and wildlife habitat for preservation and recovery of endangered species and other important wildlife and plant species, and for public use and enjoyment. The total program for FY1991 is $56,700,000.

7. **National Park Service: Resource Protection/ Recreation -- Operations.** This activity includes: Regional Natural Resource Science Programs, Natural Resource Preservation Program, Geographic Information Systems Program, Artifact Preservation/ Collections Management, and Presidio Planning.

a. The **Regional Natural Resource (Science) programs** provide parks with services, expertise, and funding for one-time or cyclic projects that are not available in the individual park units. Many of these research and mitigation projects benefit several parks with common problems. The 1991 request for Natural Resource Management -- Regional Program is $12.0 million, an increase of $3.8 million over the 1990 enacted level of $8.2 million.

b. Under the **Natural Resource Preservation Program** the National Park Service's Washington Office oversees funding for a variety of significant natural resource research, monitoring, and mitigation problems in units of the National Park System. The 1991 request is $10.0 million, an increase of $2.5 million over the 1990 enacted level of $7.5 million.

c. The **Geographic Information Systems Program (GIS)** provides for park-based geographic information systems, which are computerized databases that integrate mapped, descriptive, and quantitative data including various resource and incident occurrence, and ecological inventorying and monitoring. The value of this approach is that GIS serves as a data management framework for inventory and monitoring data and as an analysis tool which allows assessment of the merits and potential resource impacts of future management options. The 1991 request for GIS is $1.5 million, an increase of $0.9 million over the 1990 post-sequester enacted level.

d. Under the **Artifact Preservation/Collection Management** Program the National Park Service catalogues its large collection of museum objects. The 1991 request for artifact inventory is $2.5 million, an increase of $34,000 over the 1990 enacted level of $2.46 million.

e. The **Water Resource Inventory program** provides funds to collect information in support of water quality litigation, to develop mitigation plans to comply with Clean Water Act requirements, to protect critical wetland habitats and riparian areas, and to establish an effective water resources inventory and monitoring program. The two components of this program are water quality management and wetlands management. The 1991 request is $4.0 million, an increase of $0.7 million over the 1990 enacted level of $3.3 million.

e. **Presidio Planning:** Authorizing legislation for the Golden Gate National Recreation Area states that when the Defense Department declares the Presidio to be excess to its needs, it is to be transferred to the National Park Service. At present, the Presidio is on the Army's list of Department of Defense facilities identified for closure in the report by the Defense Secretary's Commission on Base Realignment and Closure. For this transfer to occur smoothly, the Service needs to develop a management plan for the area that balances competing uses and preserves and enhances the resources involved. The 1991 request for planning is $1.0 million.

8. **National Park Service: Resource Protection/ Recreation -- Construction** This activity includes only those rehabilitation construction programs which protect or restore resources or enhance recreation. The budget proposes $45,390,00 for such projects in FY1991, an increase of $16,107,000 above similar types of construction projects provided in the FY1990 appropriation.

9. **National Park Service: Land Acquisition** The land acquisition activity provides funding for the acquisition of certain

lands for inclusion in the National Park System in order to preserve nationally important natural and historic resources. Funds are also provided to coordinate and administer this acquisition program, and for administrative expenses for grants-in-aid to States. The total program for FY1991 is $80,153,000.

Appropriation Language

America the Beautiful

(Will be submitted upon enactment of legislation.)

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Summary of Requirements
($ in thousands)

APPROPRIATION: AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL	FY 1991 FTE	Current Law Amount	FY 1991 FTE	Estimate Amount	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law FTE	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Comparison by activities/ subactivities						
SUMMARY OF REQUIREMENTS						
Bureau of Land Management						
Renewable Resources Management						
Wildlife Habitat Management	319	22,607	418	25,539	27	2,932
Recreation Resources Management	290	14,012	356	18,000	66	3,988
Resource Protection/Recreation--Operations	609	36,619	774	43,539	93	6,920
Construction (Buildings, Recreation Facilities, Transportation)						
Resource Protection/Recreation--Construction	0	1,238	0	1,445	0	207
Acquisition Management	20	1,125	20	1,125	0	0
Land Acquisition	0	11,431	10	23,153	10	11,722
Land Acquisition	20	12,556	30	24,278	10	11,722
TOTAL, Bureau of Land Management	629	50,413	804	69,262	103	18,849
Fish and Wildlife Service						
Endangered Species						
Listing	62	3,483	64	4,022	2	539
Consultation	89	3,691	86	3,204	-3	-487
Permits	24	874	24	889	0	15
Recovery	85	10,620	85	10,666	0	46
Grants to States	0	5,676	0	5,671	0	-5
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Endangered Species	260	24,344	259	24,452	-1	108

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Summary of Requirements
($ in thousands)

APPROPRIATION: AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL	FY 1991 FTE	Current Law Amount	FY 1991 FTE	Estimate Amount	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law FTE	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Research and Development						
Endangered Species Research	76	6,044	76	6,086	0	42
Subtotal, Endangered Species	336	30,388	335	30,538	-1	150
Wetlands						
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Ecological Services	182	9,498	184	11,511	2	2,013
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Environmental Contaminants	10	1,421	10	1,924	0	503
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; National Wetlands Inventory	40	5,064	40	7,085	0	2,021
Refuges and Wildlife; Refuge Operations and Maintenance	0	308	0	5,509	0	5,201
Refuges and Wildlife; Migratory Bird Management	21	4,393	22	6,390	1	1,997
Research & Development; Fish and Wildlife Research Center O&M	20	1,673	21	1,900	1	227
Research & Development; Technology Development	20	1,777	16	1,592	-4	-185
Subtotal, Wetlands	293	24,134	293	35,911	0	11,777
North American Wetlands Conservation Act	17	15,000	17	15,000	0	0
Resource Protection/Recreation--Operations	646	69,522	645	81,449	-1	11,927
Construction and Rehabilitation	0	2,167	0	2,323	0	156
Resource Protection/Recreation--Construction	0	2,167	0	2,323	0	156
Acquisition Management		3,000		7,500		4,500
Specifically Legislated		8,850		9,375		525
Endangered Species Act		13,560		7,300		-6,260
Emergency Wetlands Act		30,730		20,875		-9,855
FWS Act of 1956		10,350		10,150		-200
Inholdings		1,500		1,500		0
Land Acquisition	58	67,990	62	56,700	4	-11,290
TOTAL, Fish and Wildlife Service	704	139,679	707	140,472	3	793

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Summary of Requirements
($ in thousands)

APPROPRIATION: AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL	FY 1991 FTE	Current Law Amount	FY 1991 FTE	Estimate Amount	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law FTE	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
National Park Service						
Park Resources Management						
Regional Natural Resource (Science) Programs	109	8,160	117	12,000	8	3,840
Natural Resource Preservation Program	0	7,527	0	10,000	0	2,473
Geographic Information Systems Program (GIS)	10	564	20	1,500	10	936
Artifact Preservation Collection Management Program	32	2,466	32	2,500	0	34
Subtotal, Resources Management	151	18,717	169	26,000	18	7,283
Park, Recreation and Wilderness Planning						
Water Resources Inventory Program	13	3,284	18	4,000	5	716
Presidio Planning	0	0	6	1,000	6	1,000
Subtotal, Park, Recreation and Wilderness Planning	13	3,284	24	5,000	11	1,716
Resource Protection/Recreation--Operations	164	22,001	193	31,000	29	8,999
Planning	0	11,936	0	11,936	0	0
Construction and Rehabilitation	239	17,347	354	33,454	115	16,107
Resource Protection/Recreation--Construction	239	29,283	354	45,390	115	16,107
Federal Land Acquisition	0	60,701	0	69,853	0	9,152
Land Acquisition Administration	162	7,000	162	7,000	0	0
State Land Acquisition Administration	40	3,300	40	3,300	0	0
Land Acquisition	202	71,001	202	80,153	0	9,152
TOTAL, National Park Service	605	122,285	749	156,543	144	34,258
TOTAL: RESOURCE PROTECTION/RECREATION- OPERATIONS	1,419	128,142	1,612	155,988	121	27,846
TOTAL: RESOURCE PROTECTION/RECREATION - CONSTRUCTION	239	32,688	354	49,158	115	16,470
TOTAL: LAND ACQUISITION	280	151,547	294	161,131	14	9,584
TOTAL: AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL	1,938	312,377	2,260	366,277	250	53,900

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity:
Bureau of Land Management
Resource Protection/Recreation: Operations

Subactivity/Element	FY1991 Current Law Amount	FY1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Renewable Resources Management			
Wildlife Habitat Management	22,607	25,539	2,932
Recreation Management	14,012	18,000	3,988
Subtotal	36,619	43,539	6,920

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Bureau of Land Management; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Renewable Resources Management

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr.Law
Wildlife Mgmt.	($)	22,607	25,539	+2,932
	(FTE)	(319)	(418)	(+27)
Recreation	($)	14,012	18,000	+3,988
Resources Mgmt.	(FTE)	(290)	(356)	(+66)
Subtotal	($)	36,619	43,539	+6,920
	(FTE)	(609)	(774)	(+93)

Wildlife Habitat Management (+2,932,000; +27 FTE)

General Wildlife Habitat Management ($1,500,000 and +11 FTE)

Wetlands (+$500,000 and +5 FTE): An increase of $500,000 for wetland restoration and management will expedite implementation of the Waterfowl Habitat Management Strategic Plan. Funding will be focused in the Prairie Pothole (Montana and North Dakota) and Alaska Joint Venture areas and other key wetland habitats that contain threatened endangered (T/E) and candidate species. The increase will permit acceleration of wetlands conservation actions in Alaska, Wyoming, and Montana and project development in a number of important areas such as the Warner potholes (Oregon), Prairie Potholes area,

New River in Oregon, Fish Slough in California, and Ash Meadows in Nevada, and Wetlands Showcase HMP areas.

Challenge Cost Share Program (+$500,000): As a result of the tremendous success as with past efforts of this program, a total challenge cost share program for 1991 of $22,500,000 is proposed, a $500,000 increase over the current program. The increase will provide the BLM with the opportunity to be responsive to many potential cooperators whose interest and willingness to contribute matching funds/labor/materials will more than double the Federal funds available to accomplish numerous wildlife projects including research, project development, maintenance and other work associated with wildlife management. Program accomplishments will benefit General Wildlife Habitat, Fisheries, and T/E component of the program depending upon cooperators' areas of interest and BLM's program needs.

Habitat Management Plan Preparation and Implementation (+$500,000 and +6 FTE): The BLM's emphasis for the past several years in the Wildlife habitat management program has focused on the implementation of the highest priority HMPs, and there has been a resultant decrease in the number of new plans prepared. In 1991 the BLM recognizes the need to prepare additional plans on some of the higher priority wildlife areas.

Consequently, the increases for the general wildlife habitat program will provide for the preparation of 10 new HMPs to address a portion of the management needs identified in the strategic plans. Areas that would be included are joint venture waterfowl areas (refer to the paragraph describing critical raptor habitat).

Additional 1.5 million acres of inventory, associated with the Waterfowl/Wetland, Raptor, Desert Bighorn Sheep, and Upland Game Bird Strategic Plans will be accomplished.

In conjunction with the increases in inventory and HMP implementation, there will be a concurrent increase in monitoring. To ensure that plans are accomplishing the desired objectives, the effort towards analyzing the impacts of BLM's management efforts will increase by monitoring an additional 80 plans.

BLM's accelerated implementation efforts of its existing HMPs will provide for an increase of 90 wildlife habitat development projects and would include a major portion of the challenge cost share funding going specifically toward this effort. Such projects would include vegetation manipulations (seedings, chainings, prescribed burns, etc.), fence construction, water developments, and others.

Over the past several years, maintenance accomplishments have been deferred on many wildlife projects due to higher priority demands. However, in order to protect BLM's prior investments and extend the project's effective life, BLM need to expand its maintenance effort. The proposed increase provides funding to maintain an additional 80 wildlife habitat projects. Additionally, the BLM is expanding its outreach program and is encouraging individuals and private organizations to maintain habitat improvement projects which they have cooperatively installed.

Fisheries Habitat Management (+$172,000, and +3 FTE)

Specific strategies for fisheries management have been developed by BLM and include the Anadromous Fish Strategy Plan and the BLM Fish Program Assessment and Strategy Plan. The BLM emphasis for this program component is on aggressive implementation and monitoring of plans prepared in conjunction with Fish and Wildlife 2000 to insure the maintenance and/or improvement of fisheries and riparian habitat.

The proposed funding increase would provide for an additional 100,000 acres of inventory, preparation of 2 new HMP's, implementation of 10 development projects, an additional 10 plans monitored, and additional 10 projects maintained.

Threatened and Endangered Species Management (+$750,000 +8 FTE)

Even though the T/E program presently is seen as one of BLM's highest priority programs, the proposed increase will be used to meet the increasing demands of the expanding number of listed and candidate species inhabiting the Public Land. Two specific strategy plans presently being prepared that will be available to help guide the 1991 program are the T/E Fish Strategy Plans and the Special Status Plant Strategic Plan.

The proposed increase will provide for an additional 500,000 acres of inventory, an additional 5 plans monitored, preparation of 3 recovery plans that are initiated by the Fish and Wildlife Service but require BLM involvement, and implementation or action in 7 recovery plans. A few of the specific actions associated with these activities include reintroduction of black-footed ferrets, continued research on desert tortoise diseases, and monitoring the impacts of other uses on desert tortoise ranges.

Environmental and Resource Education (+250,000 and +3 FTE)

The increase of $250,000 is for environmental and resource program education activities. This funding will be used to provide a variety of educational activities such as the "Watchable Wildlife" and "Animal Inn" initiatives, development of informational and educational materials, BLM staff guest presentations to schools at all levels, and participation in environmental education programs. The initiative will help increase understanding of the natural diversity of resources available on the Public Land, their importance to the ecological system, and the need to protect and wisely use these resources. The particular role of wildlife habitat and other renewable resources will be presented.

Volunteers (+260,000 and +2 FTE)

The increase of $260,000 supports the BLMs active volunteer program for fish and wildlife habitat management on the Public Land. This funding will be used to cover both program management costs and volunteer expenses which include project materials, travel and housing costs, vehicles, supervision, and awards. Volunteers are used to perform a diversity of tasks within the program including studies, monitoring, inventory, and habitat development projects (plantings, guzzlers, protection fencing, access facilities, signs, stream structures, etc.) The volunteers will be involved in nearly all components of the program from big game to T/E species recovery.

Fish and Wildlife Habitat Management Workload Accomplishments

The Planned workload accomplishments for 1990 adjusted, 1990 current law, and the 1991 proposed law funding levels are as follows:

Workload Measures	FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr.Law
General Wildlife and Fisheries Inventory (000 acres)	14,000	15,600	+1,600

Workload Measures	FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr.Law
Monitoring (# plans)	1,000	1,090	+90
HMPs written/revised (#)	84	96	+12
Projects developed (#)	600	700	+100
Projects maintained (#)	1,400	1,490	+90
T/E species:			
T/E inventory (000 acres)	3,500	4,000	+500
T/E monitoring (# plan)	530	535	+5
T/E plans written (# w/BLM involvement)	75	78	+3
T/E plans implemented (#)	81	88	+7

Distribution of change by object class

The object class detailed for the proposed law increase of $2,932,000 and 27 FTE is as follows:

	FTE	Amount
Personnel compensation	27	$ 864,000
Personnel benefit		176,000
Travel & Transportation of Persons		55,000
Transportation of things		100,000
Rent, communication & utilities		250,000
Printing and reproduction		70,000
Other services		567,000
Supplies and materials		250,000
Equipment		100,000
Land and Structures		500,000
Total		2,932,000

Recreation Resources Management (+3,988,000; + 66 FTE)
The proposed increase for Recreation *2000* will provide BLM with additional capability to: prevent damage to natural and cultural resources

from improperly managed use; detect and stop increased illegal activities; provide adequate management of recreation areas; ensure healthful and safe conditions in recreation areas; increase volunteerism and partnerships with State and local agencies, and private and public groups; and expand public education efforts to engender appreciation of our resources. Priority will be placed on information and interpretative materials, implementing additional resource protection projects, and operating facilities in priority special recreation management areas in each State, which include Congressionally or administratively designated areas.

The proposed increase includes the following items:

Visitor Management ($1,128,000 and 22 FTE): This increase is needed for additional visitor use supervision which includes on-the ground visitor contact, fee collection and facilities operations, and reduction of unauthorized uses in heavily used areas. An adequate level of visitor management is required both to protect resource values to insure the health and safety of visitors. Increased management requirements for the BLM has resulted from the additions to the Wild and Scenic River System, new National Conservation Area designation, and the Federal Cave Resources Protection Act. Demands for additional on the-ground presence also grow as recreational visitation to the Public Land reaches a projected 63 million visits by 1991.

Specific visitor management workloads to be accomplished with increased funds include: more frequent road and trail patrols during high use

periods in high demand, heavily-used areas to minimize impacts to fragile resources such as historic sites and riparian habitats, and discourage vandalism of signs and recreation facilities; establishment of additional visitor contact stations at key entry points to heavily used recreation areas; production of additional brochures and maps to direct visitors and instruct them on wise use of the Public Land resources, especially for the newly designated WSR rivers, resources; and development and implementation of additional interpretive programs to enhance visitor education. Efforts devoted to permitting and visitor contact activities are not reflected in the workload measures table but will be increased by approximately 10 percent over 1990.

Permit management ($800,000 and 15 FTE): This increase is needed to handle the growing demand for issuance and monitoring of recreation permits as called for Recreation *2000*. By 1991, the number of special recreation use permits issued annually is expected to reach 13,000, however, the major workload increase will be in monitoring of permits (through patrols and spot checks) to prevent unauthorized use and resource damage resulting from noncompliance, and to collect fees due to Government. As public interest grows and use by outfitters and guides increases, the additional WSR rivers designated in 1988 will also generate additional permit management workloads. Pursuant to the Federal Cave Resources Protection Act of 1988, increased monitoring will also be required for the recreation use permits issued for recreational use of identified significant cave resources.

Resource Protection ($750,000 and 10 FTE): As stated in Recreation *2000*, this increase is necessary to prevent recreation uses from damaging natural and cultural resources or degrading recreation values by overuse. Priority will be determined based on the severity of damage, amount of use, health and safety considerations, and the importance of affected resource values, in accordance with State implementation plans. example of resource protection activities covered with this increase include: inventory of mine hazards and elimination by signing and fencing; rehabilitation and closing of unauthorized vehicle routes; repair of eroded trail segments; fencing and signing where heavy ORV use is causing resource damage; and installation of minimal sanitation facilities where use of riparian areas is threatening health and safety. Resource protection accomplishments will be enhanced through the expansion of the challenge cost share program by obtaining funds, labor and materials from recreation user groups and other public sector organizations.

In compliance with the requirements of the Federal Cave Resource Protection Act, interim protection will be provided to caves under study, and resource protection projects, such as installing barriers and signs, closing access as routes and controlling erosion, will be implemented for 50 significant caves specified in completed RMP's and activity plans. It is anticipated that challenge cost share projects through cooperative management agreements with caving clubs will increase the effectiveness of federal funds.

Protection of the newly designated WSR rivers will be emphasized as prescribed in completed activity plans, and will involve activities such as signing WSR boundaries, removal of properly located and designed launching points to prevent stream bank deterioration, and erosion control to prevent siltation. BLM will encourage challenge cost share projects with

outfitters and environmental groups interested in wise management of wild and scenic rivers.

Recreation Management Planning ($400,000 and 7 FTE): This increase is required to prepare recreation area management plans and project plans for high priority recreation management areas according to needs identified in State Recreation *2000* implementation plans. Additional management plans for significant cave resources will be completed. For potential WSR river segments which have been recommended as suitable through the RMP process, this increase will allow completion of legislative EIS's and reports, boundary determinations, and initiation of management plans. The emphasis for project planning will be on preparation of plans needed for design of facility maintenance and construction projects, improvement of hiking and equestrian trails, and protection of resources in ORV areas and designated WSR rivers.

Improved Management Through Partnerships (+$100,000): An increase of $100,000 is directed to increase the challenge cost share program to accomplish additional on-the-ground projects on Public Land.

Environmental and Resource Education (+$250,000; +3 FTE) The increase of $250,000 is for environmental and resource program education activities associated with increasing the enjoyment of recreation users of Public Land. This funding will be used to provide a variety of educational actives to educate the recreational user about activities that will protect the scenic and unique resources on Public Land. Much of these activities will occur as a part of increased visitor management efforts. The initiative will help

increase understanding of the natural diversity of resources available on the Public Land, their importance to the ecological system, and the need to protect and wisely use these resources. The particular role of discouraging vandalism and impacts to sensitive resources such as caves, wild rivers, and the purposes of closed or limited ORV uses will be emphasized. Education opportunities through on-the-ground contacts with visitors will be increased.

Enhancement of Volunteer Assistance ($560,000 and FTE): Additional funds will be used to recruit, orient and supervise BLM volunteers, and support new voluntary associations, such as "Friends of" groups for particular BLM-administered areas. Recreation-related volunteer projects could include: installation of resource protection measures, such as ORV barriers and signs; volunteering as trail or river guides to assist visitors; development and distribution of brochures and interpretive materials;

serving as campgroundhosts, including visitor education and fee collection; and mapping and conducting inventories of cave resources. In support of the Secretary's educational component designed to explain the multiple-use mission of the BLM, the resource management objectives of the project, and the need to conserve and wisely use our natural and cultural resources.

The increased funding will provide for in-house staff contacts with private sector organizations, oversight of the volunteer program by BLM State volunteer coordinators, employee training on the use of volunteers, design of volunteer projects, supervision of volunteers, and volunteer recruiting efforts.

The increase will also fund costs for volunteer project materials (e.g., fencing, paint, trash receptacles, signs, etc.); training, orientation and recognition materials for volunteers; and incidental expenses and travel incurred by volunteers.

Recreation Resources Workload Accomplishments

The planned workload accomplishments for 1989, 1990 and the 1991 Current and Proposed Law Funding levels are as follows:

Workload Measure	FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from Curr.Law
Inventory (000 acres)	3,200	3,300	+100
Activity plans (#plans)	116	140	+24
Permitting (#perm. issued)	12,000	13,000	+1,000
Resources protection (# projected)	207	282	+75

Distribution of change by object class:

The object class detail for the increase of $3,988,000 and 66 FTE is as follows:

	FTE	Amount
Personnel compensation	66	2,112,000
Personnel benefit		429,000
Travel & Transportation of Persons		150,000
Transportation of things		100,000
Rent, communication & utilities		60,000
Printing and reproduction		100,000
Other services		787,000
Supplies and Materials		150,000
Equipment		100,000
Total		3,988,000

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity:
Bureau of Land Management
Resource Protection/Recreation: Construction

Subactivity/Element	FY1991 Current Law Amount	FY1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Construction (Buildings, Recreation Facilities, Transportation)	1,238	1,445	207
Subtotal	1,238	1,445	207

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Bureau of Land Management; Resource Protection/Recreation - Construction
Subactivity: Construction (Buildings, Recreation Facilities, Transportation)

(Dollars amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr.Law
America the Beautiful Projects	($)	1,238	1,445	+207
	(FTE)	0	0	0
Total	($)	1,238	1,445	+207
	(FTE)	0	0	0

(For descriptions of the America the Beautiful current law program please refer to the 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Bureau of Land Management).

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget for the Bureau of Land Management proposes additional funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

The Bureau of Land Management component of the America the Beautiful, Legacy '99 Construction Program consists of 6 projects totalling $1,445,000. The projects requested are all reconstruction or rehabilitation of recreation sites in order to provide sanitary, boating access, overnight, and similar facilities on public lands.

If the America the Beautiful legislation is not enacted, the Bureau of Land Management's requested 1991 construction level would include

$1,234,000 construction work from the $1,445,000 America the Beautiful listing.

1991 America the Beautiful Construction Program

($ in thousands)

Project - Location (State - District)	Project Title/ Description	1991 Request ($000s)
California - Ukiah	King Range NCA Recreation Facilities; development of 2 campgrounds, trails, access roads, scenic overlook and signs.	400
California - Susanville	Bizz Johnson Trail; reconstruction of portions of unsafe trail and paving of the Hobo Camp parking lot ($88), and construction and surfacing of an access road and paving of a parking area ($207).	295
Colorado - Grand Junction	Loma Boat Launch; development of a short access road, boat ramp, parking area and vault toilet on the Colorado River.	30
Nevada - Carson City	Sportsman's Beach Recreation Site; development of a campground, RV waste disposal station, boat ramp, and picnic area.	430

Project - Location (State - District)	Project Title/ Description	1991 Request ($000s)
Idaho - Idaho Falls	Byington/Conant River Access; development of access roads, boat ramps, parking, toilets and streambank stabilization at two sites along the South Fork of the Snake River.	130
Utah - Cedar City	Paria Trailhead Station; construction of an 800 square foot ranger visitor contact station and 1,200 square foot residence.	160
Total America the Beautiful Projects		1,445

---

* Note: $1,238,000 of these projects would be funded by appropriations from the new America the Beautiful account if legislation to establish it is enacted. If it is not enacted BLM still proposes to fund this amount under the current law proposal.

Justification for 1991 BLM Construction Projects
America the Beautiful

Title: King Range NCA Recreation Facilities

State: California

District: Ukiah

Location: 16 miles west of Garberville, in Humboldt County, northwest California

Estimate: $400,000

Description: Construction in the King Range National Conservation Area of campgrounds at Nadelos and Wailaki, including 3 restrooms, 30 campsites, a potable water system, 3 miles of trail, access roads, and family camping unit, all of which will be accessible to the physically challenged. Included is a scenic overlook at Paradise Ridge. In addition to these major components, 4 NCA entrance signs and 12 information/direction signs will be replaced. This project will enable BLM to provide essential visitor services, disseminate information about current trail and backcountry conditions, and effectively monitor visitor use as per the intent of Congressional designation. Campground fees will be collected.

Title: Byington/Conant (South Fork, Snake River) Access Sites

State: Idaho

District: Idaho Falls

Location: Approximately 20 miles east of Idaho Falls, along the South Fork of the Snake River, in Bonneville County, eastern Idaho

Estimate: $130,000

Description: Included are boat ramps, parking, access roads, toilets, picnic facilities, signs, and revegetation and bank stabilization at the two most heavily used boat launch sites on the scenic, heavily fished, South Fork of the Snake River. This project meets several important public health and safety needs, including: eliminating water pollution by replacing deteriorated toilet facilities located too close to the river; replacing undercut, unstable boat ramps that can strand a tow vehicle and trailer; and, providing adequate parking and access to meet current and anticipated demand while excluding vehicles from those areas that are heavily used by people. Project work will enable the BLM to meet management commitments outlined in the Snake River Special Recreation Area Management Plan and enable the agency to properly manage this designated Area of Critical Environmental Concern. Development accommodates *America the Beautiful* goals by providing environmental protection while enhancing recreational opportunities.

Justification for 1991 BLM Construction Projects
America the Beautiful

Title: Bizz Johnson Trail

State: California

District: Susanville

Location: 3/4 mile west of Susanville, in Lassen County, northeastern California

Estimate: $88,000

Description: Partial site improvement to provide safe public access to the Susan River and accommodate increasing use of the Bizz Johnson Trail, a component of the National Trails System (National Trails System Act, Amendment P.L. 98-11). Includes replacement and repair of wooden ceiling and wall structural members in the east and west tunnels along the trail to eliminate the danger of falling rock and provide for public safety. Approximately 800 feet of internal drains will be constructed within the tunnels in order to control water and maintain a safe and useable condition. Project also includes interpretive and directional signs and 14 day use picnic sites. This project implements decisions outlined in a joint BLM/Forest Service Recreation Area Management Plan. This project supports *America the Beautiful* by providing for visitor health and safety and providing access to enable the public to enjoy their Public Land resources. Fees will not be collected due to the inability to control access to the area.

Title: Paria Trailhead Station Complex

State: Utah

District: Cedar City

Location: 47 miles east of Kanab, in Kane County, southeast Utah

Estimate: $160,000

Description: Development of an 800-square foot visitor contact/ranger station consisting of office space, reception area and restrooms and a 1,200 square-foot ranger residence to enable effective administration of the Paria Canyon-Vermilion Cliffs Wilderness, the largest designated wilderness area administered by BLM. This project will provide for the safety of visitors and protection of natural resources by constructing adequate facilities for on-site visitor assistance, flash flood monitoring, area administration including monitoring of backcountry wilderness use and general maintenance operations. This project will enhance recreational opportunity and ensure protection of resource values in this designated Wilderness Area consistent with *America the Beautiful* goals.

Justification for 1991 BLM Construction Projects
America the Beautiful

Title: Sportsman's Beach Recreation Site

State: Nevada

District: Carson City

Location: 80 miles southeast of Reno, in Mineral County, west-central Nevada

Estimate: $430,000

Description: This project includes development of a 50-unit campground, 8 restrooms, well with 10,000-gallon water storage tank, RV waste disposal station, boat ramp and picnic area along the shore of 60 square mile Walker Lake. Development plans are consistent with decisions contained in the Walker Resource Management Plan and site specific goals outlined in the Walker Lake Special Recreation Area Management Plan. This project provides: toilet and RV waste stations to alleviate water pollution problems, including those associated with the discharge of RV holding tank wastes along the lake shore; safe boat launch facilities to halt indiscriminate vehicle use along the shoreline; a reliable water system; and, properly constructed, safe access roads to halt people-vehicle conflicts in picnic and camping areas. This project meets the objectives of *America the Beautiful* by protecting resource values, providing for public health and safety, and furnishing visitor services and facilities to meet existing demand. Fees will be collected.

Title: Loma Boat Launch Site

State: Colorado

District: Grand Junction

Location: 1 mile north of Loma, in Mesa County, west-central Colorado

Estimate: $30,000

Description: Reconstruction of an access road, boat ramp, and parking area that have been established through public use rather than proper design and provision of a vault toilet and interpretive kiosk on the Colorado River in Ruby Canyon. Development goals are outlined in the Ruby Canyon Recreation Area Management Plan. Present demand exceeds the capacity of existing facilities. Proposed development would provide additional launch facilities, sufficient parking and restrooms to curtail resource damage resulting from random and indiscriminate uses caused by the lack of adequate facilities. Public safety will be provided for as the parking area will separate vehicle use from picnic and fishing areas, a properly designed and located boat ramp will curtail random and unsafe launching along the river bank, and the restroom will curtail indiscriminate use of the shoreline as a bathroom. Fees will not be collected. Supports *America the Beautiful* by protecting environmental values, providing for public health and safety and enhancing recreation opportunities.

Justification for 1991 BLM Construction Projects
America the Beautiful

Title: Bizz Johnson Trail

State: California

District: Susanville

Location: 3/4 mile west of Susanville, in Lassen County, northeastern California

Estimate: $207,000

Description: Reconstruction of an access road to eliminate steep grades and blind curves to provide safe public access to the Susan River and accommodate increasing use of the Bizz Johnson Trail, a component of the National Trails System (National Trails System Act, Amendment P.L. 98-11). Project also includes paving of the Hobo Camp parking lot that was constructed in 1990, and installation of post and cable parking barriers. This work represents the final components of the Bizz Johnson Trail project, the initial phase of which is described earlier in the 1991 construction program.

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity:
Bureau of Land Management
Land Acquisition

Subactivity	FY1991 Current Law Amount	FY1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Acquisition Management	1,125	1,125	0
Acquisition	11,431	23,153	11,722
Subtotal	12,556	24,278	11,722

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Bureau of Land Management; Land Acquisition

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
Acquisition Management	($)	1,125	1,125	----
	(FTE)	(20)	(20)	(---)
Acquisition	($)	11,431	23,153	+11,722
	(FTE)	(---)	(10)	(+10)
Total Requirements	($)	12,556	24,278	+11,722
	(FTE)	(20)	(30)	(+10)

(For descriptions of the America the Beautiful current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Bureau of Land Management).

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget for the Bureau of Land Management proposes additional funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

The Bureau of Land Management component of the America the Beautiful land acquisition program consists of 31 projects totalling $24,278,000.

The following 31 projects are included in the 1991 program and are summarized on individual narrative pages for each project. They are presented in priority order based upon the application of the Departmental land acquisition criteria.

1991 Acquisition Projects

	Projects	Amounts
1.	North Fork American River, CA	$ 100,000
2.	Upper Sacramento River, CA	800,000
3.	San Pedro ACEC, AZ	770,000
4.	New River ACEC, OR	1,500,000
5.	South Fork Snake River, ID	1,300,000
6.	Snake River Birds of Prey, ID	153,000
7.	South Merced River, CA	250,000
8.	Lower Salmon River, ID	1,000,000
9.	Eagle Lake, CA	400,000
10.	Bonita Creek ACEC, AZ	330,000
11.	Steens Mtns, OR	1,350,000
12.	Big Wood River, ID	200,000
13.	Owyhee River, OR/ID	1,320,000
14.	Bizz Johnson Yr., CA	300,000
15.	Santa Rosa Mountains, CA	1,500,00
16.	King Range, CA	500,000
17.	Carrizo Plains, CA	4,500,000
18.	Desert Tortoise Natural Area, CA	200,000
19.	White Mountains National Recreation Area, AK	410,000
20.	Blackwell, Island, ID	250,000
21.	Cache Cr., CA	1,500,000
22.	Canon Tapia, NM	160,000
23.	Big Hole River, MT	180,000
24.	Blue Water Canyon, NM	175,000
25.	East Mojave national Scenic Area, CA	300,000
26.	Upper Missouri River, MT	300,000
27.	Dolores River Access, CO	100,000
28.	Phoenix Wilderness, AZ	580,000
29.	Ruby Canyon, CO	350,000
30.	Chuckwalla Bench, CA	700,000
31.	Indian Creek National Trail, CA	175,000
Acquisition Management		1,125,000
Emergencies, Hardships and Inholdings		1,500,000
	Total	$24,278,000

COMPREHENSIVE LAND ACQUISITION TABLE
$000

Project and Location (Park, Refuge, Site)	DOI Rank	Est. Unoblig. Balances as of 9/30/90 $/Acres	FY 1991 Budget $/Acres	% of total acreage to be acq. by 9/30/91	Total Acres Remaining to be acq. after 91	Benefits	Remarks
1. N. Fork American River, CA	1		100/120A	91%	240A	Recreation	
2. Upper Sacramento River, CA	2		800/1,700A	64%	3,000A	Recreation/Wildlife	
3. San Pedro ACEC, AZ	3		770/1,020A	100%	0	Riparian/Recreation	
4. New River ACEC, OR	4		1,500/1,000A	56%	880A	Riparian/Wildlife	
5. S. Fork Snake River, ID	5		1,300/1,300A	76%	400A	Recreation	
6. Snake R. Birds of Prey, ID	6		153/359A	100%	0	Recreation	
7. S. Merced River, CA	7		250/160A	33%	800A	Recreation	
8. Lower Salmon Rv. ID	8		1,000/1,200A	77%	368A	Recreation	
9. Eagle Lake, CA	13		400/138A	4%	3,162A	Recreation	
10. Bonita Creek ACEC, AZ	20		330/2,180A	100%	0	Riparian	
11. Steens Mtns, OR	25		1,350/10,890A	11%	81,760	Recreation/Wildlife	
12. Big Wood River, ID	34		200/500A	100%	0	Riparian	
13. Owyhee River, OR/ID	39		1,320/1,500A	75%	676A	Recreation	
14. Bizz Johnson Tr. CA	55		300/150A	88%	230A	Recreation	
15. Santa Rosa Mtns, CA	59		1,500/1,500A	2%	103,500A	Wildlife	
16. King Range, CA	61		500/240A	96%	950A	Recreation/Wildlife	
17. Carrizo Plains, CA	64		4,500/30,000A	91%	13,000A	Wildlife	
18. Des. Tortoise Nat'l Area, CA	65		200/1,500A	63%	2,624A	Wildlife	
19. White Mtn. NRA ACQ., AK	66		410/184A	100%	0	Recreation	
20. Blackwell Island, ID	63		250/28A	100%	0	Recreation	
21. Cache Cr. CA	70		1,500/1200A	10%	27,000A	Wildlife	
22. Canon Tapia, NM	71		160/400A	100%	0	Cultural Resources	
23. Big Hole River, MT	73		180/439A	100%	0	Wildlife	
24. Blue Water Canyon, NM	74		175/196A	100%	0	Riparian	
25. E. Mojave N. Scenic A, CA	76		300/800A	1%	118,657A	Wildlife/Recreation	
26. Upper Missouri River, MT	78		300/14,410A	100%	0	Recreation/Exchange	
27. Dolores River Access, CO	80		100/400A	100%	0	Wildlife/Recreation	
28. Phoenix Wilderness ACQ, AZ	84		580/3,280A	100%	0	Wildlife/Recreation	
29. Ruby Canyon, CO	85		350/1,137A	72%	453A	Wildlife	
30. Chuckwalla Bench, CA	87		700/1,000A	22%	26,200A	Wildlife	
31. Indian CR N. Tr., CA	94		175/500A	100%	0	Recreation	

Bureau of Land Management

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 1. North Fork American River, CA

Location: Placer County, CA; Congressional District CA-18

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	120A	$833/A	$100	240A	$1042/A	$250

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: The North Fork of the American River is congressionally designated as a Wild and Scenic River. The acquisition of key parcels along this river is critical to preserve and manage public access, which will protect and maintain the wild and scenic quality of this river corridor.

Funding would provide for acquisition of 10 parcels which would provide needed access to this Wild and Scenic River. Most parcels can be acquired through exchange, but one 120 acre parcel requires purchase.

Need: These acquisitions are needed to maintain recreational access to this component of the Wild and Scenic River System.

Project Area: 2. Upper Sacramento River, CA

Location: Tehama County, CA; Congressional District CA-2

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,700A	$470/A	$800	3,000A	$1,233/A	$3,700

Improvements: Unimproved Land

Description: The Upper Sacramento drains nearly 27,000 square miles of north central California and includes the major population centers of northern California. Steady development pressures and shortages of public access make continued acquisition crucial. The acquisition involves 1,700 acres in the 7 mile segment managed by BLM. The riparian river lands continue to be developed and seriously threaten major wildlife habitat areas. The river also provides excellent salmon, trout and steelhead fishing.

Need: The 1,700 acre acquisition parcel will protect critical wildlife habitat and provide river access adjacent to the only public road serving this segment of the river. The acquisition is necessary to enhance recreational opportunities in North Central California and to protect wildlife values. The acquisition is identified in a comprehensive river management plan supported by a consortium of State, County, and private entities, the Bureau of Reclamation and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 3. San Pedro Riparian National Conservation Area, AZ

Location: Cochise County, AZ; Congressional District AZ-5

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,020A	$765/A	$770	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: This funding is needed to complete the acquisition of 1020 acres of private inholdings in the congressionally designated 52,628 acre San Pedro Riparian National Conservation Area. This desert riparian area contains 33 miles of perennial stream, diverse wildlife habitat, cultural resources and excellent recreational areas previously closed to the public.

Need: The acquisition of these tracts will complete acquisition of inholdings to protect riparian and wildlife values in the San Pedro Riparian National Conservation Area.

Project Area: 4. New River ACEC, OR

Location: Coos County, OR; Congressional District OR-4

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,000A	$1,500/A	$1,500	880A	$795/A	$700

Improvements: Unimproved Land

Description: The acquisition of five tracts is proposed for protection and recreational use of this pristine area of coastline near Coos Bay, Oregon. The area contains ocean beach, wetlands, five endangered bird species and several rare plants. The area also provides outstanding recreational opportunities, including salmon and steelhead fishing along the meandering New River.

Need: Acquisitions along this unique coastal Area of Critical Environmental Concern will protect riparian and wildlife values including numerous threatened and endangered species of plants and animals. Recreation opportunities will be enhanced by the provision of better access.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 5. South Fork Snake River, ID

Location: Bonneville County, ID; Congressional District ID-1

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,300A	$1,000/A	$1,300	400A	$1,125/A	$450

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: These acquisitions will provide access to the river and to a designated 14,759 acre Special Recreation Area supporting a diverse wildlife population, including bald eagles. The area receives significant recreation use and acquiring the access would provide for enhanced cooperative management of additional state and private lands. Public Land along the Snake River would be available for coordinated recreation use and wildlife habitat protection and the area protected from incompatible residential and recreational development of private lands adjacent to the river.

Need: These acquisitions would improve recreational use along the river and protect important wildlife and riparian habitat. Cooperative Federal, State and private management of these important resources will be facilitated by these acquisitions.

Project Area: 6. Snake River Birds of Prey, ID

Location: Ada and Owyhee Counties, ID, Congressional District ID-1

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	359A	$426/A	$153	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: The Snake River Birds of Prey Natural Area has a national and international reputation as a sanctuary for birds of prey (i.e. eagles, hawks, falcons, etc.). Two tracts totalling 359 acres need to be acquired to complete acquisitions in this nationally prominent area. These areas are popular picnicking and bird watching areas and possess important marshland and riparian habitat for many wildlife species. Acquisition will allow the start of recreation and wildlife habitat management actions

Need: These two acquisitions will enhance protection of important wildlife habitat and provide for better management of recreation opportunities in the area.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 7. South Fork Merced Wild and Scenic River, CA

Location: Merced County, CA; Congressional District CA-18

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	160A	$1,562/A	$250	800A	$625/A	$500

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: The South Fork of the Merced River flows out of Yosemite National Park through National Forest lands, private lands and through Public Land for 43 miles before it intersects the North Fork of the Merced River on private lands. These 43 miles and 71 miles on the North Fork have been designated a Wild and Scenic River. On the segment managed by BLM, nine tracts of private land have been identified for acquisition. One priority acquisition tract will provide legal access to an adjacent abandoned railroad grade (used for hiking) and an adjacent road. Two tracts block access to downstream access adjacent to a campground along the river.

Need: Acquiring these tracts would ensure continued public access and use of the designated Wild and Scenic River and protect the values of the river.

Project Area: 8. Lower Salmon River Special Management Area ID

Location: Idaho County, ID; Congressional District ID-1

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,200A	$833/A	$1,000	368A	$543/A	$200

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: Acquisition would provide six legal access points to the Salmon River. The Lower Salmon River Corridor is considered to be Idaho's top priority special recreation management area and is an alternative to more heavily used rivers throughout the state. The Corridor receives over 2.8 million visitor hours annually and the proposed access acquisitions would expand the carrying capacity of the river by providing better recreational utilization of the river segments. Dispersing use along more segments of the river will prevent concentration of recreational and avoid potential conflicts with other resources values.

Need: These acquisitions would expand recreational opportunities on this popular river and improve management of recreation and resources values of the area.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 9. Eagle Lake, CA

Location: Larsen County, CA; Congressional District CA-14

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	138A	$2898/A	$400	3,162A	$142/A	$450

Improvements: Unimproved Land.

Description: Eagle Lake is the second largest natural lake in California and is a unique closed drainage basin. It is a major nesting area for bald eagles, osprey and many other water fowl. This tract abuts the lake and provides lake access for a very popular recreational campground.

Need: These acquisitions would improve public access to this important recreational lake and preserve the resources values in the area.

Project Area: 10. Bonita Creek Area of Critical Environmental Concern (ACEC), AZ

Location: Graham County, AZ; Congressional District AZ-5

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	2,180A	$151/A	$330	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved Land

Description: Bonita Creek ACEC has special riparian, threatened wildlife and cultural resource values. Bonita Creek is a water supply for the City of Safford Arizona and also qualifies for State Unique Water status. The creek has special riparian, threatened wildlife and cultural values. This acquisition would consolidate Federal ownerships in the drainage.

Need: Funding would allow acquisition of 3 important inholdings containing riparian, cultural values and threatened wildlife species.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 11. Steens Mountains Recreation Lands, OR

Location: Harney County, OR; Congressional District OR-2

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	10,890A	$124/A	$1,350	81,760A	$93/A	$7,600

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: Funds are needed to consolidate ownership and acquire inholdings in the 1.8 million acre Steens Mountains Recreation Lands in eastern Oregon. These mountains contain important habitat for threatened and endangered and other wildlife species. The Steens Mountains contain outstanding scenic beauty and the lands are an important recreational area.

Need: This funding will continue acquisition of 4 tracts containing valuable wildlife and scenic values and provide for additional recreational opportunities in the area.

Project Area: 12. Big Wood River, ID

Location: Blaine County, ID; Congressional District ID-2

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	500A	$400/A	$200	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: This area of 500 acres along a two mile section of the Big Wood River in central Idaho contains pristine cottonwood riparian habitat and is a winter roost area for bald eagles. It is also a migration route for 3,000 mule deer. Recreationists use the area for fishing, floating and wildlife observation.

Need: Funding will allow acquisition of one 500-acre tract which contains valuable riparian, wildlife and recreation resources.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 13. Owyhee River Wild River, OR/ID

Location: Malhuer County, OR; Congressional District OR-2
Owyhee County, ID; Congressional District ID-1

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,500A	$880/A	1,320	676A	$450/A	$304

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: The 120 mile section of the Owyhee Wild River in Oregon contains 6 additional tracts which are planned for acquisition. These tracts lie within the wild section of the river and acquisition will allow BLM to manage and enhance recreational activities on the river and preserve the natural qualities of the surroundings. In Idaho 5 tracts are planned within that portion of the river being studied. Legal access will be provided to the river for fishing, rafting and boating. A cultural site will also be protected through acquisition.

Need: These acquisitions will expand legal public access for recreation activities on the river and allow protection of important wildlife and cultural resources identified in the management plan for the Wild and Scenic River.

Project Area: 14. Bizz Johnson National Trail, CA.

Location: Lassen County, CA; Congressional District CA-14

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	150A	$2,000/A	$300	230A	$652/A	$150

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: Funding would allow acquisition of 4 of the final 26 tracts of privately owned land along the Bizz Johnson National Trail and provide for public access to complete the Bizz Johnson National Trail which was built on an abandoned railroad grade through the Susan River Canyon. The Bizz Johnson Trail receives 191,000 annual visitor hours and is becoming a major recreational resource for visitors to Public Land who use this area for cycling and hiking.

Need: This funding is needed to finish acquisition of 4 tracts according to the plan for the area. The 4 remaining 5 acre lots, which if developed by private interest, would destroy the natural scenic values of the Susan River Canyon.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 15. Santa Rosa Mountains, CA

Location: Riverside County, CA; Congressional District CA-37

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,500A	1,000/A	$1,500	103,500	$200/A	$20,000

Improvements: Unimproved Lands.

Description: This acquisition is needed to protect the habitat of the Peninsular Big Horn Sheep. The population of the Coachella Valley/Palm Springs area is growing rapidly. Residential development has reached the base of the mountains and is planned in the interior of the Santa Rosa Mountains. These developments would severely jeopardize the big horn sheep habitat area if the land is not acquired.

Need: These acquisitions will protect habitat for the Peninsular Big Horn Sheep in this area of rapidly expanding development.

Project Area: 16. King Range National Conservation Area, CA

Location: Humboldt County, CA; Congressional District CA-1

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	240	$2,083/A	$500	950A	$2,641/A	$2,500

Improvements: Unimproved Land.

Description: Acquisitions would provide for legal beachfront access on five tracts and a hiking trail access within the King Range National Conservation Area (NCA). The NCA, which is an ongoing BLM acquisition project first authorized by Congress in 1970, contains one of the last undeveloped beachfront areas in California. The additional funding would provide for continued public use of the area and enhance recreational access opportunities. The King Range NCA receives over 740,000 visitor hours annually.

Need: This funding will allow continuation of the acquisition program in the King Range NCA to protect valuable recreational and scenic resources. The identified 1991 acquisition tracts lie along the coast and prevent legal access along the beach above high tide. In addition, certain tracts (approximately 40 acres in size) within a steelhead spawning stream continue to disrupt efforts at implementing plans to improve steelhead habitat.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 17. Carrizo Plains, CA

Location: San Luis Obispo County, CA; Congressional District CA-20

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	30,000A	$150/A	$4,500	13,000A	$192/A	$2,500

Improvements: Unimproved Land

Description: Additional funding would continue ongoing efforts to acquire lands to protect the identified natural values of the Carrizo Plains. The Carrizo Plains Natural Area is a vast, largely undeveloped, region in the Central Valley of California and funding would protect the natural diversity of the region. The area contains the majority of Central Valley vegetation and wildlife habitat and supports large numbers of designated rare and endangered species. Continued acquisition in this area is widely supported by Conservation groups and the private sector.

Need: This funding would enable the acquisition of 30,000 acres of inholdings necessary for the protection of the areas valuable natural resources, consistent with management plans identified for cooperative management of the area.

Project Area: 18. Desert Tortoise Natural Area, CA

Location: Kern County, CA, Congressional District CA-20

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,500A	$133/A	$200	2,624	$457/A	$1,200

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: These acquisitions support protection of important habitat for the desert tortoise in the Mojave desert. The Natural Area contains private lands which must be acquired to prevent surface disturbing activities which would have an adverse impact on maintaining tortoise populations. Considerable investment has already been made for protective fencing and scientific studies of these areas.

Need: This funding will allow continued acquisition work to protect the desert tortoise in the Mojave Desert.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 19. White Mountain National Recreation Area, AK

Location: Fairbanks-North Star and Southeast Fairbanks Boroughs, AK; Congressional District (At large).

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	184A	$2,228/A	$410	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: Funding would allow for the acquisition of four tracts providing access to the White Mountain NRA and the Beaver Creek Wild River. These tracts would provide for protection of a site eligible for the National Register of Historic Places, Threatened and Endangered species habitat protection, and improved public access and recreational developments.

Need: These acquisitions will provide protection of valuable recreational, cultural and wildlife resources in the National Recreation Area.

Project Area: 20. Blackwell Island, ID

Location: Kootenai County, ID; Congressional District ID-1

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	28A	$8,928/A	$250	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: This tract is located on the Spokane River and is an ideal location for development of camping and waterbased recreational facilities serving the river and Coeur d' Alene Lake. Acquisition will prevent the future development of commercial and/or residential facilities on this valuable tract.

Need: This funding will continue the project and allow completion of previous years acquisitions. Previous year funding for the project was insufficient to complete the project.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 21. Cache Creek Area of Critical Environmental Concern, CA

Location: Lake County, CA; Congressional District CA-1

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,200A	$1,250/A	$1,500	27,000A	$1,111/A	$3,000

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: The Cache Creek drainage, from the Clear Lake Dam to the Bear Creek junction, is a major winter use area for bald eagles. It also provides critical habitat for the Tule Elk, a State protected species. Acquisition of these key lands in the ACEC are critical to the protection of the wildlife resource since trespass and disturbance from the private lands is causing disruption to wintering eagles. The creek is also a popular white water rafting area in the spring and early summer.

Need: These acquisitions will enable BLM to better protect threatened and endangered species habitat and manage recreational opportunities in the area.

Project Area: 22. Canon Tapia Area of Critical Environmental Concern, NM

Location: Sandoval County, NM; Congressional District NM-3.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	400A	$400/A	$160	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved Land.

Description: Significant cultural resources are contained in a remote 5-mile segment of Canon Tapia. Private property blocks access to scenic Big Bead Mesa (which is also a National Historic Landmark) and a fortified Navajo archeological site on the National Register. This area contains many petroglyphs and pictographs, a habitation site and other artifacts of the ancient Chacoan culture.

Need: Acquisition of 3 critical inholdings will allow protection of valuable cultural resources of the area.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 23. Big Hole River, MT

Location: Beaverhead County, MT; Congressional District MT-1.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	439A	$410/A	$180	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: These acquisitions along the world famous Big Hole River will prevent possible development which could restrict fishing and hunting access to and along the river. The tracts provide excellent wildlife habitat for bald eagles, turkey, mule, deer, Canadian geese, and other waterfowl. These acquisitions are supported by the Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife, and Parks and by sportsmen and conservation groups.

Need: These acquisitions will provide needed public access to this famous trout stream and protect valuable wildlife habitat.

Project Area: 24. Blue Water Canyon ACEC, NM

Location: Cibola County, NM; Congressional District NM-3

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	196A	$893/A	$175	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: This tract is within the Blue Water ACEC in an area of sandstone mesas cut by the Blue Water Creek Canyon. It is one of the few trout stream in west central New Mexico and is a rare segment of riparian habitat in this high desert region.

Need: This acquisition will protect a rare riparian ecosystem in this desert area.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 25. East Mojave National Scenic Area, CA

Location: San Bernadino County, CA; Congressional District CA-35.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	800A	$375/A	$300	118,675A	$42/A	$5,000

Improvements: Unimproved land.

Description: The East Mojave Scenic area is within the Congressionally designated California Desert Conservation Area. The East Mojave Scenic Area is an extremely fragile desert ecosystem which is being threatened by increased use. This funding would augment an active land exchange program and facilitate the purchase of high priority tracts of important plant and wildlife habitat and disperse recreational use. Acquisition being pursued primarily through exchange.

Need: Acquisitions will protect valuable wildlife resources in this fragile area and facilitate compatible recreational use in the area.

Project Area: 26. Upper Missouri River Wild and Scenic River, MT

Location: Garfield County, MT; Congressional District MT-1

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	14,410A	$21/A*	$300	---	---	---

* Acquisition primarily by exchange.

Improvements: Unimproved Land.

Description: Funding would provide for public and administrative access to the Upper Missouri Wild and Scenic River (WSR) and physical access to the river at various points for float-boating purposes. The Upper Missouri WSR receives 741,000 visitor hours annually and use is increasing. This funding would provide for additional access points to the River and provide enhanced public recreation use of this major recreational resource in northern Montana.

Need: These acquisitions are necessary to protect the valuable recreational and scenic values along this nationally designated Wild and Scenic River.

Project Area: 27. Dolores River Access, CO

Location: Mesa County, CO; Congressional District CO-3.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	400A	$250	$100	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved Land.

Description: One primary tract on the lower Dolores River is recommended for designation as a Wild and Scenic River and contains valuable bald eagle and other wildlife habitat, riparian values and recreational opportunities. The acquisitions would consolidate land ownership and provide access to the area. The area is managed as a special management area.

Need: The acquisition of this primary tract would preserve valuable wildlife, riparian and recreation values in this area and be consistent with the recommendation to Congress for the areas designation as a Wild and Scenic River.

Project Area: 28. Phoenix Wilderness Acquisition, AZ

Location: Mojave County, AZ; Congressional District AZ-4.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	3,280A	$177/A	$580	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved lands.

Description: These tracts will complete the acquisition of over 43,000 acres of land acquired by exchange in four of the major proposed wilderness areas in the Phoenix District. They contain big horn Sheep and habitat for a small mammal called the Hualapai Mt. vole. The tracts also provide valuable hiking, hunting and other recreational opportunities.

Need: These acquisitions will protect valuable wildlife habitat and maintain the wilderness qualities of the potential wilderness areas.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 29. Ruby Canyon, CO

Location: Garfield County, CO; Congressional District CO-3.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,137A	$308/A	$350	453A	$916/A	$415

Improvements: Unimproved Land.

Description: These five parcels are within the proposed Colorado River Scenic Corridor and adjacent to the Black Ridge WSA. They provide bald eagle and Colorado River squawfish habitat. All these properties have potential for recreational, residential or mining development and acquisition will protect the high resource and recreational values of the area.

Need: These acquisitions will assure protection of valuable wildife habitat and recreation resources of the area.

Project Area: 30. Chuckwalla Bench, CA

Location: Riverside County, CA; Congressional District CA-37.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	1,000A	$700/A	$700	26,200A	$107/A	$2,800

Improvements: Unimproved Land.

Description: These acquisitions support protection of important habitat for the desert tortoise in the Mojave desert. The Natural Area contains over 150 parcels of private land which must be acquired to prevent surface disturbing activities which would have an adverse impact on maintaining tortoise populations. Acquisitions being pursued primarily through exchange. Emphasis has been placed on acquisition of the larger parcels (40 acres or greater). As these number of tracts are acquired, the more complex smaller parcels (5 acres) are being planned.

Need: These acquisitions will continue efforts to protect desert tortoise habitat in the Mojave Desert.

1991 *America the Beautiful* Land Acquisition Program

Project Area: 31. Indian Creek Nature Trail, CA

Location: Alpine County, CA; Congressional District CA-14.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	(000s) Total Amount
Land	500A	$400/A	$175	---	---	---

Improvements: Unimproved Land.

Description: Funding will provide for the acquisition of six tracts of private land within the Indian Creek Recreation Area. This area contains five bodies of fresh water and high scenic and recreational qualities. The area receive heavy recreational use and requires additional facilities to manage this use. Acquisition will prevent conflicting developments on the private lands. The project is in California, however, it is administered out of the Nevada BLM organization.

Need: These acquisitions will protect recreational values adjacent to a popular recreation campground.

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity:
Fish and Wildlife Service
Resource Protection/Recreation: Operations

Subactivity/Element	FY1991 Current Law Amount	FY1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Endangered Species			
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement/Endangered Species			
Listing	3,483	4,022	539
Consultation	3,691	3,204	-487
Permits	874	889	15
Recovery	10,620	10,666	46
Grants to States	5,676	5,671	-5
Subtotal, F&W Enhance/ES	24,344	24,452	108
Research and Development			
Endangered Species Research	6,044	6,086	42
Subtotal, Endangered Species	30,388	30,538	150
Wetlands			
Fish and Wildlife Enhancement			
Ecological Services	9,498	11,511	2,013
Environmental Contaminants	1,421	1,924	503
National Wetlands Inventory	5,064	7,085	2,021
Refuges and Wildlife			
Refuge Operations and Maintenance	308	5,509	5,201
Migratory Bird Management	4,393	6,390	1,997
Research and Development			
Fish and Wildlife Research O&M	1,673	1,900	227
Technology Development	1,777	1,592	-185
Subtotal, Wetlands	24,134	35,911	11,777
North American Wetlands Conservation Act	15,000	15,000	0
Total	69,522	81,449	11,927

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Endangered Species

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr.Law
Listing	($)	3,483	4,022	+539
	(FTE)	(62)	(64)	(+2)
Consultation	($)	3,691	3,204	-487
	(FTE)	(89)	(86)	(-3)
Permits	($)	874	889	+ 15
	(FTE)	(24)	(24)	(0)
Recovery	($)	10,620	10,666	+ 46
	(FTE)	(85)	(85)	(0)
Grants to States	($)	5,676	5,671	-5
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Subtotal	($)	24,344	24,452	108
	(FTE)	(260)	(259)	(-1)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service.)

To carry out President's Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget proposes additional Fish and Wildlife Service funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

The total increase of $108,000 is comprised of base adjustments, program increases and program decreases as follows:

Endangered species listing (+$500,000/1 FTE). More frequent assessments of the status of candidates species will be conducted according to an alternate-year schedule for publication of Notices of Review for plants and animals. Candidate assessment guidelines will be developed to promote more uniform approaches throughout the Service for assessment of candidate species. These additional funds will accommodate the significant costs associated with increased public participation in the listing process, including the preparation and publication of public notices on listing actions and responding to public comments generated by those notices.

Distribution of Changes by Object Classification

The object class detail for the proposed $500,000 increase is as follows:

Salaries	+ $50,000
Travel	+ 5,000
Transportation of Things	+ 10,000
Supplies and Materials	+ 150,000
Other Services	+ 285,000
Total	+$500,000

Prelisting/Listing Activities (+$250,000/1 FTE). Prelisting/listing species of animals and plants is the initial step in the conservation of threatened and endangered species because species must be listed to benefit from the protection provided under the Endangered Species Act. Delisting or reclassification actions are also essential to maintain a credible list.

Nearly 4,000 species in the U.S. are formally recognized as candidates for potential listing; these have been identified in two comprehensive Notices of Review, maintained by the Service, for plants and animals. From this pool of candidates, species are selected for listing using the priority guidelines published in the Federal Register. At current levels, the Service is capable of listing approximately 50 species a year. The proposed level of funding would

allow an increase in listing of approximately 6 species a year, as well as increased capability to survey, gather information, and monitor candidate species. Average cost to list a species is $50,000; however, efficiencies in cost will be achieved through multiple-species listing actions.

Distribution of Changes by Object Classification

The object class detail for the proposed $250,000 increase is as follows:

Salaries/Benefits	+ $50,000
Travel/Transportation	+ 20,000
Supply/Materials	+ 50,000
Other Services	+ 130,000
Total	+$250,000

Prelisting/Nongame Activities (-$250,000/0 FTE)

The funding provided in past years for nongame was used to undertake conservation measures for candidate species that are currently at high risk of possible extinction; for example, habitat identification and protection, survey and inventory of potential and known sites, and habitat management for species such as the Bruneau Hot Springs snail and St. Anthony's tiger beetle. Nongame funding was utilized to reduce current threats to survival of those and other species in the same risk status. Monitoring and habitat management required for candidate species by the 1988 amendments to the Endangered Species Act will continue through coordination with other Federal, State, and private conservation agencies or will be conducted at reduced levels.

Distribution of Changes by Object Classification

The object classification distribution for the $250,000 decrease is as follows:

Supplies and materials	-$ 25,000
Other services	- 175,000
Travel	- 50,000
Total	- $250,000

Endangered Species Consultation ($-540,000/-3 FTE)

Increased funding of $750,000 was provided in FY 1990 for endangered species consultations. A portion of the funds were to be used for technical assistance for habitat conservation plans. It is anticipated that the reductions will be as follows: Habitat Conservation Plans - nationwide (-$440,000) and spotted owl consultation (-$100,000). The Service has provided technical assistance in the development of Habitat Conservation Plan in Kern, San Diego, and Riverside Counties in California. Completion of the plans will be funded by the local sponsors. A further reduction is anticipated for spotted owl consultation due to completion of a major effort on conferencing. In FY 1990, consultations on the spotted owl will focus on working closely with the Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management on a generic or programmatic basis, as opposed to a timber-sale-by-timber-sale basis. The bulk of these consultations should be well underway by FY 1991.

Distribution of changes by object classification

The object classification distribution for the $540,000 decrease is as follows:

Personnel compensation	- $ 150,000
Personnel benefits	- 50,000
Travel and transportation	- 50,000
Other Services	- 290,000
Total	- $ 540,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Research and Development; Fish and Wildlife Research Center O&M

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
Endangered Species Research	($) (FTE)	6,044 (76)	6,086 (76)	+42 (0)
Subtotal	($) (FTE)	6,044 (76)	6,086 (76)	+42 (+0)

(For descriptions of the America the Beautiful current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service).

The total increase of $42,000 for endangered species research is composed of base changes only. Essentially, the program would be funded at the FY1990 level.

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Ecological Services

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr.Law
Permits	($)	4,551	4,556	+5
	(FTE)	(161)	(161)	(0)
Farm Bill	($)	4,947	6,955	+2,008
	(FTE)	(21)	(23)	(+2)
Subtotal	($)	9,498	11,511	+2,013
	(FTE)	(182)	(184)	(+2)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service.)

The total increase of $2,013,000 is comprised of base adjustments and an increase of $2,000,000 for the following:

Farm Bill (+$2,000,000/2 FTE). Although there is an improved understanding of the multiple functions and values of wetlands, wetlands are disappearing and being degraded at an alarming rate. Only 95 million acres of the original 215 million acres remain in the lower 48 States. As much as 40 percent of these remaining wetlands have suffered some degree of degradation. As much as 87 percent of wetland losses are attributed to conversion by the agricultural sector. To respond to this problem, the Service initiated a wetland restoration program on agricultural lands in 1987. Over 55,000 acres of wetlands have been restored (1987-1989) under the Service's Farm Bill Program.

In February 1989, over 2 million acres of restorable cropped wetlands became eligible for enrollment in the Department of Agriculture's Conservation Reserve Program (CRP). The Service has the opportunity to continue enhancing and restoring wetlands through the availability of cropped wetlands entered into CRP and cooperative restoration on private lands. The Service has established a goal of restoring an additional 20,000 acres of wetland restoration projects in 1990. The benefits gained from funding provided in 1990 will result in the restoration of an additional 13,000 acres. The additional $2 million requested in 1991 would allow the Service to continue this rate of restoration, bringing the total for 1991 to 33,000 acres. Wetland restoration efforts will continue on those private lands where the necessary assurances are made available to the Service without charge and the landowner enters into a formal agreement that secures wetland protection for a duration that would benefit fish and wildlife habitat and safeguard the public investment. Seventy percent of the additional funds would be used for wetland restoration (i.e., moving dirt) and 30 percent would be use for technical assistance (development of cooperative agreements with landowners, and monitoring activities associated with restored wetlands).

The funds would be distributed to those eligible areas where agricultural wetland restoration would provide the greatest potential for improvement of important and diverse public resource values (wildlife habitat, water quality, soil and water erosion, and flood prevention) and areas where historic wetland losses have been the greatest. Existing Service personnel and contractors will be used to plan and implement wetlant restoration projects with the landowner. It is expected that most of the restoration work would be accomplished through agreements with contractors because of the limited availability of the Service's heavy equipment.

Distribution of Change by Object Classification:

The object class detail for the proposed $2,000,000 increase is as follows:

Salaries and benefits	+ $ 83,000
Supplies and Materials	+ 400,000
Other Services	+ 1,437,000
Travel	+ 80,000
Total	+$2,000,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; Environmental Contaminants

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr.Law
Permits	($)	1,421	1,924	+503
	(FTE)	(10)	(10)	(0)
Subtotal	($)	1,421	1,924	+503
	(FTE)	(10)	(10)	(0)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service.)

The total increase of $503,000 is comprised of base adjustments and a program increase and a program decrease as follows:

Bay Estuary Program (+$600,000/2 FTE): The Service has been involved, under the Environmental Contaminants activity, in investigations in high priority bays and estuaries. These areas such as San Francisco Bay, Galveston Bay, and Albemarle-Pamlico Sound have been conducted with funding requested in 1987 to address site-specific identification and evaluation of contaminant impacts on important fish and wildlife habitats including wetlands. The increase of $600,000 will be directed to other important bays and estuaries. These efforts will allow identification of potential contaminant problems in important esturine wetlands. A portion of this funding ($400,000) will be directed to Delaware Bay which would permit the Service to cooperate with EPA and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Agency (NOAA) in restoration efforts directed at the Bay. Additionally, $200,000 would be directed to Puget Sound to work in important waterfowl and anadromous fish habitats.

The Service will assess the effects of toxic contaminants on living resources; conduct waterfowl studies focusing on populations and trends, update existing information on wetlands status and trends; and begin a public awareness effort to educate the public on contaminant problems faced by these important habitats.

Distribution of Changes by Object Classification

The object class detail for the proposed $600,000 increase is as follows:

Salaries	+ $70,000
Supplies and material	+ 20,000
Other services	+ 430,000
Travel	+ 50,000
Equipment	+ 30,000
Total	+$600,000

Biomonitoring (-$100,000/-2 FTE): The overall toxic strategy of the Chesapeake Bay Agreement continues to focus on the elimination of toxic substances in toxic amounts from any source in the Bay. Funds made available in FY 90 were used to obtain specialized equipment and to determine contaminant impacts of point sources and pesticides as part of a one year nutrient study. Toxic monitoring activities by the Service will be decreased as the States develop greater capability in assuming this responsibility within State waters. Biotic sampling of fish and benthic invertabrates will continue at a reduced level with base funds and will be focused on those areas of known high levels of contamination where living resources are present.

Distribution of Changes by Object Classification:

The object class detail for the proposed $100,000 decrease is as follows:

Salaries and Benefits	- $70,000
Travel	- 10,000
Other services	- 10,000
Equipment	- 10,000
Total	-$100,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Fish and Wildlife Enhancement; National Wetlands Inventory

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
National Wetlands Inventory	($) (FTE)	5,064 (40)	7,085 (40)	+2,021 (0)
Subtotal	($) (FTE)	5,064 (40)	7,085 (40)	+2,021 (0)

(For descriptions of the America the Beautiful current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service).

The total increase of $2,021,000 is comprised of base adjustments and a program increase as follows:

National Wetlands Inventory (+2,000,000/0). The Emergency Wetlands Resources Act (1986) directs the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to update the "Status and Trends of Wetlands in the United States" report by the end of FY 1990 and to provide updates at 10-year intervals. The initial report to Congress, completed in 1982, was the first comprehensive, statistically valid effort to estimate the Nation's wetlands. It provided acreage estimates of wetlands in the lower 48 states and documented an average annual net loss of 458,000 acres of wetlands. The information generated from this analysis has been cited by major reports that have discussed wetland loss rates.

This increase request is a component of the Service's FY 1991 wetlands initiative. The funding will enable the Service to intensify the National grid so that accurate regional wetland acreage change information can be developed for the Atlantic and Gulf Coasts, Great Lakes, Lower Mississippi River Aluvial Plain, and Prairie Pothole Region in Fiscal Years 1992, 1993, and 1994 respectively. In future years, this increase will enable accurate regional data for the Southeastern United States and the Playa Lakes Region in the Southwest to be developed.

Regional intensifications will support other resource efforts underway within the States, the Service, and the Department and fill a significant wetland information data gap identified by the National Wetlands Policy Forum. It will provide the information needed to develop or alter management programs to ensure sound stewardship and protection. It also will provide the wetlands data needed to support the Secretarial initiative on Global Change and the President's no-net-loss goal.

The proposed increase will also enable the status and trends effort to be transformed into a continuous mode, with reporting at a 5-year interval and interim estimates as necessary. A continuous wetland trends inventory would involve updating a percentage of the plots each year; e.g., 10 percent of the plots each year on a 10-year cycle. Advantages gained from a continuous trend process include:

- better coordination with resource priorities;
- better responsiveness to State and regional needs;
- more accurate and current assessment of the wetland resource; and
- better use of existing data.

The proposed increase will also enable the Service to regain its mapping rate of at least 5 percent of the contiguous United States per year, because the cost of the wetlands status and trends work would no longer have to be absorbed internally. This would enable the Service to meet the 1998 deadline for mapping the conterminous United States.

Distribution of Change by Object Classification

Contract	+$1,465,000
Aerial photography	+ 300,000
Equipment	+ 200,000
Supplies/Materials	+ 25,000
Travel	+ 10,000
Total	+$2,000,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Refuges and Wildlife; Refuge Operations and Maintenance

(Dollar amount in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
Water Rights	($)	0	2,800	+2,800
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Private Partnership	($)	0	2,400	+2,400
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Farm Bill	($)	308	309	+1
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Total	($)	308	5,509	+5,201
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)

(For description of the America the Beauty Current Law refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justification for the Fish and Wildlife Service.)

The total increase $5,201,000 is comprised fo base adjustments and program increases.

Wetland Initiatives Water rights (+$2.800.000/ 0 FTE). Stillwater National Wildlife Refuge is an historically significant migratory bird area in the Pacific Flyway whose wetlands are decreasing as a result of decreasing water supplies. In 1989, Congress directed the Service to extend $1.2 million for the acquisition of water rights at Stillwater Wildlife Management Area, (WMA). Further, $1.5 million was appropriated for this purpose in 1990. The Service is requesting $2 million to continue water rights acquisition at Stillwater WMA. During recent years, wetlands in the Lahontan Valley have been decreasing steadily, and with full implementation of the Operating Criteria and Procedures (OCAP), annual wetland loss will increase to approximately 18,000 acres. About one-half or 9,000 acres per year of those loss will occur at Stillwater WMA.

The Service proves and defends its water rights for western States and is involved in adjudication proceedings in many States. Adjudication of water rights of special concern in the desert southwest. An increase of 320,000 is requested for quantification and adjudication of water rights on 15 refuges in for States in the Southwest. The proposed increase would be used for training which is required to document water rights, installation of water gauges to measure flows and usage, and expenses associated with providing expert witnesses and adjudication hearings.

In the Central Valley of California water costs have doubled in some cases and have risen to over 20 percent of station budgets. An increase of $480,000 is requested to pay for water delivery to refuges in the central valley of California for maintenance of wetlands. Combined with the remaining State and private marshes, Federal refuges compose a significant portion of the remaining wetland habitat in the central valley.

Distribution of Change by Object Classification

The object class detail for the proposed $2,800,000 increases is as follows:

Travel	+ $60,000
Other Services	+2,730,000
Supplies and materials	+ 10,000
Total	+2,800,000

Wetland Initiative Private/Federal Cost Sharing (+$2,400,000/0 FTE). A challenge grant program was initiated on Service lands in FY 1988 as a means of conducting cooperative projects with private and non-Federal wildlife conservation agencies. The goal of this program is to enhance fish and wildlife resources and overall operations and maintenance of Service lands by completing projects through cost-sharing with private individuals, public agencies, conservation groups and other non-Federal sources. The program is conducted with the Service providing up to 50% of project costs in the form of funding or materials. In selecting projects for cost sharing the Service will emphasize the creation, restoration and protection of wetlands.

The proposed increased will allow the Service to develop waterfowl and fish habitats through the construction/placement of water control structures dikes and levees, artificial reefs, nesting structures, etc. Interpretive services emphasizing the importance of wetlands will be enhanced through the development of environmental education material,

the construction of boardwalks and handicapped facilities, observation towers, signs, trail plaques, and wildlife diorama.

The Service has had great success with the program in FY 1988 and 1989. Private groups and non-Federal entities have provided project proposals 200% greater than the base funding amount to match the $200,000 available in Federal funding. For example, in 1988 the Service received 55 project proposals totaling $572 thousand, and in FY 1989 a total of 89 project proposals were received, totaling $647,00 thousand,

Distribution of Change by Object Classification

The object class detail for the proposed $2,400,000 increase is as follows:

Other Services	+$ 1,500,000
Supplies and materials	+ 900,000
Total	+$2,400,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service: Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Refuges and Wildlife; Migratory Bird Management

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
Wetlands Restoration and	($)	3,159	4,258	+1,099
Management	(FTE)	(21)	(21)	(0)
Wetlands On/Off	($)	691	1,190	+499
Service Lands	(FTE)	(0)	(1)	(+1)
Wetlands and	($)	0	400	+400
Migatory Bird Data Bases	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Farm Bill	($)	543	542	-1
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Subtotal	($)	4,393	6,390	+1,997
	(FTE)	(21)	(22)	(+1)

(For descriptions of the America the Beautiful current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service).

The total increase of $1,997,000 consists of base changes and program increases as follows:

Wetland Initiative-Wetland Restoration and Management ($1,100.00/+0 FTE). The North American Waterfowl Management Plan (NAWMP) has established strategies, goals and objectives for the protection of wetland and upland habitats to benefit waterfowl and other migratory birds. Joint ventures, or the pooling of resources, by Federal/State and private sources, is the operational focus of the NAWMP at the field level. This mechanism was developed, and has proven successful thus far, because no single organization can provide all the funding needed to accomplish habitat protection goals. Implementation plans have been developed, priority habitats ("flagship projects") have been identified in each of the 6 joint venture areas and initial start-up of field habitat protection efforts began in FY 1990 with the $1.2 million appropriated for the NAWMP. Activities underway in FY 1990 as a result of this increase include cooperative restoration/management programs with private landowners in the Central Valley, Gulf Coast, Mississippi Valley, and Prairie Potholes. Rice field lease programs, establishment of wetland buffer zones for wintering waterfowl, impoundment construction, and the development of water control structures are being implemented in the Gulf Coast and Mississippi Valley. Development of nest structures, predator control activities, botulism control, and pond construction are examples of tasks occurring in the Prairie Potholes.

The above increase of $1.1 million is requested for habitat restoration projects ($620,000) and support of habitat Joint Venture Coordinators ($480,000) as discussed below:

Habitat Restoration ($620,000). This increase would allow continuation of private land habitat improvement and restoration work in the Prairie Pothole Joint Venture at project sites at Chase Lake, North Dakota and Lake Thompson, South Dakota ($200,000). Cooperative programs with Ducks Unlimited and State agencies would continue wetland restoration, cost-sharing on rotational grazing systems and short-term leases for upland cover management. Wetland restoration programs would benefit waterfowl and other wetland dependent species such as western grebe, sandhill crane, and piping plovers. Grassland management programs such as upland cover restoration and rotational grazing systems would benefit several species of grassland birds whose populations are declining. Examples include, Baird's, Leconte's and grasshopper sparrows, bobolinks and lark buntings.

Enhancement of waterfowl habitat on private lands is a key component of the Central Valley ($210,000) and Lower Mississippi Valley/Gulf Coast Joint Venture ($210,000). For example, of the original 4 million acres of wetlands in the Central Valley only about 280,000 acres remain, 90,000 of which are unprotected. The California Waterfowl Association will cooperate with the Service to secure management rights to 4,000 acres of restored wetlands. Landowners would be paid to manage wetlands converted from other land uses. In addition a cooperative effort with Ducks Unlimited and the Nature Conservancy, will implement wetland restoration and management in the Consumnes Preserve of California. Several rare species such as tri-colored blackbird and Swainson's hawk as well as a myriad of other nongame species such as egrets, herons, rails and shorebirds will benefit from this action. Funds provided for Chenier Plain and adjacent areas on the boundary of Texas and Louisiana in the Lower Mississippi Valley/Gulf Coast Joint Venture will also be utilized to support programs for restoring up to 50,000 acres of drained former wetlands and in providing water control structures to lessen the impact of salt water intrusion. Programs will continue to flood extensive agricultural lands in the winter that are devoted to rice farming, to produce and important sanctuary and food source for wintering waterfowl.

Joint Venture Coordination ($480,000). In association with the U.S. Office for the North American Waterfowl Management Plan, the six habitat Joint Venture Coordinators will provide the focus for activities to be accomplished in support of the Plan and funded from Resource Management, as well as activities authorized by the North American Wetlands Conservation Act (P.L. 101-233). An increase of $480,000 is requested to fund the Joint Venture Coordinators for the Central Valley Joint Venture, Gulf Coast Joint Venture, Mississippi Valley Joint Venture, Prairie Pothole Joint Venture, Great Lakes/St. Lawrence Valley Joint Venture, and Atlantic Coast Joint Venture. The North American Wetlands Conservation Fund authorizes the establishment of a fund to implement the acquisition, management, and restoration goals set in the Plan. These Coordinators will provide staff support needed for identification and recommendation of projects for acquisition, restoration, and enhanced management. Additionally, the Prairie Pothole and Great Lakes/St. Lawrence Valley Joint Venture Coordinators will support the U.S. Office for the Plan in international activities authorized by the Act. Administrative activities will be provided under the authority of the North American Wetlands Conservation Act.

Description of Change by Object Classification

The object class detail for the $1,100,000 increase is as follows:

Salaries	+$	360,000
Travel/Transportation	+	80,000
Supplies/Materials	+	120,000
Other Services	+	440,000
Equipment	+	100,000

Total	+$1,100,000

Wetlands On/Off Service Lands ($500,000/1 FTE). To take advantage of the numerous opportunities for the restoration of wetland habitats that are provided by involvement with the North American Waterfowl Management Plan, the Service is proposing to undertake, wetland restoration programs on and off Service lands. Activities in conjunction with the Farm Bill program have demonstrated the success that can be achieved by involving the private sector on wetlands protection and restoration. This wetlands restoration program will access lands that are not addressed by the Farm Bill Program, and will focus primarily on new opportunities in wetland restoration and enhancement in the Upper Midwest and the Lower Mississippi Valley. It is proposed that this increase will be used to initiate technical and operational support in these areas, with the proposed increase apportioned to target wetland restoration on 2000 acres in the Upper Midwest and 3000 acres in the Lower Mississippi Valley.

By working with private landowners, conservation organizations, corporations, and other government agencies, the Service will continue to pursue the protection and enhancement of wetlands. The Service will support the President's no-net-loss wetlands goal through outreach activities with the private sector, and by providing assistance to enhance and restore wetlands and wildlife as well as directly benefit the private landowner by enhancing erosion control and water conservation, reducing contaminant runoff, and increasing aquifer recharge.

Description of Change by Object Classification

The object class detail for the $500,000 increase is as follows:

Salaries and Benefits	+ $ 50,000
Travel/Transportation	+ 100,000
Supplies/Materials	+ 150,000
Other Services	+ 100,000
Equipment	+ 100,000
Total	+$500,000

Wetland and Migratory Bird Data Bases to Support Regional Habitat Joint Ventures ($400,000/0 FTE). The Service is responsible for national leadership in implementing the NAWMP, evaluating progress, and making 5-year adjustments to the Plan with Canadian officials. Analytical capabilities to track the amount and location of wetland protection, restoration, creation, and enhancement work on several million acres of private, State, and Federal lands are required to monitor accomplishments at regional and national levels. These data must be integrated with migratory bird population data being collected in Canada, the U.S., and Mexico. New information becoming available on migratory nongame species will be accessed. Computer and wetland mapping technologies are the only cost-effective means of manipulating the digital data sets being made available to the Service from cooperators. The Service does not currently have the personnel or hardware capability to apply these tools to meet the requirements of the Plan. The Center is needed to evaluate land management solutions for migratory bird production problems, generate required reports to Congress, allocate resources for priority work, transfer wetland and associated habitat data to cooperators, provide guidance to State and Federal cooperators, and develop the 5-year adjustment information.

A start-up for the Data Center is critical in 1990 for the first update of the Plan in 1991. It will be established in the Migratory Bird Management Office to take advantage of existing computer support facilities, operators, and data. Service Research facilities will provide technical assistance and data to accelerate start-up of operations. National Wetland Inventory digital files, 1:100,000 scale joint venture area project maps, Federal, State and cooperator protection and management areas, migratory bird distribution and abundance data will be used to establish baseline and periodic analyses for Plan updates in Canada, Mexico and the U.S.

Description of Change by Object Classification

The object classification distribution for the $400,000 increase is as follows:

Travel/Transportation	+$ 25,000
Supplies/Materials	+ 80,000
Other Services	+ 120,000
Equipment	+ 175,000
Total	+$400,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Research and Development; Fish and Wildlife Research Center O&M

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
Wetlands Contaminants, Agricultural	($)	1,476	1,704	+228
	(FTE)	(20)	(21)	(+1)
Farm Bill	($)	197	196	-1
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Subtotal	($)	1,673	1,900	+227
	(FTE)	(20)	(21)	(+1)

(For descriptions of the America the Beautiful current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service).

The total increase of $227,000 is composed of base changes and a program increase as follows:

Wetland Contaminant Agricultural Activities ($+225,000/1 FTE). As part of the America the Beautiful initiative, the Service proposes to increase its research program on the impacts of agricultural contaminants by $225,000 in FY 1991. Research will focus on pesticide impacts to fish and wildlife wetland habitats in the prairie pothole region. In addition to the research recently initiated on the use of invertebrate bioassays as indicators of contaminants on prairie pothole wetlands, research would be expanded to determine the extent of contamination in waterfowl from currently used agricultural chemicals, determine seasonal and cumulative effects on waterfowl production and nesting habitat, and determine effectiveness of buffer zones and other strategies for minimizing the migration and deposition of chemicals in wetlands.

Distribution of Change by Object Classification

The object classification detail for the proposed $225,000 increase is as follows:

Salaries and benefits	+ $ 40,000
Travel/Transportation	+ 10,000
Supplies/Materials	+ 130,000
Other Services	+ 45,000
Total	+$225,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: Research and Development; Technology Development

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
Louisiana Coastal Loss Study	($)	1,777	1,592	-185
	(FTE)	(20)	(16)	(-4)
Subtotal	($)	1,777	1,592	-185
	(FTE)	(20)	(16)	(-4)

(For descriptions of the America the Beautiful current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service).

The proposed change to current law of $185,000 is composed of net increases to cover base changes and a program reduction as follows:

Louisiana Coastal Wetland Loss Study (-$200,000/-4 FTEs). In FY 1990, research on baseline data collation and landscape modeling was continued, while work on the development of coastal wetland restoration and management methods was initiated. As a result of this reduction, research on wetland restoration and management will be discontinued. Four ongoing studies will continue: 1. Reinventory, Mapping, Digitizing; 2. Landscape Modeling; 3. Plant Stress; and 4. Contaminants. The study on Marsh Management will be discontinued. Louisiana coastal wetlands status and trends, plant stress methods development, the ecological spatial model development, the GIS data base development, contaminants effects studies on oil and gas produced waters and information transfer will continue on schedule. America the Beautiful includes funding increases for the wetlands program that, as a whole, will substantially expand wetlands conservation.

Distribution of Changes by Object Classification

The object classification detail for the proposed $200,000 decrease is as follows:

Salaries and benefits	-$200,000
Total	-$200,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Operations
Subactivity: North American Wetlands Conservation Fund

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
Land Acquisition	($)	0	0	0
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Wetlands Conservation	($)	15,000	15,000	0
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Grants	($)	0	0	0
	(FTE)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Administration	($)	0	0	0
	(FTE)	(17)	(17)	(0)
Total		15,000	15,000	0
		(17)	(17)	(+0)

This new program is included both in the current law budget presented in the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service), as well as this proposed law budget.

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget proposes additional Fish and Wildlife Service funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into betters ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

Wetlands Conservation $15,000,000/17 FTE). This entire request represents an increase over the 1990 appropriation and is for the purpose of implementation of the North American Wetlands Conservation Act for support of the North American Waterfowl Management Plan (NAWMP). The NAWMP was signed in 1986 as a result of the recognition by the United States and Canada that a cooperative program was necessary to address needs of North America's waterfowl resources. This Plan outlines a strategy for cooperative efforts to protect waterfowl habitat and build up declining waterfowl populations. The Plan acknowledges that the National Governments of the two countries cannot carry out an effort of this scope without assistance, and calls for participation of State, Provincial, Territorial, and local governments; private conservation groups; businesses; and individual citizens in joint venture efforts to restore waterfowl populations.

In the United States, six high priority joint venture areas have been established and are coordinated by the North American Plan Office and implemented within the six areas by the Service's Regional offices. On-the-ground activities have proceeded in these high priority venture areas and include activities such as reforestation of private landholdings, construction of earthen levees to create impoundments, low level dike construction, selective control burns, providing of permanent nesting cover, cost-sharing on grazing systems and short-term leases with private landholders, and public education programs on the value of wetlands. With the funding support provided by the North American Wetlands Conservation Fund these efforts will be expanded to include additional high priority habitat areas in the U.S., and also provide funding support for similar Plan activities in Canada.

Wetlands in Mexico are of vital importance as wintering habitat for millions of waterfowl and other migratory birds that breed in the U.S. and Canada. Coastal wetlands, in particular, provide critically needed wintering habitat. In a Tripartite Agreement signed in March 1988, officials of the Service, Canadian Wildlife Service and Mexico's Direction General of Ecological Conservation of Natural Resources, agreed to undertake cooperative efforts to conserve Mexican wetlands and the migratory birds and other fish and wildlife that utilize them. Funds requested in this budget will be used to support cooperative studies that will be undertaken by Mexican authorities, local universities, and conservation organizations.

These studies will be designed to determine practical ways to conserve Mexico's wetlands for the North American wildlife and fisheries resources that depend on them for survival. Initial efforts will focus on the Mexican east coast at Pantanos de Centla, Laguana de Terminos, Alverado, and Rio Lagartos. These studies will involve public education, mapping of key wetland sites, and establishing optimal habitat management procedures.

Administration: The North American Wetlands Conservation Act (Act) establishes a North American Wetlands Conservation Council (Council) consisting of nine members representing the Service, the National Fish and Wildlife Foundation, the four migratory bird flyways, and three nonprofit conservation organizations. The Director of the Service will appoint a coordinator to provide staff support to the Council and facilitate implementation of the Act. The Council will be responsible for developing a list of wetlands conservation projects for recommendation to the Migratory Bird Conservation Commission (Commission). This project list will be submitted to the Commission by January 1, of each year, and will include a description of the projects and estimated costs. The Commission will then approve, reject, or reorder the priority of any project submitted by the Council. Projects approved by the Commission will be funded under authority of this Act. The Act authorizes funding support through an annual appropriation for Fiscal Years 1991-1994, an interest fund under the Federal Aid in Wildlife Restoration Act (16 U.S.C. 669b), and migratory bird fines, penalties, and forfeitures received under Section 6 of the Migratory Bird Treaty Act (16 U.S.C. 707).

For the funds that are allocated in support of the projects approved by the Migratory Bird Commission, at least 50 percent, but not more than 70 percent, shall be provided to carry out activities in Canada and Mexico. The remainder will be allocated to support approved wetland conservation projects in the U.S.

Staffing support will address foreign and domestic needs. Support for domestic activities will be provided by the joint venture coordinators in six regions ($360,000/6 FTE) and international activities will be coordinated by three joint venture coordinators and the Office for the North American Waterfowl Management Plan ($700,000/11 FTE).

The $15 million is requested as current appropriations for FY 1991 in this account under ATB. $10 million is also shown in the permanent part of this account, but is not part of ATB. (See Fish and Wildlife Service FY 1991 Budget Justifications, page FWS 423.)

The distribution of these wetland conservation funds among protection, enhancement, restoration and acquisition activities is currently being determined. The Act authorizing this program was signed in December 1989, and authorized that between 50 and 70 percent of the available Federal funds, which can be matched with non-Federal funds, will be spent on key waterfowl habitat areas in Canada and Mexico. The newness of the Act, the complexities of working with other countries and because the North American Wetlands Conservation Council has not yet been appointed, are the principal reasons the funds are not yet distributed and a more detailed plan established. The Council is necessary because it submits its recommendations to the Migratory Bird Conservation Commission by January 1 of each year. The Service will have recommendations on initial conservation projects to be considered by the Council this spring.

It is also noted that the 17 FTE associated with this program will also administer the $10 million in permanent funds, which is where the funding for Administration is shown.

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity:
Fish and Wildlife Service
Resource Protection/Recreation: Construction

Subactivity	FY1991 Current Law Amount	FY1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Construction and Rehabilitation	2,167	2,323	156
Subtotal	2,167	2,323	156

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Resource Protection/Recreation - Construction
Subactivity: Construction and Rehabilitation

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from FY 1991 Curr. Law
Construction and Rehabilitation	($) (FTE)	2,167 (0)	2,323 (0)	+156 (0)
Total Requirements	($) (FTE)	2,167 (0)	2,323 (0)	+156 (0)

(For descriptions of the America the Beautiful current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the Fish and Wildlife Service).

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget for the Fish and Wildlife Service proposes additional funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

The Fish and Wildlife Service component of the America the Beautiful, Legacy '99 Program totals $2,323,000. Details of the projects follow.

U.S. FISH AND WILDLIFE SERVICE
FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM
AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL

PROJECT: Okefenokee National Wildlife Refuge, Georgia/Florida

REGION: 4 (Atlanta, Georgia)

PROJECT TITLE: Perimeter Road and Bridges

PROJECT DETAIL:

	($000 estimate)	
	FY 1991	Future
Design and construction of bridges and road	2,100.0	805.0

PROJECT SCHEDULE:

Project start: October 1990
Project completion: September 1992

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: Funds would be used for design and construction of 18 bridges on Perimeter Road. The dirt road is approximately 210 miles long. A total of 10 miles of this road are below grade and would be repaired. A total of 18 bridges, varying in length from 30 feet to 280 feet, would be repaired or replaced.

Project Need: Perimeter Road was originally constructed for the purpose of supporting fire protection activities in the Okefenokee Swamp and adjoining lands. Because of the current conditions of the road and bridges, fire equipment must be directed over long detours. These delays could result in additional damages to resources and could cause the loss of escape routes and endanger fire fighting personnel. The Service is currently conducting initial planning and design for repair of the road and bridges. The estimate to complete the project is $3,000,000; however, the Service will address highest priority needs with the $2.1 million request.

U.S. FISH AND WILDLIFE SERVICE
FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM
AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL

PROJECT: Crab Orchard National Wildlife Refuge, Illinois

REGION: 3 (Twin Cities, Minnesota)

PROJECT TITLE: Sewage Treatment Facilities Study and Design

PROJECT DETAIL:

	($000 estimate) FY 1991	Future
Planning and Design	90.0	Unknown

PROJECT SCHEDULE:

Project start: October 1990
Project completion: September 1991

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: This project consists of a planning study to evaluate sewage treatment facilities in the vicinity of Crab Orchard National Wildlife Refuge and to determine future needs of the Service and the Federal Prison at Marion, Illinois. The present treatment facility on Crab Orchard National Wildlife Refuge serves the refuge, the industrial complex located on the refuge, and the Marion Prison. The approved Crab Orchard Industrial Policy calls for the eventual phase-out of sewage treatment facilities on the refuge and the use of non-Service operated and maintained facilities. This study will evaluate other facilities available in the area, the future needs for treatment facilities by the Service and the prison, and an evaluation of rehabilitating or replacing the present facility together with support systems of lift stations and collection lines.

Project Need: Planning and design funding is needed to identify alternatives available for treatment facilities, to assess needs, and to provide preliminary designs and construction cost estimates for a facility that would utilize available technology to comply with regulation requirements. The present facility is 50 years old and indications are that failure of one or more of the components is imminent. As the plant currently handles the disposal needs of the refuge, an industrial complex, and the Marion Federal Prison, failure of the system could threaten the health and safety of Service employees, the prisoners and the public.

U.S. FISH AND WILDLIFE SERVICE
FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM
AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL

PROJECT: Lacassine National Wildlife Refuge, Louisiana

REGION: 4 (Atlanta, Georgia)

PROJECT TITLE: Domestic Sewage System Replacement

PROJECT DETAIL:

	($000 estimate) FY 1991	Future
Planning design and construction	133.0	0.0

PROJECT SCHEDULE:

Project start: October 1990
Project completion: September 1991

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: Funds would be used to plan, design and construct a sewage collection, treatment, and disposal system for the headquarters area of the refuge. The system would consist of a parallel extended aeration system, lift station, and an above ground contained drain field.

Project Need: The existing system is old and fails to meet the effluent requirements of the State of Louisiana Department of Health and Human Resources. There is difficulty in securing the necessary replacement parts for the existing system and the remoteness of the refuge makes repairs to the system and testing of the effluent very costly. It would be more cost effective to replace the entire system.

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service
Land Acquisition

Subactivity	1991 Current Law Amount	1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Acquisition Management	3,000	7,500	4,500
Specifically Legislated	8,850	9,375	525
Endangered Species Act	13,560	7,300	-6,260
Emergency Wetlands Act	30,730	20,875	-9,855
FWS Act of 1956	10,350	10,150	-200
Inholdings	1,500	1,500	0
Subtotal	67,990	56,700	-11,290

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: Fish and Wildlife Service; Land Acquisition

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Subactivities		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Estimate	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) From FY 1991
Acquisition Management	($)	3,000	7,500	4,500
Specifically Legislated	($)	8,850	9,375	525
Endangered Species Act	($)	13,560	7,300	-6,260
Emergency Wetland Act	($)	30,730	20,875	-9,855
FWS Act of 1956	($)	10,350	10,150	- 200
Inholdings	($)	1,500	1,500	0
Total Requirement	($) (FTE)	67,990 (58)	56,700 (62)	-11,290 (+4)

(For description of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justification for the Fish and Wildlife Service)

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget proposes additional Fish and Wildlife Service funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

Current Program:

The Fish and Wildlife Service acquires, through appropriated funds, lands and waters and interest therein which aid in meeting the objectives of several Service programs. Emphasis is placed on acquiring important fish and wildlife habitat specifically authorized by Acts of Congress, habitat for the conservation of listed endangered and threatened species, nationally important wetlands, and additions to existing national wildlife refuges.

Acquisition Management ($3,000,000/58 FTE). Acquisition management, in addition to related acquisition costs and base staff salaries, provides funding for new area studies, planning for additions to existing areas, study of environmental impacts of land protection actions, coordination of actions with the public, and private organizations, landowners, and other public agencies in an effort to preserve valuable habitat. Activities also include the processing of cooperative agreements, exchanges, donations, transfers from other Federal agencies, and other non-purchase acquisition alternatives. Also, in recent years the Division of Realty has taken on new responsibilities with respect to contaminant surveys and lands acquired through the operation of the Farm Bill.

The Service's basic policy is to acquire land only when other means (regulatory controls such as zoning, permits, and ordinances or leasing) of achieving program goals and objectives are not appropriate, available, or effective. When lands are to be purchased, the minimum interests necessary to reach management objectives are acquired. If fee title acquisition is required, full consideration is given to extended use reservations, exchanges, or other alternatives that will lessen the impact on the owner and the community.

Acquisition proposed by fee-title, easement or lease is processed through the Service's Land Acquisition Priority System (LAPS). LAPS ranks proposed acquisitions primarily by species/habitat priorities. Other factors which are considered are degree and type of threat, contribution to national goals, opportunity to acquire land, relationship to refuge management goals, acquisition status, and development requirements.

The Service utilizes its land exchange authority as an alternative to land purchase. Although exchanges are difficult to negotiate and to reach an agreement with landowners, the Service obtained 4 exchange agreements during FY 1989.

Donations of fish and wildlife habitat or interests therein are also encouraged and accepted when they contribute to meeting objectives. During the six-year period of FY 1984 through FY 1989, the Service accepted 125,000 acres into the National Wildlife Refuge System by donations. These donations involved areas such as, Alligator River, National Key Deer, and Crocodile Lake National Wildlife Refuges.

Inholdings. $1,500,000/1,500 acres FY 1991 Program:

The inholdings line item was designed to be used for the unscheduled acquisition opportunities on established projects that do not have an active land acquisition program and for which funds would likely not be sought as a budget item. In addition, budgeted projects could also be considered when there are landowner hardships, emergencies, or other valid reasons for immediate acquisition. The requested $1,500,000 will provide for the acquisition of about 1,500 acres at 15 to 20 refuges in as many states.

Land Acquisition Accomplishments

Federal Refuges	1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
Endangered Species (Acres)	16,208	9,920	6,524
Fish and Wildlife Activity (Acres)	26,837	7,160	10,100
Refuge Prevention Use Act (Acres)	16,137	0	0
Specifically Legislated (Acres)	22,533	1,950	5,850
Emergency Wetlands (Acres)	0	45,555	25,993
Inholdings (Acres)	1,500	1,500	1,500
TOTAL	83,215	66,085	49,967

FY 1991 Program: The Service proposes to acquire approximately 49,967 acres with the $49,200,000 requested for land acquisition. The following projects are presented within the various authorities. The rankings are based on application of Departmentwide selection criteria.

FY 1991 PROPOSED ACQUISITION

PROJECT/STATE	($000)	ACRES	DOI RANK
EMERGENCY WETLANDS ACT:			
A.C.E. Rivers, SC	1,500	1,500	145
Alligator River, NC	500	1,250	60
Cape May, NJ	3,500	1,400	22
Chase Lake Prairie, ND	1,000	5,000	56
Chincoteague, VA	1,000	1,900	52
Crystal River, FL	500	1,000	91
Cypress Creek, IL	1,000	1,500	123
Edwin B. Forsythe, NJ	1,000	125	179
Great Swamp, NJ	1,375	75	42
J. N. Ding Darling, FL	2,500	43	37
Klamath Forest, OR	1,000	2,700	134
Lake Thompson, SD	1,000	5,000	27
Rachel Carson, ME	2,000	300	31
Rainwater Basin, NE	1,000	1,200	58
Sublette Meadows, WY	2,000	3,000	67
	20,875	25,993	

ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT:			
Bear Valley, OR	800	774	157
James River, VA	2,000	3,500	77
Lamar Peninsula, TX(Aransas)	1,500	800	68
National Key Deer, FL	1,000	100	unranked
Sacramento River, CA	2,000	1,350	14
	7,300	6,524	
FISH AND WILDLIFE ACT:			
Lower Rio Grande Valley, TX	6,900	5,300	10
Lower Suwannee, FL	2,000	4,000	19
Ohio River Islands, WV	1,250	800	125
	10,150	10,100	
SPECIFICALLY LEGISLATED:			
Bogue Chitto, MS/LA	1,000	3,600	69
Minnesota Valley, MN	2,000	500	43
Pettaquamscutt, RI	2,500	780	18
San Francisco Bay, CA	3,000	850	9
Tinicum NEC, PA	875	120	44
	9,375	5,850	
INHOLDINGS:	1,500	1,500	--
Total Refuge Lands	49,200	49,967	

Acquisition Management. (+$4,500/4 FTE)

During the past few years, considerable resources have been made available to the Fish and Wildlife Service for land acquisition; between FY 1982 and 1989, $328 million has been obligated from the Land and Water Conservation Fund (LWCF) to acquire over 519,000 acres of refuge lands and wildlife habitat. During that same period, the Service's annual land acquisition funding has grown from $16.5 million in FY 1982 to $68.0 million in FY 1990. It is expected that the land acquisition program for the Service will maintain the current level of funding or increase in future years to respond to the critical need to preserve wetlands and other important wildlife habitat that is threatened. This is evidenced by the enactment of the Emergency Wetlands Resources Act, and the North American Wetlands Conservation Act. During FY 1988 and FY 1989 total costs (except land acquisition costs) were $8.2 and $12.3 million, respectively. It is likely that FY 1991 costs will exceed the $12.3 million that was expended in FY 1989. The current level of funding for acquisition management in FY 1990 is $3.0 million and any funds required above that level will come from project funds. The $4.5 million increase is intended to reduce the reliance on project funds to pay incidental acquisition and base staffing costs.

The major purpose of the acquisition management funding, since its first appropriation in FY 1982, is for maintaining the base staffing costs for the Service's realty specialists. The current level of realty staff has remained steady through the recent increased land acquisition program, largely due to a high level of dedication and experience. However, it is expected that up to one-third of the total realty staff and one-half of the most senior staff will retire within the next 3 to 5 years. This significant portion of the realty staff was hired at the same time, thirty years ago when the accelerated migratory bird acquisition program was initiated as a result of the small wetlands program of 1958 and the subsequent Wetlands Loan Act of 1961. The Service anticipates that an estimated 64 realty specialists will retire within five years. Considering that it takes about 3 years to fully train realty personnel, recruitment and training must begin immediately if replacement realty specialists and appraisers are to be functional as retirements occur. We hope to implement a Service-wide training program for entry level as well as journeyman staff with greater emphasis on training at all levels. Funding will be used to staff realty trainees in all regions. It is anticipated that costs for additional training will be approximately $200,000.

The FY 1991 budget proposes a level of $7,500,000 for acquisition management to be used to continue ongoing LWCF acquisitions funded via prior year appropriations and projects to be funded in 1991. The acquisition management increase is necessary to provide additional base salary funding freeing up project funding for acquisition. Acquisition Management, in addition to related acquisition costs and base staff salaries, provides funding for new area studies, planning for additions to existing areas, study of environmental impacts of land protection actions, coordination of actions with the public, private organizations, landowners, and other public agencies in an effort to preserve valuable habitat. Activities also include the processing of cooperative agreements, exchanges, donations, transfers from other Federal agencies, and other non-purchase acquisition alternatives. Also, in recent years the Division of Realty has taken on new responsibilities with respect to contaminant surveys and lands acquired through the operation of the Farm Bill.

Distribution of Change be Object Classification

The object class detail for the proposed $4,500 increase is as follows:

Salaries/Benefits	240,000
Travel and transportation	250,000
Supplies and Materials	50,000
Equipment	600,000
Other Services	3,360,000
Total	$4,500,000

COMPREHENSIVE LAND ACQUISITION TABLE
($000)

Project and Location (Park, Refuge, Site)	DOI Rank	Est. Unoblig Balances as of 9/30/90 $/acres	FY 1991 Budget $/acres	% of total acreage to be acq. by 9/30/91	Total Acres Remaining to be acq. after FY 91	Benefits	Remarks
Emergency Wetland Act:							
A. C. E. River NWR, SC	145	0/0	1,500/1,500	17	15,000	Wetlands	Tidal Marsh
Alligator River, NC	60	0/0	500/1,250	91	20,000	Wetlands	High public Visibility
Cape May, NJ	22	0/0	3,500/1,400	27	11,200	Wetlands	Part of North American Waterfowl plan.
Chase Lake Prairie, ND	56	0/0	1,000/5,000	6	112,000	Wetlands	Joint Venture project
Chincoteague, VA	52	0/0	1,000/1,900	98	285	Wetlands	Part of North American Waterfowl Plan.
Crystal River, FL	91	0/0	500/1,000	33	2,000	Wetlands	Condemnation may be required for one tract.
Cypress Creek, IL	123	0/0	1,000/1,500	14	28,700	Wetlands	Part of North American Waterfowl Plan.
Edwin B. Forsythe, NJ	79	0/0	1,000/125	82	8,400	Wetlands	Part of North American Waterfowl Plan.
Great Swamp, NJ	42	0/0	1,375/75	81	1,770	Wetlands	Wetlands Priority Conservation Plan.
J. N. Ding Darling, FL	37	0/0	2,500/43	99	70	Wetlands	High degree of threat to property for conversion to high density housing.
Klamath Forest, OR	134	0/0	1,000/2,700	71	12,900	Wetlands	
Lake Thompson, SD	27	0/0	1,000/5,000	40	12,000	Wetlands	Joint Venture Project
Rachel Carson, ME	31	0/0	2,000/300	55	3,260	Wetlands	Part of North American Waterfowl Management
Rainwater Basin, NE	58	0/0	1,000/1,200	32	40,000	Wetlands	Part of North American Waterfowl Management Plan.
Sublette Meadows, WY	67	0/0	2,000/3,000	11	24,000	Wetlands	New Refuge, Sandhill Cranes, and waterfowl.
Endangered Species Act:							
Bear Valley NWR, OR	157	0/0	800/774	99	20	Endang. Spec.	
James River, VA	77	0/0	2,000/3,500	100	0	Endang. Spec.	Bald Eagle Recovery Plan
Lamar Peninsula, TX	68	0/0	1,500/800	100	0	Endang. Spec.	Wetlands Native Brushland
National Key Deer, FL	unranked	0/0	1,000/100	71	3,350	Endang. Spec.	High Threat from development.
Sacramento River, CA	14	0/0	2,000/1,350	19	14,550	Endang. Spec.	Wetlands and recreation
Fish and Wildlife Act:							
Lower Rio Grande, TX	10	0/0	6,900/5,300	48	56,000	Wetlands	Endangered Species, Native Brushland
Lower Suwannee, FL	19	0/0	2,000/4,000	81	10,900	Unique and Significant Wildlife Hab.	Condemnation may be necessary to acquire the last 15% of the refuge

COMPREHENSIVE LAND ACQUISITION TABLE
($000)

Project and Location (Park, Refuge, Site)	DOI Rank	Est. Unoblig Balances as of 9/30/90 $/acres	FY 1991 Budget $/acres	% of total acreage to be acq. by 9/30/91	Total Acres Remaining to be acq. after FY 91	Benefits	Remarks
Ohio River Islands, WV	125	0/0	1,250/800	48	1,150	Unique Habit.	Wetlands, Mig. Birds Plan recreation
Specifically Legislated:							
Bogue Chitto , MS/LA	69	0/0	1,000/3,600	85	6,400	Wetlands	Bottomland hardwoods
Minnesota Valley, MN	43	0/0	2,000/500	97	400	Wetlands	Migratory Birds, recreation
Pettaquamscutt, RI	18	0/0	2,500/780	74	315	Wetlands	Migratory Birds, Recreation
San Francisco Bay, CA	9	0/0	3,000/850	44	24,200	Wetlands	Endangered Species, Recreation
Tinicum NEC, PA	44	0/0	875/120	90	100	Wetlands	Wetlands Priority Conservation Plan.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: A C E Rivers National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Colleton, Beaufort and Charleston Counties, South Carolina

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,500	1,000	$1,500,000	15,000	1,000	$15,000,000

Improvements: Dikes, water control structures, some farm buildings.

Description: This proposed acquisition is part of a larger Mid-Atlantic Joint venture project under the North American Waterfowl Management Plan. It is proposed to acquire about 18,000 acres of habitat within the river basin.

Need: This valuable fish and wildlife habitat is being threatened by development, both residential and industrial, and silvicultural practices. Additionally, several endangered or threatened species are known to use the area. The area contains the largest concentration of nesting bald eagles in South Carolina. Planning requirements for this project are scheduled for completion in 1990.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Alligator River National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Dare, Tyrrell & Hyde Counties, North Carolina

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,250	400	$500,000	20,000	400	$8,000,000

Improvements: None

Description: Alligator River NWR, established in March 1984, comprises approximately 140,000 acres of diverse and unique wildlife habitat. The refuge will total about 210,000 acres when completed.

Need: The Alligator River area is part of the northern border of the American alligator's range and remains one of the last strongholds of the black bear in North Carolina. The refuge also provides habitat for the endangered red-cockaded woodpecker and migrating bald eagle and peregrine falcon. Most notably, the Alligator River was the site of the reintroduction of the endangered red wolf. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Program Area: Cape May National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Cape May County, New Jersey

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,400	2,500	$3,500,000	11,200	1,200	$13,440,000

Improvements: None

Description: Located in two separate divisions, about 10-20 miles north of the City of Cape May, New Jersey, this refuge, when completed, will contain 15,300 acres of valuable wildlife habitat. The Delaware Bay Division is one of the most important spring and fall staging areas along the Atlantic Coast. The area also provides important wintering habitat for black ducks and raptors. Over 2,700 acres have been acquired during the past two years.

Need: This highly important refuge is on the edge of suburban growth from the Atlantic City casino industry. There are numerous landowners who are willing to convey their property to the Service. Acquisition will prevent further development from adversely affecting this habitat providing long-term protection for marsh, wooded swamp, and associated uplands. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Chase Lake Prairie

Location: Eleven counties in central North Dakota

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	5,000	200	$1,000,000	112,000	200	$22,400,000

Improvements: Agricultural

Description: Chase Lake is joint venture project under the North American Waterfowl Management Plan. Chase Lake National Wildlife Refuge is located in the center of the eleven-county area where grassland easements and wetland easements and extension agreements will be purchased. The project involves several private conservation organizations. The Chase Lake Project Plan of Action identifies a four-year acquisition goal of 34,000 acres in fee and 17,000 acres of easements. The estimated cost of attaining this short-term goal is $10,000,000. This $1,000,000 proposed funding will contribute to this goal. The total project goal is 119,372 acres, of which 7,372 acres will have been purchased by September 30, 1991.

Need: Funds are needed to continue acquiring wetlands and protecting the prairie grassland ecosystem in intensively farmed areas. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Chincoteague National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Accomack County, Virginia

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,900	526	$1,000,000	285	3,500	$1,000,000

Improvements: None

Description: This project was established in 1943. The Refuge's objectives have expanded over the years to include the preservation of migration and wintering habitat for waterfowl, and the protection of threatened and endangered species habitat. The Cedar, Assawoman, and Metomkin Island divisions are located south of the refuge along the Virginia barrier island chain.

Need: These islands are important nesting areas for shorebirds, many being identified by the Service as threatened or endangered. The major threat is the development of homesites and the subsequent public use threatens the nesting shorebirds. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

INTENTIONAL
BLANK

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Crystal River National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Citrus County, Florida

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,000	500	$500,000	2,000	1,000	$2,000,000

Improvements: Insignificant. Several recreational cabins.

Description: This area is composed of tidal marsh, riparian bottom-lands and small islands and will encompass about 3000 acres when completed. A smaller area is located north of the community of Homosassa and is nearly level freshwater hardwood swamp grading into flatwoods as the elevation rises.

Need: The primary purpose of the proposal is to protect valuable wetland resources in the Homosassa River Basin. The bottomland hardwood parcel is but a remnant of a vast forest that has been lost to developmental pressures for resort and retirement properties. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Cypress Creek National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Union and Pulaski, Illinois

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,500	650	$1,000,000	28,700	650	$18,655,000

Improvements: Posting and signing, headquarters, shop, water control structures, and equipment will eventually be added after establishment of the refuge.

Description: The Service's acquisition of the Cypress Creek National Wildlife Refuge proposal of 33,316 acres would preserve a unique riverine ecosystem. The area located in the heart of a famous waterfowl migration and wintering area in southern Illinois includes the largest and highest quality cypress-tupelo stands in Illinois. At $650 per acre, 3,076 acres are planned for acquisition through FY 1990 at an estimated value of $2,000,000 and 1,500 acres are planned for acquisition through FY 1991 at an estimated value of 1,000,000. There will remain approximately 28,700 acres for acquisition in the future at an estimated value of $18,655,000.

Need: Cypress Creek National Wildlife Refuge is adjacent to an area being acquired by the State of Illinois and The Nature Conservancy. Land protection will be on a willing seller basis. The public attitude is generally supportive. The funds are for land costs, relocations, and title work. Without protection, agricultural development, hydrologic changes, and erosion will continue to compromise the integrity of the Cache River System. Planning requirements for this project are scheduled for completion in 1990.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Edwin B. Forsythe National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Atlantic and Ocean Counties, New Jersey

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	125	8,000	$1,000,000	8.400	2,500	$21,000,000

Improvements: None

Description: Edwin B. Forsythe National Wildlife Refuge is an expansive area extending for approximately 40 miles along the New Jersey Coastline. This area is crucial to the migrating birds especially blacks ducks, which could not survive without this refueling and nesting area to so many species of wildlife. The refuge consists of waterfront, wetland, and critical edge upland buffer zone. The refuge supports wintering and migrant bald eagles and a nesting pair of peregrin falcons. Other birds that nest on the refuge are osprey, woodcock, gulls, piping plover, and least terns.

The Forsythe is highly utilized by individuals who come to learn and observe nature.

Need: Many willing sellers within the boundary of the refuge are offering tracts which are vital to maintaining the ecosystem in progress. The Service is competing with developers who are pressuring for continued development in a sensitive area. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Great Swamp National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Morris County, New Jersey

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	75	18,300	$1,375,000	1,770	6,000	$10,620,000

Improvements: Residential/Commercial

Description: The wooded swamps, potholes , and impoundments provide excellent breeding habitat for American black ducks, wood ducks, and mallards as well as nesting and feeding habitat for blue-winged and green-winged teal, northern pintail, gadwall, and American widgeon. An estimated 15 million people live within 50 miles of the refuge, making it an outdoor recreation and environmental education resource of prime importance. It is one of the largest undisturbed wetlands areas in northern New Jersey having significant value for wildlife.

Need: Primary threats to the refuge are development within the refuge boundary and in the Great Swamp Watershed and the associated problems of increased water pollution, siltation, high flood peaks, and diminished low flow levels. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: J.N. "Ding" Darling National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Lee County, Florida

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	43	58,100	$2,500,000	70	20,000	$1,400,000

Improvements: None

Description: Five tracts ranging in size from 0.15 acre to 74.0 acres. All tracts lie adjacent to refuge lands and all are considered inholdings. A large tract on Buck Key has development potential. A private tract is strategically located in the center of the islands and separates the two Service parcels. This tract contains 73 acres of mangrove and West Indian tropical hammock both important to the estuarine system.

Need: All of the properties are considered inholdings and their acquisition will facilitate management of the refuge. Another direct benefit is the preservation of wildlife habitat used by endangered species and protection of wetlands which are critical to the marine environment of the area. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Klamath Forest National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Klamath County, Oregon

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	2,700	370	$1,000,000	12,900	640	$8,256,000

Improvements: None

Description: The refuge was established in 1958 as an important nesting area for California Central Valley wintering populations of sandhill cranes and waterfowl as well as valuable wetlands for spring and fall migration. The additions will ensure perpetuation of wetlands habitat of the Klamath Marsh for wildlife including species of concern, threatened or endangered. Appropriation in FY 89 and 90 totaling $5,300,000 protected approximately 20,000 acres wetlands and associated water rights. Currently, 10 tracts totaling about 15,600 acres remain to be acquired. The total estimated cost for these lands is $9,256,000. This acquisition will protect additional valuable wetlands and in all will insure that 80 percent of the water rights in the basin will be available to the refuge.

Need: This funding provides for the acquisition of approximately 2,700 acres from 2 owners. One of the owners has indicated a willingness to sell while the other appears to be receptive to a sale if able to retain use. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Lake Thompson, South Dakota

Location: 50 miles northwest of Sioux Falls, South Dakota

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	5,000	200	$1,000,000	12,000	300	$3,600,000

Improvements: Agricultural

Description: The Lake Thompson project involves wetland restoration on fee and easement lands to be acquired by the Service. The project area includes a 320,000-acre watershed. Acquisition focuses on small scattered tracts containing drained or existing wetlands. The grassland easement will also be used to protect grassland ecosystems. The National Wildlife Federation; South Dakota Game, Fish and Parks; and the Service are the major participants in this joint venture. About 200 tracts will be acquired. The Emergency Wetland Resource Act of 1986 is the primary authority for this project.

Need: Acquisition is necessary to continue Service involvement in the joint venture under the North American Waterfowl Management Plan. Governor Mickelson supports the project, and a major effort in 1991 will be acquisition in the historic Big Slough-Silver Lake complex described by writer Laura Engels Wilder. Acquisition will help alleviate historic flooding problems through restoration of drained wetlands, and be used for grassland easements. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Rachel Carson National Wildlife Refuge

Location: York and Cumberland Counties, Maine

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	300	6,660	$2,000,000	3,260	1,840	$6,000,000

Improvements: General residential and vacation development occurring along entire Maine Coast.

Description: Rachel Carson National Wildlife Refuge was established to preserve important waterfowl habitat, particularly high quality salt marsh along key waterfowl migration routes. To date, 3,230 acres have been acquired in ten estuarine systems between Kittery and Cape Elizabeth.

Need: Numerous willing sellers make it imperative that the Service acquire these tracts before they are sold to developers. Loss of land in this area would lead to further decline in wintering and migration habitat for the American black duck. Acquisition is essential to providing long-term protection to those southern Maine estuaries that provide important wintering and breeding habitat for waterfowl, nesting habitat for shore birds and nursery areas for fish and shellfish. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Rainwater Basin, Nebraska

Location: Southcentral Nebraska

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,200	833	$1,000,000	40,000	900	$36,000,000

Improvements: Agricultural

Description: The Rainwater Basin is a geographically distinct area of central North America that represents a "bottleneck" in the north-south migration corridor for 5-7 million waterfowl, 90 percent of the mid-continent sandhill crane population, and whooping cranes. About 90 percent of the acquisition focuses on scattered fee title acquisition within 17 counties. In 1990 this area will be submitted as a new joint venture for the North American Waterfowl Management Plan. Total project goal is 58,500 acres, of which 18,456 acres will be have purchased by September 30, 1991.

Need: Funds will be used to continue opportunistic acquisition throughout 17 counties. The new joint venture will need a Service commitment to land acquisition. The project contributes to the President's "no net loss of wetlands" policy. The major threat is agricultural drainage. Acquisition is essential to protect and create wetlands for spring waterfowl migration and non-wildlife values. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Sublette Meadows, Wyoming (ada Cokeville Meadows)

Location: Southwest Wyoming

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	3,000	500	$2,000,000	24,000	500	$12,000,000

Improvements: Agricultural and farm dwellings

Description: Sublette Meadows is a 27,000-acre refuge involving 30 landowners. The project is located on the Bear River and is comprised of over 15,000 acres of wetlands. Most of the wetlands rely on seasonal flooding from irrigation to maintain sedge-rush communities. The Wyoming State Legislature passed legislation approving the refuge in 1989. The area is the most important wetland complex in Wyoming.

Need: Numerous landowners are willing to negotiate to sell their property. The Service will have a Record of Decision on the Refuge EIS before the end of 1990. Funds will be used to secure high priority wetlands in the center of the refuge. FY 1991 funds, if appropriated, will be the first monies for the project, as no acres have been acquired to date. Planning requirements for this project are scheduled for completion in 1990.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Bear Valley National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Klamath County, Oregon

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	774	1,034	$800,000	20	1,000	$20,000

Improvements: None

Description: The Bear Valley National Wildlife Refuge contains the largest roosting concentration of bald eagles in the continental United States. One 774-acre tract is the only parcel remaining other than a road easement and a small viewing site totaling about 20 acres.

Need: Funds are necessary to reimburse the National Audubon Society (Audubon) who is assisting the Fish and Wildlife Service in the acquisition of the last major tract within the refuge. Audubon has reached price agreement with the owner and is in the process of purchasing the tract. The Fish and Wildlife Service Director has given a letter of commitment to purchase the tract from Audubon in FY 91 if funds are available. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: James River National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Prince George County, Virginia

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	3,500	570	$2,000,000	0	0	$0

Improvements: None

Description: This 3,500-acre tract of forested upland contains the largest concentration of roosting bald eagles along the Atlantic Coast. The site also contains two active eagle nests.

Need: The land is threatened by land use changes from forestry practices, sand and gravel operations, and residential development. The property is currently owned by The Nature Conservancy, who is holding the land for the Service pending funding. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Lamar Peninsula, addition to Aransas NWR

Location: Two miles south of Aransas National Wildlife Refuge, Aransas County, Texas

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None, amount requested will complete purchase.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	800	1,875	$1,500,000	0	0	$0

Improvements: Abandoned roads, fences, and windmill

Description: The habitat of Lamar Peninsular is nearly identical to Aransas National Wildlife Refuge. The upland habitat is composed primarily of common live oak, red bay thickets and grasslands. The wetland habitat is composed primarily of smooth cordgrass and marsh hay cordgrass. Numerous tidal flats, tidal marshes and flooded swales occur in conjunction with the other wetland areas. These wetland areas are used extensively by the Aransas-Wood Buffalo flock of wild, endangered whooping cranes. Lamar Peninsula is also the winter home for three species of geese, one species of tree duck, eight species of dabbling ducks and seven species of diving ducks. Major threats to Lamar Peninsula are commercial, residential and recreational development, oil and gas development, and public use interference.

Need: The proposed $1.5 million is the estimated value of two ownerships. The site is presently used by two whooping crane families. Acquisition of this area will also be in keeping with the goals of the North American Waterfowl Management Plan and other Service plans. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: National Key Deer Wildlife Refuge

Location: Monroe County, Florida

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	100	10,000	$1,000,000	3,350	10,400	$34,840,000

Improvements: None

Description: Over 500 tracts ranging in size from 0.15 acre lots to 350.0 acre tracts. All are privately owned and considered critical habitat for the endangered Key Deer, and other rare, "special emphasis" or endangered species such as the white-crowned pigeon, mangrove cuckoo, osprey, brown pelican, West Indian manatee and American alligator. Majority of tracts lie in area plotted into subdivisions some of which are improved but most unimproved. Tracts located on various keys from Big Pine Key to Sugarloaf Key.

Need: The refuge is located in area of Lower Florida Keys that is under rapid development of commercial and residential development, growing population and limited land. The rural subdivisions, targeted for acquisition, have been lying dormant for years but are now "hot" real estate because of excess dollars in population for recreational homes and the migration of residents out of Marathon and Key West where property taxes are rising. Key deer habitat has excellent development potential. Accelerated acquisition of habitat is critical to survival of key deer. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Sacramento River National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Tehama, Glenn, Butte, Colusa Counties, California

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,350	1,480	$2,000,000	14,550	1,000	$14,550,000

Improvements: None

Description: In FY 1987 Congress appropriated $150,000 for a feasibility study on developing a refuge along the Sacramento River. The refuge was established to preserve and restore riparian habitat along a 100 mile stretch of the river between Colusa and Red Bluff, California. Currently there remains about 15,900 acres of privately owned land on some 120 tracts. To date the Service has purchased 247 acres and by the end of FY 90 the Service anticipates protecting an additional 1,880 acres at a cost of $3,600,000. In FY 1991 the Service proposes to acquire 3 tracts totaling 1,350 acres at an estimated cost of $2,000,000.

The Sacramento River supports a variety of wildlife, fish, and plants. These include federally endangered species such as bald eagle, American peregrine falcon, least Bell's vireo and the threatened valley elderberry longhorn beetle. Candidate species include the Swainson's hawk, western yellow-billed cuckoo, giant garter snake, Sacramento splittain, Sacramento anthicid beetle, and California hibiscus.

In addition to winter chinook salmon runs, the Sacramento River has runs of steelhead trout, striped bass, American shad, and white and green sturgeon. All these species migrate to the ocean, but return to gravel streambeds to spawn.

Need: Funds are necessary to complete acquisition of private ownerships from willing sellers. Tracts are throughout the refuge and need to be acquired to protect existing habitat and prevent development and further resource damage. The $2,000,000 proposed funding is approximately one-third of what is needed to acquire property from those willing sellers the Service has identified this year. Future threats include conversion to agriculture, water development, bank stabilization, flood control projects, and urban growth. All planning have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Lower Rio Grande Valley National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Cameron, Hidalgo, Starr, and Willacy Counties, Texas

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	5,300	1,300	$6,900,000	56,000	1,250	$70,000,000

Improvements: None

Description: The objective is to continue acquisition of the remaining brushlands in the Lower Rio Grande Valley, tying together the discontinuous protected parcels into a viable wildlife corridor. This is necessary to ensure the preservation of critical white-winged dove nesting and roosting habitat and to preserve habitat for a diverse assemblage of passerine birds, mammals, reptiles, and endangered species. Preserving these areas will provide habitat for a variety of unusual birds and animals found nowhere else in the United States. Mexican birds, whose northern range is the Lower Rio Grande Valley use the areas and include such birds as the green jay, plain chachalaca, great kiskadee, altamira oriole, and some 30 other peripheral bird species. For 10 years, white-winged doves have been decreasing in the Lower Rio Grande Valley due primarily to the loss of native brushlands. The refuge lands to be preserved as native brushlands total approximately 107,500 acres. The final refuge acreage will vary depending on the amount of brushlands remaining as preservation funding is made available.

Need: The proposed 6.9 million would enable the Service to continue acquiring acreage where habitat loss is most likely. The total cost to complete acquisition is estimated to be approximately $ 77 million. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Lower Suwannee National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Dixie and Levy Counties, Florida

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	4,000	550	$2,000,000	10,900	550	$5,995,000

Improvements: None

Description: The Lower Suwannee National Wildlife Refuge was established in April 1979, and consists of 57,000 acres of unique and significant fish and wildlife habitat within the Lower Suwannee River floodplain. The major habitat types within the proposed area include tidal salt marsh, timbered swamp, hardwood hammock, pine flatwoods, fresh marsh, wet prairie, and open water.

Need: This nationally significant wildlife habitat area is one of the most diverse and productive wildlife areas in Florida. The major threat to the refuge is the conversion of sizable areas of the timbered swamp and upland forest for residential, commercial, and recreational development. Conversion to agriculture and, more significantly, pine monoculture has already begun and can be expected to increase. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Ohio River Islands National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Beaver County, Pennsylvania;
Jefferson, Belmont and Meigs Counties, Ohio;
Jefferson, Hancock, Ohio, Marshall, Wetzel, Tyler, Pleasants,
Wood, Mason, and Cabell Counties, West Virginia; and
Lewis County, Kentucky

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	800	1,923	$1,250,000	1,150	1000	$1,150,000

Improvements: Some sand and gravel removal.

Description: Thirty-eight islands stretching over 360 miles of the Ohio River provide significant water and land habitat for a variety of wildlife. These relatively undisturbed islands consist primarily of bottom land hardwood forest (a remnant of the Ohio River floodplain forest of the early 1900's), reverting fields and agricultural land. The Nature Conservancy has aided the Service in the acquisition of eight of these islands in FY 1990 and will continue this effort in the upcoming year.

Need: There are a number of willing sellers of these islands. Acquisition at this time will preserve the bottomland hardwood forest of the Ohio River flood plain from further loss due to sand and gravel mining operations. Planning requirements for this project are scheduled for completion in 1990.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Bogue Chitto National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Washington and St. Tammany Parishes, Louisiana; and Pearl County, Mississippi

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	3,600	275	$1,000,000	6,400	500	$3,200,000

Improvements: Insignificant. Some recreational cabins.

Description: Currently, there remains about 10,000 acres of privately owned land in some 72 tracts. This area is composed of bottomland hardwoods, small water bodies and river floodplain. The newly approved expansion area (8,200.0 acres) would connect the refuge with the Pearl River Wildlife Management Area to the South and provide public ownership and protection for the lower 35 miles of the Pearl River. Fourteen species of sport fish, seven species of commerical fish, five species of forest game, and 86 species of migratory nongame birds can be found. The endangered bald eagle and the American alligator are known to occupy the area.

Need: Funds are necessary to acquire the remaining tracts within the existing boundary as well as the tracts within the expanded area. Acquisition is essential to protect and preserve a unique and productive wildlife habitat source. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Minnesota Valley National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Hennepin, Carver, Dakota, and Scott Counties, Minnesota

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

Special Legislation: Public Law 94-466 of 10/08.76, as amended; $29,500,000 authorized until expended. After appropriations through FY 1991, $13,381,000 remaining.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	500	4,000	$2,000,000	400	5,000	$2,000,000

Improvements: One tract contains a set of farm buildings, and another tract contains an old residence, both of which need to be removed.

Description: The Minnesota Valley National Wildlife Refuge was established in 1976 via Public Law 94-466. Refuge boundaries approved by Congress total approximately 12,500 acres. The refuge is needed to preserve the diversity and abundance of wildlife and native plant communities. Due to the proximity of the Minneapolis/St. Paul metropolitan area, wildlife oriented recreation, education, and other related activities are also emphasized as major refuge objectives. Four tracts, totalling 996 acres, are proposed for acquisition through FY 1990 at an estimated $3,000,000. There remains about 926 acres of privately owned land in some 46 tracts, which will complete acquisition and ensure the conservation of this natural area for the 2,000,000 people who reside in the vicinity of the refuge recreation area.

Need: Negotiations have been ongoing for over ten years with these landowners. Condemnation may be necessary for a few. The acquisition of the remaining tracts will help the refuge improve the boundary administration of the remaining tracts and will provide for additional recreation opportunities necessitated by increased public use, generated by the newly constructed visitor and interpretive center. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Pettaquamscutt Cove National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Washington County, Rhode Island

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	780	3,200	$2,500,000	315	17,800	$5,607,000

Improvements: None

Description: This refuge consists of many marsh and wetland tracts flanking the Pettaquamscutt Cove. A critical edge upland fringe bounds the Cove and marsh offering protection to the vital wetland areas threatened by development. The marsh and associated tidal flats have been noted as an extremely productive and valuable wetland complex, and also provide nesting, feeding, migration, or wintering habitat for geese, wading birds, passerines, terns, gulls, shorebirds, such as plovers, sandpipers, and rails, along with numerous small mammals, reptiles and amphibians.

Need: Pettaquamscutt Cove National Wildlife Refuge has recently been established, and a number of willing sellers are interest in protecting the Pettaquamscutt River and the surrounding marsh and buffer areas. The River is utilized extensively by migrating birds and local species. Strong local support has encouraged the continued preservation of the Cove which started years ago with continued local support.

The real estate values surrounding the Cove area are substantial and are justified by the exceptional views offered of both the Cove and the open ocean. Developers see this as a prime area for residential development. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: San Francisco Bay National Wildlife Refuge

Location: Alameda, San Mateo, Santa Clara Counties, California

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	850	3,500	$3,000,000	24,200	8,700	$210,540,000

Improvements: None

Description: The objectives of the refuge are to protect the wildlife resources of the south San Francisco Bay area, provide wildlife-oriented recreation, and preserve a natural area in close proximity to a large urban center. The marshes, mudflats, open water, and salt ponds form an ecosystem which supports a rich diversity of fish and wildlife. It is a major nesting and feeding area for waterfowl and shorebirds, and habitat for three endangered species. Complete acquisition and development will provide the more than 300,000 visitors annually - opportunities for fishing, animal and bird observation, research and environmental eduction.

Need: Under Public Law 100-556, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service was authorized to add an additional 20,000 acres to the refuge. The Service is in the process of identifying which lands should be added. Tracts of land key to the recovery of the California clapper rail and other wetlands are high priority. Habitat is being damaged through discing, draining, and fills and the threat of development is strong. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Fiscal 1991 Fish and Wildlife Service Land Acquisition Program

Program Area: Tinicum National Environmental Center

Location: Philadelphia and Delaware Counties, Pennsylvania

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining:

None

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	120	7,290	$875,000	100	20,000	$2,000,000

Improvements: Industrial/Commercial

Description: Tinicum National Environmental Center was established as part of the National Wildlife Refuge System by Public Law 92-326, approved on June 30, 1972. The purpose of the Center is to preserve the natural resources of Tinicum Marsh and to provide environmental education and wildlife-oriented recreation opportunities for people of the surrounding metropolitan Philadelphia area.

Tinicum Marsh, the largest remaining freshwater tidal marsh in Pennsylvania, is strategically located in the Delaware River Valley, a major migration corridor in the Atlantic Flyway. Thousands of shorebirds and waterfowl use the area for feeding and resting during spring and fall migration and many remain throughout the winter as long as open waters remain unfrozen. Principle waterfowl species are pintail, mallard, black ducks, and ruddy duck. In all, over 250 species of birds have been observed on the refuge, 75 if which have historically nested there.

Need: Funds are necessary to continue acquisition of private ownerships as willing sellers are identified. Area is threatened by industrial and commercial development. All planning requirements have been completed for this project.

Table 1

FISH AND WILDLIFE SERVICE

Statement on Land Exchanges in FY 1991

The following exchanges may be ongoing in Fiscal Year 1991, although their success cannot be assured this far in advance. Other exchanges may be undertaken as opportunities arise. The estimated acquisition costs are projected for the completed exchange and may involve several years of expenditures. These costs are funded mainly from the Acquisition Management subactivity of the Land Acquisition account. Resource values gained from the land exchange program greatly exceed costs required to complete land exchanges.

Fish and Wildlife Service
Potential Exchanges
for FY 1991

State	Potential Exchanges	Acres to be Acquired	Acquisition Management Costs
Alaska	7	73,034	45,000
Colorado	1	2,500	50,000
Florida	1	25,000	200,000
Georgia	1	490	10,000
Iowa	1	40	2,500
Maine	1	200	15,000
Minnesota	6	597	22,000
Montana	1	35,000	200,000
Nevada	1	1,600	2,500
Rhode Island	1	15	5,000
South Dakota	5	1,000	35,000
Utah	1	120	10,000
Wisconsin	2	72	6,000
Wyoming	2	4,000	0
	31	143,668	603,000*

* Covers acquisition costs over a several year period.

Table 2

FISH AND WILDLIFE SERVICE

Update on Land Exchanges

House Report 99-714 directed that each acquisition agency provide a detailed statement of proposed expenditures related to exchanges and a listing of exchanges it plans to work on. The following exchanges may be ongoing in Fiscal Year 1990. Other exchanges may be undertaken as opportunities arise. The estimated acquisition costs are projected for the completed exchange and may involve several years of expenditures. These costs are funded mainly from the Acquisition Management subactivity of the Land Acquisition account. Resources values gained from the land exchange program greatly exceed costs required to complete land exchanges.

State	Potential Exchanges	Acres to be Acquired	Acquisition Management Costs
Alaska	6	9,728	$243,000
Arizona	1	90,000	70,000
California	3	24	30,000
Colorado	1	2,500	20,000
Florida	1	25,000	200,000
Georgia	1	490	10,000
Maine	2	210	20,000
Maryland	1	10	5,000
Michigan	1	1,280	2,500
Minnesota	11	447	28,000
Montana	4	35,340	230,000
Nebraska	1	12	5,000
Nevada	1	1,600	2,500
South Carolina	1	143	5,000
South Dakota	4	900	30,000
Wisconsin	4	497	12,500
Wyoming	2	2,300	10,000 (reimbursable)
	45	170,481	923,500 *

* Covers acquisition costs over a several year period.

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity: National Park Service
Resource Protection/Recreation: Operations

Subactivity	1991 Current Law Amount	1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Resources Management			
Regional Science Programs	8,160	12,000	3,840
Natural Resource Preservation Program	7,527	10,000	2,473
Geographic Information Systems Program	564	1,500	936
Artifact Preservation Collections Management	2,466	2,500	34
Subtotal Resources Management	18,717	26,000	7,283
Subactivity			
Park, Recreation and Wilderness Planning			
Water Resources Studies	3,284	4,000	716
General Management Plans Presidio Planning	0	1,000	1,000
Subtotal	22,001	31,000	8,999

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity:	National Park Service Resource Protection/Recreation-- Operations
	Park Management
Subactivity:	Resources Management

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr. Law
Natural Resources Management				
Regional Science Programs	($)	8,160	12,000	+3,840
	(FTE)	(109)	(117)	(+8)
Natural Resource Pres. Prog.	($)	7,527	10,000	+2,473
	(FTE)	(---)	(---)	(---)
Geographic Info. Systems	($)	564	1,500	+936
	(FTE)	(10)	(20)	(+10)
Cultural Resource Management				
Artifact Pres. Collections Mgt.	($)	2,466	2,500	+34
	(FTE)	(32)	(32)	(---)
Total		18,717	26,000	7,283
Requirements		(151)	(169)	(18)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the National Park Service.)

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget proposes additional National Park Service funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

Natural Resource Management		
Regional Science Program Increase	+$3,840	8 FTE

The regional natural resource (science) programs provide parks with services, expertise, and funding for one-time or cyclic projects that are not available in the individual park units. Many of these research and mitigation projects benefit several parks with common problems. To aid science and resource management at the park level, a funding increase is proposed for priority natural resource management needs, research needs, and park science support. Cyclic project funding and support to parks from the Regional Science Program is the most effective way to provide short-term project funding to parks and also address Regional science priorities. Also, the availability of scientific expertise at the Regional level, unavailable in parks except in the very largest, can provide the necessary oversight to ensure proper objectives and project design.

Increasingly complex decisions are required concerning management options within the parks. Furthermore, there is a growing awareness that parks do not contain whole ecosystems; activities beyond park boundaries, especially within the same ecosystem, affect park resources. More and improved scientific work is needed to understand these complex ecosystems and guide cost-effective management strategies; small investments in science will make management efforts far more effective. The funding will be directed to increased efforts in inventory and monitoring as well as other priority research needs such as exotic species control, endangered species or fire-related research.

Part of this funding will go to support resources management in the Alaska Region. With two-thirds of the land area in the National Park System but with barely 3 percent of the budget, the Alaska Region lacks adequate funds and resource management personnel to manage these units effectively. Although these areas are relatively pristine, they are not resistant to some of the potentially adverse consumptive uses that are permitted under the Alaska Native Interests Lands Claims Acts (ANILCA). Priority for the expenditure of these funds includes increased funding support for existing research and resources management positions in Alaska parks -- supplies, materials, travel, temporary technical assistance and aircraft time; and increased special program and project funding at the Regional level for contracted studies through various Governmental agencies, university offices and other contractors for specialized services.

Natural Resource Management
    Natural Resource Preservation Program............+$2,473   --FTE

The National Park Service's Washington Office oversees funding for a variety of significant natural resource research, monitoring, and mitigation problems in units of the National Park System. Projects will focus on completing basic inventories of park resources, setting up long-term monitoring programs so that adequate early warning systems are developed for the protection of threatened natural resources, and correcting known natural resource problems.

P. L. 100-91 requires the Service to conduct studies at a minimum of 11 park areas to ascertain the impact of aircraft sound on park visitors and resources. Funded at $200,000 in FY 1989 and $740,000 in 1990, this research program will be funded at $1.4 million in FY 1991. The Service has completed the study at the Grand Canyon, and will address the additional studies in 1991. The Service will conduct studies at a minimum of 11 park areas to ascertain the impact of aircraft sound on park visitors and resources, determine the appropriate minimum altitudes for aircraft overflying Park Service areas and develop recommendations for legislative and regulatory action.

In addition to the Aircraft monitoring studies, the proposed funding increase ($1,073,000) will allow the Service to undertake an additional 8-10 new Natural Resource Management projects in 1991 that will be nominated by the Regional Offices.

Natural Resource Management
    Geographic Information Systems (GIS)....................+$936   10 FTE

Park-based geographic information systems (GIS) are computerized databases that integrate mapped, descriptive, and quantitative data including various resource and incident occurrence (using site coordinates and narrative), and ecological inventorying and monitoring (portraying population dynamics, ecological indices, etc.).

GIS is a valuable tool which provides a data management framework for inventory and monitoring data and allows assessment of the merits and potential resource impacts of future management options. For example, GIS can be used to predict where marijuana crops would be most likely to grow within park areas to assist in eradication efforts or to predict the pattern of where fires could spread based on vegetation data.

Although there are at least 150 parks with significant resource concerns that could make effective use of GIS, there are only 24 operational park GIS installations and an additional 16 park databases maintained by the GIS Division. The Service is requesting funding and manpower as part of the America the Beautiful program to automate 5 new park-based GIS databases per year, that will be nominated by the Regional Offices, and to provide support for training and hardware, software, and database enhancements for existing systems.

Cultural Resource Management
Artifact Preservation/Collection Management.................+$34 -- FTE

The America the Beautiful Program includes funding to pursue cataloging of the backlog of uncataloged museum objects, which was estimated to be 25.6 million objects in 1986. Funding in 1989 and 1990 allowed the Service to catalog approximately 6.9 million objects. The Service estimates it will catalog an additional 2.0 million objects in 1990. This $34,000 increase will enable the Service to continue to pursue the cataloging of the remaining backlog of uncataloged museum objects to complete this effort by the year 2000.

The object classification distribution for the proposed increase of $7,283,000 and 18 FTE is as follows:

Object Class	FTE	Amount
Personnel services	+18	+630,000
Personnel benefits		+180,000
Travel and transportation		+72,000
Other services		+5,281,000
Equipment		+400,000
Supplies and materials		+720,000
Total	+18	+$7,283,000

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity:	National Park Service Resource Protection/Recreation -- Operations
Subactivity:	Park, Recreation and Wilderness Planning Water Resources Studies

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr. Law
Water Resources Studies				
Water Quality and	($)	3,284	4,000	+716
Wetlands Initiative	(FTE)	(13)	(18)	(+5)
Total		3,284	4,000	+716
Requirements		(13)	(18)	(+5)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the National Park Service.)

Water Resources Studies
Water Quality and Wetlands Increase....................+$716 5 FTE

An increase of $716,000 and 5 FTEs is requested to address the significant backlog of water resource protection needs that exist in National Park System units. There are immediate needs to collect information in support of water quality regulations, to develop mitigation plans to comply with Clean Water Act requirements and protect critical wetland habitats and reparian areas, and to establish an effective water resources inventory and monitoring program, this proposal has two components: Water Quality Management and Wetlands Management.

The Water Quality Management component ($501,000) is designed to provide: (1) the basic knowledge and information base to permit effective protection and management of water-dependent park values; (2) the effective integration and coordination of technical, legal and regulatory aspects of water quality problems; and, (3) a capability to analyze and solve applied water quality problems in the Service.

This component will be implemented in two phases. During the first phase, the Service will address the backlog of critical water quality issues where litigation or controversy requires immediate action. For instance, the proposed Fremont Dam upstream from Capitol Reef National Park could result in degradation of water quality and impact water quantity entering the park and, therefore, requires immediate evaluation. Over time, as litigation decreases, emphasis will be steadily shifted to inventory and monitoring efforts that will enable the Service to better identify, contain, and manage pending or future water quality issues. For example, several water resources/water quality inventory and monitoring programs that are applicable to other Park Service units are presently being developed and implemented at Sleeping Bear Dunes National Lakeshore, Capitol Reef National Park, Katmai National Park and National Preserve, and Carlsbad Caverns National Park. This program will assemble baseline inventory data describing natural resource under its stewardship, monitor these resources to detect or predict changes that may require intervention, and provide reference points for comparison with other, more altered environments.

The Wetland Management component ($215,000) of this initiative is to provide for the development and implementation of a comprehensive program of wetland area inventory and classification, onsite evaluation, monitoring, mitigation, and management. This component will also be implemented in two phases. The first year of funding for this component will be used to develop technical references on wetland inventory, classification, monitoring, and management and will also provide for developing an information management program. Subsequent years will provide for implementation of a comprehensive program of wetland inventory and classification at 100 Park Service units and wetland monitoring programs at 50 units, providing for implementation of the existing Park Service Wetland Protection Guidelines. Most units of the National Park System have wetland resource values, but of particular note are: Big Cypress National Preserve, Everglades, Fort Pulaski National Monument, Congaree Swamp National Monument, Cape Hatteras National Seashore, Colonial National Historical Park, Assateague Island National Seashore, Gateway National Recreation Area, Cape Cod National Seashore, Acadia National Park, Voyageurs

National Park, Jean Lafitte National Historical Park, Big Thicket National Park, Rocky Mountain National Park, Yellowstone National Park, Glacier National Park, Yosemite National Park, Olympic National Park, and several areas in Alaska. Other wetland areas are smaller, less understood, and need to be delineated and characterized so that their boundaries and functions are documented and understood.

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: National Park Service
Resource Protection/Recreation--Operations

Subactivity: Park, Recreation and Wilderness Planning
General Management Plans

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr. Law
General Management Plans				
Presidio Planning	($)	---	1,000	+1,000
and Management	(FTE)	(--)	(6)	(+6)
Total		---	1,000	+1,000
Requirements		(--)	(6)	(+6)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the National Park Service.)

General Management Plans
Presidio Planning and Management..................+$1,000 6 FTE

The authorizing legislation for the Golden Gate National Recreation Area states that when the Defense Department declares the Presidio to be in excess of its needs, it is to be transferred to the National Park Service. At present, the Presidio is on the Army's list of Department of Defense facilities identified for closure in the report by the Defense Secretary's Commission on Base Realignment and Closure. For the transfer to occur smoothly, the Service needs to develop a management plan for the area that preserves and enhances the resources involved.

The Presidio encompasses 1,447 acres on San Francisco Bay and contains more than 800 structures of which 355 have special historic significance. It has a total of 6.2 million square feet of building space, employs 6,000 people and houses over 1,100 families. The Presidio presently operates its own fire department and water, sewer, and other utility systems. It is a very historically significant resource, with buildings representing almost every era of American history. It is also a widely used urban park and cultural landscape.

The Park Service requests funding for the planning team that is developing and assessing alternatives for the long-term use of the Presidio, and for amending the General Management Plan for the National Recreation Area in accordance with the decisions derived from this planning process.

The object classification distribution for the proposed $1,000,000 increase is as follows:

Object Class	FTE	Amount
Personnel services	+6	+240,000
Personnel benefits		+86,000
Travel and transportation		+90,000
Other services		+540,000
Supplies and materials		+44,000
Total	+6	+$1,000,000

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity: National Park Service
Resource Protection/Recreation: Construction

Subactivity	1991 Current Law Amount	1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Planning	11,936	11,936	0
Line Item Construction Projects	17,347	33,454	16,107
Subtotal	29,283	45,390	16,107

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: National Park Service
Resource Protection/Recreation--Construction

Subactivity: Construction Planning

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr. Law
	($)	11,936	11,936	---
Planning	(FTE)	(---)	(---)	(---)
Total		11,936	11,936	---
Requirements		(---)	(---)	(---)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the National Park Service.)

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget proposes additional National Park Service funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

Construction projects require the accomplishment of three sequentially dependent phases: advance planning, project planning, and actual construction. This sequence spans a 3 to 5 year (or more) time period. The first phase, advance planning, includes special technical investigations, surveys, and comprehensive design. Also, utility contracts are negotiated; soils are tested; archeological research is carried out; and preliminary design plans are prepared. These advance planning activities: (1) permit orderly scheduling of work; (2) provide data for management decisions on design alternatives; and (3) ensure early consideration of environmental review and compliance requirements. Without this planning information, project planning and construction of facilities would be virtually impossible.

Project planning is the second phase of the three-phase construction process. The work performed under this program includes preparation of architectural, landscape, engineering drawings and specifications. Project planning provides final estimates, construction drawings and contract bidding documents for all NPS construction projects.

The Service attempts to schedule project planning at least 1 year before the construction project is scheduled. In the case of very large or complex construction projects, every attempt is made to schdeule project planning 2 years in advance of proposed construction funding.

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity:	National Park Service Resource Protection/Recreation--Construction
Subactivity:	Line Item Construction Projects

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr. Law
Line Item	($)	17,347	33,454	+16,107
Construction Projects	(FTE)	(239)	(354)	(+115)
Total		17,347	33,454	+16,107
Requirements		(239)	(354)	(+115)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the National Park Service.)

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget for the National Park Service proposes additional funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

The National Park Service component of the America the Beautiful, Legacy '99 Program consists of 8 projects at 8 park areas totalling $33,454,000. The projects for America the Beautiful are listed below.

FY 1991 America the Beautiful Line Item Construction Program

($ in thousands)

Park Area	Package Number	Project Title	1991 Request
California			
Sequoia NP	200G	Replace Giant Forest Visitor Facilities at Clover Creek	6,641
Florida			
Everglades	193	Modify Water Delivery Systems	7,500
Michigan			
Sleeping Bear Dunes NL	180A	Rehabilitate Util. & Campsites (Platte River)	3,400
Nevada			
Lake Mead NRA	353	Replace Sewage Lagoons at Calvilie Bay & Las Vegas, WA	3,199
Oregon			
Crater Lake NP	220	Rim Development Phase II	1,000
Puerto Rico			
San Juan NHS	127	Stabilize El Morro Fortress West Wall	8,500
Virginia			
Appomattox Courthouse NHP	195	Connect Park to Municipal Sewage System	600
Wyoming			
Yellowstone NP	809A	Upgrade Canyon Village Wastewater Treatment System	2,614
Total, America the Beautiful			33,454

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM- "AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL" -LEGACY 99

PARK: Sequoia and Kings Canyon National Parks, California

REGION: Western

PROJECT TITLE: (200G) Replace Giant Forest Visitor Facilities with New Facilities at Clover Creek, Phase VI

DEVELOPMENT LIMITATION AMOUNT REMAINING: N/A

PROJECT DETAILS: ($ Thousands)

	Total BA Through FY 1990	FY 1991 Requests	Future Estimate
Roads and Parking		3,378	
Stone Retaining Walls		1,381	
Misc. Site Work		45	
Water System		377	
Wastewater System		245	
Heating/Energy System		517	
Electrical Systems		505	
Electricity Utility Contract		52	
Revegetation		141	
Totals:	31,504	6,641*	26,500

FY 1991 PROJECT SCHEDULE:

	QUARTER 1st	2nd	3rd	4th	FY 1992
Construction Start:				X	
Construction Completion:					X

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: This sixth phase represents continuation of road and utilities construction at Clover Creek required to serve proposed replacement concessioner facilities consisting of approximately 1,500 overnight capacity guest accommodations and related facilities. This phase will serve the Market, Lodge and Kaweah areas of Clover Creek.

Need/Benefit: Construction of these facilities is essential for the perpetuation of the giant sequoias and for the safety of a large percentage of the 2 million annual visitors. The new concessioner facilities, consisting of up to 1,500 pillow overnight capacity with associated restaurant and guest accommodations, require the construction of these improvements and infrastructural elements before the facilities in the Giant Forest area, constructed more than 40 years ago, can be replaced at Clover Creek.

*Estimate based on completed preliminary drawings.

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM- "AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL" -LEGACY 99

PARK: Everglades National Park, Florida

REGION: Southeast

PROJECT TITLE: (193) Modified Water Delivery Systems

DEVELOPMENT LIMITATION AMOUNT REMAINING: N/A

PROJECT DETAIL:

	($ Thousands)		
	Total BA Through FY 1990	FY 1991 Requests	Future Estimate
Flood Damage Mitigation			
Engineering and Design	--	1,100	--
Construction	--	2,500	17,500
Water Diversion Structures			
Engineering and Design	--	1,500	--
Construction	--	2,400	16,400
Total	--	7,500*	33,900

FY 1991 PROJECT SCHEDULE:

	QUARTER						
	FY 1991				FY	FY	FY
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	1992	1993	1994
Flood Damage Mitigation							
Design Start:	X						
Construction Start:					X		
Construction Completion:							X
Water Diversion Structure							
Design Start:	X						
Construction Start:						X	
Construction Completion:							X

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: This project involves construction of modifications to the Central and Southern Florida Project water management system and alteration of operations to provide improved water deliveries to Everglades National Park. Planned features will be implemented by the Army Corps of Engineers with the concurrence of the Department of Interior and the State of Florida. Consistent with the provisions of the 1986 Water Resources Development Act (WRDA) regarding environmental enhancement projects with

Construction Program/Everglades National Park (Continued)

national benefits, the project construction will be 100 percent federally funded. Also pursuant to WRDA, upon project completion the Federal Government will pay 75 percent of operating and maintenance costs. The flood damage mitigation portion of the project will include pump stations, canals, and levees to mitigate flood impacts, caused by the modified water deliveries, for a residential area adjacent to the expanded park boundary. Modifications of the water diversion structures portion of the project will consist of construction of water control structures, canals, and levees to enable the transfer of water from Water Conservation Area 3A into Water Conservation Area 3B, construction of water control structures to discharge water from Water Conservation Area 3B into Northeast Shark River Slough (the area to be incorporated into the park), construction of water control structures in Water Conservation Area 3A to redistribute water more naturally in the area, and removal of an existing levee and canal that runs along the park's eastern border and cuts across the center of Shark River Slough. These works will provide the ability to restore a single functioning hydrologic system in four areas that are currently hydrological separated.

Need/Benefit: National Park Service researchers have documented substantial declines in the natural resources of the park that are believed to be attributable to the impacts of current water management. The park is located at the downstream terminus of a water management system that provides flood control, and municipal, industrial, and agricultural water supply, and other functions for a 16,000 square-mile area in southeastern Florida. The operation of the project to accomplish its multiple objectives has impacted the manner in which water is supplied to the park from the project. Inasmuch as the Everglades is a water based ecosystem and virtually all water inflows to the park are provided from the Central and Southern Florida Project, the ability of the project to deliver adequate supplies of water with respect to the timing, location, and volume is critical to the restoration of the park's natural resources. This project will enable the delivery of water to the park that will more closely resemble the natural hydrologic condition in the Everglades and, therefore, will assist in enhancing the quality of the Everglades habitat within the park and the water conservation areas. Park researchers believe the project will enhance the habitat conditions for the wood stork, an endangered species. However, the Fish and Wildlife Service has expressed concerns that there may be an adverse impact on habitat for the snail kite, also an endangered species. These potential impacts are currently being evaluated.

---

* Estimate based on U.S. Army Corps of Engineers preliminary studies.

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM- "AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL" -LEGACY 99

PARK: Sleeping Bear Dunes National Lakeshore, Michigan

REGION: Midwest

PROJECT TITLE: (180A) Rehabilitate Platte River Utilities and Campsites (Phase II)

DEVELOPMENT LIMITATION AMOUNT REMAINING: $17,449,000

PROJECT DETAILS:

($ Thousands)

	Total BA Through FY 1990	FY 1991 Requests	Future Estimate
Phase II, Construction of the Remaining Campsites, Campground Loop Roads, Parking Areas, and Utilities		900	
Entrance Station, Sewage Dump Station, Comfort Stations, and Shower Buildings		1,900	
Construction of Day Use Area With Picnic Shelter and Fish Cleaning Stations.	____	600	____
Totals:	$1,977	$3,400*	$2,000

FY 1991 PROJECT SCHEDULE:

	QUARTER				
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	FY 1992
Construction Start:				X	
Construction Completion:					X

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: This is the second phase of a multiphased project. This phase includes rehabilitation or replacement of the remaining campsites and a portion of the roads, trails, pit toilets, utility systems, and picnic area.

Need/Benefit: This campground was constructed in about 1940 and turned over to the National Park Service by the State of Michigan for operation in the spring of 1975. With the continued popularity of this area, there is a need for resource protection and proper health and safety design features. All current facilities, including water and sewer systems and roads are very dilapidated. This is a major visitor developed use area in the Platte River District and receives over 1 million visitors annually.

* Estimate based on construction drawings underway.

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM- "AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL" -LEGACY 99

PARK: Lake Mead National Recreation Area, Nevada

REGION: Western

PROJECT TITLE: (353) Construct New Sewage Lagoons, Calville Bay and Las Vegas Wash

DEVELOPMENT LIMITATION AMOUNT REMAINING: N/A

PROJECT DETAIL:

($ Thousands)

	Total BA Through FY 1990	FY 1991 Requests	Future Estimate
Construct New Sewage Lagoons, Calville Bay	--	2,735	--
Expand Sewage Lagoons, Las Vegas Wash		464	
Total	3,199*		

FY 1991 PROJECT SCHEDULE:

	QUARTER				
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	FY 1992
Construction Start:			X		
Construction Completion:					X

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: At Calville Bay, the project consists of construction of four lagoons, two with aeration equipment, to replace the existing sewage lagoons. The existing force main will be replaced by approximately 4,000 feet of new pipe along with a second lift station. A new access road to the site must also be constructed.

At Las Vegas Wash, the project consists of rehabilitation of the existing lagoon and expansion of lagoon size to three acres.

Need/Benefit: The Calville Bay sewage lagoons are in need of replacement. They have been cited for operational and maintenance deficiencies by the State of Nevada's Division of Environmental Protection. The sewage lagoons are overloaded and poorly located in close proximity to Lake Mead.

The Las Vegas Wash Sewage lagoons are also severely overloaded. Nevada's current discharge permit requires that final design be completed by the end of fiscal year 1990, with final construction by the end of fiscal year 1991.

*Estimate based on 60 percent complete preliminary design.

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM- "AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL" -LEGACY 99

PARK: Crater Lake National Park, Oregon

REGION: Pacific Northwest

PROJECT TITLE: (220) Rim Development, Phase II

DEVELOPMENT LIMITATION AMOUNT REMAINING: N/A

PROJECT DETAIL:

	($ Thousands)		
	Total BA Through FY 1990	FY 1991 Requests	Future Estimate
Sewer		553	
Electric Utilities		288	
Telephone Lines		159	
Totals:	1,761	$1,000*	undetermined

FY 1991 PROJECT SCHEDULE:

	QUARTER				
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	FY 1992
Construction Start:			X		
Construction Completion:					X

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: This work will include a new gravity sewer line from Rim Village following the existing roadway down to a connection to the existing sewer at the upper end of the Munson Valley Area. Also included is electrical and telephone line extensions and rehabilitation of portions of the Rim Village sewer system.

Need/Benefit: The sewer line will serve the existing facilities at Rim Village and will connect to the existing waste treatment facility at Munson Valley. This will allow the existing septic tank system at the Rim to be shut down at a future date and removed and as a result, will greatly decrease the risks of sewage contamination to the lake.

The new power line and telephone cable to the Rim will complete the undergrounding of the primary electrical system within the major park areas and will provide more reliable and more efficient service.

*Estimate based on project planning underway.

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM- "AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL" -LEGACY 99

PARK: San Juan National Historic Site, Puerto Rico

REGION: Southeast

PROJECT TITLE: (127) Rehabilitate El Morro Fortress West Wall

DEVELOPMENT LIMITATION AMOUNT REMAINING: NA

($ Thousands)

PROJECT DETAIL:	Total BA Through FY 1990	FY 1991 Requests	Future Estimate
Rehabilitate West Wall of El Morro Fortress	34,323	8,500*	--

FY 1991 PROJECT SCHEDULE:

	QUARTER				
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	FY 1992
Construction Start:			X		
Construction Completion:					X

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: This project will consist of installation of sheet steel piling under the historic features of El Morro and place concrete facing along the toe of the West Wall. This work will provide for the completion of this extensive historic preservation project. The El Morro Fortress is the largest Spanish fortification in the Americas and is listed as a World Heritage Site.

Need/Benefit: The U.S. Corps of Engineers, which is responsible for all El Morro erosion protection work, has found that the foundation areas beneath the West Wall of the fortress are severely damaged and in need of stabilization. Unless necessary repairs are accomplished soon, the completed revetment and previous North Wall repairs will not be sufficient to ensure the long-term preservation of this significant historic structure.

*Estimate based on Corps of Engineers engineering studies.

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM- "AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL" -LEGACY 99

PARK: Appomattox Court House National Historical Park, Virginia

REGION: Mid-Atlantic

PROJECT TITLE: (195) Connect Park to Municipal Sewer System

DEVELOPMENT LIMITATION AMOUNT REMAINING: N/A

PROJECT DETAIL:

($ Thousands)

	Total BA Through FY 1990	FY 1991 Requests	Future Estimate
Five Pumping Stations		125	
Force Main Sewer lines		313	
Pavement Replacement		120	
Site Work		42	
	--	600*	--

FY 1991 PROJECT SCHEDULE:

	QUARTER				
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	FY 1992
Construction Start:				X	
Construction Completion:					X

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: This project includes the replacement of open sewage lagoons, currently in violation of Virginia State statutes, with an 11,000 foot force main connection to the municipal sewage system of the city of Appomattox. Sewer lines, pumping stations and repairs to roads which will be traversed by the lines will be required.

Need/Benefit: For several years, the septic tank and open sewage lagoon system at the park has not been in compliance with Virginia Department of Health codes. Three Notices of Violation have been issued in 1989. Connection to the town sewage system will correct these deficiencies. The city of Appomattox has agreed to this project.

*Estimate based on advance planning underway.

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

FISCAL YEAR 1991 CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM- "AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL" -LEGACY 99

PARK: Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming

REGION: Rocky Mountain

PROJECT TITLE: (809A) Canyon Village Wastewater Treatment System, Phase II

DEVELOPMENT LIMITATION AMOUNT REMAINING: N/A

PROJECT DETAIL:

($ Thousands)

	Total BA Through FY 1990	FY 1991 Requests	Future Estimate
Upgrade Canyon Village Wastewater Treatment Plant	2,853	2,614*	---

FY 1991 PROJECT SCHEDULE:

	QUARTER				
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	FY 1992
Construction Start:		X			
Construction Completion:					X

PROJECT JUSTIFICATION:

Project Description: This work consists of the final phase of constructing a new treatment plant, lagoons, lines, and lift stations. Officials of the State of Wyoming and the Environmental Protection Agency have mandated the upgrading of existing facilities. This phase represents the actual reconstruction of the sewage treatment plant.

Need/Benefit: The sewage facility of the Canyon is discharging partially treated effluent into the Yellowstone River. Surface water discharge systems are not practical for the current conditions at the Canyon. The EPA and the State of Wyoming have served notice that the surface water discharge permit could be revoked when it expires in November 1990 unless required improvements are made. Revocation of the permit would essentially shut down Canyon Village.

*Cost estimate based on project planning underway.

AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL
Analysis by Subactivity

Activity: National Park Service
Land Acquisition

Subactivity	1991 Current Law Amount	1991 Estimate	Inc or (Dec.) FY 1991 Estimate over Current Law Amount
Federal Land Acquisition	60,701	69,853	9,152
Land Acquisition Administration	7,000	7,000	0
State Land Acquisition Administration	3,300	3,300	0
Subtotal	71,001	80,153	9,152

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: **National Park Service**
Resource Protection/Recreation--Land Acquisition

Subactivity: **Land Acquisition**

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr. Law
Land Acquisition	($)	60,701	69,853	9,152
Land Acquisition	($)	7,000	7,000	0
Administration	(FTE)	(162)	(162)	(---)
Total		67,701	76,853	+9,152
Requirements		(162)	(162)	(---)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the National Park Service.)

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget for the National Park Service proposes additional funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

The funds requested for Federal land acquisition in the National Park System for fiscal 1991 total $76,853,000 and are a part of the President's America the Beautiful initiative, a program designed to strengthen and preserve the Nation's resources, provide research into better ways to protect those resources, and provide improvement of recreational opportunities. Under this initiative, land acquisition at Everglades National Park will include tracts within the eastern boundary expansion, and in the 1988 boundary addition at Big Cypress National Preserve as part of the overall plan to protect the water flow into Everglades National Park. Funds are also provided to continue the land acquisition programs at Santa Monica Mountains National Recreational Area, Congaree Swamp National Monument, Appalachian National Scenic Trail to protect the resources and to provide for visitor uses. The funds requested will allow the purchase of a 6,264 acre tract to complete the land acquisition program at Channel Islands National Park and the acquisition of the largest remaining private tract of land at Cumberland Island National Seashore. Funds requested will permit the acquisition of the Georgetown railroad "spur" for a hiker/biker trail at the Chesapeake and Ohio National Historical Park. Authorizing legislation and funds are requested to begin protection efforts at Petroglyphs National Monument. Funds for escrow payments for an impending lease agreement for the National Park of Samoa is also requested. The list of land acquisition components is shown below.

Area	Amount
Acquisition Management	7,000,000
Emergency, Hardship, and Inholdings	5,000,000
California	
Santa Monica Mountains NRA	11,553,000
Channel Islands NP	14,500,000
District of Columbia	
Chesapeake & Ohio Canal NHP	7,000,000
Florida	
Big Cypress NP	4,000,000
Everglades NP	7,500,000
Georgia	
Cumberland Island National Seashore	10,000,000
Georgia-Maine	
Appalachian National Scenic Trail	7,000,000
National Park of American Samoa	300,000
New Mexico	
Petroglyphs NM	2,000,000
South Carolina	
Congaree Swamp NM	1,000,000
Total	$76,853,000

ATB-154 (b)

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

COMPREHENSIVE LAND ACQUISITION TABLE
$000

Park	DOI Rank	Est. Unoblig. Balances as of 9/30/90 $ / Acres	FY 1991 Budget $ / Acres	% of total acreage to be acq. by 9/30/91	Total Acres Remaining to be acq. after 1991	Benefits	Remarks
Acquisition Management	a	0 / n/a	7,000 / n/a	n/a	n/a	Administration	6 project offices, 8 regional offices.
Emerg./Hard./Inhold./Def./Reloca.	a	0 / n/a	5,000 / n/a	n/a	n/a	Acquisitions	Funds for court awards, condemnations.
State Grants Administration	a	0 / n/a	3,300 / n/a	n/a	n/a	Administration	Separate detail in Budget Justifications.
Santa Monica Mountains NRA	15	0 / 0	11,553/1,648	4.45	35,389	Recreation	To complete Backbone Trail.
Congaree Swamp NM	16	0 / 0	1,000/ 710	20.36	2,777	Protection	Boundary expended by P.L. 100-524.
Appalachian Trail NST	21	0 / 0	7,000/2,387	22.52	8,212	Recreation	To ensure continuous trail right-of-way.
Chesapeake & Ohio Canal NHP	37	0 / 0	7,000/ 34	43.59	44	Recreation	To acquire railroad right-of-way.
Cumberland Island NS	40	0 / 0	10,000/1,386	77.52	402	Protection	To acquire largest private inholding.
Big Cypress NPres	51	0 / 0	4,000/4,545	18.80	19,625	Protection	Excludes land to be acquired by exchange.
Channel Islands NP	98	0 / 0	14,500/6,264	100.00	0	Protection	To acquire last privately owned tract.
Samoa National Park	215	0 / n/a	300/ n/a	n/a	n/a	Protection	Escrow payments pending lease execution.
Petroglyph NM	b	0 / 0	2,000/ 70	3.43	1,969	Protection	To protect 17 mile escarpment drawings.
Everglades NP	b	0 / 0	7,500/5,000	4.65	102,600	Protection	Boundary expanded by P.L. 101-229.

a Overhead costs included in base program.

b Not ranked against Departmental Ranking Criteria.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Acquisition Management

Location: Servicewide

Cost Detail:

FY 1991 Amount	Future Amount
$7,000,000	Unknown

Description: Acquisition Management funds cover personnel and administrative costs such as transportation, utilities, supplies, and equipment for the administration, coordination, and evaluation of the Land Acquisition program of the National Park Service. In Fiscal year 1989, a total of $6.8 million was obligated for Acquisition Management.

Need: The funds requested will be used to staff land acquisition offices at six projects and eight Regional Land Acquisition Offices. In addition, the funds will be used to establish a satellite office to handle the Land Acquisition program at Everglades National Park where the Act of December 13, 1989, expanded the boundary to include an additional 13,000 tracts containing approximately 107,600 acres. The funds requested will also support staff levels and administrative costs to accomplish acquisitions by exchange, transfer, and donation.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Emergency, Hardship, Inholdings, Relocation, and Deficiencies.

Location: Servicewide

Cost Detail:

FY 1991 Amount	Future Amount
$5,000,000	Unknown

Description: Funds are used for:

1. Emergency and hardship acquisitions at recently authorized areas for which acquisition funds are not otherwise available. The availability of funds for emergency and hardship acquisitions permits timely action to alleviate hardships and to prevent adverse land uses that threaten park resources;

2. Inholding acquisitions. An inholding is a tract of land in a unit of the National Park System that was authorized before July 1959 or fiscal year 1960;

3. Relocation costs that result from the acquisition of improved property at areas for which acquisition funds are not otherwise available; and,

4. Payment of deficiencies in condemnation cases at areas for which acquisition funds are not otherwise available. The availability of funds to pay court awards in a timely manner ensures that the accumulation of interest on the deficiency will be minimized and will result in considerable savings to the Government.

Need: The funds requested will be used for the acquisition of emergency, inholding, and hardship tracts at areas for which funds are not available. The funds will also be used to pay deficiencies for condemnation cases previously filed in court and for the payment of relocation claims. Of the $5 million appropriated for fiscal year 1989, a total of $4,920,000 was either obligated or committed. As of December 31, 1989, a total of $4,900,000 of funds appropriated for fiscal year 1990 has been obligated or committed.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Santa Monica Mountains National Recreation Area

Location: Los Angeles and Ventura Counties, California

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: $21,603,431

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,648	$7,010	$11,553,000	35,389	N/A	Unknown

Improvements: Residential/commercial.

Description: The recreation area was authorized November 10, 1978, to protect and enhance the scenic, natural, and historic values of the area, and to preserve its public health value as an airshed for southern California metropolitan areas while providing recreational and educational opportunities. To date, funds in the amount of $103,396,569 have been appropriated for land acquisition at the area. Approximately 16,265 acres at the recreation area have been acquired by the United States. After fiscal year 1990, a total of 37,037 acres of privately owned land will remain to be acquired.

Need: Funds requested for fiscal year 1991 will be used to complete the missing links of the Backbone Trail and to connect the trail with the Federal and State-owned components of the recreation area.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Congaree Swamp National Monument

Location: Richland County, South Carolina

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: Public Law 100-524 of October 24, 1988, authorized the appropriation of funds necessary for acquisition at the monument.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	710	$1,408	$1,000,000	2,777	N/A	Unknown

Improvements: None

Description: The act of October 24, 1988, revised the boundary of Congaree Swamp National Monument to add approximately 7,000 acres. The Congaree Swamp contains the largest remnant old-growth and southern bottomland hardwood forest in the United States. When the Congress established the 15,000-acre monument in 1976, it directed the National Park Service to identify additional lands needed for resource protection, scenic integrity, and administration of the area. The Service plans to acquire 3,535 acres in fiscal year 1990.

Need: Funds requested will be used to acquire those portions of the Georgia-Pacific holdings that are not acquired with funds available in fiscal year 1990. Acquisition is necessary to prevent continued clear-cutting that threatens the integrity of the Monument.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Appalachian National Scenic Trail

Location: Connecticut, Georgia, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, North Carolina, Pennsylvania, Tennessee, Vermont, Virginia, and West Virginia

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: None. The $7 million requested is under the over-ceiling provision of Public Law 95-42.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	2,387	$2,933	$7,000,000	8,212	N/A	Unknown

Improvements: Residential/commercial.

Description: The Appalachian National Scenic Trail was authorized October 2, 1968, to provide for the ever-increasing outdoor recreation needs of an expanding population and to promote access to, travel within, and enjoyment of the open-air, outdoor areas of the Nation. The trail follows the Appalachian Mountains for approximately 2,100 miles from Springer Mountain in Georgia to Mount Katahdin in Maine. Approximately 1,939 miles of the trail are currently protected by the various States or the Federal Government. The National Park Service is responsible for protecting approximately 615 miles of the trail. To date, approximately 533 of those miles have been protected by the Service. Approximately 82 miles remain to be protected by the Service.

Need: Funds requested for fiscal year 1991 will be used to close the remaining "missing links" along the trail to ensure continuous trail right-of-way.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Chesapeake and Ohio Canal National Historical Park

Location: District of Columbia, Maryland and West Virginia.

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: $612,154

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	34	$205,882	$7,000,000	44	N/A	Unknown

Improvements: Commercial

Description: The act of January 8, 1971, as amended, authorized appropriations not to exceed $28,400,000 for land acquisition at the park. To date, $27,787,846 has been appropriated. Appropriated funds in the amount of $4,205,703 remain unobligated, of which $4 million was appropriated in fiscal year 1990 to be applied to the acquisition of the CSX Corporation right-of-way in conjunction with funds to be appropriated in the future. In addition to the 34-acre right-of-way, an additional 44 acres of privately owned land remains to be acquired at the park: 3 small lots totalling 1 acre in the District of Columbia and 2 tracts totalling 43 acres in the State of Maryland.

Need: The funds requested will be used to acquire the District of Columbia portion of the "Georgetown Branch" of the B & O Railroad, now part of the CSX Corporation, to provide important recreation opportunities in the Washington Metropolitan Area. Furthermore, Federal acquisition would prevent development that would mar the view of Washington from the George Washington Memorial Parkway across the Potomac River. An appraisal obtained and approved by the National Park Service indicates a value of approximately $12 million for the railroad right-of-way. The appropriation of $7 million in fiscal year 1991, when combined with available funds appropriated in fiscal year 1990, would enable the Service to complete acquisition of the tract. In the interim, with $840,000 to be derived from the Washington Metropolitan Transit Authority's land replacement fund, the Service will obtain a lease for public use of the tract for a term of 1 year.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Cumberland Island National Seashore

Location: Camden County, Georgia

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: $2,420,500

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	1,386	$7,215	$10,000,000	402	N/A	Unknown

Improvements: Residential

Description: Cumberland Island National Seashore was authorized by Public Law 92-536 of October 23, 1972, to protect the magnificent and unspoiled beaches, dunes, marshes, and freshwater lakes that make up the largest of Georgia's Golden Isles. The act authorized appropriations not to exceed $28,500,000 for land acquisition at the seashore. To date, funds totalling $26,079,500 have been appropriated, of which $320,476 remains unobligated. Of 3,897 acres remaining in private ownership at the seashore, 17 tracts containing 1,788 acres are identified for acquisition in the approved land protection plan for the seashore.

Need: Funds requested will be used to acquire the largest private ownership at the seashore, two tracts containing 1,386 acres in the central portion of Cumberland Island within a designated wilderness area. The property is owned by the heirs of Mrs. Lucy R. Ferguson, former president of Greyfield Land Corporation. During the congressional hearings considering authorization of the seashore in 1971, the National Park Service made a commitment to refrain from acquiring Mrs. Ferguson's property during her lifetime. She was the only full-time island resident. Mrs. Ferguson died September 11, 1989, naming 14 heirs in her will. However, the property is to be held in a trust. It is likely that the trustees will consider sale of the property at the request of the heirs. To date, no use of the property has been available to the seashore visitor. The property is used as a hunting preserve with deer and feral hogs the primary game. Feral hogs and horses on the property are a danger to native species and the owner did not allow the Service to conduct wildlife management programs. Acquisition of the property is necessary to prevent development of the tract and to eliminate current uses that are inconsistent with management practices for wilderness.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Big Cypress National Preserve

Location: Collier, Dade, and Monroe Counties, Florida

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: $49,500,000

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	4,545	$880	$4,000,000	19,625	$2,407	$45,500,000

Improvements: None

Description: Public Law 100-301 of April 29, 1988, established the Big Cypress National Preserve addition to include 146,000 acres of land northeast of Big Cypress National Preserve and in a strip along the western boundary of the preserve. The addition will increase protection of the natural water flow into the Everglades ecosystem and provide recreational opportunities including hunting, trapping, and fishing. Lands in the addition are to be acquired with a combination of State funds, Federal highway funds, and funds from the Land and Water Conservation Fund. Of the 146,000 acres comprising the addition, approximately 83,000 acres will be acquired by exchange. An additional 38,830 acres will be acquired with Federal highway funds and with State funds. The remaining 24,170 acres in approximately 4,500 individual ownerships will be acquired by the National Park Service with funds from the Land and Water Conservation Fund.

Need: The funds requested represent Federal acquisition needs above and beyond the lands included in the pending exchange. The act of April 29, 1988, expressed the intent of Congress that acquisition in the addition be substantially completed within 5 years of enactment. No funds have yet been appropriated for acquisition in the addition.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Channel Islands National Park

Location: Santa Barbara and Ventura Counties, California

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: None. The Act of March 5, 1980, established the park and authorized appropriations not to exceed $30,100,000 for land acquisition. To date, $33,440,000 has been appropriated, of which $3,340,000 was appropriated under the authority of Public Law 95-42. Because the authority of Public Law 95-42 is not sufficient to permit the appropriation of the $14.5 million requested for fiscal year 1991, amendatory legislation is required.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	6,264	$2,315	$14,500,000	0	0	0

Improvements: Residential/commercial.

Description: Channel Islands National Park was established to protect the nationally significant natural and scientific values of the Channel Islands off the coast of southern California. Only one privately owned tract in the park remains to be protected, the 6,264-acre Gherini Ranch that comprises the eastern end of Santa Cruz Island. The remainder of the island, 54,281 acres, is owned and protected by The Nature Conservancy.

Need: An appraisal of March 1, 1988, obtained by the National Park Service, indicates a value of $14,090,000 for the Gherini Ranch. The death in June 1989 of one of the owners, Pier Gherini, accelerated negotiations to acquire the tract and in September 1989 three of the four owners each signed an offer to sell their respective undivided one-quarter interests in the tract. The offers to sell expire December 28, 1990. The amount of each offer to sell is $4,500,000. The amount of each offer exceeds one-quarter of the appraised value but is the lowest amount obtained in negotiations. The unobligated balance of funds appropriated for the park, $3,574,671, when combined with additional funds to be derived from the fiscal year 1990 appropriations for emergency and hardship acquisitions, will be sufficient to acquire the quarter interest owned by the estate of Pier Gherini. The appropriation of $14.5 million for fiscal year 1991 would provide sufficient funds for the Service to purchase the remaining undivided quarter-interests for $4,500,000 each and to cover, if necessary, the additional costs of acquisition by condemnation. One owner has not signed an offer to sell. It is hoped that a settlement with that owner can be negotiated and thereby forego the need for condemnation.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Samoa National Park

Location: American Samoa

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: Public Law 100-571 of October 31, 1988, designated the park and authorized the appropriation of funds necessary to carry out the purposes of the act.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	N/A	N/A	$300,000	N/A	N/A	Unknown

Improvements: Residential

Description: Public Law 100-571 authorized the Secretary of the Interior to enter into a lease agreement with the Governor of American Samoa for lands and water that will comprise the park. The cost of the lease, which shall be for a term of 50 years with options for renewal, is yet to be negotiated by the Secretary and the Governor. Section 2 of the law states that the park is not to be established until the lease agreement is executed.

Need: Until a lease is executed, the United States is required to place in escrow $25,000 a month. Such funds can be applied toward the negotiated amount of the lease agreement. The funds requested, $300,000, will cover the required monthly payments for fiscal year 1991. It is anticipated that the land will be appraised in fiscal year 1990.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Petroglyph National Monument (Proposed)

Location: Vicinity of Albuquerque, New Mexico (Bernalillo County)

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: Legislation establishing Petroglyph National Monument has not yet been enacted. Bills have been introduced in Congress to establish the monument and authorize the appropriation of funds necessary for land acquisition.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	70	$28,571	$2,000,000	1,969	$27,445	$54,000,000

Improvements: Residential

Description: West of Albuquerque, New Mexico, the landscape is dominated by the West Mesa that features a 17-mile long escarpment on which over 15,000 petroglyphs have been carved or pecked onto the rock. These petroglyphs date back as far as 3,000 years and trace the progress of Indian civilization in New Mexico. Bills have been introduced in Congress to establish Petroglyph National Monument. The boundary of the proposed monument contains approximately 5,150 acres of land, of which 2,039 acres are privately owned.

Need: For fiscal year 1990, funds in the amount of $1 million were appropriated for land acquisition at Petroglyph National Monument. Senate Report No. 101-85, however, requires that the funds be withheld from the National Park Service until the monument is authorized. Upon authorization, funds appropriated in fiscal year 1990 will be used to order title and appraisals and to commence acquisition of a portion of the 1,823 acres owned by Westland Development Company. Funds requested for fiscal year 1991 will be used to acquire an additional portion of the Westland Development Company holdings to prevent development and to protect the petroglyphs from damage.

Fiscal Year 1991 National Park Service Land Acquisition Program

Program or Park Area: Everglades National Park

Location: Collier, Dade and Monroe Counties, Florida

Land Acquisition Limitation Amount Remaining: Public Law 101-229 of December 13, 1989, revised the boundary of the park and authorized the appropriation of funds necessary for the acquisition of lands added to the park.

Cost Detail:

	FY 1991			Future		
	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount	Acres	Average Cost/ Acre	Total Amount
Land	5,000	$1,500	$7,500,000	102,600	N/A	Unknown

Improvements: Residential, commercial, and agricultural.

Description: The act of December 13, 1989, authorized the addition of 107,600 acres comprising an area commonly known as the Northeast Shark River Slough and the East Everglades. The addition was necessary both to limit further losses suffered by the park due to habitat destruction outside the former boundaries and to preserve the natural water flow patterns that are critical for the survival of the park. Consistent with the provisions of the authorizing legislation, not less than 20 percent of the cost of acquiring the lands to expand the park will be paid by the State of Florida.

Need: The funds requested are necessary to acquire approximately 5,000 acres needed to maintain natural hydrologic conditions in the park. The acquisition program will be coordinated with the Army Corps of Engineers and will address construction modifications to the central and southern Florida project that are necessary to improve water delivery into the park.

Justification of Program and Performance

Activity: National Park Service
Resource Protection/Recreation--Land Acquisition

Subactivity: State Grants Administration

(Dollar amounts in thousands)

Program Elements		FY 1991 Current Law	FY 1991 Proposed Law	Inc. (+) Dec. (-) from 1991 Curr. Law
State Grants	($)	3,300	3,300	---
Administration	(FTE)	(40)	(40)	(---)
Total		3,300	3,300	---
Requirements		(40)	(40)	(---)

(For descriptions of the current law program please refer to the FY 1991 President's Budget Justifications for the National Park Service.)

To carry out President Bush's pledge to undertake a program to strengthen and preserve the Nation's natural resources, the 1991 budget proposes additional National Park Service funding as part of the America the Beautiful initiative. America the Beautiful will help protect and improve the natural resources and environment in wildlife refuges, parks, and public lands; it will provide for research into better ways to protect those resources; and it will improve recreation opportunities.

Funds are requested for State Grants Administration to administer previously awarded grants and any new grants in a responsible and accountable way and to ensure compliance with existing public access mandates through technical guidance and oversight to cooperating State agencies. Through the Land and Water Conservation Fund (L&WCF) matching grant program, recreation opportunities are provided at the State and local levels, public understanding of the role and function of the National Park Service is increased, and citizen involvement in the planning and preservation of outdoor recreation resources is expanded at all levels.

In the past 5 years, $129 million has been appropriated for State Grants. Although no new grant funding has been proposed for 1991, overall workloads will remain at prior year levels because of increasing compliance needs under section 6(f) (3) of the authorizing act for 34,000 completed and 1,680 active projects, which represent a Federal investment of over $3 billion during the past 25 years. The "Anti-Conversion" provisions of the Land and Water Conservation Fund Act require periodic monitoring of completed project sites to ensure that they remain accessible for public recreation use.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
AMERICA THE BEAUTIFUL

(Program and Financing (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 14-1112-2-1-302		1989 Actual	1990 Estimate	1991 Estimate
	Program by activities:			
00.01	Land Acquisition	0	0	161,131
	Resource Protection and Recreation Enhancement			
00.02	Operations	0	0	155,988
00.03	Construction	0	0	49,158
10.00	Total obligations...............	0	0	366,277
	Financing:			
39.00	Budget authority	0	0	366,277
	Budget authority			
40.00	Appropriation (General Fund)	0	0	205,146
40.00	Appropriation (Special Fund)	0	0	161,131
43.00	Appropriation (adjusted)	0	0	366,277
	Relation of obligations to outlays:			
71.00	Obligations incurred, net	0	0	366,277
74.40	Obligated balance, end of year	0	0	-179,063
90.00	Outlays..........................	0	0	187,214

Department of the Interior
America the Beautiful

Object Classification (in thousands of dollars)

Identification code 14-1112-2-1-302		1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Personnel compensation				
11.1	Full-time permanent			58,598
11.3	Other than full-time permanent			5,305
11.5	Other personnel compensation			437
11.8	Special personal services payments			51
11.9	Total personnel compensation			64,391
12.1	Civilian personnel benefits			11,855
21.0	Travel and transportation of persons			7,039
22.0	Transportation of things			1,027
23.1	Rental payments to GSA			132
23.2	Rental payments to others			359
23.3	Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges			3,364
24.0	Printing and Reproduction			371
25.0	Other services			101,905
26.0	Supplies and materials			8,194
31.0	Equipment			7,533
32.0	Land and structures			153,889
41.0	Grants, subsidies, and contributions			5,716
42.0	Insurance claims and indemnities			502
99.9	Total obligations			366,277
Obligations are distributed as follows				
Bureau of Land Management				
	Land acquisition			24,278
	Resource protection/rehabilitation -- operations			43,539
	Resource protection/rehabilitation -- construction			1,445
	Subtotal, Bureau of Land Management			69,262
Fish and Wildlife Service				
	Land acquisition			56,700
	Resource protection/rehabilitation -- operations			81,449
	Resource protection/rehabilitation -- construction			2,323
	Subtotal, Fish and Wildlife Service			140,472
National Park Service				
	Land acquisition			80,153
	Resource protection/rehabilitation -- operations			31,000
	Resource protection/rehabilitation -- construction			45,390
	Subtotal, National Park Service			156,543
	Total amount allocated			366,277

Department of the Interior
America the Beautiful

Personnel Summary

Identification code 14-1112-2-1-302	1989 actual	1990 estimate	1991 estimate
Total number of full-time permanent positions			1,887
Total compensable work years			
Full-time equivalent employment			2,260
Full-time equivalent of overtime and holiday hours			70
Distribution of Full-time equivalent employment by bureau			
Bureau of Land Management			804
Fish and Wildlife Service			707
National Park Service			749